The Checkmate Patterns Manual

chessable

The Ultimate Guide to Winning in Chess

Raf Mesotten

The Checkmate Patterns Manual

chessable

The Ultimate Guide to Winning in Chess

Raf Mesotten

The Checkmate Patterns Manual

Raf Mesotten

The Checkmate Patterns Manual

The Ultimate Guide to Winning in Chess

This book is also available as an online Move Trainer and Video course at Chessable.com

New In Chess 2022

© 2022 New In Chess

Published by New In Chess, Alkmaar, The Netherlands

www.newinchess.com

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission from the publisher.

Cover design: Buro Blikgoed

Cover Image: Adam Ledford, Chessable

Supervision and proofreading: Peter Boel

Editing and typesetting: Femke de Groot / Janna Francoise

Production: Anton Schermer

Have you found any errors in this book?

Please send your remarks to editors@newinchess.com. We will collect all relevant corrections on the Errata page of our website www.newinchess.com and implement them in a possible next edition.

ISBN: 978-94-93257-29-0

Contents

Introduction

Explanation of symbols

EXERCISES A Basic test

CHAPTERS Checkmate patterns

Chapter 1 Anastasia's mate

Chapter 2 Greco's mate

Chapter 3 Arabian mate

Chapter 4 Hook mate

Chapter 5 Vukovic's mate

Chapter 6 Smothered mate

Chapter 7 Suffocation mate

Chapter 8 Corner mate

Chapter 9 Morphy's mate

Chapter 10 Pillsbury's mate

Chapter 11 Opera mate

Chapter 12 Lolli's mate

Chapter 13 Damiano's mate

Chapter 14 Max Lange's mate

Chapter 15 Damiano's bishop mate

Chapter 16 Dovetail mate

Chapter 17 Swallow’s tail mate

Chapter 18 David & Goliath mate

Chapter 19 Boden’s mate

Chapter 20 Balestra mate

Chapter 21 Double knights mate

Chapter 22 Double bishops mate

Chapter 23 Blackburne’s mate

Chapter 24 Blind swine mate

Chapter 25 Epaulette mate

Chapter 26 Back rank mate

Chapter 27 Lawnmower mate

Chapter 28 Triangle mate

Chapter 29 Kill box mate

Chapter 30 Mate in the opening

Exercises B Warming up test

Exercises C Advanced test

Exercises D Final test

Solutions A Basic test

Solutions B Warming up test

Solutions C Advanced test

Solutions D Final test

Afterword

Index of mate names

Introduction

The chapters

This book starts with a basic test (A), then there are 30 checkmate pattern chapters, 1 warming up test, 1 advanced test and 1 final test.

The point of doing the basic test first before you are given any instruction is not to solve all of the exercises correctly the first time, although if you do, that's great. The idea here is to help you identify which patterns you struggle with first. The names of the 30 checkmate patterns chapters and the informational sections are based on various sources I could find. My main sources were www.chessgames.com, www.wikipedia.org and www.chesstempo.com.

Each of these 30 chapters has one or more short but instructive informational sections to give you an idea how a certain checkmate pattern can be executed. I based these sections on similarities that I saw among the many thousands of games I looked at. I do not claim that these are the only possibilities that lead to a certain type of checkmate. I mainly want to inspire you. The informational sections are followed by exercises, to put what has been learned into practice.

The warming up test (B) chapter contains over 200 exercises, to practice all you have learned in the 30 checkmate pattern chapters. These are especially interesting for beginners and casual players, but these can also serve for intermediate players as a warm-up. More than 80% of these exercises are mate-in-2 or mate-in-3.

The advanced test (C) contains nearly 300 exercises, and takes all you have learned one step further. These exercises may be too hard for beginners and casual players, they can be challenging for intermediate players but also interesting for advanced players. More than 75% of these exercises are mate-in-3, mate-in-4 or mate-in-5.

The final test (D) contains 100 of the hardest exercises in this book.

The exercises

The title of each exercise is the game on which it's based. This does not necessarily mean that the original game went exactly the same! Each exercise starts at the moment the game can be ended with one of the checkmate patterns I describe in this course. Every solution is headed with the name of the checkmate pattern on which that exercise is based. In order to collect enough quality exercises for each pattern within a pattern, I sometimes took examples where e.g. a queen (only using her diagonal ability) replaced a bishop. I decided not to mention this in any of the chapters, because it would complicate the basic patterns too much.

Mate-in-X and alternative moves

I tried to avoid using games with a dense forest of variations and lots of alternative moves. Each exercise has one correct solution, and possibly a few alternative moves. The correct solution is (unless otherwise stated) the shortest possible mating sequence: a mate-in-X. The following types of moves are NOT accepted as an alternative move in this book: 1. the unnecessary repetition of moves, even if it is a mate-in-X according to engines; 2. mate-in-2, mate-in-3,... in case there is a mate-in-1; 3. silent moves that unnecessarily prolong the game,

after which the game would still end with the same checkmate pattern as the shortest possible mating sequence; 4. moves that will lead to checkmate in more than 15 moves (with best play from both sides). This is a book about checkmate patterns, not about ‘finding a good move’. All solutions have been checked with an engine. If you believe that something isn’t correct, please contact us. Feel free to use an engine to better understand the solutions of the most difficult exercises.

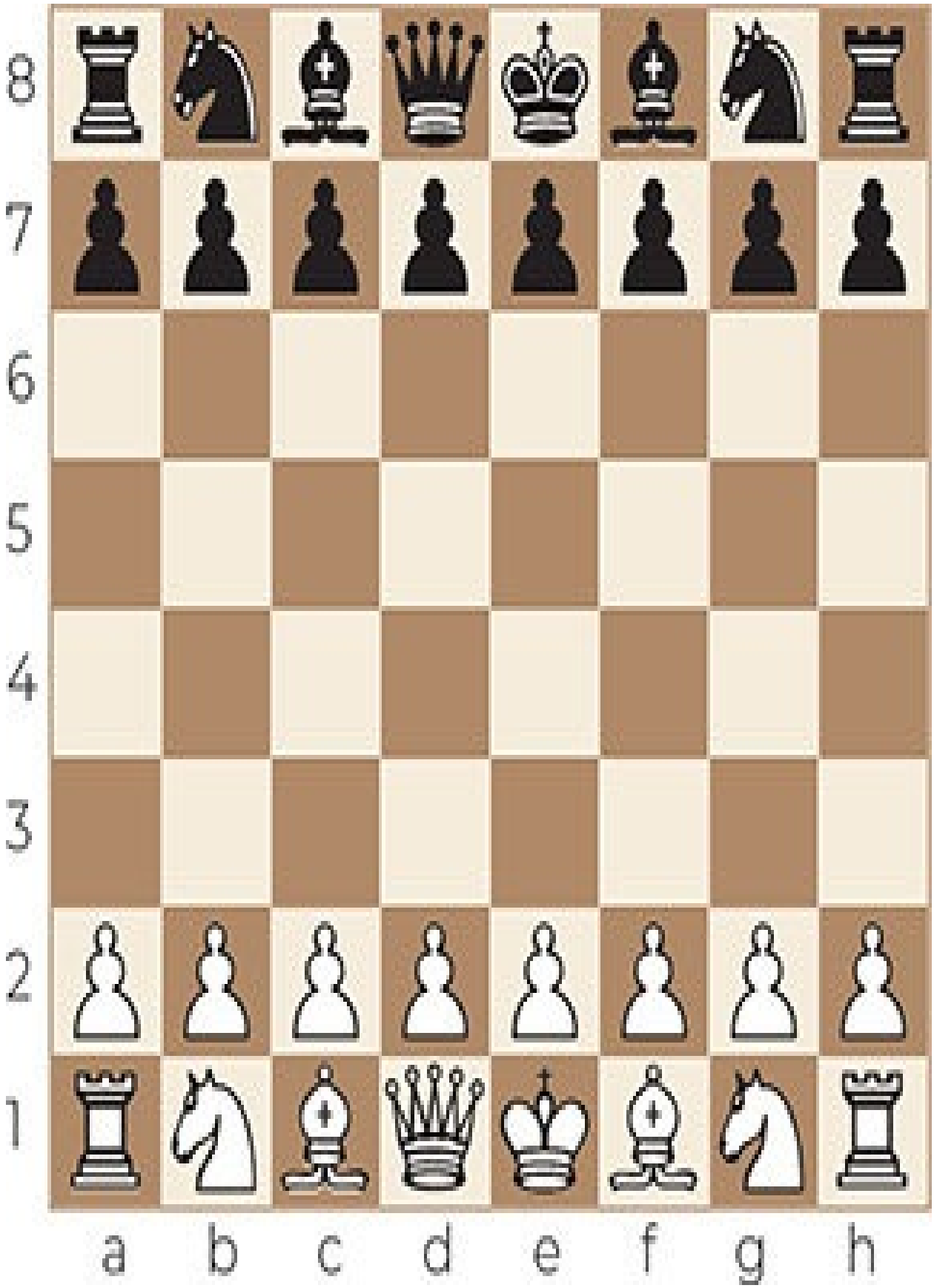
Word of thanks

More than 6,000 students have purchased the online Move Trainer and/or the Video Course on Chessable.com. This immense success has made it possible to publish this physical copy. I want to thank each of you for your support. Thanks to Peter Boel, skkeyan and superlychee for their fantastic testing work which considerably raised the level of the course in terms of content, usability and linguistics. And special thanks to my girlfriend Tania, for the patience she had during the 500+ hours I spent on making the course.

Raf Mesotten a.k.a. CraftyRaf

Explanation of symbols

The chessboard with its coordinates:


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

	White to move
	Black to move
♔	King
♕	Queen
♖	Rook
♗	Bishop
♘	Knight
	White stands slightly better
	Black stands slightly better
	White stands better
	Black stands better
+–	White has a decisive advantage
–+	Black has a decisive advantage
=	balanced position
!	good move
!!	excellent move
?	bad move
??	blunder
!?	interesting move
?!	dubious move
#	mate
ch	championship
zt	zonal tournament
izt	interzonal tournament
ct	candidates tournament
tt	team tournament
ol	olympiad
m	match

Explanation of colored features in diagrams:

Green: good move, structure, plan or square
Red: the piece or square is threatened or weak

EXERCISES A

Basic test

EXERCISES A

Basic test

Before you get started on training with the Checkmate Patterns Manual, I recommend you solve the next 34 exercises first, to see which patterns are already familiar to you and which ones are maybe not so familiar.

Every exercise in this test is linked to a corresponding checkmate pattern chapter. If you make a mistake or fail to find the solution to any of these given exercises the first time, it could be a sign that those are the patterns you should work on first. So, you can go to that chapter and immediately start training those patterns.

This book is designed to give you a comprehensive overview of all the most common checkmate patterns in chess. But it is also designed to be a work of reference for you to use in a practical manner – to build your checkmate patterns recognition until you are instantly able to recognize the pattern before you calculate to checkmate.

The solutions to this test are given from page 305.

Have fun, and happy checkmating!

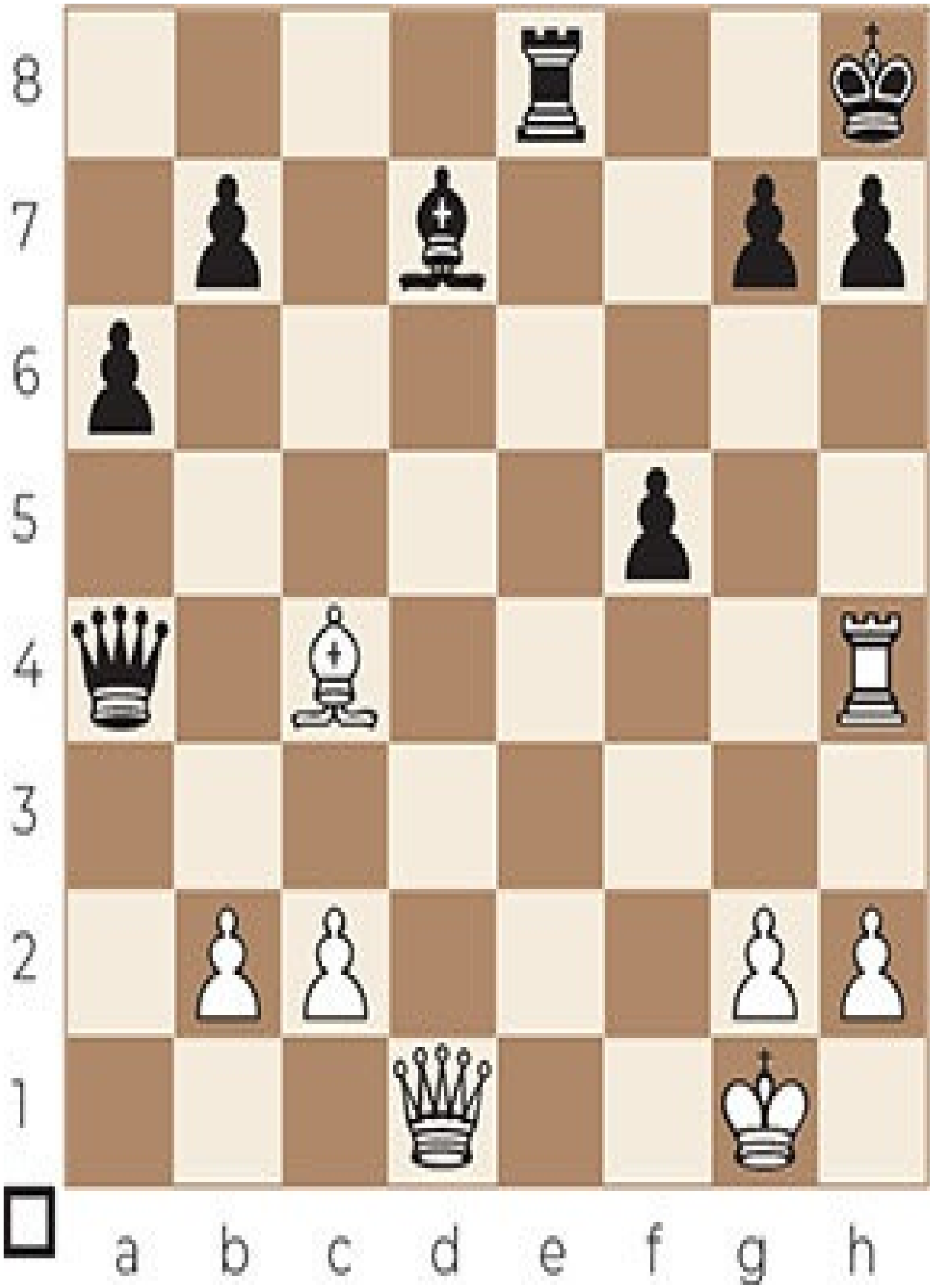
Exercise A 1

Anastasia's mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

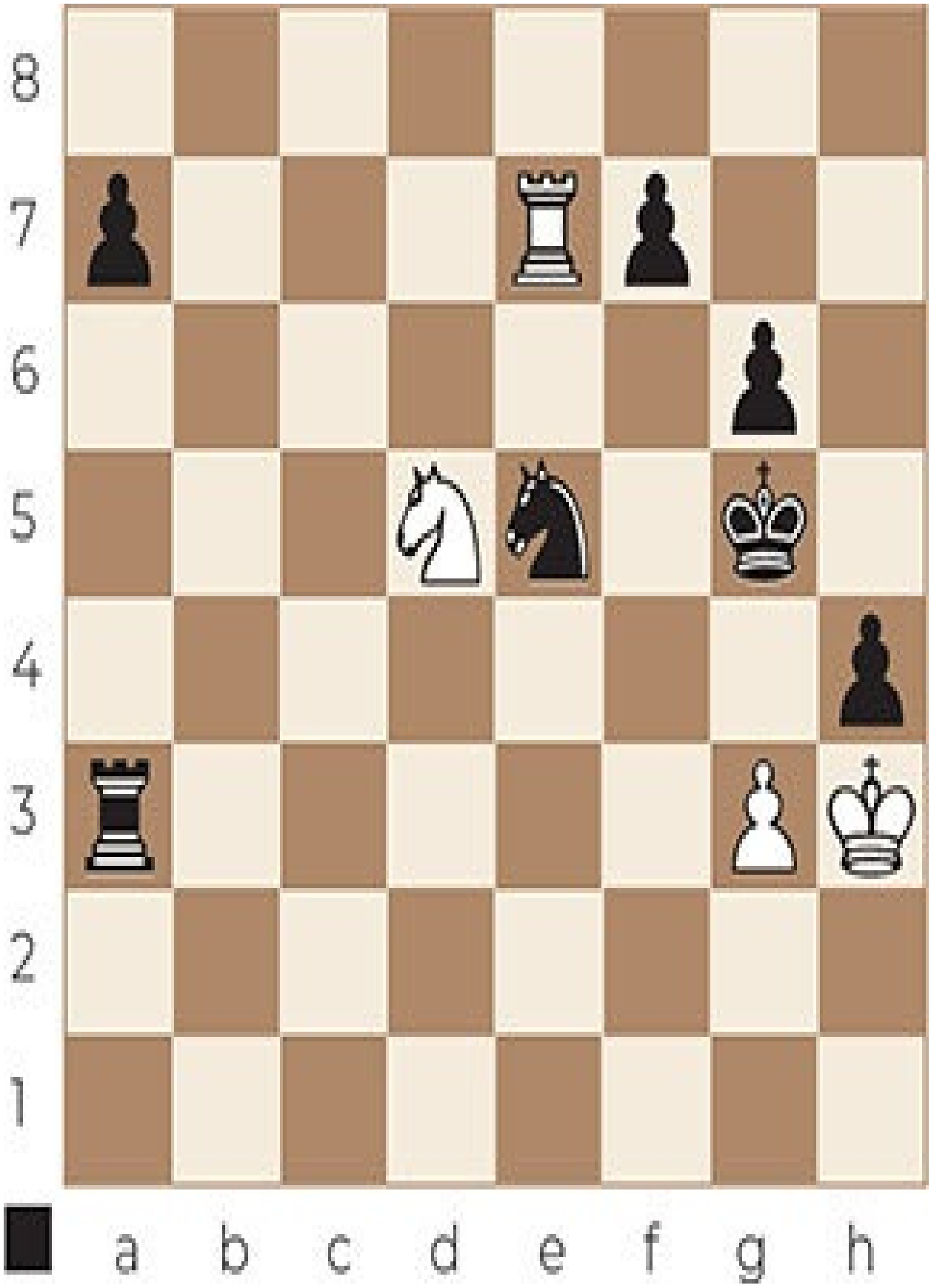
Exercise A 2

Greco’s mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

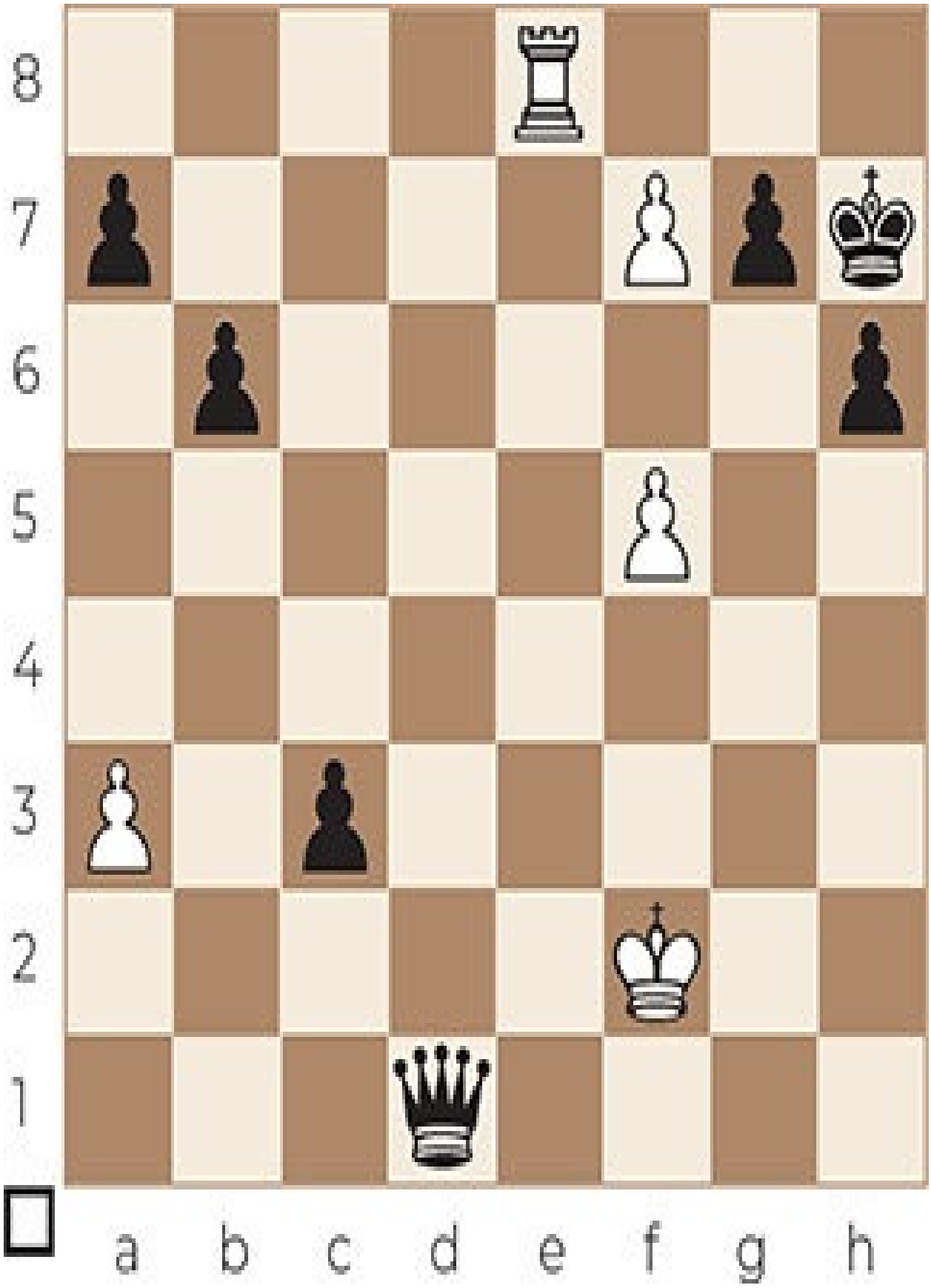
Exercise A 3

Arabian mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

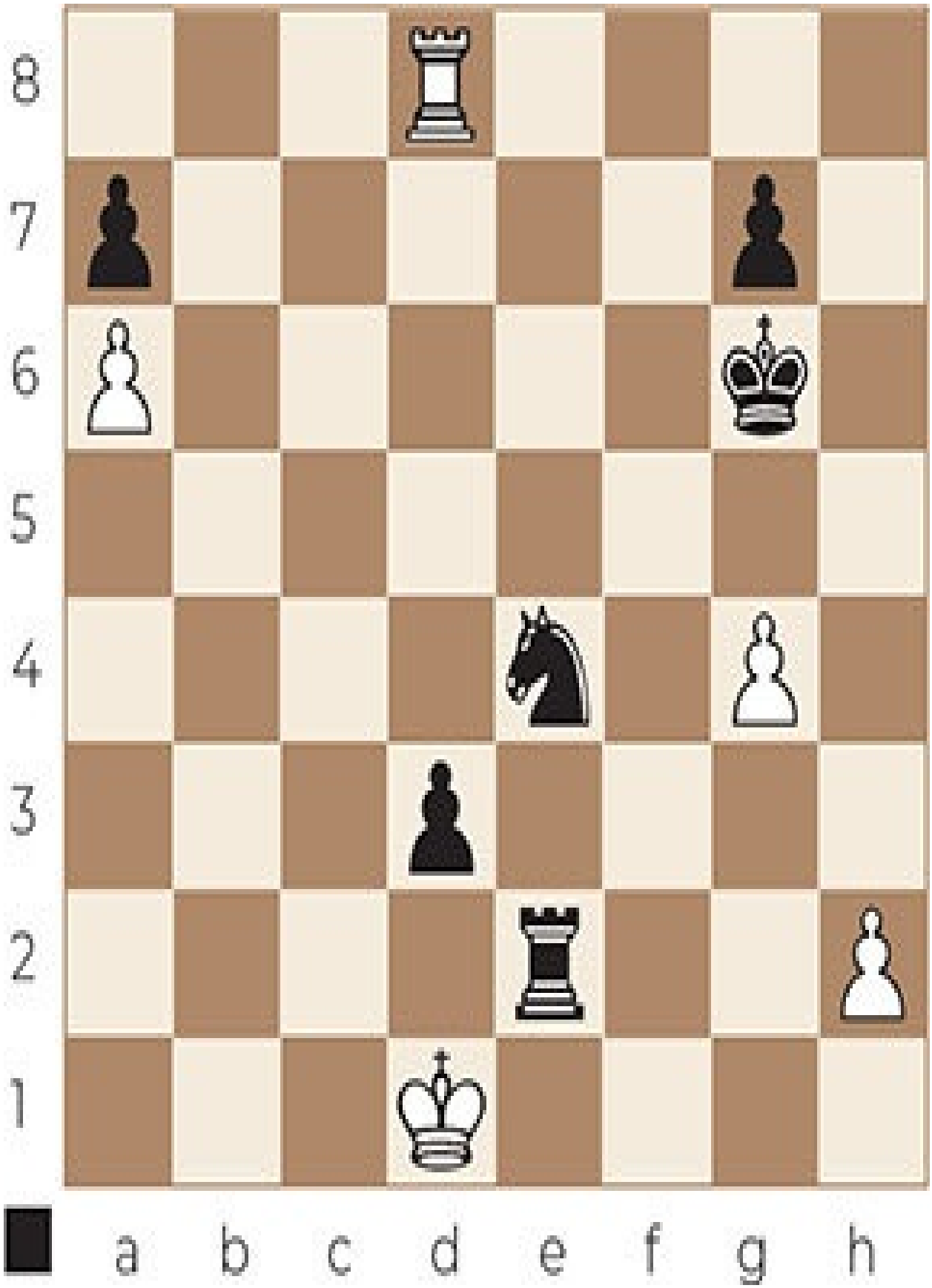
Exercise A 4

Hook mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

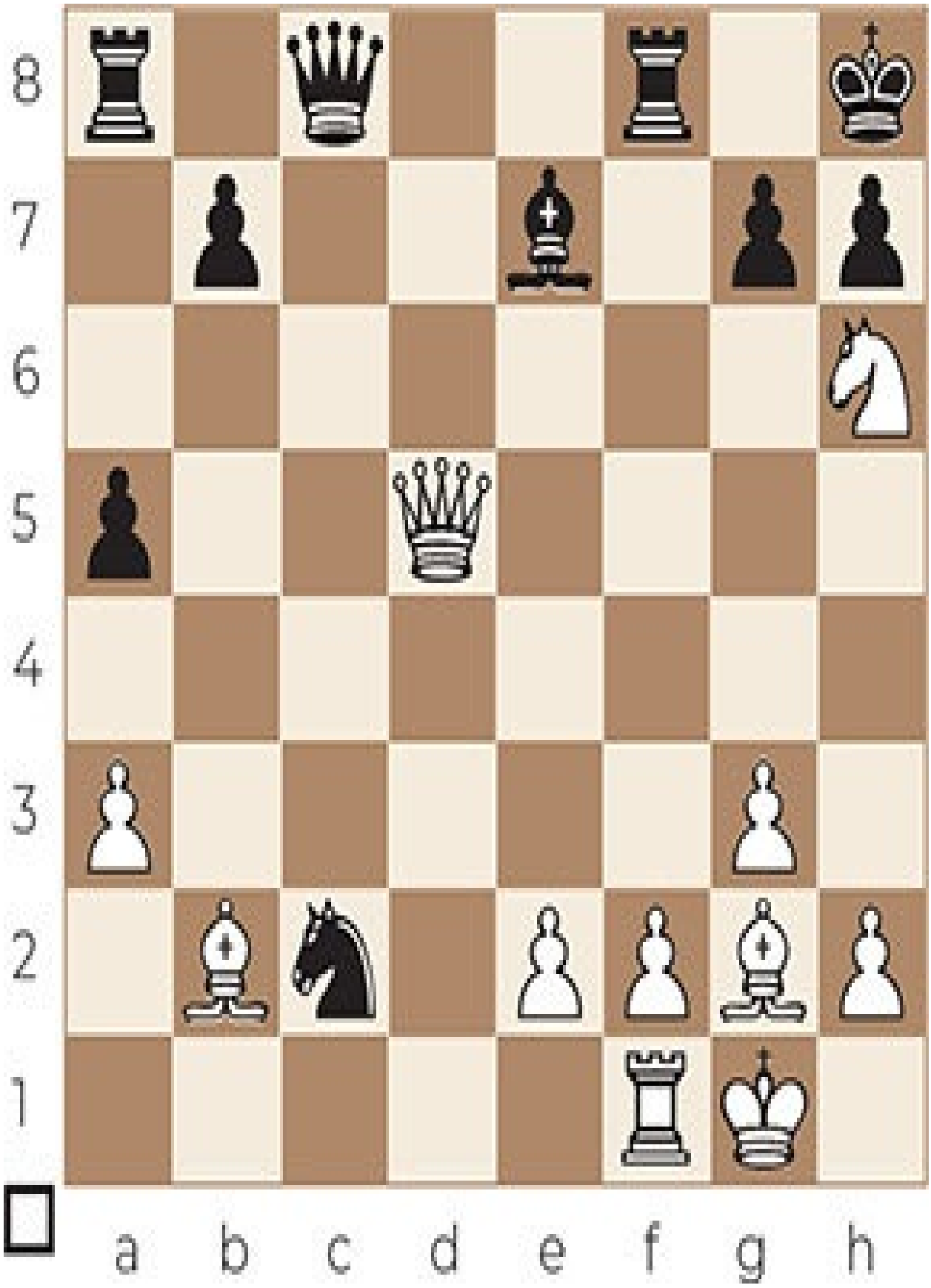
Exercise A 5

Vukovic’s mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 6

Smothered mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 7

Suffocation mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 8

Corner mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 9

Morphy's mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 10

Pillsbury's mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

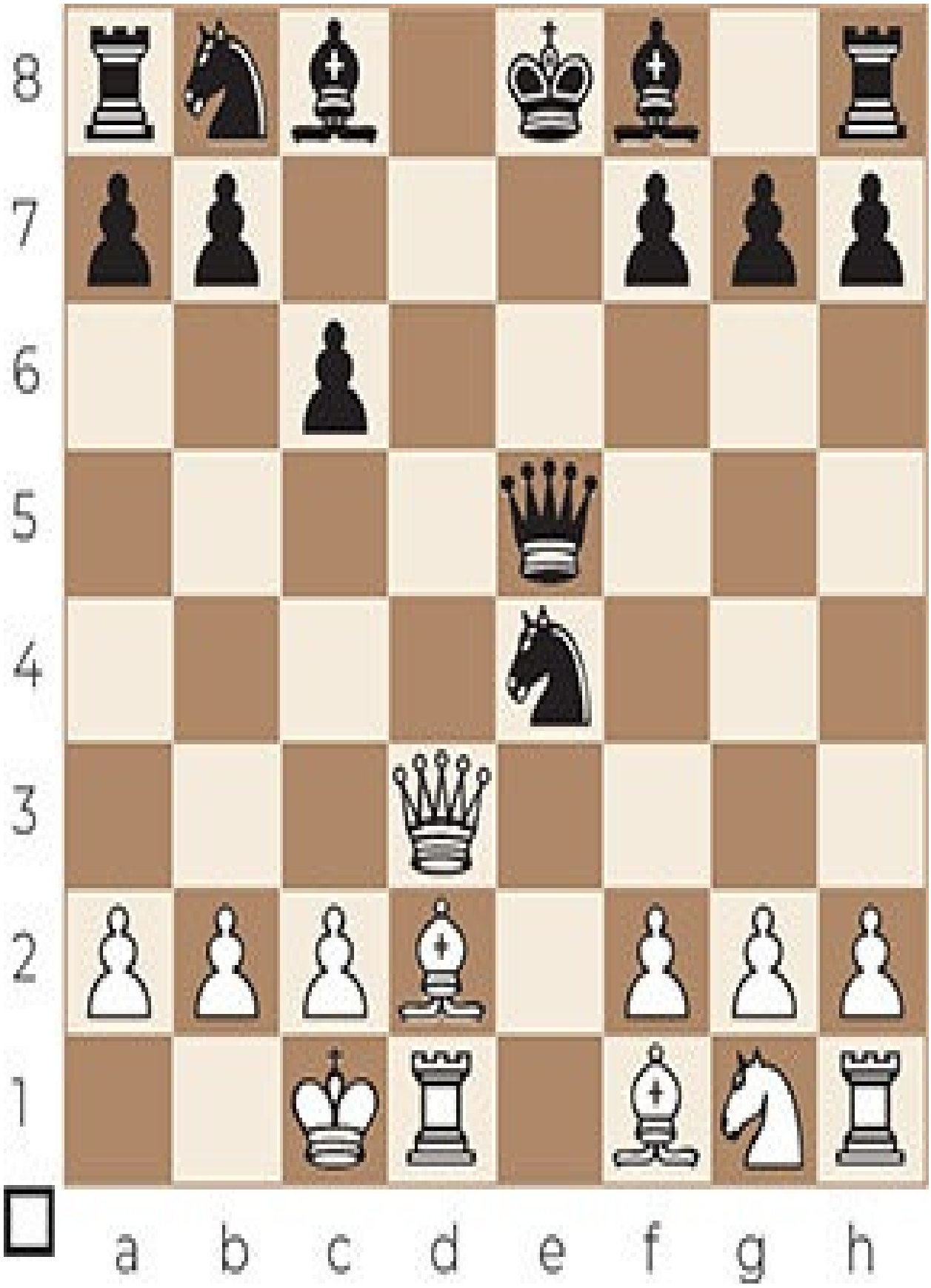
Exercise A 11

Opera mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

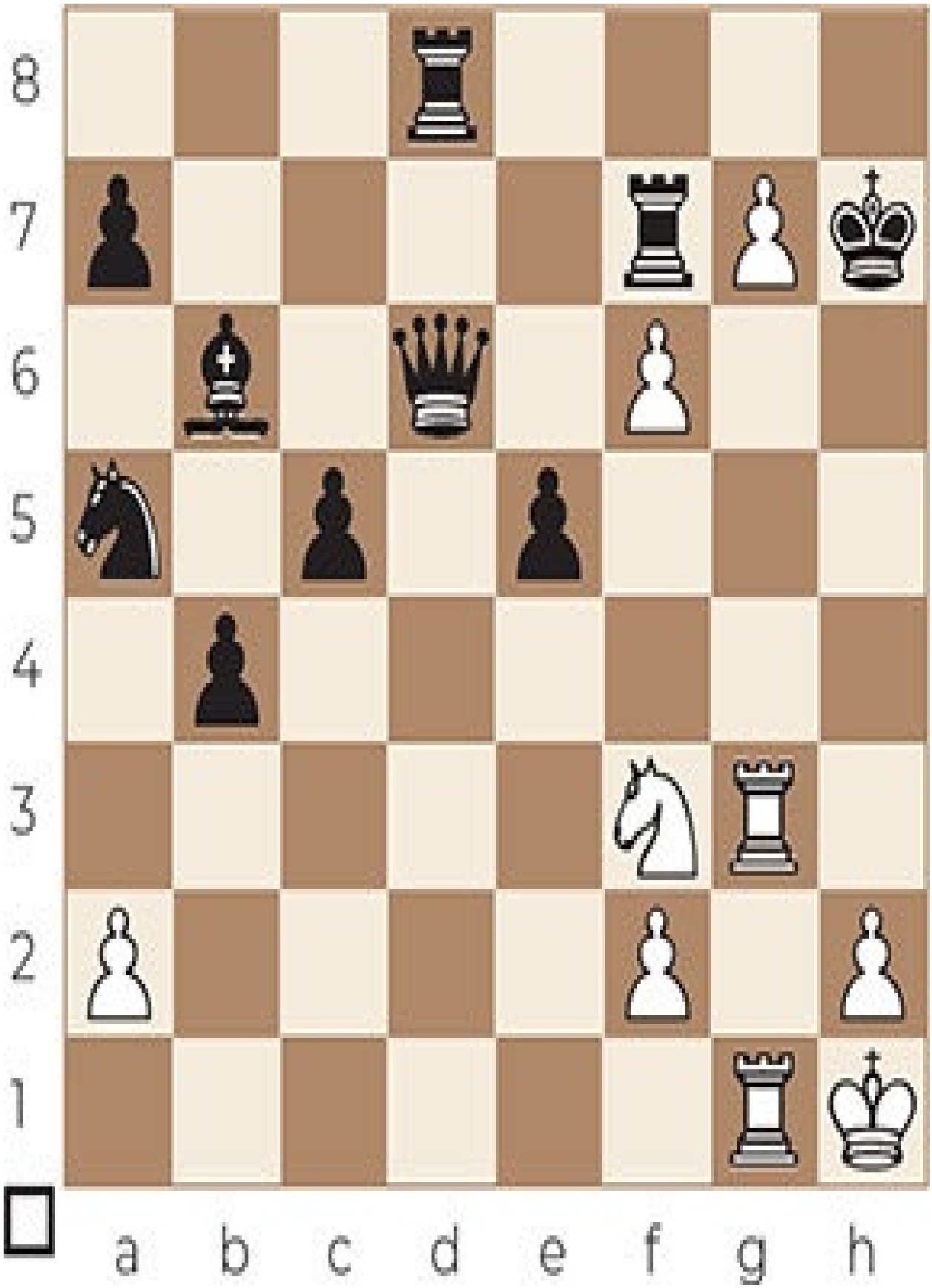
Exercise A 12

Réti's mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 13

Anderssen's mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 14

Lolli's mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 15

Damiano's mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

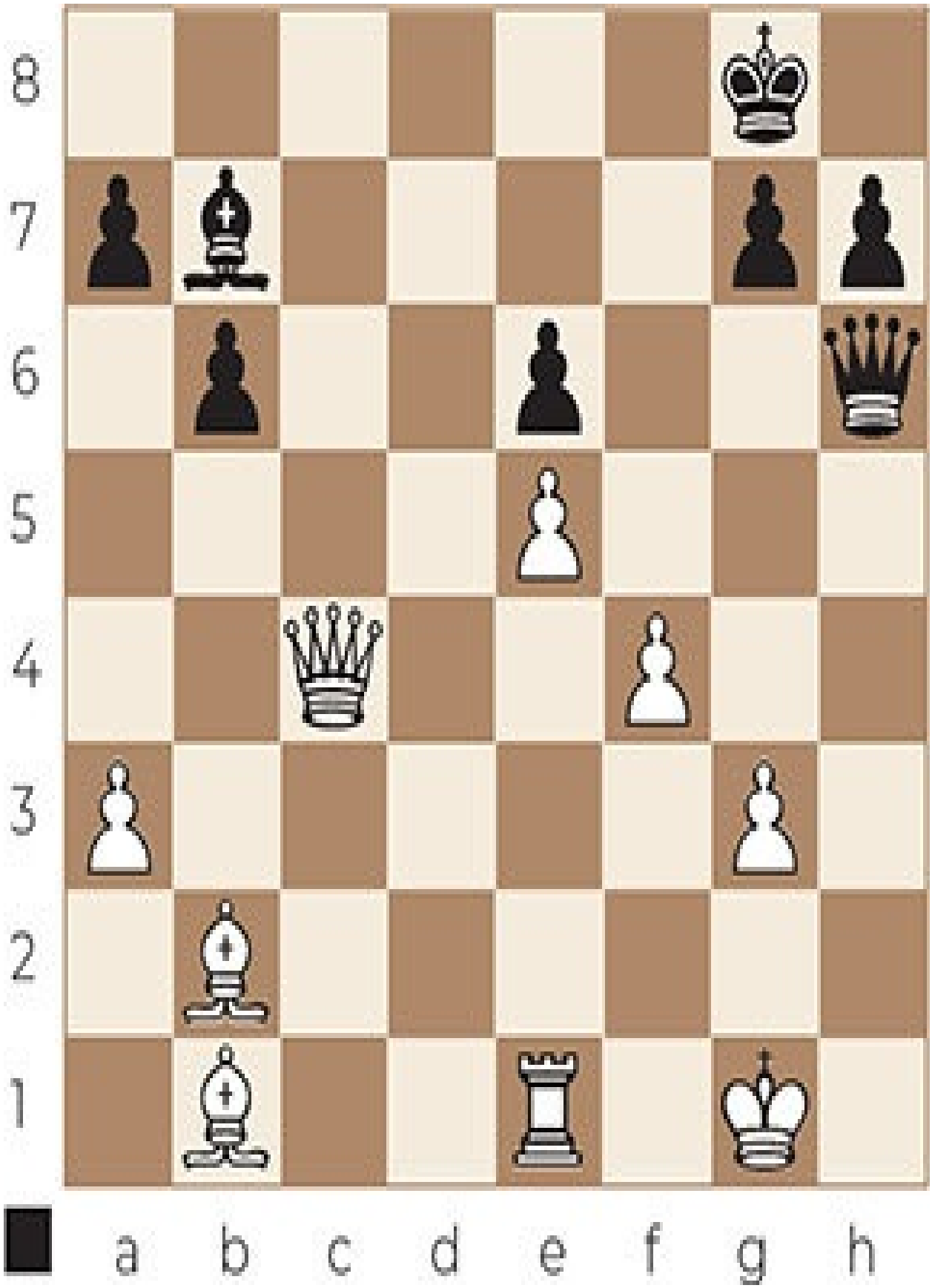
Exercise A 16

Max Lange's mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 17

Damiano's bishop mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

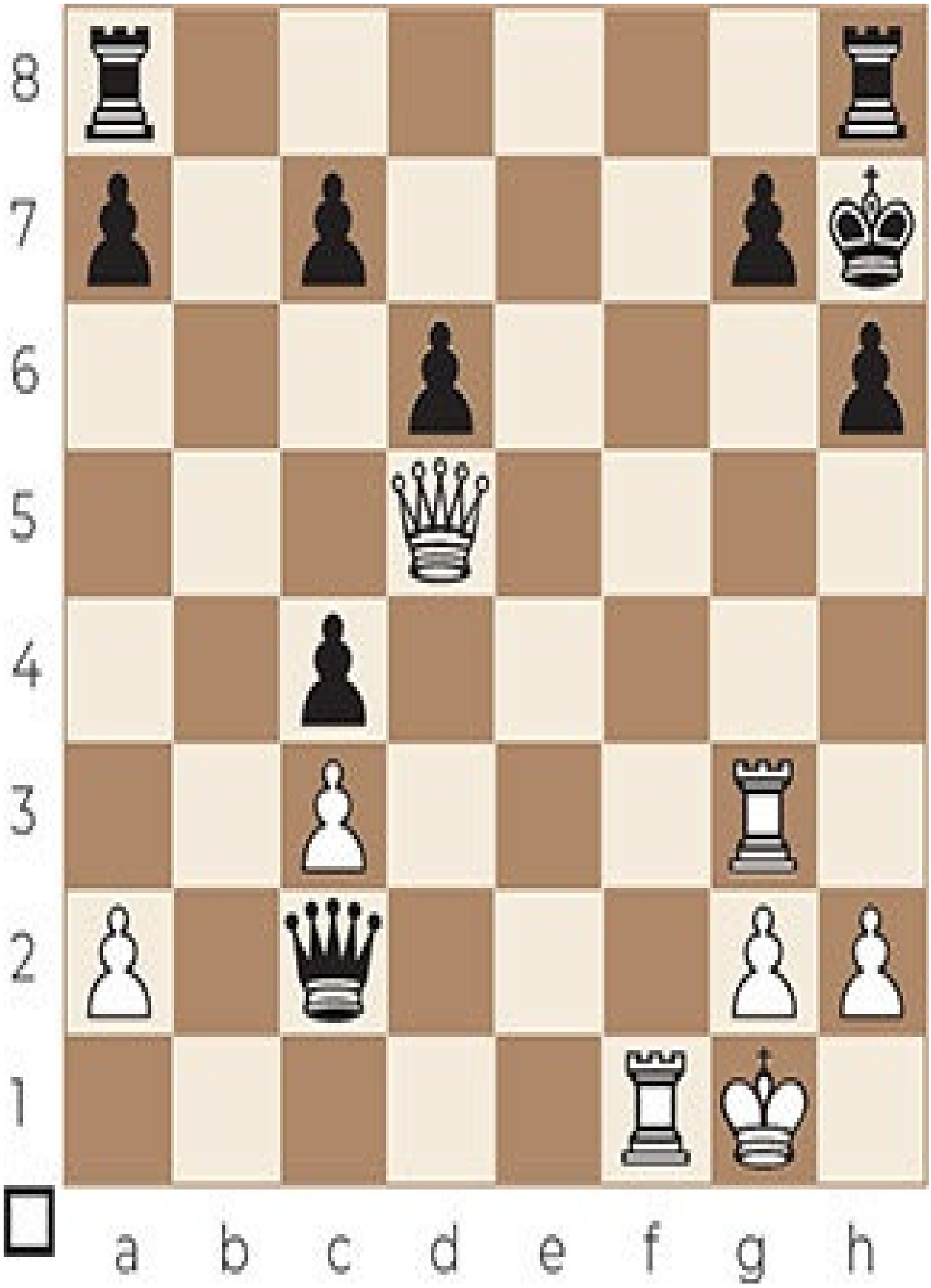
Exercise A 18

Dovetail mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 19

Swallow's tail mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 20

David & Goliath mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 21

Boden's mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 22

Balestra mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

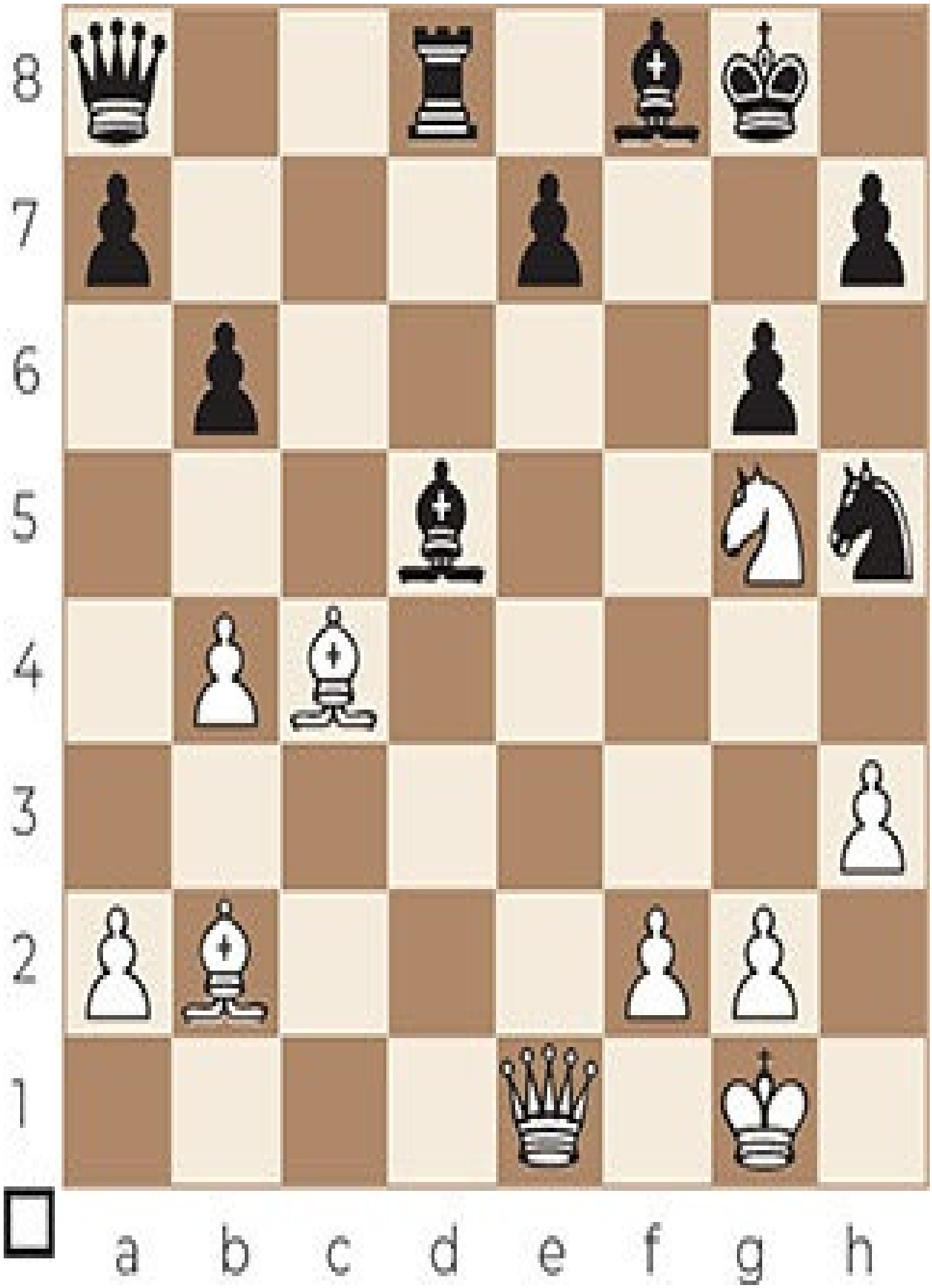
Exercise A 23

Double knights mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 24

Double bishops mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 25

Blackburne's mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

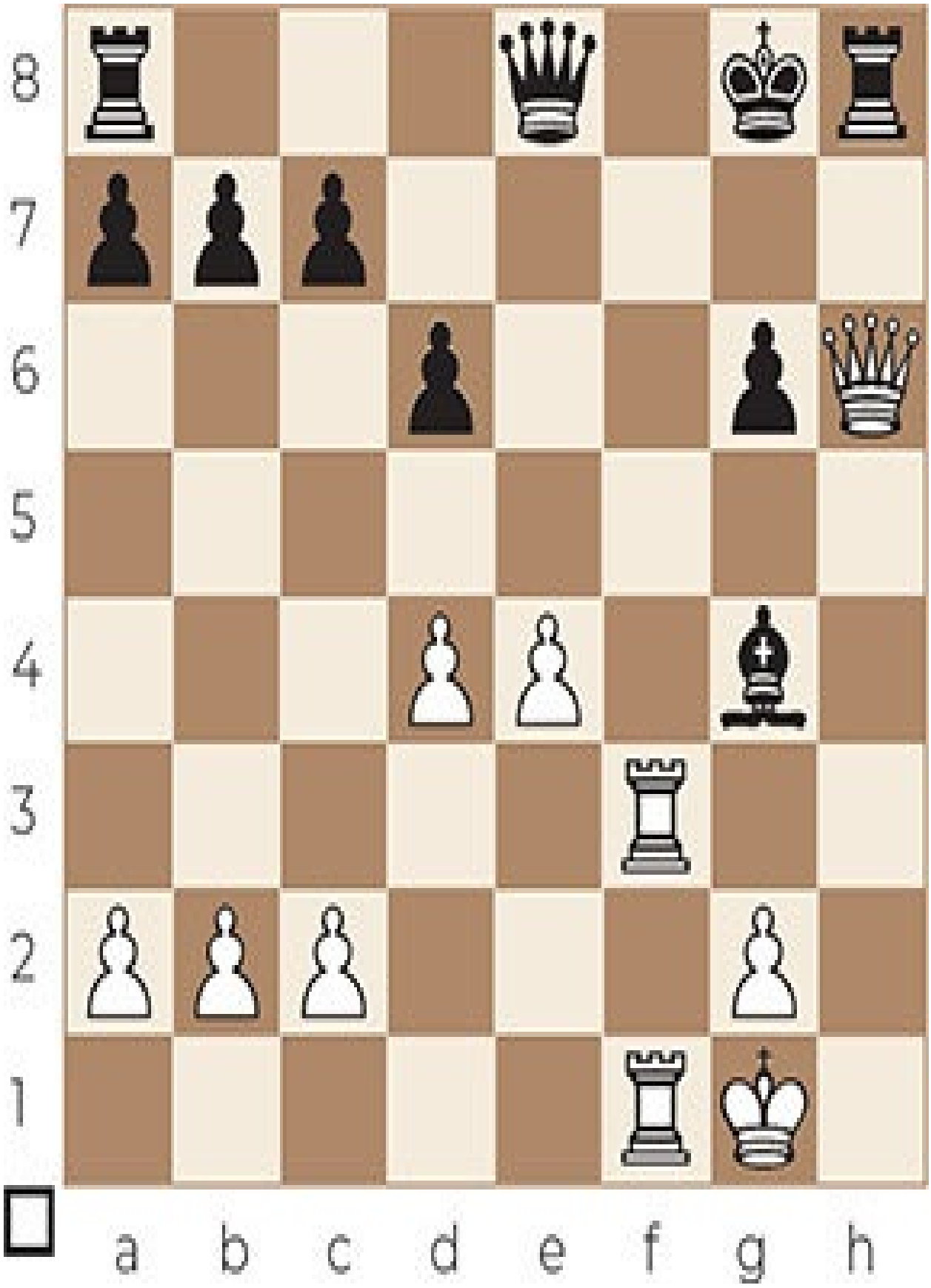
Exercise A 26

Blind swine mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 27

Epaulette mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 28

Back rank mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

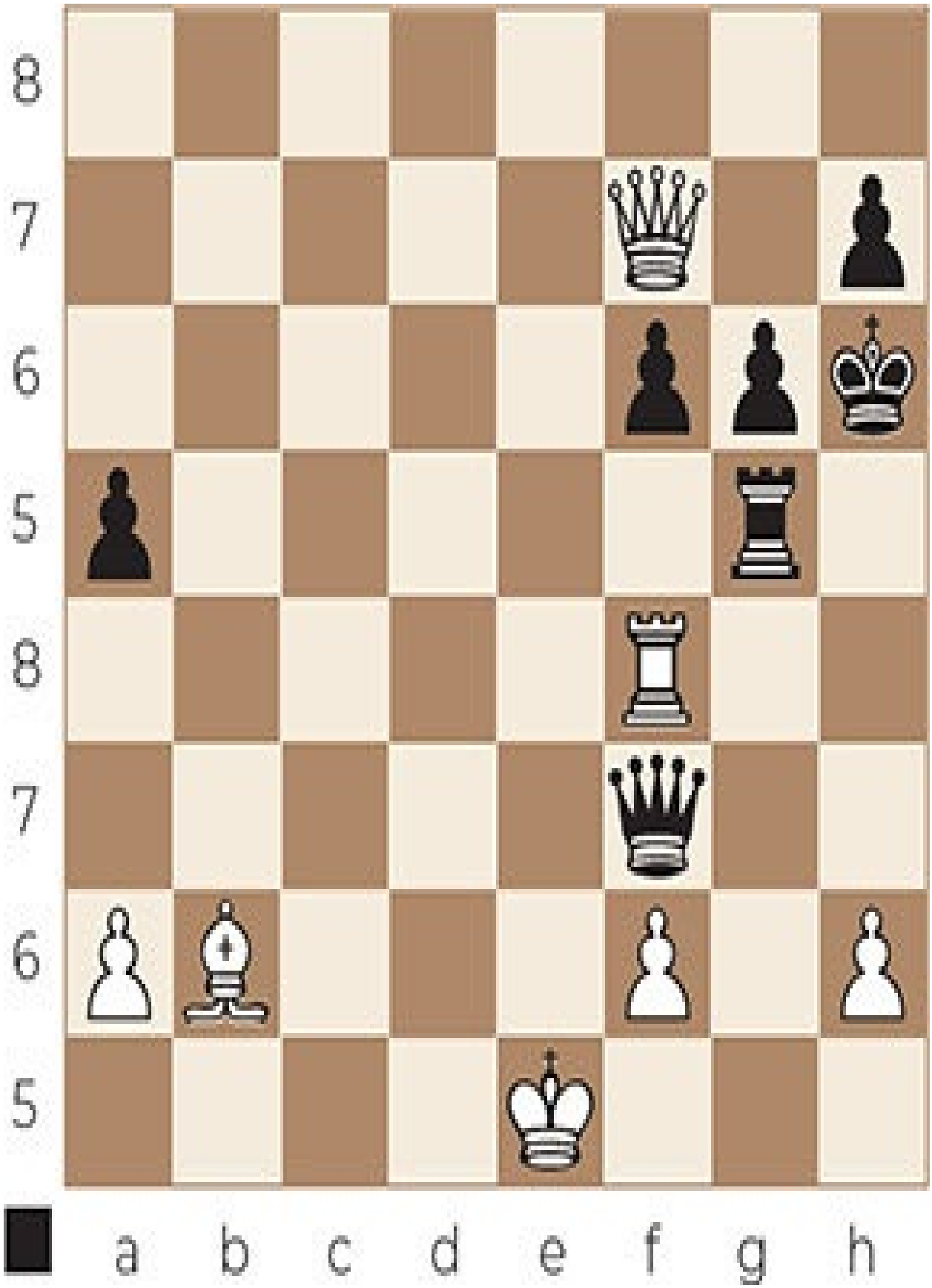
Exercise A 29

Lawnmower mate

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

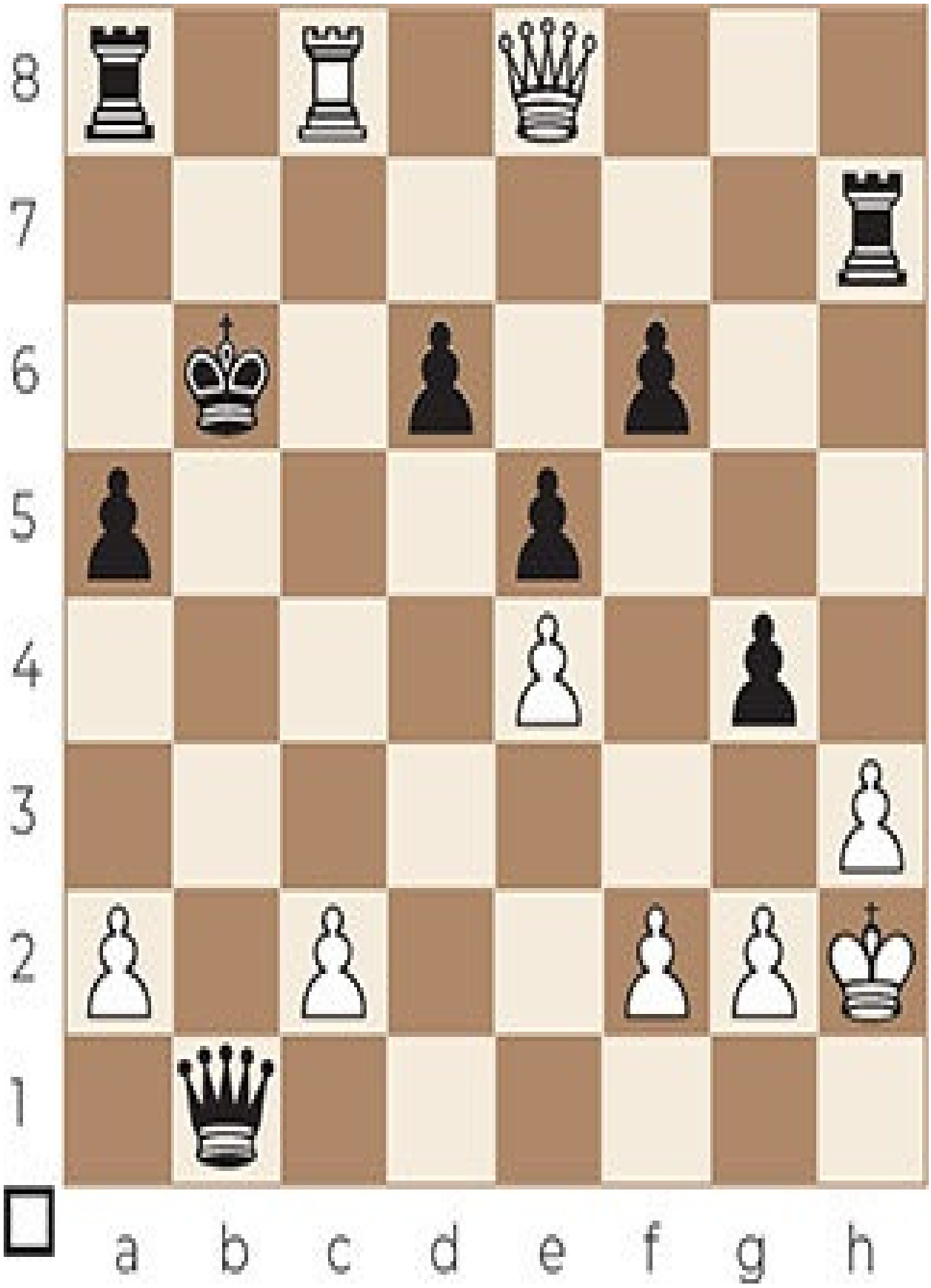
Exercise A 30

Triangle mate


8
7
6
5
8
7
6
5
a b c d e f g h

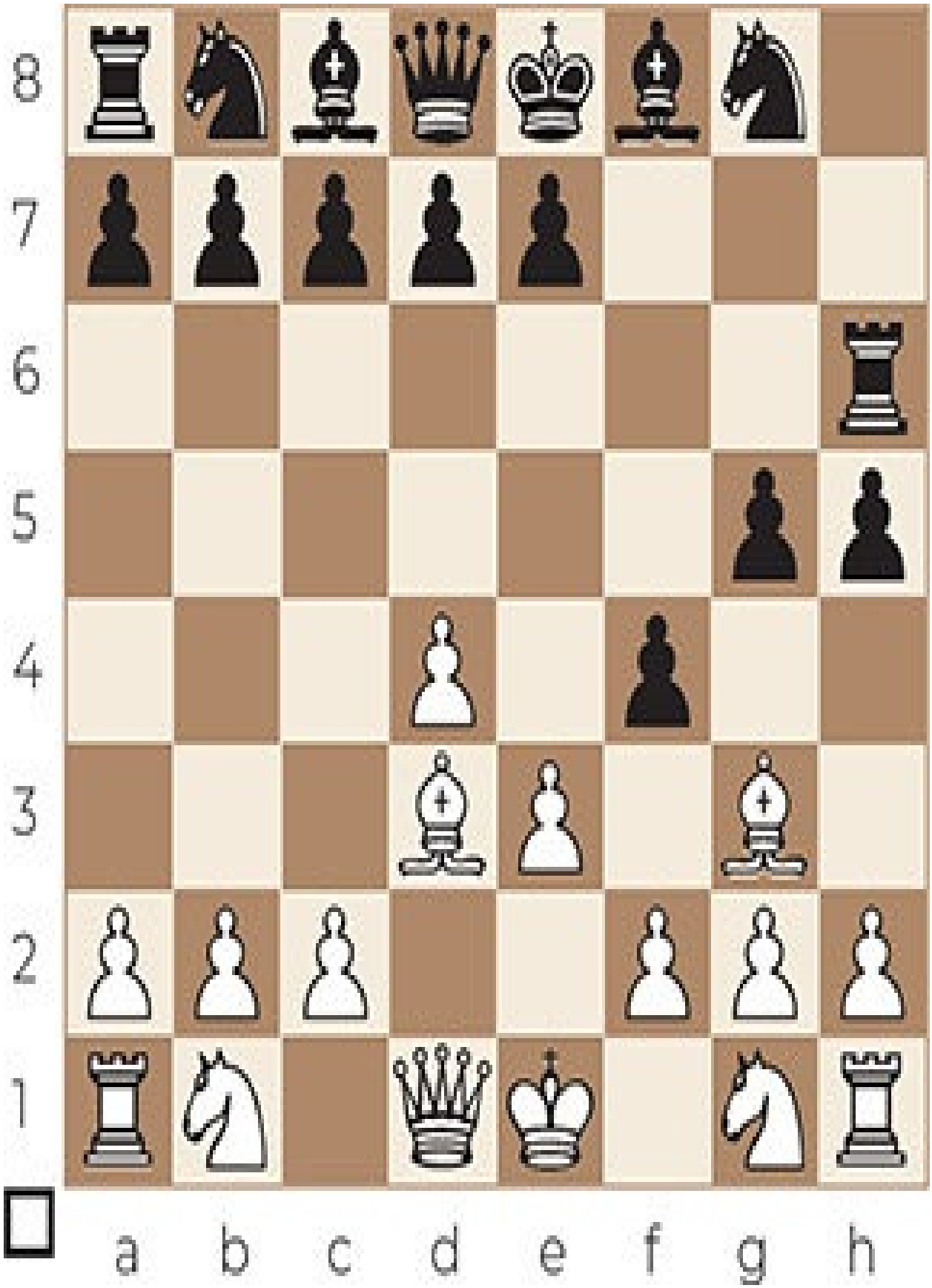
Exercise A 31

Box mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

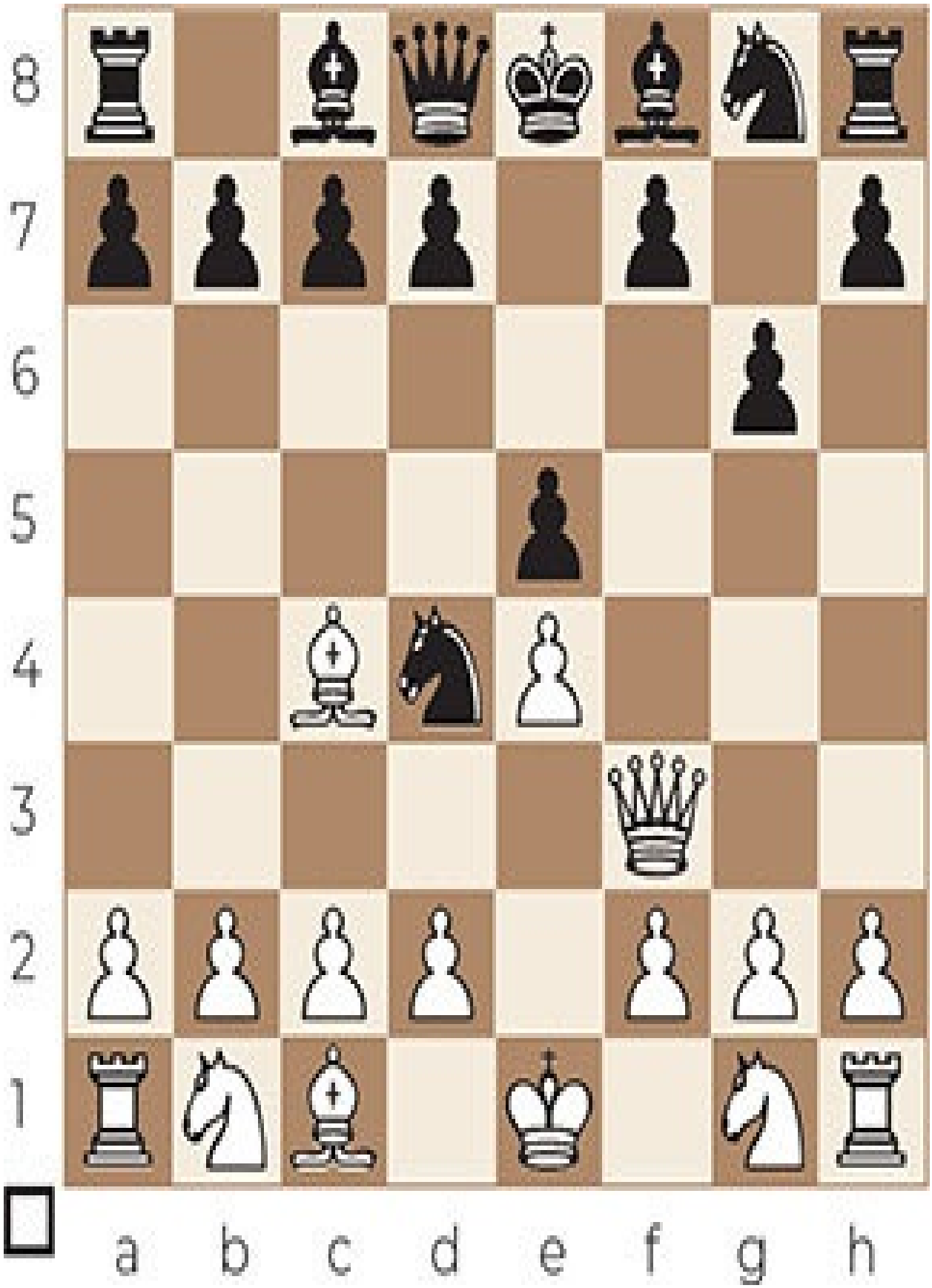
Exercise A 32

Fool’s mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

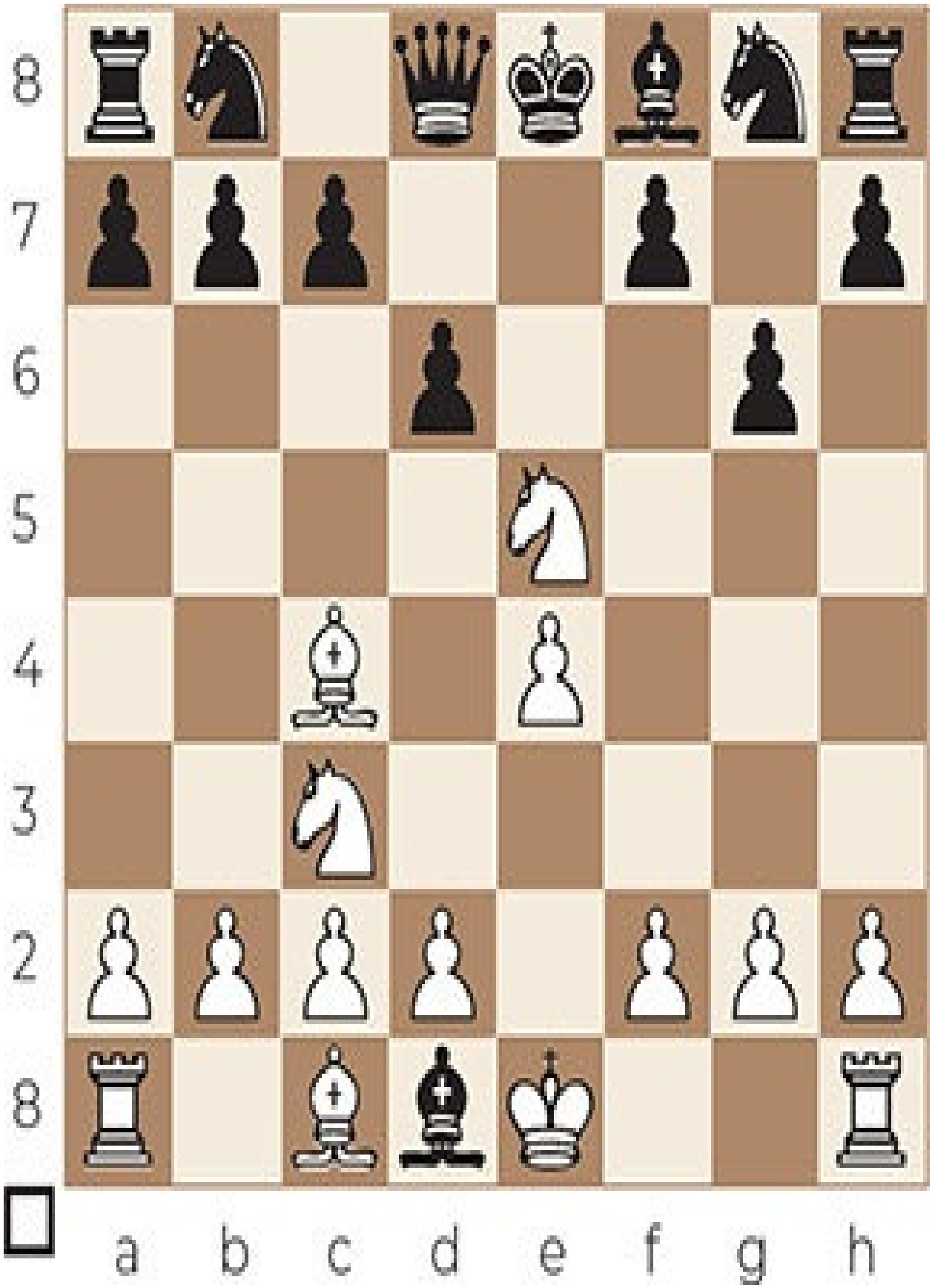
Exercise A 33

Scholar’s mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise A 34

Legal's mate


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
8
a b c d e f g h

CHAPTERS

Checkmate patterns

CHAPTER 1

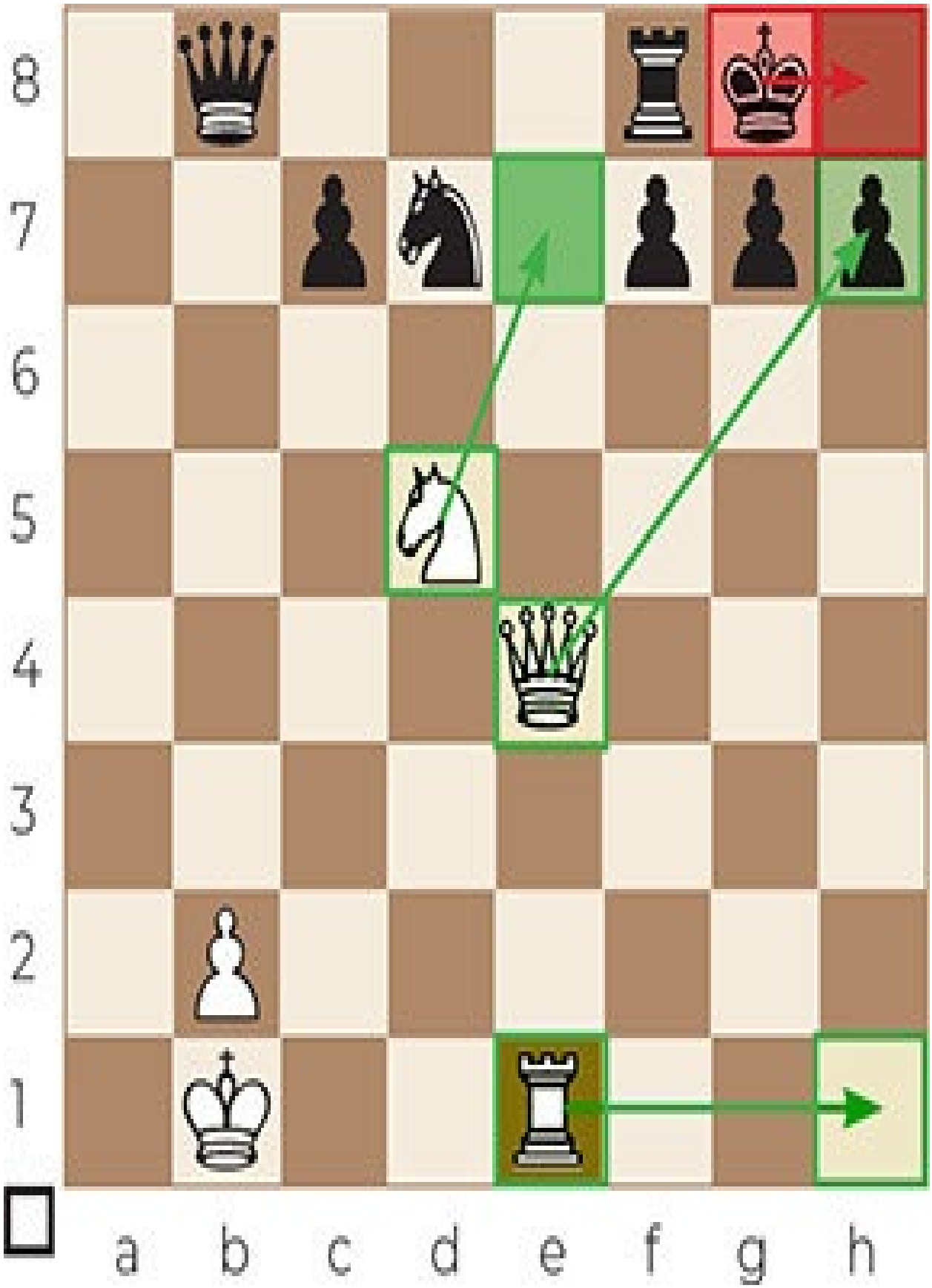
Anastasia’s mate

In Anastasia’s mate, a rook (or less traditionally a queen) delivers checkmate, in most cases on the open h-file or on the back rank. A knight covers two escape squares, and one of the opponent’s own pieces (in most cases a pawn) blocks the escape via the square not covered by the knight.

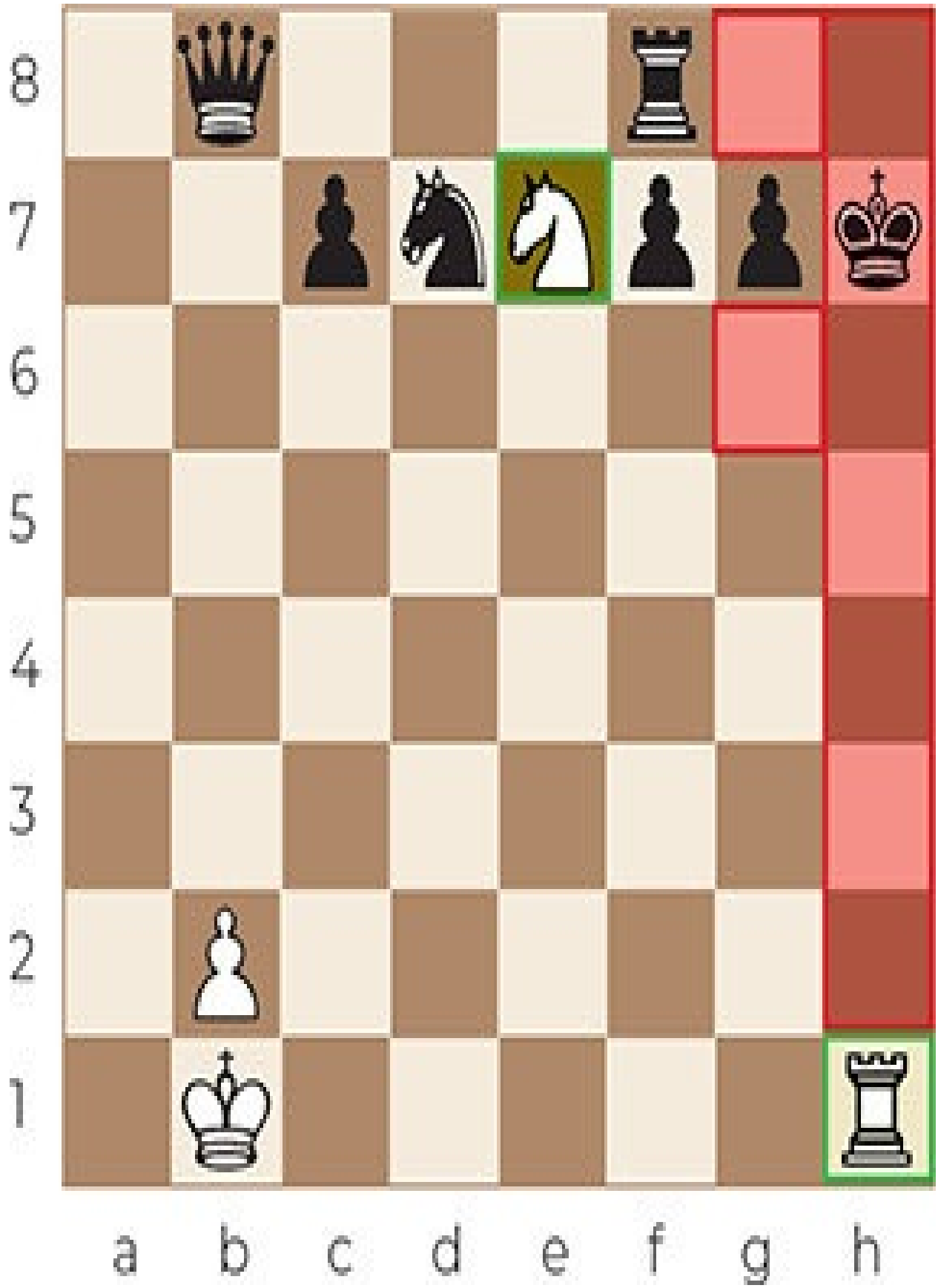
The mate has its name from the novel Anastasia und das Schachspiel (Anastasia and the Game of Chess – 1803) by Johann Jakob Wilhelm Heinse (1746-1803).

Anastasia’s mate 1

Often, Anastasia’s mate is preceded by a check with the knight, followed by a rook or queen sacrifice to open up a file.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

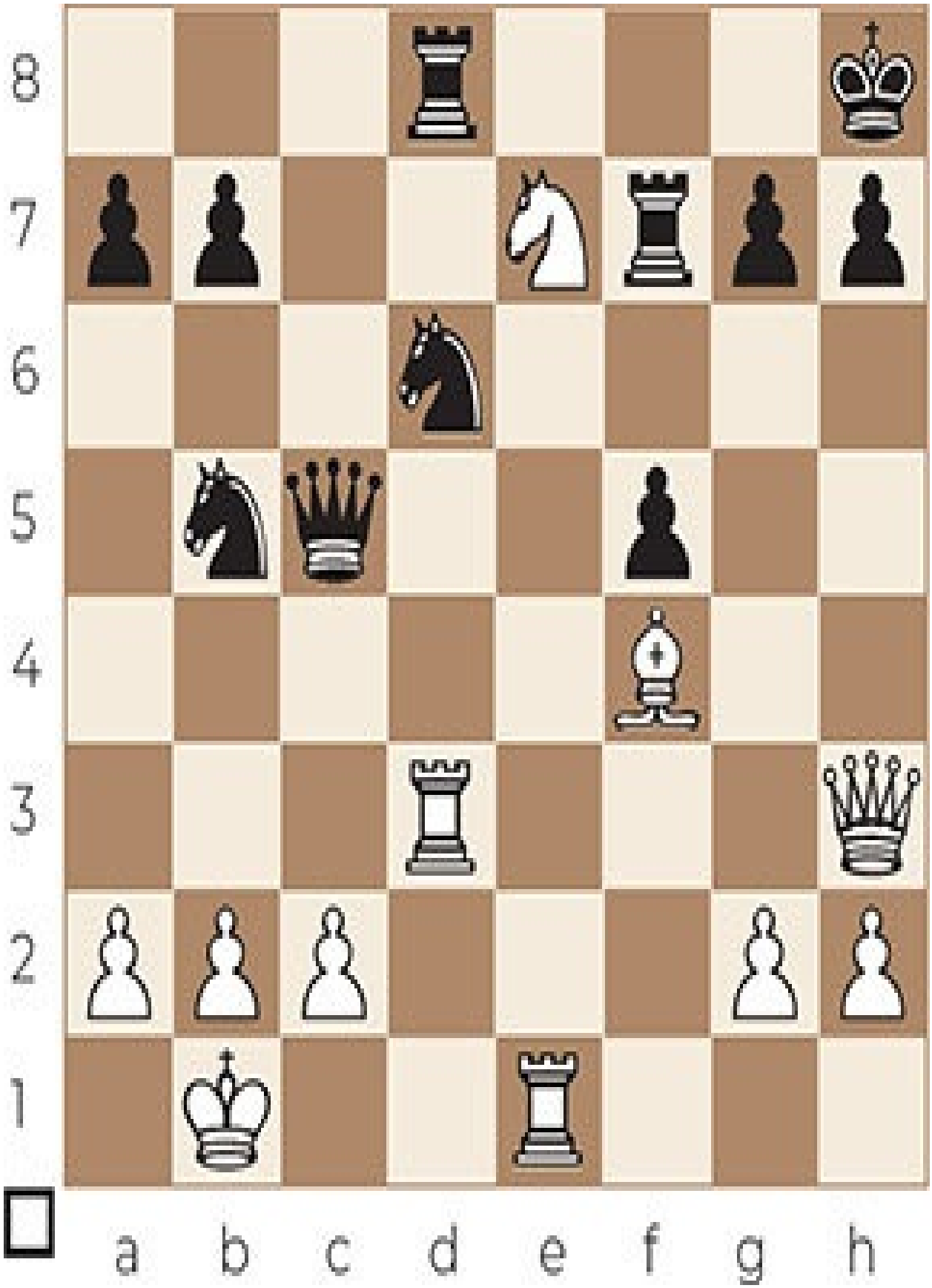
1.♘e7+ ♔h8 2.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 3.♖h1#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 1

Karjakin – Metsalu

2001


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 27.♖h3#

Game 2

Nogueiras – Todorovic

2005

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

19.♘e7+ ♔h8 20.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 21.♕h5#

Game 3

Andruet – Van der Wiel

1985

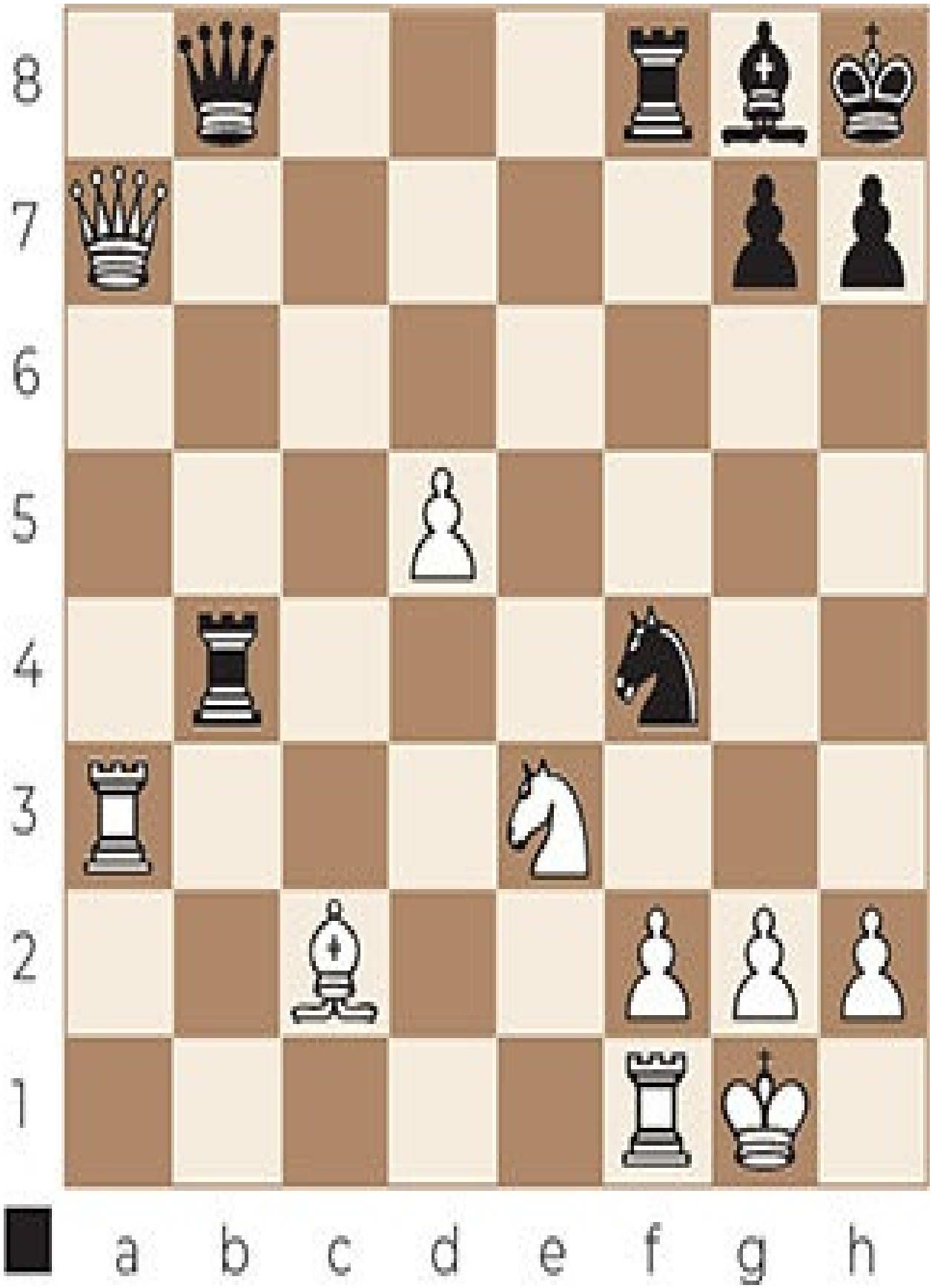
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33...♕xh2+ 34.♔xh2 ♖h6#

Game 4

Gast – Bhend

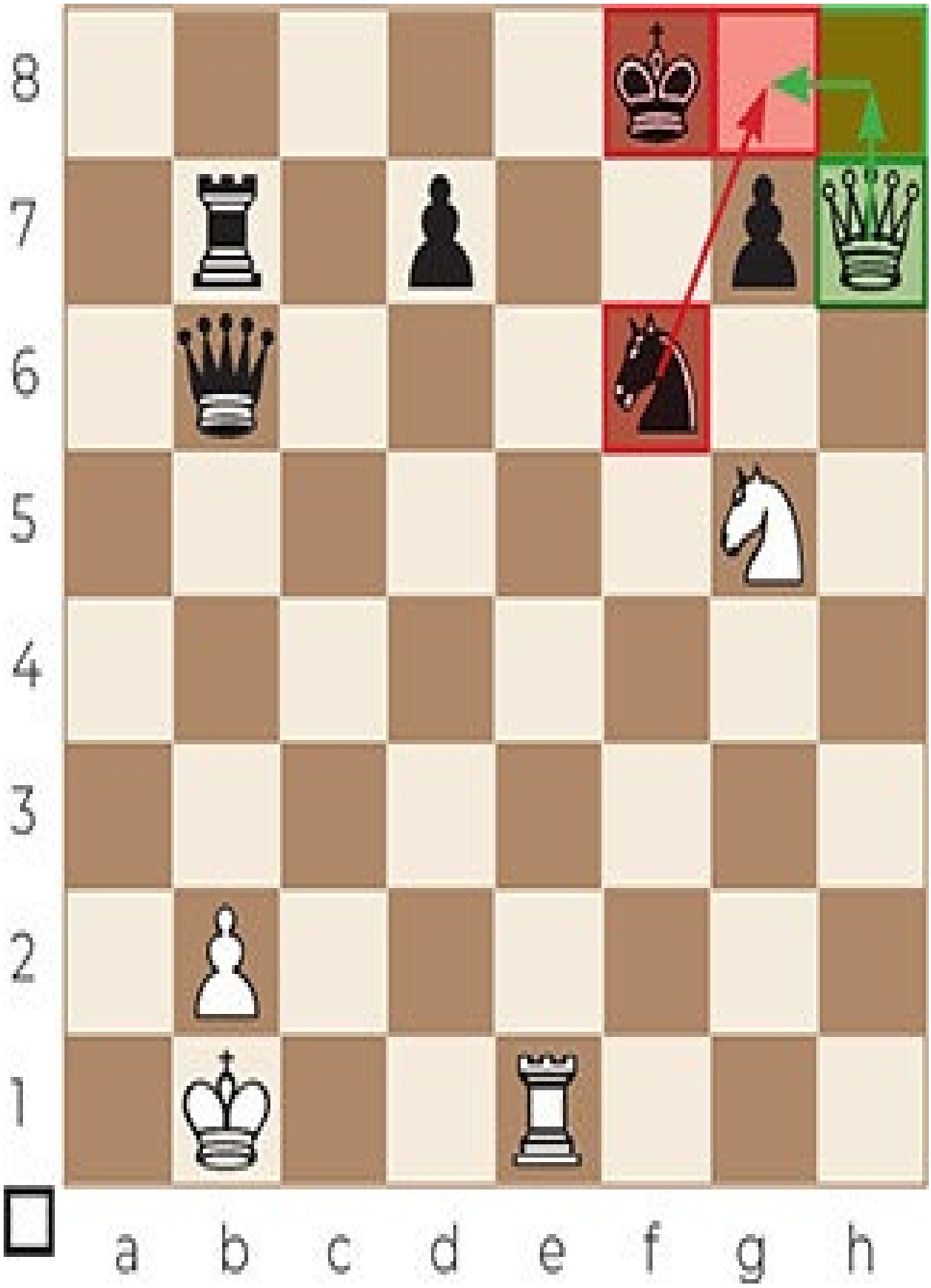
1987


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

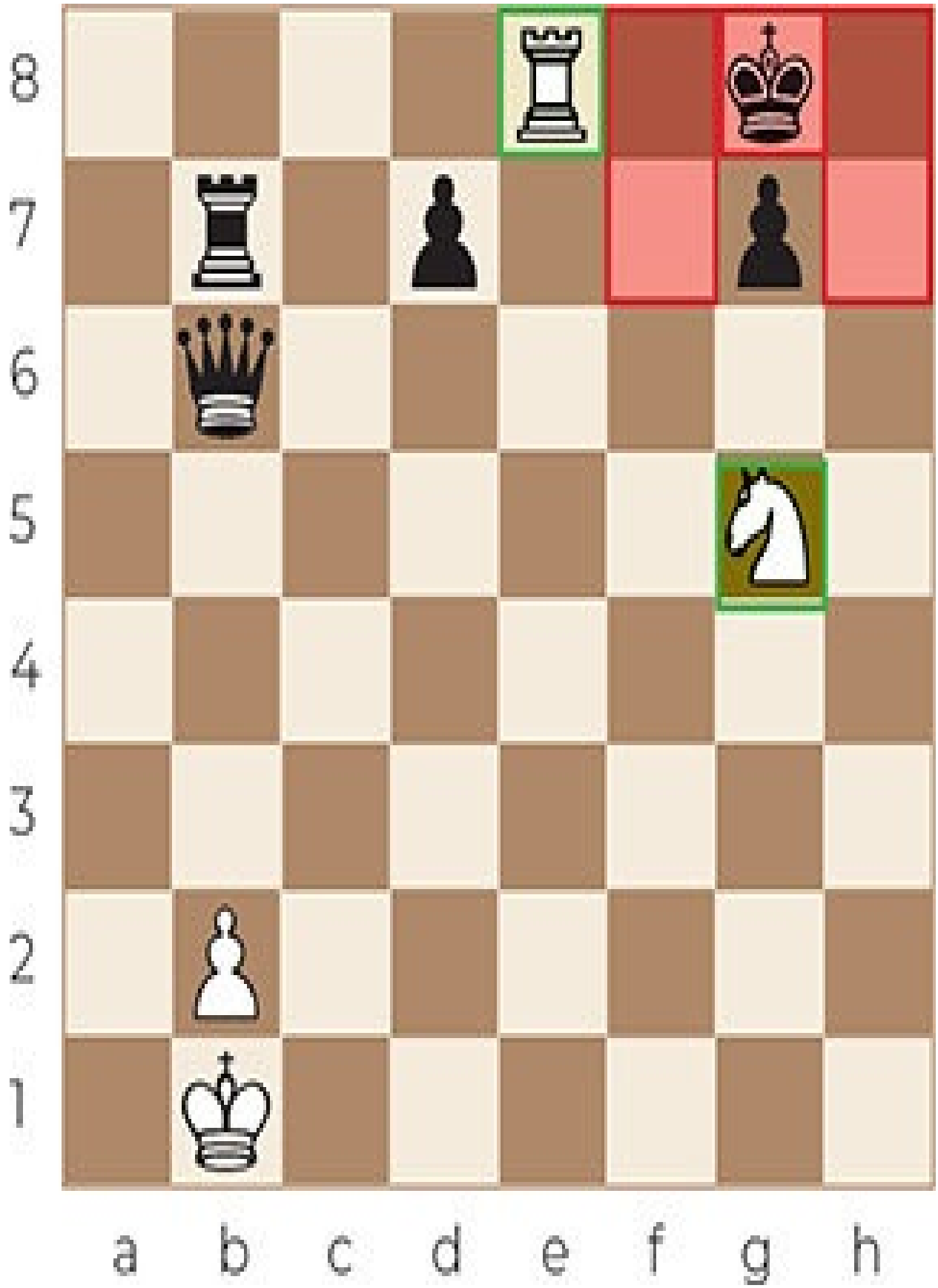
31...♘e2+ 32.♔h1 ♕xh2+ 33.♔xh2 ♖h4#

Anastasia’s mate 2

Sometimes, Anastasia’s mate is preceded by a queen or rook sacrifice to lure the king to a certain square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕h8+ ♘g8 2.♕xg8+ ♔xg8 3.♖e8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 5

Vidmar – Euwe

1929

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

34.♖e8+ ♗f8

34...♔h7 loses the rook on c2 after 35.♕d3+.

35.♖xf8+ ♔xf8

If Black plays 35...♔g7 or 35...♔h7, 36.♖xf7+ is winning for White.

36.♘f5+ ♔g8 37.♕f8+ ♔xf8

37...♔h7 38.♕g7#.

38.♖d8#

Game 6

Kavalek – Khodos

1965

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

22.♖d8+ ♗xd8

After 22...♕xd8, luring away the queen from protecting the e6-square, White gives checkmate with 23.♕e6+ ♔f8 24.♕f7#.

23.♕xh8+ ♔xh8 24.♖f8#

Game 7

Anderssen – Zukertort

1865

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

36.♖a8+ ♔xa8 37.♘d7 ♖e2 38.♖a1+ ♖a2 39.♖xa2#

Game 8

Gheorghiu – Liu Wenzhe

1982

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
8
a b c d e f g h

24...♕g1+ 25.♔xg1 ♖e1#

CHAPTER 2

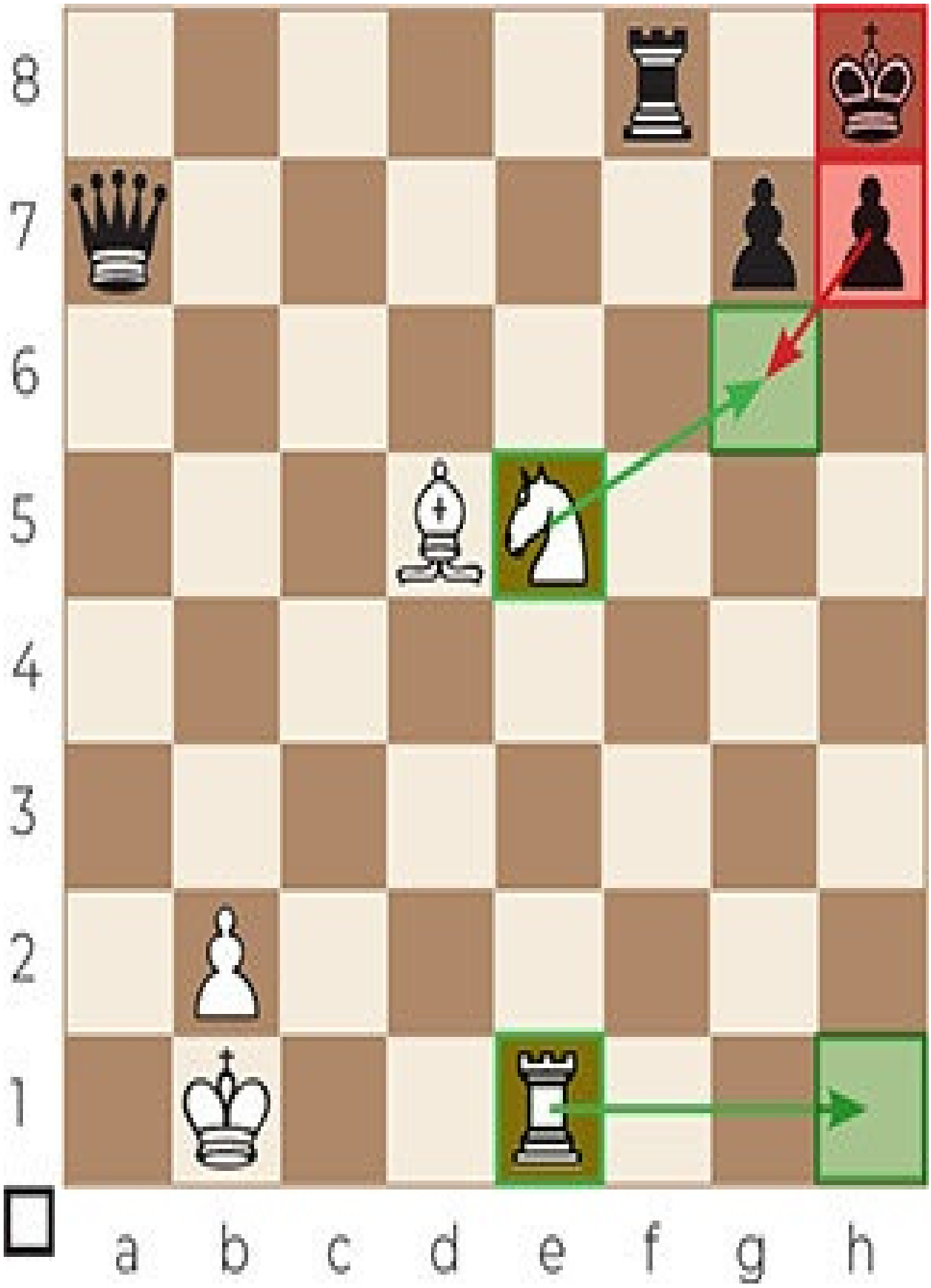
Greco’s mate

In Greco’s mate, a rook or queen delivers checkmate, in most cases on the open h-file. A bishop covers one or two escape squares, and one of the opponent’s own pieces (in most cases a pawn) blocks the escape via the square(s) not covered by the bishop.

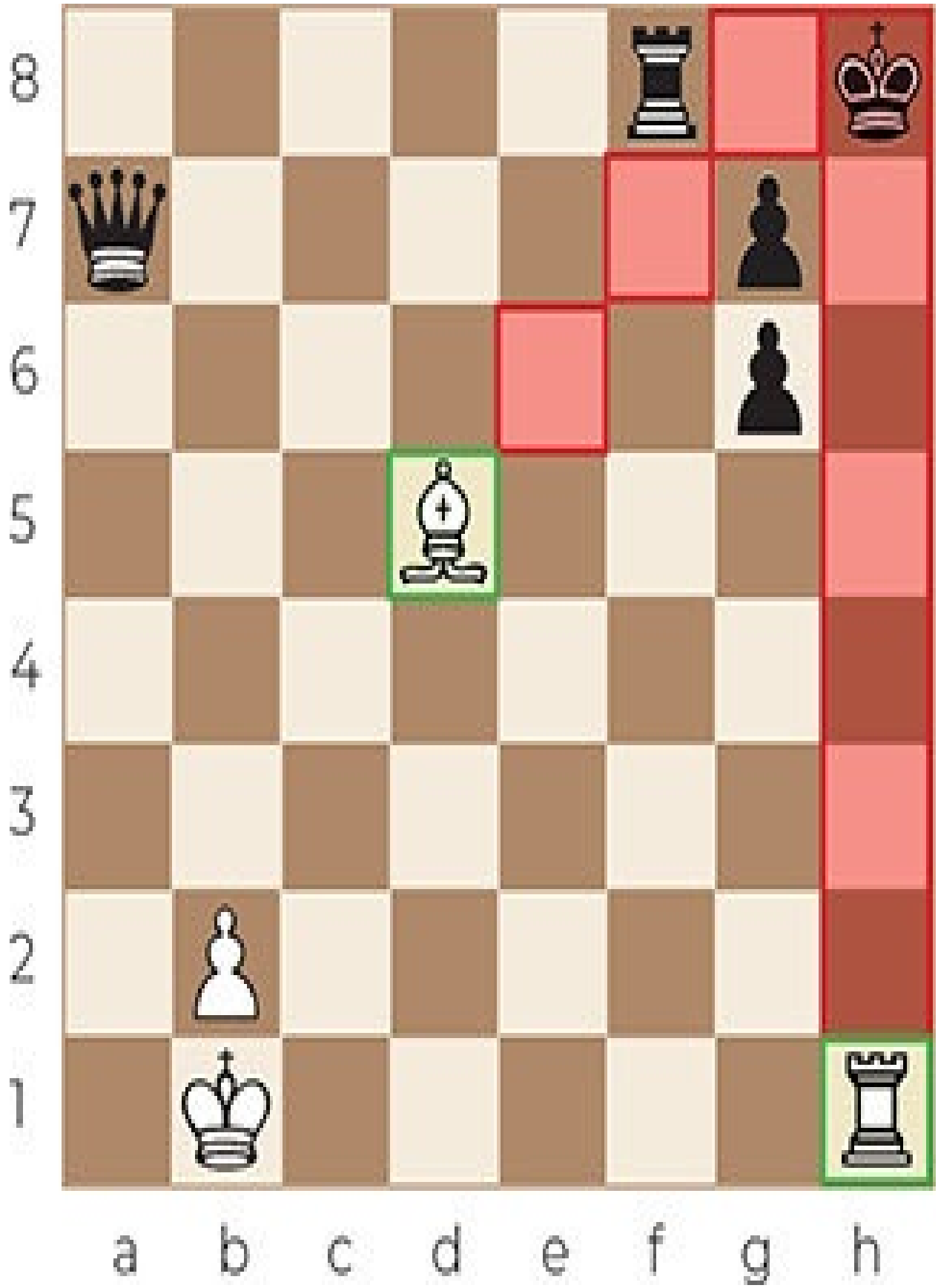
The mate is named after the famous Italian chess player Gioacchino Greco (1600-1634).

Greco’s mate 1

Often, Greco’s mate is preceded by a check/sacrifice with the knight to open up the h-file.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

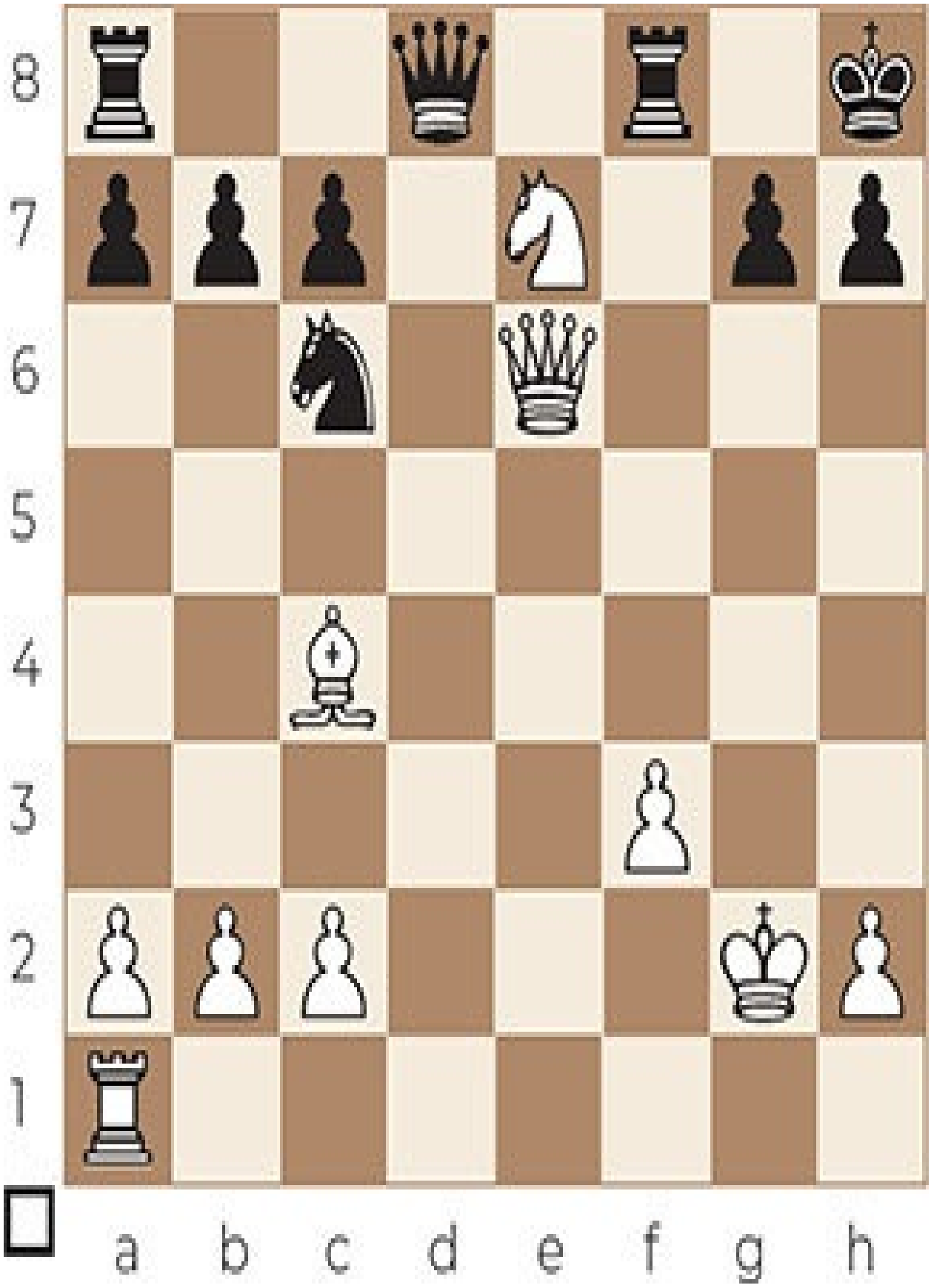
1.♘g6+ hxg6 2.♖h1#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 9

Weber – Longenecker

1941

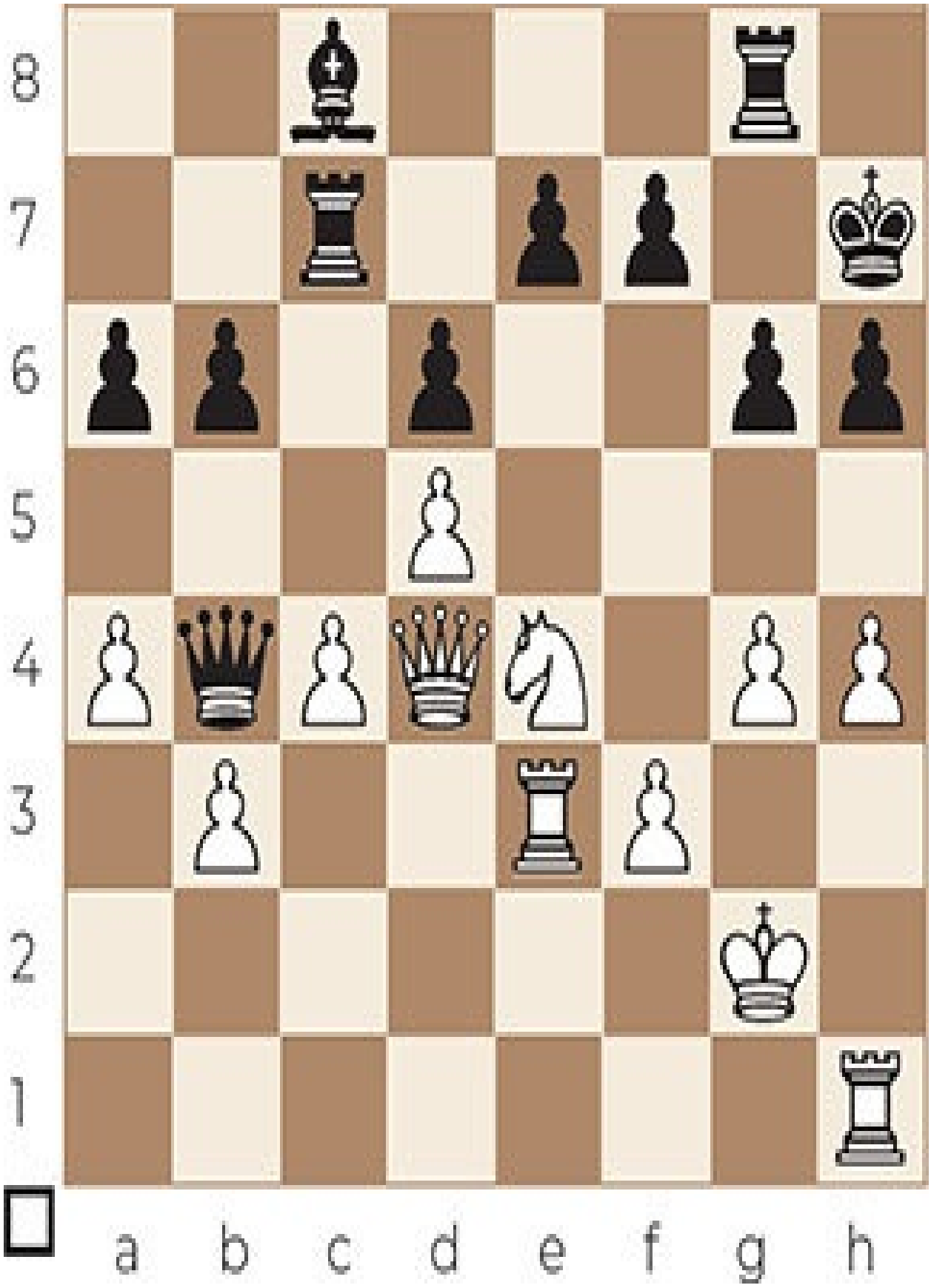

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

19.♘g6+ hxg6 20.♕h3+ ♕h4 21.♕xh4#

Game 10

Delgado Crespo – Daulyte

2006


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

36.♘g5+ hxg5 37.hxg5#

Game 11

Olsson – Mossborn

1955

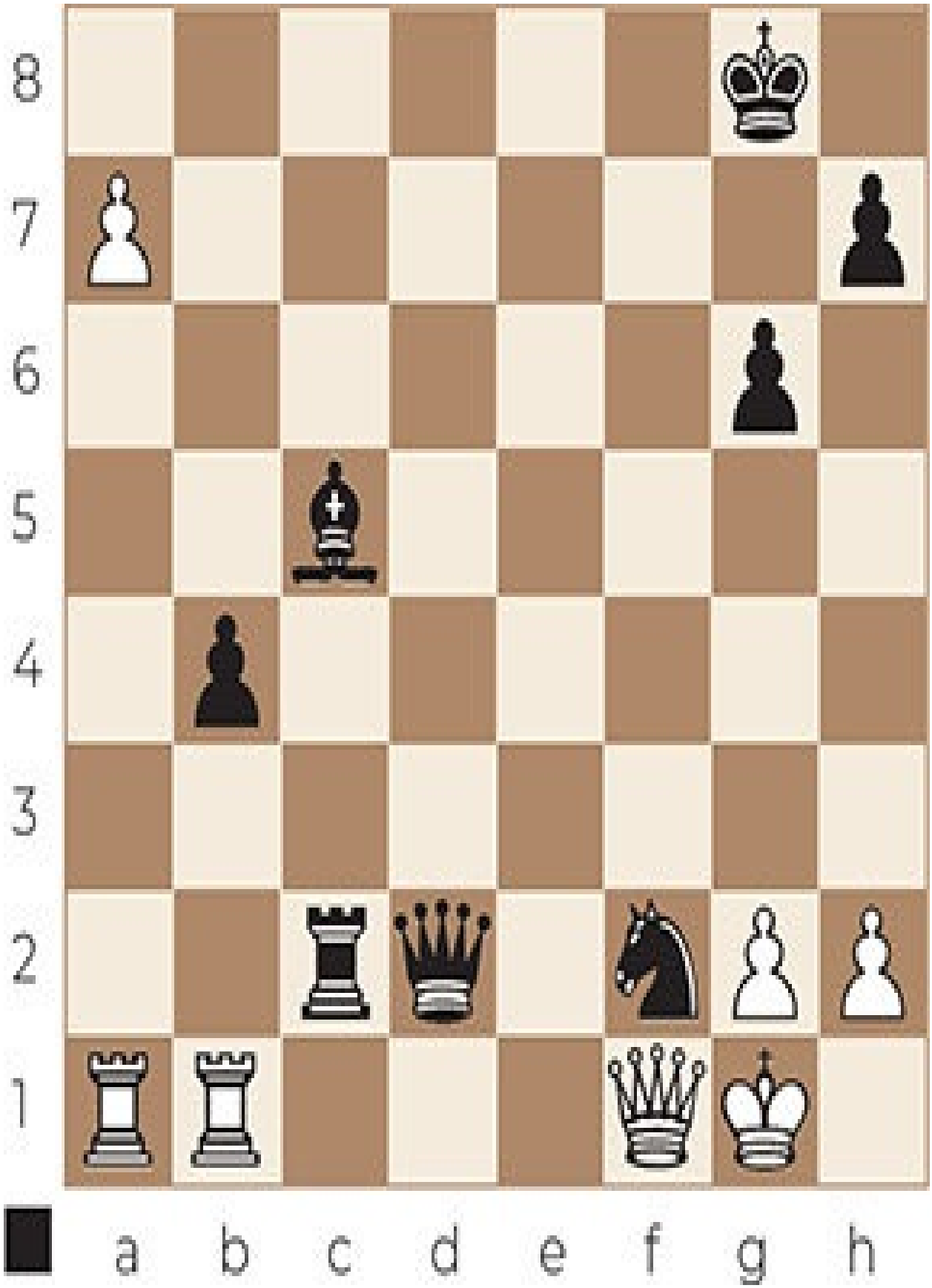
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

19.♘e7+ ♔h8 20.♘g6+ hxg6 21.♖h3#

Game 12

Krivec – Markovic

2000


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

37...♘e4+ 38.♔h1

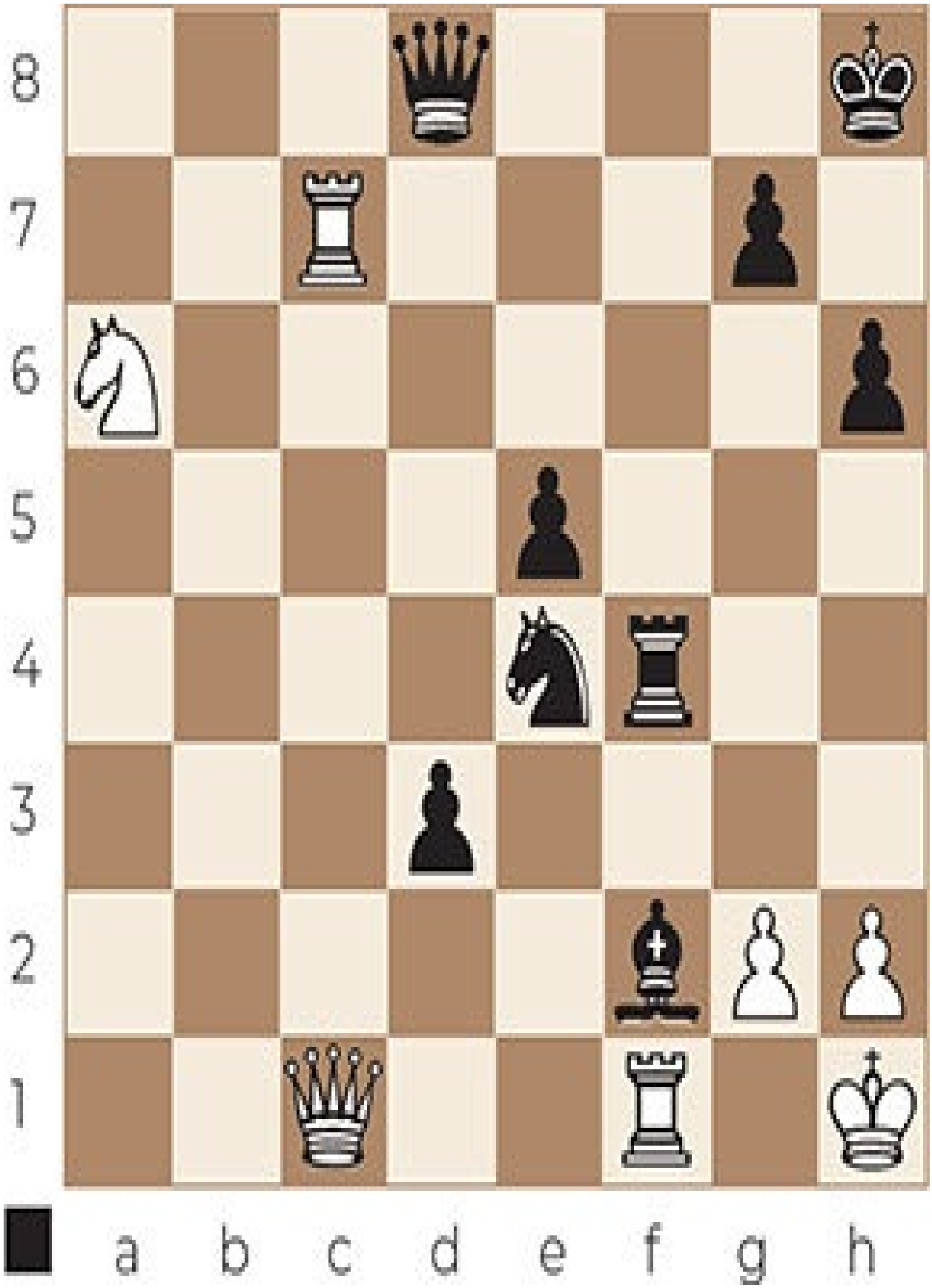
38.♕f2 ♕xf2+ 39.♔h1 ♕xg2#.

38...♘g3+ 39.hxg3 ♕h6#

Game 13

Nijboer – Adams

1998


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

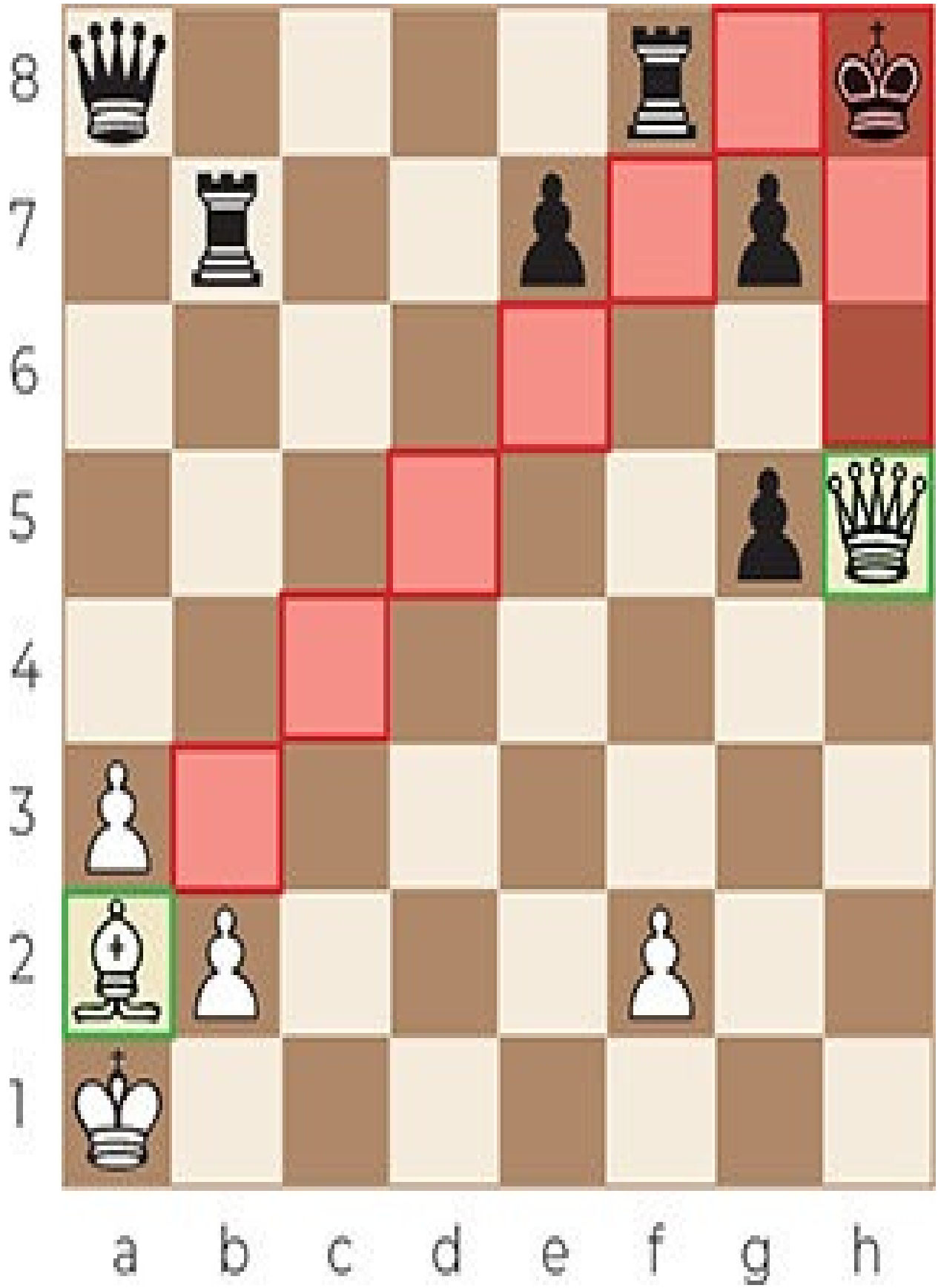
38...♘g3+ 39.hxg3 ♖h4+ 40.gxh4 ♕xh4#

Greco’s mate 2

Sometimes, while a knight (g-file) is being attacked by a pawn (h-file), the queen maneuvers around the knight (from the h-file to the g-file). If the knight is not taken, the queen will deliver checkmate on the next move, supported by the knight. If the knight is taken, Greco’s mate will be the result.

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕g6 hxg5 2.♕h5#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 14

David – Roos

1995

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33.♕g6 hxg5

After 33...♗xf2+ 34.♔g2 Black has only delayed the checkmate.

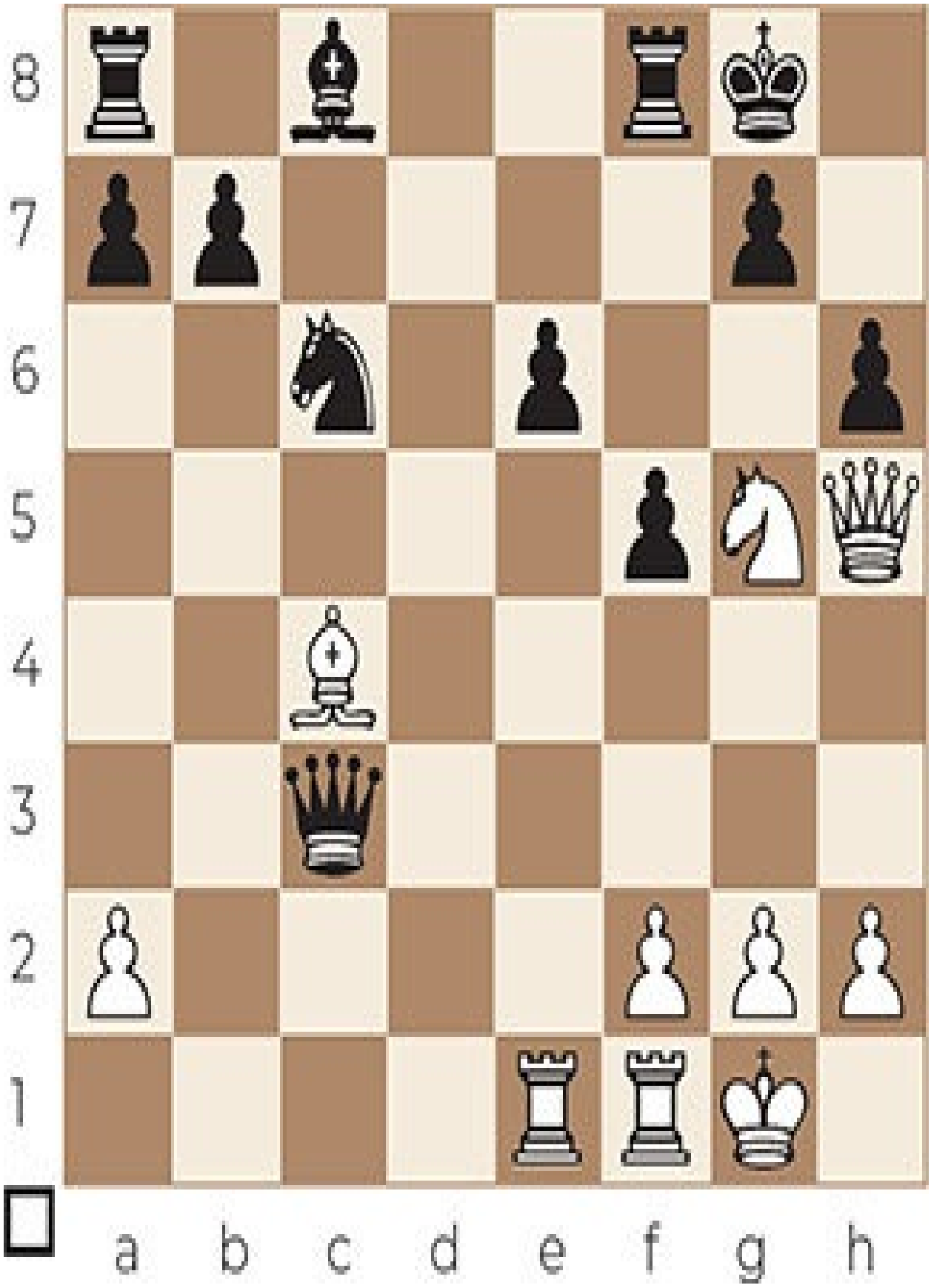
And if Black plays 33...♘xe6 instead, 34.♕h7# will end the game.

34.♕h5#

Game 15

Lematschko – Merdinian

1976


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

18.♖xe6 ♗xe6

18...♕xc4 and Black can’t stop the checkmate after 19.♖xh6.

18...♕f6 19.♖xf6+ ♗e6 20.♖xh6 gxh6 21.♕g6+ ♔h8 22.♕h7#.

18...hxg5 loses to 19.♖h6+ ♕xc4 20.♖h8#.

18...♕h3 19.♖xh6+ ♖f7 20.♕xf7#.

19.♗xe6+ ♔h8

19...♖f7 20.♕xf7+ ♔h8 21.♕g6 hxg5 22.♕h5#.

20.♕g6 hxg5 21.♕h5#

Game 16

Werner – Thorsteinsson

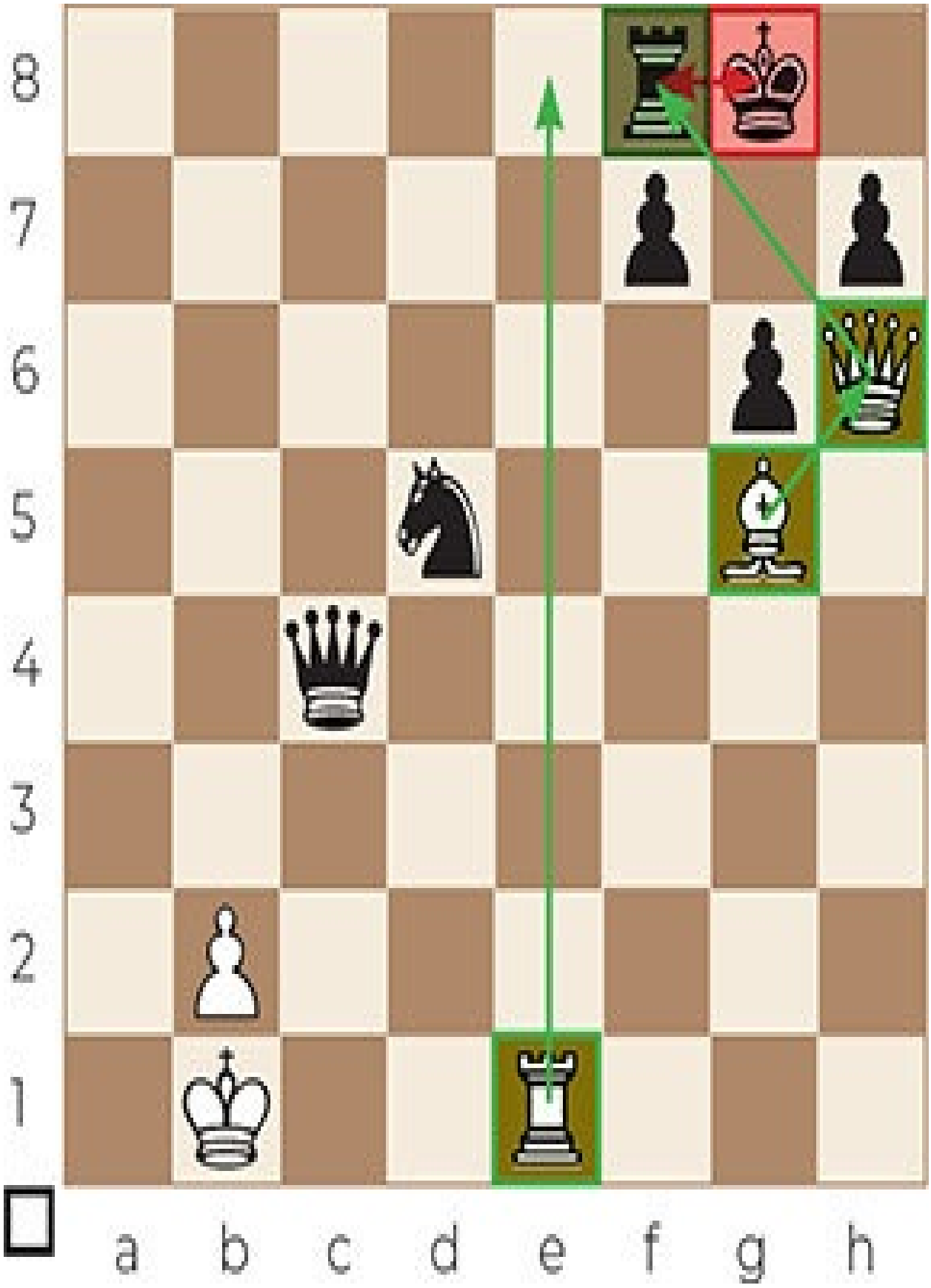
1996

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

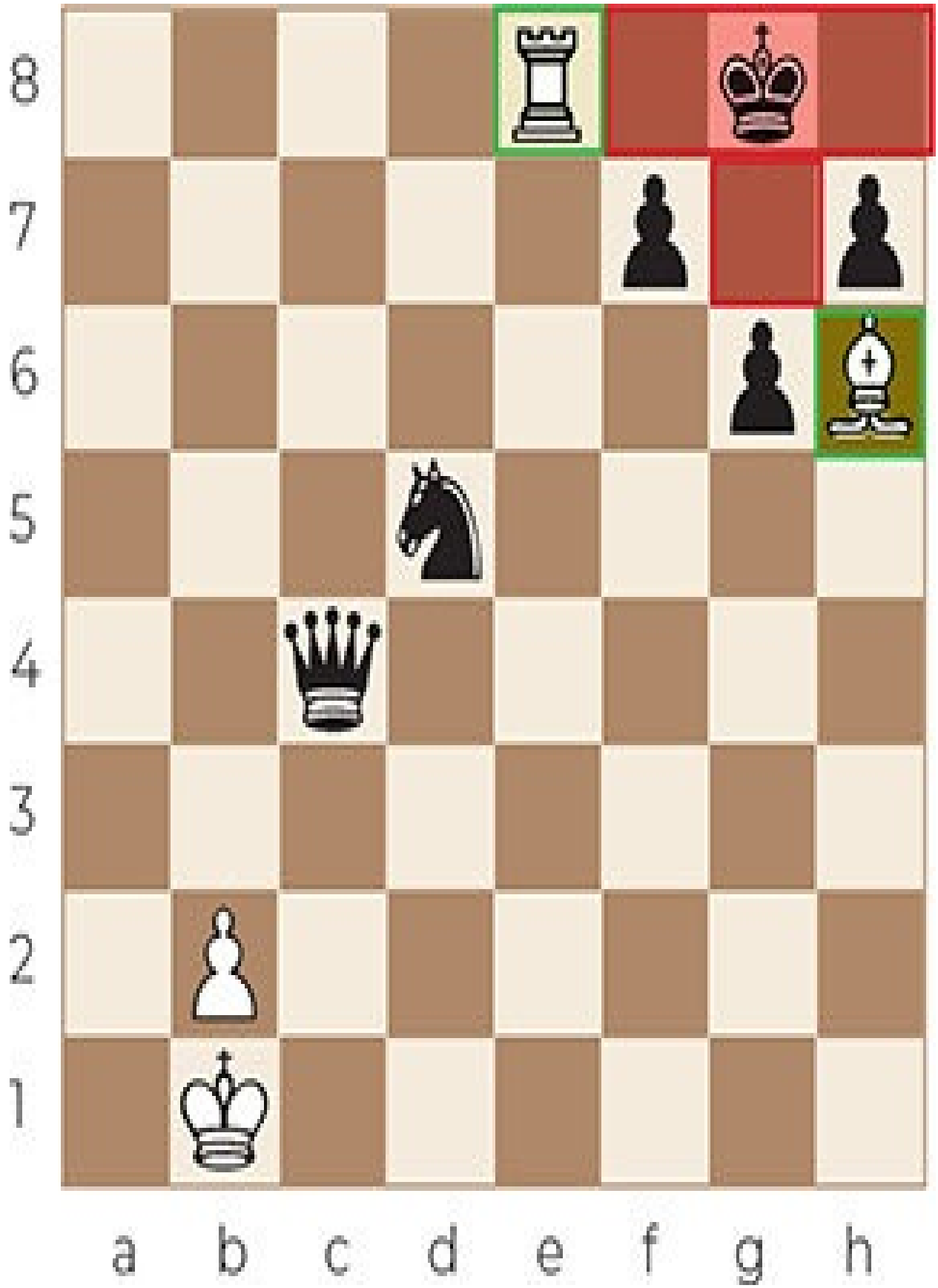
15...♕h4 16.h3 ♕g3 17.hxg4 ♕h4#

Greco’s mate 3

In some cases, the bishop plays a more active role, often after a queen sacrifice. In the cases where a rook delivers checkmate on a rank instead of a file (like in this example), it isn’t a real Greco’s mate. But it is a similar pattern that is good to remember.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

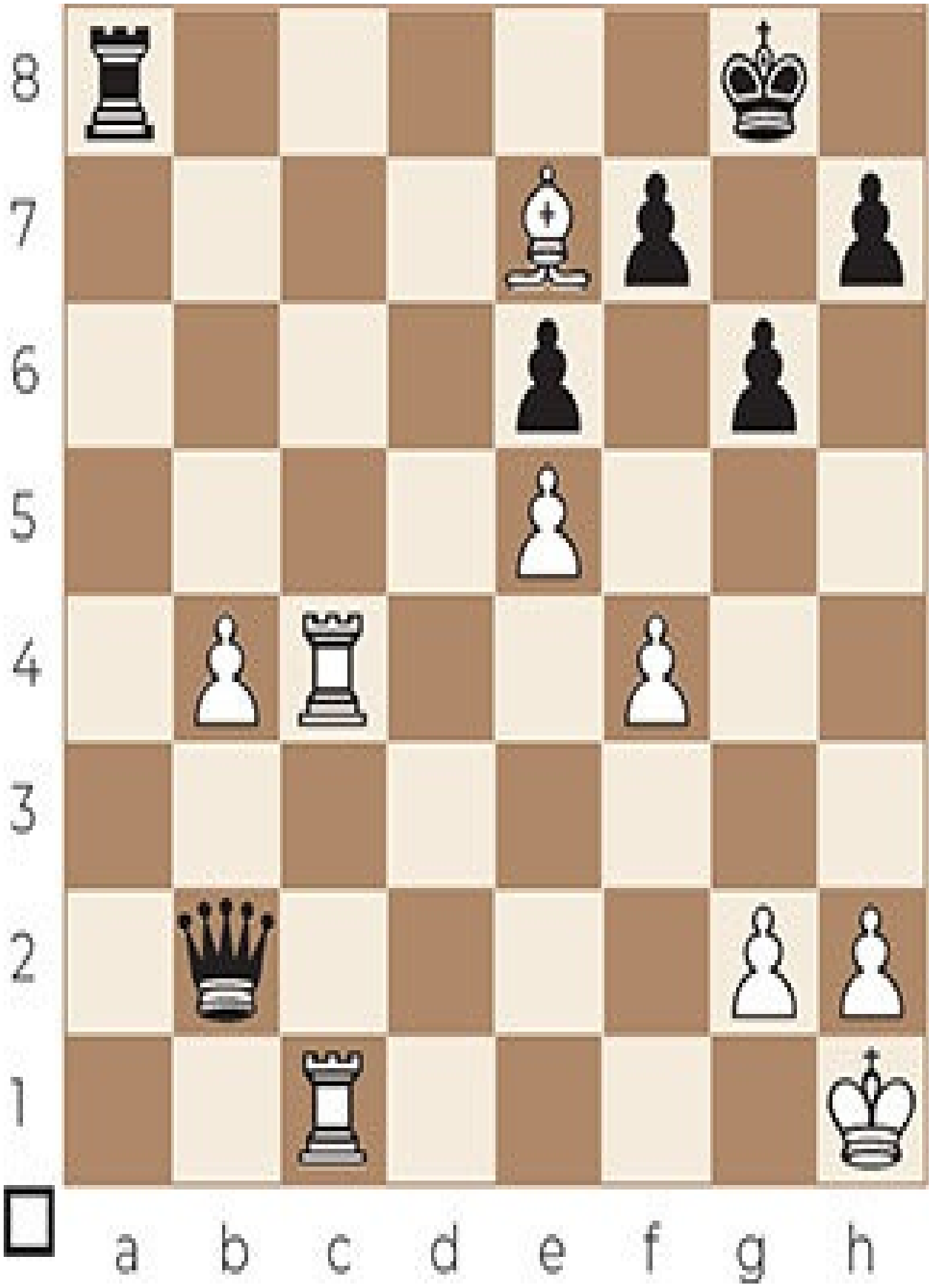
1.♕xf8+ ♔xf8 2.♗h6+ ♔g8 3.♖e8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 17

Dovliatov – Magalhaes

2000


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

36.♖c8+ ♖xc8

36...♔g7 doesn’t make any difference: 37.♗f8+ ♔g8 38.♗h6+ ♖xc8 39.♖xc8# (similar to Greco’s mate).

After 36...♔g7, don’t play 37.♖xa8, because you will lose the game: 37...♕xc1# (Back rank mate).

37.♖xc8+ ♔g7 38.♗f8+ ♔g8 39.♗h6#

Game 18

Stiri – Jonoska

1999

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

17.♕xf8+ ♔xf8 18.♗h6+ ♔g8 19.♖e8#

Game 19

Santasiere – Adams

1926

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

16.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 17.♖h5+ ♔g7 18.♗h6+ ♔h8 19.♗f8#

Game 20

Dejkalo – Jasnikowski

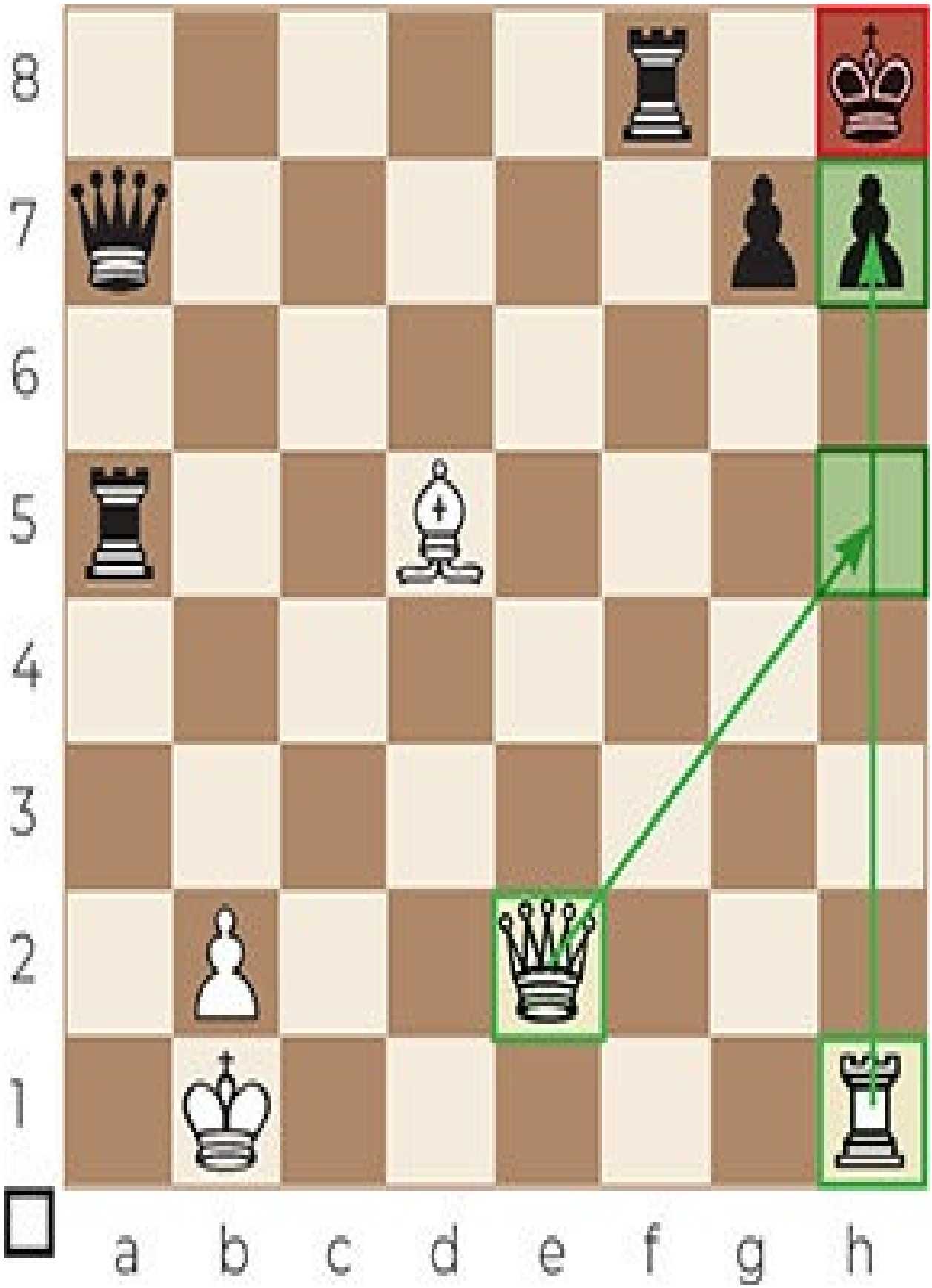
1990

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

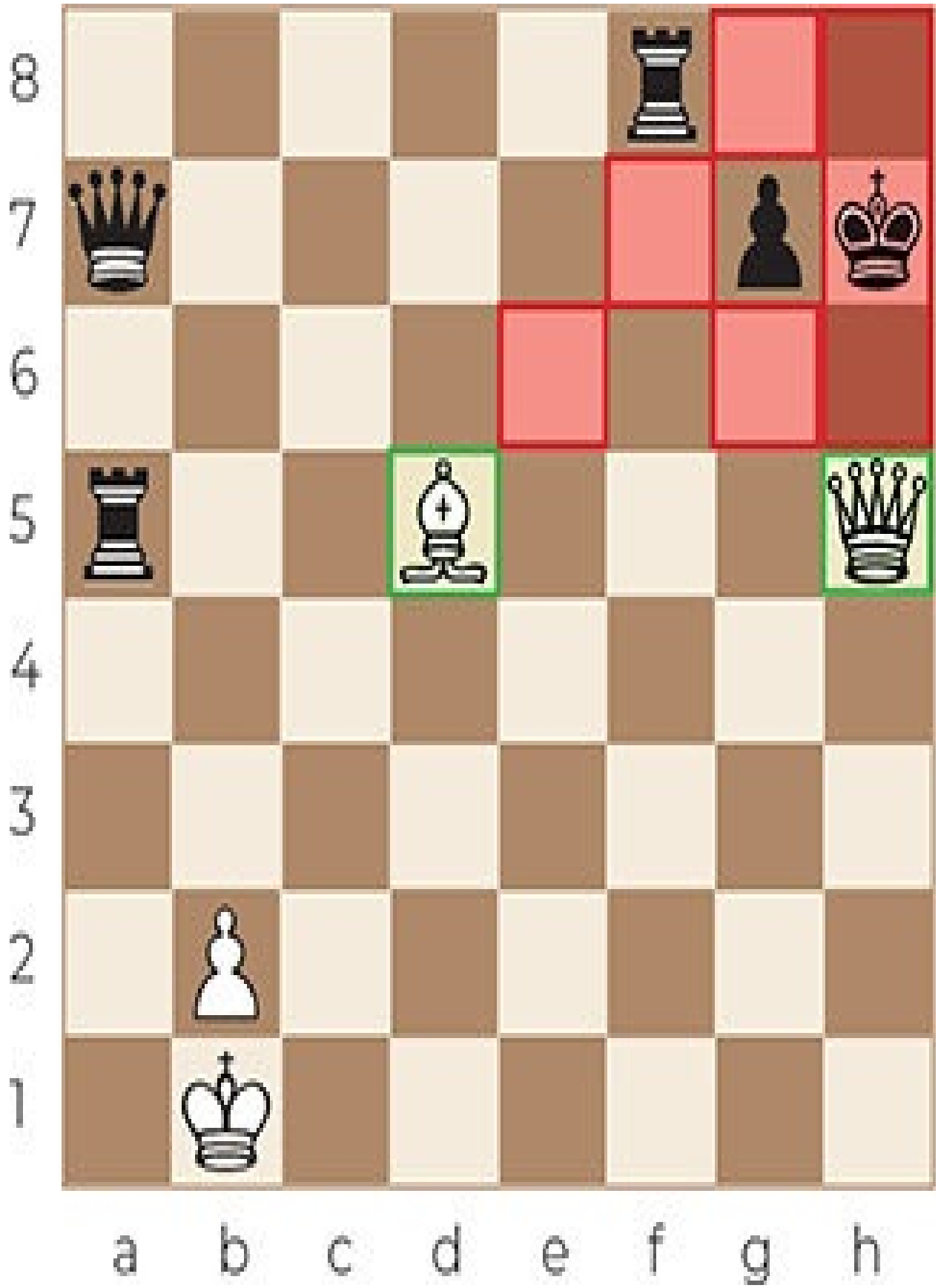
23...♕e1+ 24.♗f1 ♕xf1+ 25.♔xf1 ♗h3+ 26.♔g1 ♖e1#

Greco’s mate 4

Often, Greco’s mate is preceded by a check/sacrifice with a queen or rook on h2 or h7, to open up the h-file.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 2.♕h5#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 21

Antoli Royo – Lopez Pereyra

2004

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

21...♕xh2+ 22.♔xh2 ♖h5#

Game 22

Karpov – Shirov

2003

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

29...♖xh2+ 30.♔xh2 ♕h4#

Game 23

Köpke – Sandhu

2003

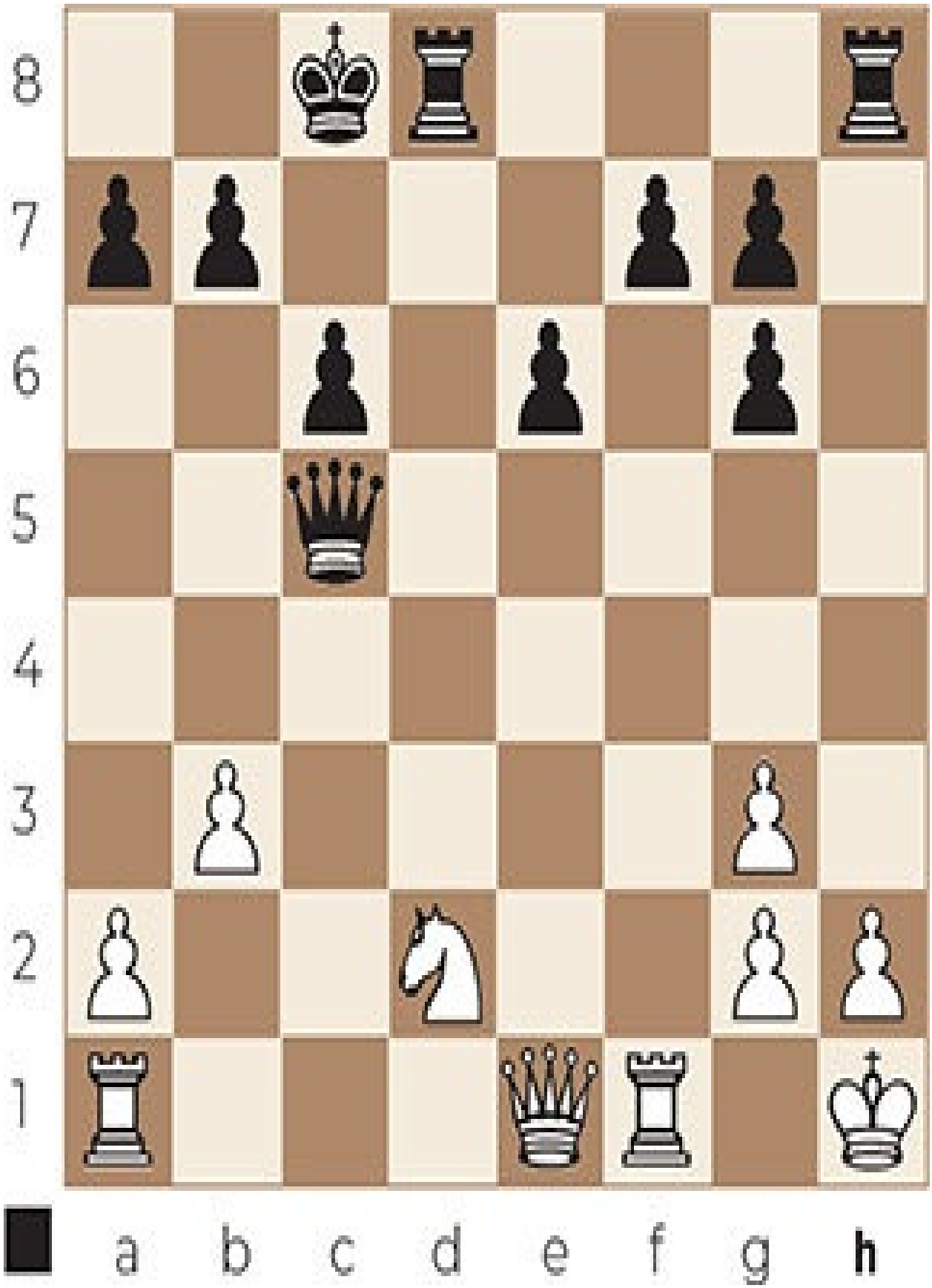
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

24...♕xa2+ 25.♔xa2 ♖a4#

Game 24

Mousset-Evtouchenko – Plantet

2002


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

20...♖xh2+ 21.♔xh2 ♖h8#

CHAPTER 3

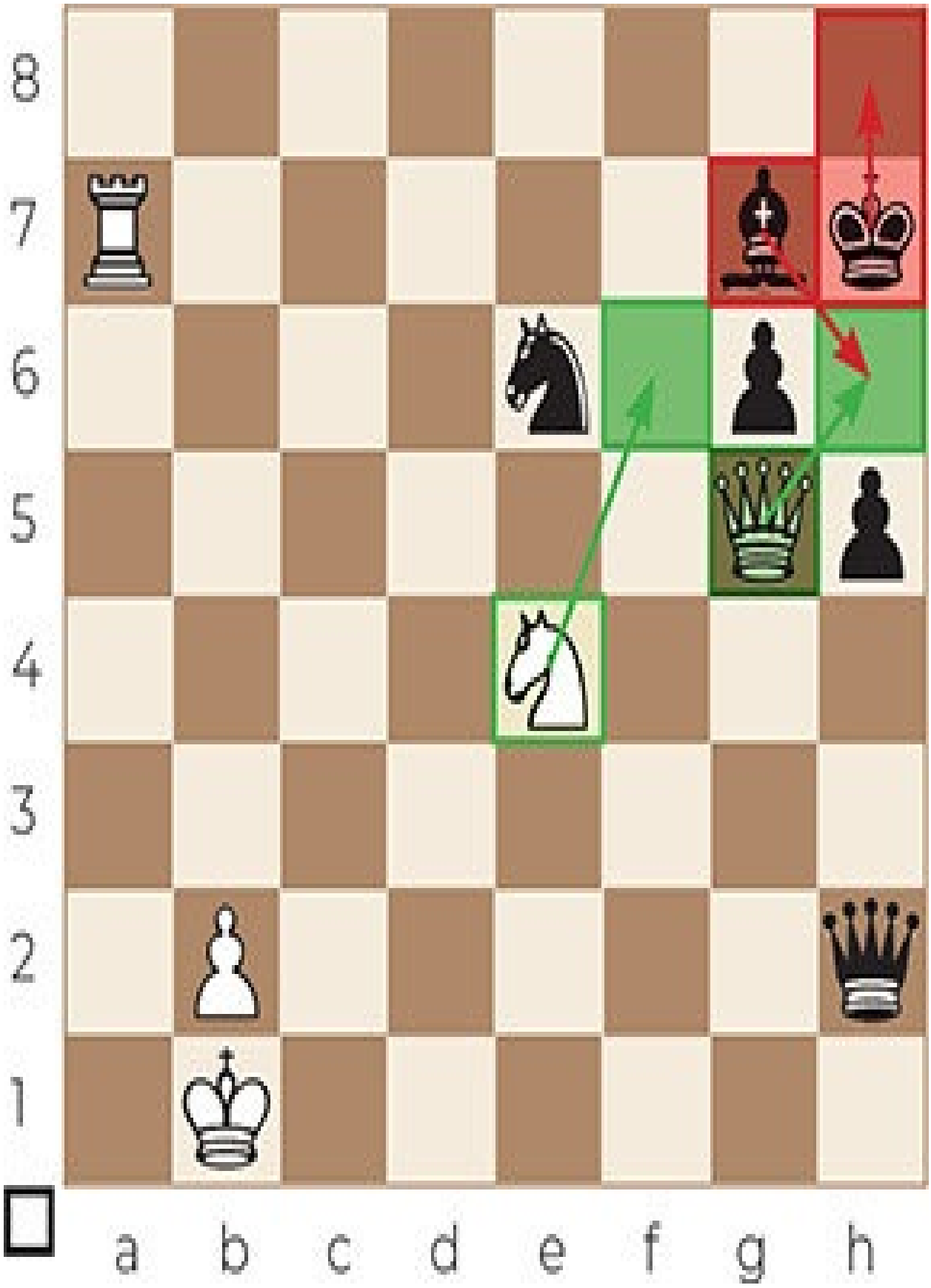
Arabian mate

In the Arabian mate, a rook delivers checkmate to the king in the corner, while a knight protects the rook and covers an escape square of the king. The knight has to be 2 squares diagonally away from the king.

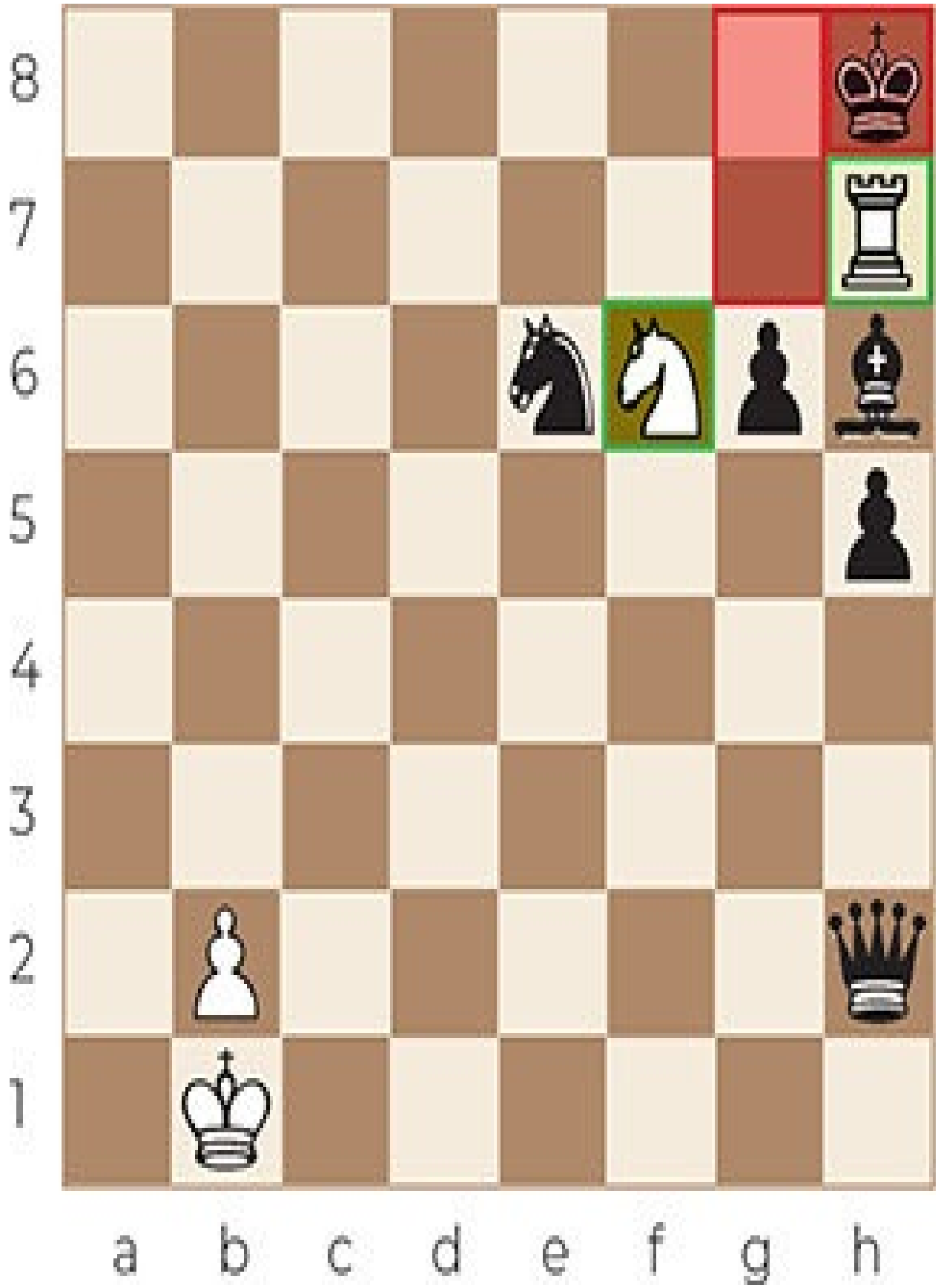
The Arabian mate is a very old and also very common way to checkmate. It is not only mentioned in ancient Arabic manuscripts, but is also derived from the older Persian form of chess where the knight and the rook were the two most powerful pieces in the game. This was before chess migrated to Europe and the queen was (later) given its current powers of movement.

Arabian mate

Often, the Arabian mate is preceded by a sacrifice to open up the file/rank for the rook combined with a check with the knight to drive the king to a corner square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

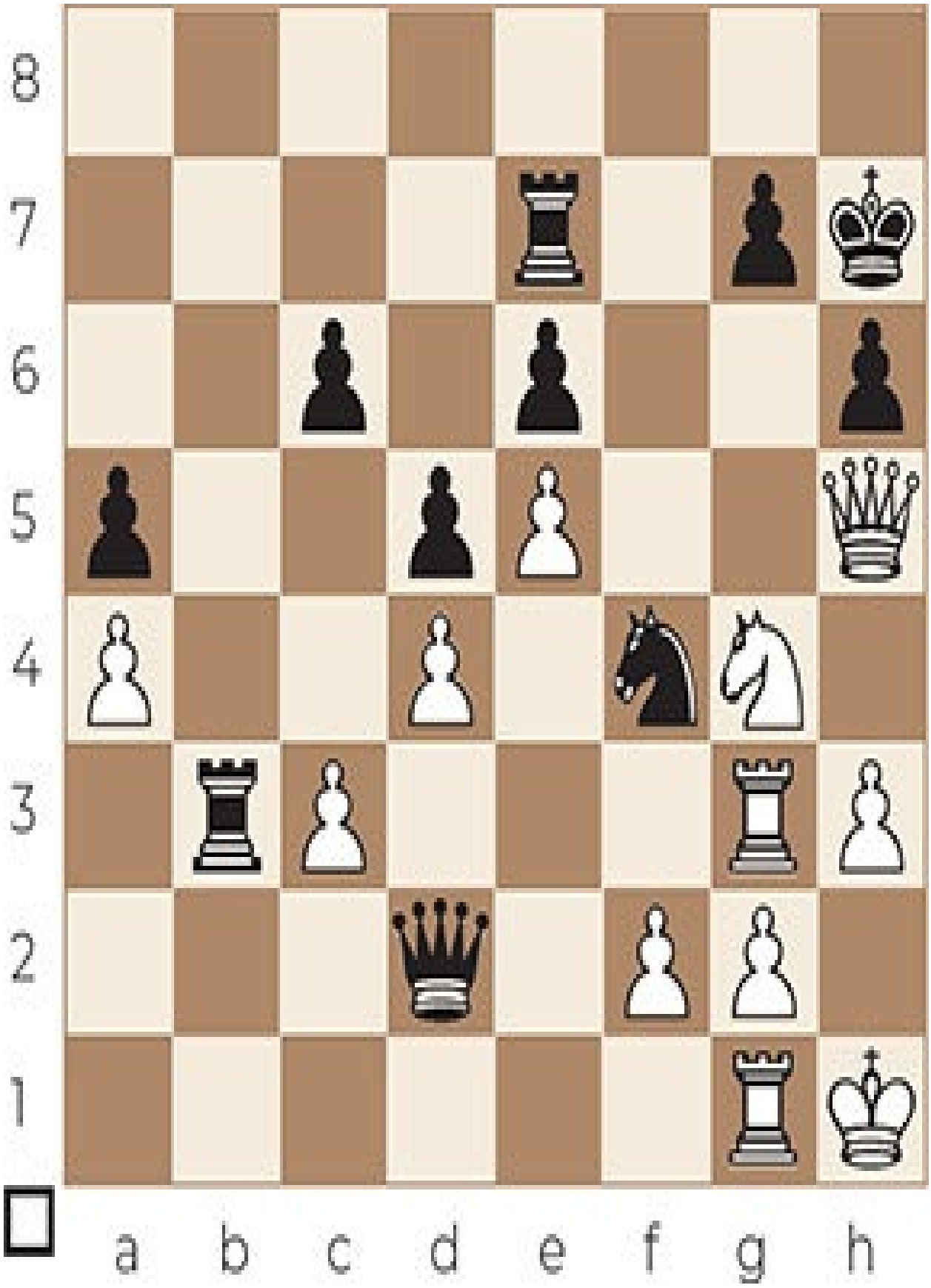
1.♘f6+ ♔h8 2.♕h6+ ♗xh6 3.♖h7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 25

Nimzowitsch – Gize

1913


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

36.♕xh6+ gxh6

36...♔g8 also loses, for example after 37.♘f6+ ♔f8 38.♕h8+ ♔f7 39.♕xg7#.

37.♘f6+ ♔h8 38.♖g8#

Game 26

Fairhurst – Menchik

1935

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

31.♘f6+ ♔h8 32.♕xh6+ ♗xh6 33.♖h7#

Game 27

Lasker – NN

1900

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33.♖xh7+ ♖xh7 34.♕g8+ ♖xg8 35.♖xg8#

Game 28

Alekhine – Asgeirsson

1931

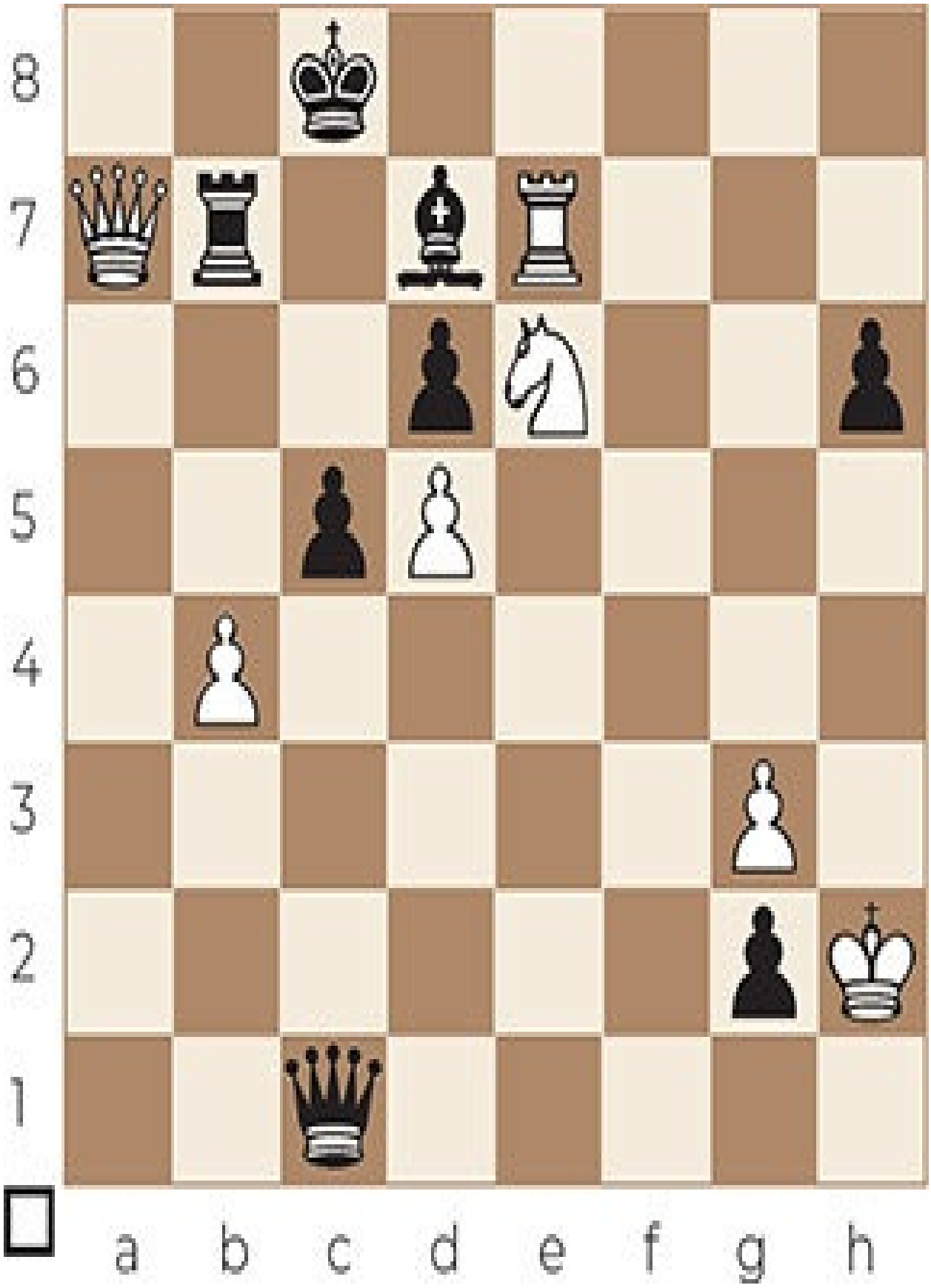
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

25.♕f6+ gxf6 26.♖f7#

Game 29

Agrest – Zilberstein

2003

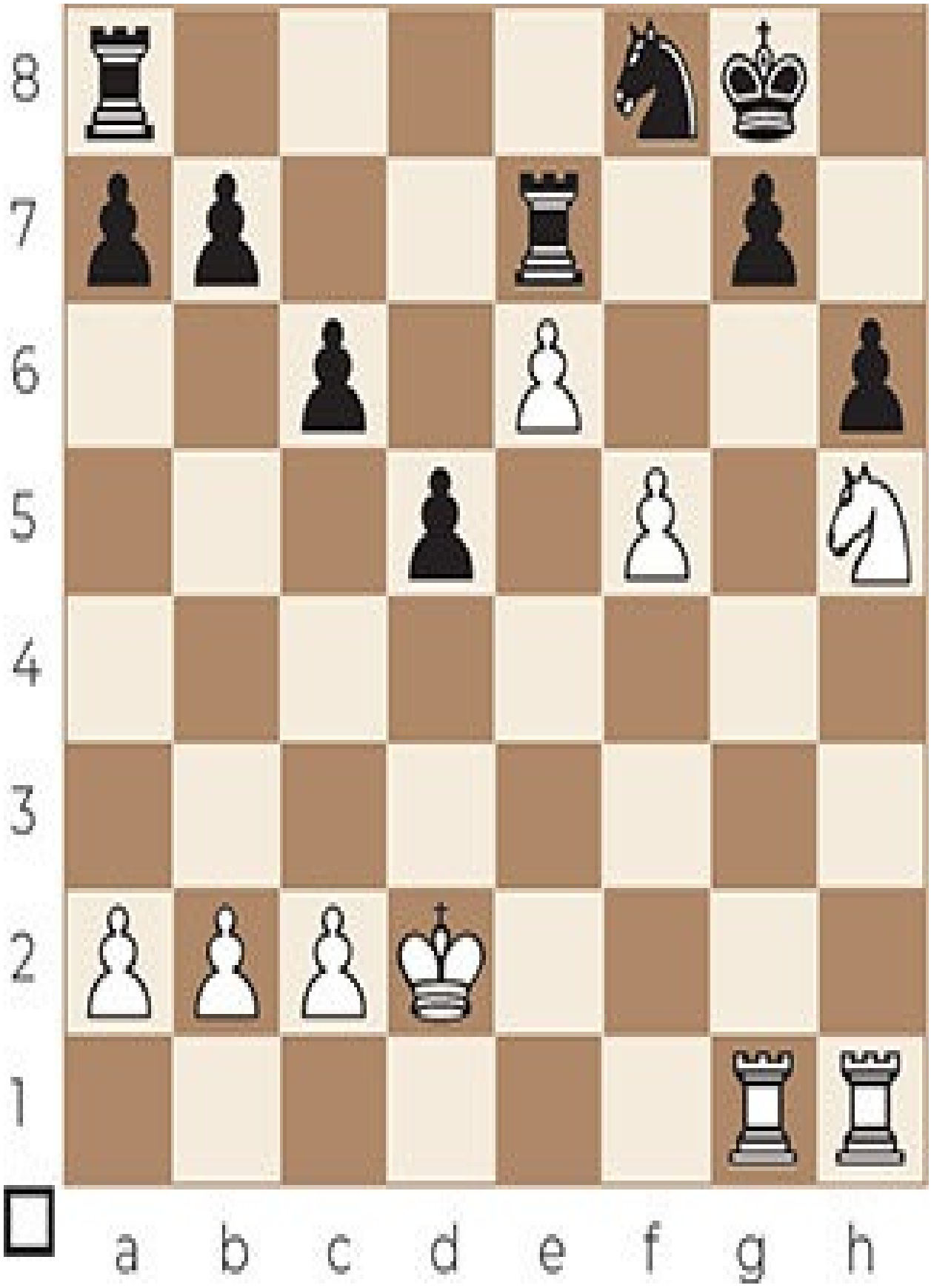

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

48.♕a8+ ♖b8 49.♕c6+ ♗xc6 50.♖c7#

Game 30

Andriasyan – Burg

2013


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♘f6+ ♔h8 28.♖xh6+ gxh6

28...♘h7 29.♖xh7# (Arabian mate).

29.♖g8#

Game 31

Gelfand – Kramnik

1996

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28...♕a2+ 29.♖xa2 ♖b1#

Game 32

Anderssen – Schallopp

1864

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

32...♖g3+ 33.♔h2

After 33.♔h4 Black wins with 33...♘f5+ 34.♔h5 g6# (David & Goliath mate).

33...♘xf3+ 34.♔h1 ♖h3+ 35.gxh3 ♖h2#

Game 33

Fridman – Lenderman

2010

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

46...♕g4+ 47.♔h2 ♘f3+ 48.♔h1 ♕h3+ 49.♗xh3 ♖h2#

CHAPTER 4

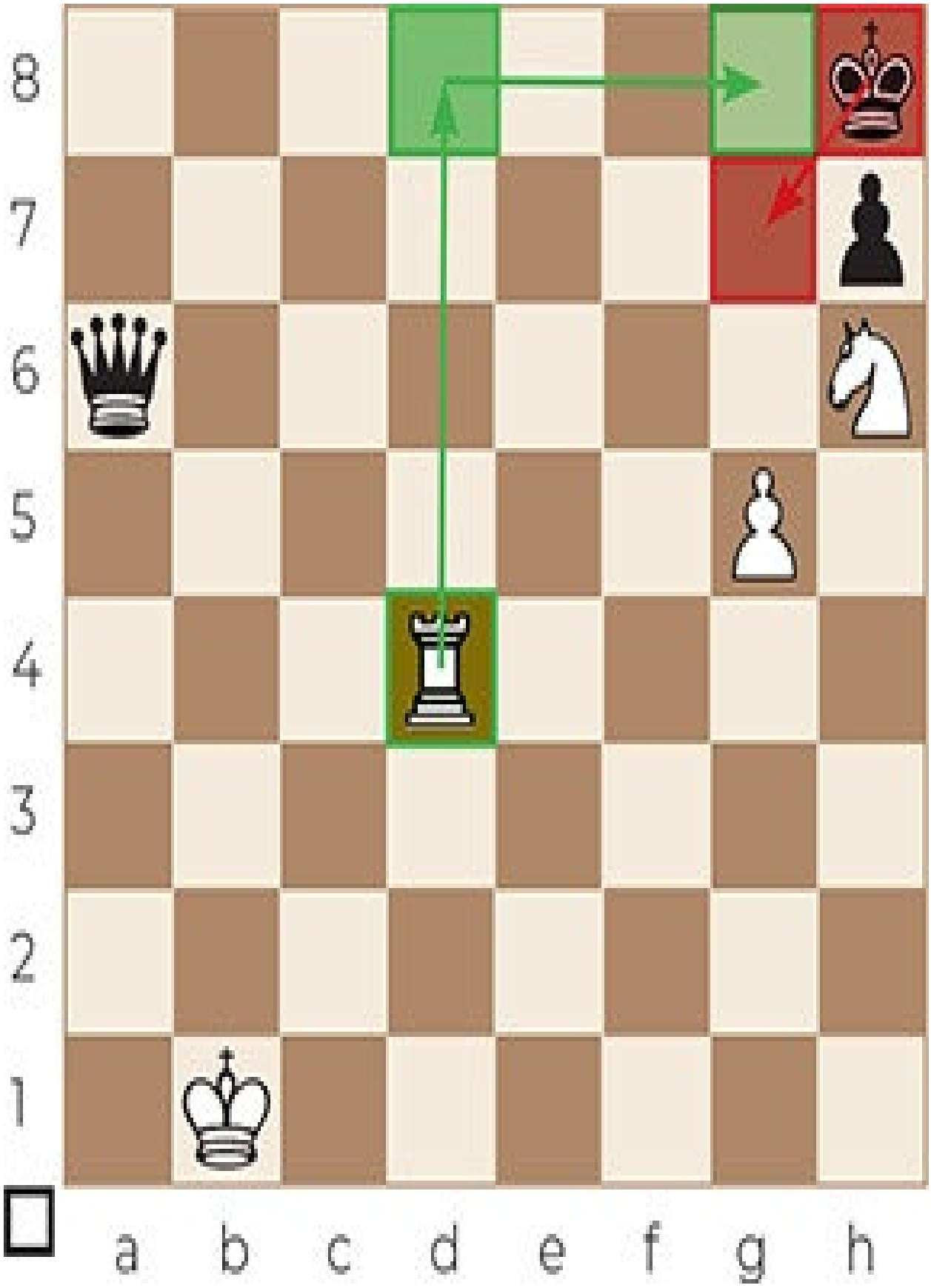
Hook mate

In the Hook mate, a rook (or less traditionally a queen) delivers checkmate to the king, while a knight protects the rook and covers an escape square of the king. The knight on the other hand is protected by a pawn. The pawn prevents the mated king from taking the knight and also covers an escape square of the king. The mated king is 1 square vertically away from the rook, 1 square diagonally away from the knight and 2 squares vertically away from the pawn.

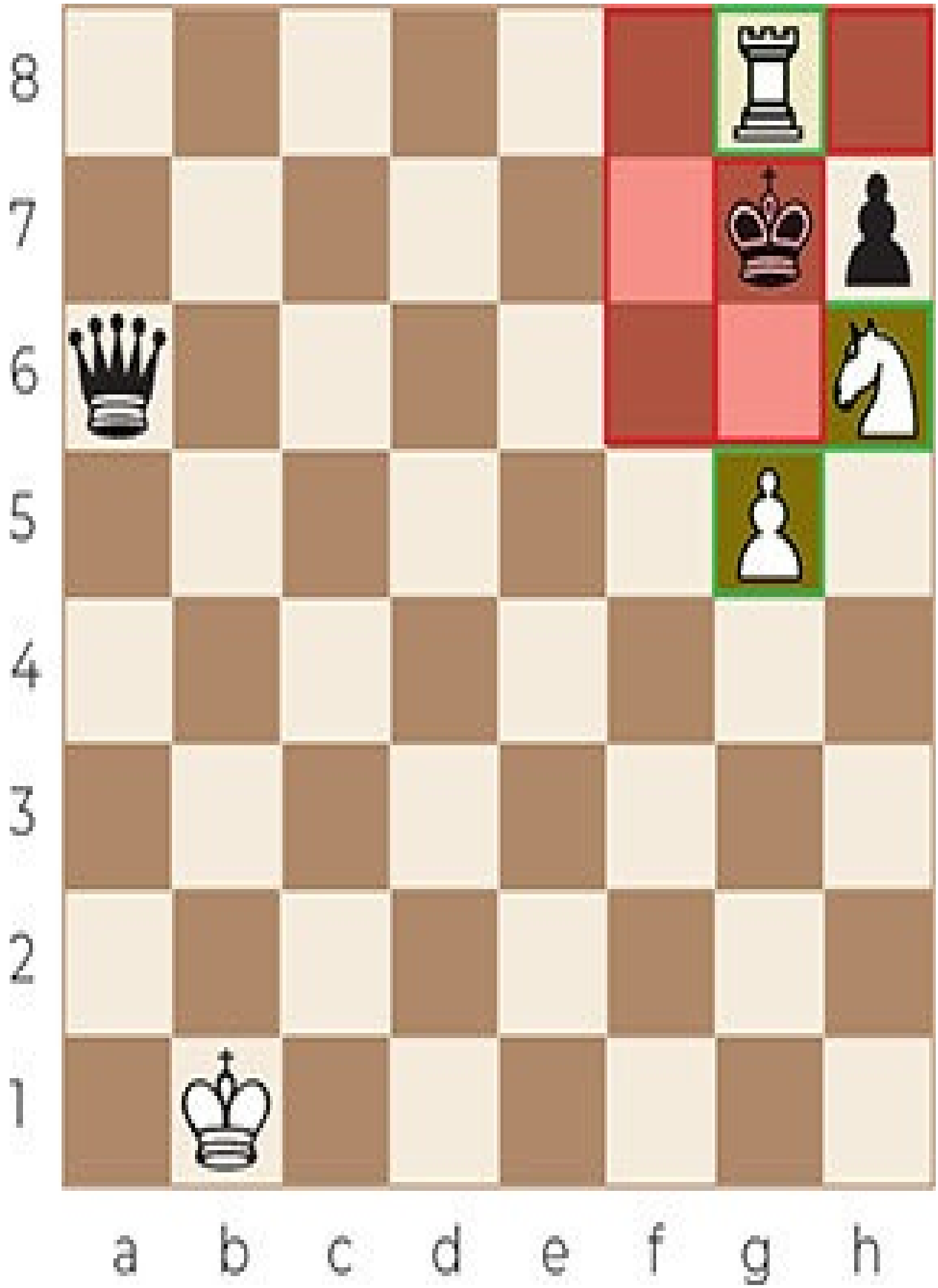
This mate is called Hook mate because the involved pieces form a hook (with some imagination).

Hook mate 1

Often, the Hook mate is preceded by a rook check.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

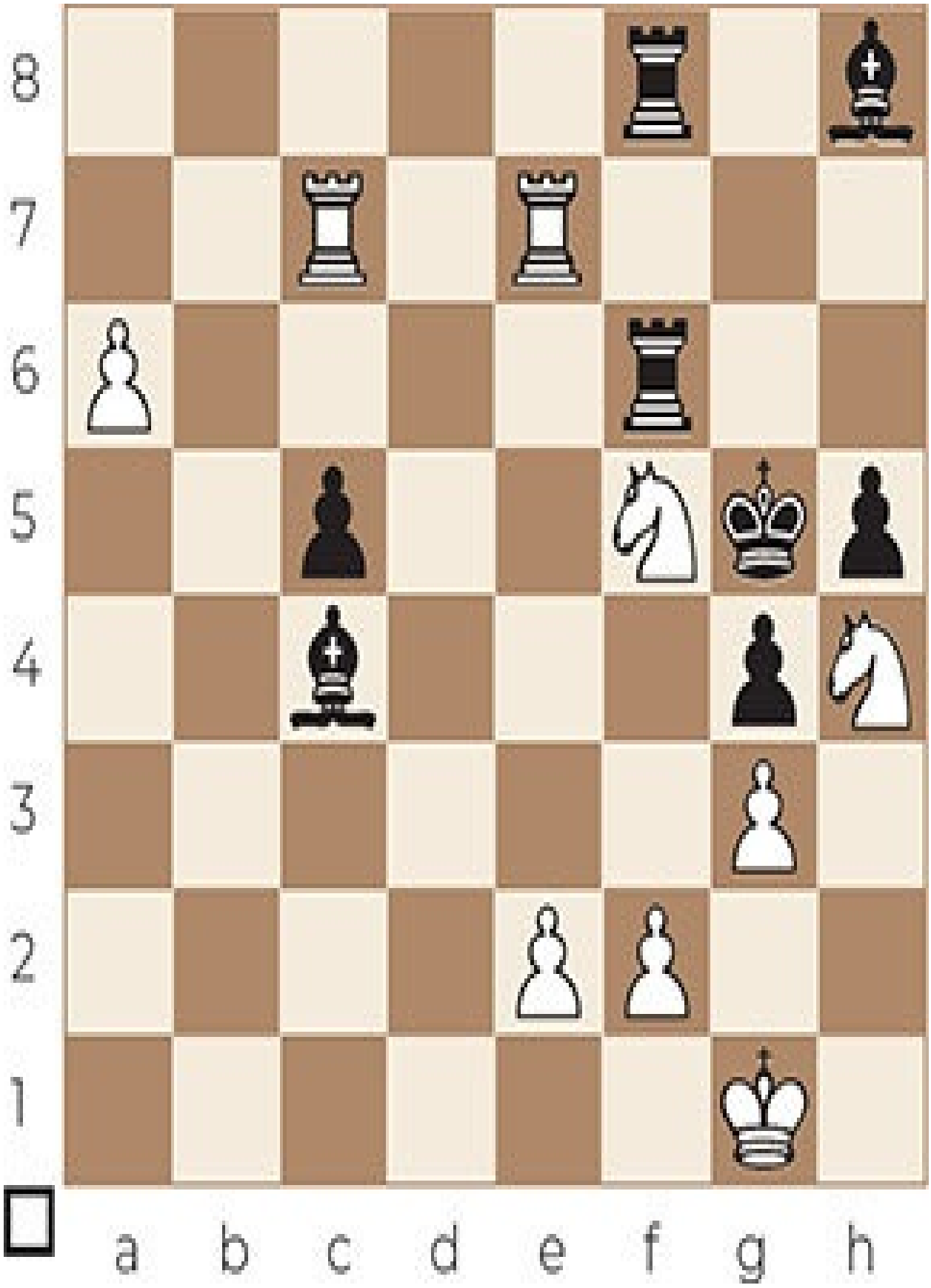
1.♖d8+ ♔g7 2.♖g8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 34

Ivanchuk – Aronian

2013

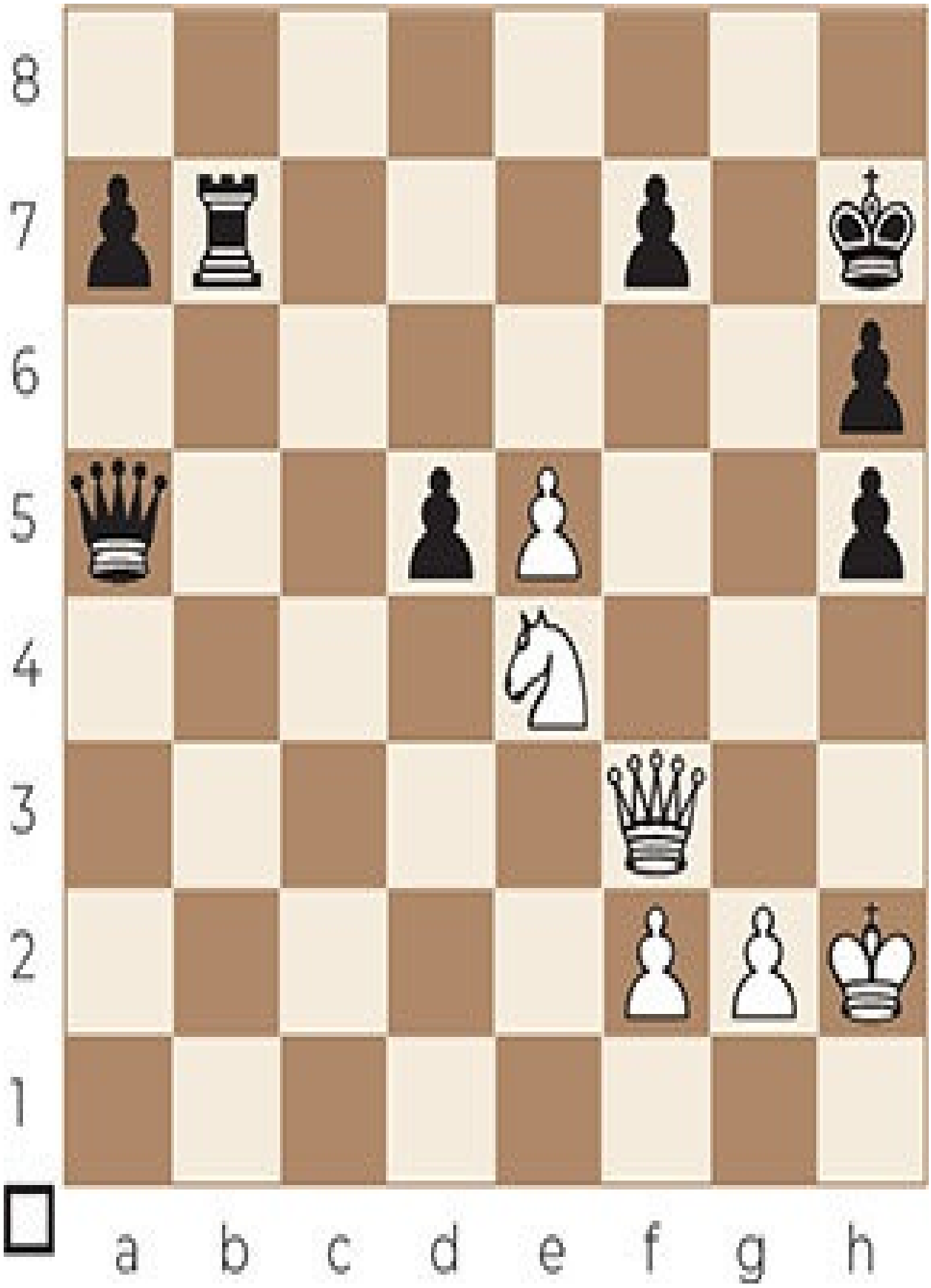

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

40.♖g7+ ♗xg7 41.♖xg7+ ♖g6 42.♖xg6#

Game 35

Mamedov – Gopal

2014


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

46.♘f6+ ♔g6

46...♔h8 47.♕f5 (threatening 48.♕h7#) 47...♔g7 48.♕h7+ ♔f8 49.♕g8+ ♔e7 50.♕e8# (Hook mate).

After 46...♔g7, White wins with 47.♕g3+ ♔f8 48.♕g8+ ♔e7 49.♕e8# (Hook mate).

47.♕xh5+ ♔g7 48.♕g4+ ♔f8

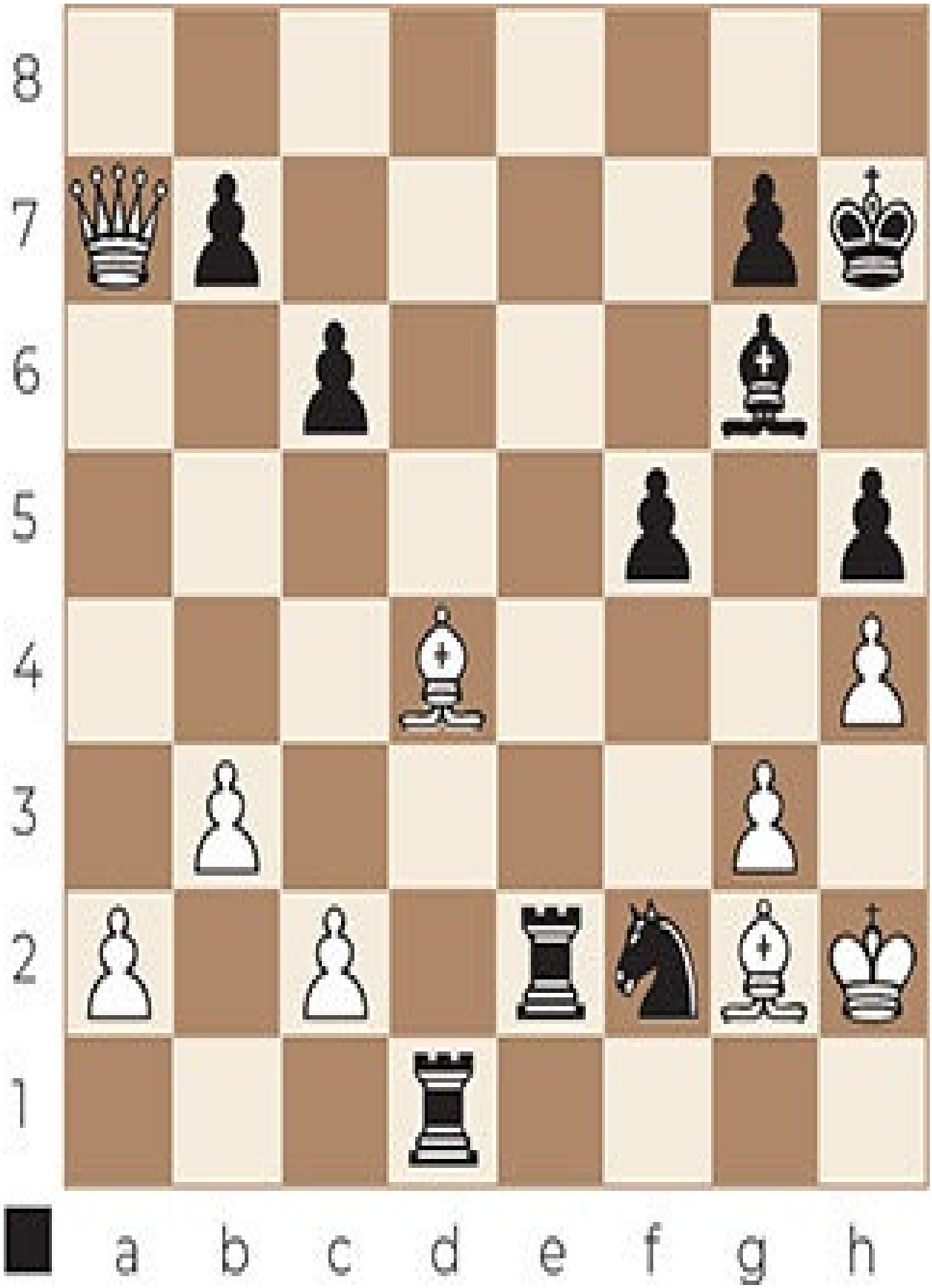
If 48...♔h8, White ends the game with an Arabian mate: 49.♕g8#.

49.♕g8+ ♔e7 50.♕e8#

Game 36

Robey – Anderssen

1862

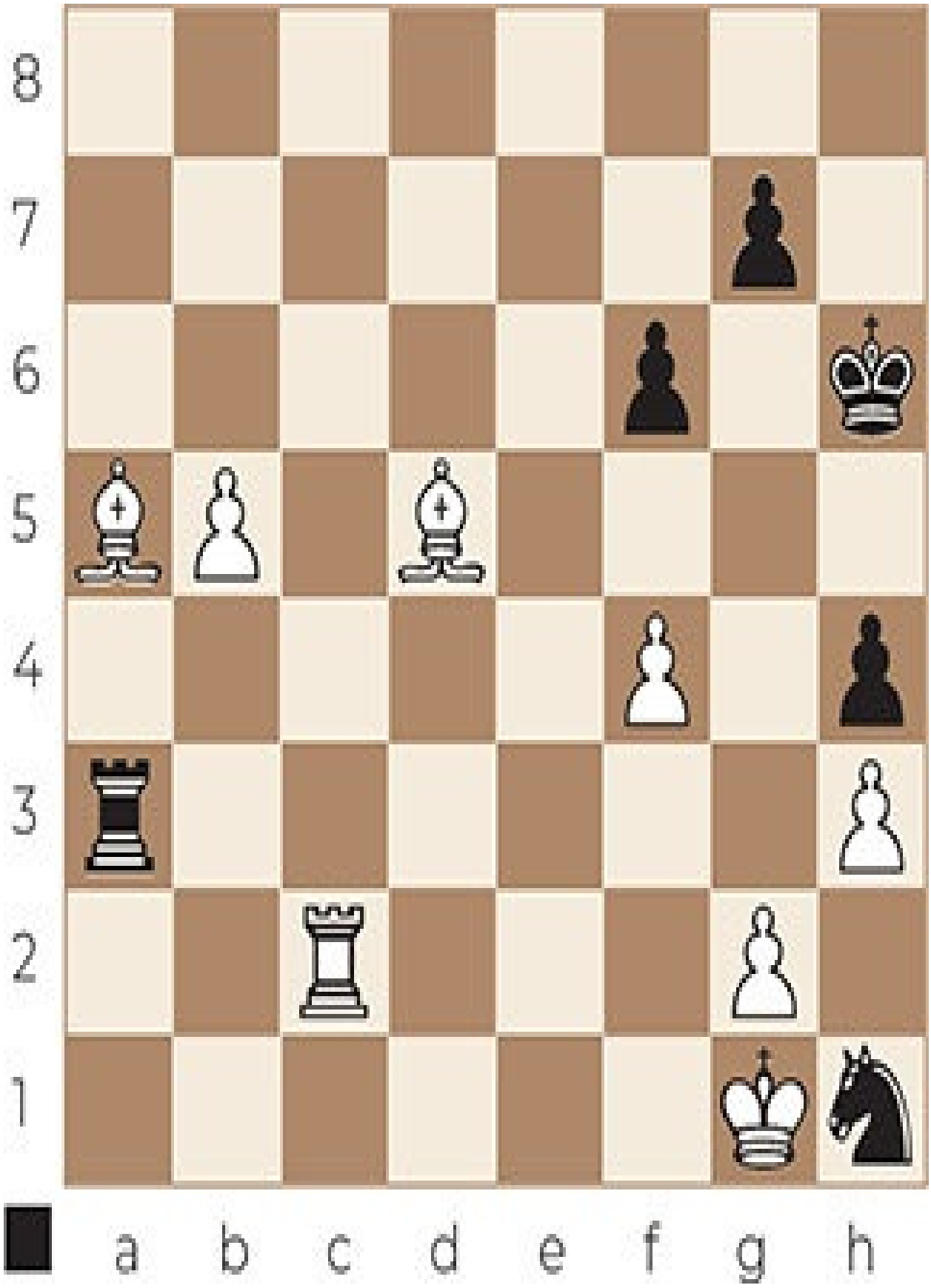

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

38...♘g4+ 39.♔h3 ♖h1+ 40.♗xh1 ♖h2#

Game 37

Svidler – Gelfand

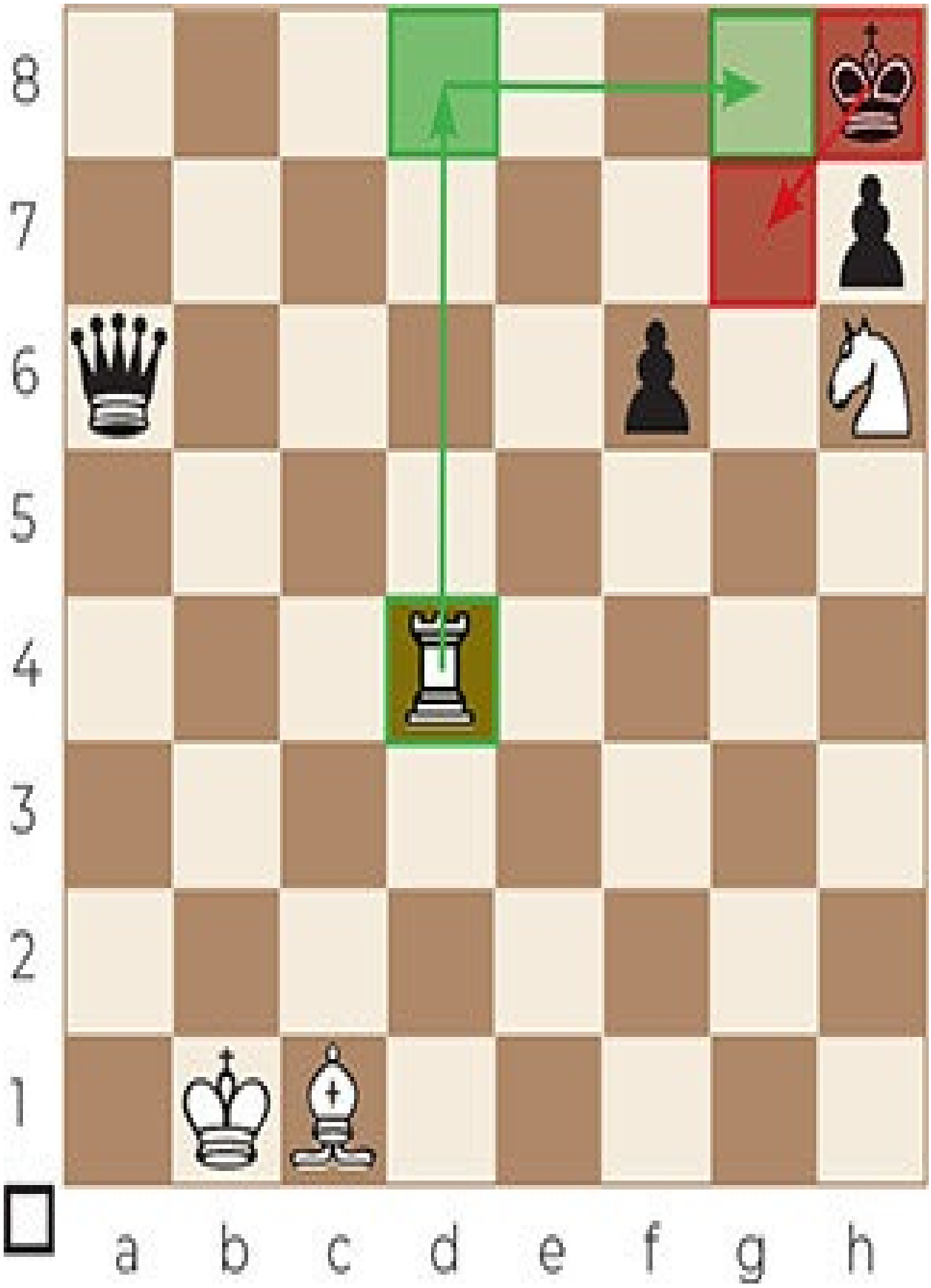
2009


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

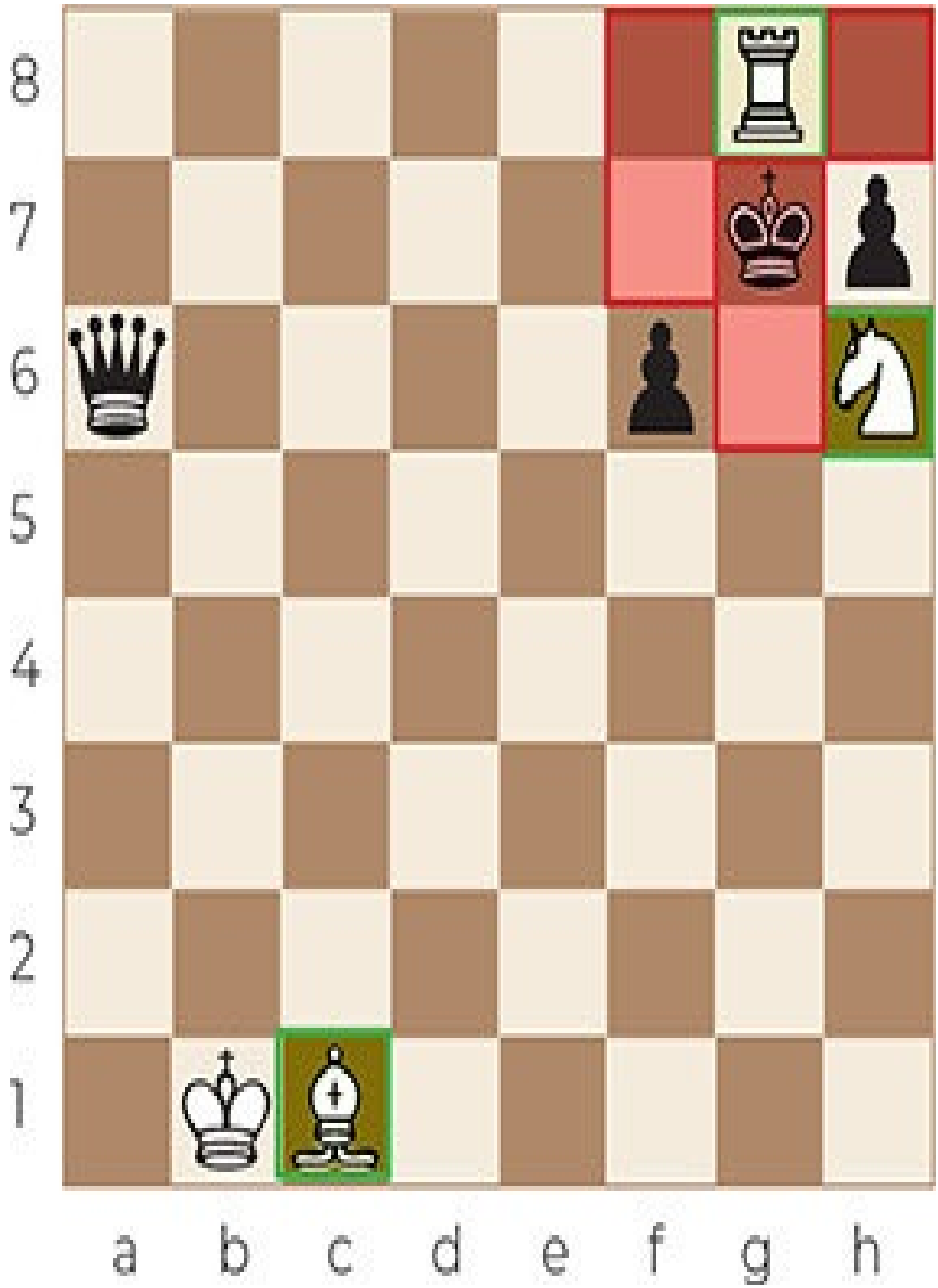
56...♖a1+ 57.♔h2 ♘g3 58.♖a2 ♖h1#

Hook mate 2

Positions where the rook, knight and king are in the Hook mate arrangement (unlike the pawn) are also often referred to as Hook mate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

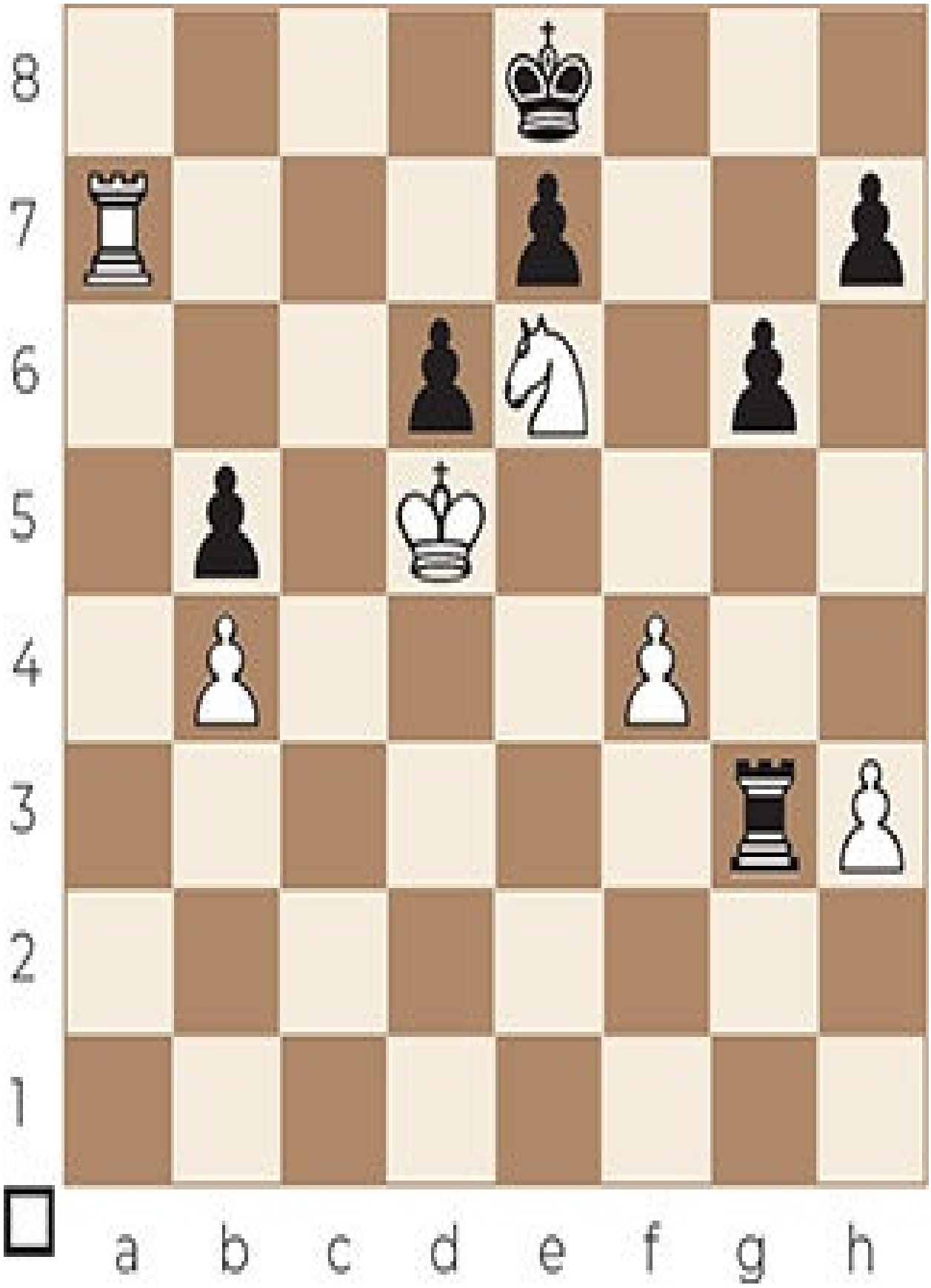
1.♖d8+ ♔g7 2.♖g8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 38

Williams – Critelli

2003


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

45.♖a8+ ♔f7

45...♔d7 46.♖d8# is also a Hook mate.

46.♖f8#

Game 39

Bok – Rapport

2014

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

24...♕h3+ 25.♔xh3

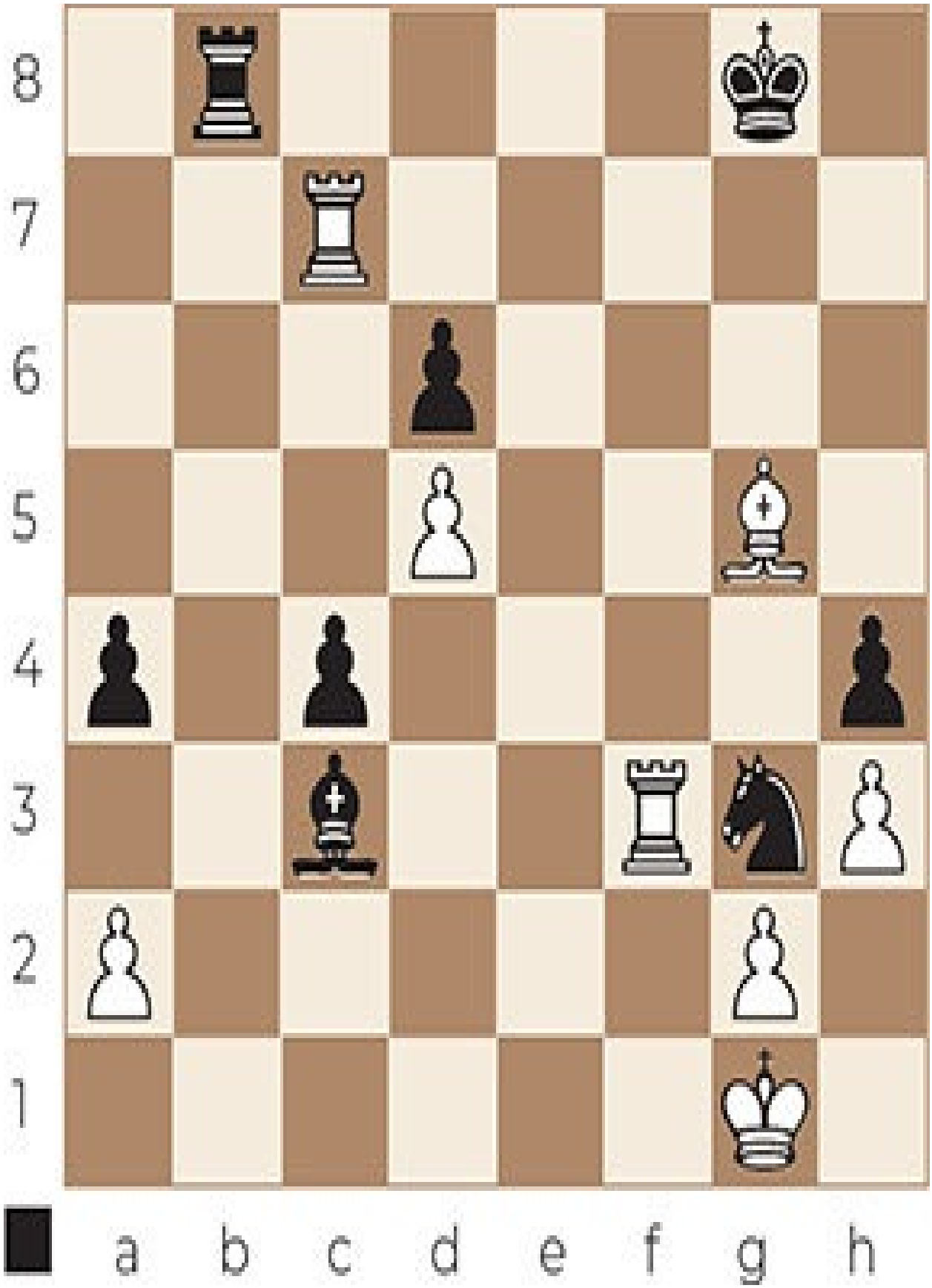
Or 25.♔h1 ♕xh2# (Arabian mate).

25...♖h5+ 26.♔g2 ♖xh2#

Game 40

Kazhgaleyev – Polgar

2007


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

39...♖b1+ 40.♔f2 ♗d4+

40...♖f1+ 41.♔e3 ♖e1+ 42.♔f2 ♘e4# is another (and slower) mate type.

41.♗e3 ♖f1#

Game 41

Kholmov – Pietzsch

1965

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

32... ♗e3+ 33.♔h2 ♗g1+ 34.♔xg1 ♖f1+ 35.♔h2 ♖h1#

CHAPTER 5

Vukovic’s mate

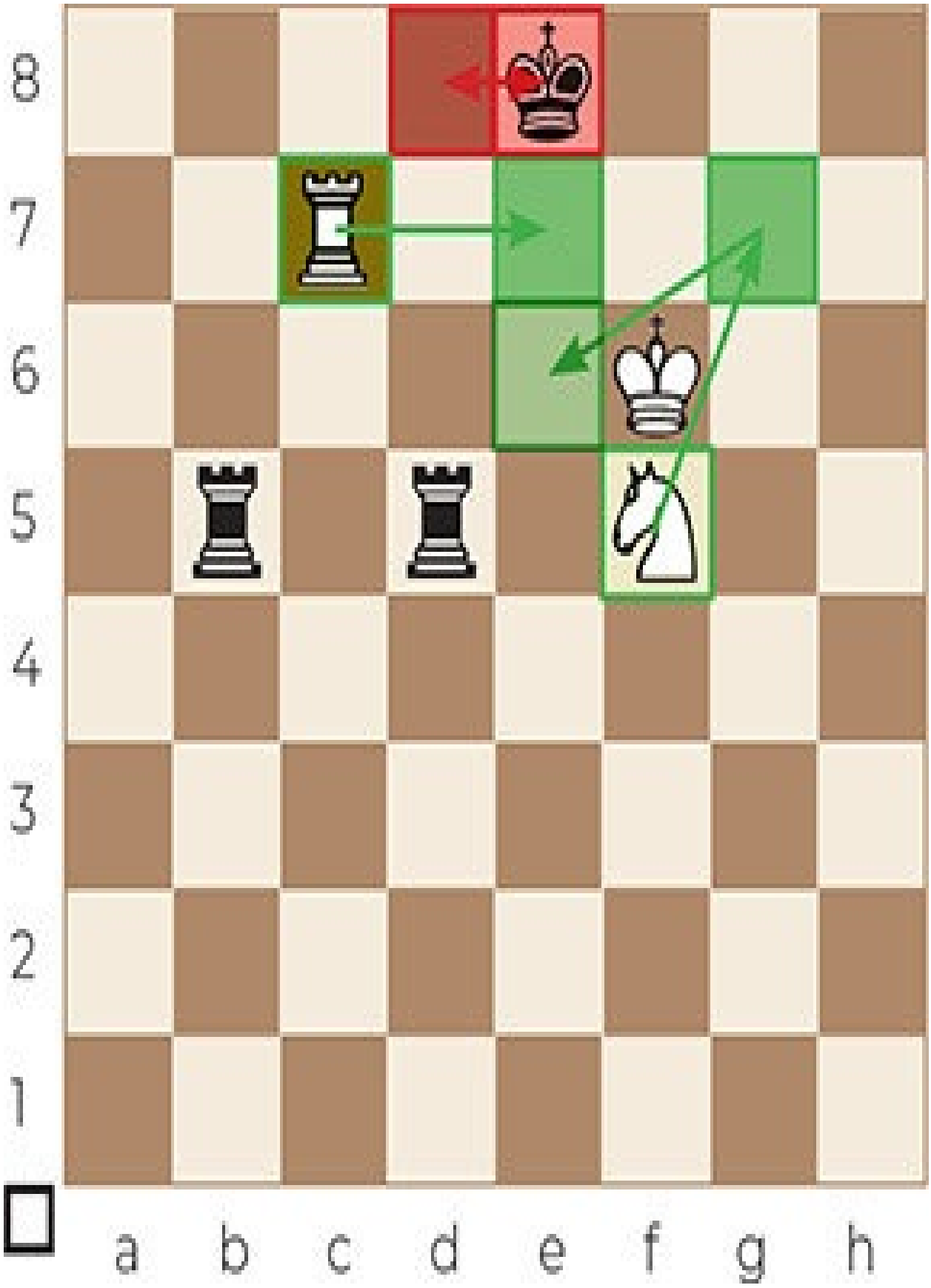
In Vukovic’s mate, a protected rook delivers checkmate to the king at the edge of the board, while a knight covers the remaining escape squares of the king. The rook is usually protected by the king or a pawn. The mated king, the rook and knight are lined up next to each other.

Vukovic’s mate often arises from drawish positions in the endgame, where one of the players makes one crucial mistake that eventually costs him the game.

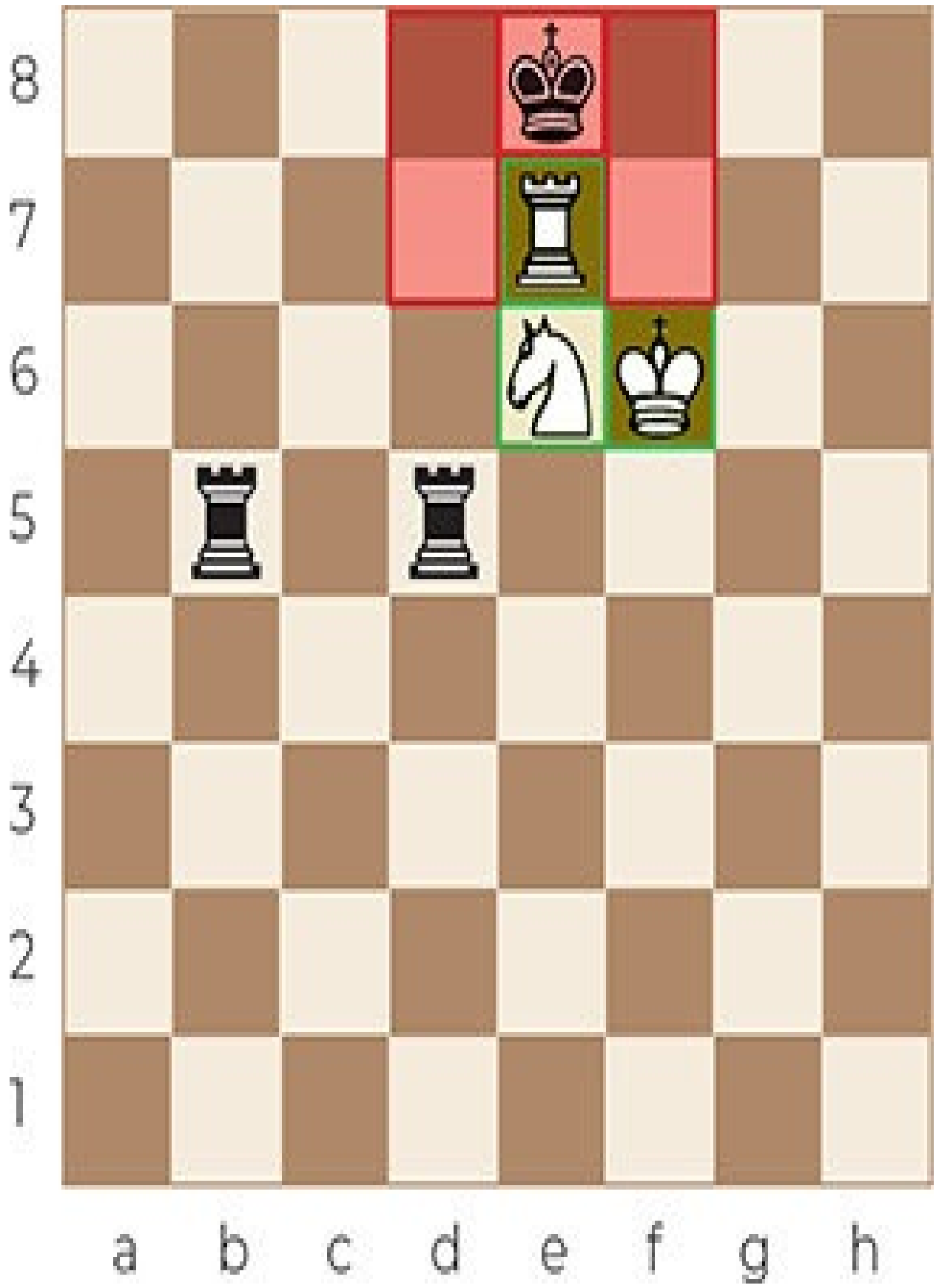
Vladimir Vukovic (1898-1975) was a Croatian chess writer, theoretician, player, arbiter and journalist. In his book The Art of Attack in Chess, Vukovic devoted a whole chapter to mating patterns.

Vukovic’s mate 1

Often, Vukovic’s mate is preceded by rook and/or knight checks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

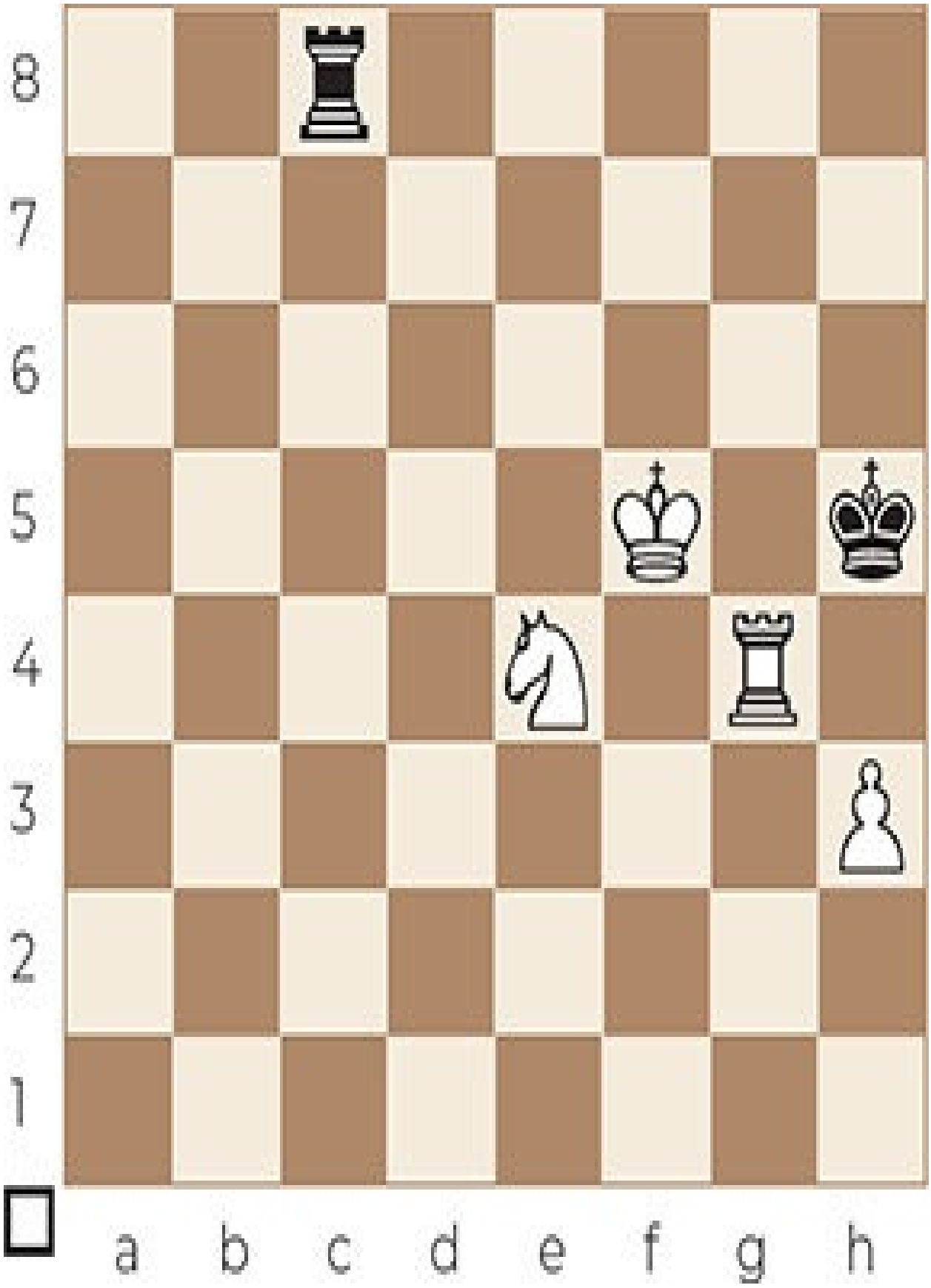
1.♘g7+ ♔d8 2.♘e6+ ♔e8 3.♖e7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 42

Danek – Hanuliak

2001


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

67.♘f6+ ♔h6 68.♖g6#

Game 43

Antipov – Najer

2015

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

60.♖c8+ ♔a7 61.♖c7+ ♔a8 62.♘b6+ ♔b8 63.♖b7#

Game 44

Gueci – Balaian

2013

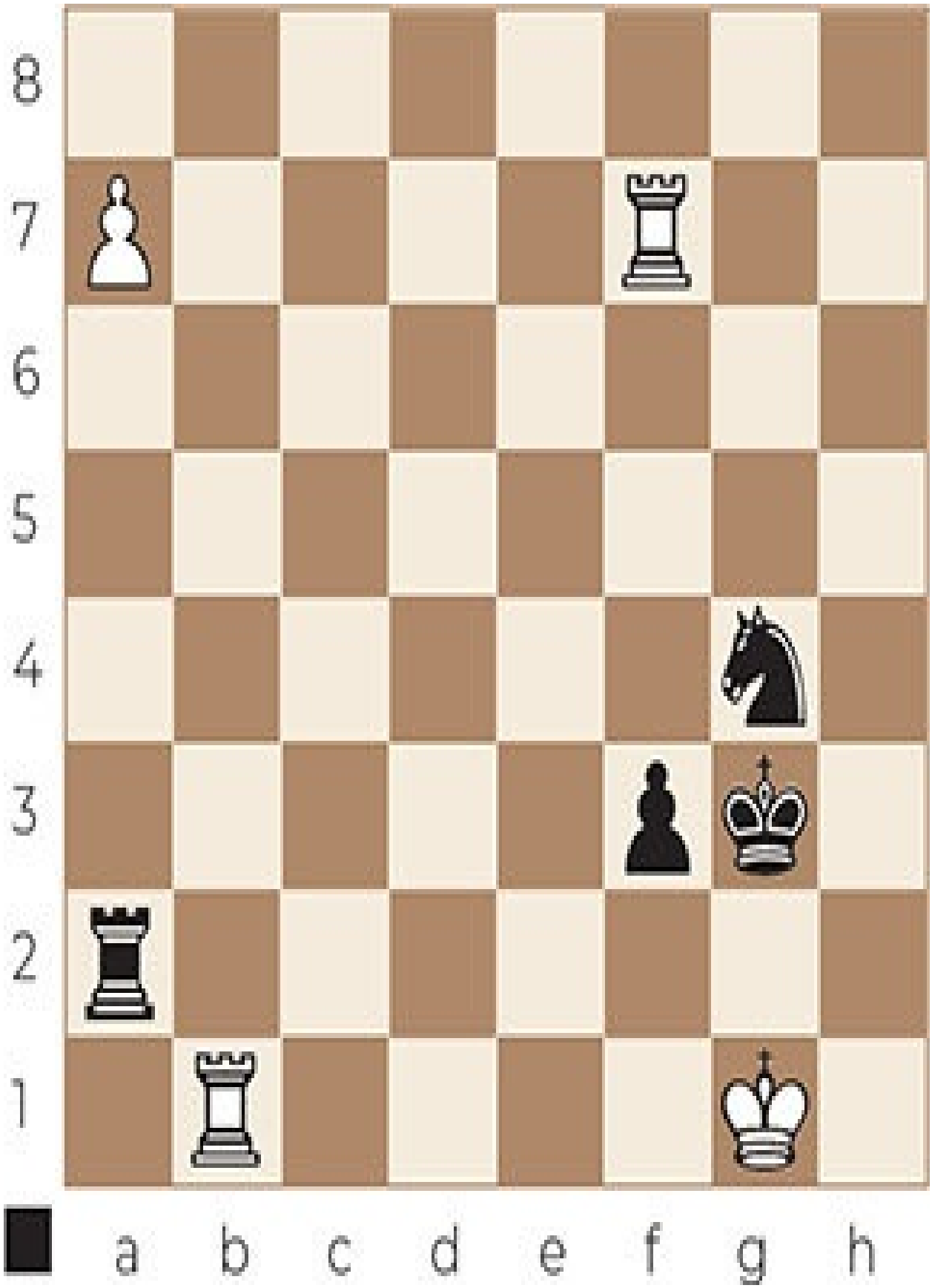
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

39...♖g2+ 40.♔h4 ♖g4#

Game 45

Tschendel – Birdaini

1998


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

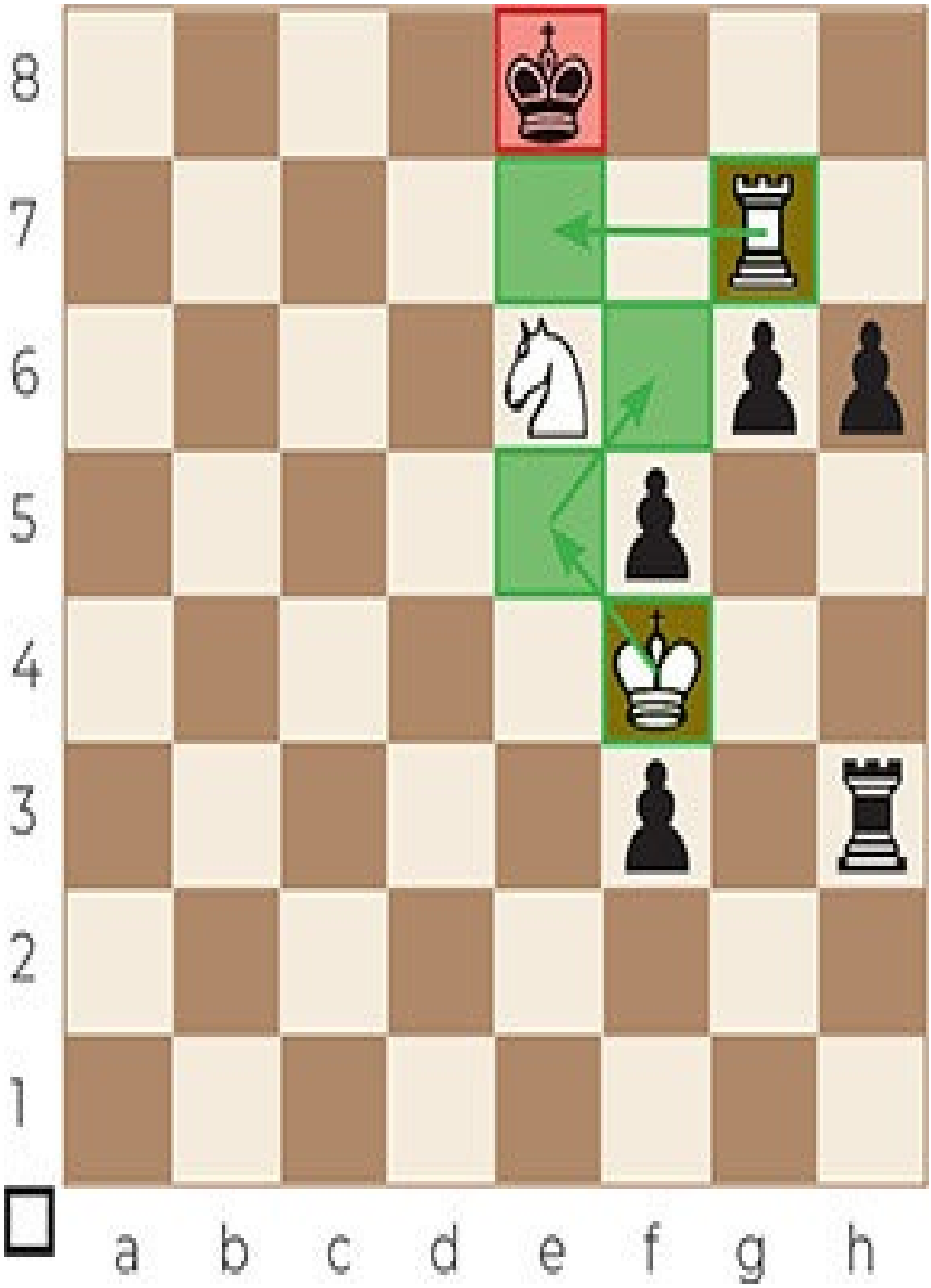
52...♖g2+ 53.♔f1

53.♔h1 leads to a faster checkmate: 53...♘f2#.

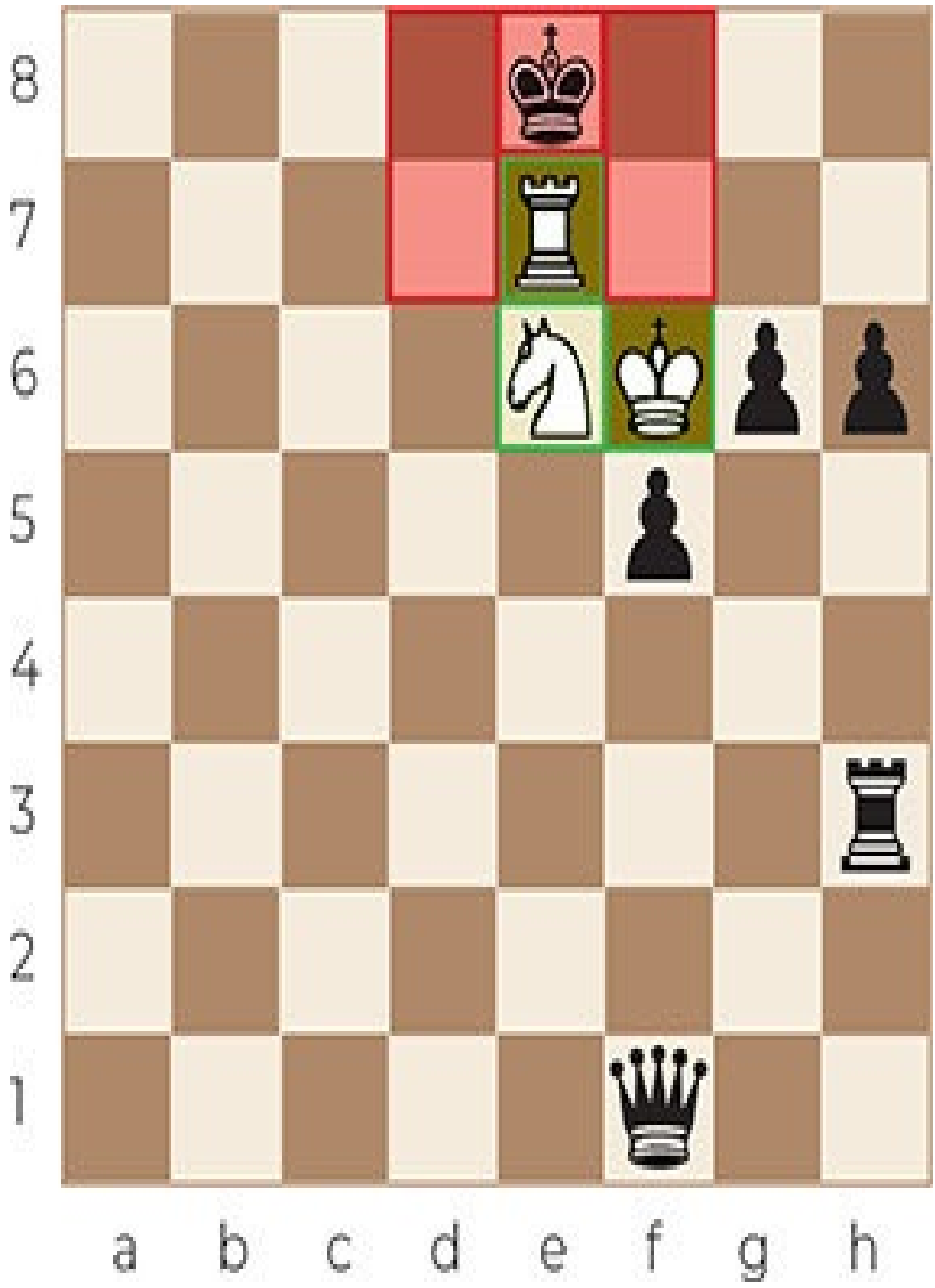
53...♘e3+ 54.♔e1 ♖e2#

Vukovic’s mate 2

Sometimes, Vukovic’s mate is preceded by subtle pawn or king moves, to catch the enemy king in a mating net.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

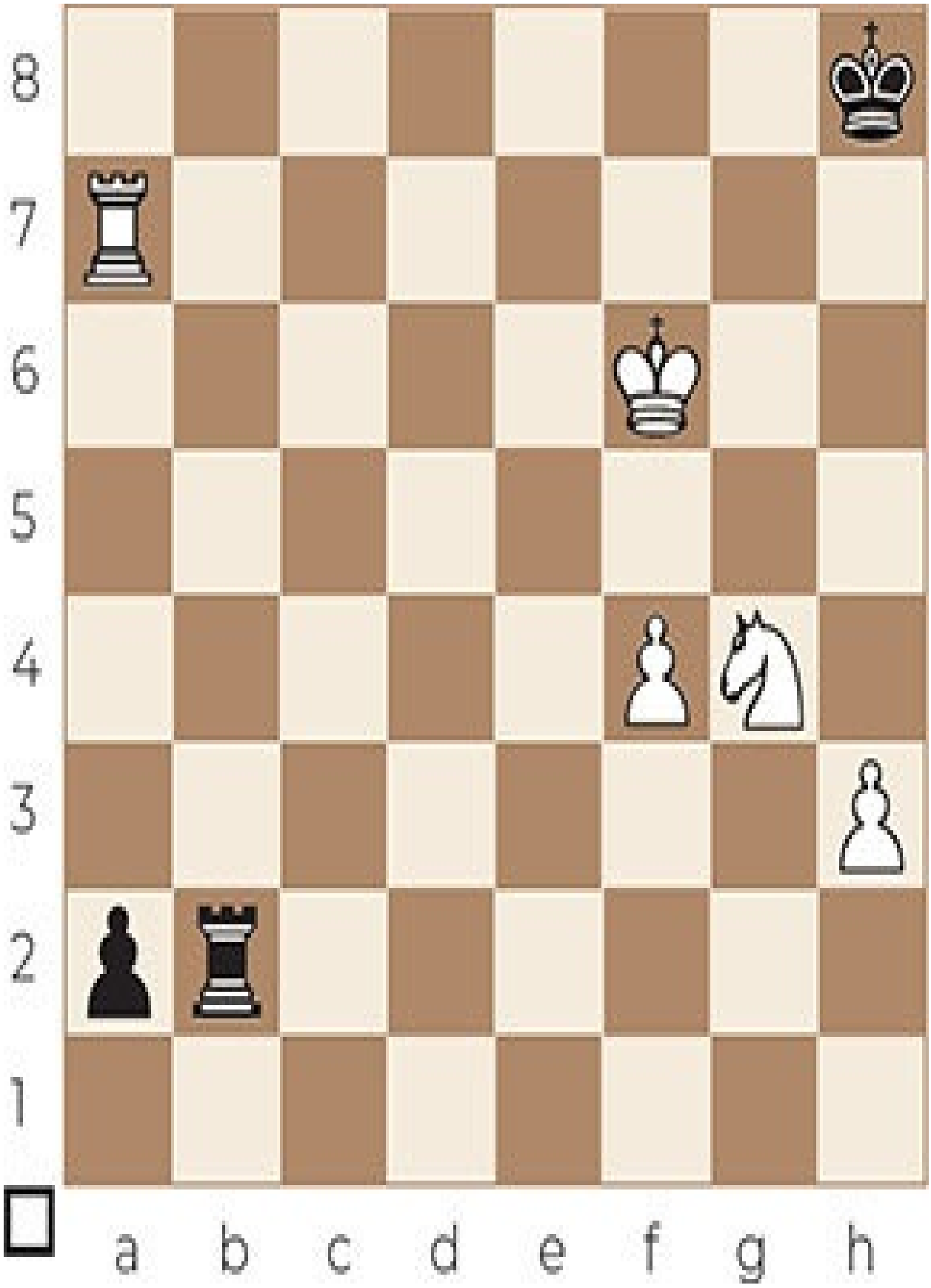
1.♔e5 f2 2.♔f6 f1♕ 3.♖e7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 46

Kingscrusher – kingstar70

2019


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

46.♔g6 a1♕

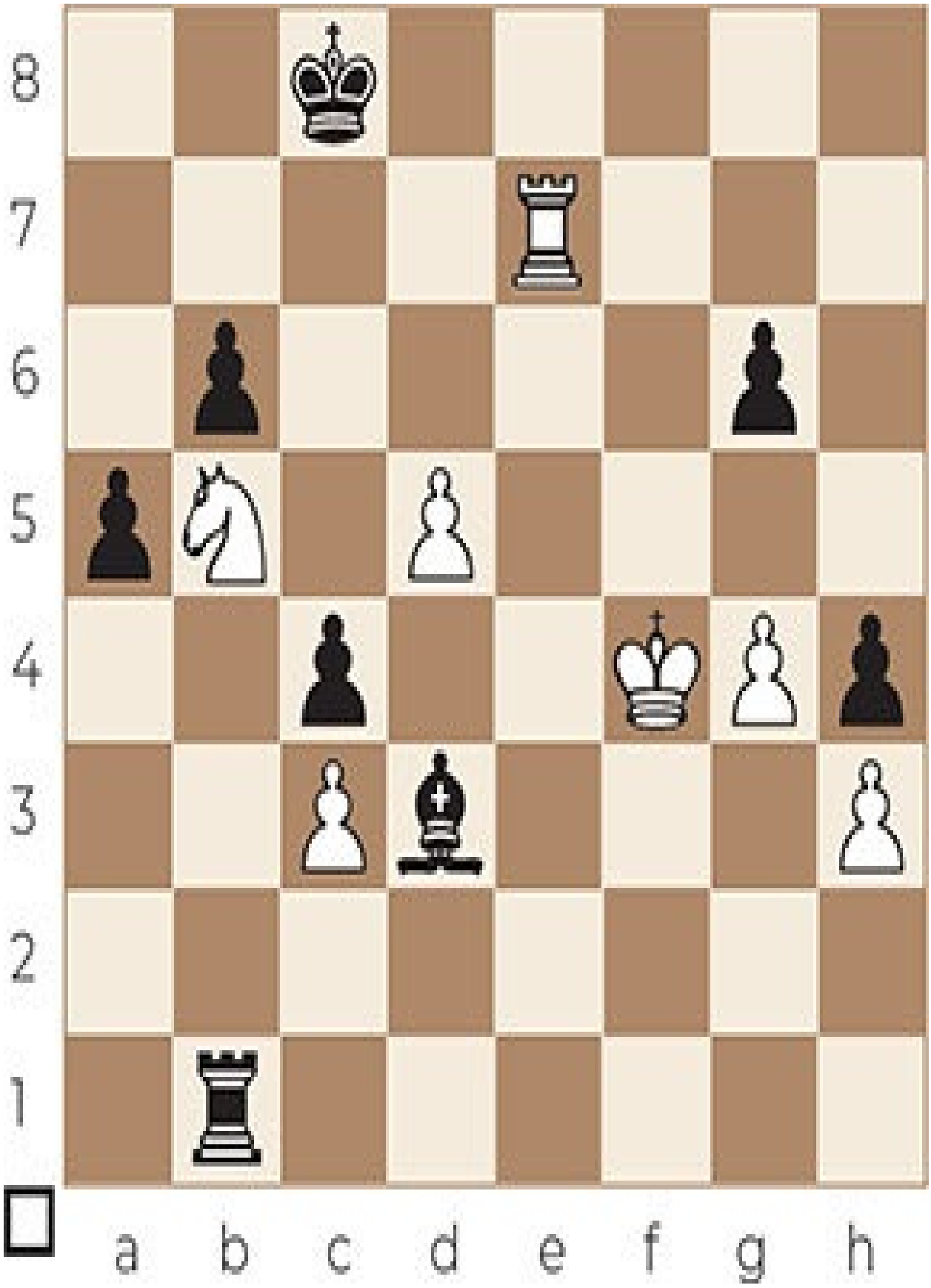
46...♖b6+ 47.♘f6 doesn’t help Black.

47.♖h7+ ♔g8 48.♘f6+ ♔f8 49.♖f7#

Game 47

Lancel – Bain

1963


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

80.♘a7+ ♔d8

80...♔b8 doesn’t make any difference, all other moves remain the same.

81.♘c6+ ♔c8 82.d6 ♖f1+ 83.♔g5

If 83.♔e5 ♖e1+ 84.♔f6 ♖xe7 Black can trade rooks. After a few more moves, White can promote to a queen on d8 and win the game quickly.

83... ♗f5 84.♖c7#

Game 48

Torre – Ljubojevic

1976

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

41.♘f6+ ♔f8

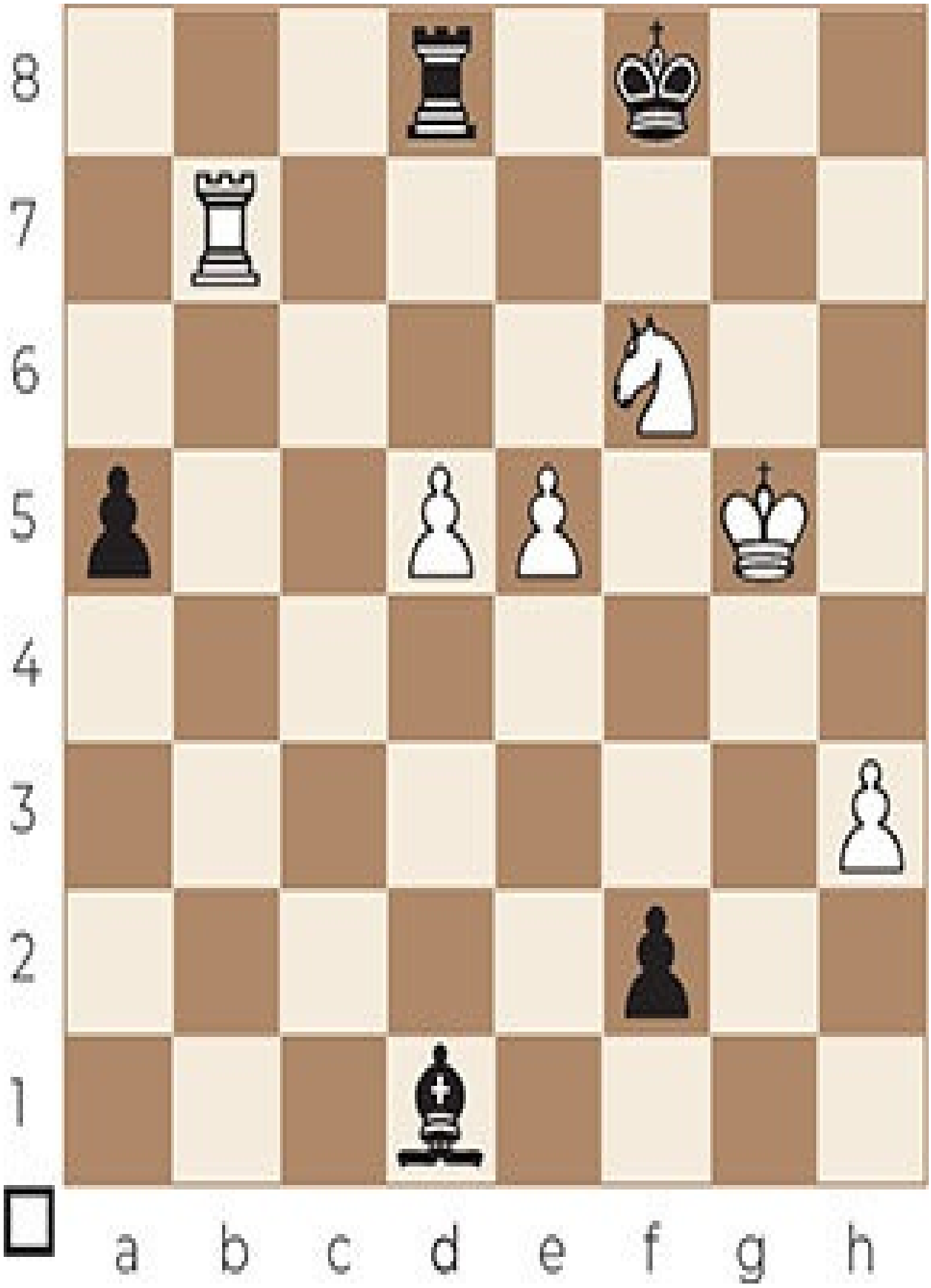
If 41...♔h8 the game will end in an Arabian mate via 42.♖h7#.

42.♔e6 ♖xf5 43.♖f7#

Game 49

Spassky – Larsen

1968


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

50.e6 ♖xd5+ 51.♔h6

51.♔g6 keeps Black in the game after 51...♗h5+ 52.♘xh5 ♖g5+!! 53.♔xg5 f1♕ 54.♖f7+ ♕xf7 55.exf7 ♔xf7.

51.♔g6 ♗h5+ 52.♔h6 is even better for Black after 52...♖e5.

51.♘xd5 fails to 51...f1♕. Best for White in this position is to draw by perpetual check: 52.♖b8+ ♔g7 53.♖b7+ ♔f8.

51...♖h5+

51...♗h5 seems to be a slightly better defense, after which White needs to queen the pawn in order to checkmate the black king with rook and queen.

52.♔g6 f1♕ 53.♖f7#

CHAPTER 6

Smothered mate

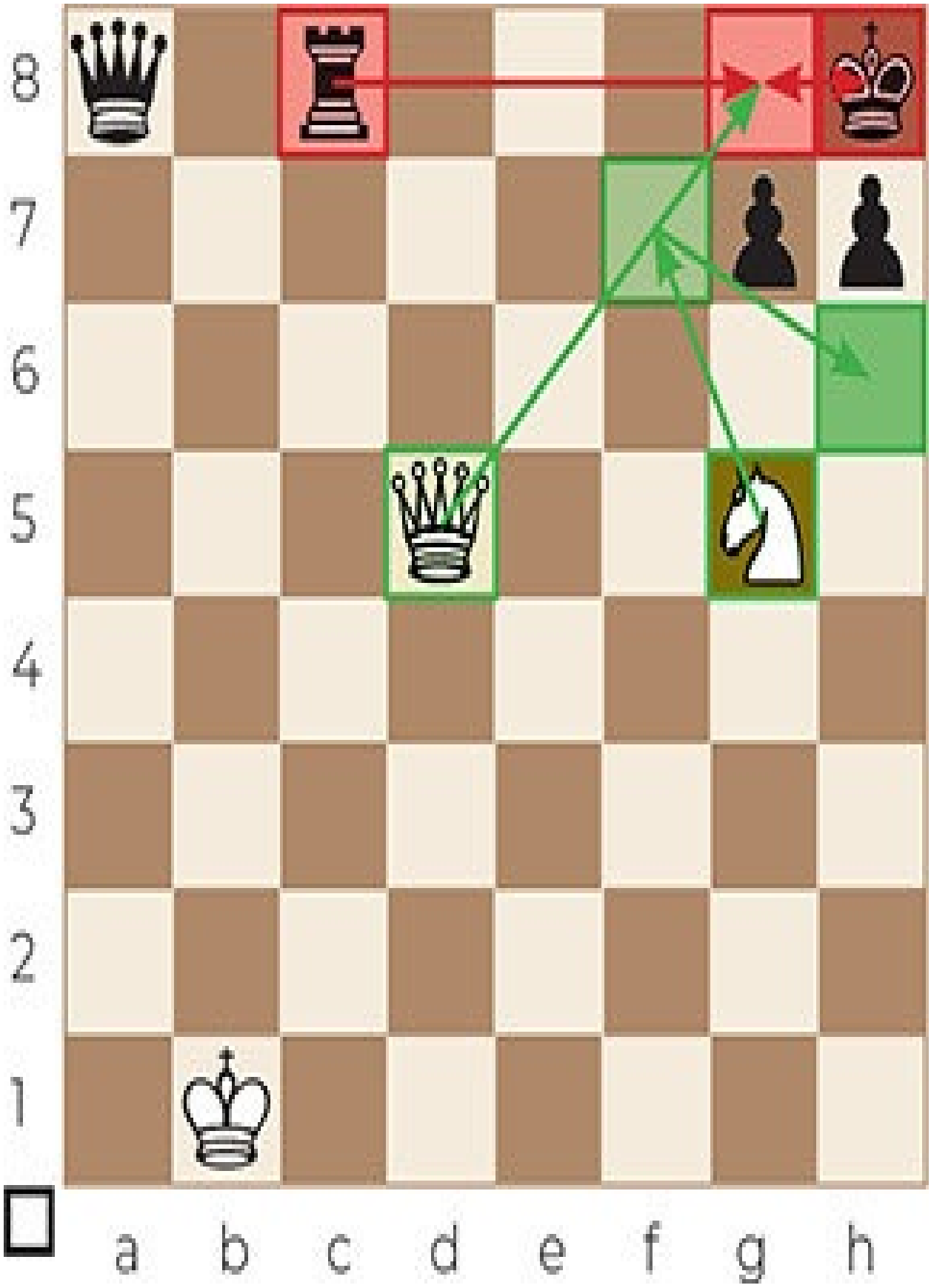
In the Smothered mate, a knight delivers checkmate to the king that is surrounded (smothered) by its own pieces (often a rook and 2 pawns).

Be careful not to sacrifice the queen if your opponent can take back with his queen instead of a rook! In that case, there will be no knight checkmate, since the knight can be taken by the queen.

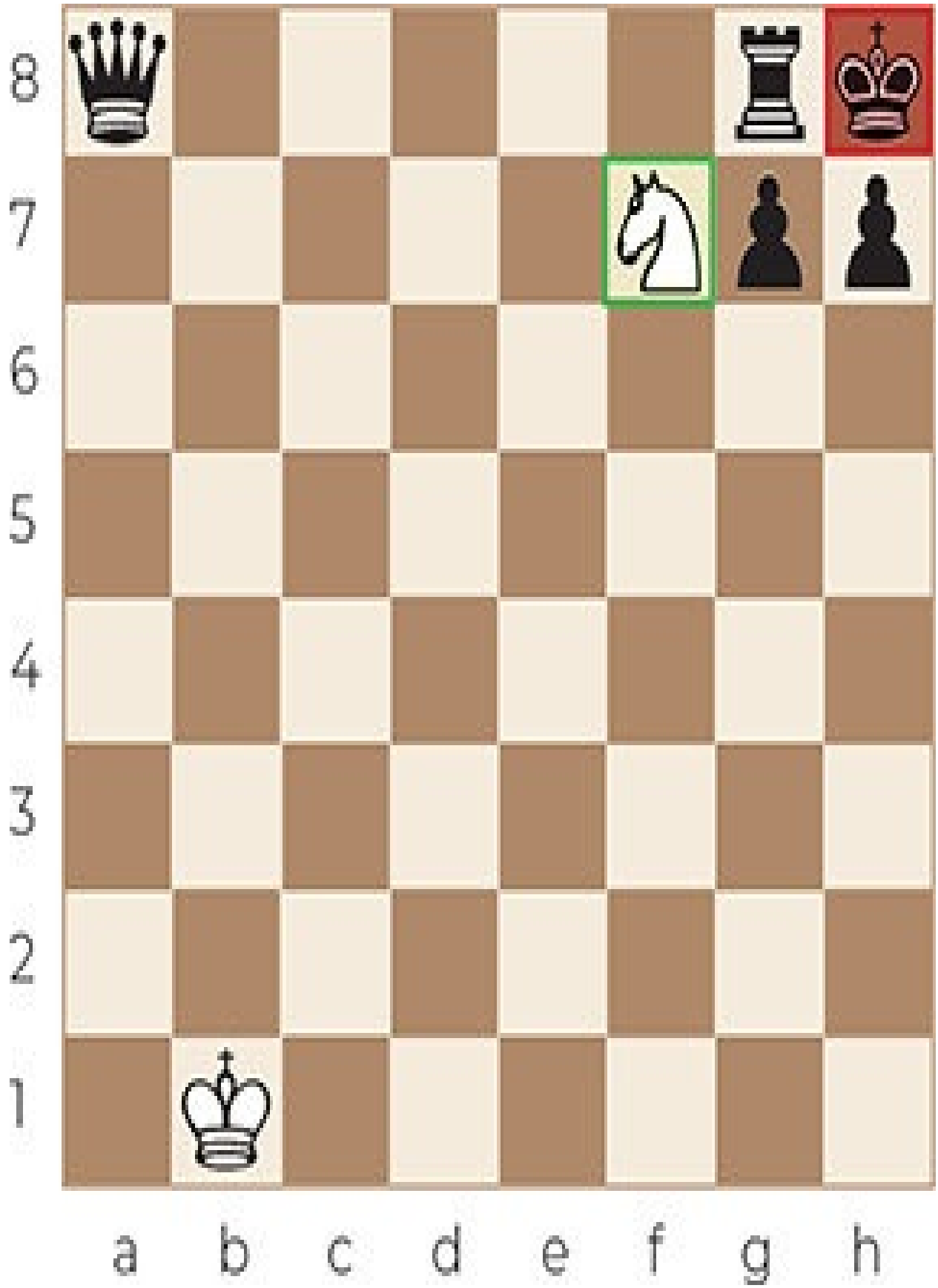
Smothered mate can already occur in the opening, due to an error of the opponent, as we will see in some examples.

Smothered mate 1

Often, a Smothered mate is preceded by knight (double) checks followed by a queen sacrifice to force the opponent to trap his own king. This type of Smothered mate is also known as Philidor’s Legacy, named after François-André Danican Philidor (1726-1795), because an example of a Smothered mate appeared in one of Philidor’s books.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

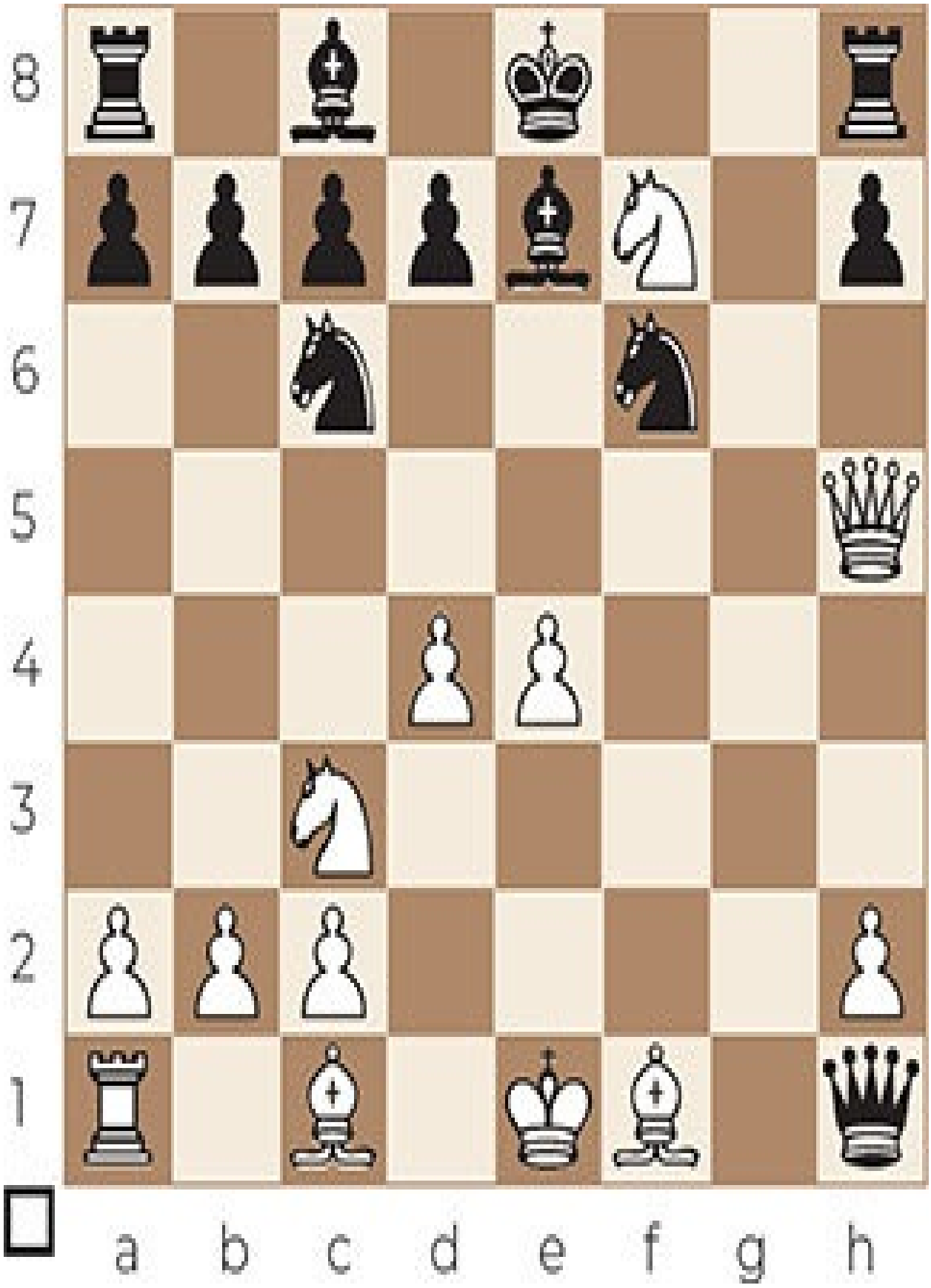
1.♘f7+ ♔g8 2.♘h6+ ♔h8 3.♕g8+ ♖xg8 4.♘f7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 50

Bird – NN

1869


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

12.♘d6+ ♔d8 13.♕e8+ ♖xe8 14.♘f7#

Game 51

Vepkhvishvili – Magalashvili

1966

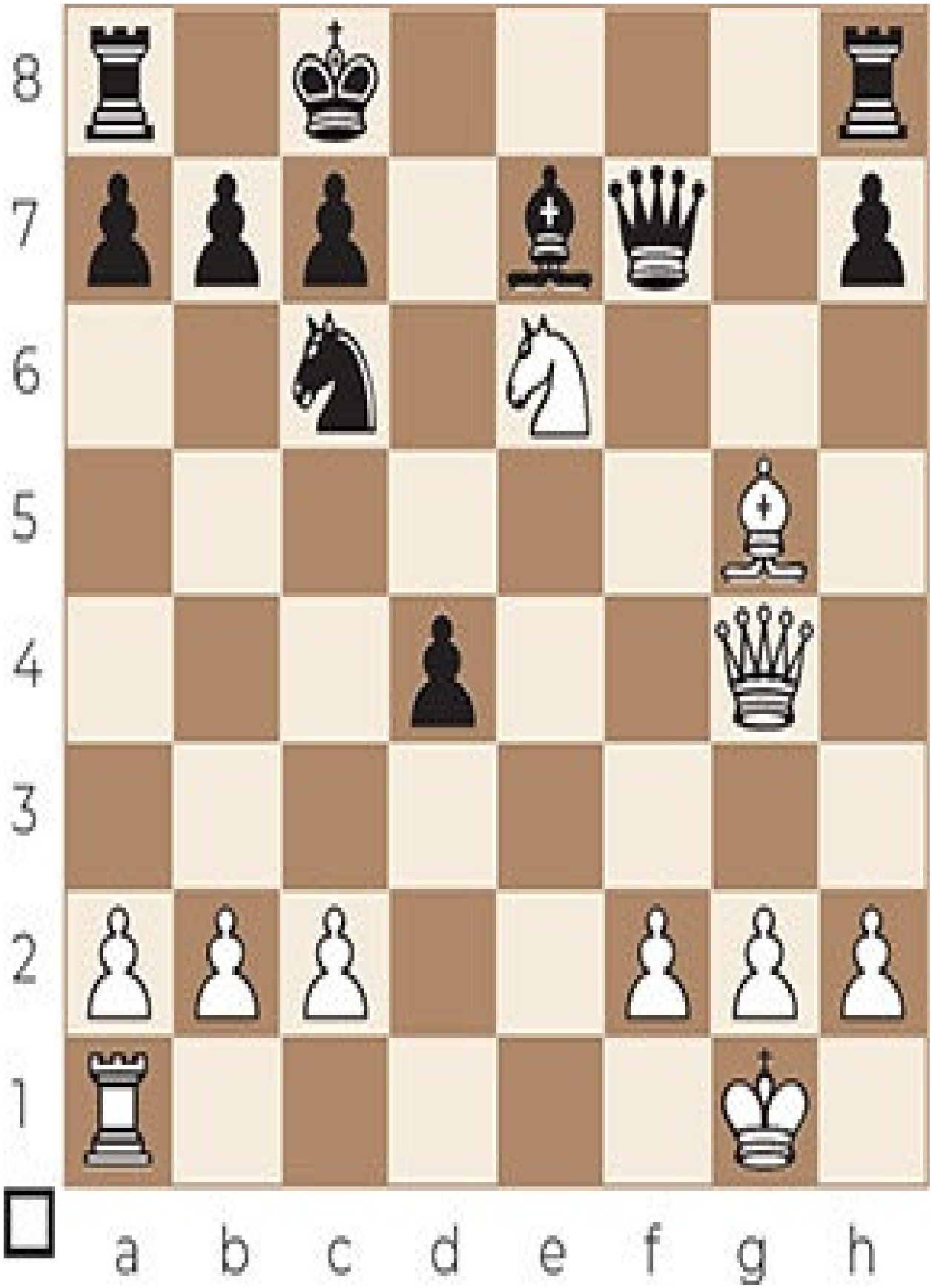
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

18.♘f7+ ♔g8 19.♘h6+ ♔h8 20.♕g8+ ♖xg8 21.♘f7#

Game 52

Morphy – Schrufer

1859


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

20.♘c5+ ♔b8 21.♘d7+ ♔c8 22.♘b6+ ♔b8 23.♕c8+ ♖xc8 24.♘d7#

Game 53

NN – Greco

1625

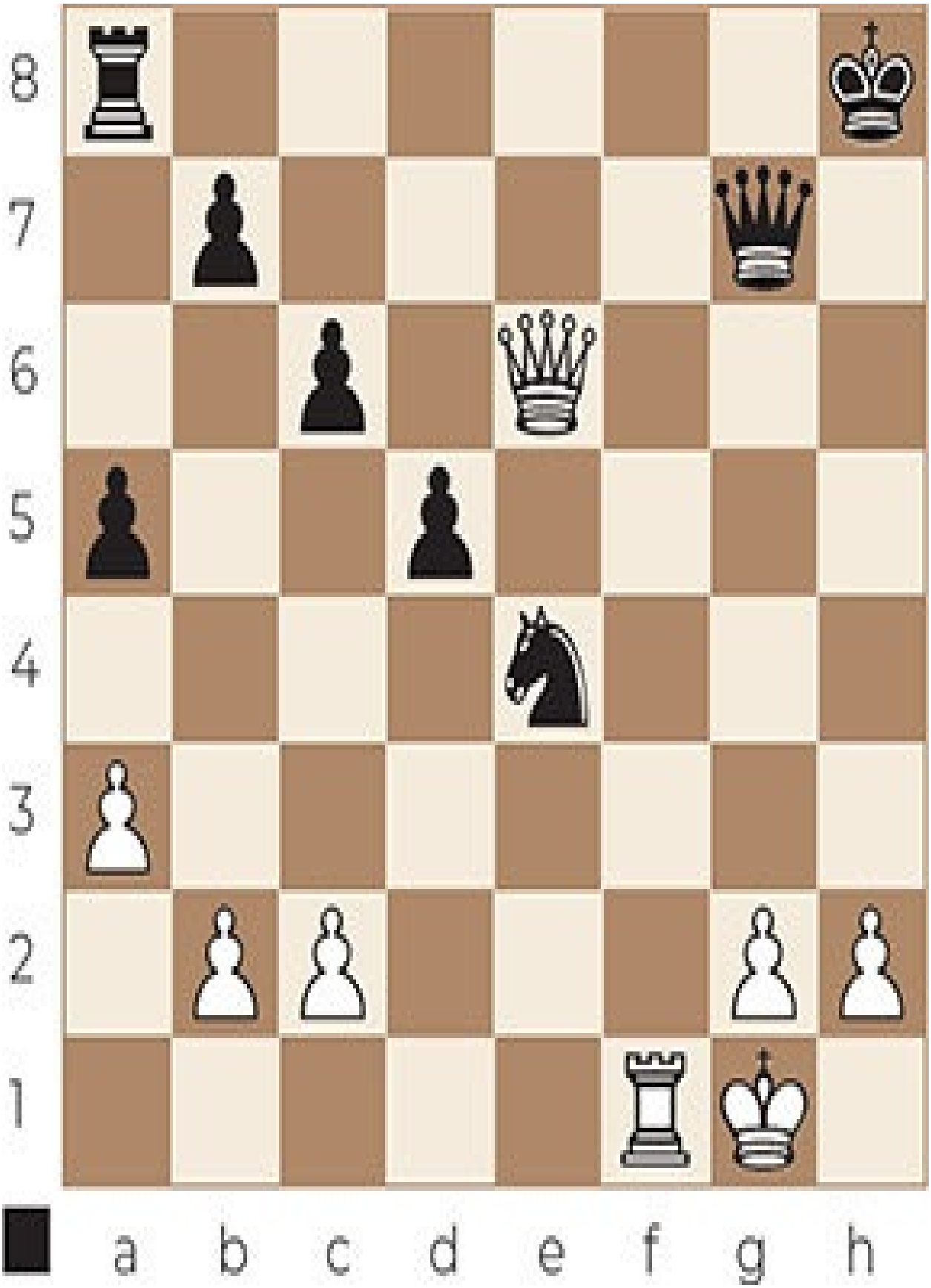
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

15...♘f2+ 16.♔e1 ♘d3+ 17.♔d1 ♕e1+ 18.♘xe1 ♘f2#

Game 54

Vilhete – Arias Formoso

2006


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27...♕d4+ 28.♔h1 ♘f2+ 29.♔g1

29.♖xf2 will lead to a Back rank mate after 29...♕d1+.

29...♘h3+ 30.♔h1 ♕g1+ 31.♖xg1 ♘f2#

Game 55

Duron Godoy – Garcia Castro

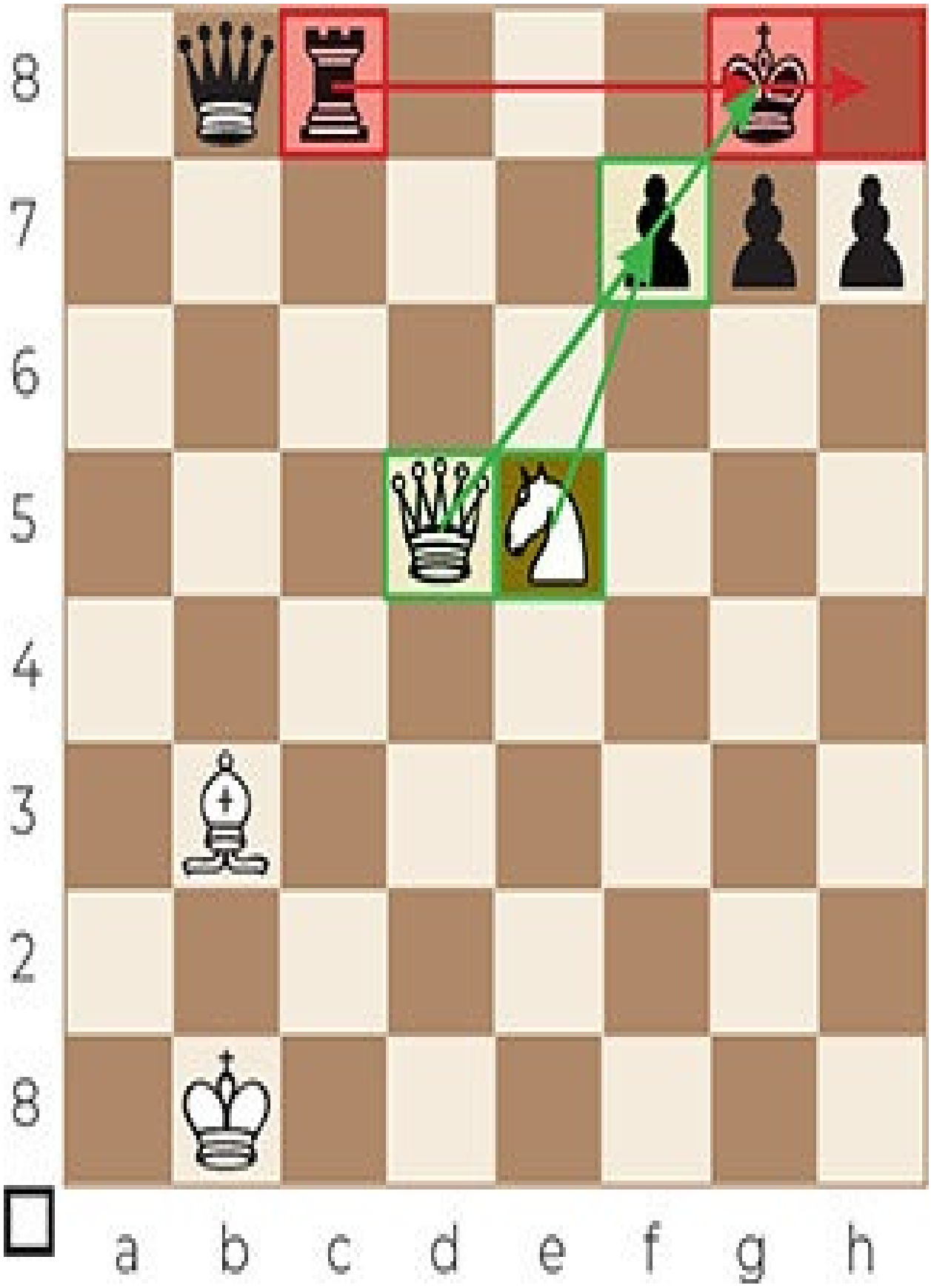
2004

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

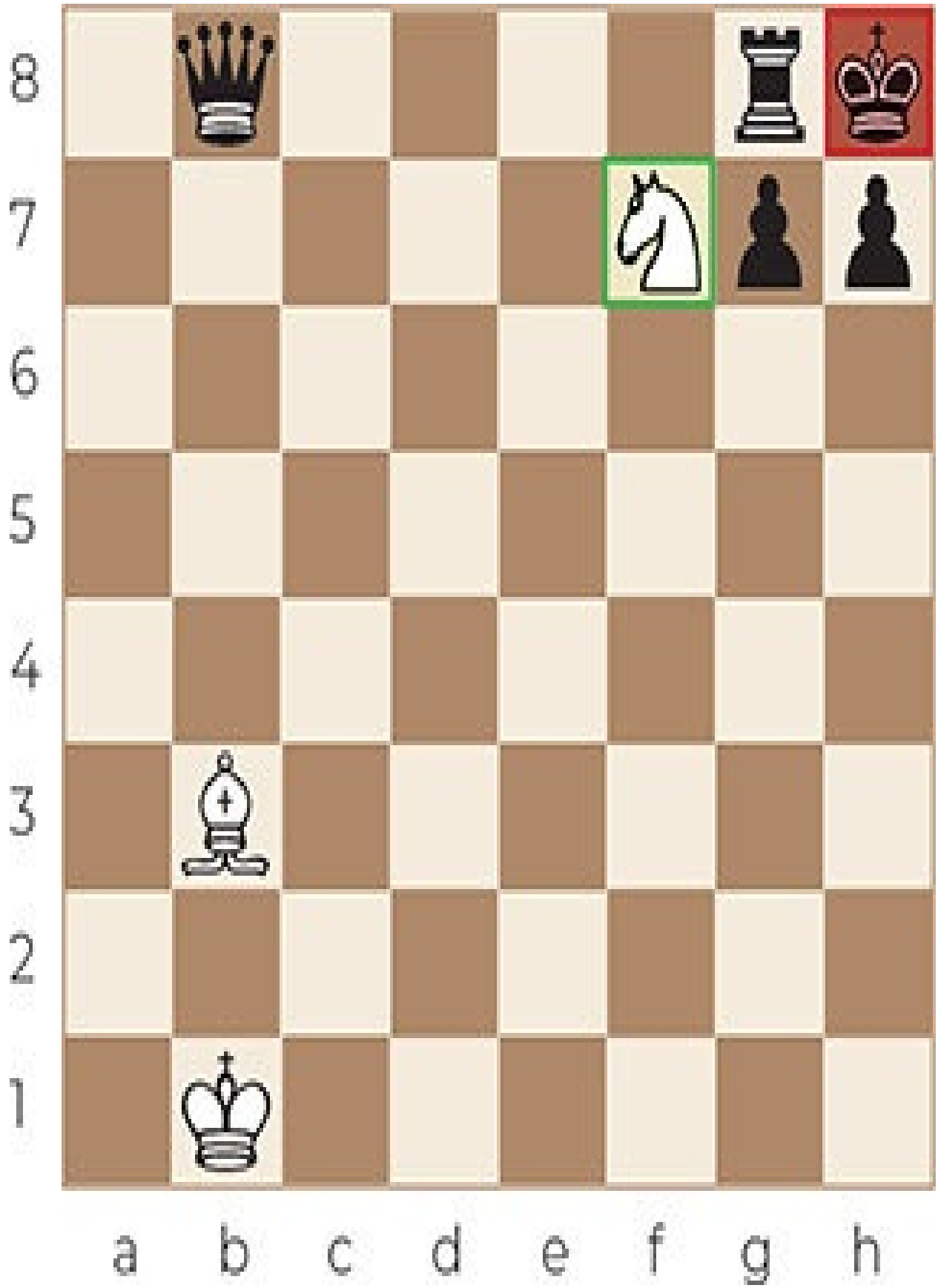
16...♕b6+ 17.♔h1 ♘f2+ 18.♔g1 ♘h3+ 19.♔h1 ♕g1+ 20.♖xg1 ♘f2#

Smothered mate 2

In some cases, the Smothered mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice where the queen is supported by a bishop instead of a knight.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
8
a b c d e f g h

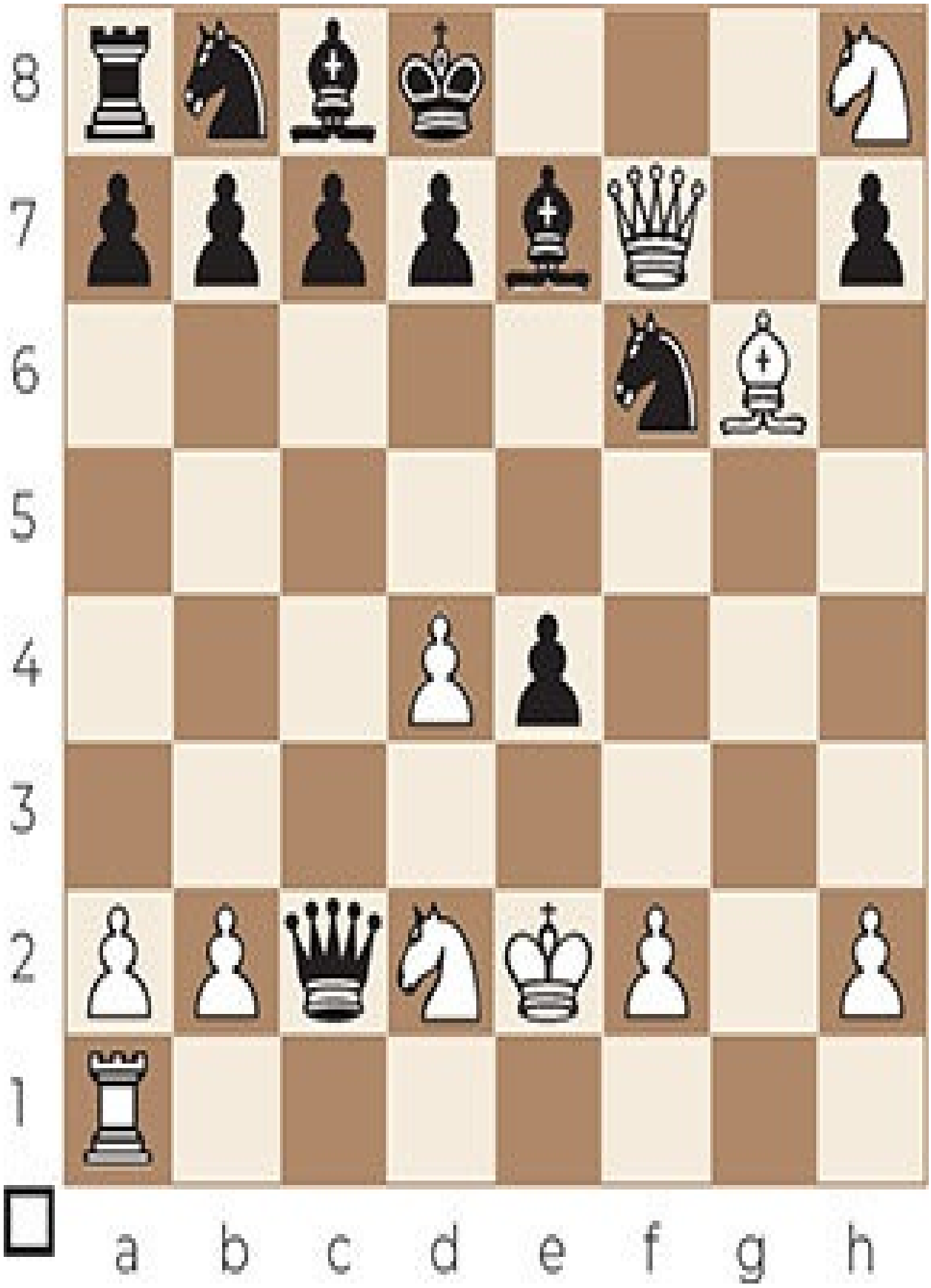
1.♕xf7+ ♔h8 2.♕g8+ ♖xg8 3.♘f7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 56

Moody – Smith

1982


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

15.♕e8+ ♘xe8 16.♘f7#

Game 57

Peine – Budde

1970

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

19.♕xf7+ ♔h8 20.♕g8+ ♖xg8 21.♘f7#

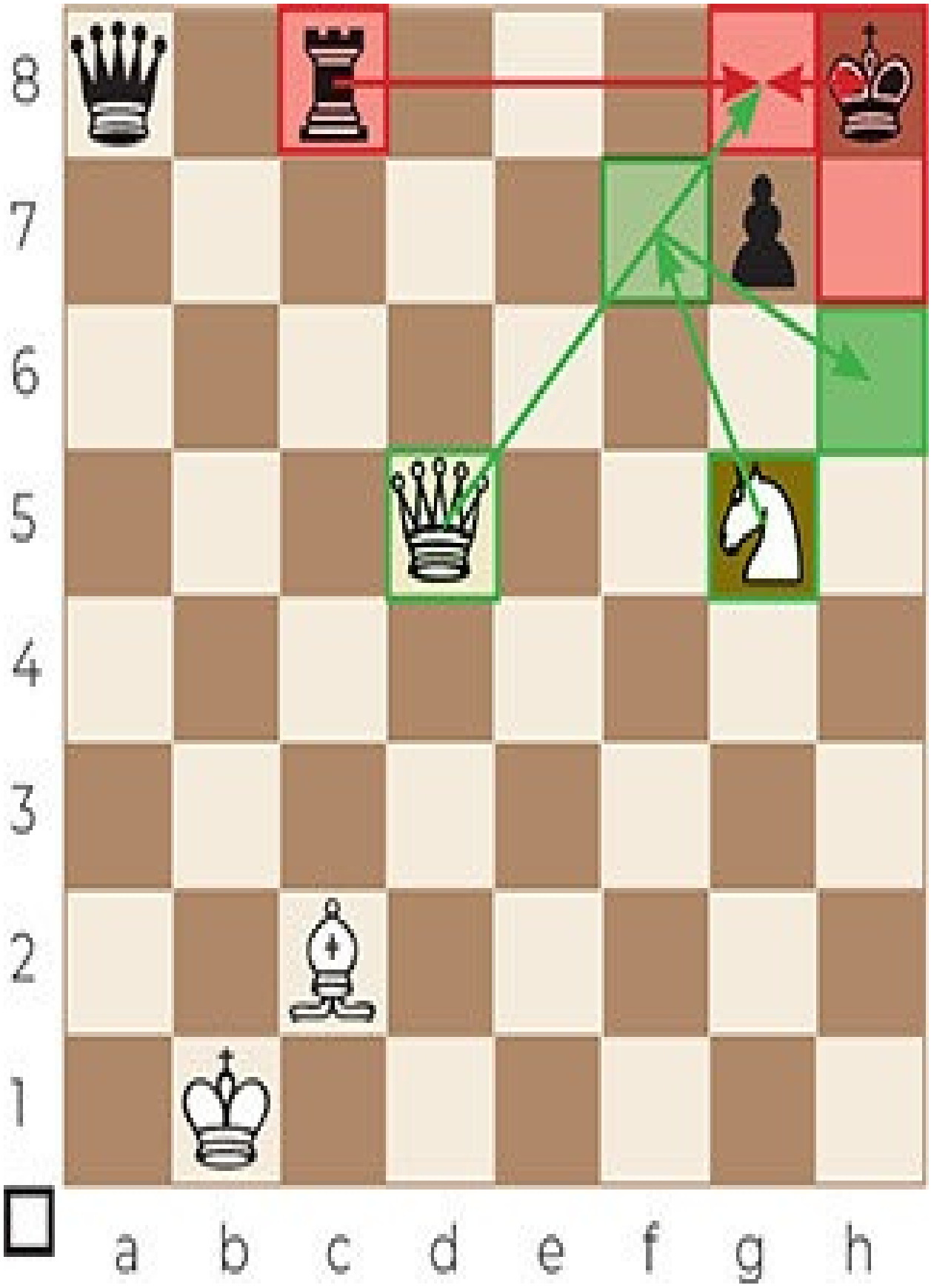
CHAPTER 7

Suffocation mate

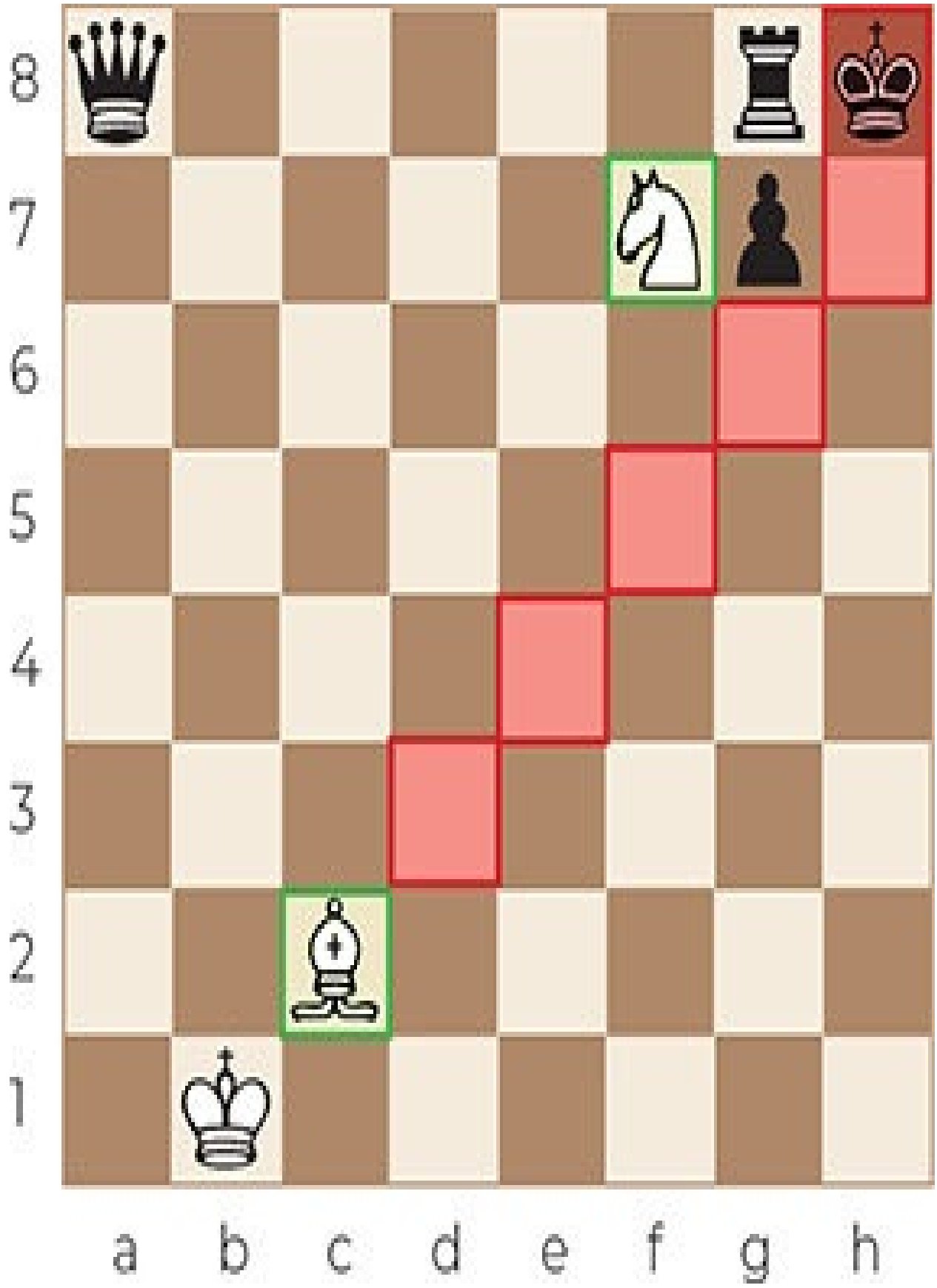
In the Suffocation mate, a knight delivers checkmate to the king. A bishop covers one or two escape squares, and the opponent's own pieces block the escape via the squares not covered by the bishop. The Suffocation mate is a common way to checkmate.

Suffocation mate 1

Sometimes, a Suffocation mate is preceded by the same knight maneuver and queen sacrifice as in the Smothered mate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

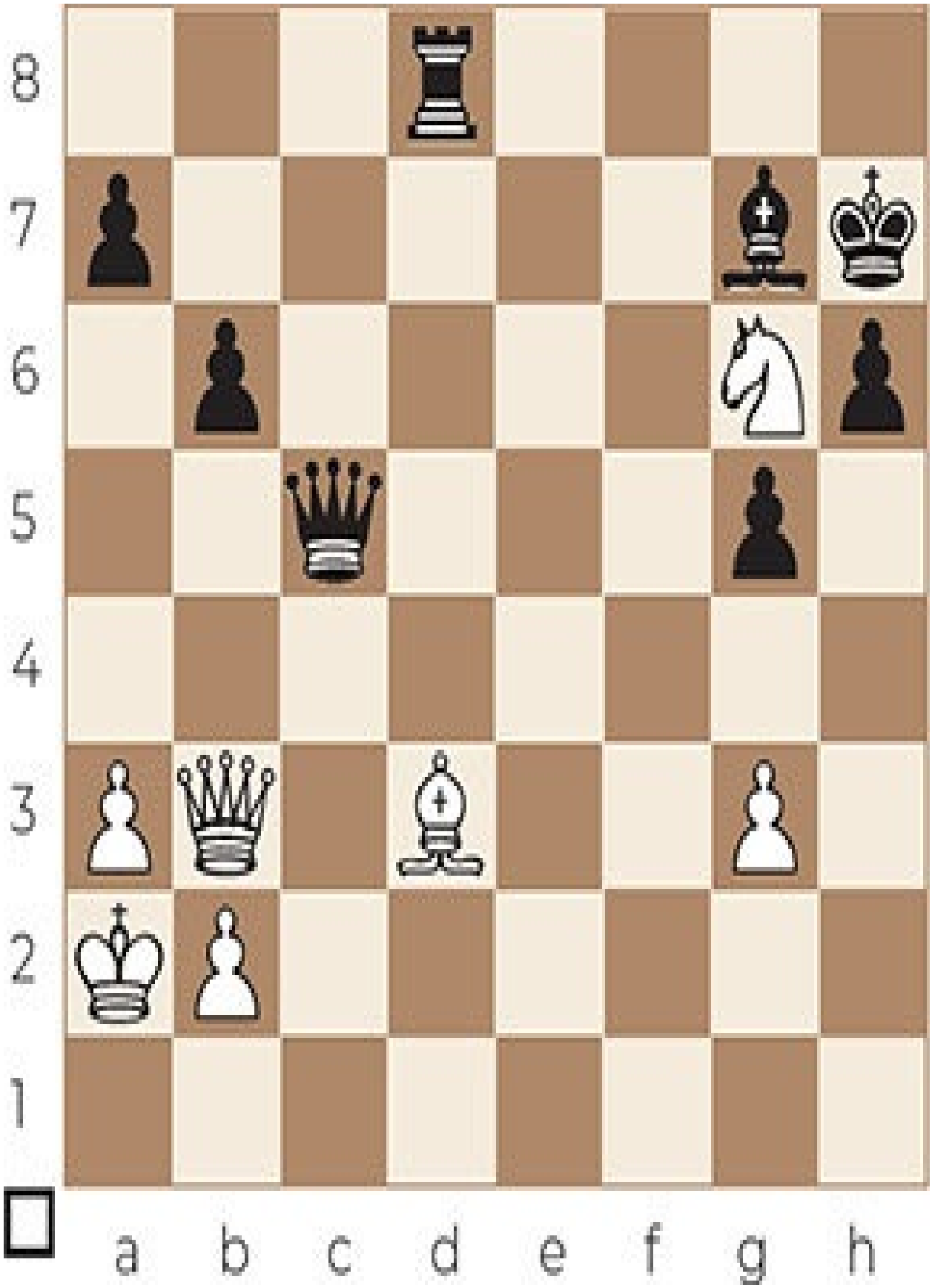
1.♘f7+♔g8 2.♘h6+ ♔h8 3.♕g8+ ♖xg8 4.♘f7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 58

Topalov – Bareev

2004


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

41.♘e7+ ♔h8

41...♖xd3 42.♕g8#.

42.♕g8+ ♖xg8 43.♘g6+ ♔h7 44.♘e5+ ♔h8 45.♘f7#

Game 59

Mullon – Daurelle

2011

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

25...♘f2+ 26.♔g1 ♘xh3+ 27.♔h1 ♕g1+ 28.♘xg1 ♘f2#

Game 60

Moreira Santos – Matsuura

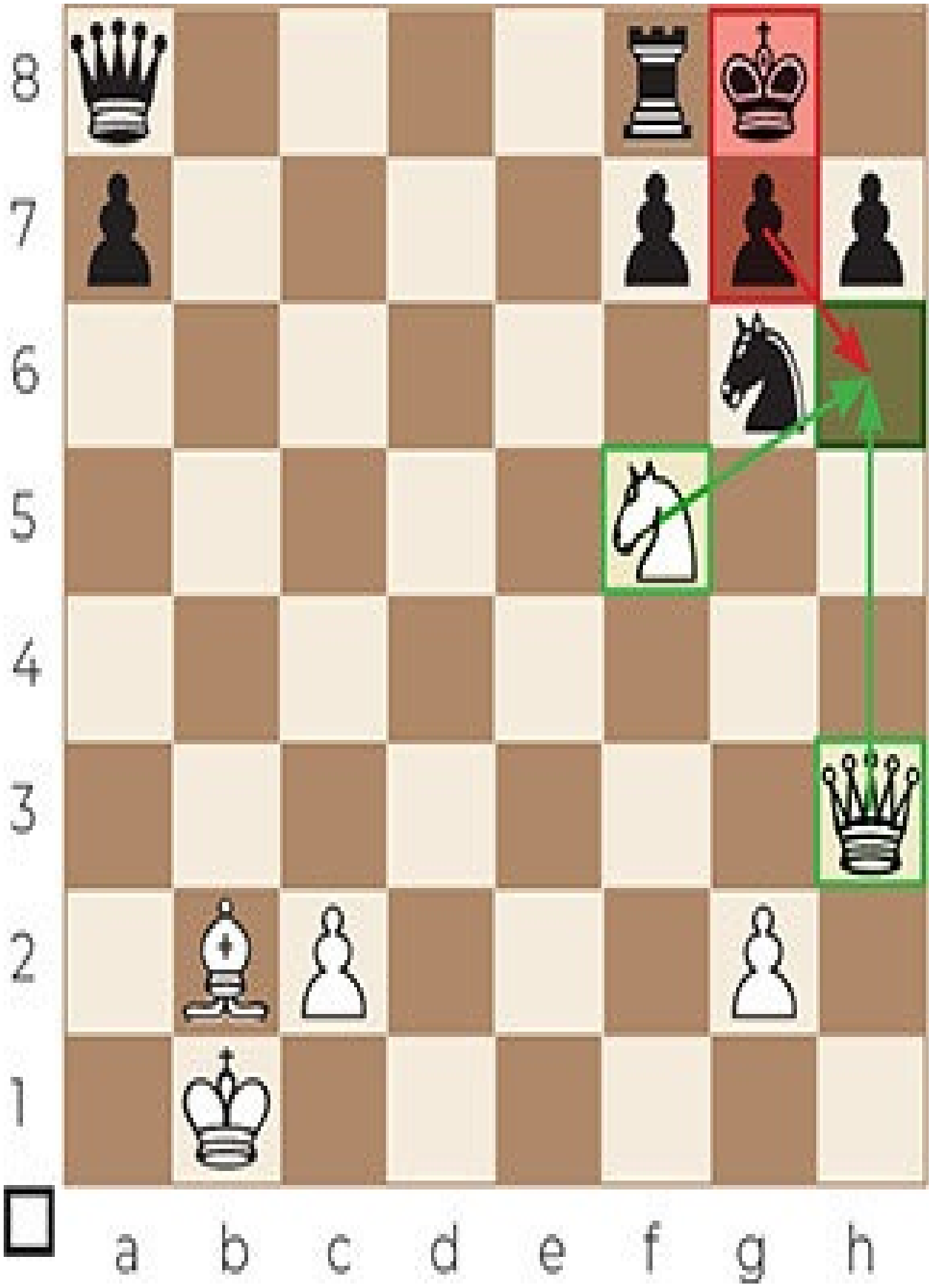
2002

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

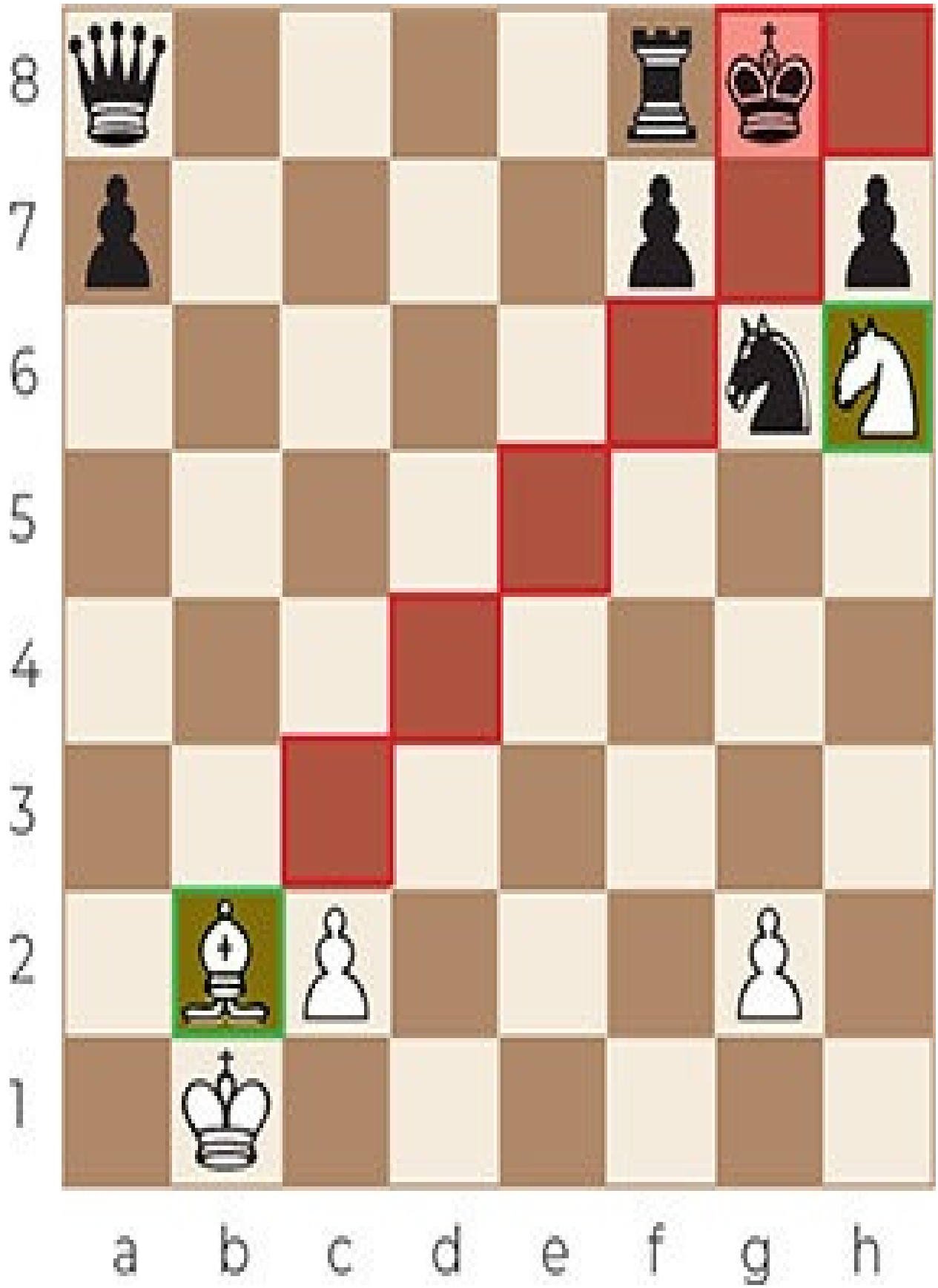
29...♘xg3+ 30.♔g1 ♕f1+ 31.♖xf1 ♘e2#

Suffocation mate 2

Sometimes, a Suffocation mate is preceded by a spectacular queen sacrifice. If the queen is not taken, she will deliver checkmate on the next move. If the queen is taken, a Suffocation mate will be the result.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕h6 gxh6 2.♘xh6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 61

Rabinovich – Goglidze

1939

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

23.♕h6 gxh6

None of the alternatives are good for Black:

A) 23...♕e5 24.♗xe5 gxh6 25.♘xh6# (Suffocation mate);

B) 23...♕f6 24.♗xf6 gxf6 (24...gxh6 25.♘xh6# – Suffocation mate) 25.♕g7#;

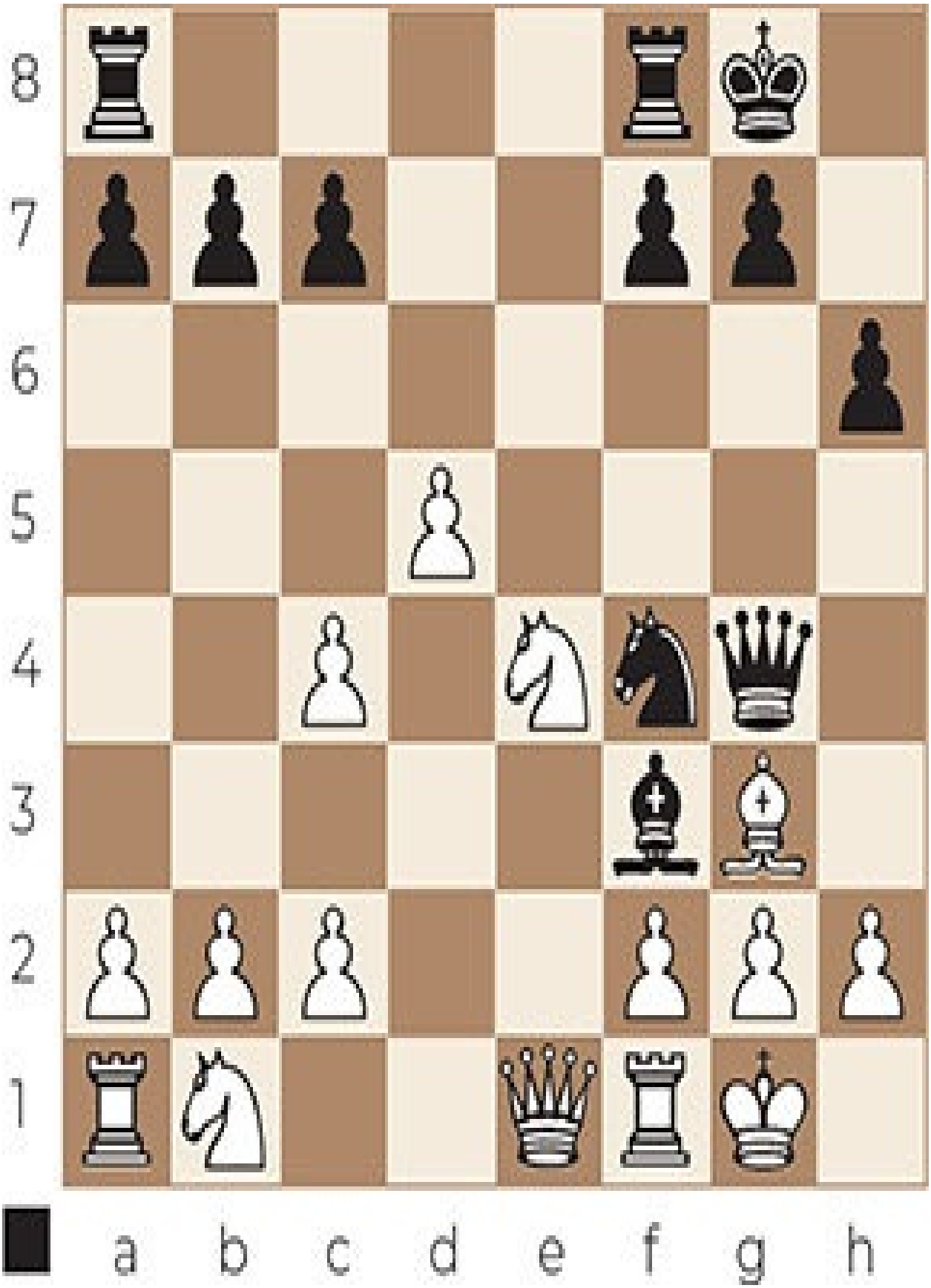
C) 23...♕xf5 24.♕xg7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

24.♘xh6#

Game 62

Field – Tenner

1923

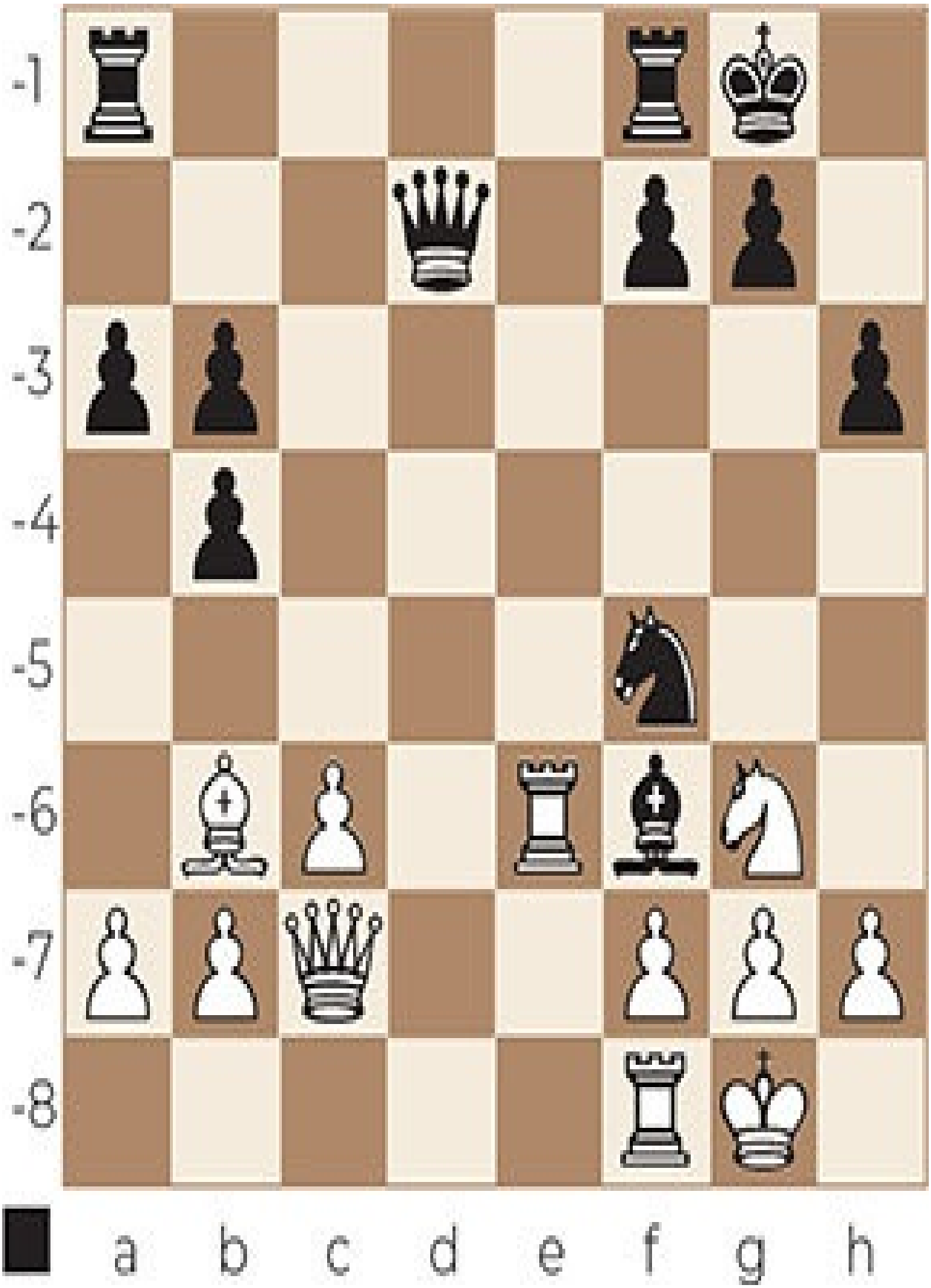

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

17...♕h3 18.gxh3 ♘xh3#

Game 63

Lengyel – Mikhalevski

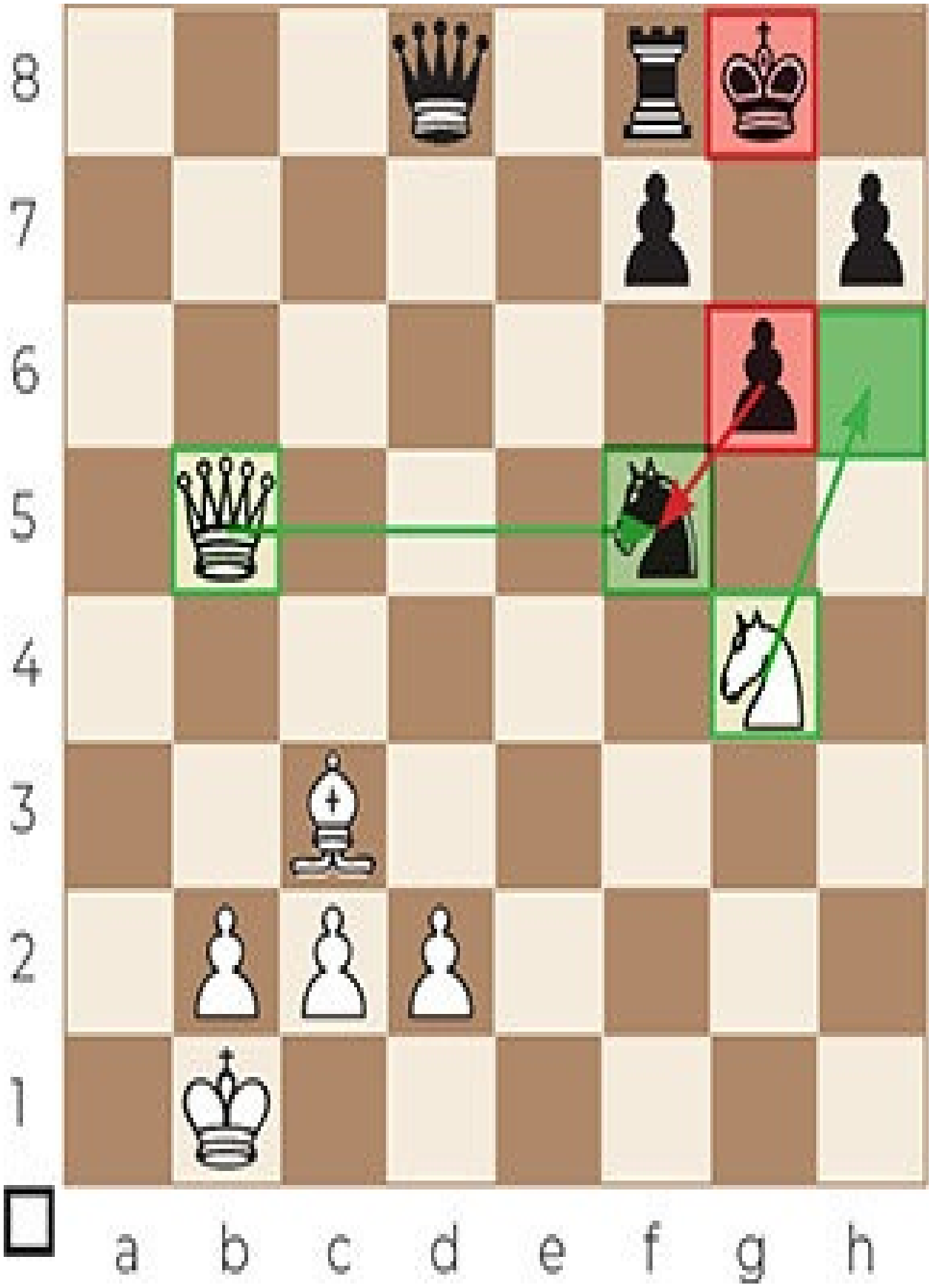
1993


-1
-2
-3
-4
-5
-6
-7
-8
a b c d e f g h

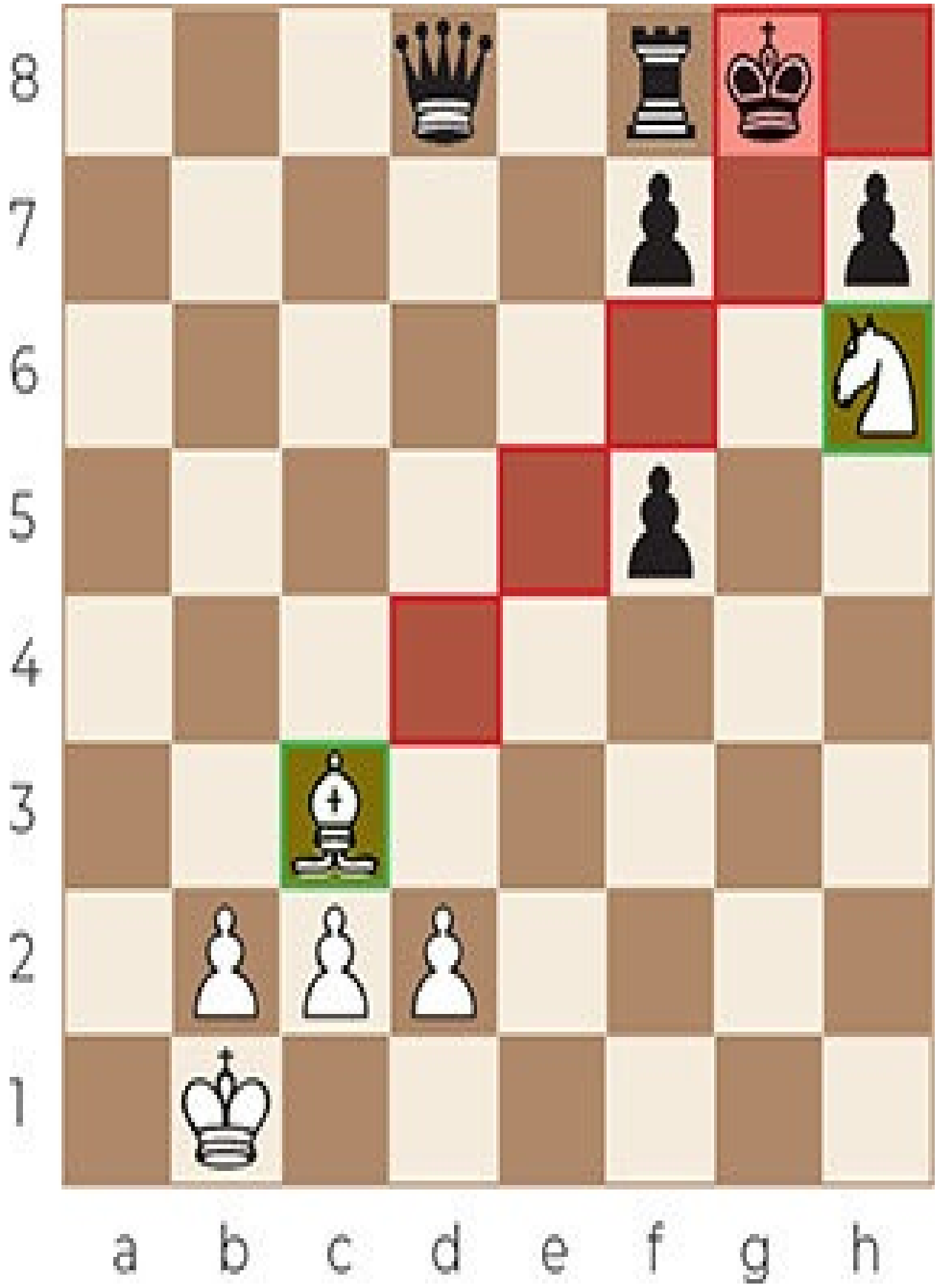
22...♕h3 23.gxh3 ♘xh3#

Suffocation mate 3

Sometimes, a Suffocation mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice to remove or decoy a defender of the king. If the queen is not taken, your opponent loses material. If the queen is taken, a Suffocation mate will be the result.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕xf5 gxf5 2.♘h6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 64

Young/Burille – Ware/Snow

1888

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

19.♕xd7+ ♘xd7 20.♘d6#

Game 65

Legky – Efimov

1994

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

31.♕b5+

Or 31.♕a4+ b5 32.♕xb5+ ♖d7 33.♕xd7#.

31...♕xb5

31...♖d7 32.♕xd7#.

32.♘c7#

Game 66

Benko – Hartmann

1984

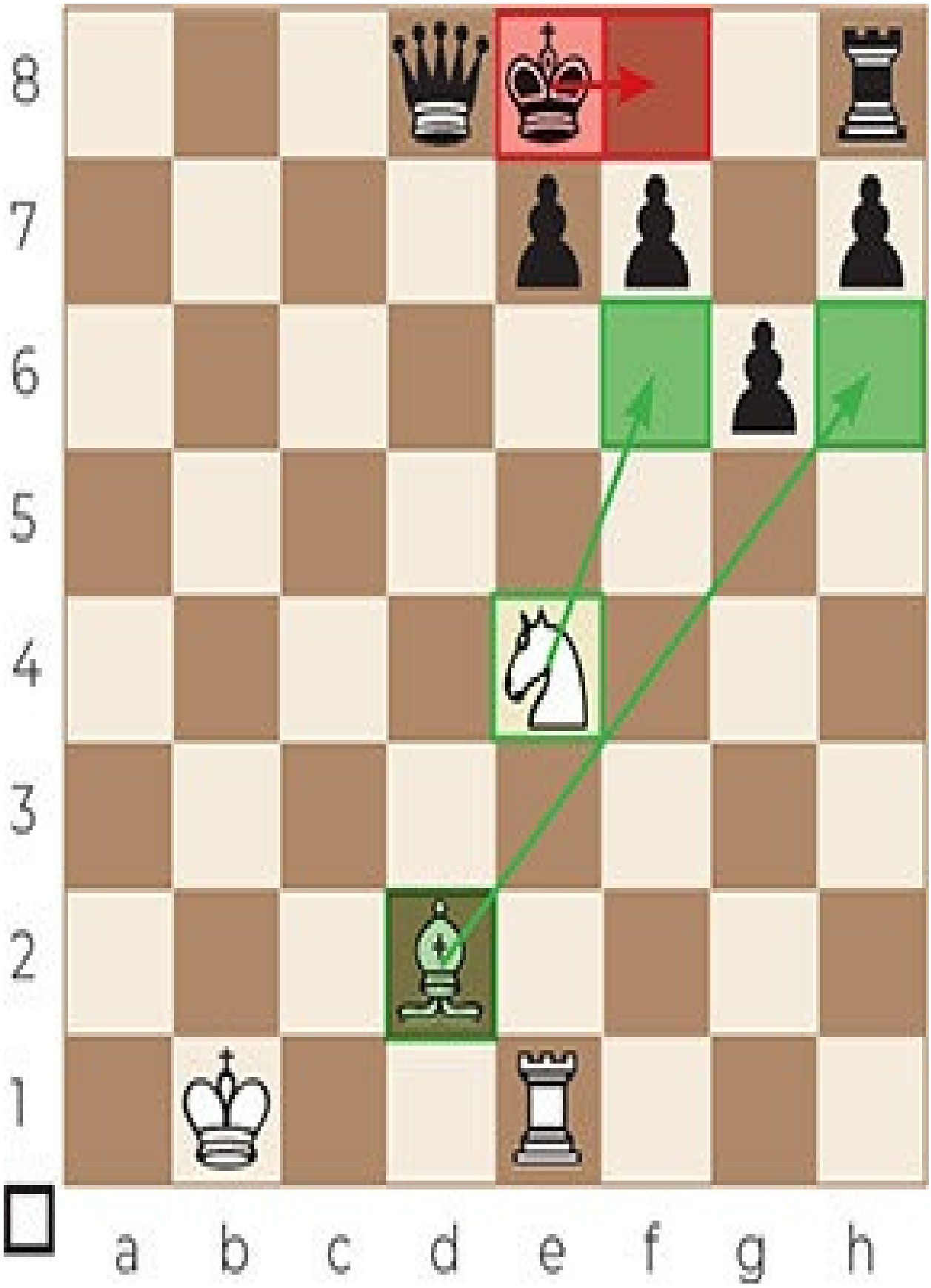
8
7
6
5
4
8
7
6
a b c d e f g h

21...♕xg2+ 22.♔xg2 ♗f3+ 23.♔g1 ♘h3#

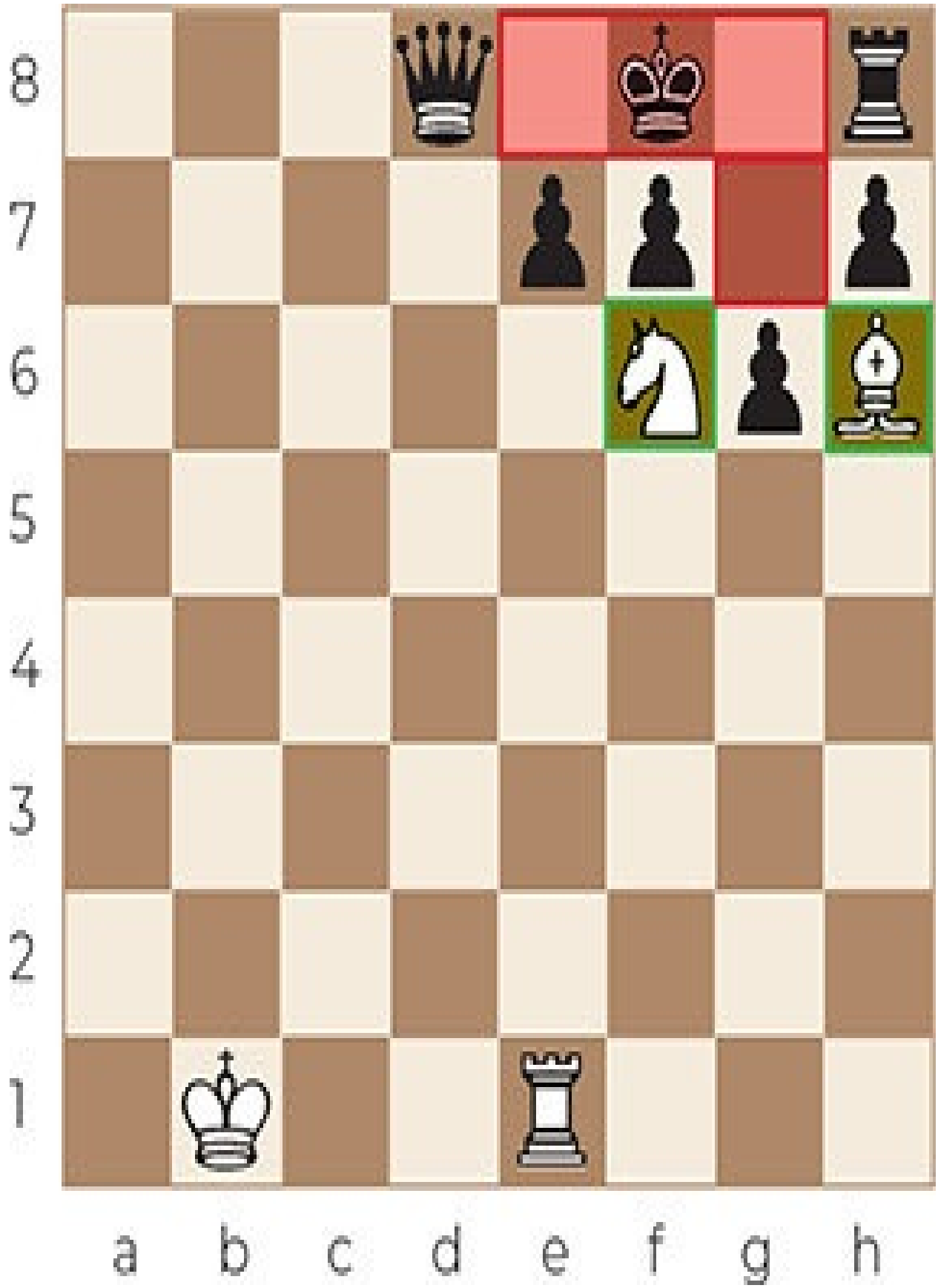
Suffocation mate 4

Sometimes, a bishop delivers checkmate to the king that is surrounded by its own pieces, while a knight covers one or two escape squares.

Technically this isn’t a Suffocation mate. However, it shows how well a knight and bishop work together, especially when they are on squares of the same color. In most cases, the checkmated king failed to castle in time.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1. ♘f6+ ♔f8 2. ♗h6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 67

Chandler – Gilliand

1981

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

12.♘xf6+ ♔f8 13.♗h6#

Game 68

Zimmermann – Hübner

1977

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

18.♕xe5+ ♕e6

Black’s alternatives:

18...♘xe5 19.♖d8# (Arabian mate).

18...♗e7 19.♕xe7#.

19.♘f6+

To distract the g-pawn. Playing 19.♕xe6+ here is too early. This doesn’t work because after 19...fxe6, the black king can escape via f7.

19...gxf6

19...♘xf6 would end in an Arabian mate once again, after 20.♖d8#.

20.♕xe6+

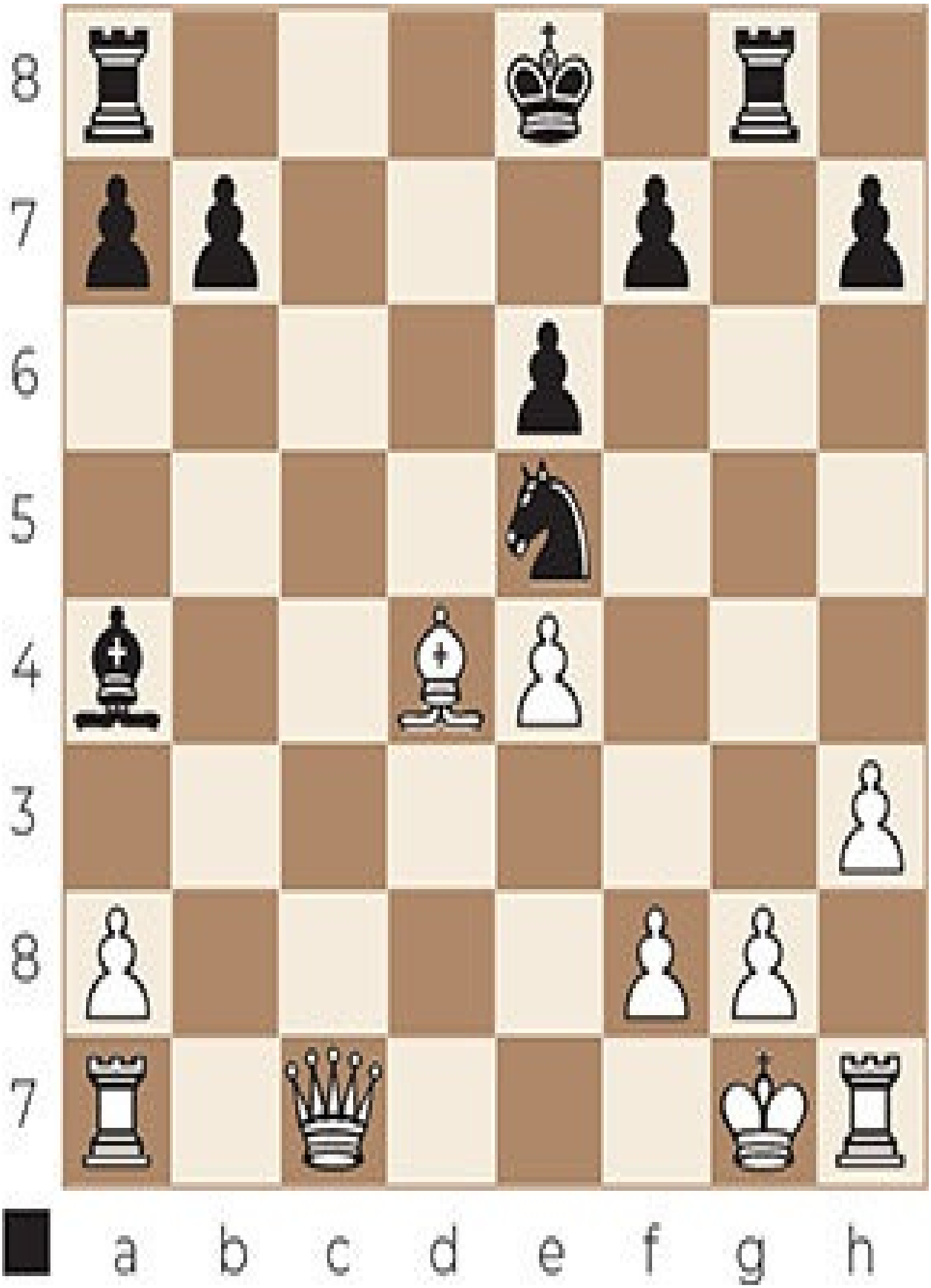
To open the h5-e8 diagonal for the bishop.

20...fxe6 21.♗h5#

Game 69

Subaric – Trifunovic

1946


8
7
6
5
4
3
8
7
a b c d e f g h

20...♘f3+ 21.♔f1 ♗b5+ 22.♕c4 ♗xc4#

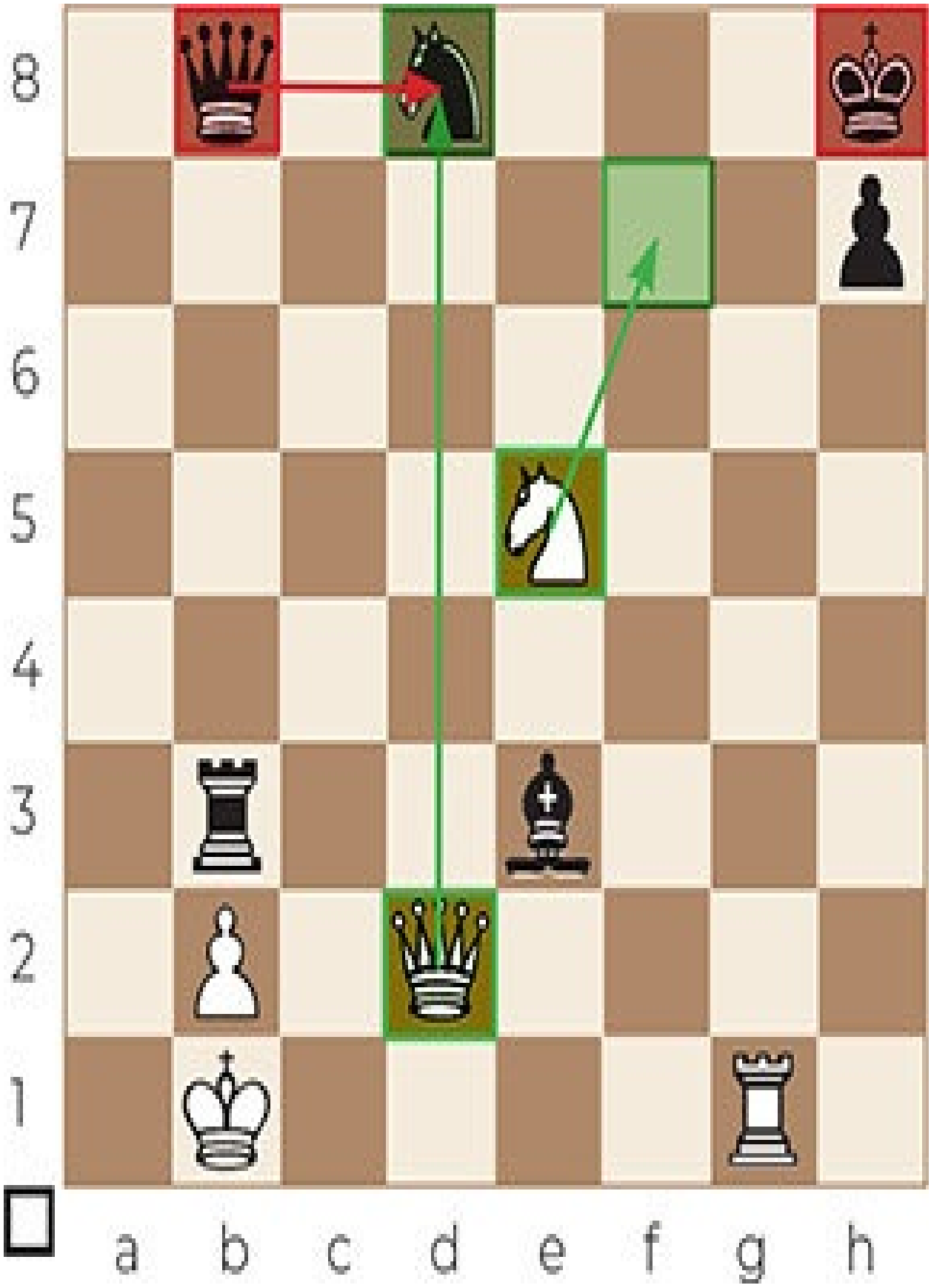
CHAPTER 8

Corner mate

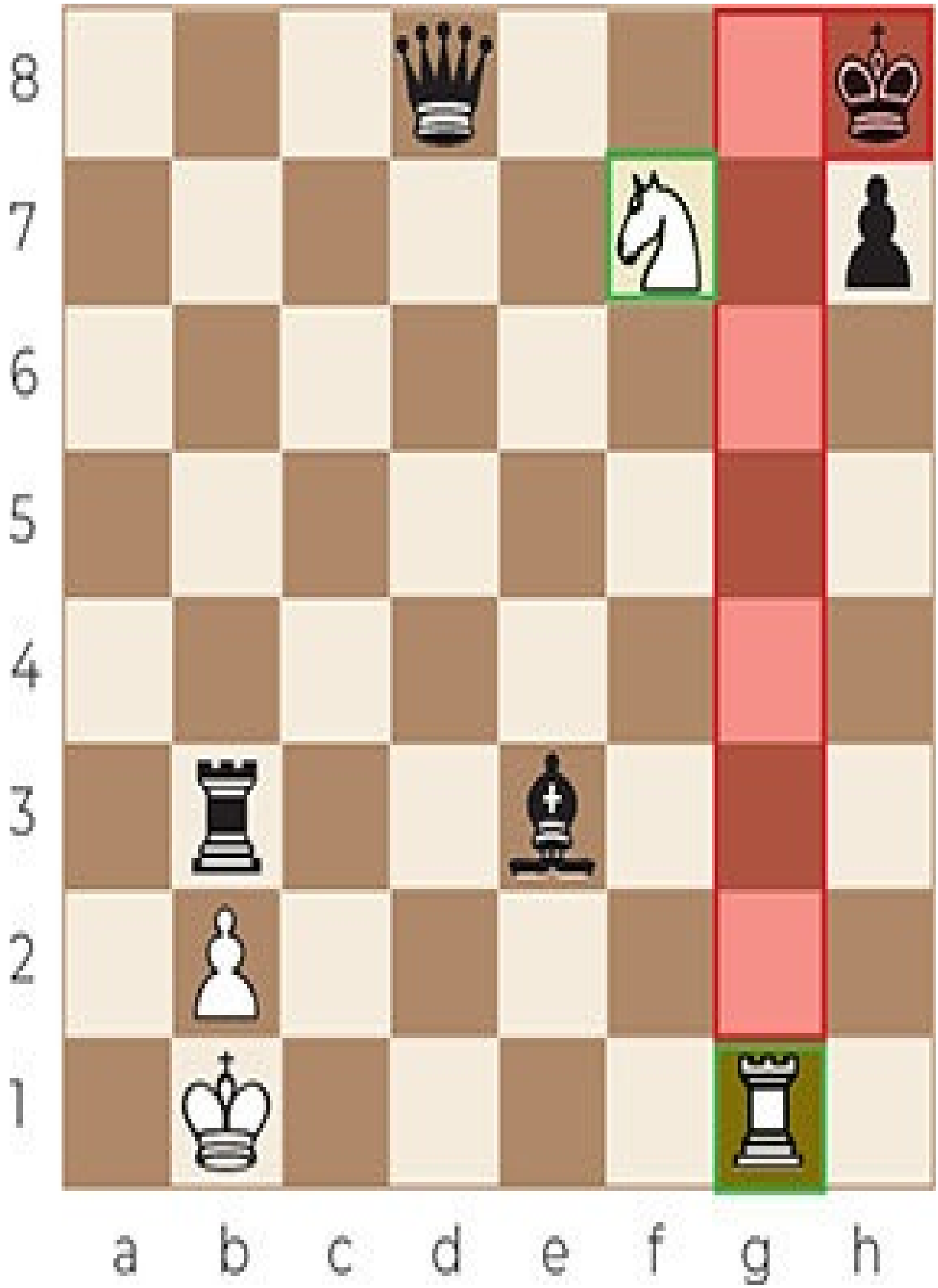
In the Corner mate, a knight delivers checkmate to the king in the corner, while a rook or queen covers the adjacent file (the b-file or g-file). One of the opponent's own pieces (in most cases a pawn) blocks the escape via the square(s) not covered by the rook/queen.

When the king is checkmated by a knight on the edge rather than in the corner (with friendly pieces on either side), while a rook or queen covers the adjacent file, this is considered to be a case of 'Similar to Corner mate' in this book.

Sometimes, a Corner mate is preceded by a sacrifice to remove a key defender.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕xd8+ ♕xd8 2.♘f7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 70

MacQueen – Rout

2012

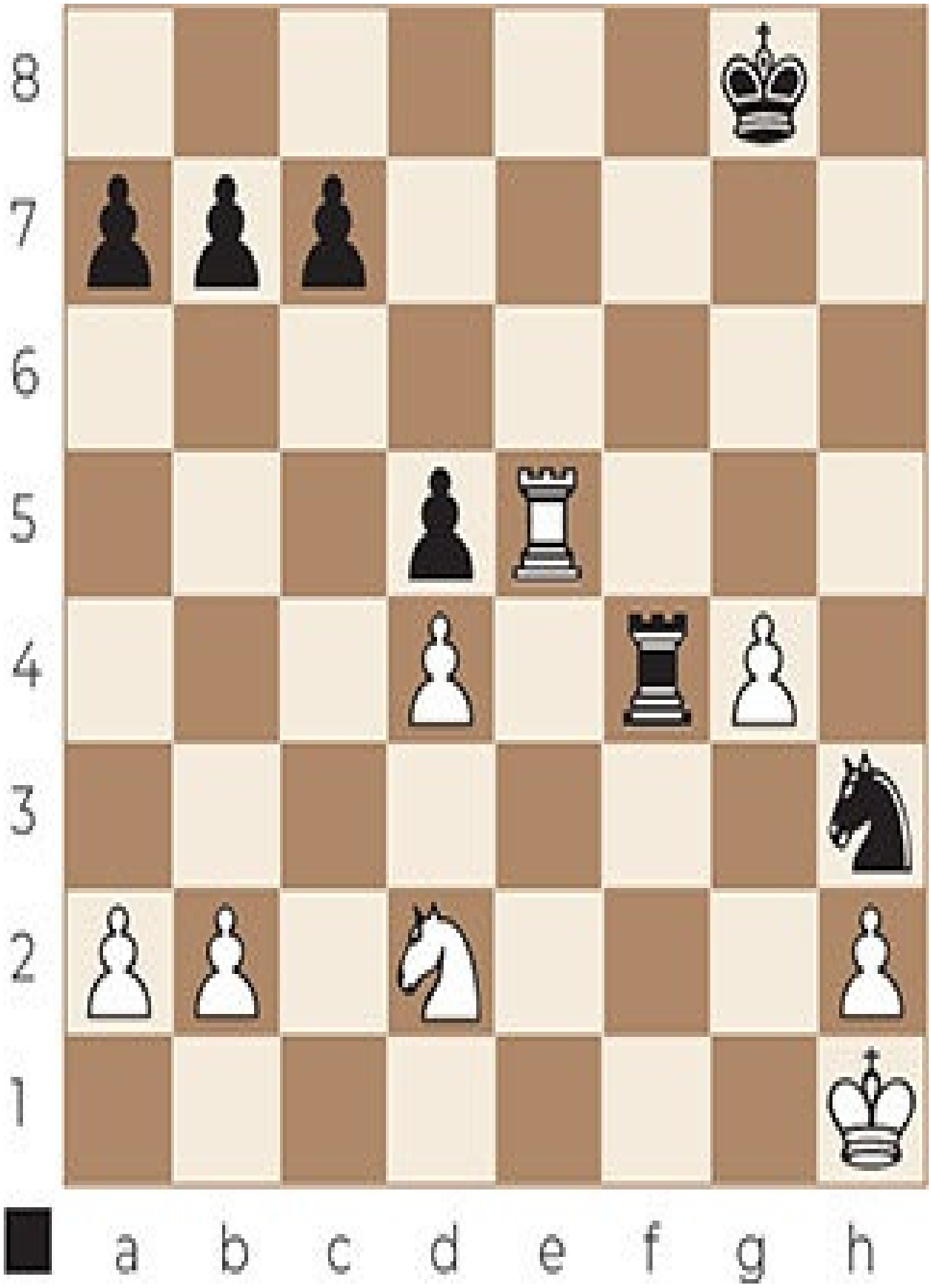
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33...♘c2#

Game 71

Zubatch – Feldman

1992


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

30...♖xg4 31.♘f3

It is impossible for White to prevent both 31...♖g1# and 31...♘f2#.

31.....♘f2#

Game 72

Visser – Speelman

2006

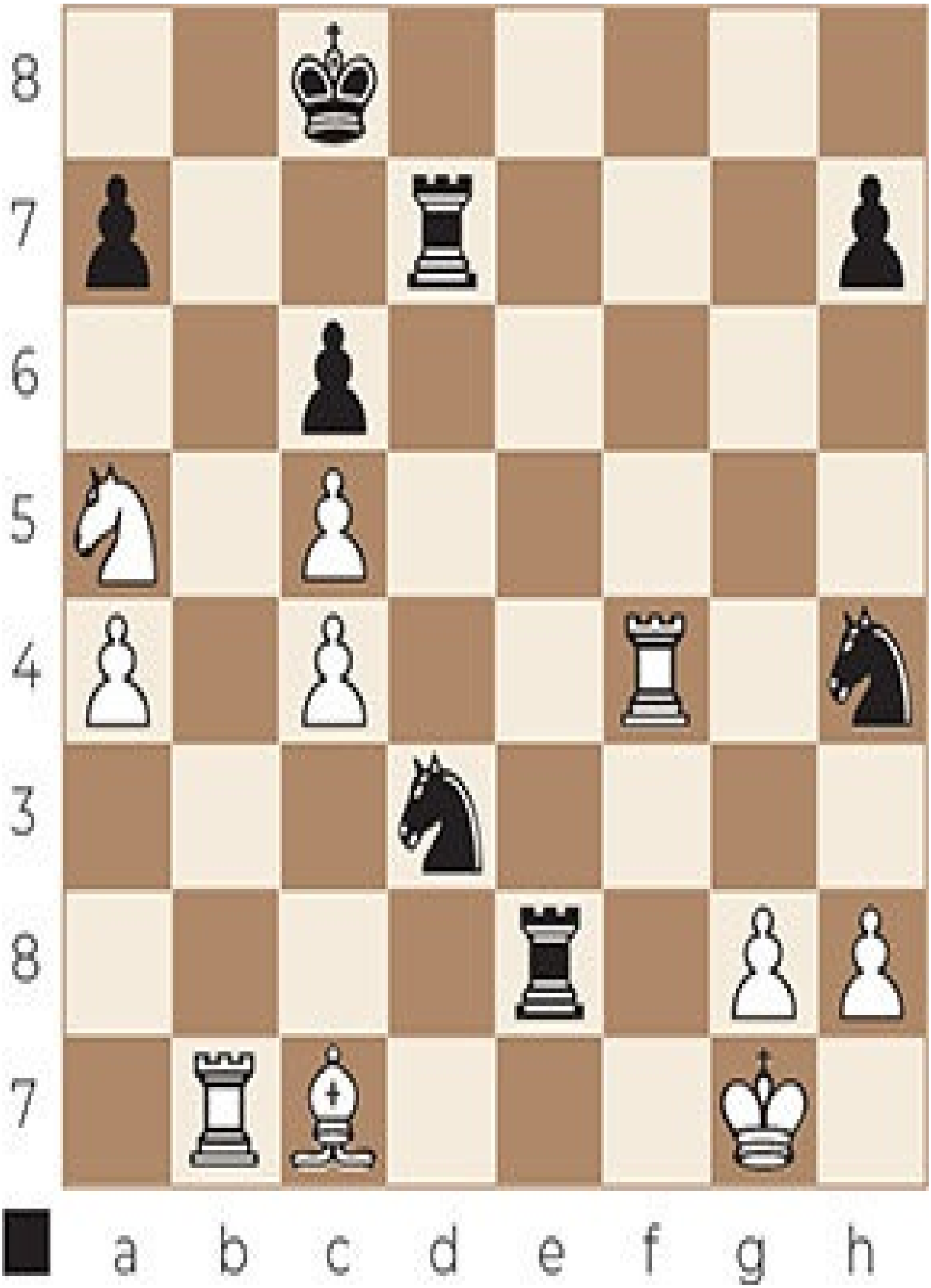
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27...♕g1+ 28.♖xg1 ♘f2#

Game 73

Bogdanovic – Uhlmann

1965


8
7
6
5
4
3
8
7
a b c d e f g h

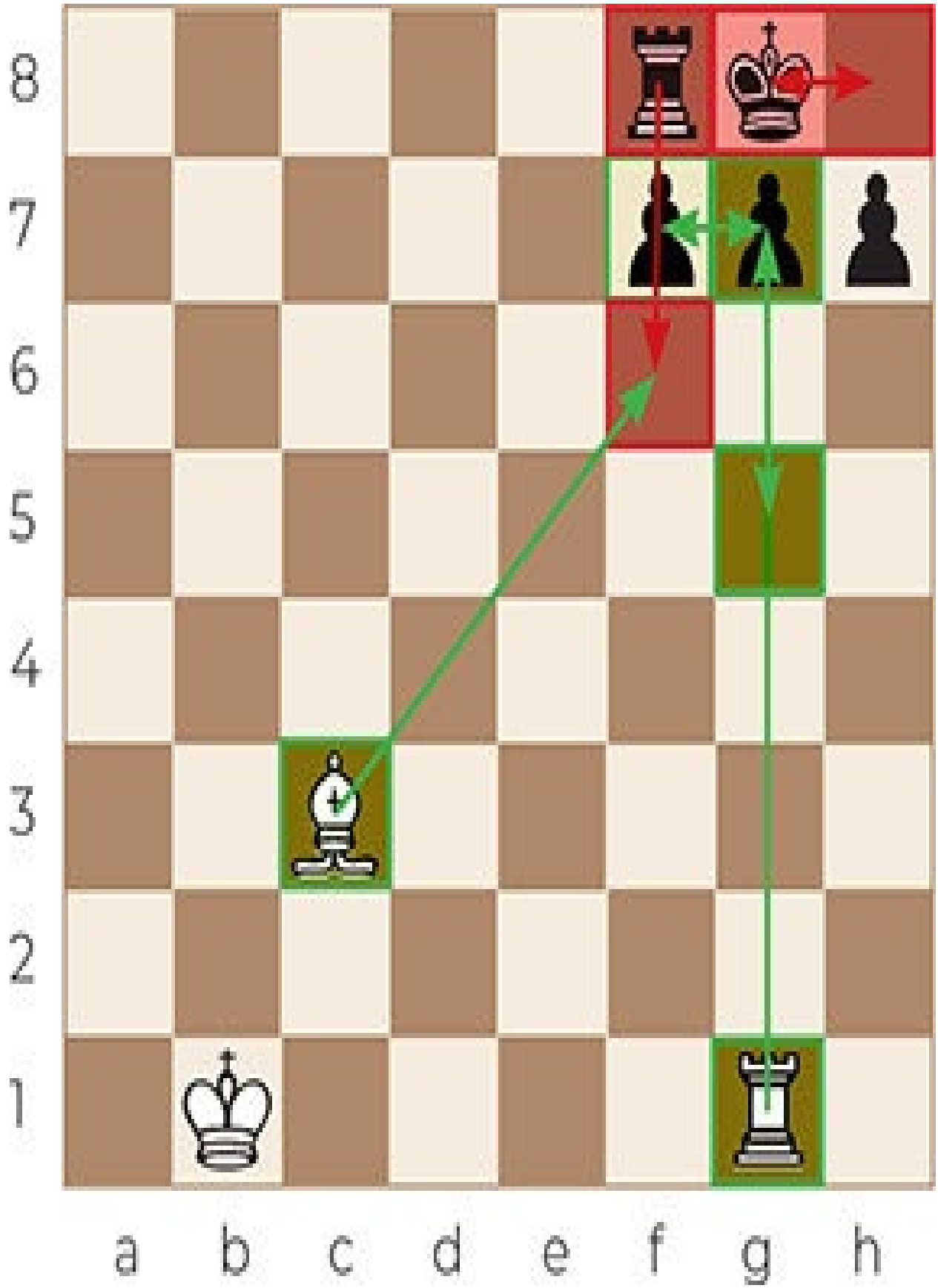
31...♖e1+ 32.♖f1 ♘f3+ 33.gxf3 ♖g7+ 34.♔h1 ♘f2#

CHAPTER 9

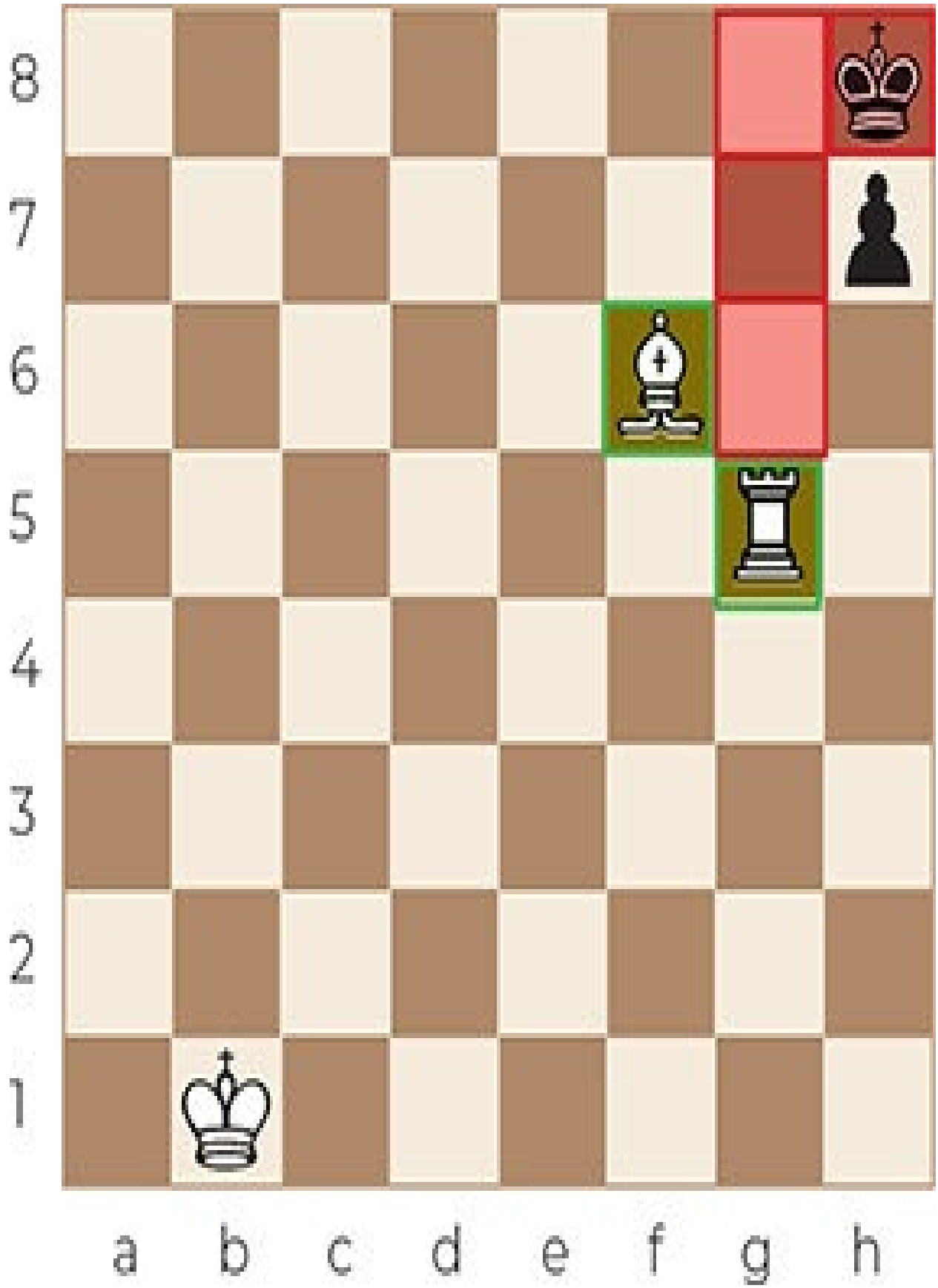
Morphy’s mate

In Morphy’s mate, a bishop (or in rare cases a queen) delivers checkmate to the king, while a rook prevents a horizontal or vertical escape. Other escape squares are blocked by the opponent’s own pieces (in most cases a single pawn). Note that this tactic only works if the bishop cannot be taken. The mate is named after the American chess genius Paul Morphy (1837-1884).

Often, Morphy’s mate is preceded by a check with a protected rook, followed by one or more discovered checks to eliminate important defenders of the king.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖xg7+ ♔h8 2.♖xf7+ ♔g8 3.♖g7+ ♔h8 4.♖g5+ ♖f6 5.♗xf6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 74

Owen – Burn

1887

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

17.♖g1+ ♔h8

After 17...♘g7, 18.♖xg7+ is the move. If Black takes the rook, 18...♔xg7, checkmate follows with 19.♕xf6+ ♔g8 20.♕g7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

18.♕xf6+ ♘xf6 19.♗xf6#

Game 75

Reshevsky – Shainswit

1951

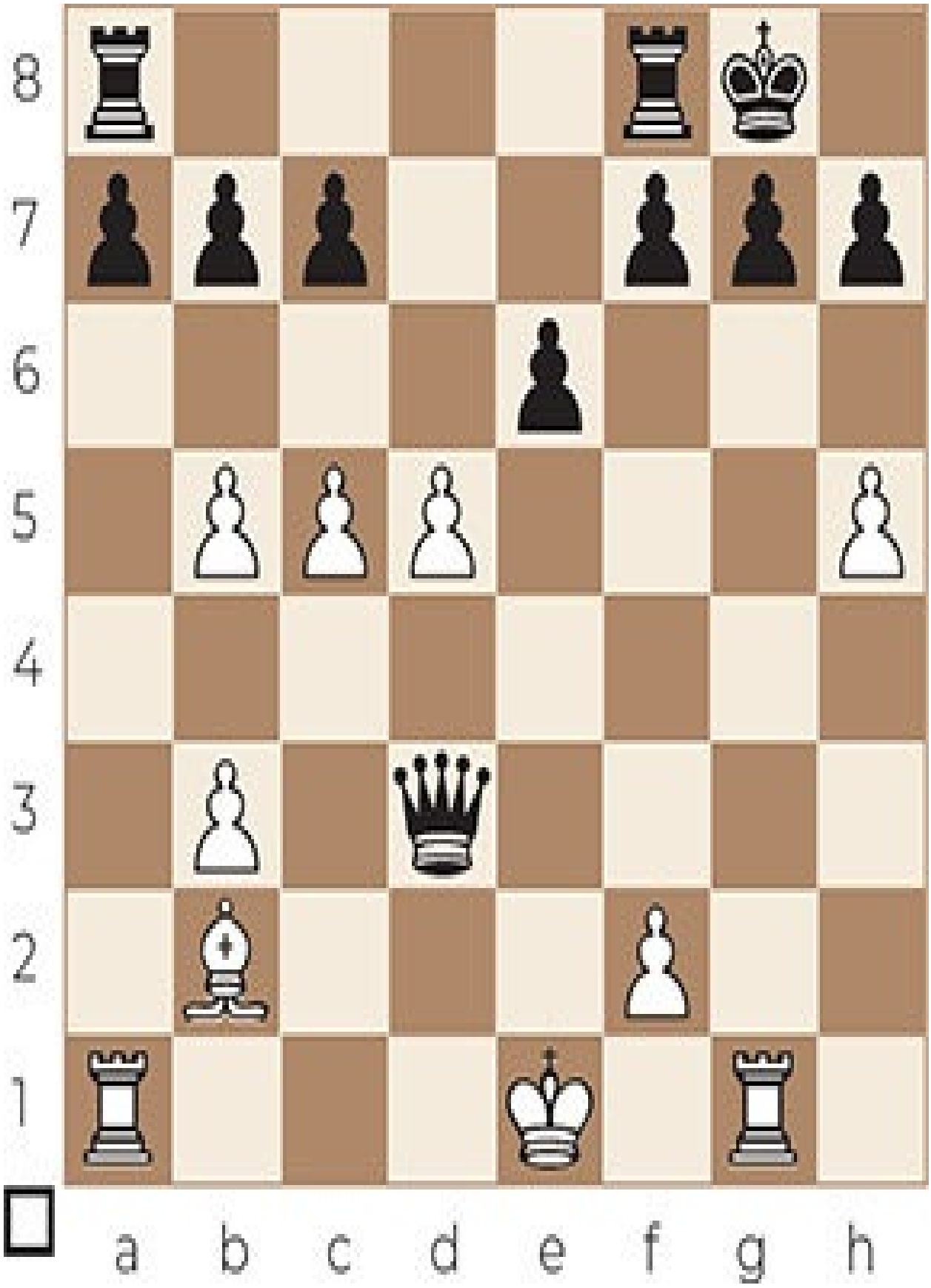
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

29.♖xg7+ ♔h8 30.♖xf7+ ♔g8 31.♖g7+ ♔h8 32.♖g6+ ♕e5 33.♗xe5+ ♖f6 34.♗xf6#

Game 76

Kiss/Barbosa – Réti/Vianna

1925

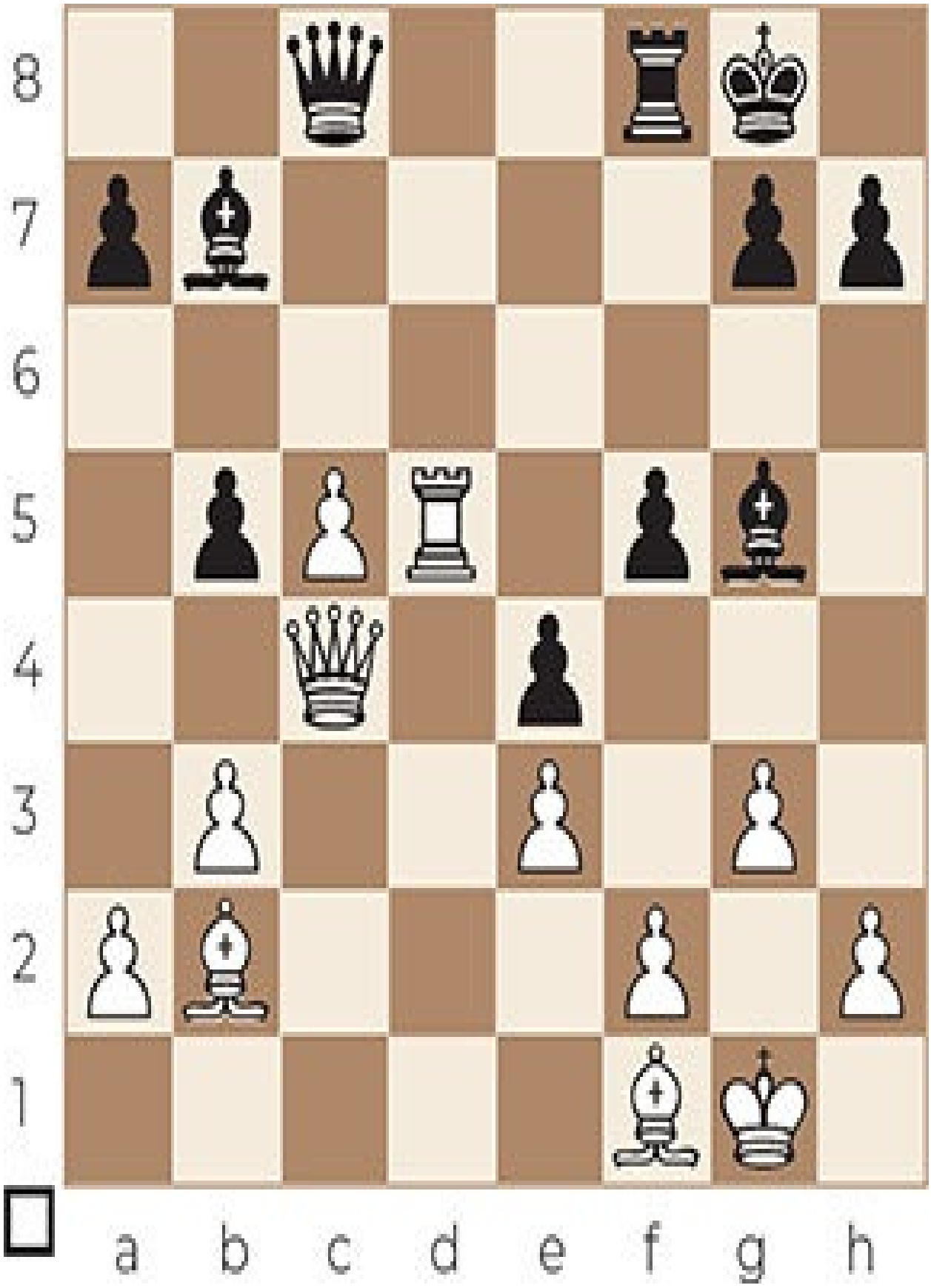

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♖xg7+ ♔h8 28.♖xf7+ ♔g8 29.♖g7+ ♔h8 30.♖g6+ ♕d4 31.♗xd4+ e5 32.♗xe5+ ♖f6 33.♗xf6#

Game 77

Ogaard – Leow

1974


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

23.♖d7+ bxc4 24.♖xg7+ ♔h8 25.♖xg5+ c3 26.♗xc3+ ♖f6 27.♗xf6#

Game 78

Bouwmeester – Darga

1959

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

38...♖g2+ 39.♗xg2

39.♔h1 isn’t better for White: 39...♖xh2+ 40.♔g1 ♖h1#.

39...♖xg2+ 40.♔h1 ♖xg3+ 41.♖f3 ♗xf3#

Game 79

Gauri – Vegh

2007

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

43...♖xg2+ 44.♔h1 ♖g4+ 45.♖f3 ♗xf3#

Game 80

Bjorn – Mejrup

1992

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

32...♖xg3+ 33.♘xd5 ♗e4#

CHAPTER 10

Pillsbury’s mate

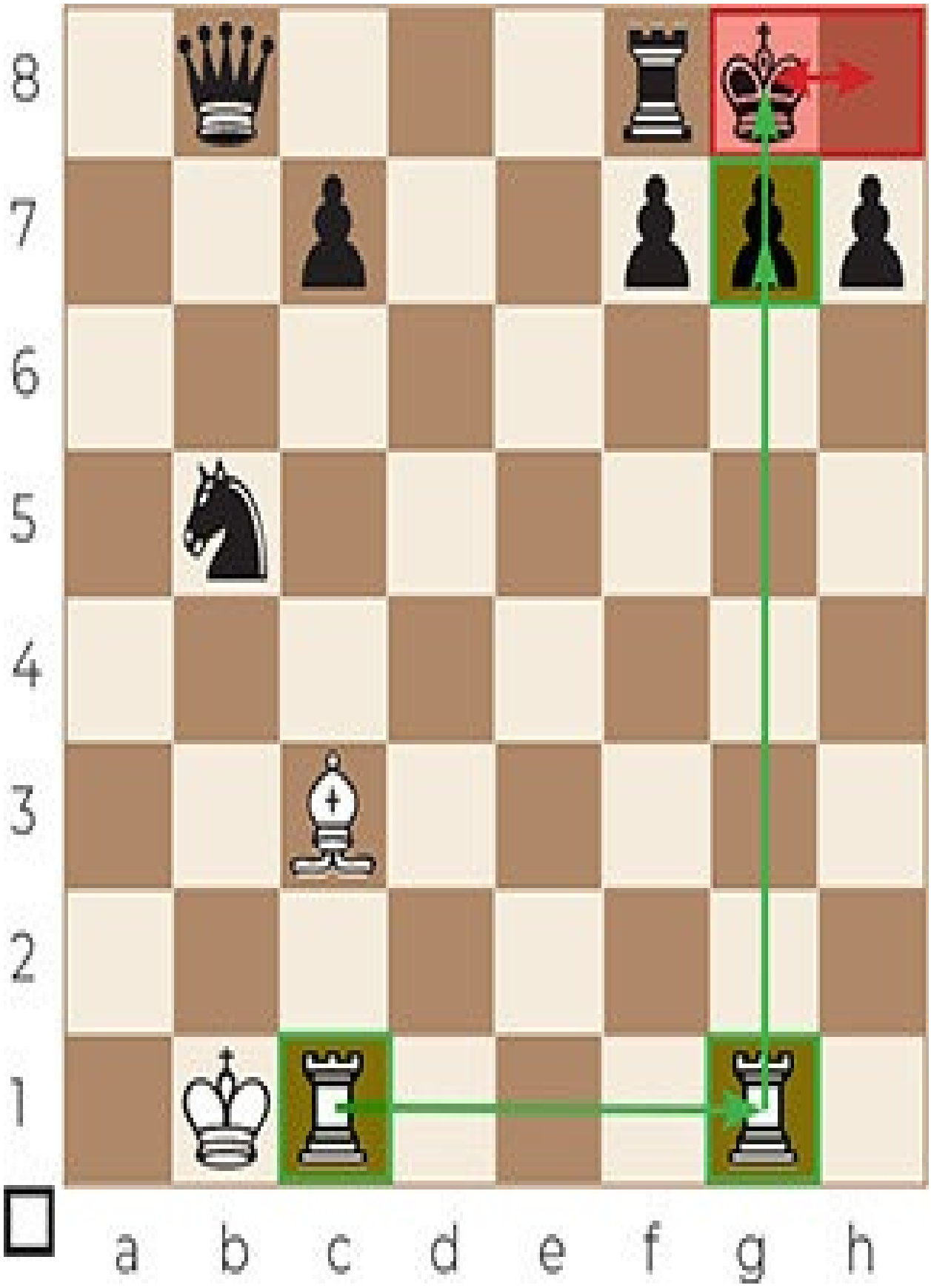
In Pillsbury’s mate, a rook delivers checkmate to the king, while a bishop (or in rare cases a queen) prevents a diagonal escape. Other escape squares are blocked by the opponent’s own pieces.

Pillsbury’s mate is similar to Morphy’s mate, but in this case the king is mated by the rook instead of the bishop. Morphy’s mate via 2.♖xf7+ doesn’t work in the case given below, because the bishop can be captured!

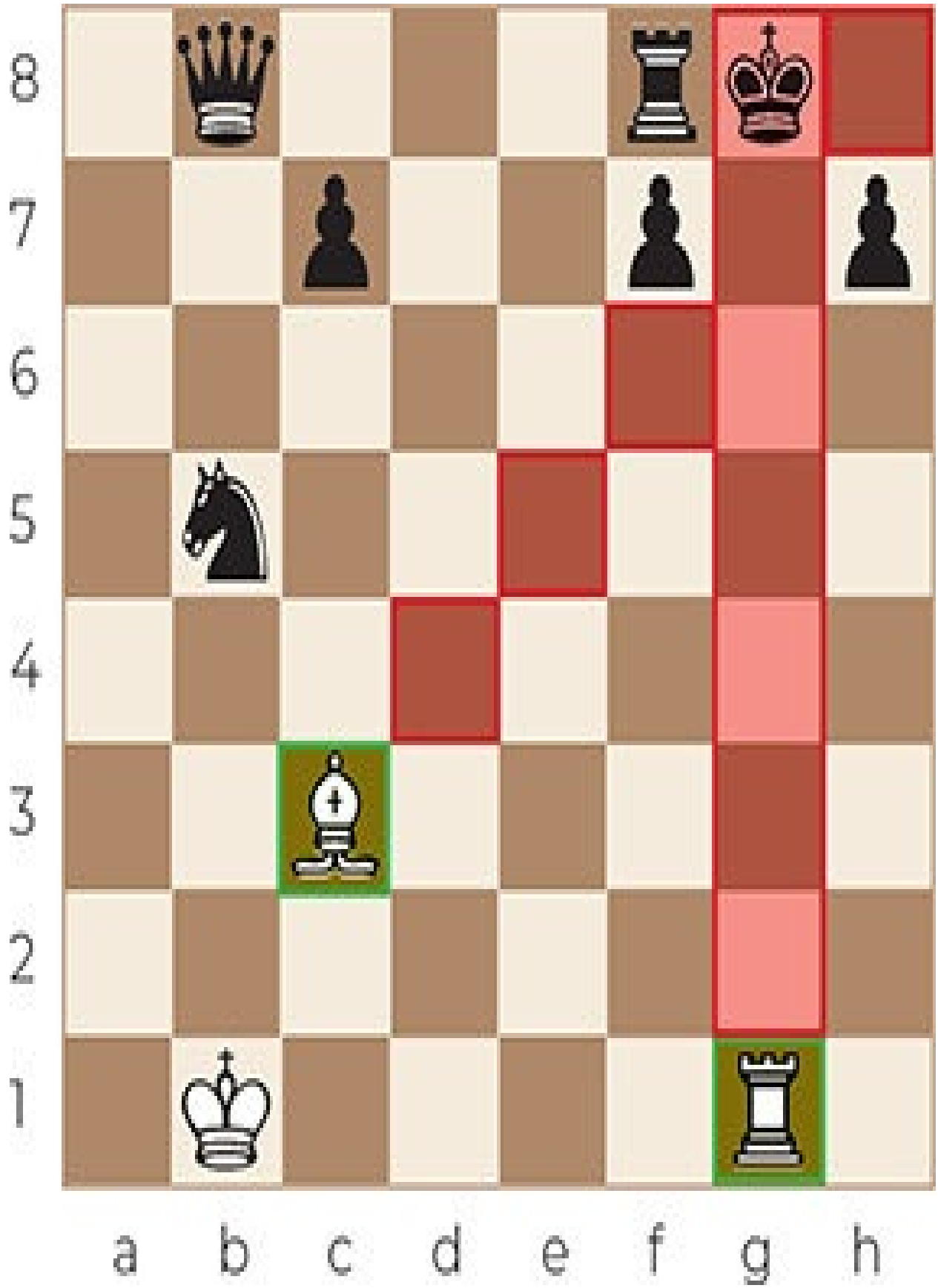
The mate is named after the American chess player Harry Nelson Pillsbury (1872-1906).

Pillsbury’s mate 1

Often, Pillsbury’s mate is preceded by a check with a protected rook, followed by a rook sacrifice with double check.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖xg7+ ♔h8 2.♖g8+ ♔xg8 3.♖g1#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 81

Anderssen – Suhle

1860

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

19.♕xg7+ ♘xg7 20.♖xg7+ ♔h8 21.♖g8+ ♔xg8 22.♖g1+ ♕g5 23.♖xg5#

Game 82

McLaren – Chandler/Laird

1978

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

20...♖g1+ 21.♔xg1 ♖g8#

Game 83

Saric – Papadatos

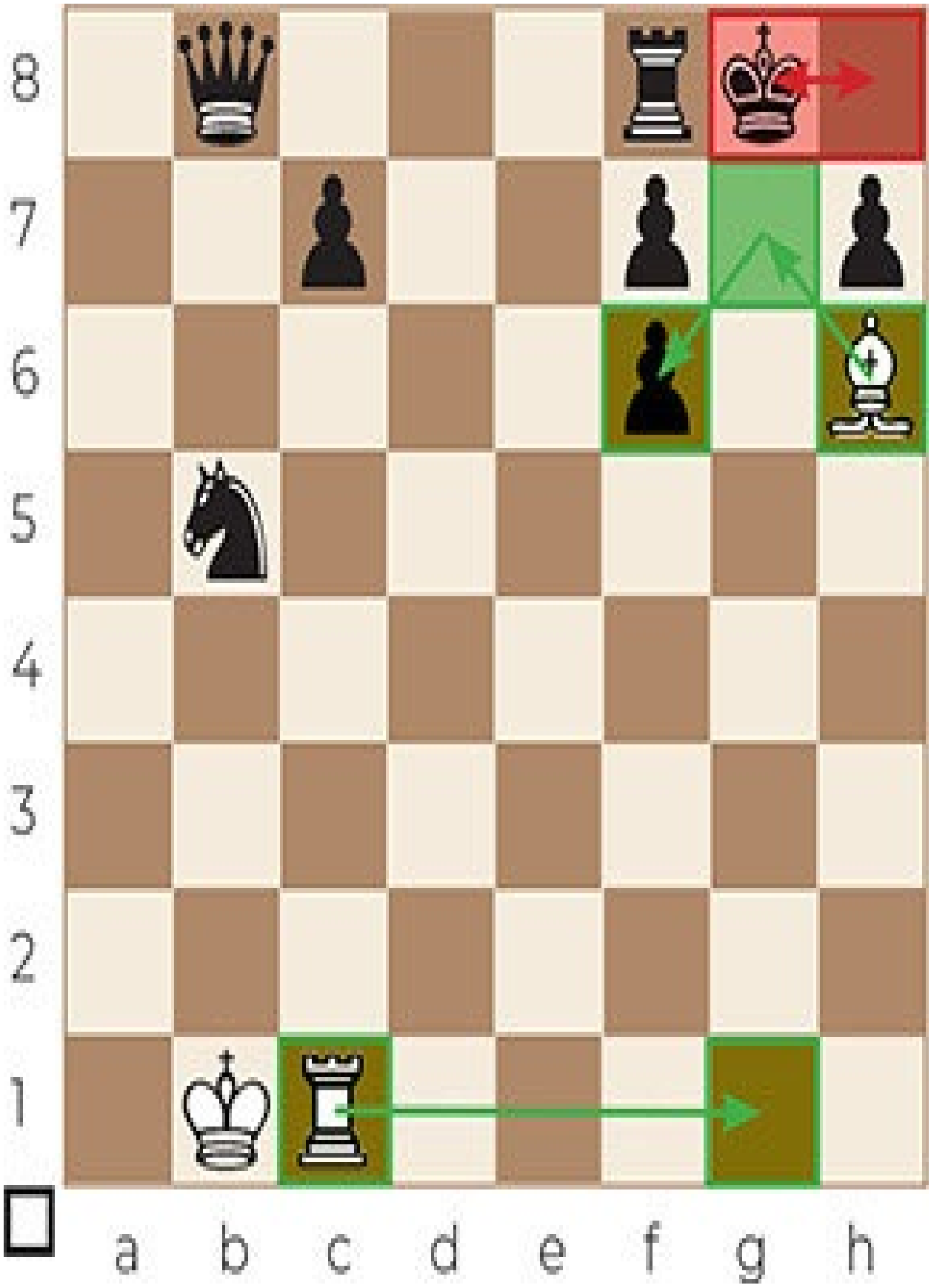
1994

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

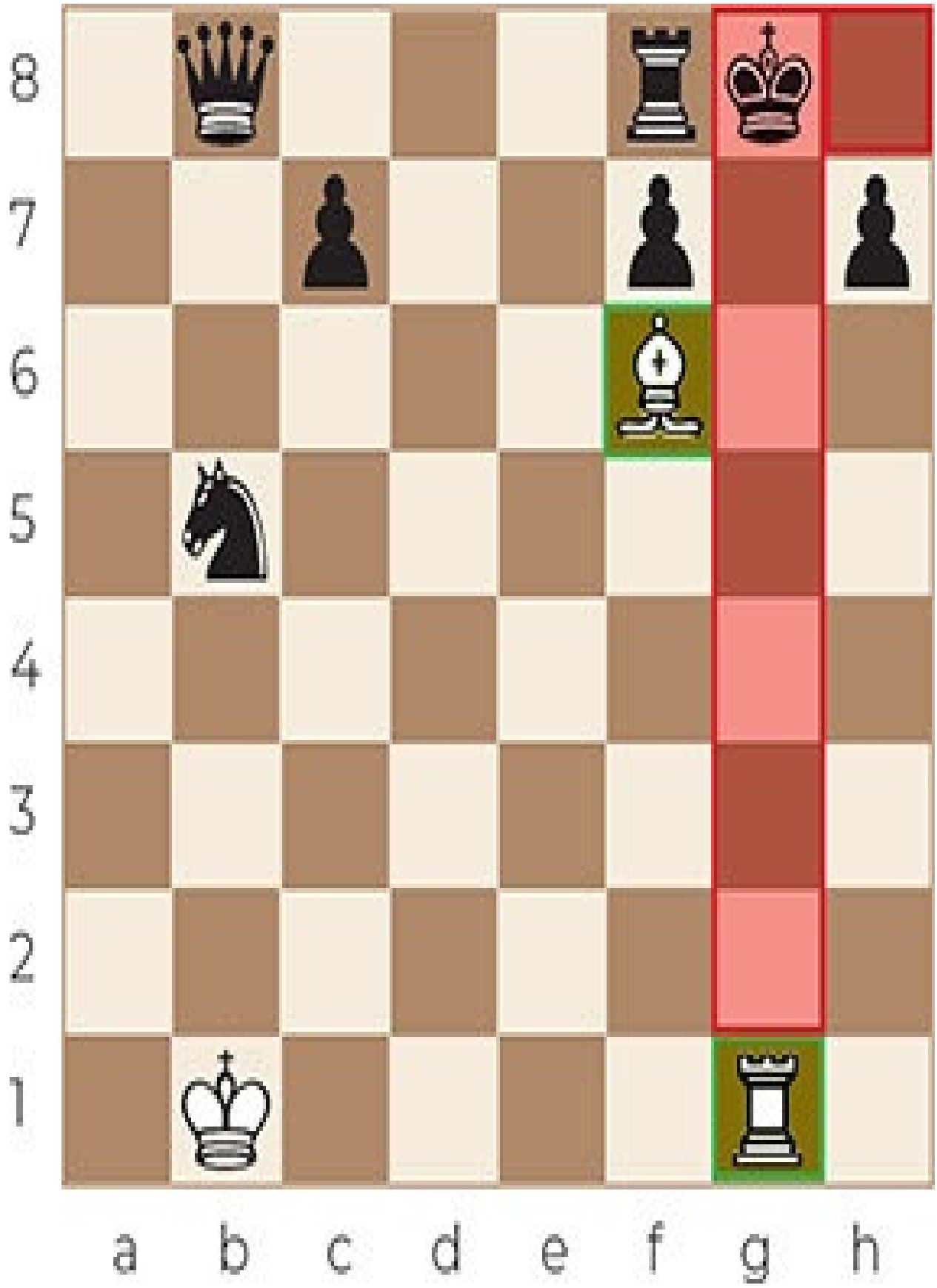
13...♖xg2+ 14.♔h1 ♖g1+ 15.♔xg1 ♖g8+ 16.♕g6 ♖xg6+ 17.♗g5 ♖xg5#

Pillsbury’s mate 2

Sometimes, Pillsbury’s mate is preceded by a bishop maneuver, to prevent the king from hiding in the corner, often h1 or h8.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

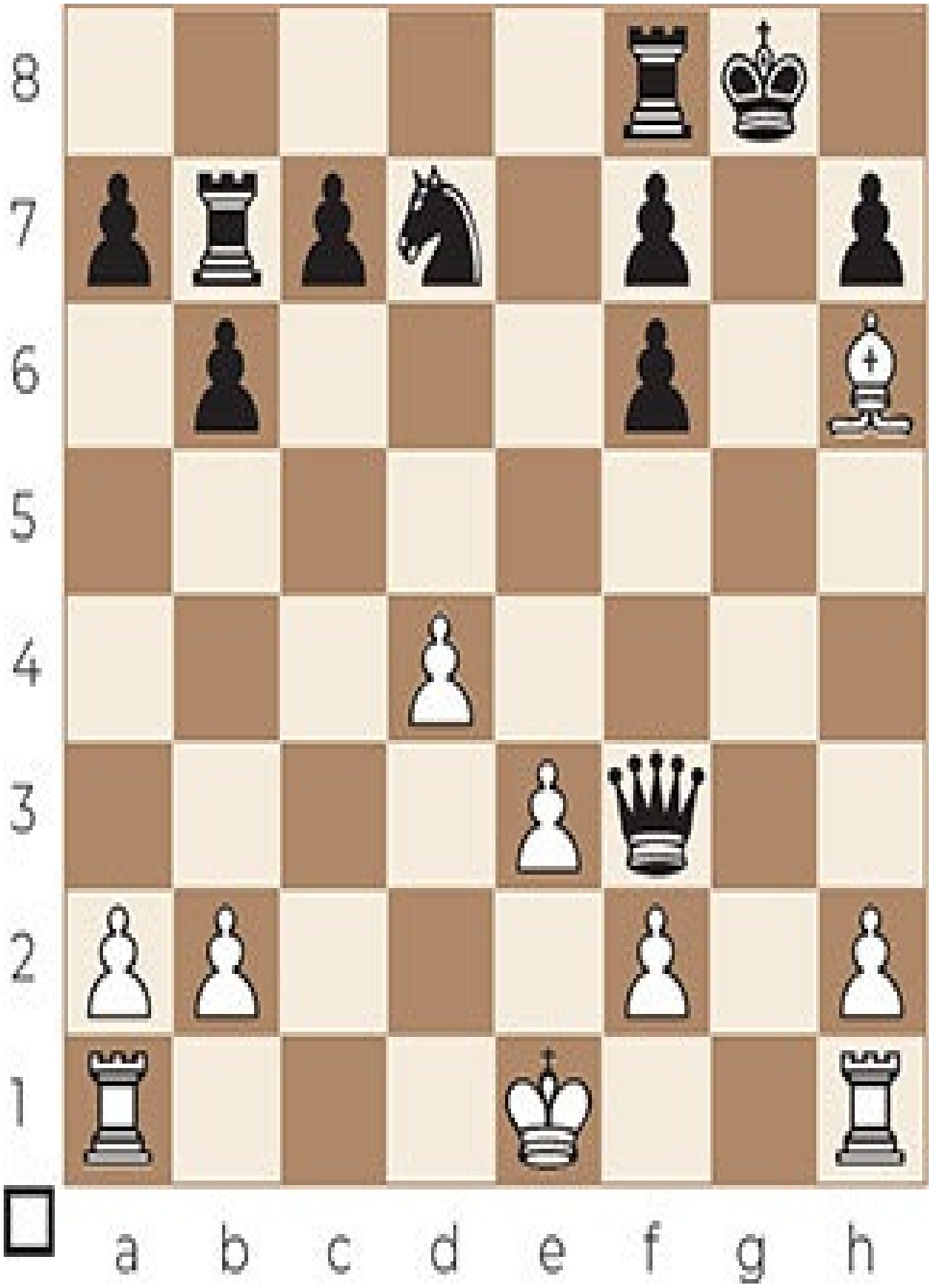
1.♖g1+ ♔h8 2.♗g7+ ♔g8 3.♗xf6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 84

Pillsbury – Newman

1900

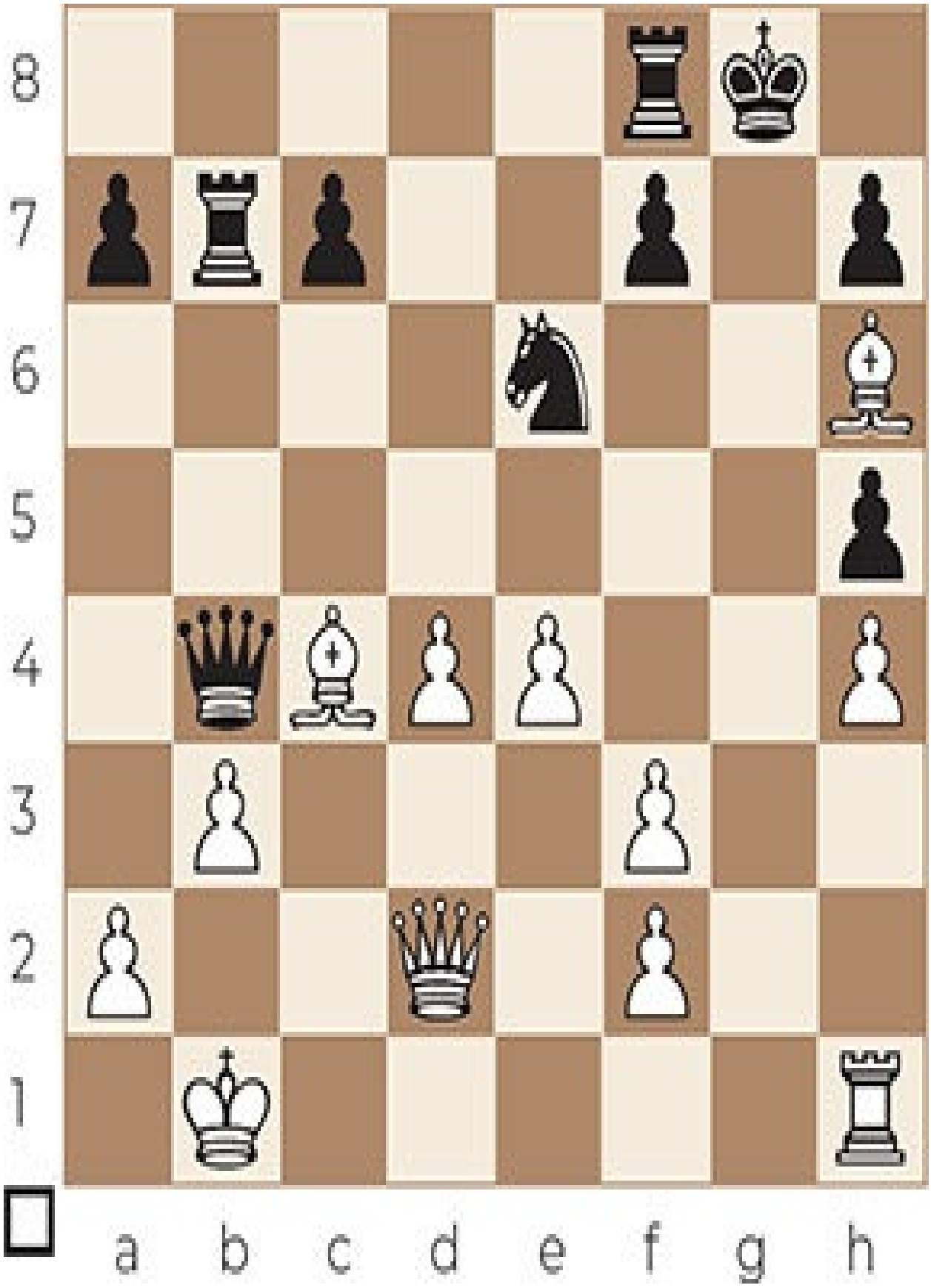

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

18.♖g1+ ♔h8 19.♗g7+ ♔g8 20.♗xf6+ ♕g4 21.♖xg4#

Game 85

Savic – Radojevic

2006


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♖g1+

The black king is vulnerable.

27...♔h8

If 27...♘g7, Black can’t stop the mate after 28.♕g5.

28. ♗xe6

Removing the only defender of the castle.

28...♕xd2

28...fxe6 is the most challenging for White: 29.♕g5 ♕xd4 30. ♗g7+ ♔g8 31. ♗f6+ ♔f7 32.♕g7+ ♔e8 33.♕e7# (Damiano’s bishop mate).

29. ♗g7+ ♔g8 30. ♗f6+ ♕g5 31.♖xg5#

Game 86

Varadi – Ats

1997

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

32...♕xf3 33.gxf3 ♖g8+ 34.♔h1 ♗g2+ 35.♔g1 ♗xf3#

CHAPTER 11

Opera mate

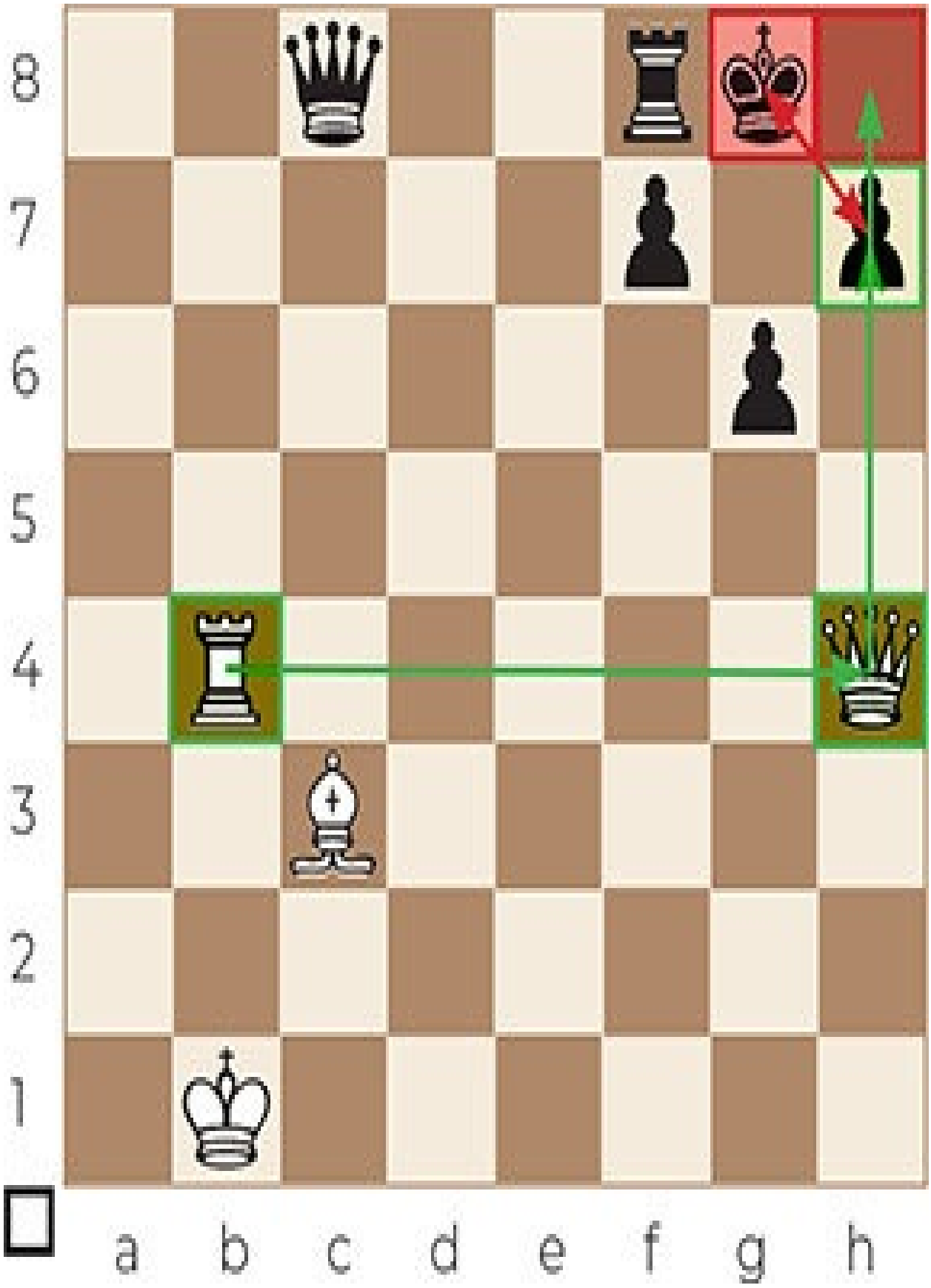
In the Opera mate, a rook delivers checkmate to the king on the back rank, while a bishop protects the rook and prevents a diagonal escape. Other escape squares are blocked by the opponent's own pieces.

The mate is named after the famous Opera House Game between Morphy and the Duke of Brunswick/Count Isouard (see Game 89). Sometimes, the mate is called Mayet's mate, named after the German chess player Carl Mayet (1810-1868).

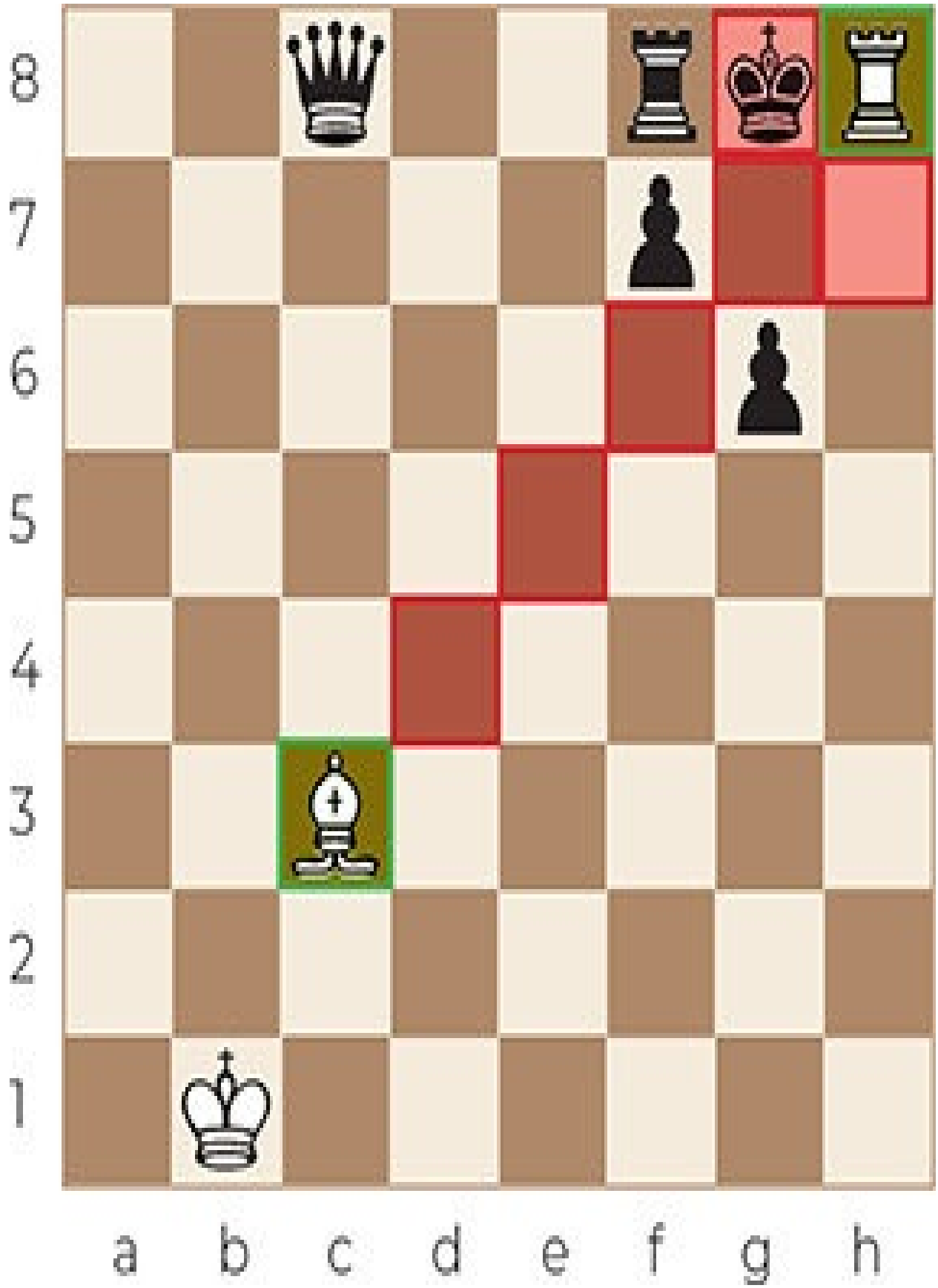
The Opera mate is a common way to checkmate.

Opera mate 1

Sometimes, the Opera mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice on h2 or h7 (to open up the h-file), followed by a rook check.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 2.♖h4+ ♔g8 3.♖h8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 87

Baranova – Dolezalova

1992

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

23.♕h6

With imminent mate.

23...♘e8

After 23...♘h5 24.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 25.♖xh5+ ♔g8 26.♖h8# (Opera mate), while 23...♘f5 24.♗xf5 gxf5 25.♕g5# (Pillsbury's mate) will end the game even faster.

24.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 25.♖h5+ ♔g8 26.♖h8#

Game 88

Belsitzmann – Rubinstein

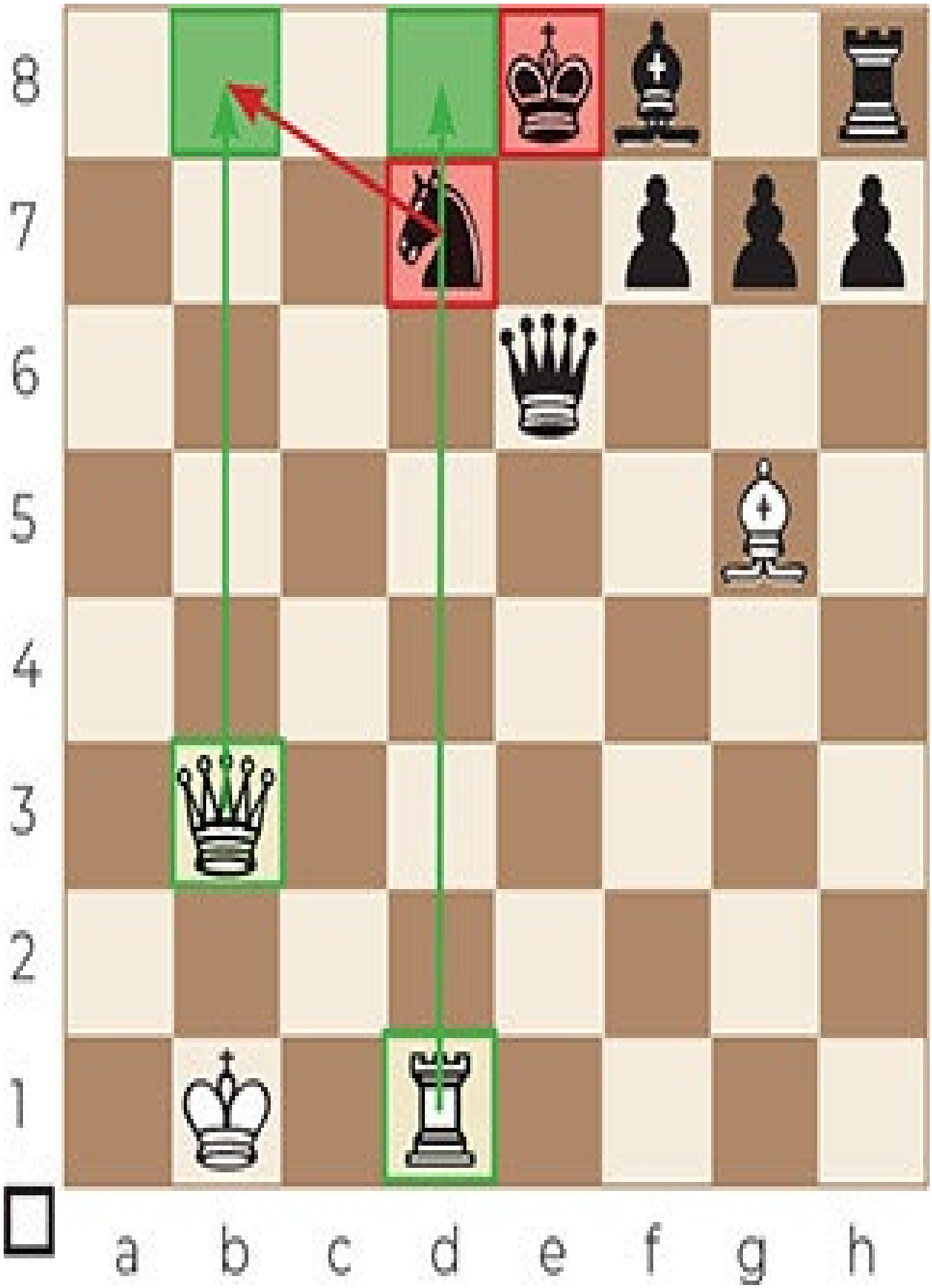
1917

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

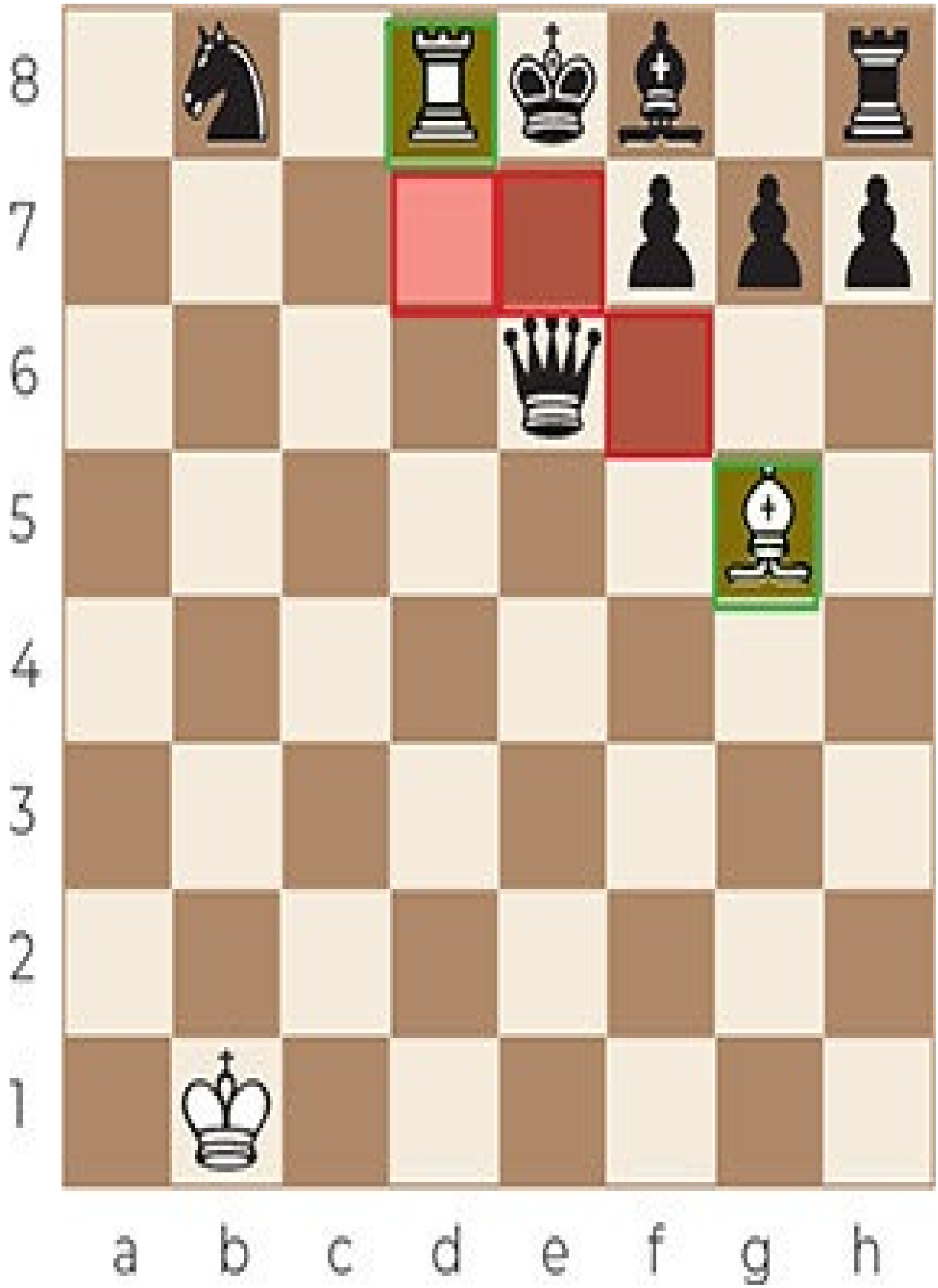
16...♕xh2+ 17.♔xh2 hxg3+ 18.♔g1 ♖h1#

Opera mate 2

Sometimes, the Opera mate is preceded by a sacrifice in order to remove or distract the piece that prevents the rook from giving checkmate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

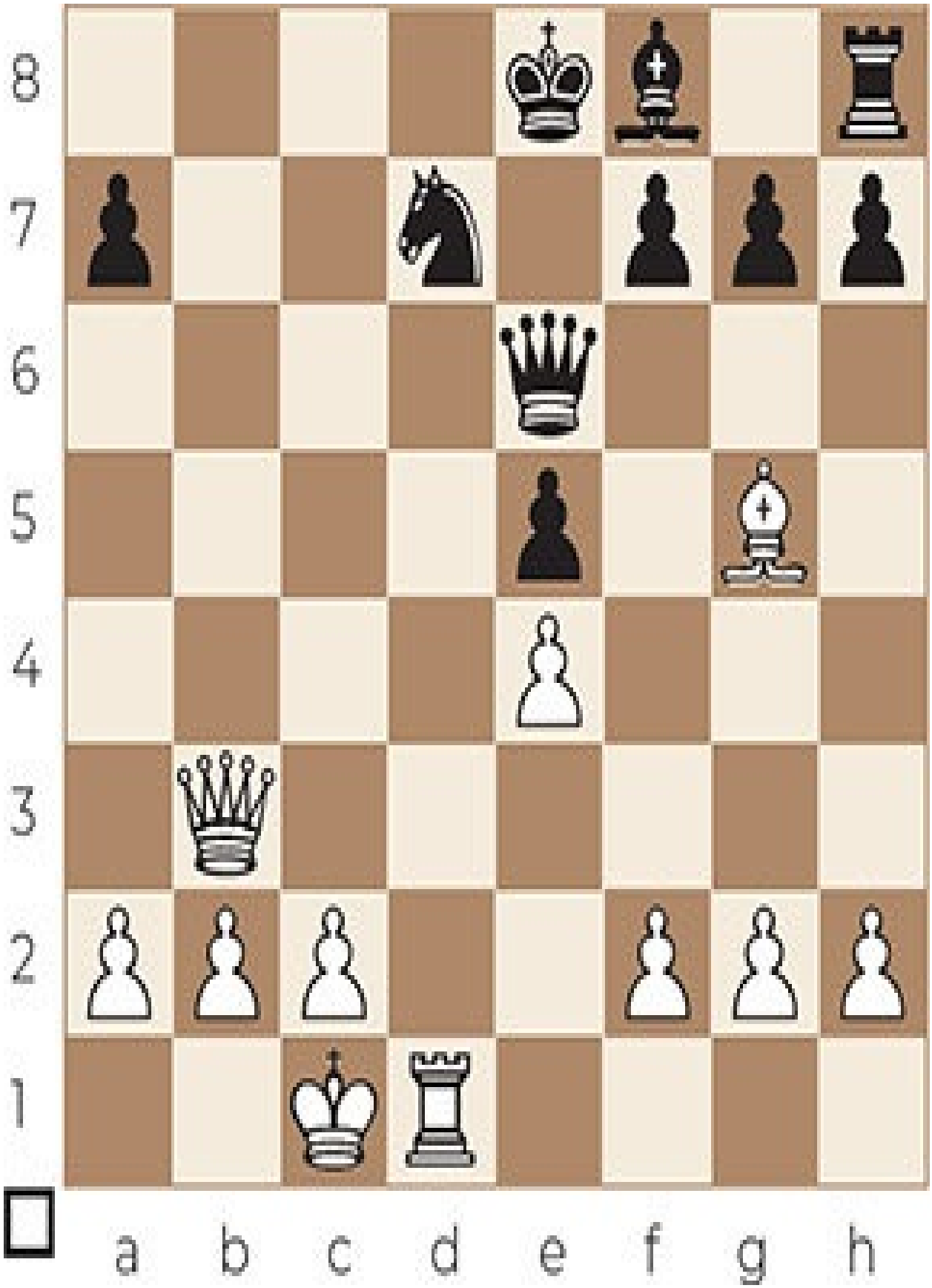
1.♕b8+ ♘xb8 2.♖d8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 89

Morphy – Duke of Brunswick/Count Isouard

1858


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

16.♕b8+ ♘xb8 17.♖d8#

Game 90

Schwarz – Labau

1948

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

10.♕xc6+

Eliminating the only defender of the d8-square.

10...bxc6

10...♗d7 extends the game with a few moves: 11.♕xd7+ ♔f8 12.♕d8+ ♖xd8 13.♖xd8# (Opera mate).

11.♖d8#

Game 91

Shoup – Marshall

1906

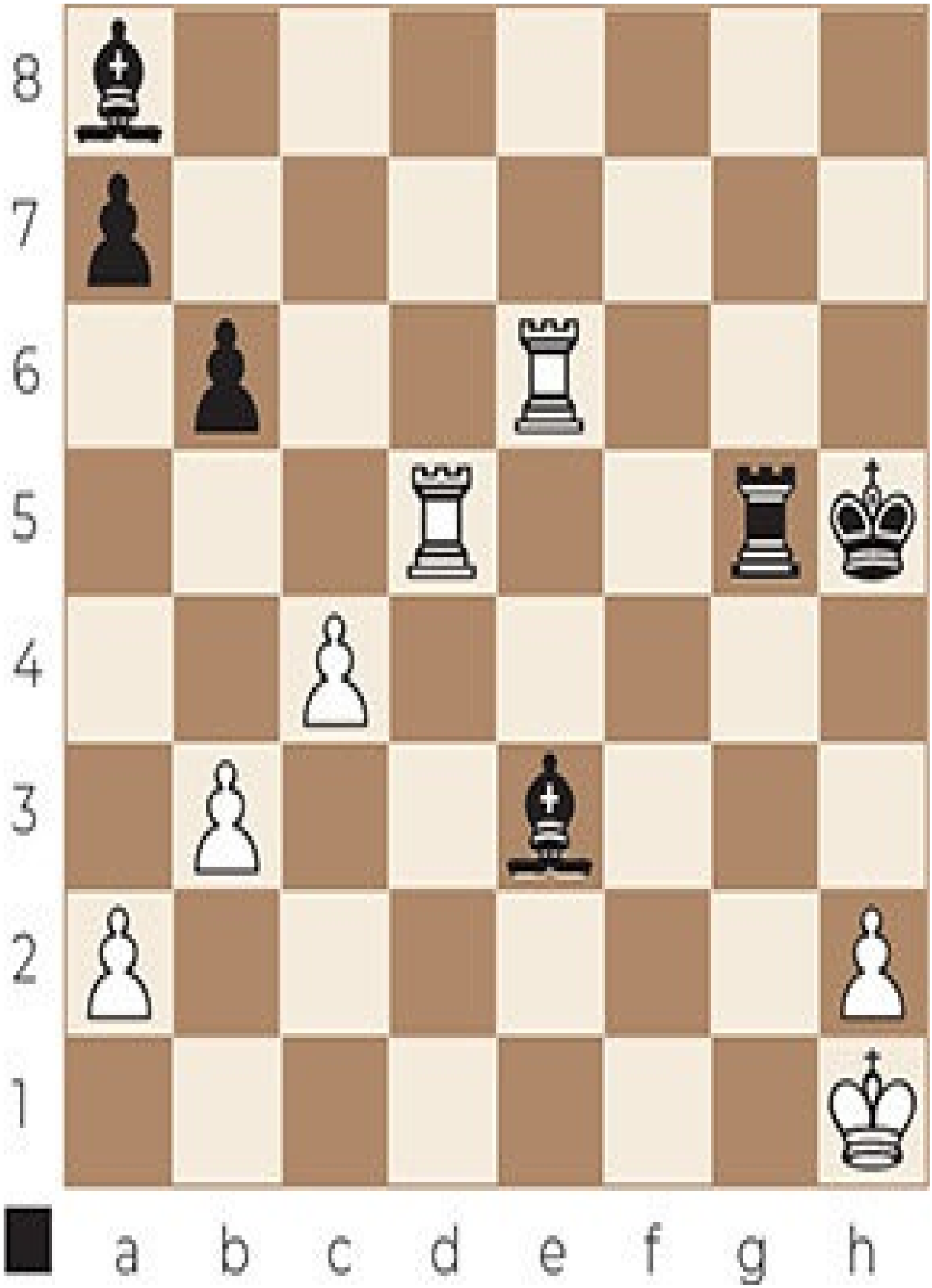
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

14.♕d8+ ♗xd8 15.♖e8#

Game 92

Corzo – Capablanca

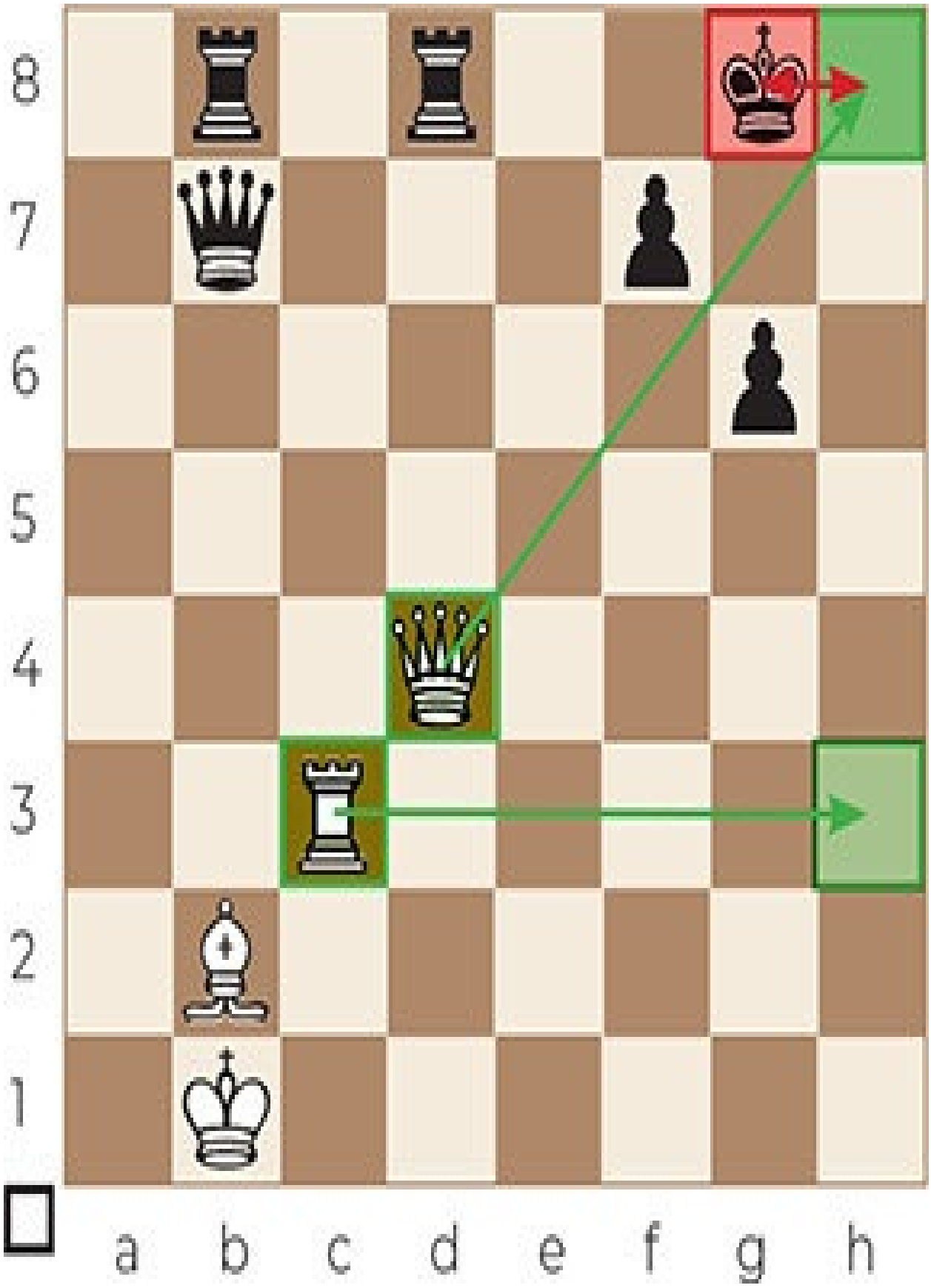
1902


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

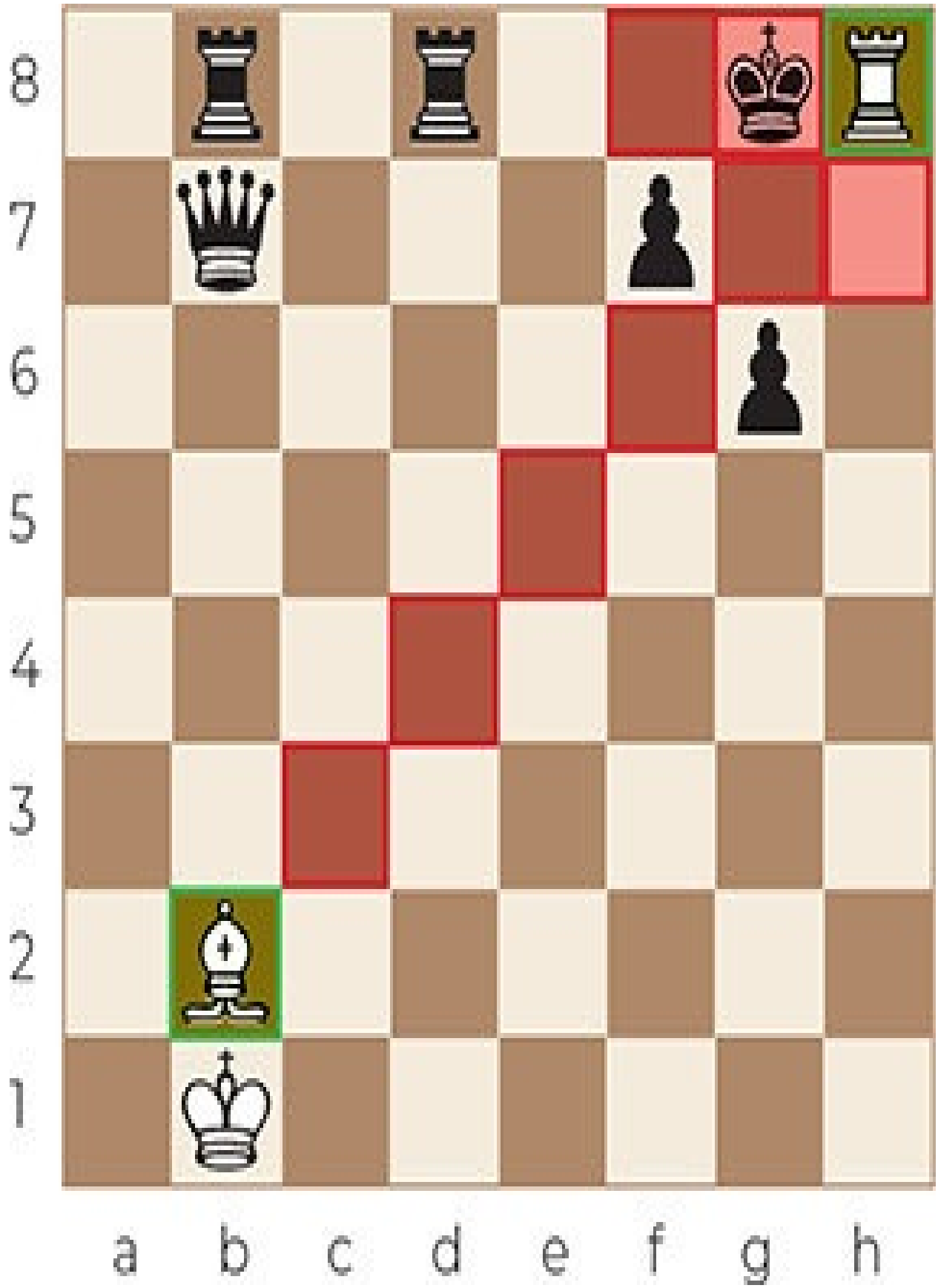
35... ♗xd5+ 36.cxd5 ♖g1#

Opera mate 3

Sometimes, the Opera mate is preceded by a discovered check or even a double check (whether or not combined with a sacrifice), to force the king into a mating net.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

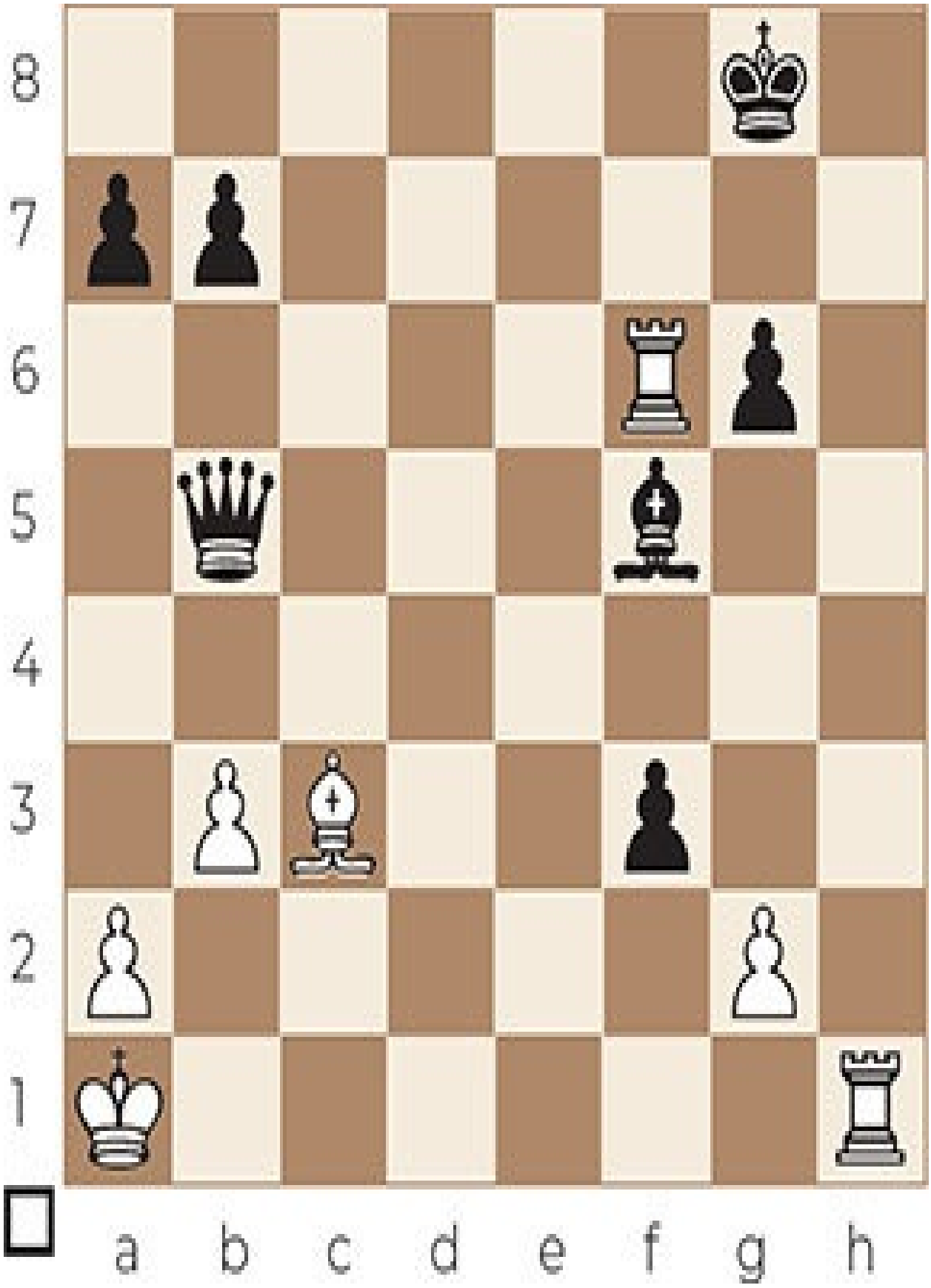
1.♕h8+ ♔xh8 2.♖h3+ ♔g8 3.♖h8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 93

Wedberg – Sosonko

1988


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

32.♖h8+

Attracting the black king to the large diagonal where it will meet the bishop on c3.

32...♔xh8

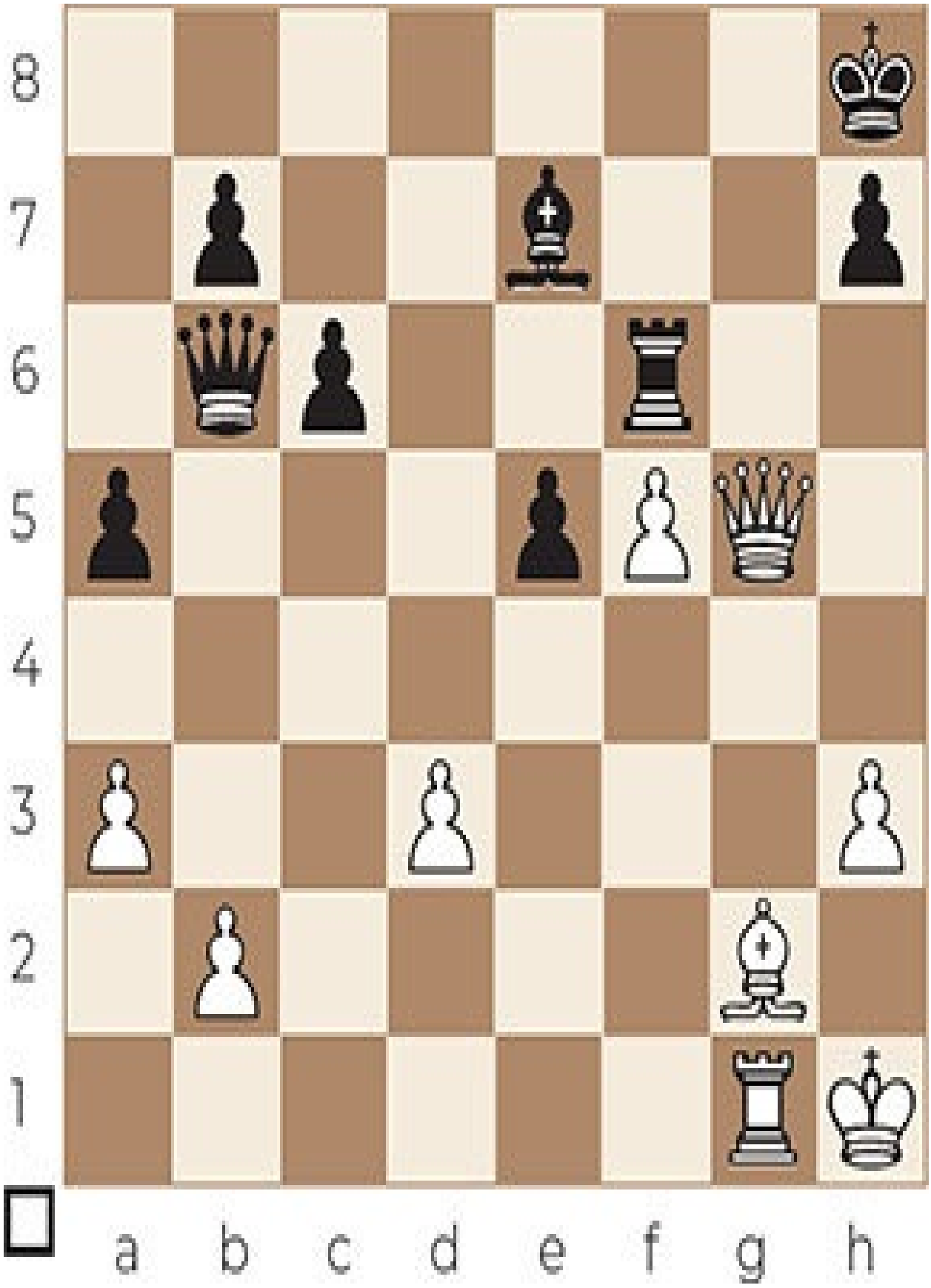
32...♔g7 33.♖ff8+ ♕e5 34.♗xe5#.

33.♖f8+ ♔h7 34.♖h8#

Game 94

Ftacnik – Vallejo Pons

2007

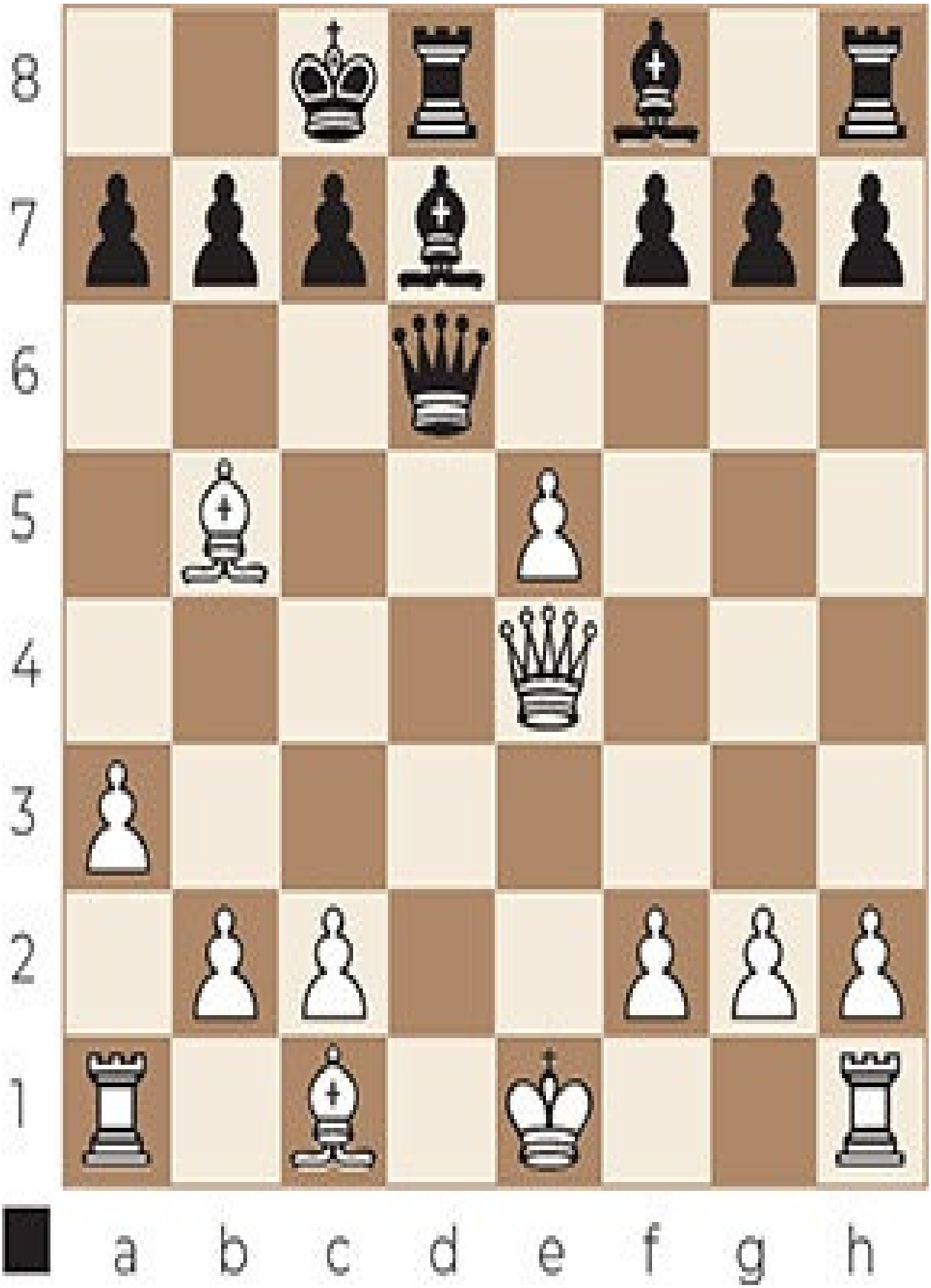

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

43.♕g8+ ♔xg8 44.♗d5+ ♔f8 45.♖g8#

Game 95

from ‘Fight 1.e4 like Caruana’ by Christof Sielecki

2019


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

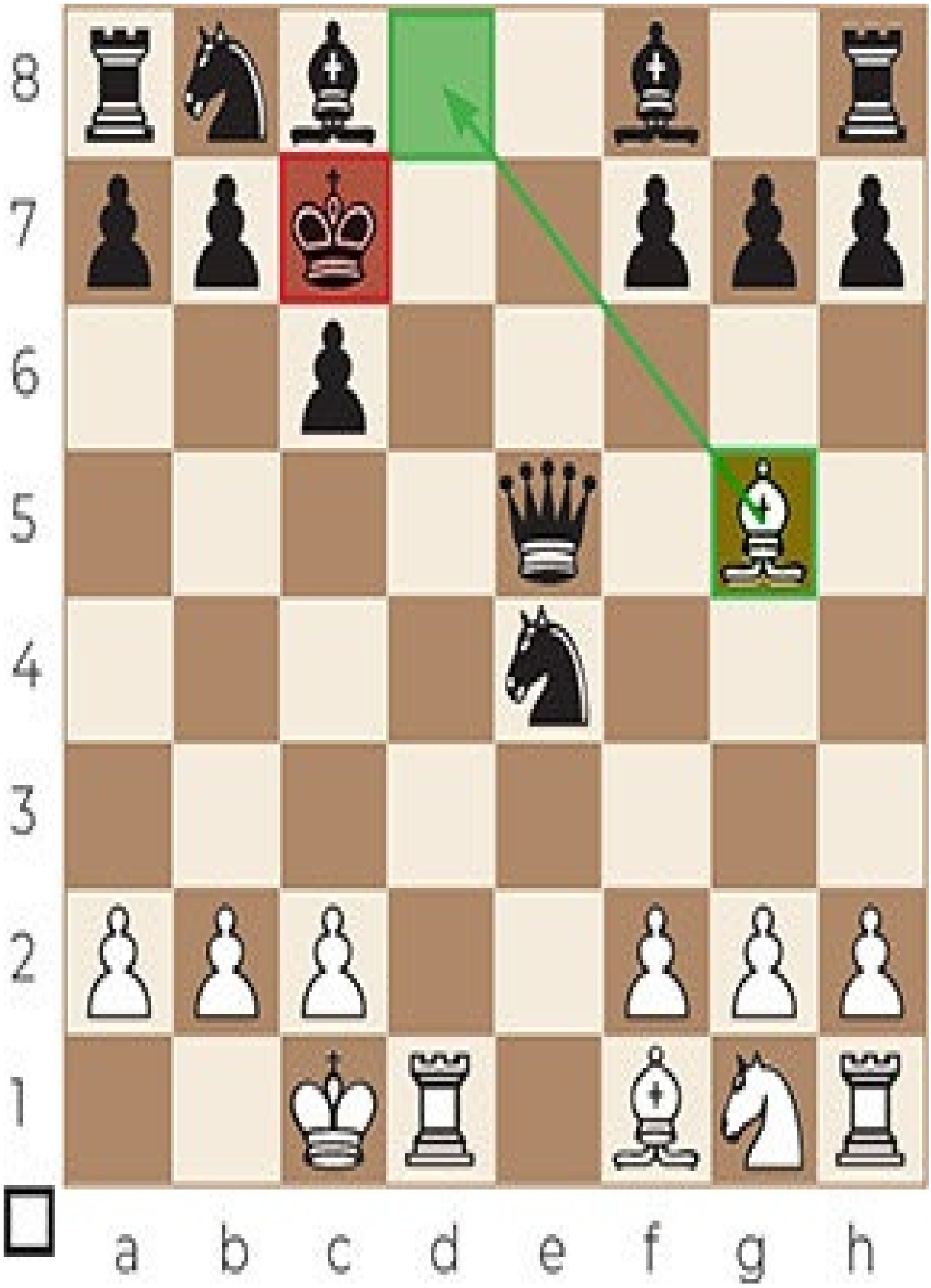
11...♕d1+ 12.♔xd1 ♗g4+ 13.♔e1 ♖d1#

Réti’s mate

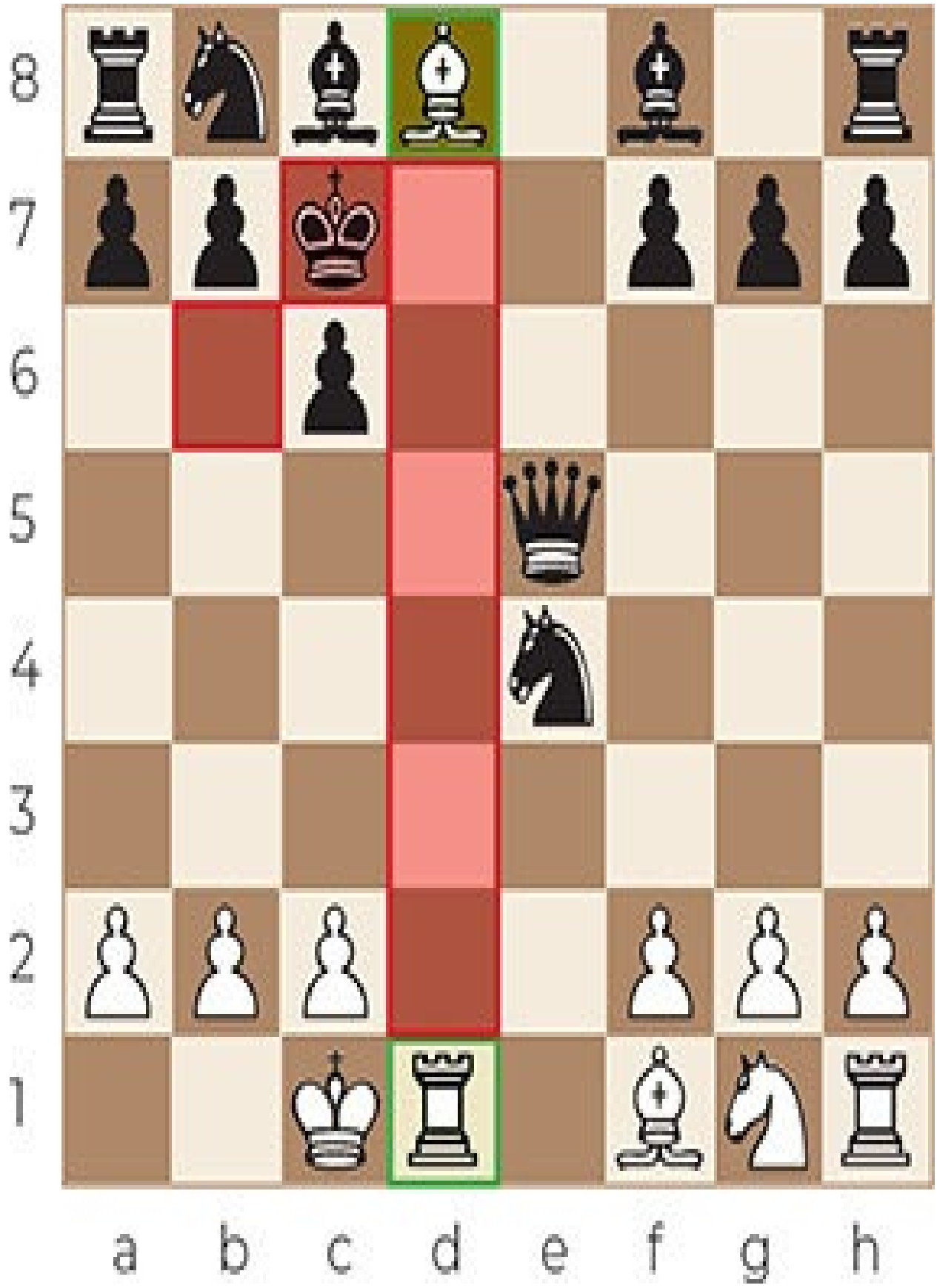
In Réti’s mate, a bishop delivers checkmate to the king, while a rook protects the bishop and also covers some escape squares of the king.

The mate is named after the Austro-Hungarian, later Czechoslovak chess player Richard Réti (1889-1929).

The reason why Réti’s mate is mentioned in this chapter is because there are similarities with the Opera mate, and there are too few games with this rare checkmate pattern to spend a chapter on.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

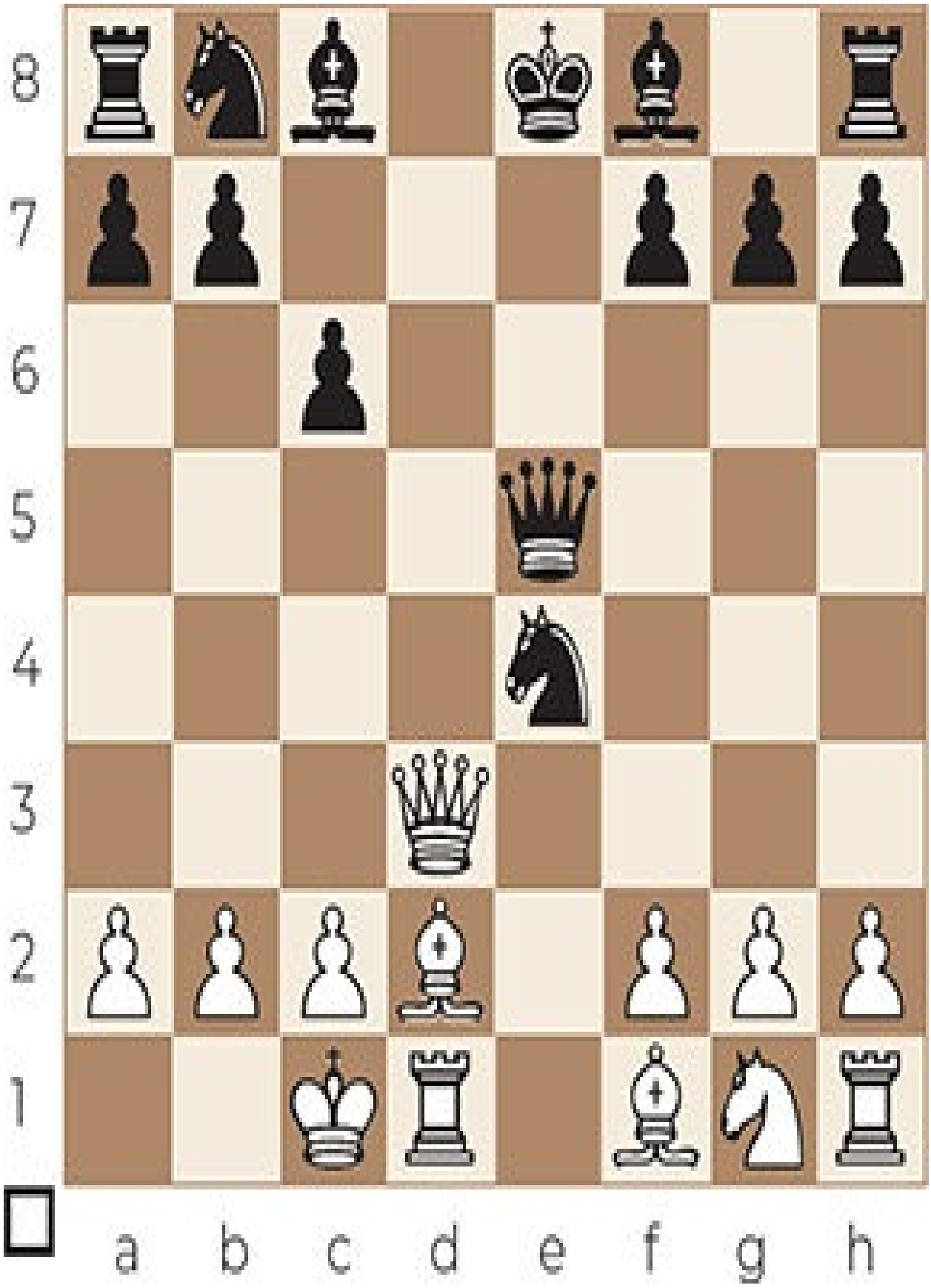
1. ♗ d8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 96

Réti – Tartakower

1910


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

9.♕d8+ ♔xd8 10.♗g5+

Rook and bishop give a beautiful mate.

10...♔c7

10...♔e8 11.♖d8# (Opera mate).

11.♗d8#

Anderssen’s mate

In Anderssen’s mate, a rook delivers checkmate to the king on the back rank, while a pawn protects the rook.

The mate is named after the German chess player Adolf Anderssen (1818-1879).

The reason why Anderssen’s mate is mentioned in this chapter is because there are similarities with the Opera mate, and there are too few games with this rare checkmate pattern to spend a chapter on.

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1. ♖h8#

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 97

Anderssen – Zukertort

1869

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

29.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 30.f6+

Securing the pawn on g7; with inevitable mate.

30...♔g8

30...♕xd3 31.g8♕+ ♖xg8 32.♖h3# (Lawnmower mate).

31.♗h7+ ♔xh7 32.♖h3+

The alternative was 32.g8♕+ ♖xg8 33.♖h3# (Lawnmower mate).

32...♔g8 33.♖h8#

CHAPTER 12

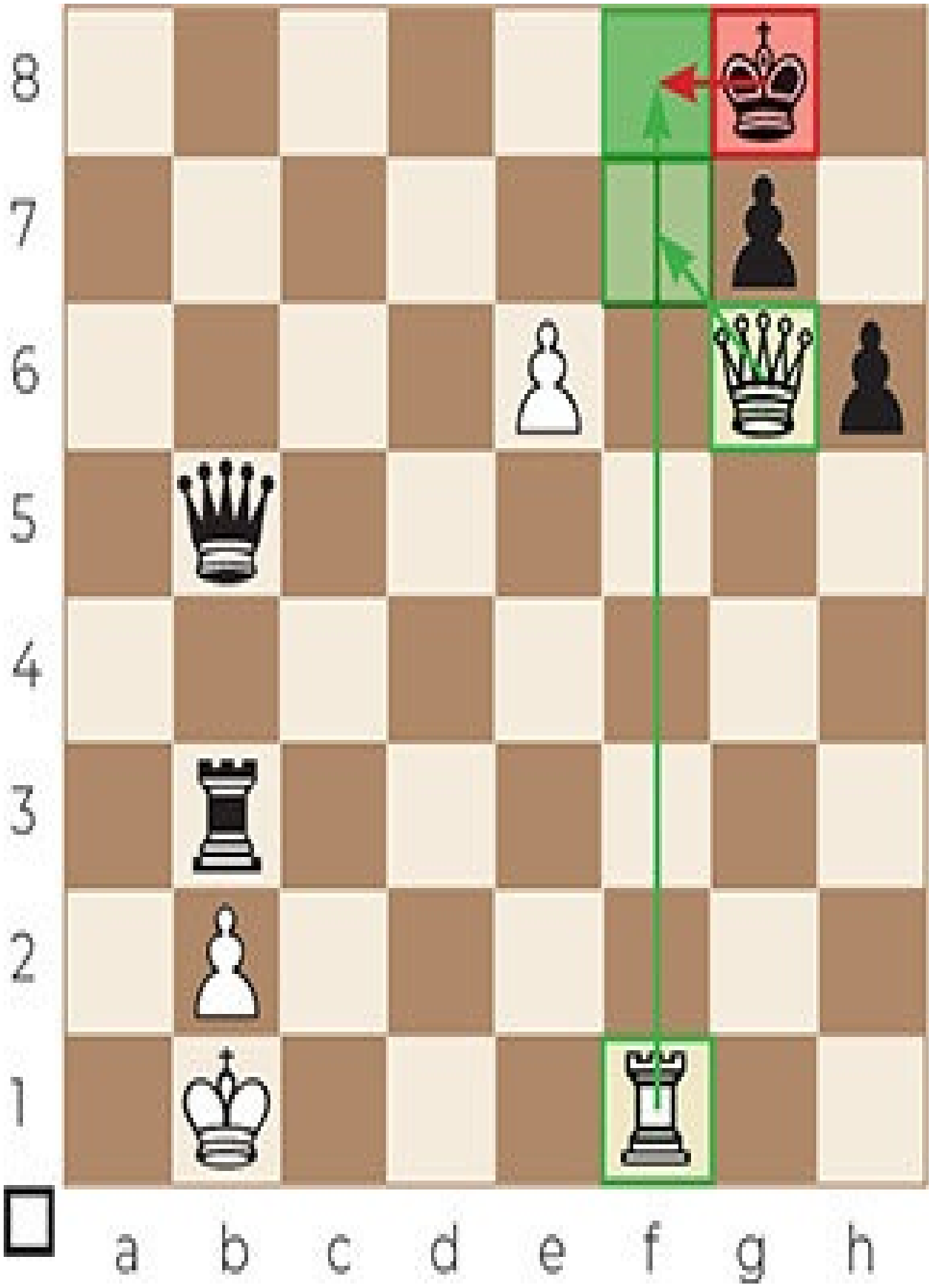
Lolli’s mate

In Lolli’s mate, a queen on the 7th rank delivers checkmate, while a pawn on the 6th rank protects the queen. No other pieces are involved. The queen and the mated king are lined up vertically.

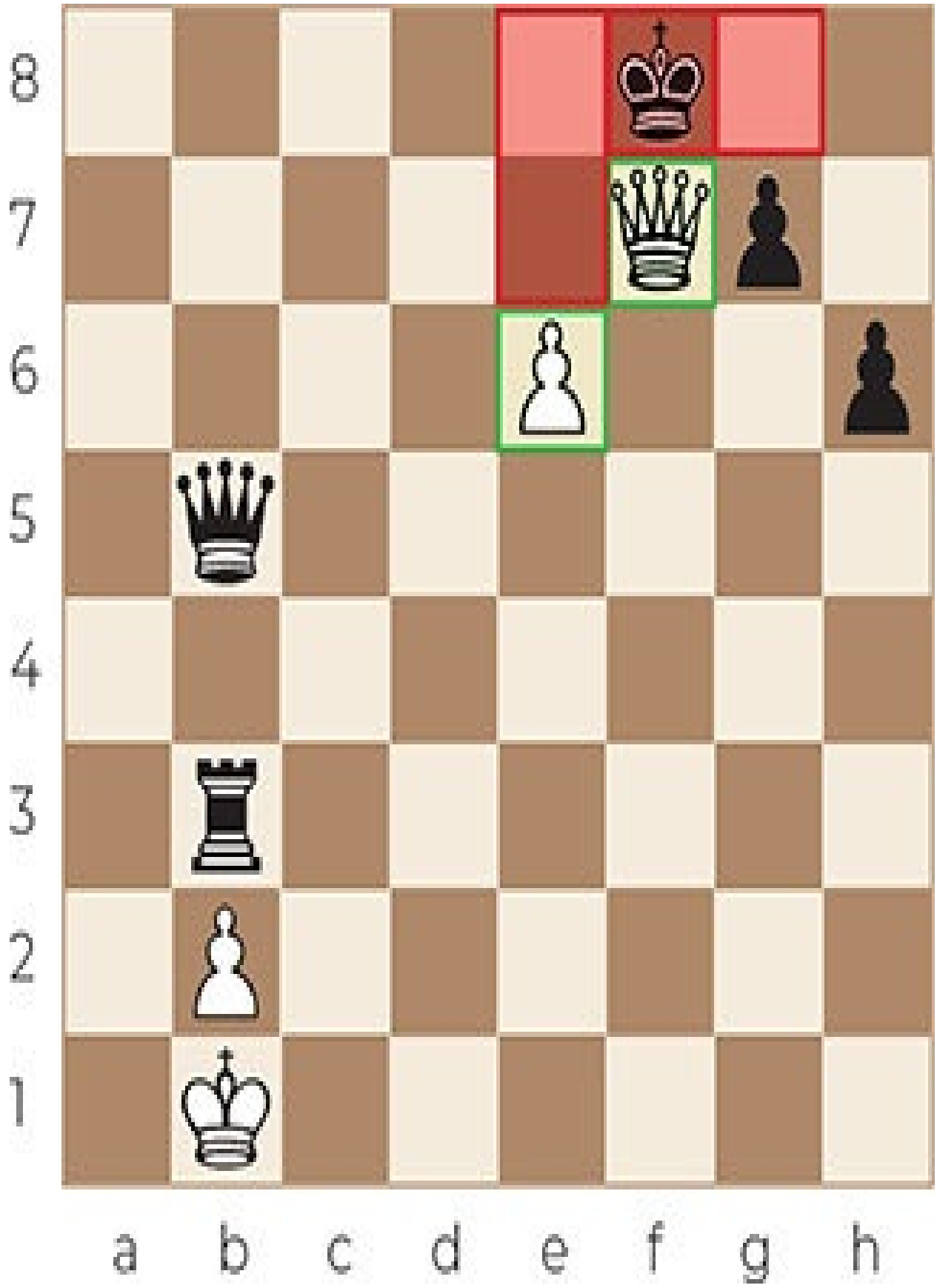
The mate has its name from the Italian chess player Giambattista Lolli (1698-1769).

Lolli’s mate 1

Often, Lolli’s mate is preceded by a rook sacrifice to lure the king to a certain square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖f8+ ♔xf8 2.♕f7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 98

Pihlajasalo – Skytte

1997

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

31.♖g8+ ♔xg8 32.♕g7#

Game 99

Watson – Fayvinov

1993

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26.fxe6+

The black king is completely uncovered.

26...♔g8

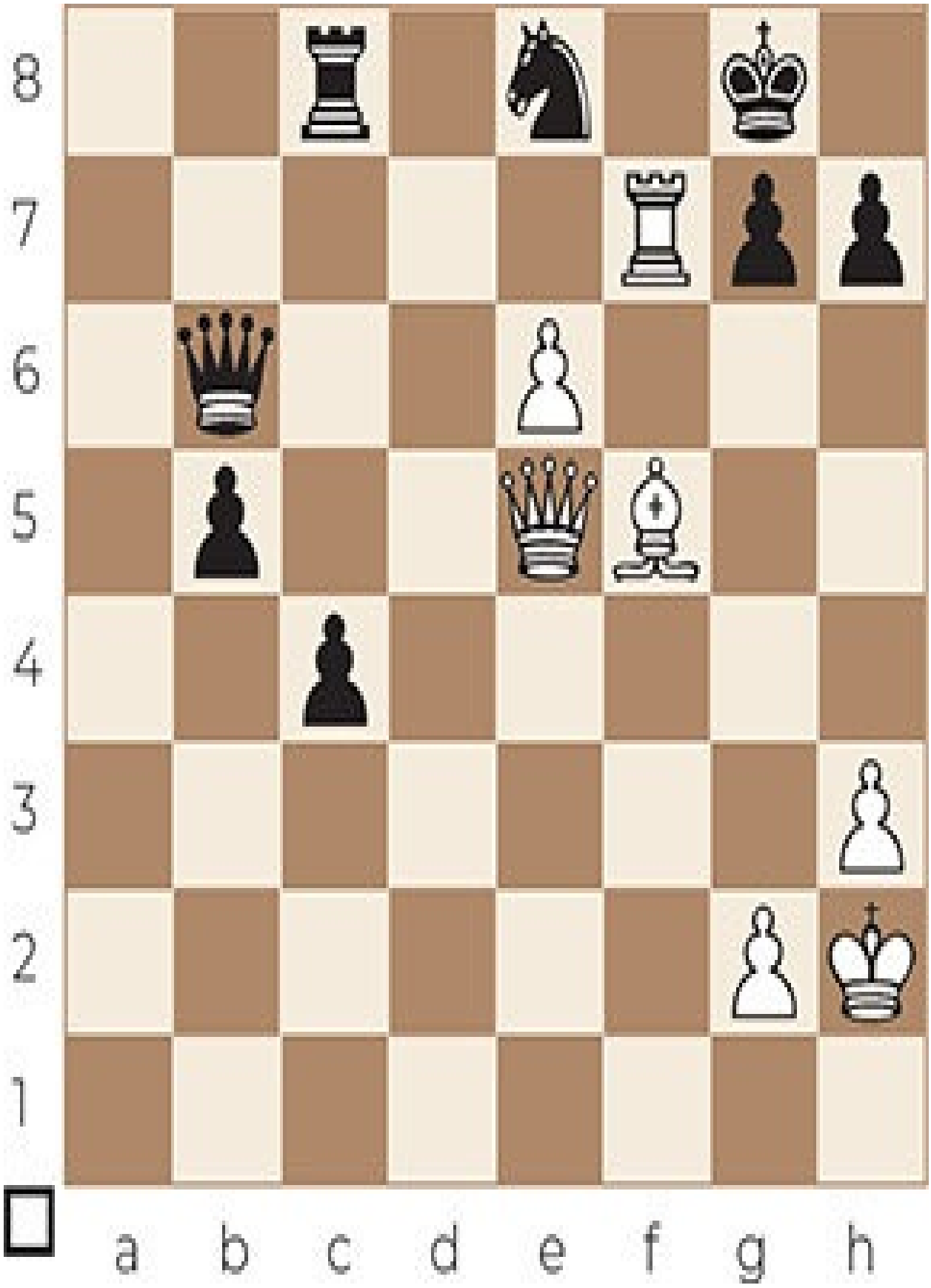
26...♔e7 27.♕f7+ ♔d8 28.♕d7# (Lolli's mate).

27.♖f8+ ♔xf8 28.♕f7#

Game 100

Neiksans – Brunello

2014


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

38. ♗xh7+ ♔xh7

38...♔h8 39.♖f8+ ♔xh7 40.♕h5#.

39.♕h5+ ♔g8 40.♖f8+ ♔xf8 41.♕f7#

Game 101

Shur – Kunin

1997

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

36.♖xf7+ ♔g8 37.♖f8+

Making way for the queen.

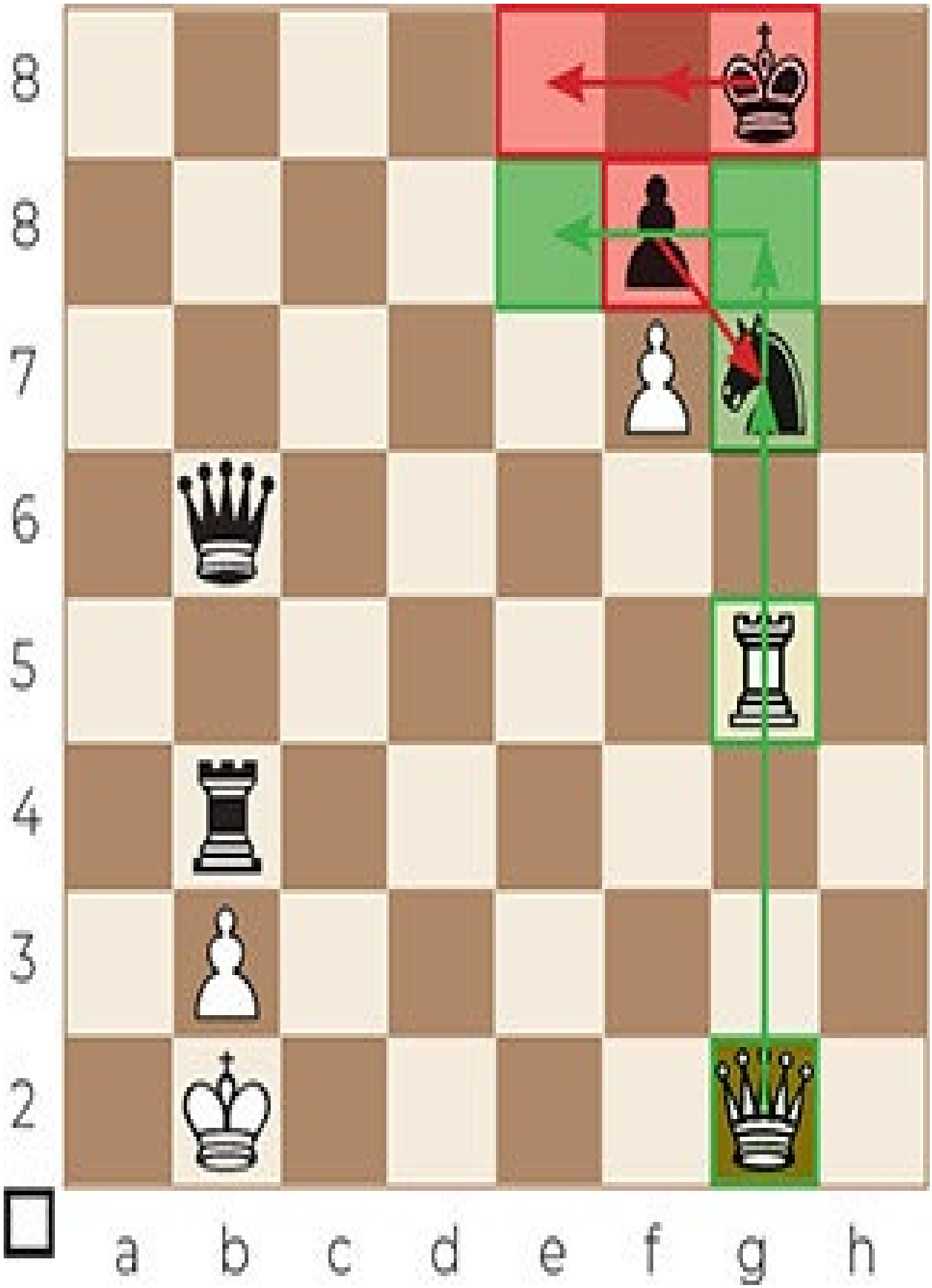
37...♖xf8

37...♔xf8 38.♕g7# (Damiano’s mate).

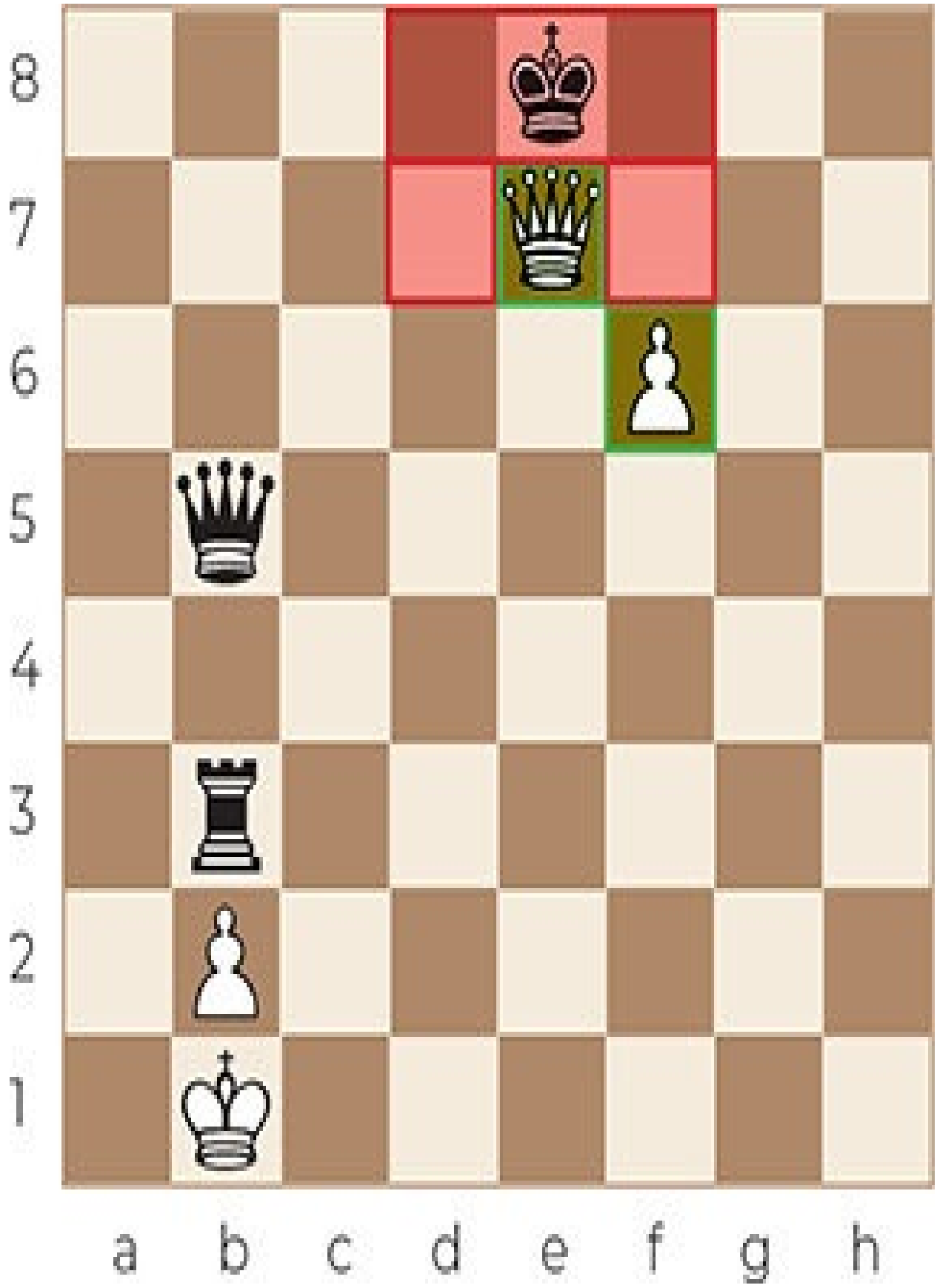
38.♕g7#

Lolli’s mate 2

Sometimes, Lolli’s mate is preceded by a piece sacrifice to remove or distract a defender of the king.


8
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
a b c d e f g h

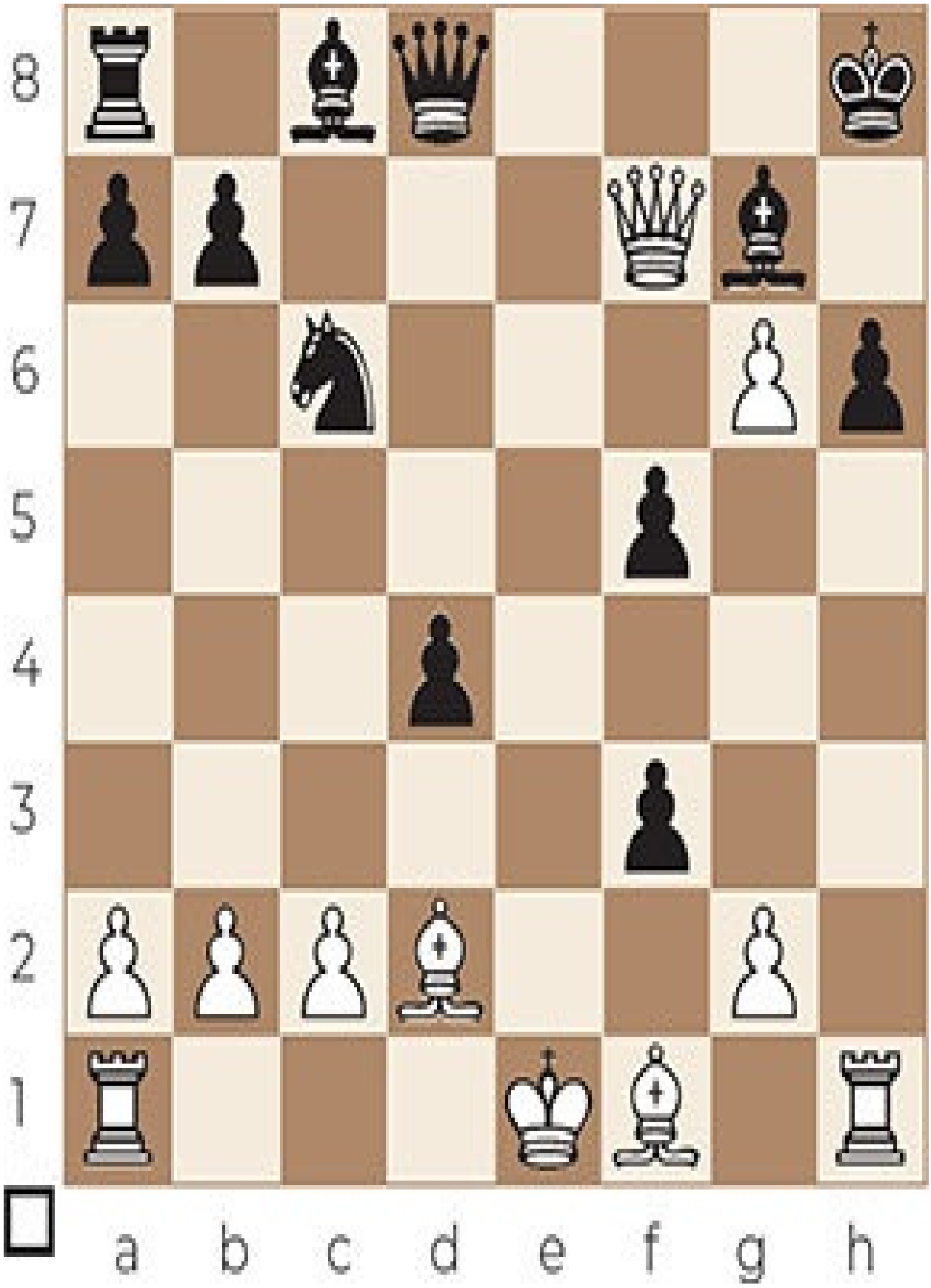
1.♖xg6+ fxg6 2.♕xg6+ ♔f8 3.♕g7+ ♔e8 4.♕e7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 102

Kingscrusher – fibunko

2019


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

19.♖xh6+ ♗xh6 20.♕h7#

Game 103

Wagner-Michel – Fischer

1994

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

15. ♗xh7+

Black has no defending pieces.

15...♔xh7

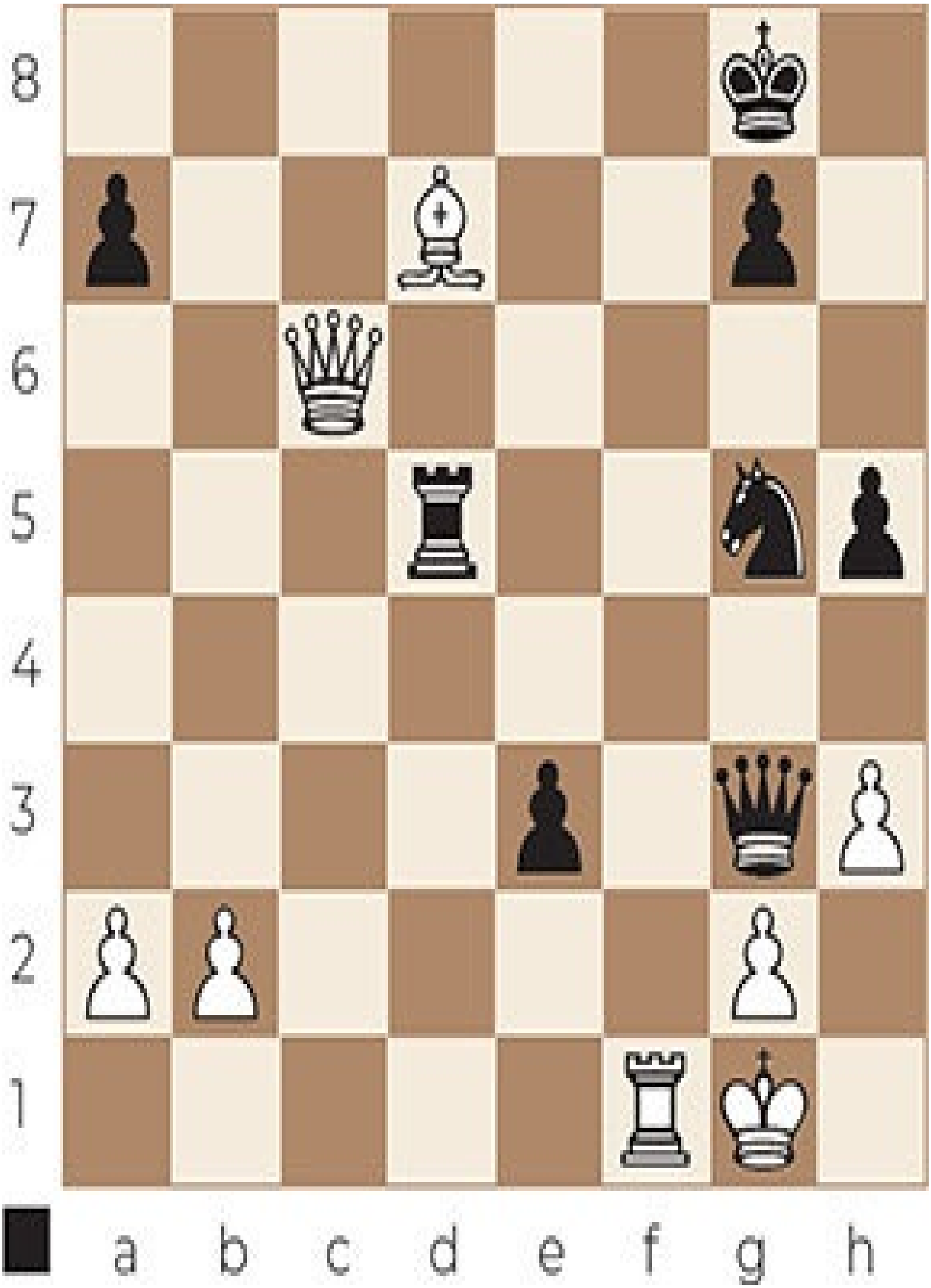
Or 15...♔h8 16.♕h5 ♖fe8 17.♗d3+ (discovered check) 17...♔g8 18.♕h7+ ♔f8 19.♕xg7# (Damiano's mate).

16.♕h5+ ♔g8 17.♕g5 g6 18.♕h6 ♕xc3 19.♕g7#

Game 104

Zsiltzova-Lisenko – Cinak

2000


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

34...♘f3+

Deflecting the rook.

35.♖xf3

35.♔h1 ♕h2# (Arabian mate).

35...♖d1+ 36.♖f1 ♖xf1+ 37.♔xf1 ♕f2#

Game 105

Lane – Epishin

2003

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

42...♖e1+ 43.♖xe1 ♕xd5+ 44.♔g1 ♕g2#

CHAPTER 13

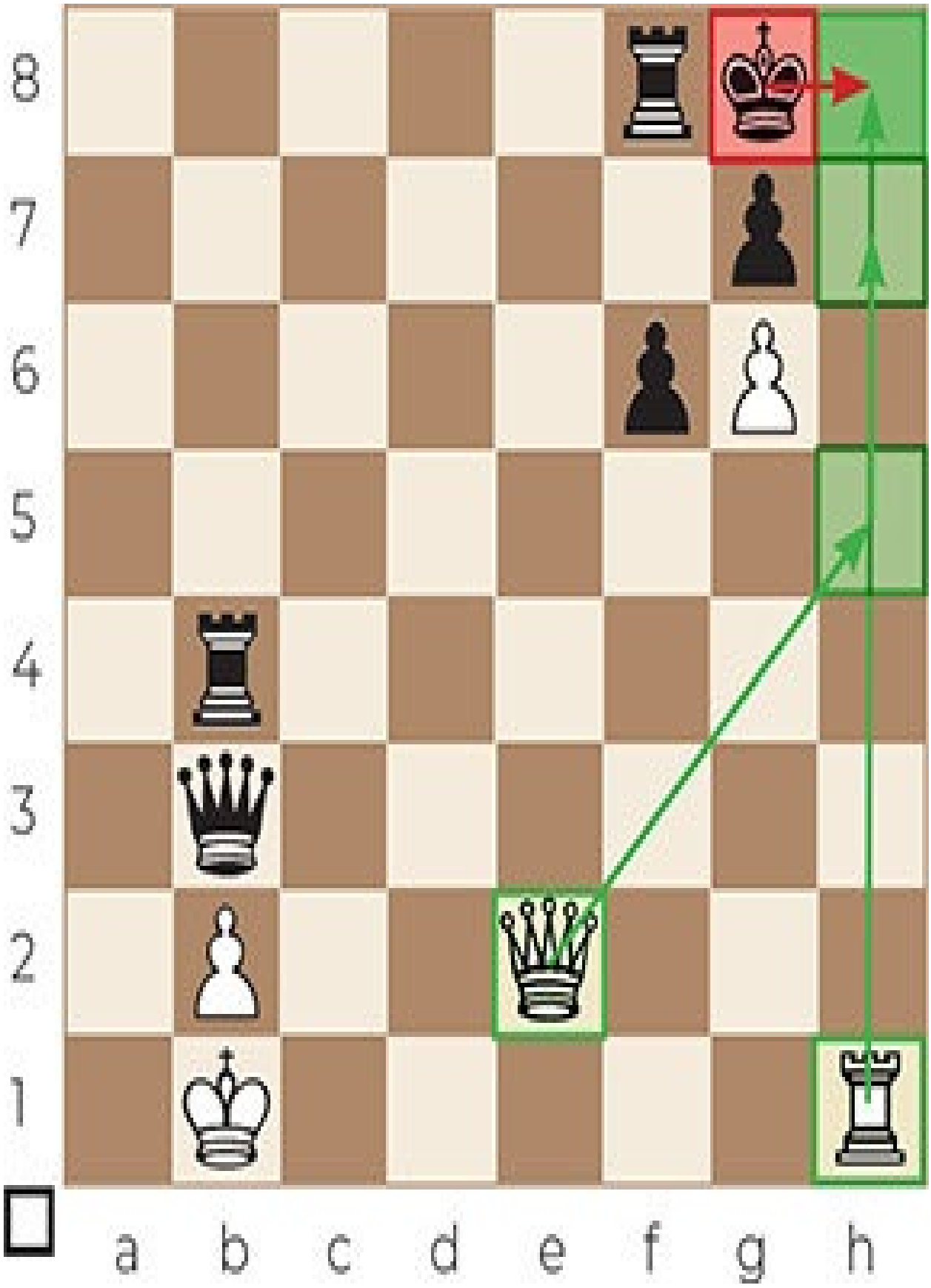
Damiano’s mate

In Damiano’s mate, a queen on the 7th rank delivers checkmate, while a pawn on the 6th rank protects the queen and in some cases also covers an escape square. The difference with Lolli’s mate is that the queen and the mated king are lined up diagonally instead of vertically. One horizontal escape square is blocked by a friendly piece (usually a rook) or the edge of the board.

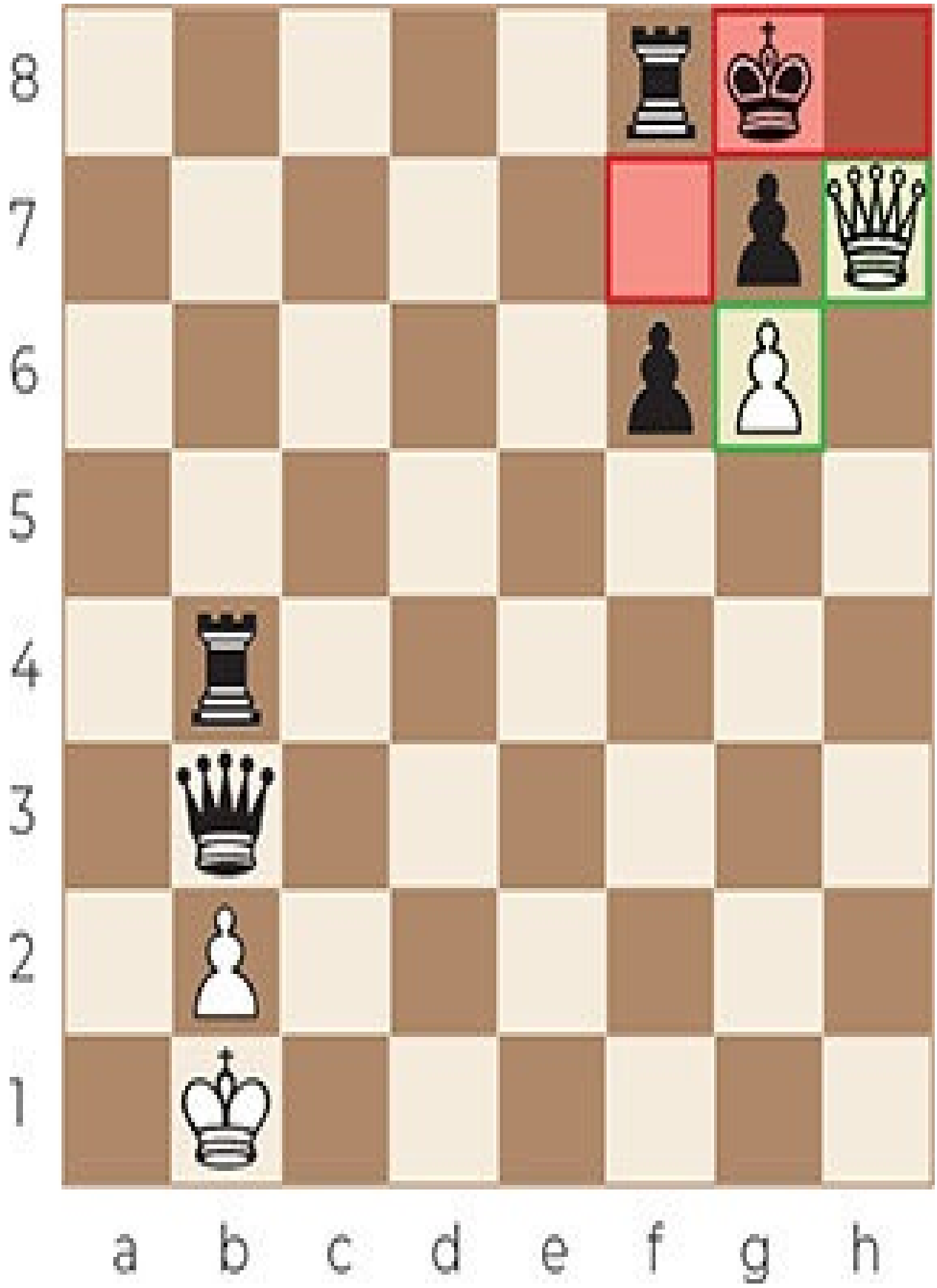
Damiano’s mate is a classic method of checkmating and one of the oldest. The checkmate was first published in 1512 by the Portuguese chess player Pedro Damiano (1480-1544).

Damiano’s mate 1

Often, Damiano’s mate is preceded by a rook sacrifice to lure the king to a certain square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖h8+ ♔xh8 2.♕h5+ ♔g8 3.♕h7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 106

Muzychuk – Batsiashvili

2015

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

30.hxg6

Opening the h-file.

30...♖xb3

30...♘g4 also leads to checkmate, e.g. after the spectacular 31.♕xf7+ ♖xf7
32.♖a8+ ♗f8 33.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 (the rook cannot take since it is pinned)
34.♖h8#.

31.♖h8+ ♔xh8 32.♕h5+ ♔g8 33.♕h7#

Game 107

Deglmann – Delchev

2014

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

23.♖h8+ ♔xh8 24.♖h1+ ♔g8 25.♖h8+ ♔xh8 26.♕h1+ ♔g8 27.♕h7#

Game 108

Reinderman – Huzman

1993

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

30...♖xh2+ 31.♔g1 ♖h1+ 32.♔xh1 ♕h4+ 33.♔g1 ♕h2#

Game 109

Kabatianski – Atlas

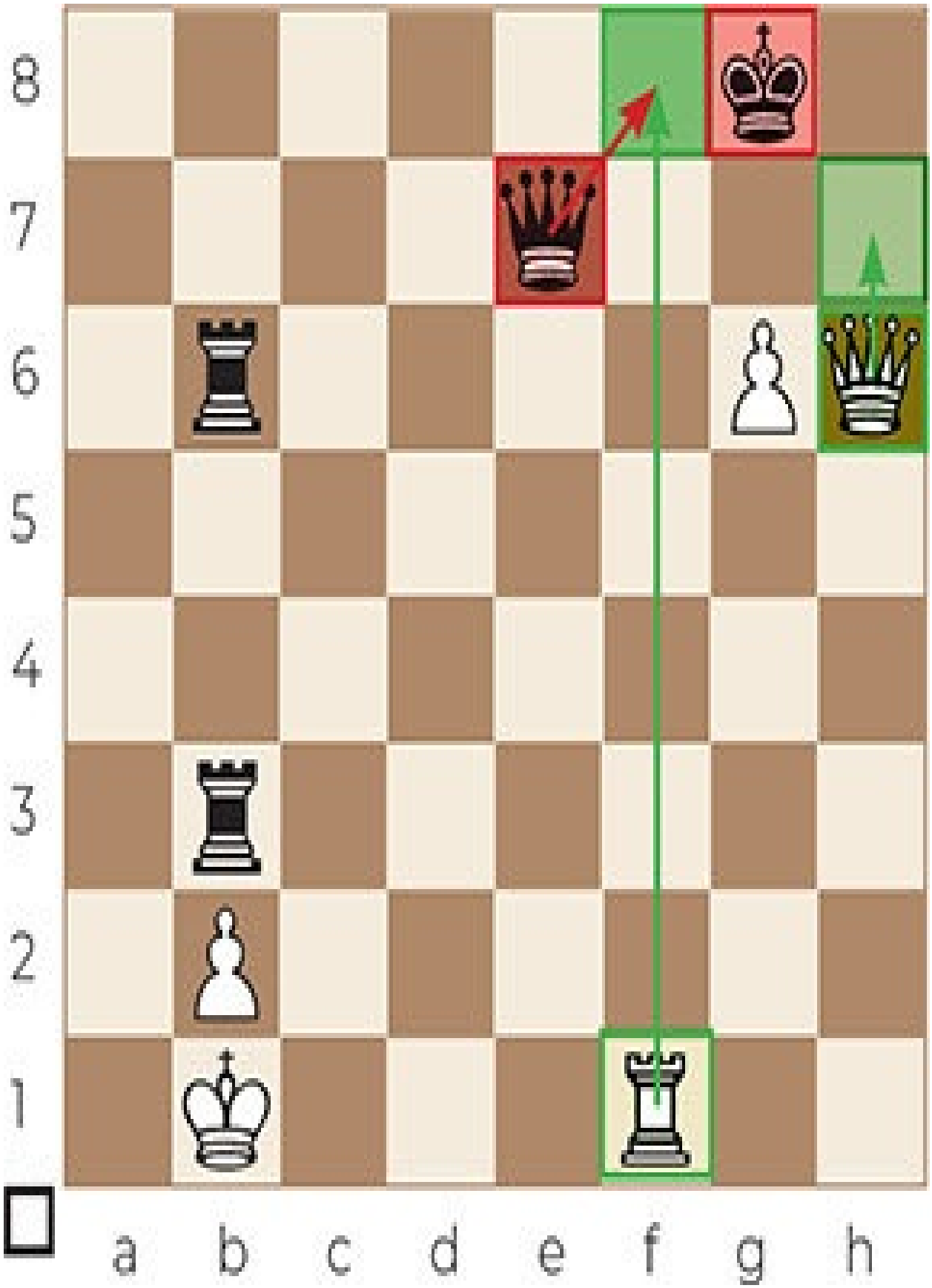
1989

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

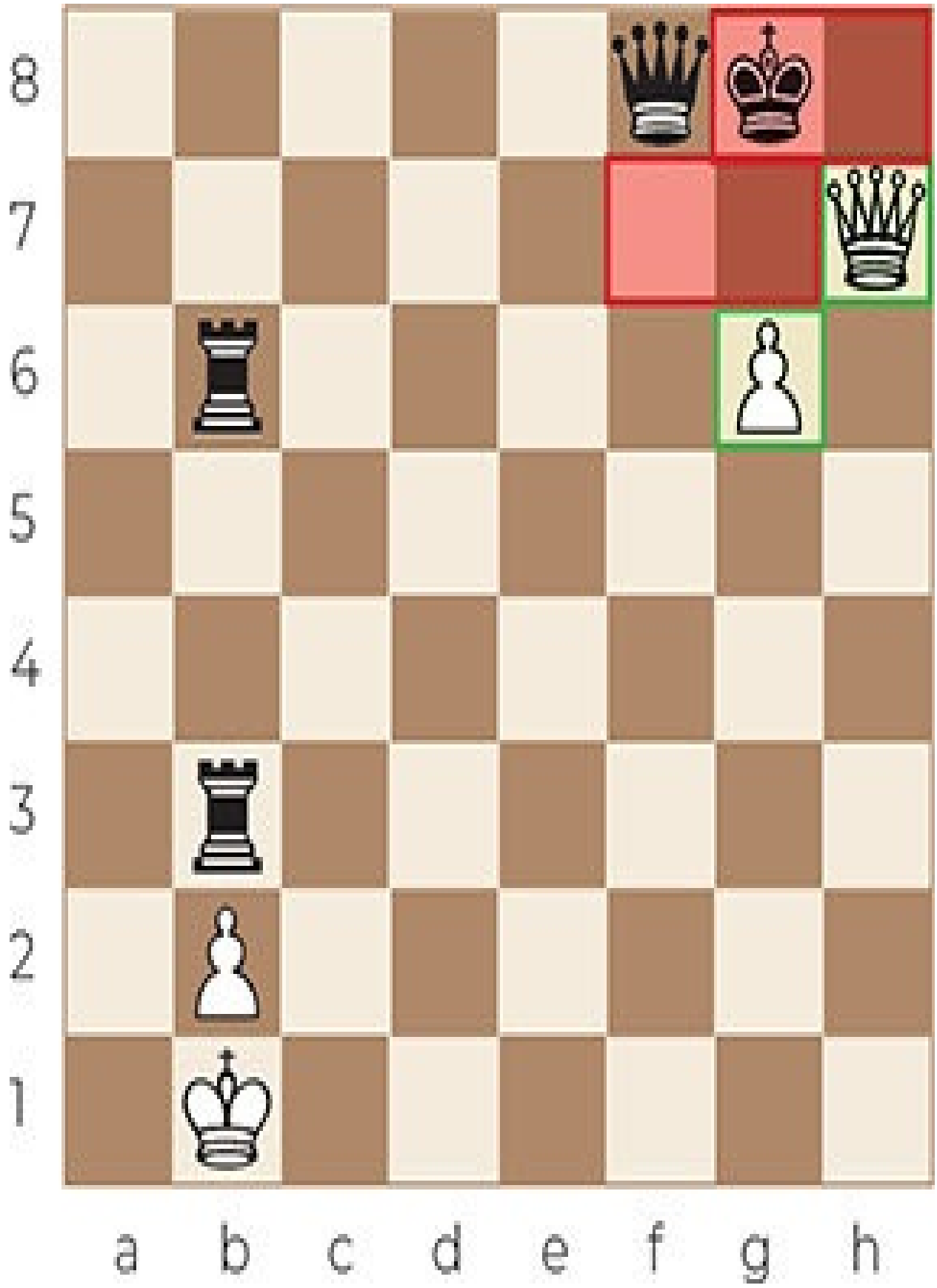
27...♖h8+ 28.♔g1 ♖h1+ 29.♔xh1 ♖h8+ 30.♔g1 ♖h1+ 31.♔xh1 ♕h8+ 32.♔g1 ♕h2#

Damiano’s mate 2

Sometimes, Damiano’s mate is preceded by a piece sacrifice to distract a key defender of the king.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

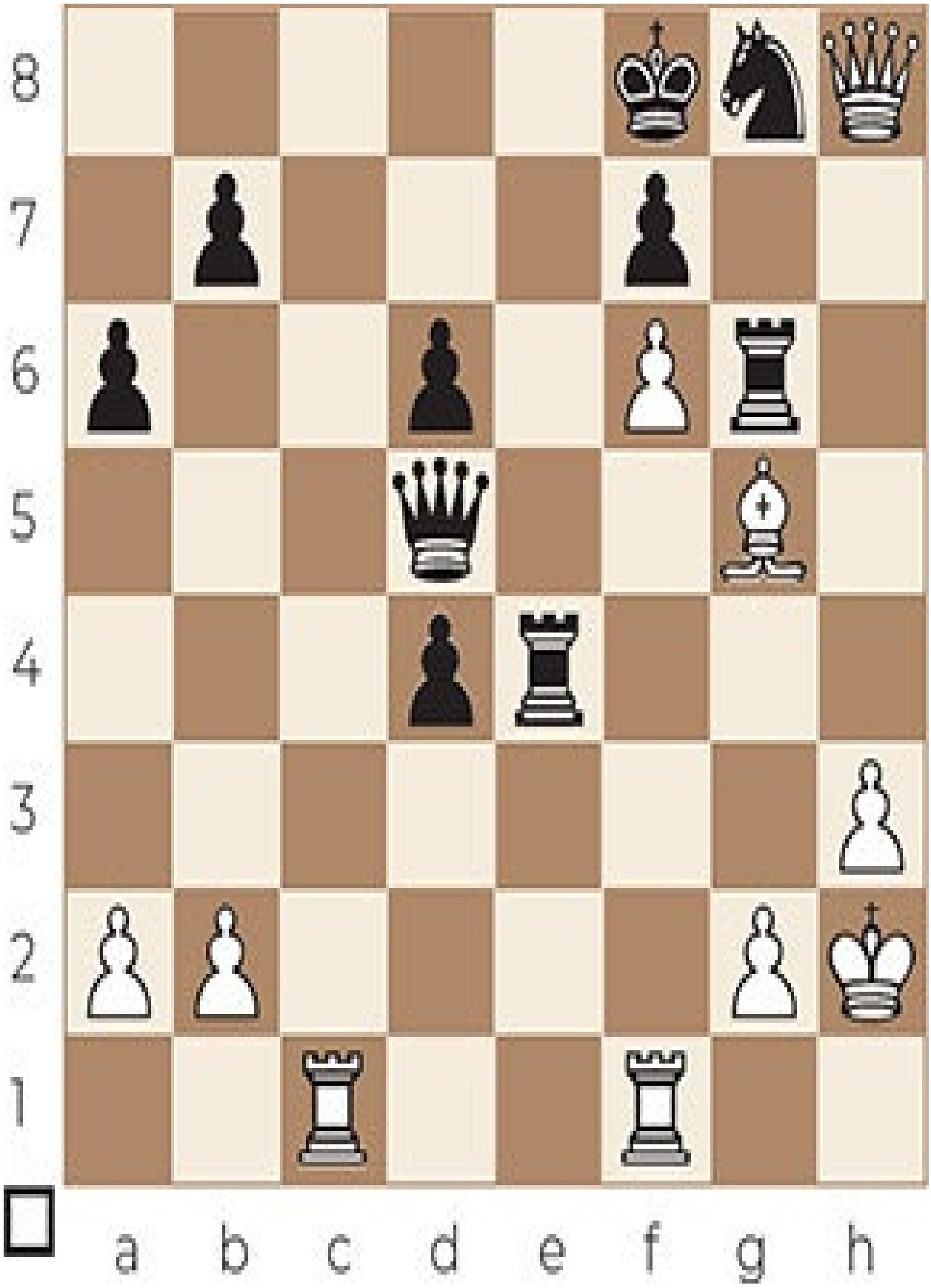
1.♖f8+ ♕xf8 2.♕h7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 110

Bilek – Szily

1954


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28.♖c8+ ♖e8 29.♗h6+ ♖xh6 30.♕g7#

Game 111

Ovetchkin – Sakaev

2003

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

25.♕h6 ♖g8 26.♘d8

Black’s underdevelopment on the queenside and the lack of coordination between his pieces allow White to make this curious knight sacrifice.

26...♖xd8

E.g. 26...♕xc2 leads to 27.♘xf7#.

27.♕g7#

Game 112

Donev – Kolev

1986

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

18.♕h7+ ♔f8 19.♕h8+ ♔e7 20.♗g5+ ♖xg5

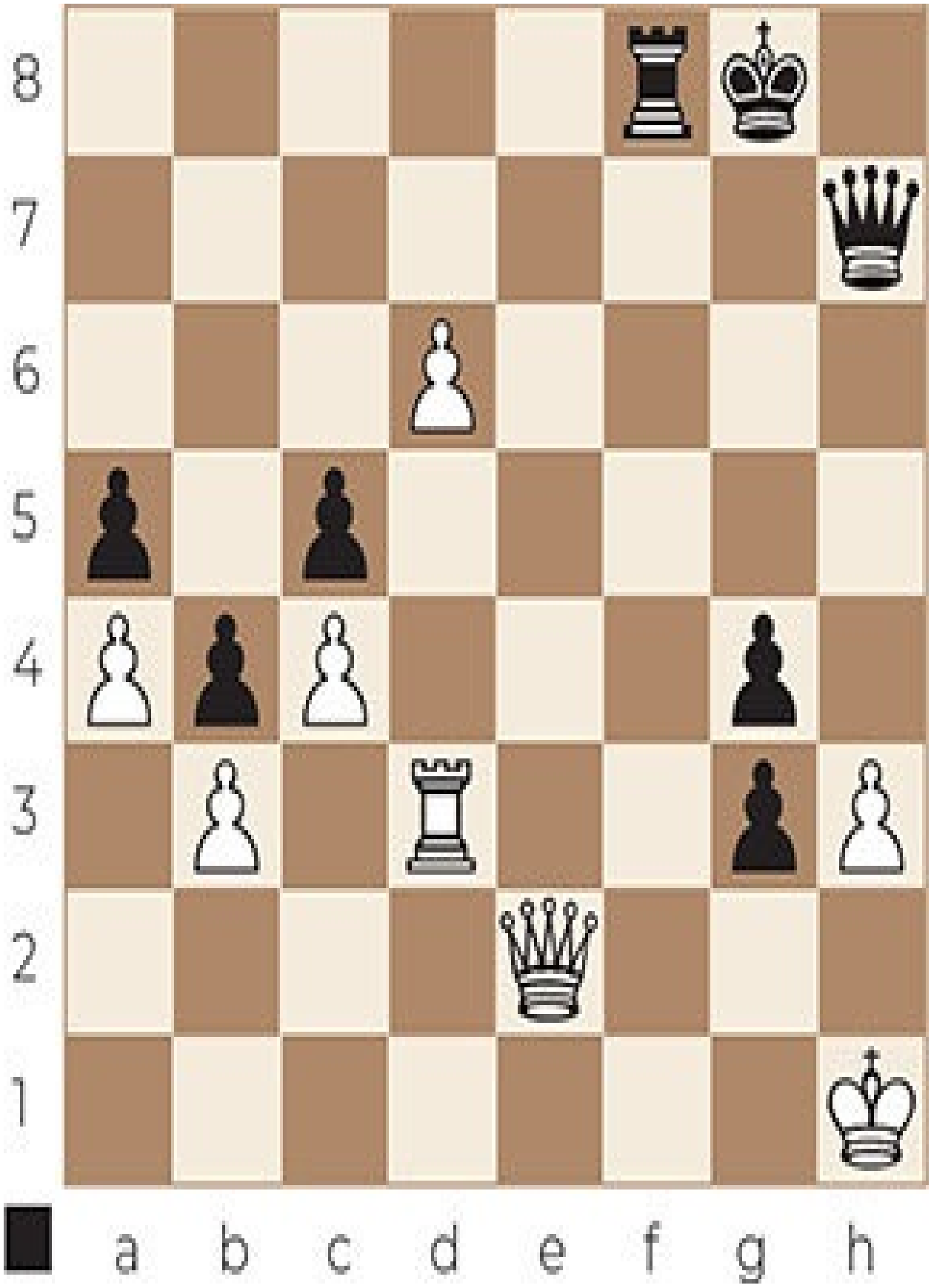
The rook is deflected. 20...♖f6 can’t stop the attack: 21.♗xf6+ gxf6 22.♕g7+ ♔e8 23.♕f7#.

21.♕xg7+ ♔e8 22.♕f7#

Game 113

Ilyin-Zhenevsky – Levenfish

1925


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

45...♕xh3+ 46.♔g1 ♖f1+ 47.♕xf1 ♕h2#

CHAPTER 14

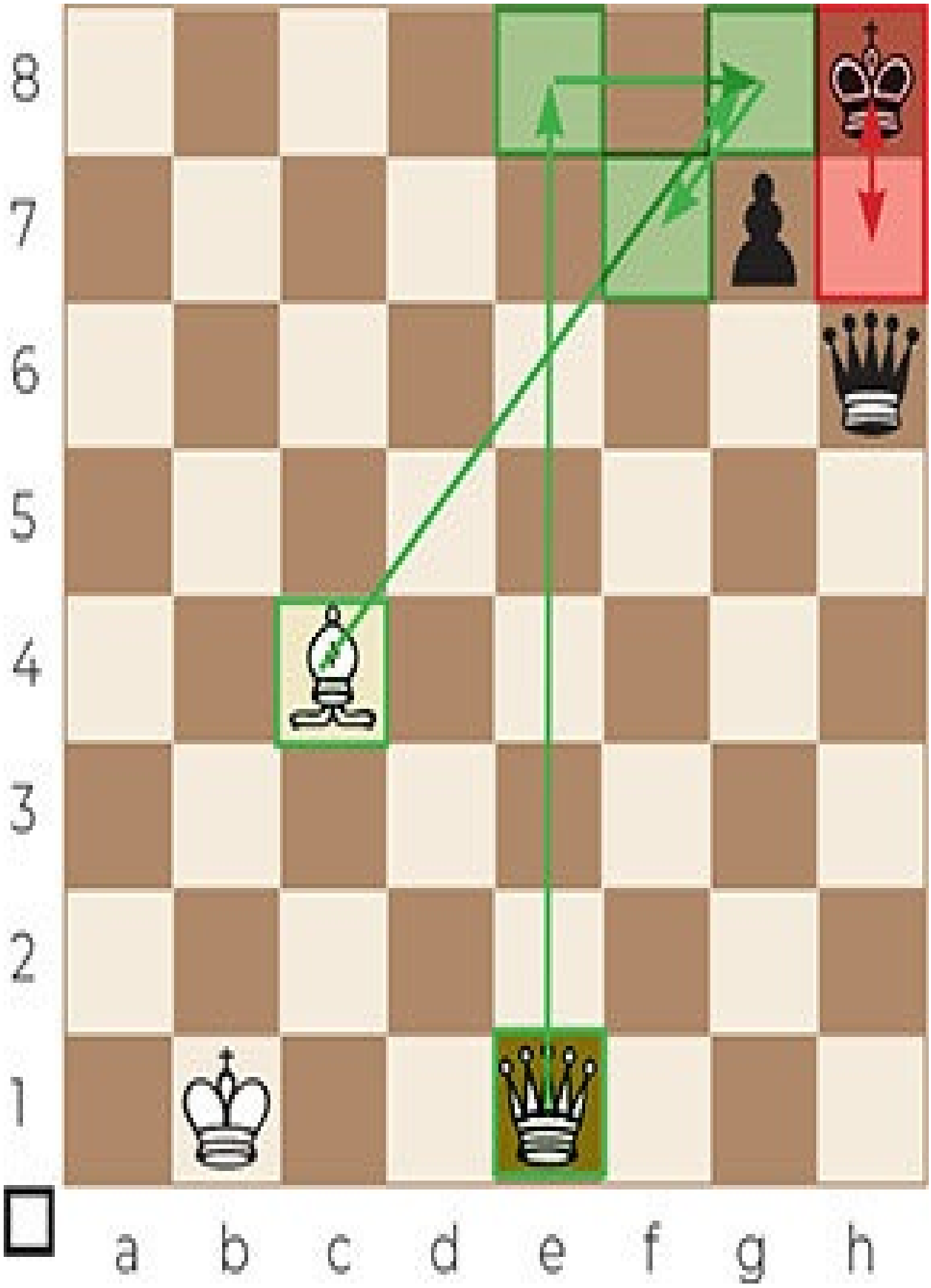
Max Lange’s mate

In Max Lange’s mate, the queen delivers checkmate at the edge of the board, while being protected by a bishop next to it. The bishop also covers one escape square. One of the opponent’s own pieces blocks the escape via the square not covered by the queen and bishop.

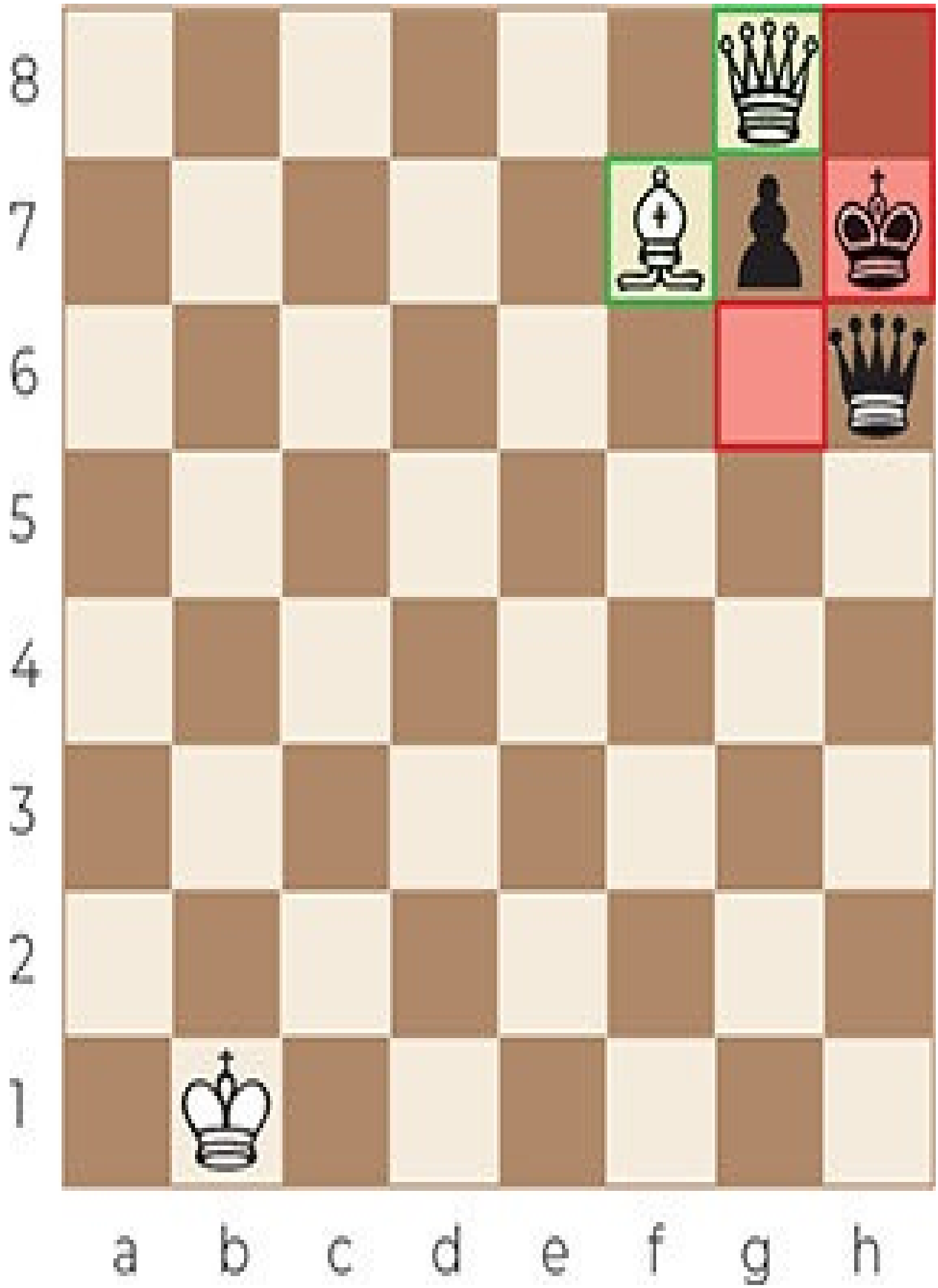
Max Lange’s mate is named after the German chess player Max Lange (1832-1899), who used this mate for the first time in his game with Adolf Anderssen in Breslau 1859 (see Game 120).

Max Lange’s mate

Max Lange’s mate is often preceded by a bishop check (to force the king on the same file or rank as the bishop and queen), followed by a discovered queen check.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕e8+ ♔h7 2.♗g8+ ♔h8 3.♗f7+ ♔h7 4.♕g8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 114

Zinchenko – Yehorova

2008

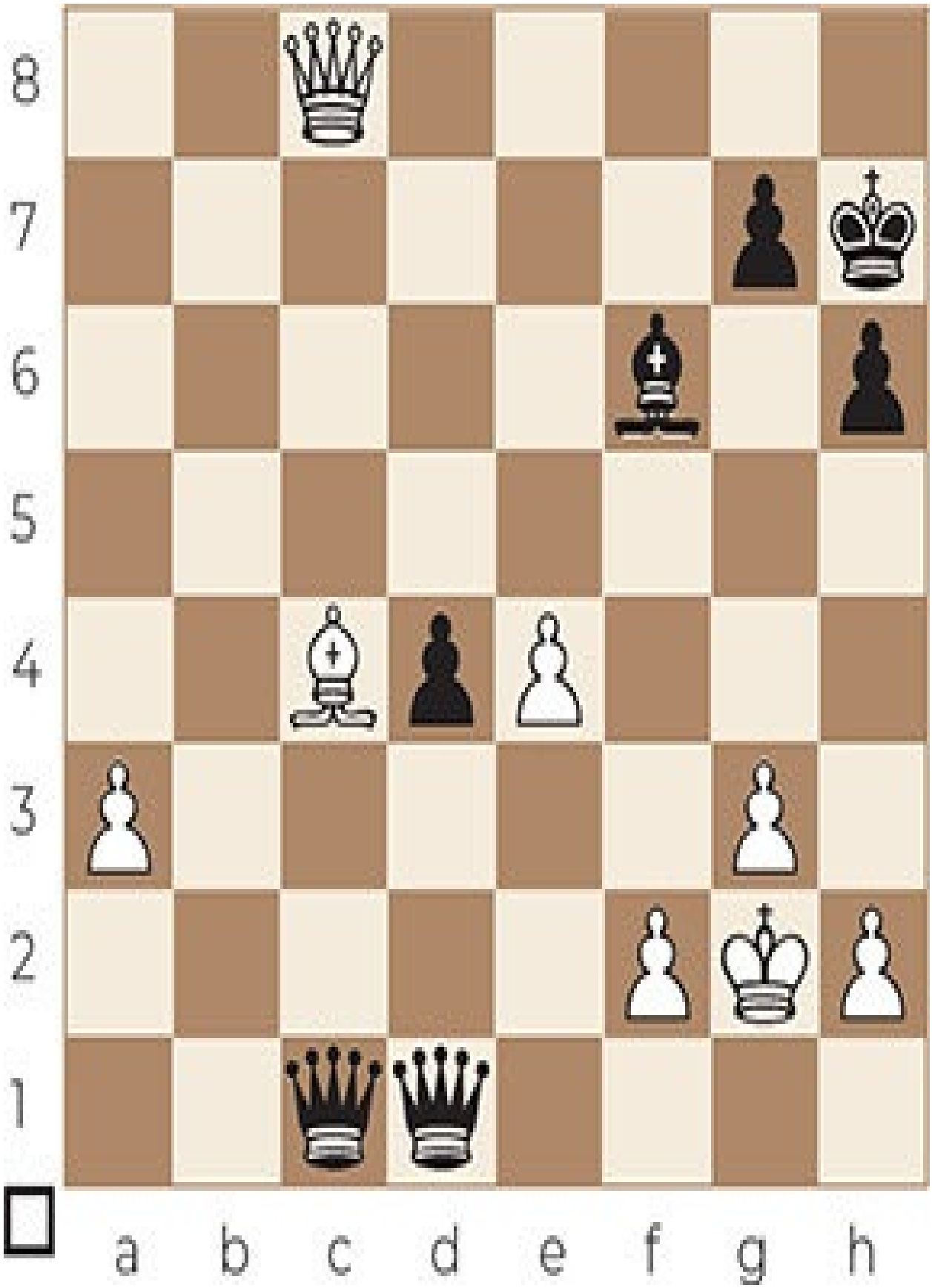
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

25. ♗h7+ ♔h8 26. ♗g6+ ♔g8 27. ♕h7#

Game 115

Fier – Willemze

2010


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

34.♕g8+ ♔g6 35.♕e8+

Black’s king dies because of the weakness of his light squares.

35...♔h7

35...♔g5 can’t save the game because of 36.h4+ ♔g4 37.♗e6#.

36.♗g8+ ♔h8 37.♗f7+ ♔h7 38.♕g8#

Game 116

Bronstein – Keres

1949

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

32.♕h4+ ♔g8 33.♕h7+ ♔f7 34.♕h5+

Again, the weakness of his light squares is fatal for Black.

34...♔g8

34...g6 immediately ends the game: 35.♕xg6#.

35. ♗h7+

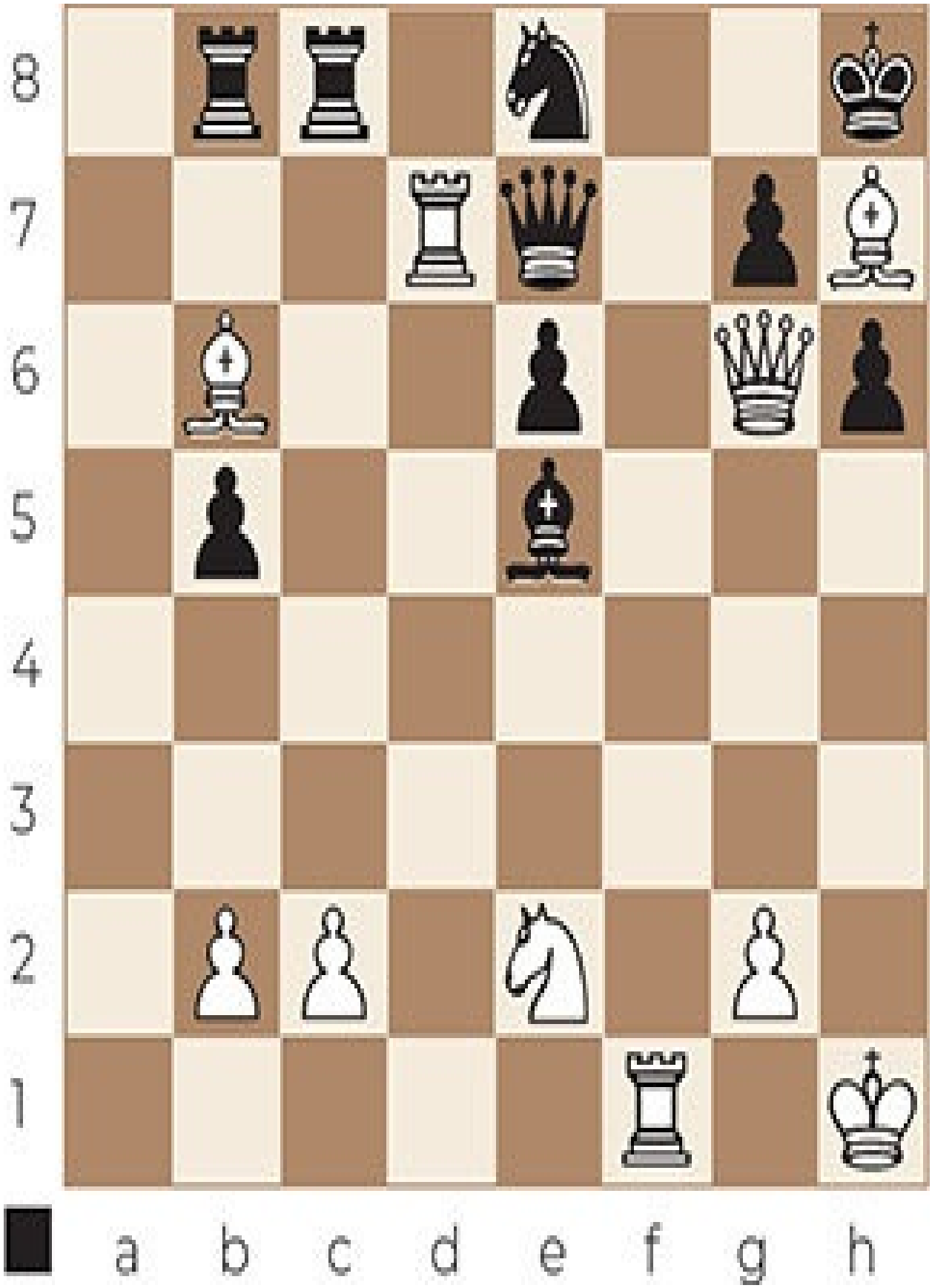
This shows why 34.♕h5+ was important: the queen has to cover f7, so that the king is now forced to go to h8.

35...♔h8 36.♗g6+ ♔g8 37.♕h7#

Game 117

Ranieri – Cherin

2007

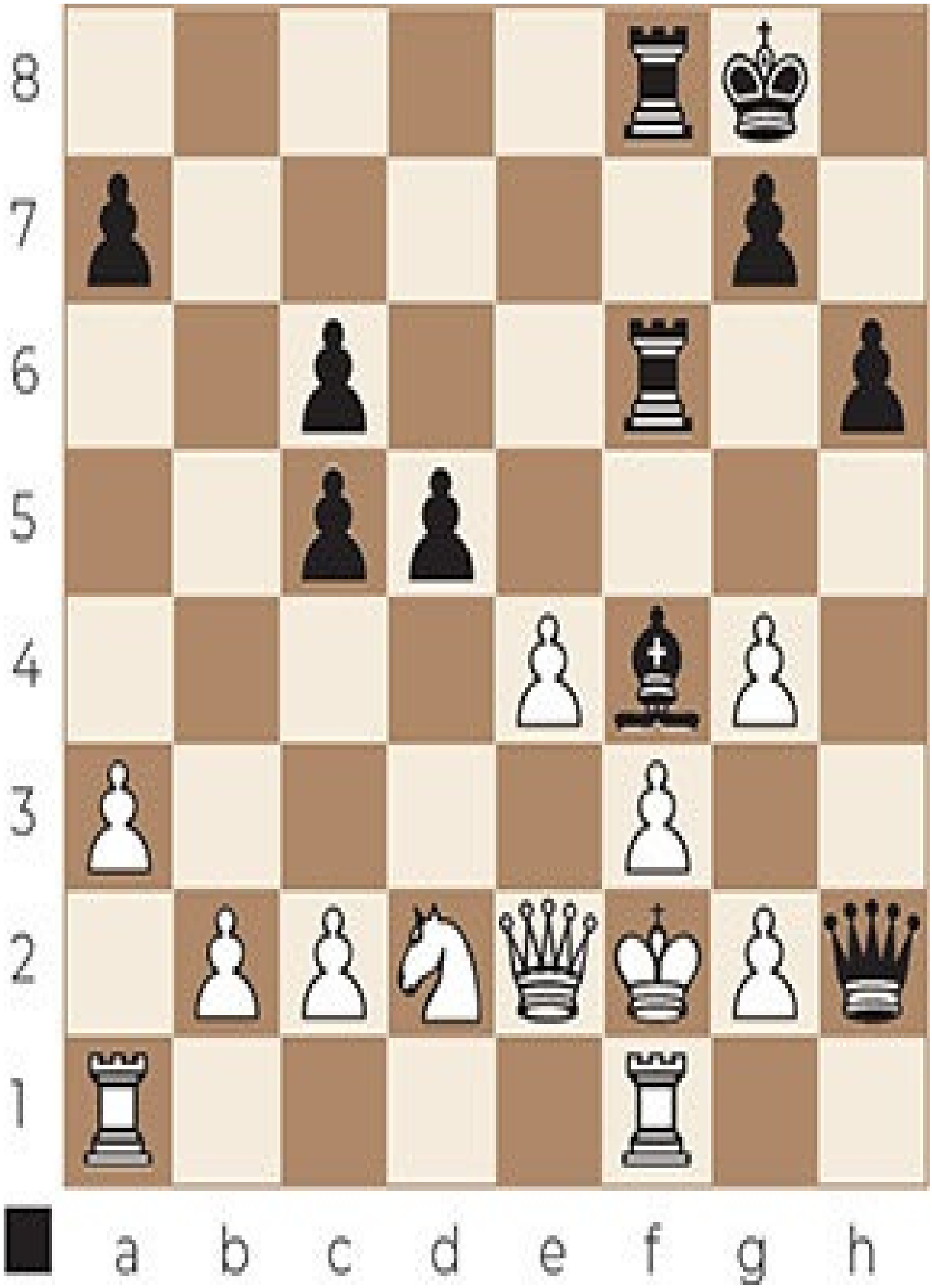

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

30...♕h4+ 31.♔g1 ♗h2+ 32.♔h1 ♗g3+ 33.♔g1 ♕h2#

Game 118

Roque – Kirton

1997


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28...♕h4+ 29.♔g1 ♗h2+ 30.♔h1 ♗g3+ 31.♔g1 ♕h2#

Game 119

Baird – Lipke

1898

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

18...♕h4 19.♕d4 ♗h2+ 20.♔h1 ♗g3+ 21.♔g1 ♕h2#

Game 120

Anderssen – Lange

1859

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

16...♕e4

Threatening 17...♕h4# (Greco's mate).

17.♕f3 ♕h4+ 18.♕h3 ♕e1+ 19.♔h2 ♗g1+ 20.♔h1 ♗f2+ 21.♔h2 ♕g1#

CHAPTER 15

Damiano’s bishop mate

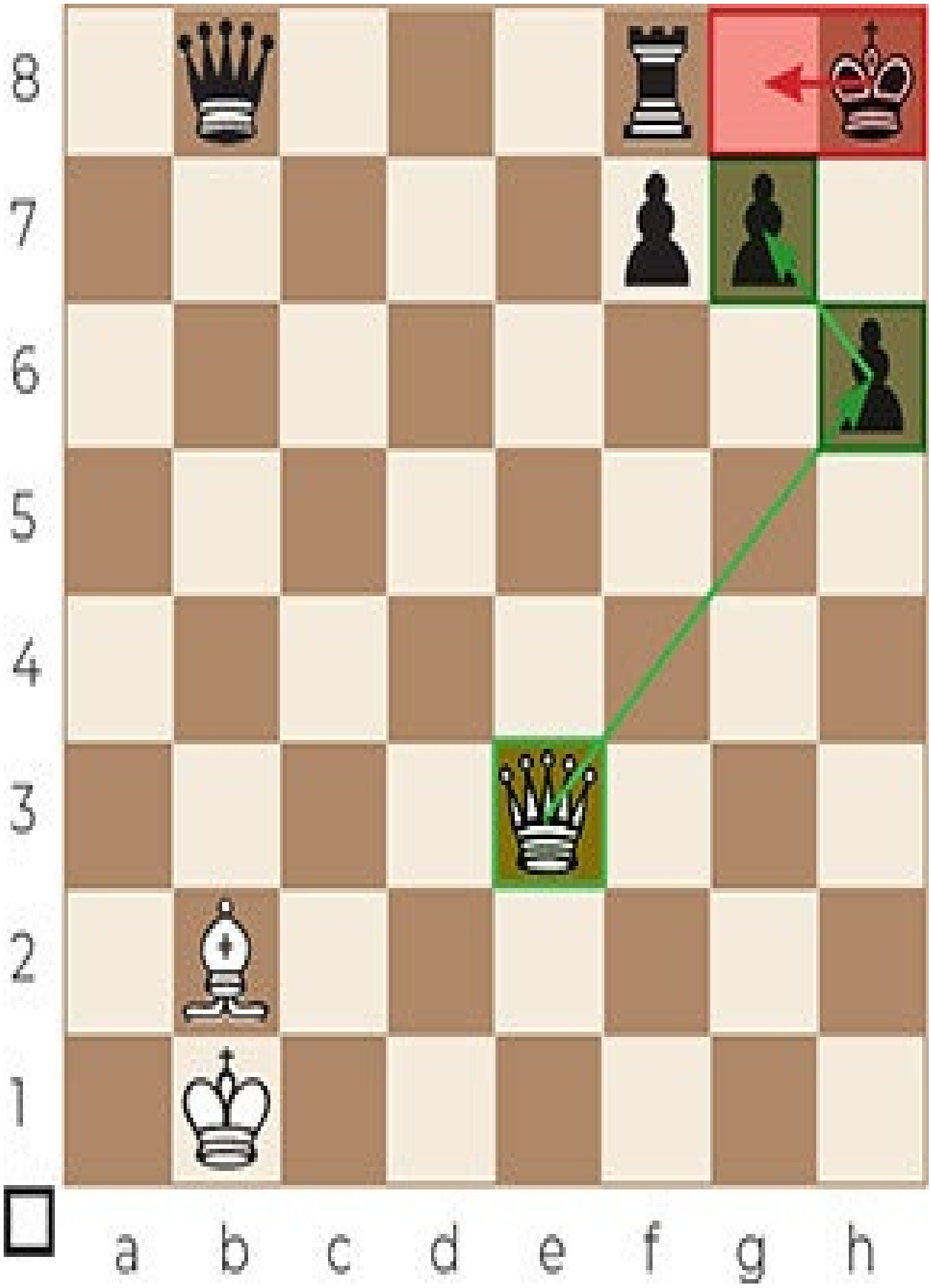
In Damiano’s bishop mate, the queen delivers checkmate at the edge of the board, while being protected by a bishop.

Damiano’s bishop mate is named after Pedro Damiano (1480-1544). The well known chess aphorism ‘If you see a good move, try to find a better one’ can be found in Damiano’s book.

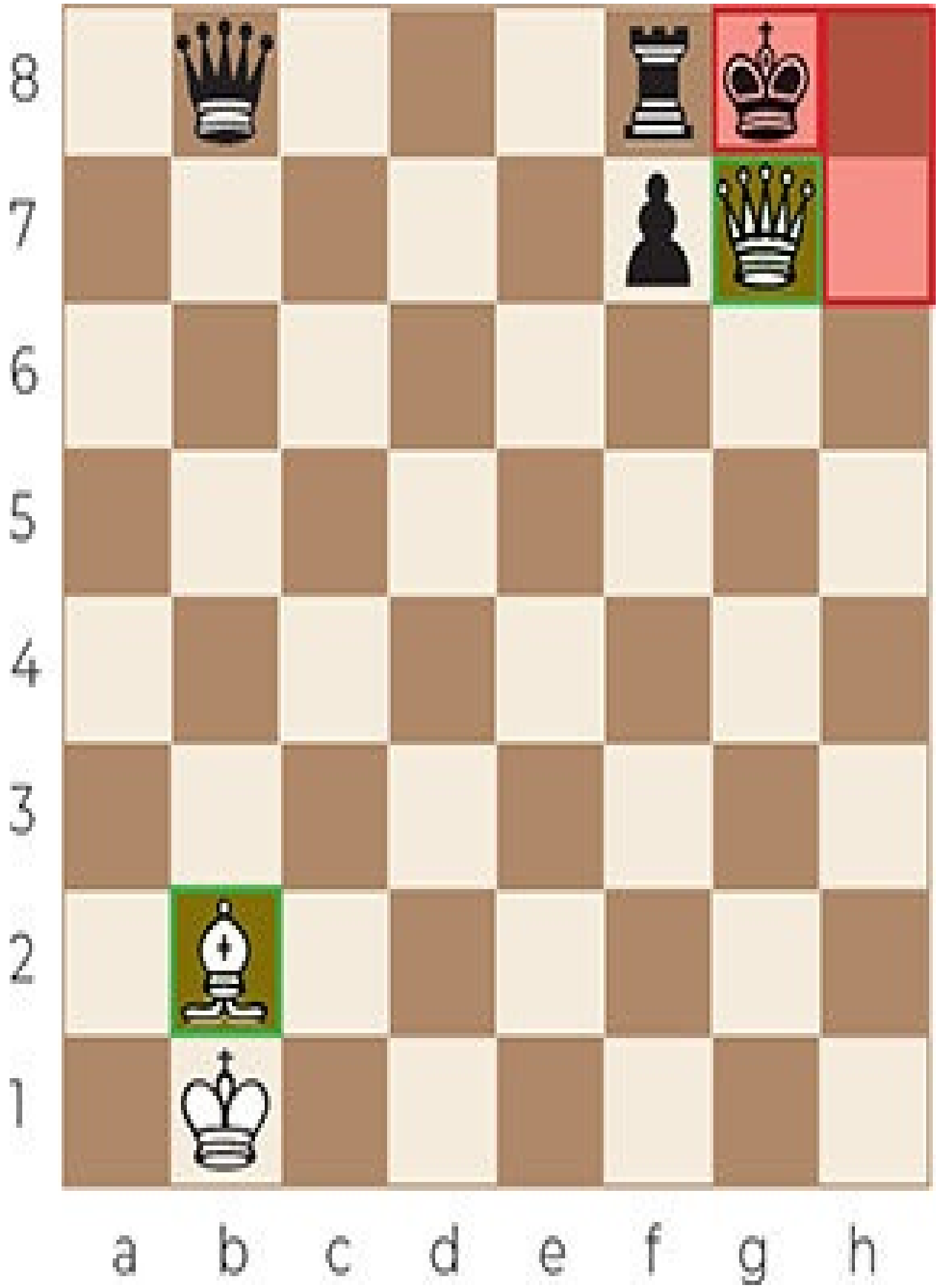
Damiano’s bishop mate is one of the most common ways to checkmate.

Damiano’s bishop mate 1

Sometimes, Damiano’s bishop mate is preceded by a queen check. The opponent can’t take the queen due to a pin with the bishop.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

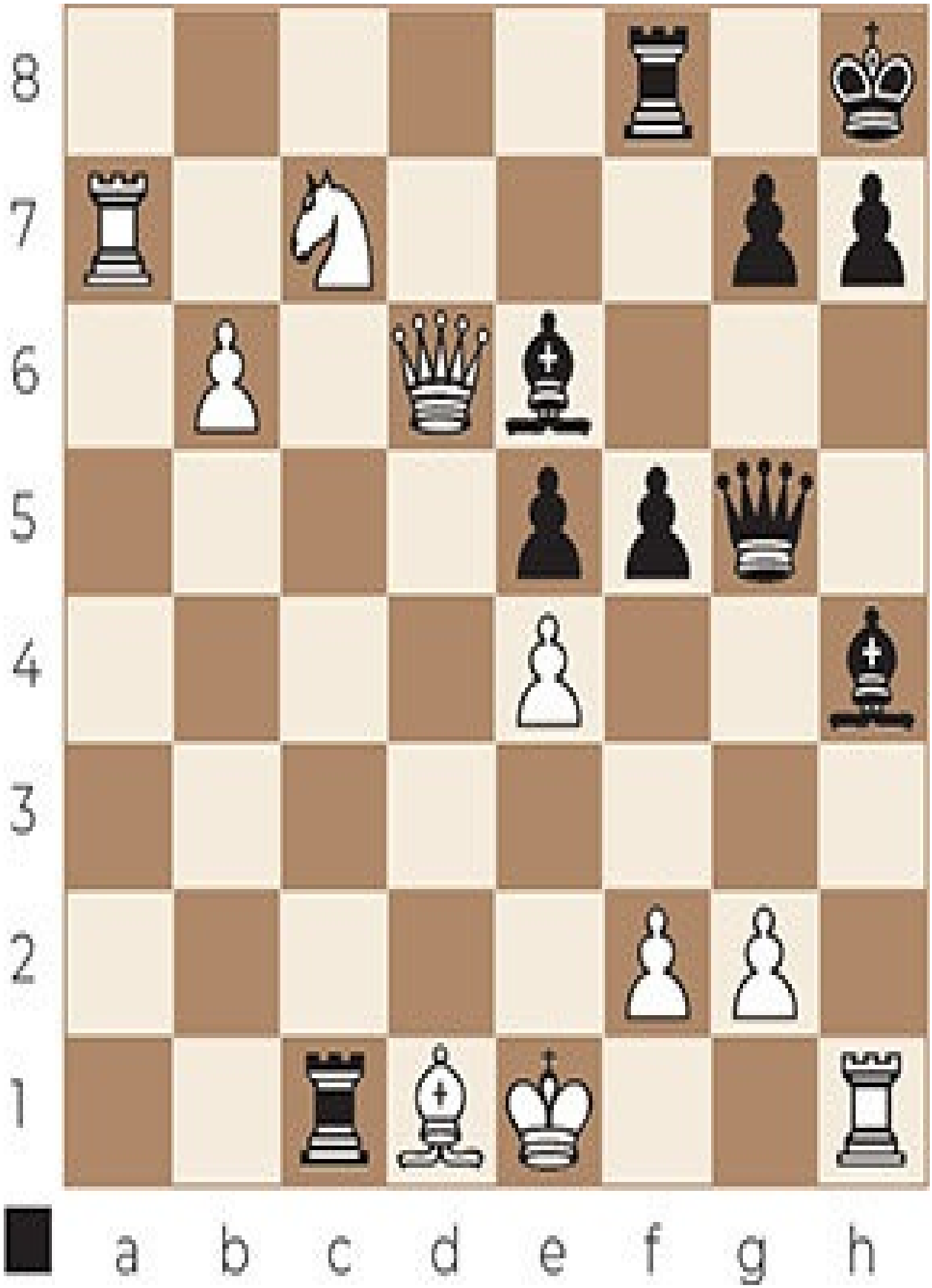
1.♕xh6+ ♔g8 2.♕xg7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 121

Baghdasaryan – Smirnov

2016


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28...♕e3+ 29.♔f1 ♕xf2#

Game 122

Guindy – Chachere

1992

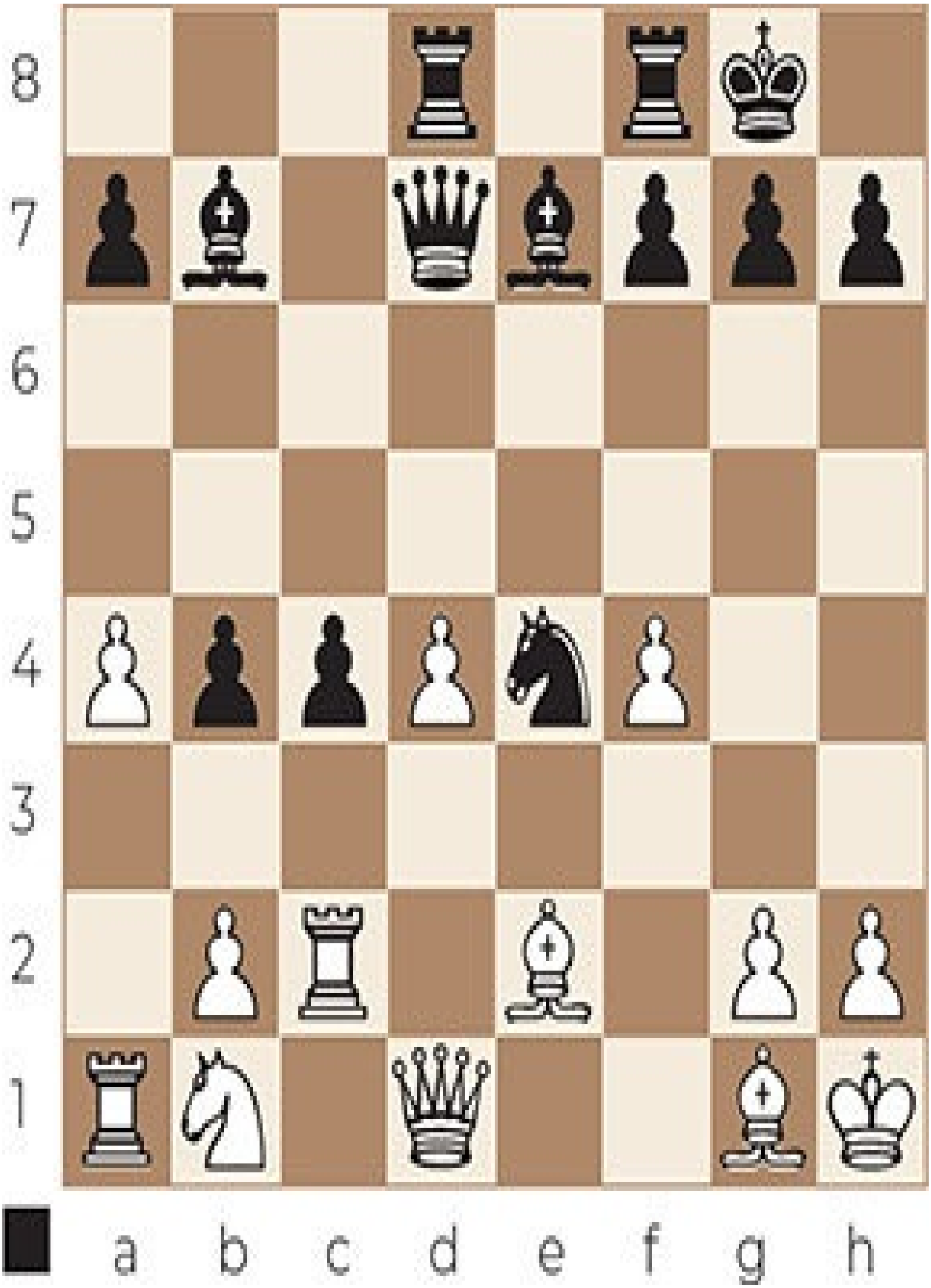
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26...♕xh3+ 27.♔g1 ♕xg2#

Game 123

Vazelakis – Stamatopoulos

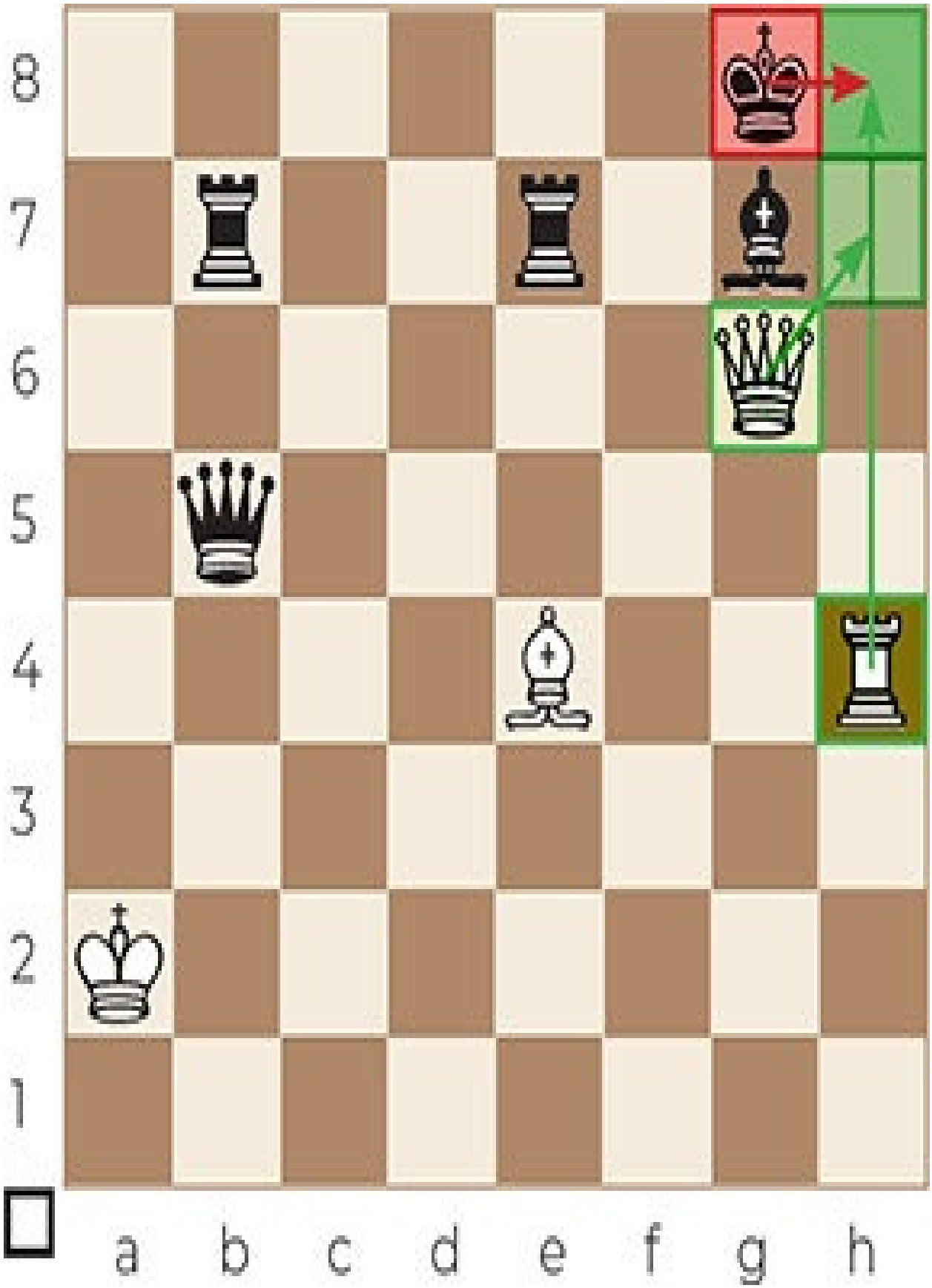
1989


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

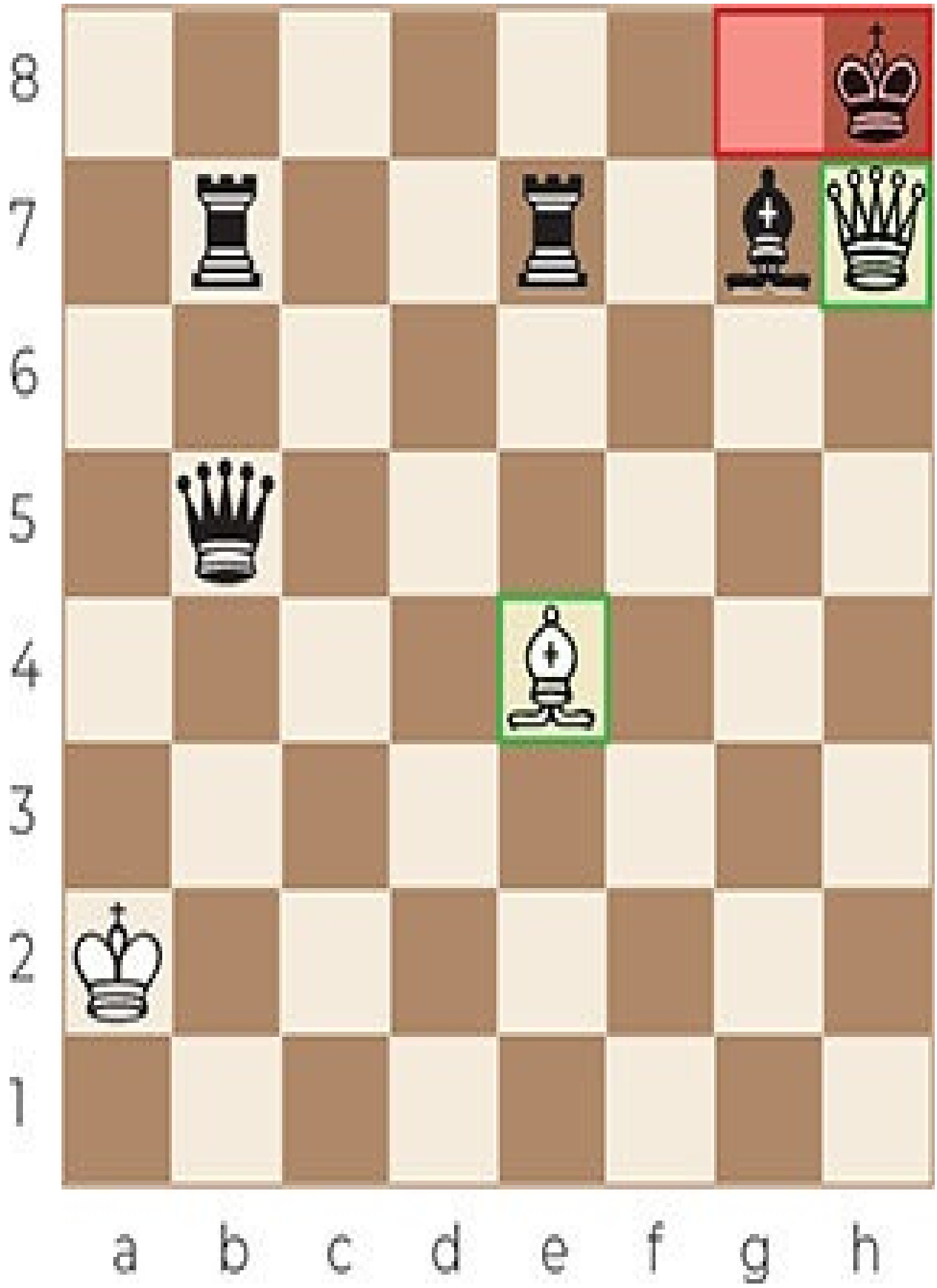
21...♘g3+ 22.hxg3 ♕h3+ 23.♗h2 ♕xg2#

Damiano’s bishop mate 2

Sometimes, Damiano’s bishop mate is preceded by a rook sacrifice to lure the king to a certain square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

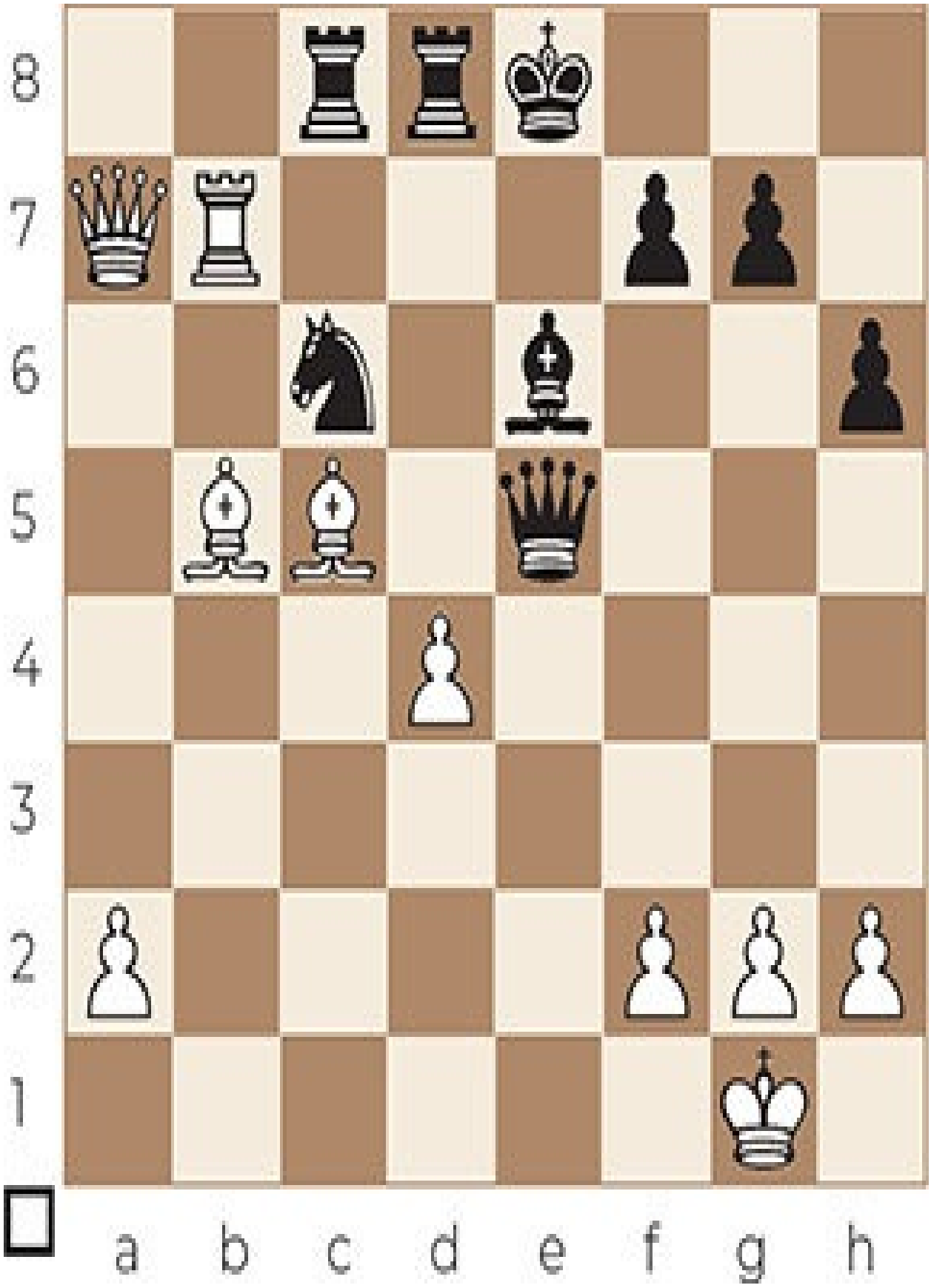
1.♖h8+ ♔xh8 2.♕h7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 124

Blackburne – Schwarz

1873


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

31.♖e7+ ♔f8 32.♖e8+ ♔xe8 33.♕e7#

Game 125

Degraeve – Guidarelli

2003

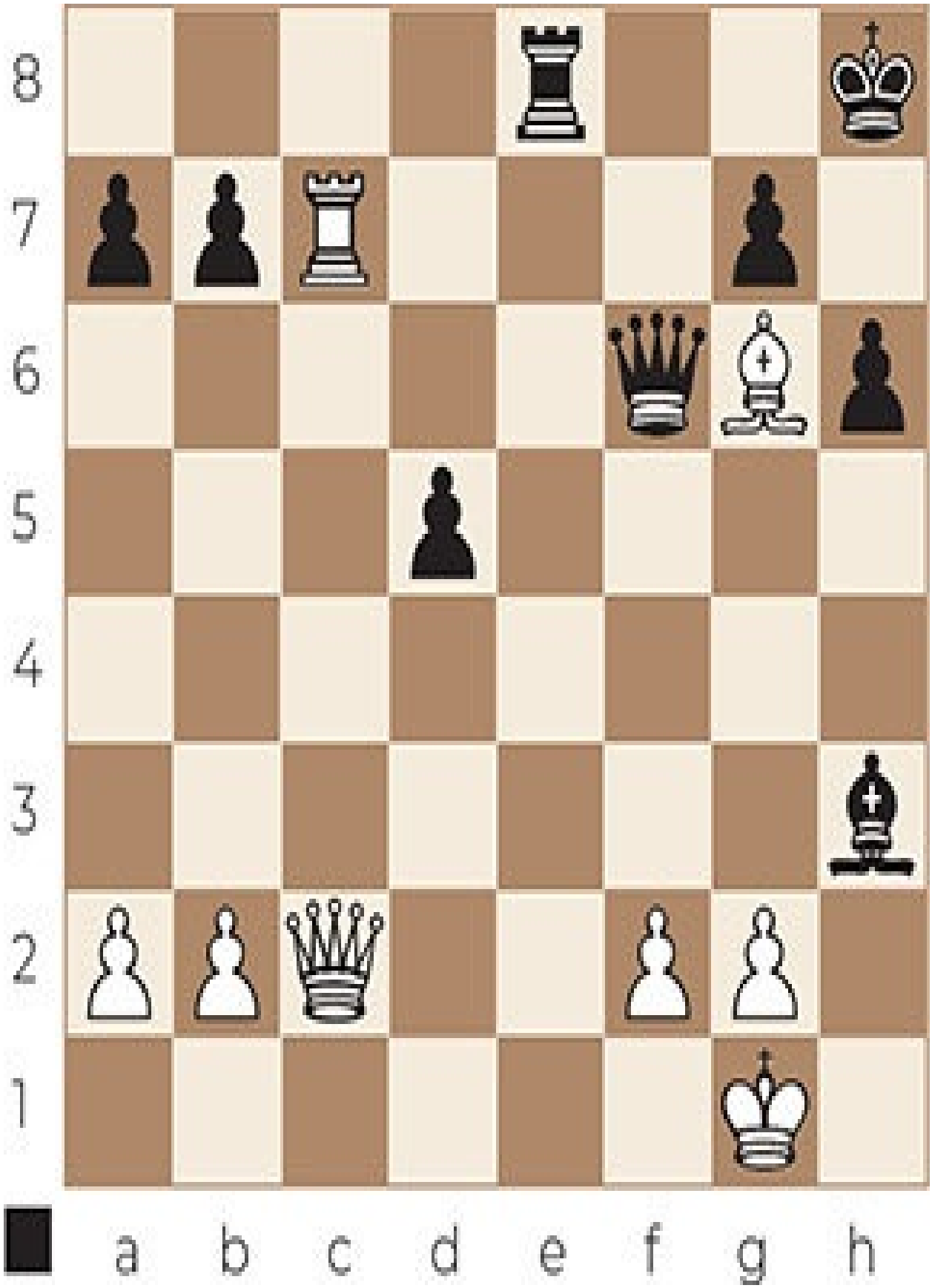
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26...♕xf3+ 27.♗f2 ♖g1+ 28.♔xg1 ♕g2/h1#

Game 126

Sakun – Polivanov

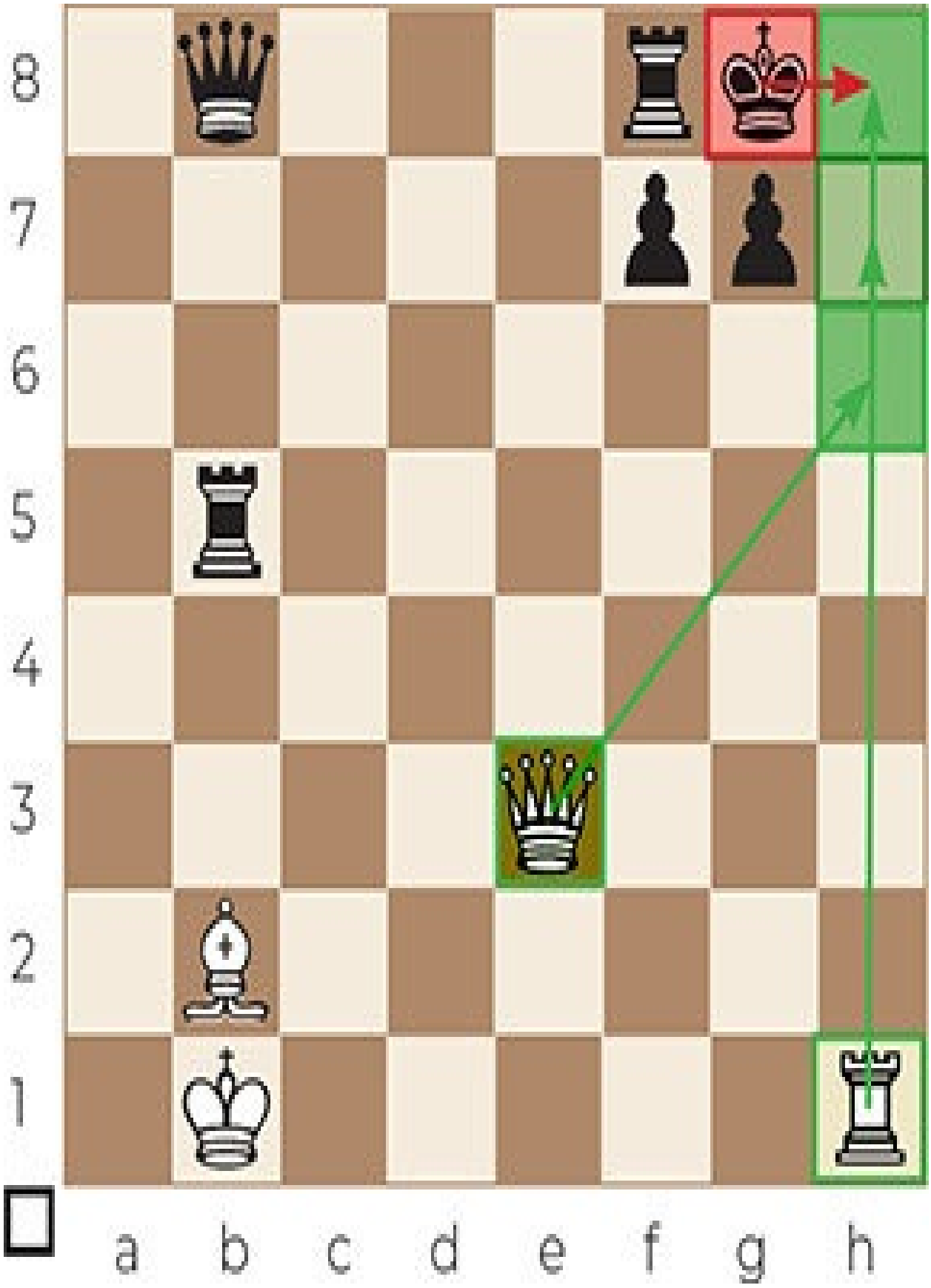
2000


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

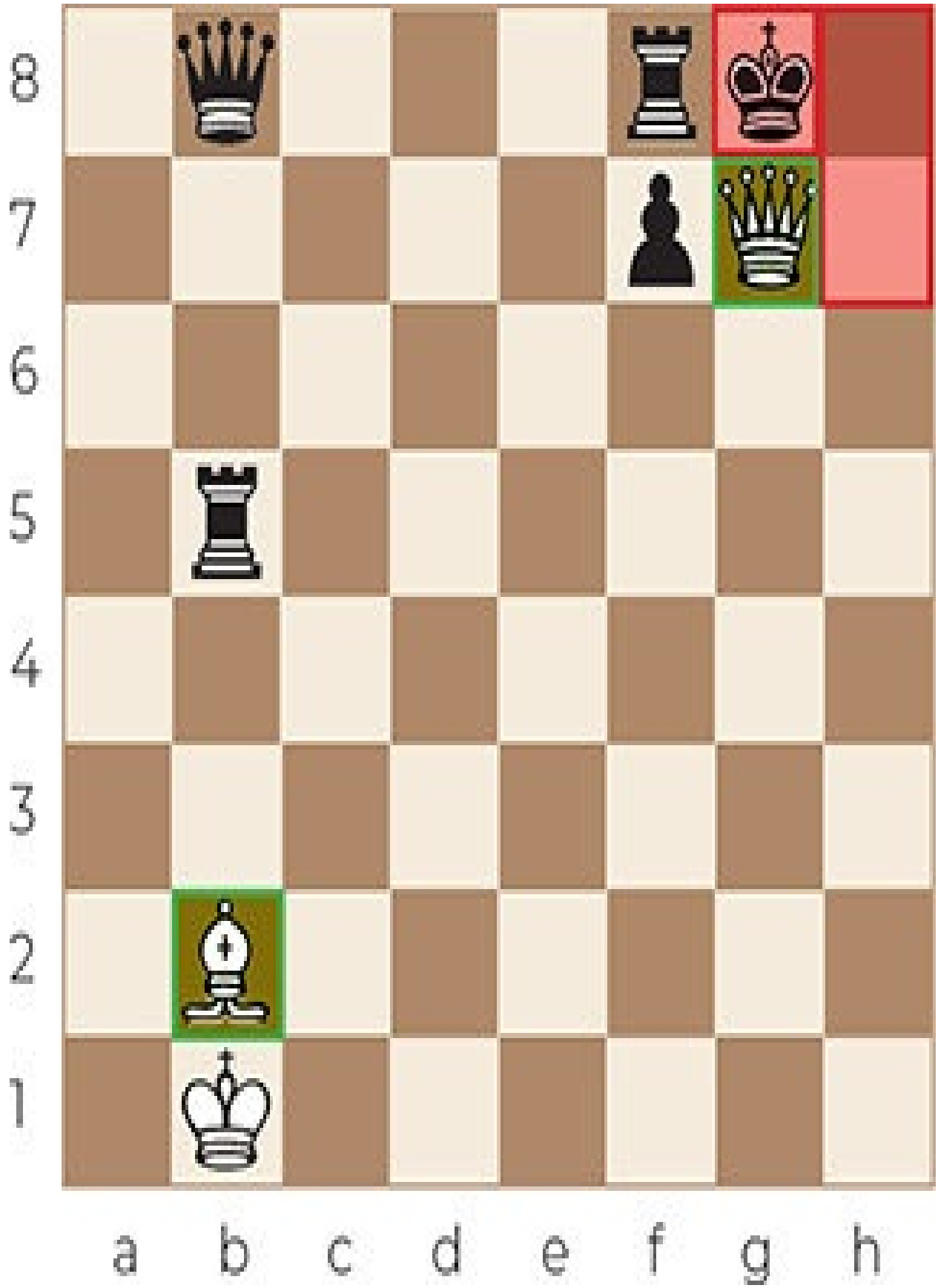
25...♖e1+ 26.♔h2 ♕f4+ 27.g3 ♖h1+ 28.♔xh1 ♕f3+ 29.♔g1 ♕g2#

Damiano’s bishop mate 3

The previous two tactics can also be combined. First, sacrifice the rook to lure the king to a certain square. Second, check with the queen. The opponent can’t take the queen due to a pin with the bishop.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖h8+ ♔xh8 2.♕h6+ ♔g8 3.♕xg7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 127

Stawiarski – Gignoux

1988

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♖h8+

The white bishop on the long diagonal is lethal.

27...♔xh8

27...♘xh8 loses immediately after 28.♕xg7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

28.♕h6+ ♔g8 29.♕xg7#

Game 128

Georgiev – Shirazi

2001

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

51...♖h4+ 52.♔g1 ♖h1+ 53.♔xh1 ♕h3+ 54.♔g1 ♕xg2#

Game 129

Gyimesi – Horvath

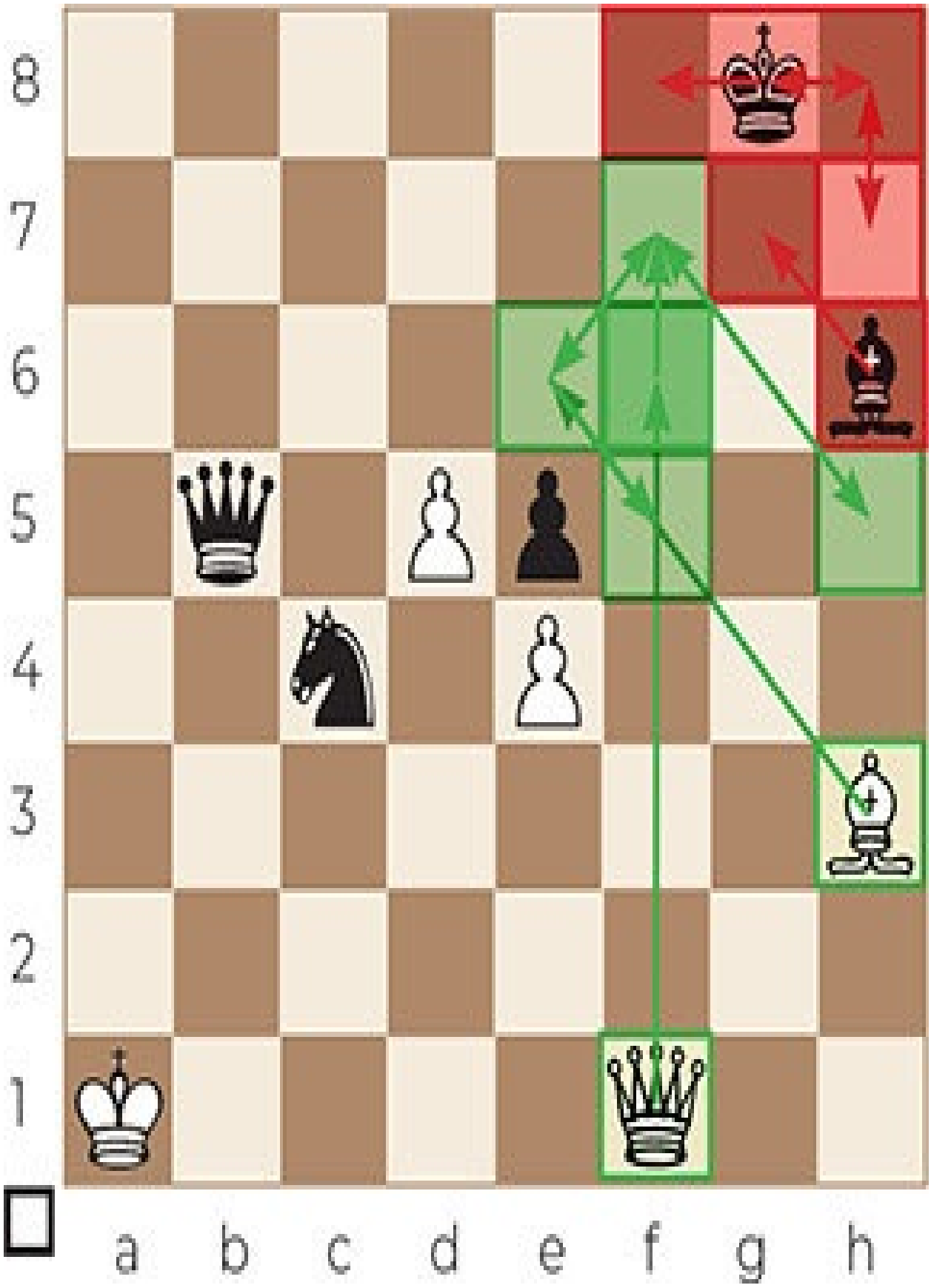
2000

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

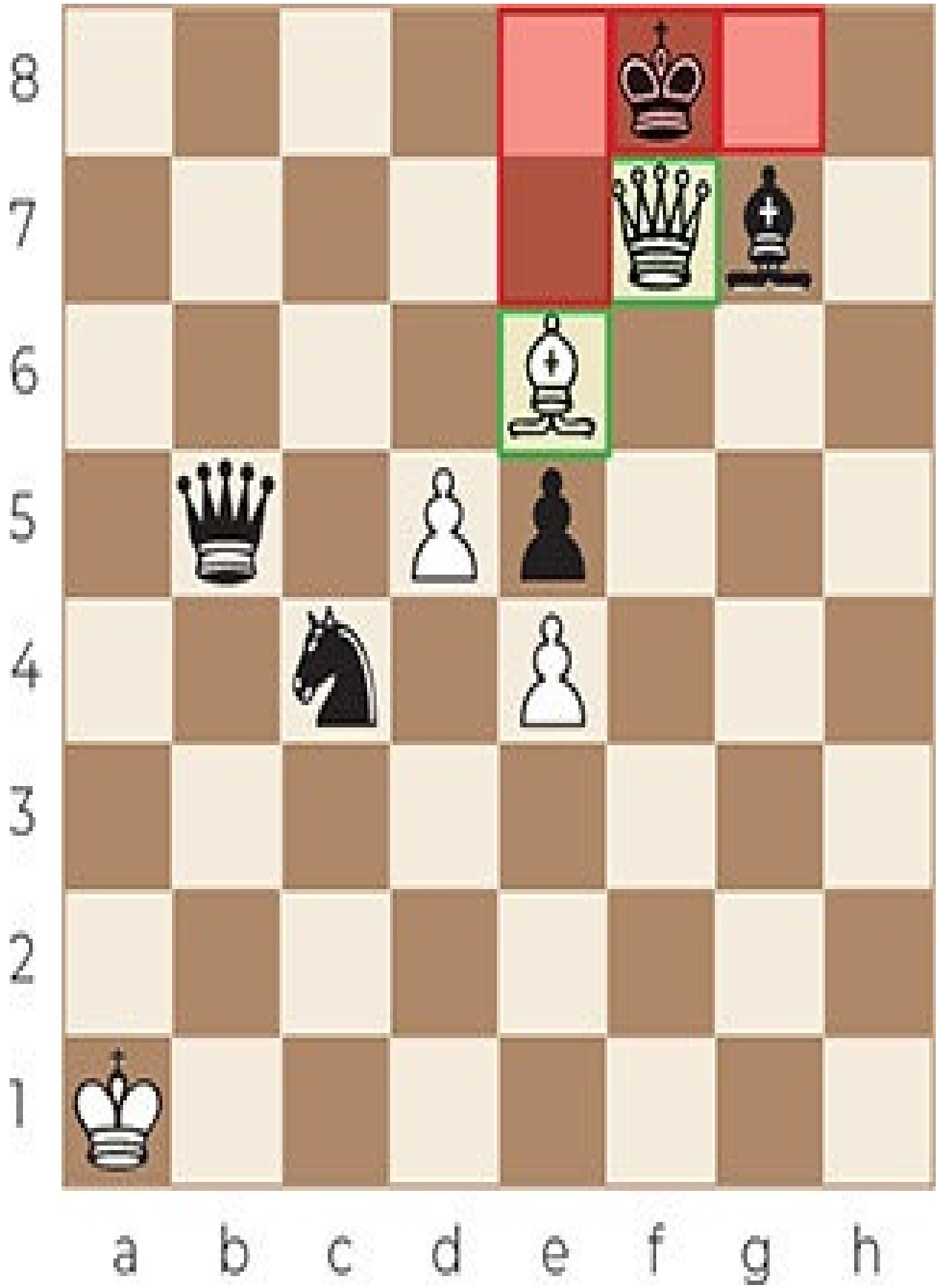
47...♕h4+ 48.♖h3 ♖h1+ 49.♔xh1 ♕xh3+ 50.♔g1 ♕xg2#

Damiano’s bishop mate 4

Sometimes, Damiano’s bishop mate is preceded by (a lot of) checks with the queen and bishop. Your calculation has to be on point, because one inaccurate check often will cost you the game! In some cases, a sacrifice is used to open up files or diagonals for the queen and bishop.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1. ♗e6+ ♔h8 2. ♕f6+ ♔h7 3. ♕f7+ ♗g7 4. ♗f5+ ♔h8 5. ♕h5+ ♔g8 6. ♗e6+ ♔f8 7. ♕f7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 130

Pashikian – Melkumyan

2008

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♖xg7+

Eliminating the only defender of Black's castle.

27...♔xg7

27...♔f8 28.♖xf5+ ♕xf5 29.♕xf5+ ♔xg7 30.♕f6+ ♔g8 31.♗h6 e4 32.♕g7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

28.♕h6+ ♔g8 29.♕e6+ ♔g7 30.♗h6+ ♔h8 31.♕f6+ ♔g8 32.♕g7#

Game 131

Kortchnoi – Portisch

1987

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

43.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 44.♗d4+

Another example of the bishop's dominance on the long diagonal.

44...♔g8

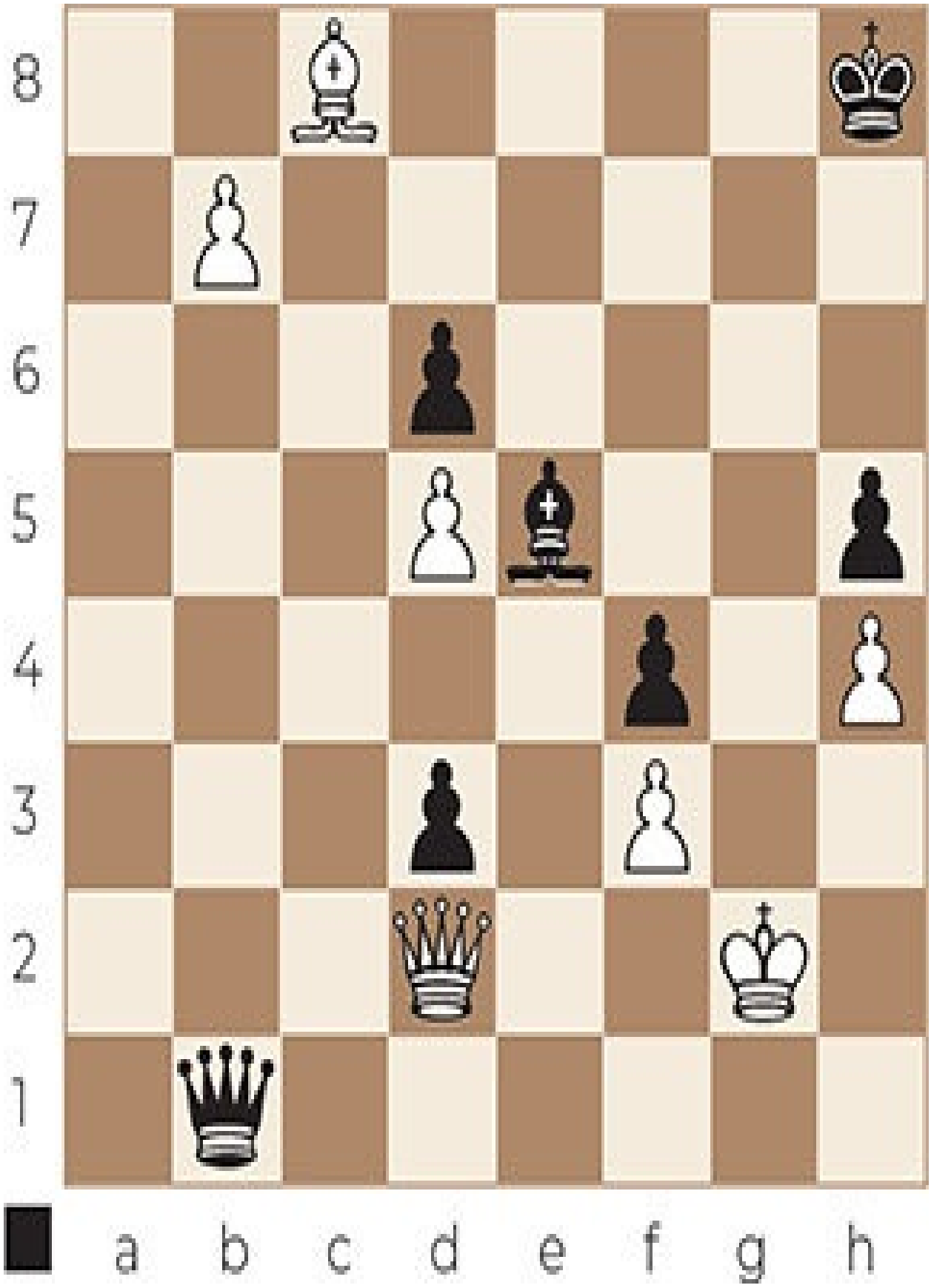
44...♔h7 45.♕f7+ ♗g7 46.♕xg7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

45.♕e6+ ♔h7 46.♕f7+ ♗g7 47.♕xg7#

Game 132

Gangemi – Xia

2005


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

48... ♗d4 49.♕xf4 ♕g1+ 50.♔h3 ♕f1+

Leads to mate.

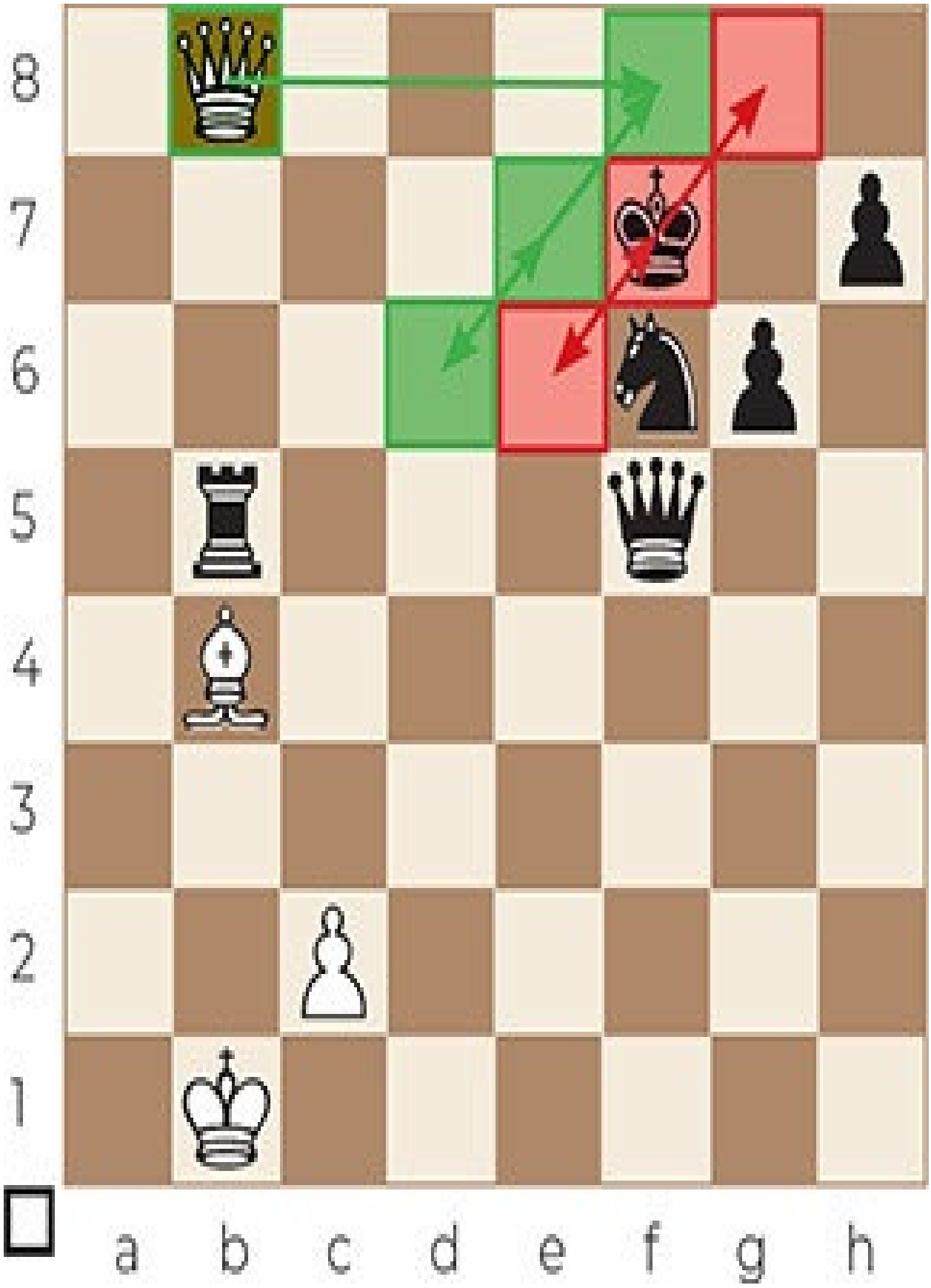
51.♔g3

If 51.♔h2, Black, for example, can end the game via 51... ♗g1+ 52.♔g3 ♗f2+ 53.♔h2 ♕g1+ 54.♔h3 ♕h1+ 55.♕h2 ♕xf3+ 56.♕g3 ♕xg3# (Damiano's bishop mate).

51... ♗f2+ 52.♔h2 ♕g1+ 53.♔h3 ♕h1+ 54.♕h2 ♕xf3+ 55.♕g3 ♕xg3#

Escalator into Damiano’s bishop mate

Sometimes, Damiano’s bishop mate is preceded by an ‘escalator’ maneuver: multiple queen checks along a diagonal, with the queen protected by a bishop. The queen may move in both directions (up and down the escalator).


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕f8+ ♔e6 2.♕d6+ ♔f7 3.♕e7+ ♔g8 4.♕f8#

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 133

Zaja – Inkiov

2001

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

24.♘g6+ fxg6 25.♕g8+ ♔e7 26.♕e6+ ♔f8 27.♕f7#

Game 134

Ghaem Maghami – Bologan

2013

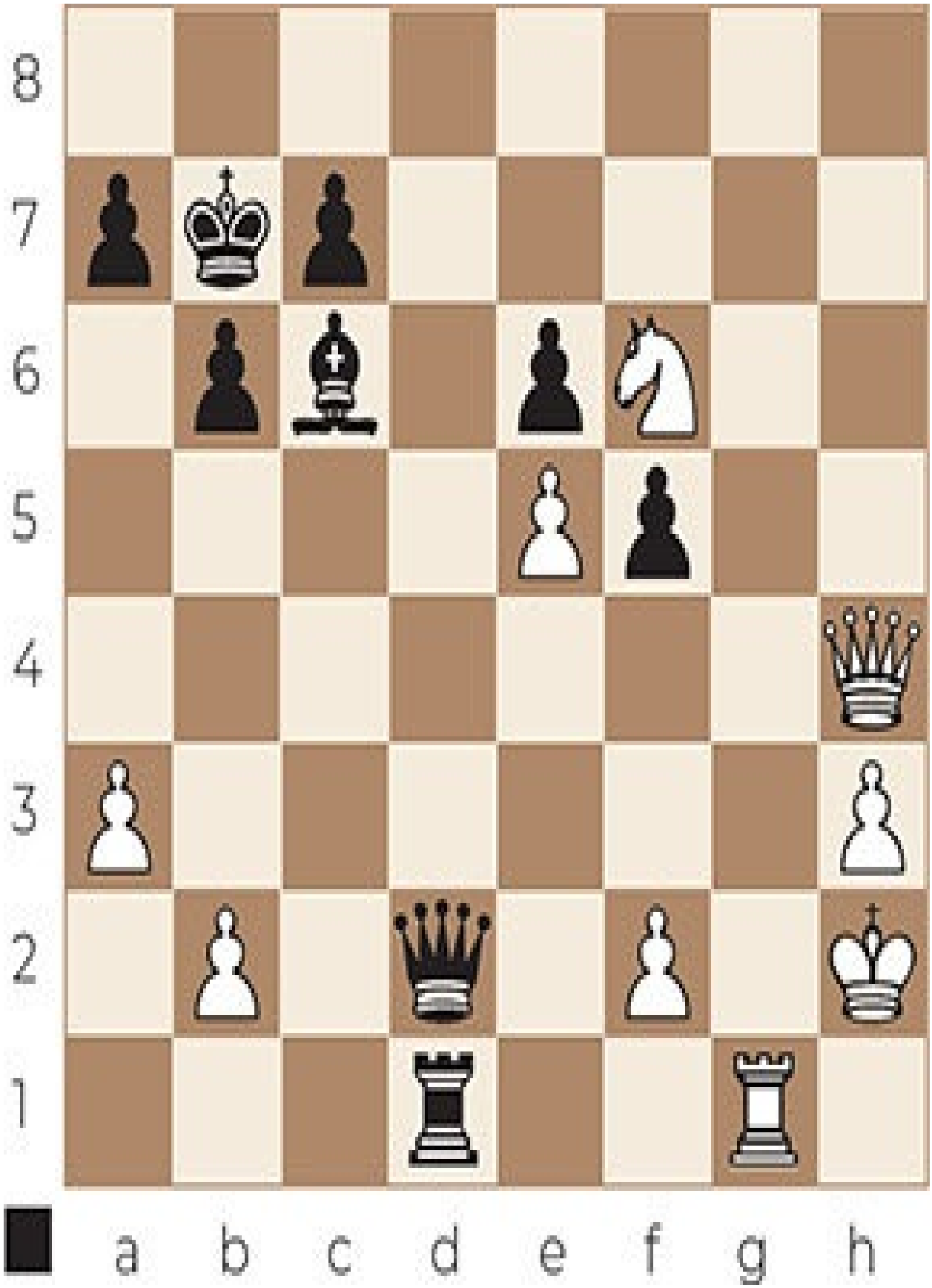
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

34...♕xc3+ 35.♔b1 ♕a1+ 36.♔c2 ♕b2#

Game 135

Navara – Caruana

2017


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

35...♖xg1

This highlights the weakness of the light squares in White’s camp.

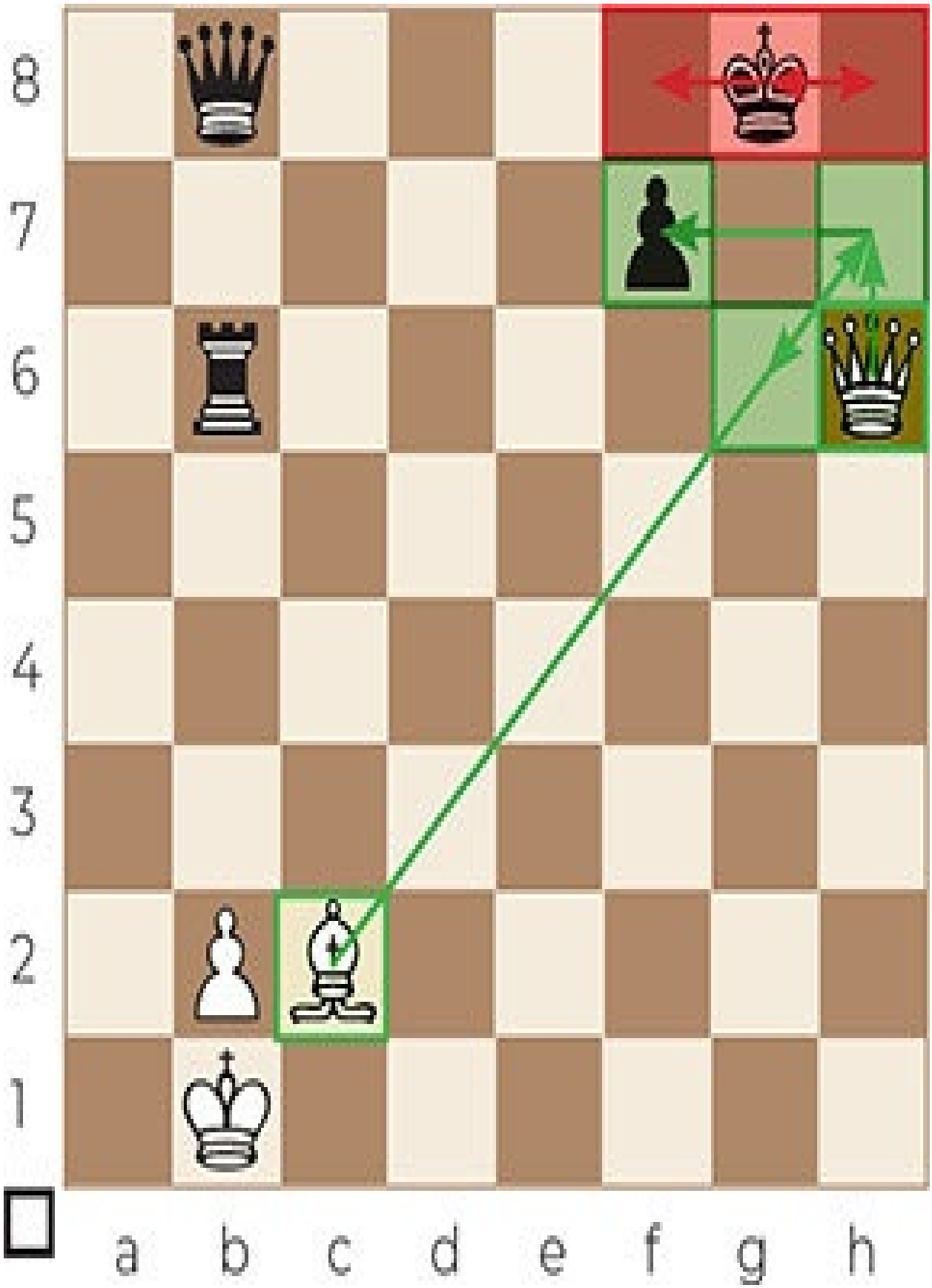
36.♔xg1

36.♘e4 ♕e1 37.♘d6+ cxd6 38.♕e7+ ♔a6 39.♕b7+ ♔xb7 40.h4 ♕xf2+ 41.♔h3 ♖h1#.

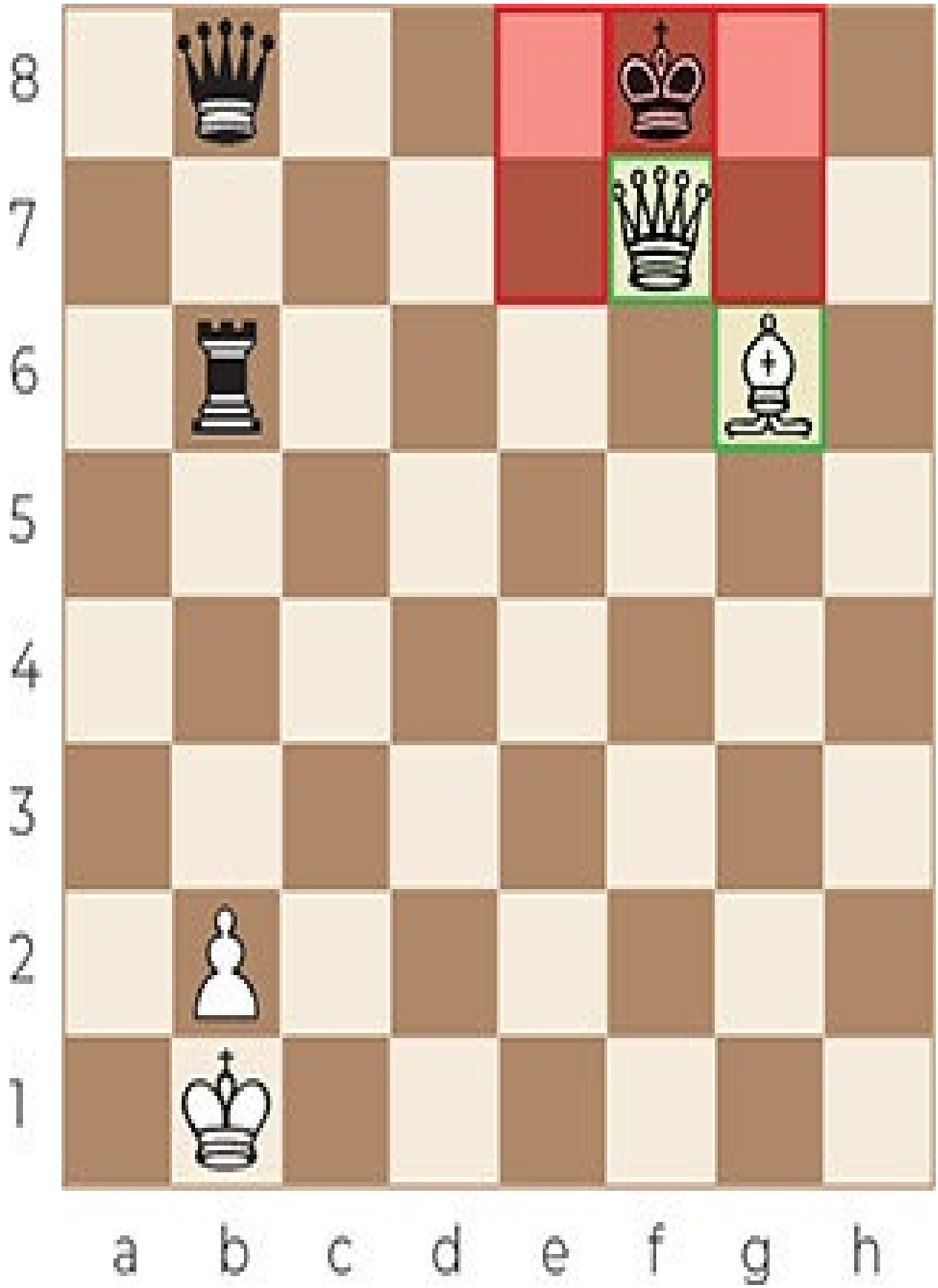
36...♕e1+ 37.♔h2 ♕h1+ 38.♔g3 ♕f3+ 39.♔h2 ♕g2#

Max Lange’s maneuver into Damiano’s bishop mate

Sometimes, Damiano’s bishop mate is preceded by a similar maneuver as in Max Lange’s mate: a bishop check (to force the king on the same file or rank as the bishop and queen), followed by a discovered queen check. The only reason the final position is an example of Damiano’s bishop mate instead of Max Lange’s mate, is because the bishop doesn’t cover an escape square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

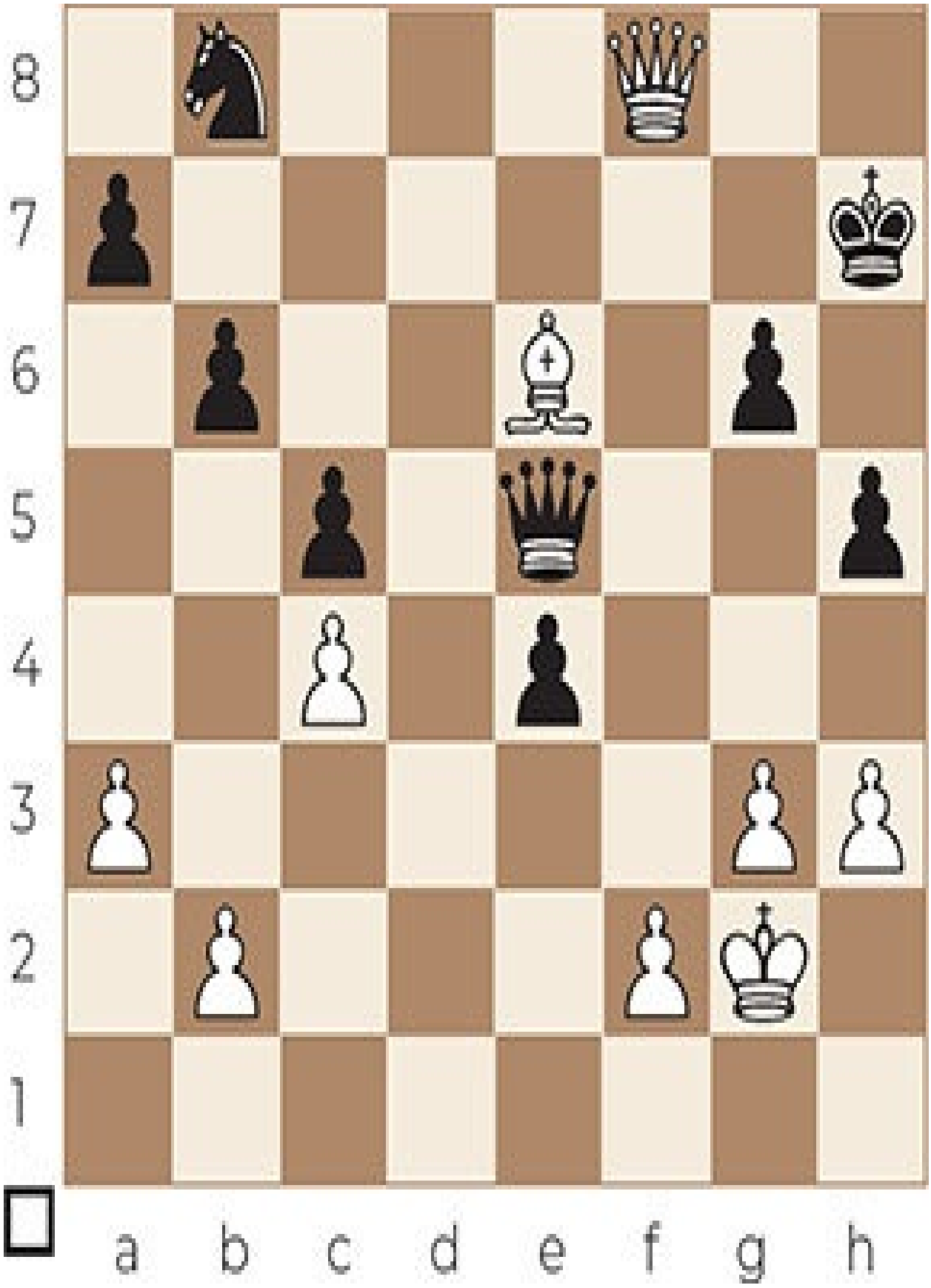
1. ♗h7+ ♔h8 2. ♗g6+ ♔g8 3. ♕h7+ ♔f8 4. ♕xf7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 136

Golod – Thiede

2006


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

38. ♗g8+ ♔h8 39. ♗f7+ ♔h7 40. ♕g8+ ♔h6 41. ♕xg6#

Game 137

Maximov – Andreiev

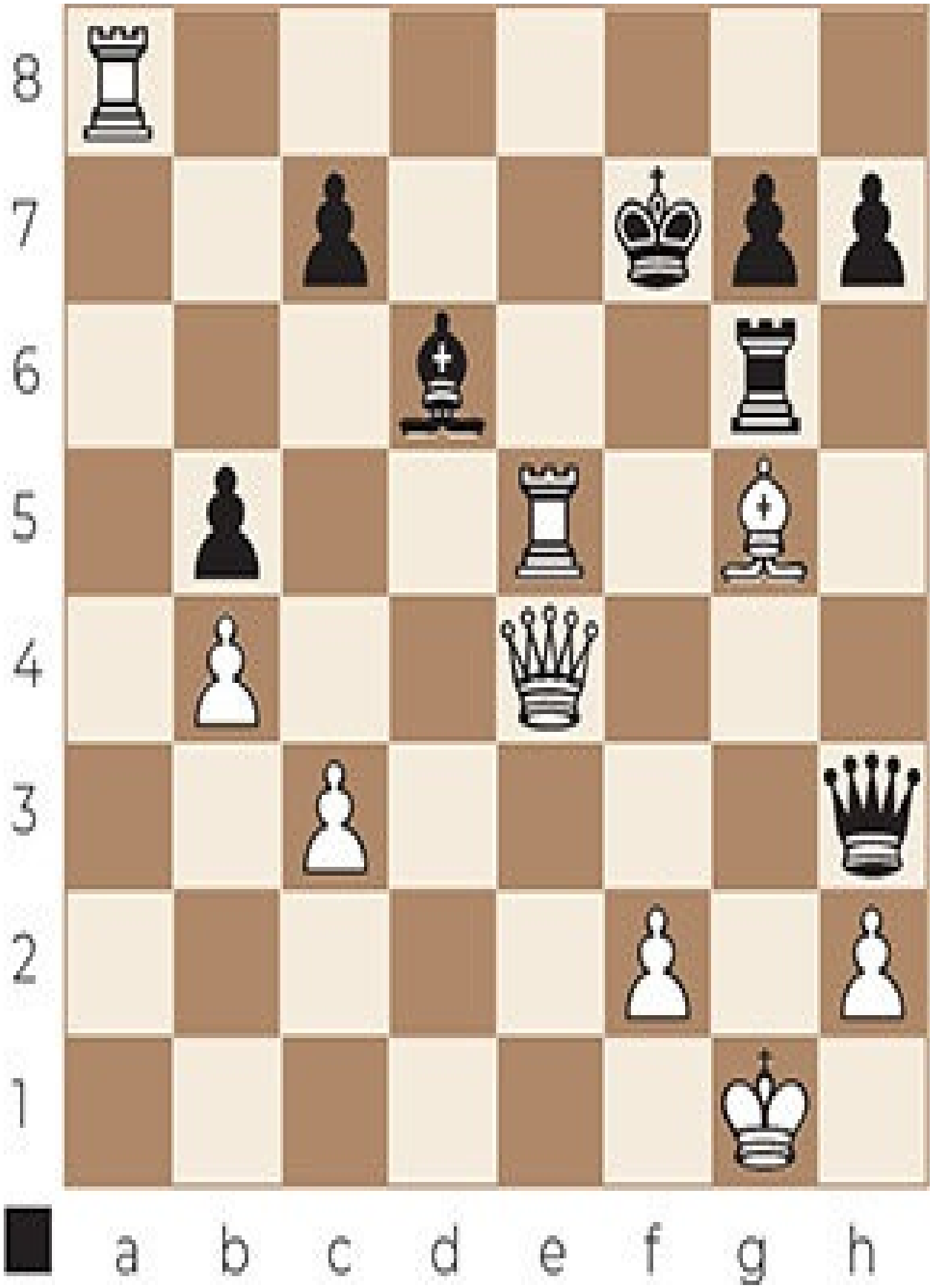
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

15. ♗h7+ ♔h8 16. ♗g6+ ♔g8 17. ♖h8+ ♔xh8 18. ♕h5+ ♔g8 19. ♕h7#

Game 138

Ragozin – Ravinsky

1957


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33...♖xg5+

Opening the bishop’s diagonal.

34.♖xg5

34.♔h1 ♕f1# (Back rank mate).

34...♗xh2+ 35.♔h1 ♗g3+ 36.♔g1 ♕h2+ 37.♔f1 ♕xf2#

CHAPTER 16

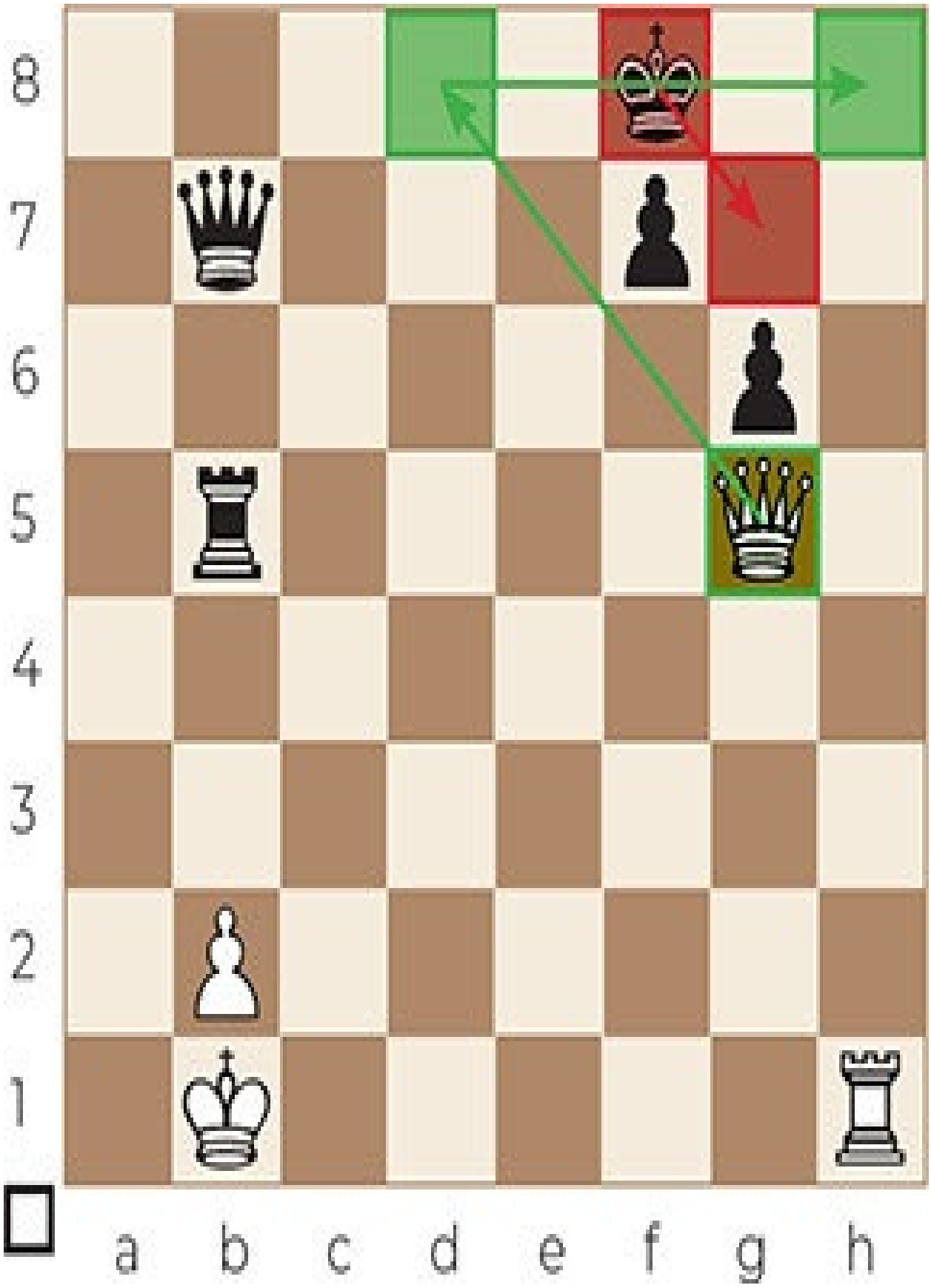
Dovetail mate

In the Dovetail mate, a queen delivers checkmate by checking the king from a diagonally adjacent square, while supported by another piece. The only 2 escape squares not covered by the queen are occupied by friendly pieces.

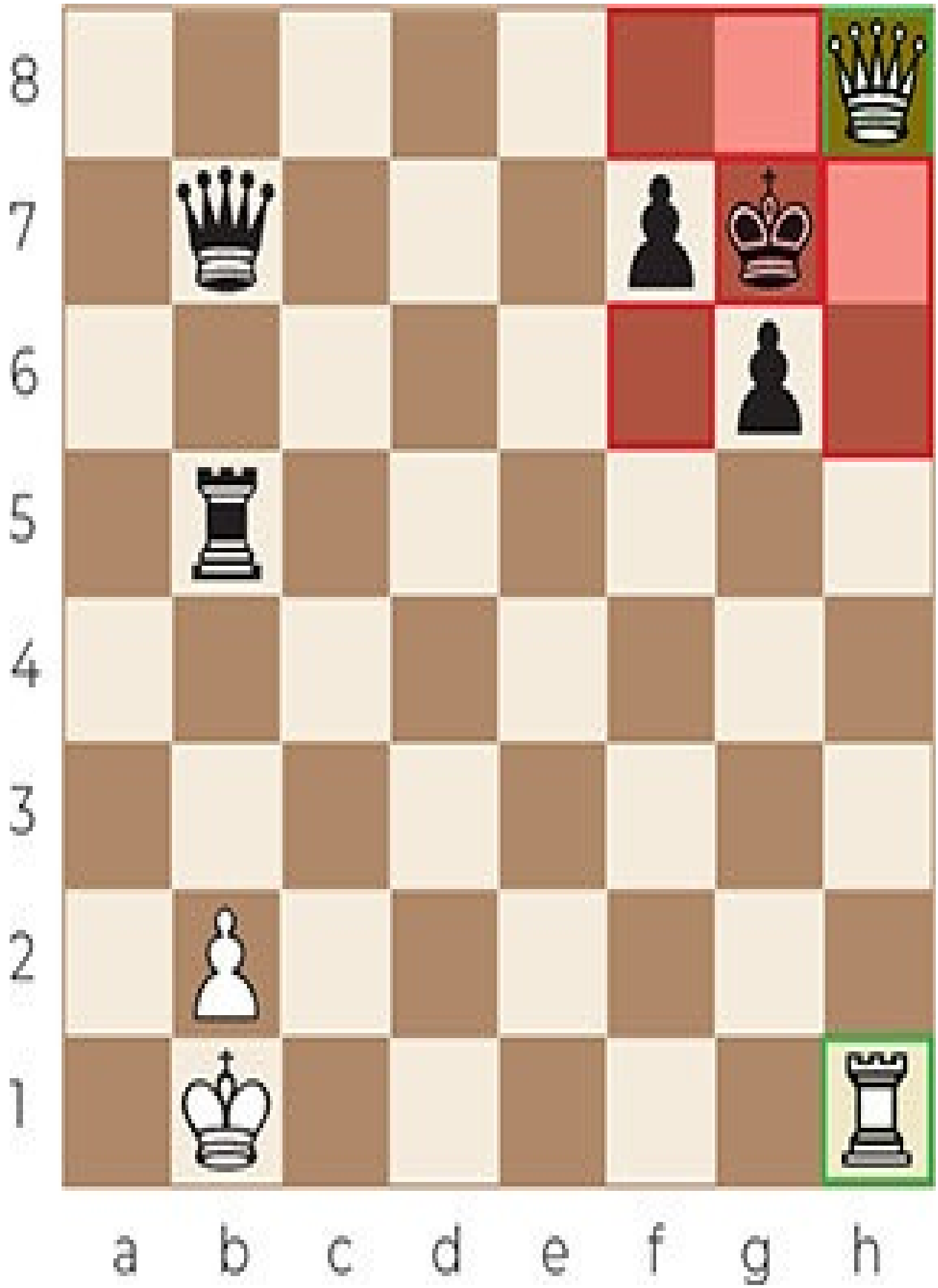
Another name for this checkmate is Cozio’s mate, named after the Italian chess player Carlo Cozio (1715-1780) who published this checkmate pattern in a study in 1766.

Dovetail mate 1

Sometimes, the Dovetail mate is preceded by a number of checks, mainly queen checks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

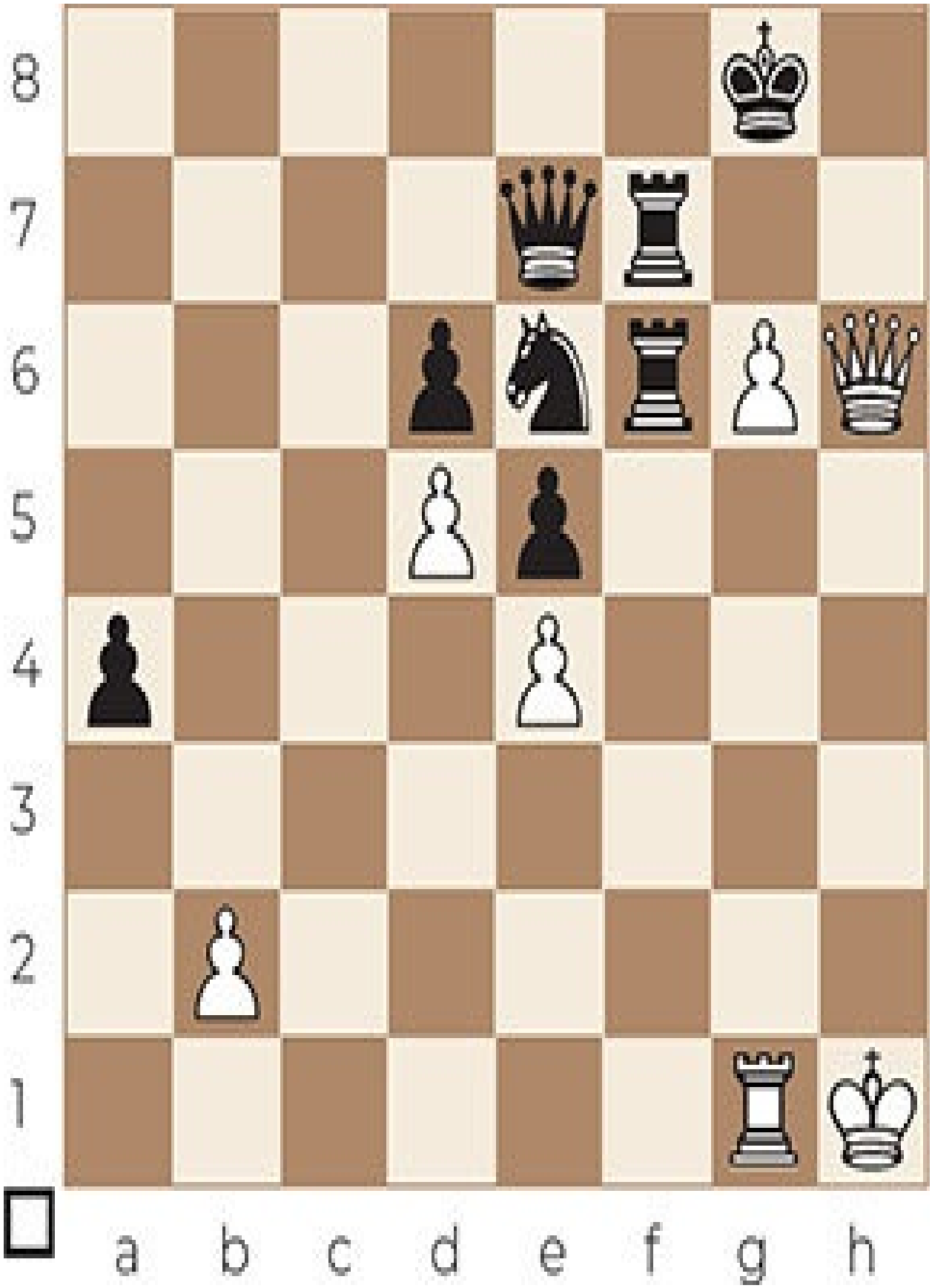
1.♕d8+ ♔g7 2.♕h8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 139

Tukmakov – Milosevic

2000


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

53.gxf7+ ♔xf7 54.♕h5+ ♔f8 55.♕h8+ ♔f7 56.♕g8#

Game 140

Polzin – Schlosser

2008

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

53.♕e6+ ♔d8 54.♕g8+ ♔e7

54... ♗e8 55.♕xe8# (Swallow’s tail mate); 54...♔d7 55.♕e8# (Dovetail mate).

55.♘ef5+

Queen + knight is one of the most powerful combinations of pieces for the attack.

55...♔d7

If 55...♔f6 56.♕e6#, or 55...♔f6 56.♘h5#.

56.♕e8#

Game 141

Cespedes – Timoshenko

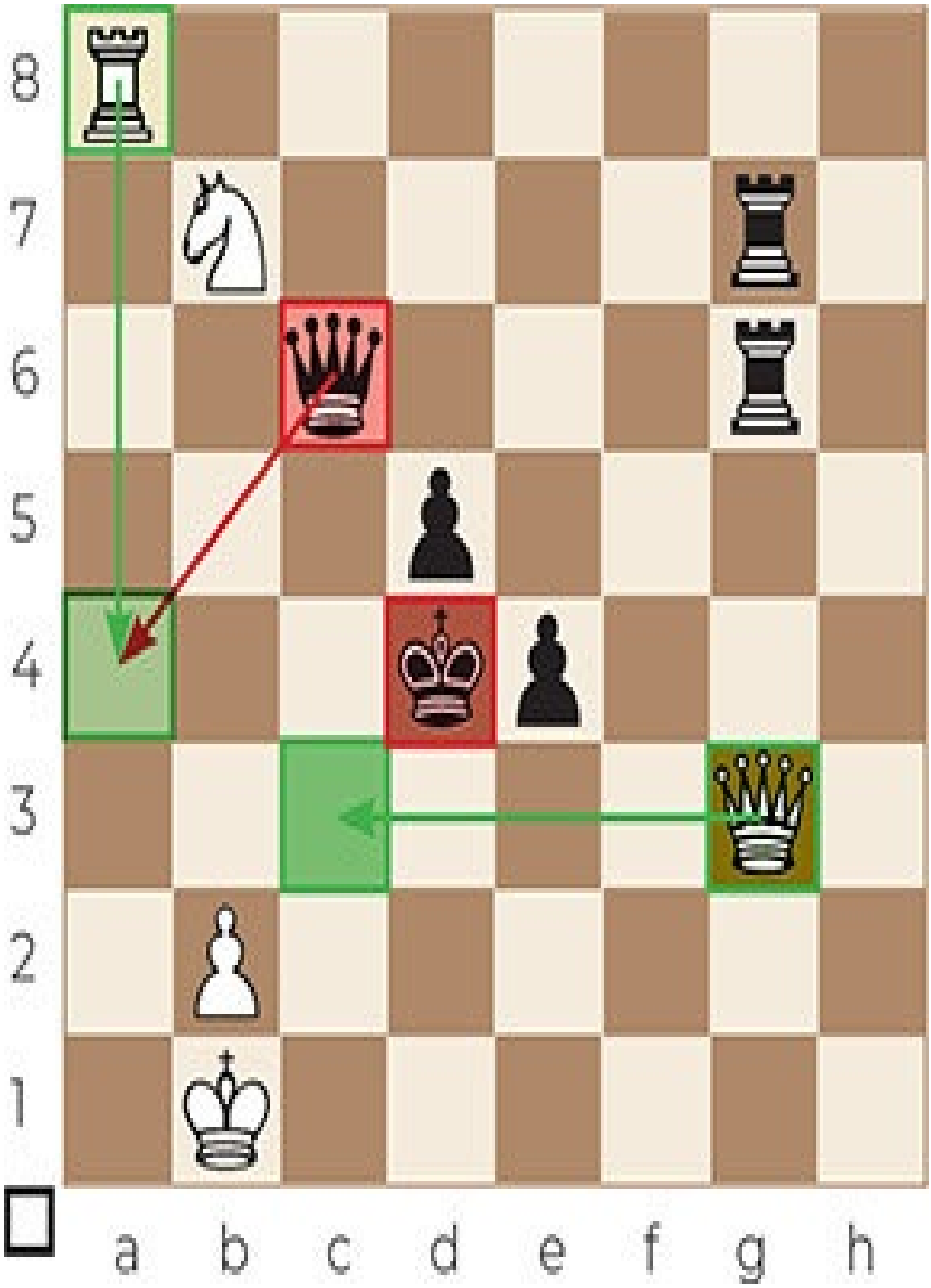
1998

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

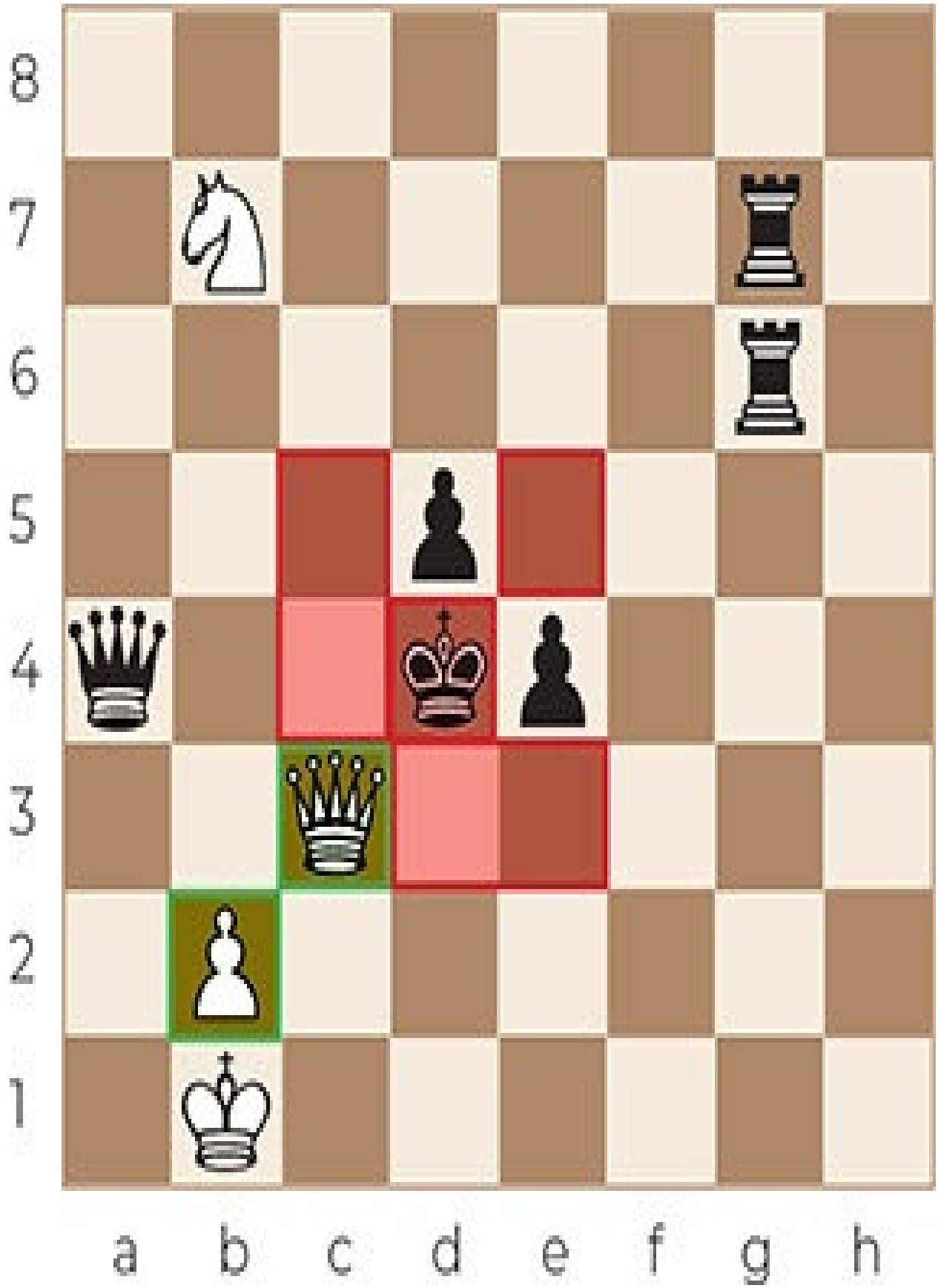
29...♕h3+ 30.♔e2 ♕d3#

Dovetail mate 2

In some cases, the Dovetail mate is preceded by a sacrifice to remove or distract a defender of the king.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖a4+ ♕xa4 2.♕c3#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 142

Bellon Lopez – Smejkal

1970

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

32... ♗xg4+

The white pieces are on the queenside, where they can’t defend the king.

33.♖xg4

33.♔e4 doesn’t help White, e.g. 33.... ♗h5+ 34.♖g4 ♕xg4#.

33...♕f2+ 34.♔e4 ♕f5+ 35.♔xd4 ♕e5#

Game 143

Luo – Ismagambetov

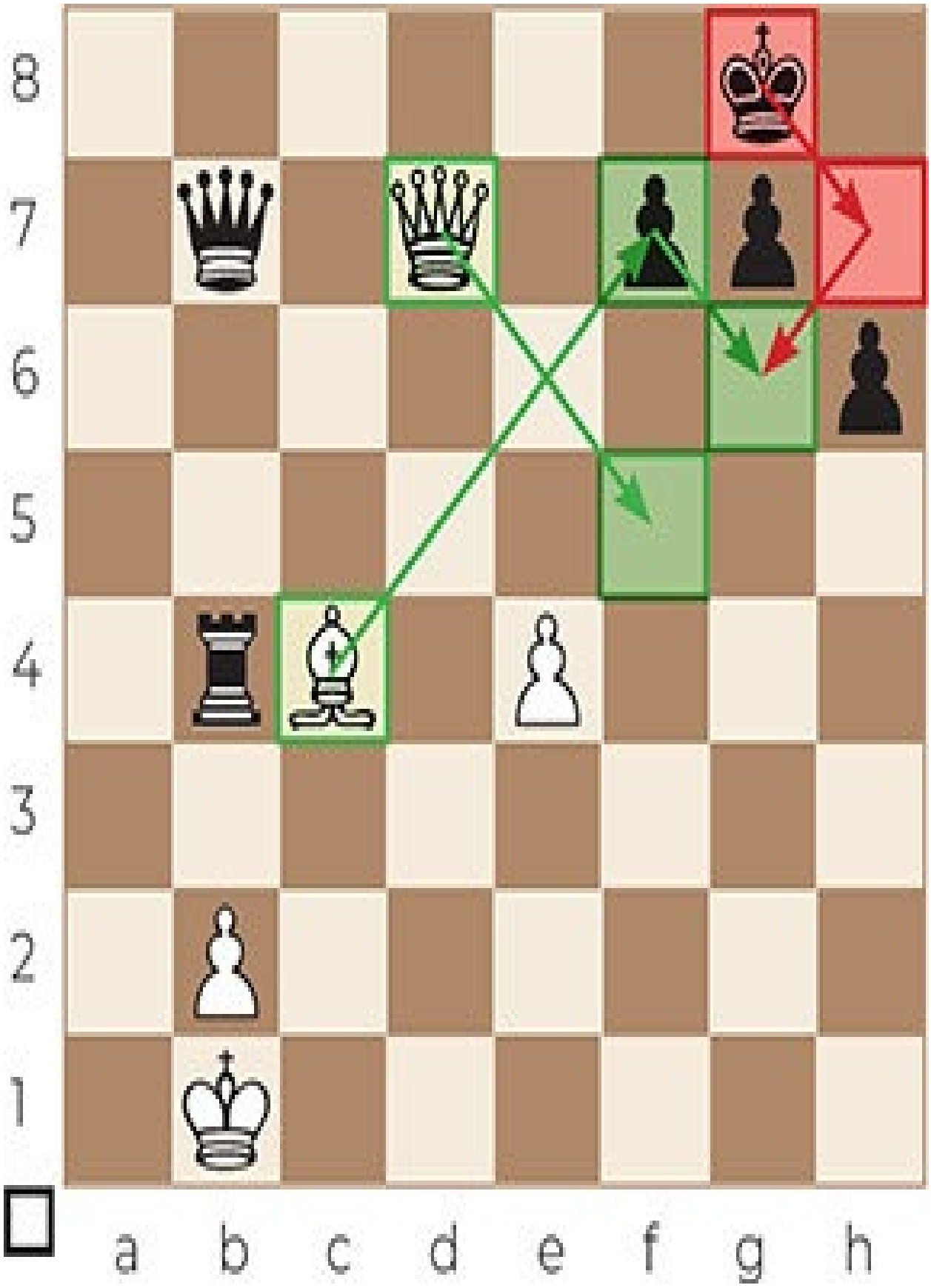
2002

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

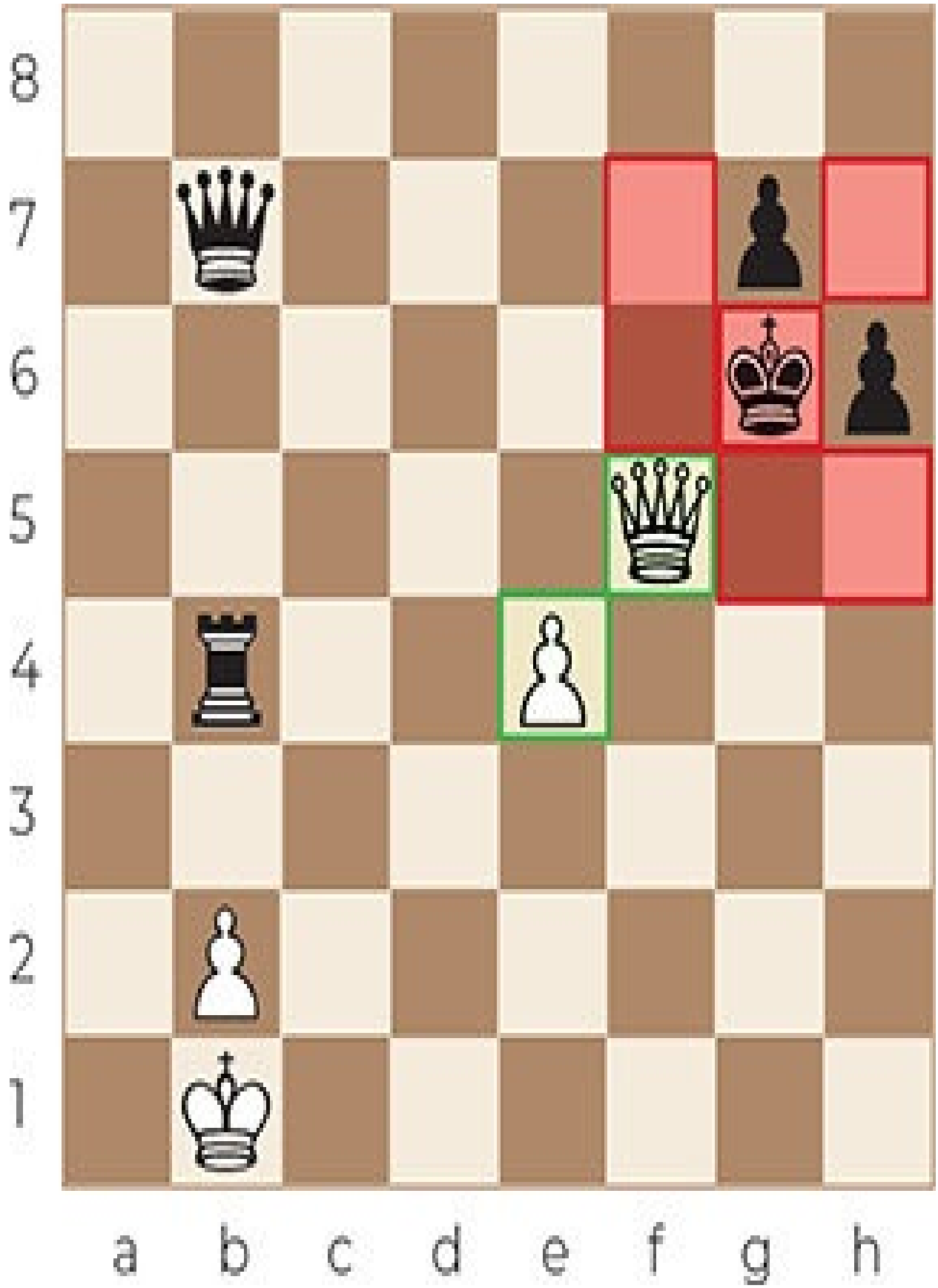
28...♘b3+ 29.♕xb3 ♖c2+ 30.♕xc2 ♕e3#

Dovetail mate 3

In some cases, the Dovetail mate is preceded by a sacrifice to lure the king to a certain square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1. ♗xf7+ ♔h7 2. ♗g6+ ♔xg6 3. ♕f5#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 144

Pelikan – Puiggros

1961

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

50...♖xg3+ 51.♔xg3 ♕g7+ 52.♔f3 ♕g4#

Game 145

Seirawan – Polgar

1993

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27...♘f3+

The white king is in serious trouble.

28.♔f2

28.♔h1 ♕xh2# (Arabian mate).

28...♕xh2+ 29.♔xf3

29.♔f1 ♗h3#.

29...♗g4+

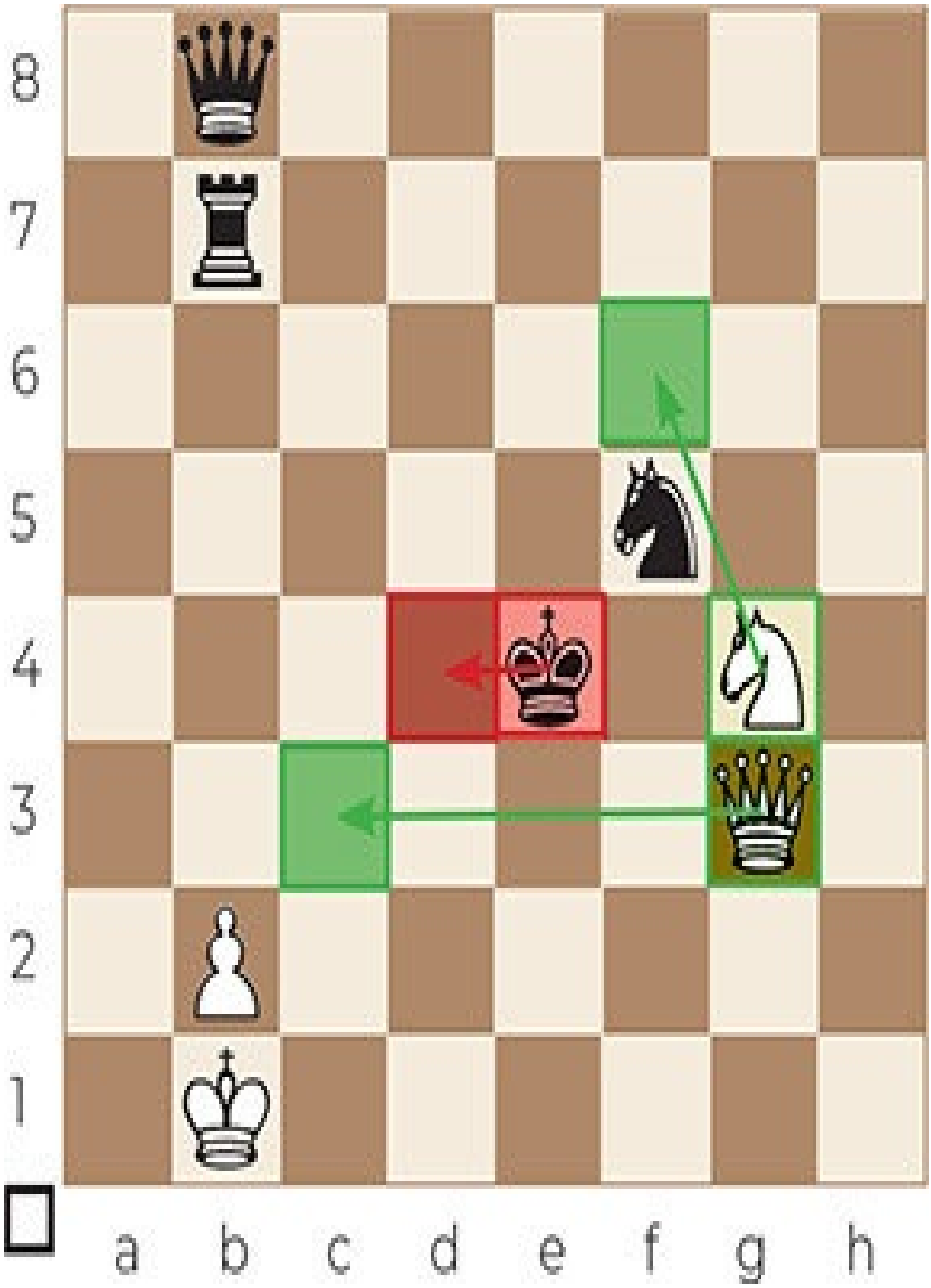
Attracting the king to give mate.

30.♔xg4 ♕h5#

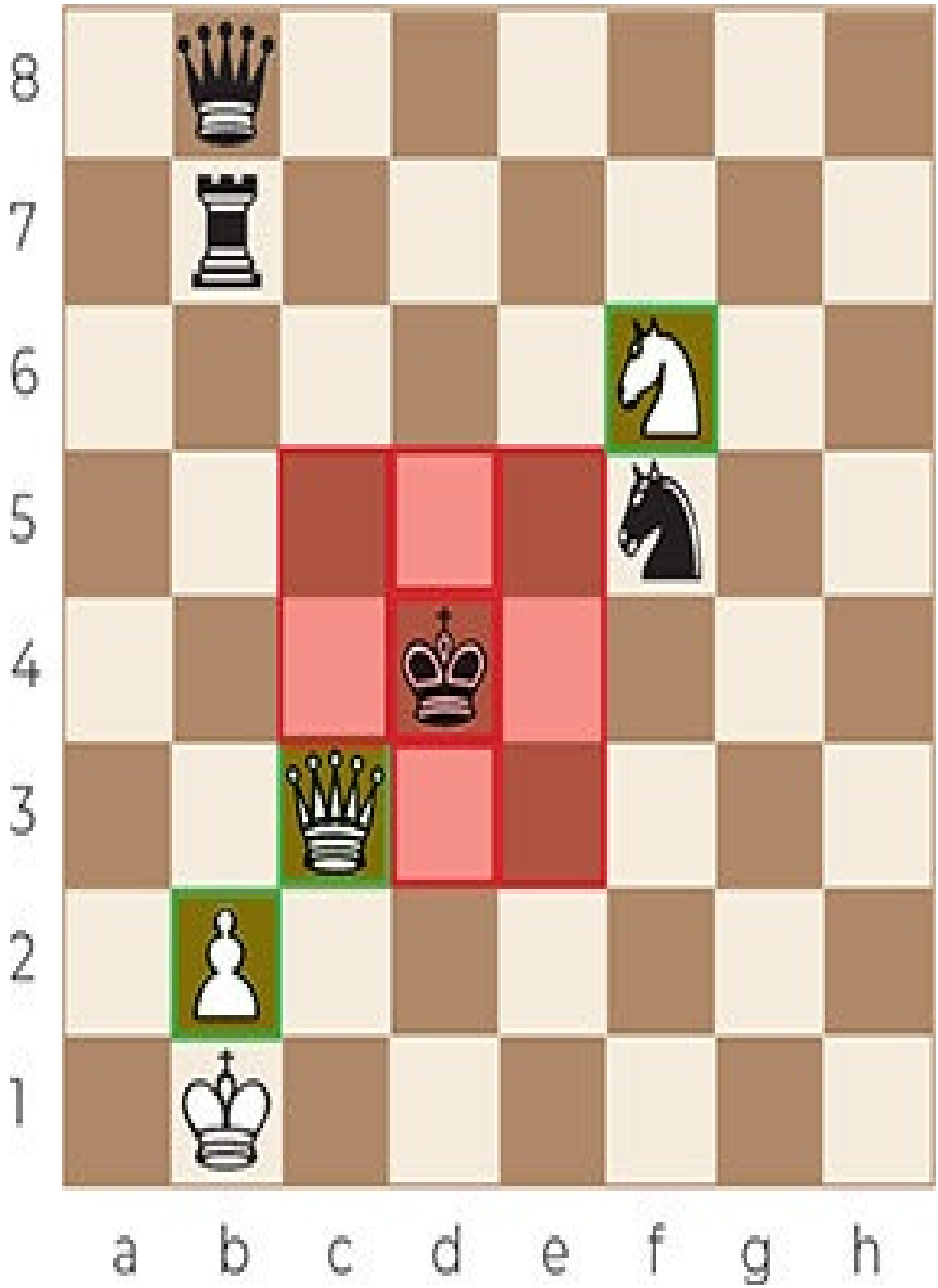
Dovetail (knight) mate

In some cases, the only 2 escape squares not covered by the queen are covered by a knight instead of occupied by friendly pieces. The knight is on the same diagonal as the queen, with 2 squares in between.

This isn’t a real Dovetail mate, but it’s a similar pattern worth remembering.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

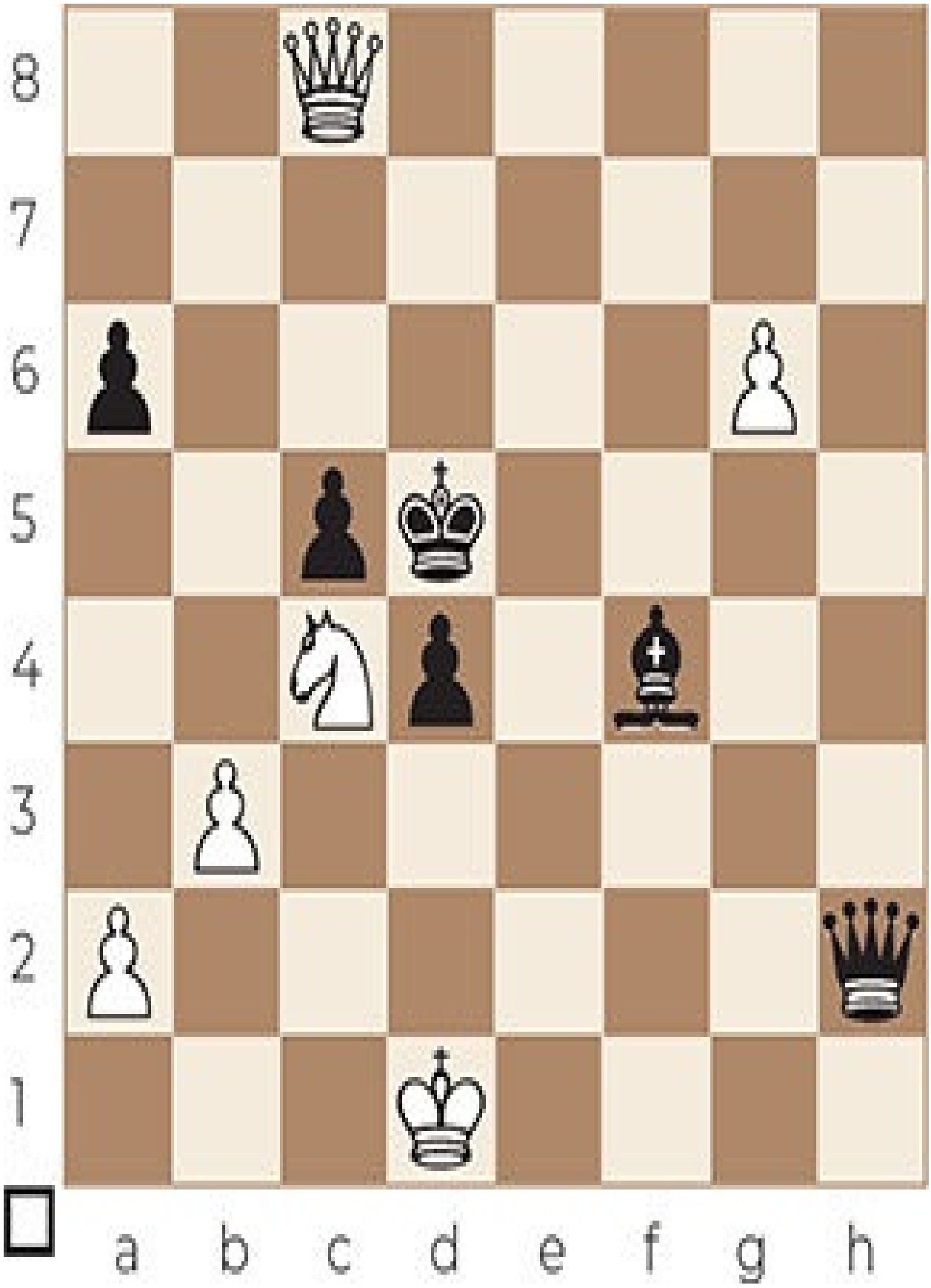
1.♘f6+ ♔d4 2.♕c3#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 146

Dautov – Glek

1996

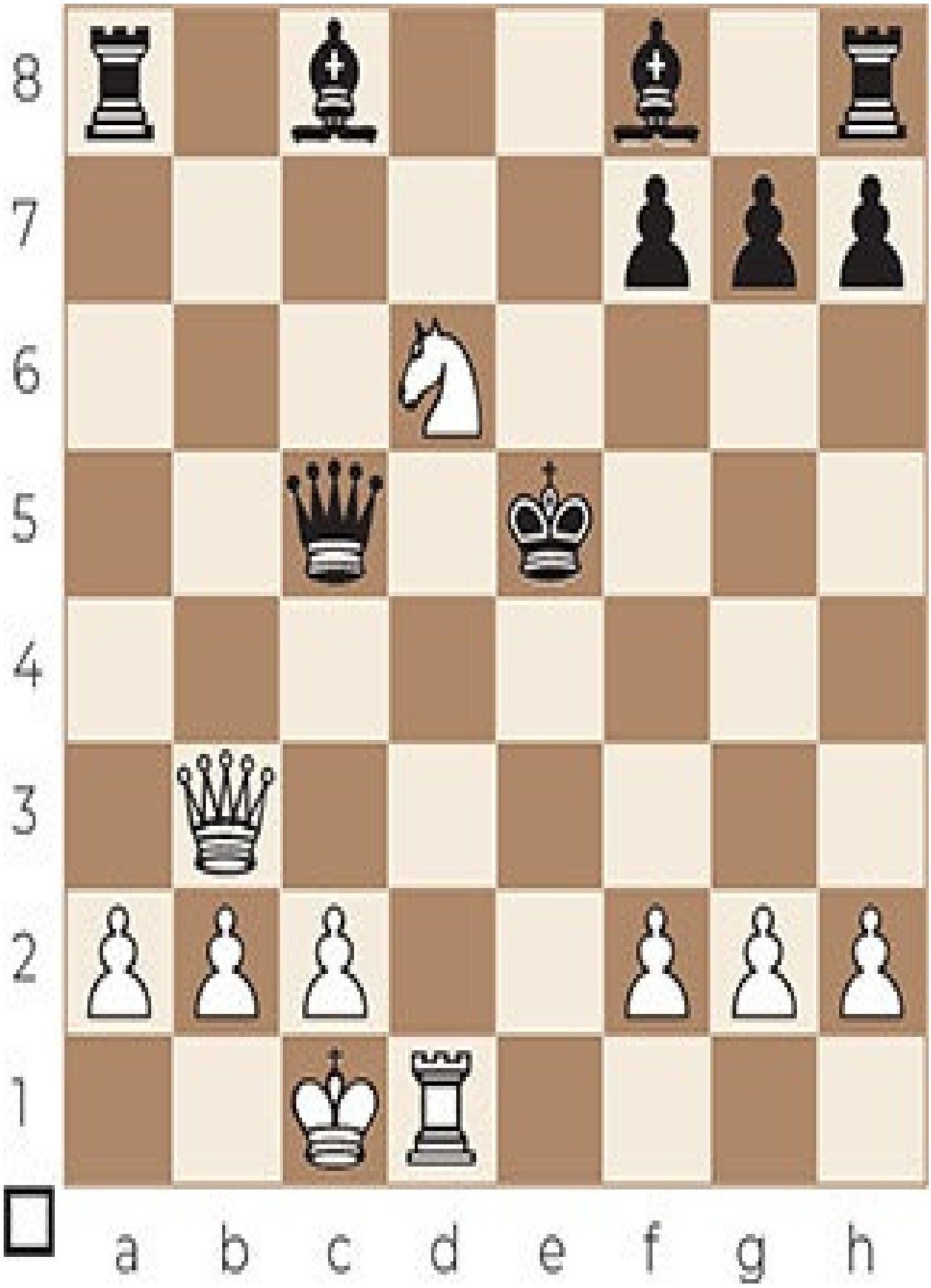

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

51.♕b7+ ♔e6 52.♕f7#

Game 147

Grankin – Gutkin

1968


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

20.f4+

Black’s position is critical with the king in the center.

20...♔xf4

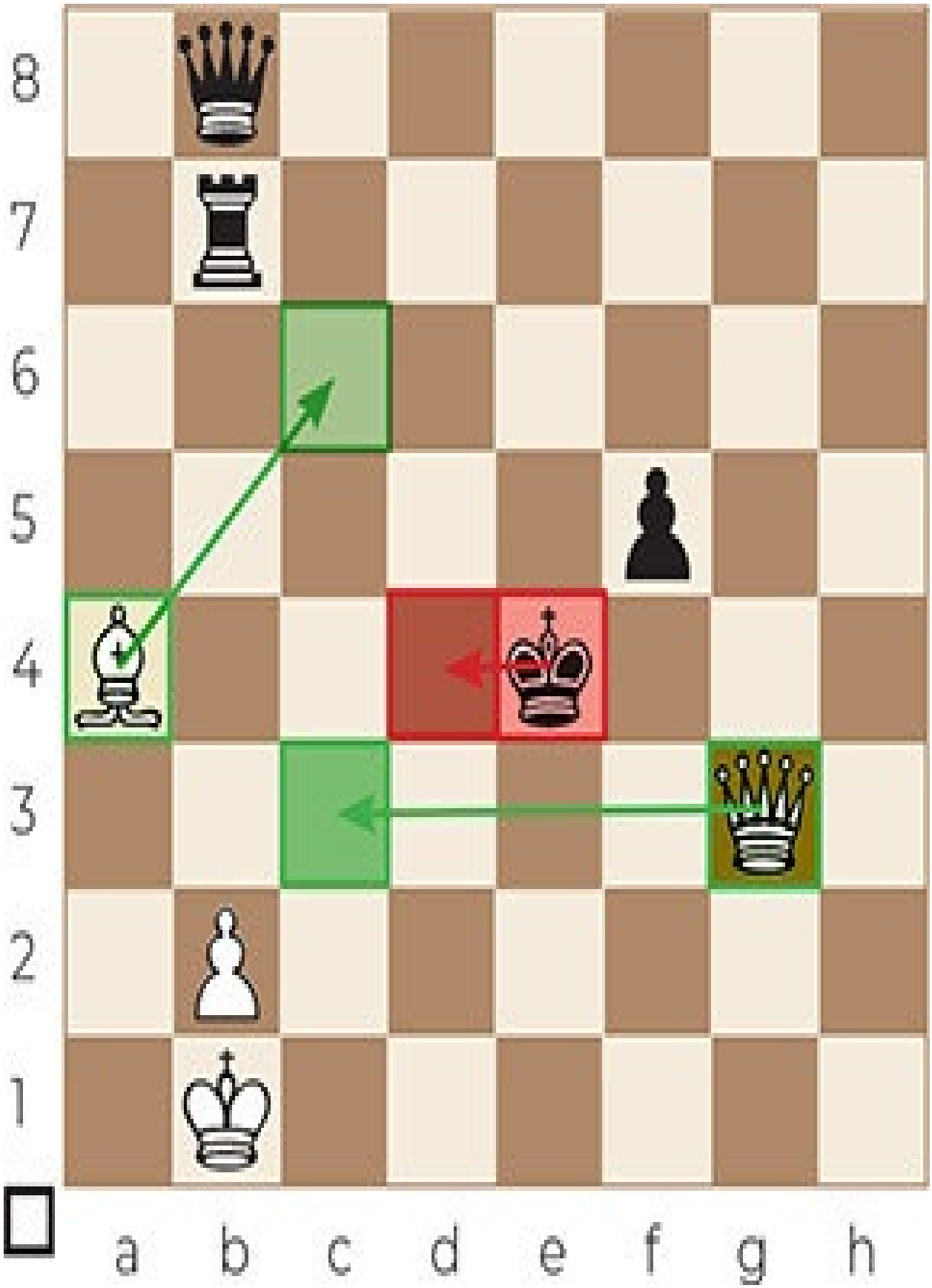
20...♔f6 21.♕xf7#.

21.♕g3#

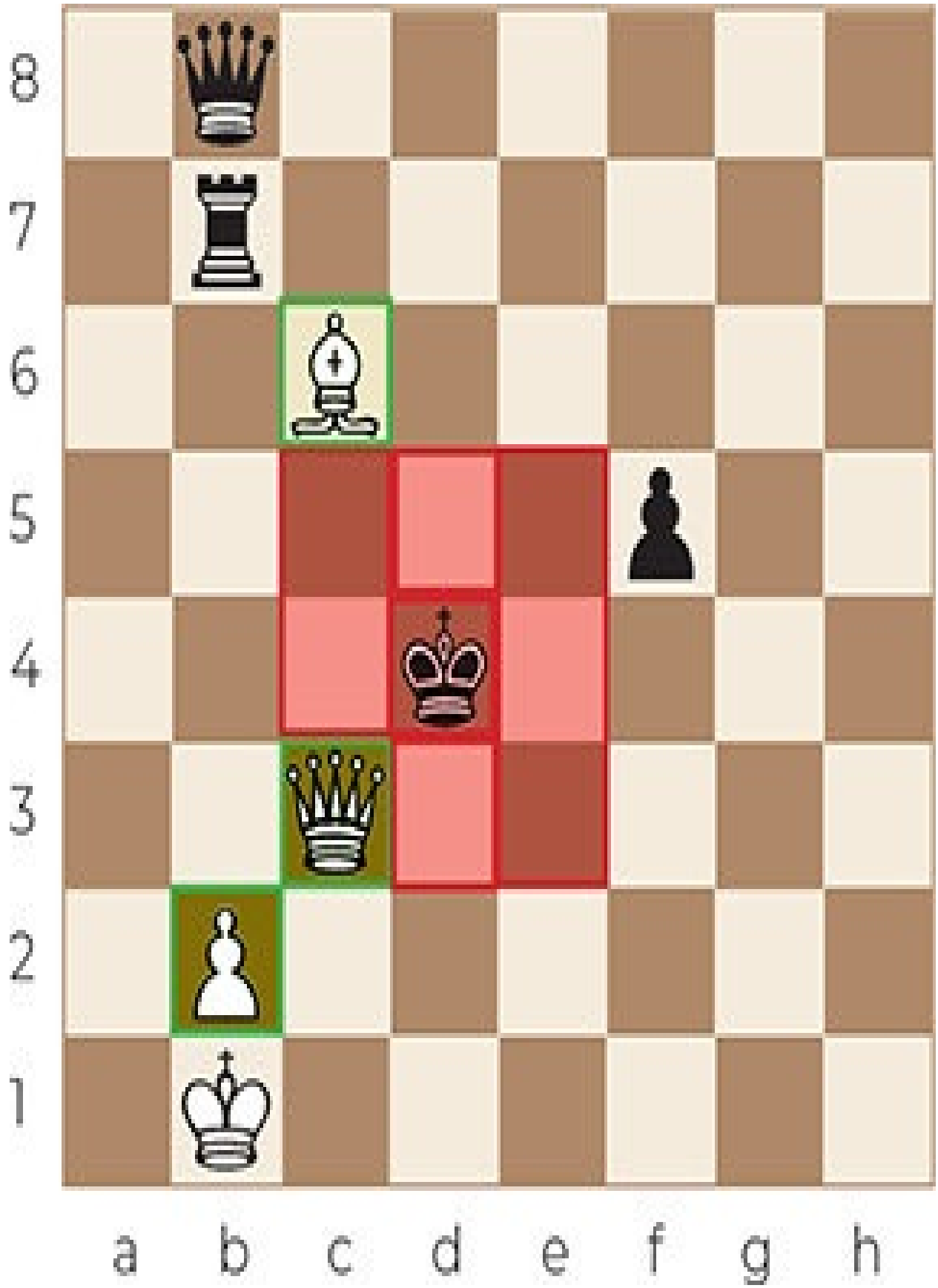
Dovetail (bishop) mate

Sometimes, the only 2 escape squares not covered by the queen are covered by a bishop instead of being occupied by friendly pieces. This isn’t a real Dovetail mate, but it’s a similar pattern worth remembering.

This checkmate pattern is similar to the Balestra mate, but in this case the king is mated by the queen instead of the bishop.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

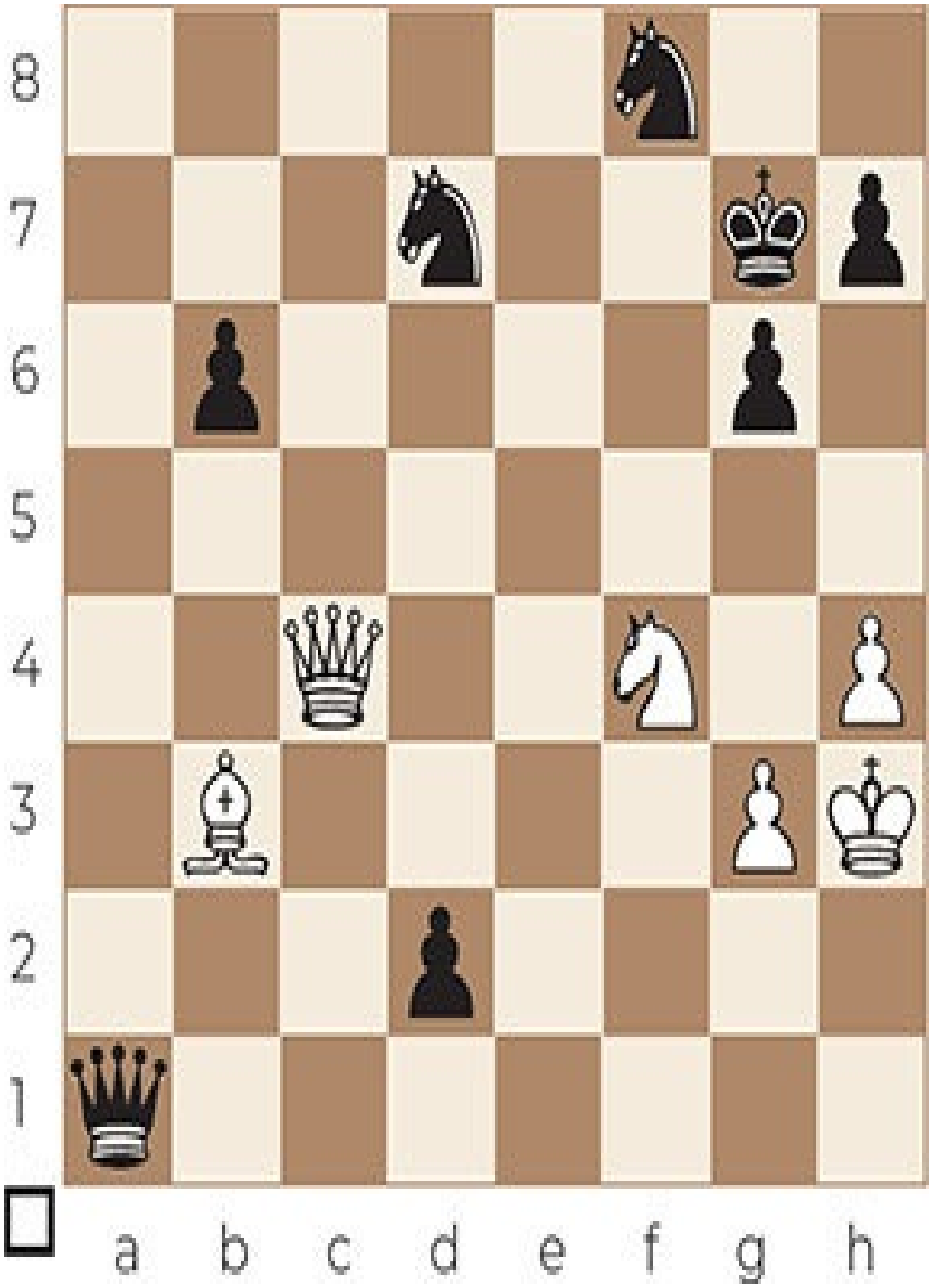
1. ♗c6+ ♔d4 2. ♕c3#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 148

Bocharov – Ulibin

2003


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

57.♘h5+ gxh5

57...♔h6 58.♕f4+ ♔xh5 59.♕g5#.

58.♕g8+ ♔f6 59.♕g5#

Game 149

Reyer – Bäck

1997

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

37.♖xf8+ ♔g7 38.♖g8+ ♔f6 39.♕h4+ g5 40.♕xg5#

Game 150

Salazar Jacob – Campos Moreno

1980

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28...♖h5+ 29.gxh5 ♕xh2+ 30.♔g4 ♕xh5#

CHAPTER 17

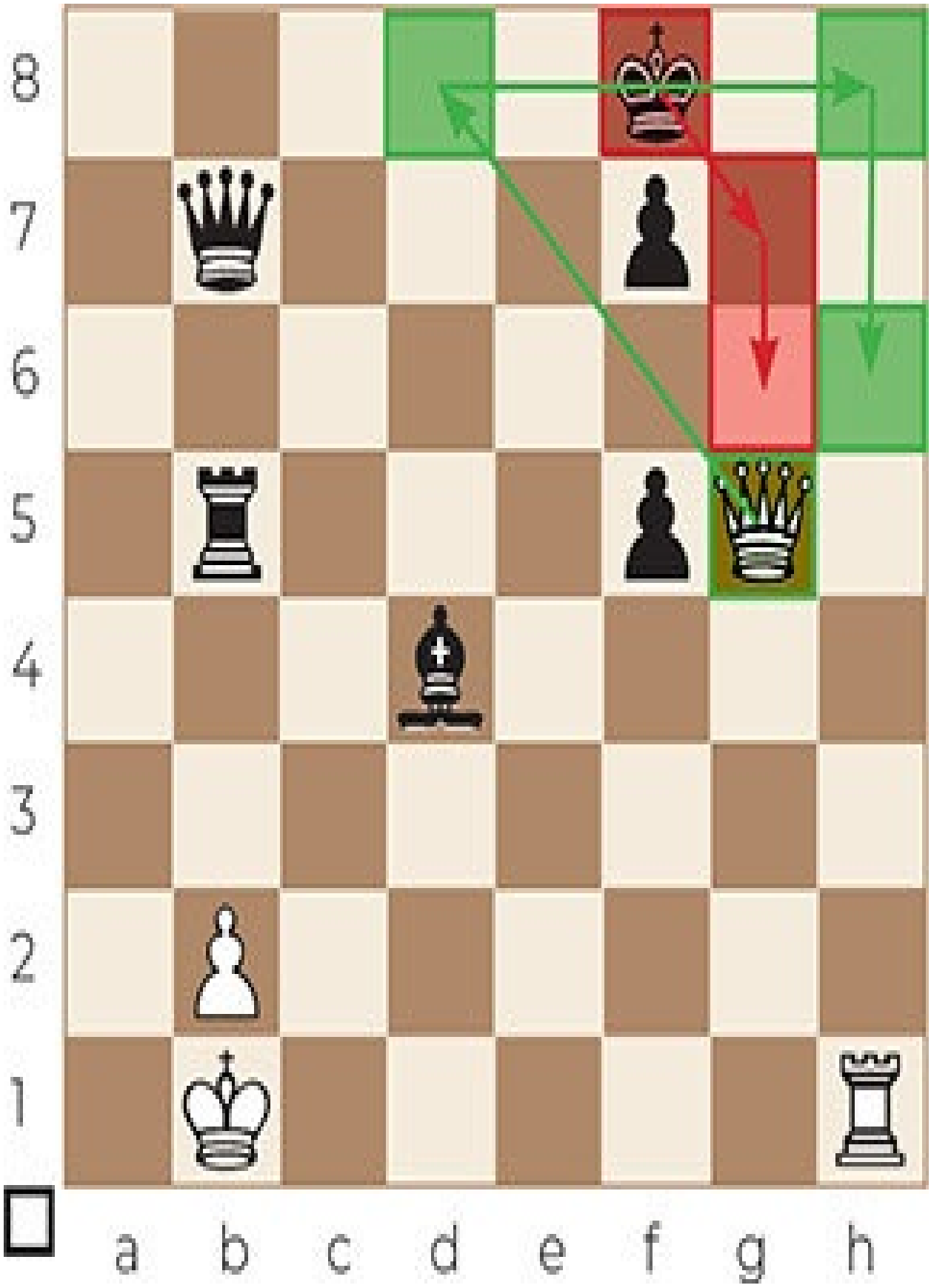
Swallow’s tail mate

In the Swallow’s tail mate, a queen delivers checkmate by checking the king from a vertically or horizontally adjacent square, while supported by another piece. The only 2 escape squares not covered by the queen are occupied by friendly pieces.

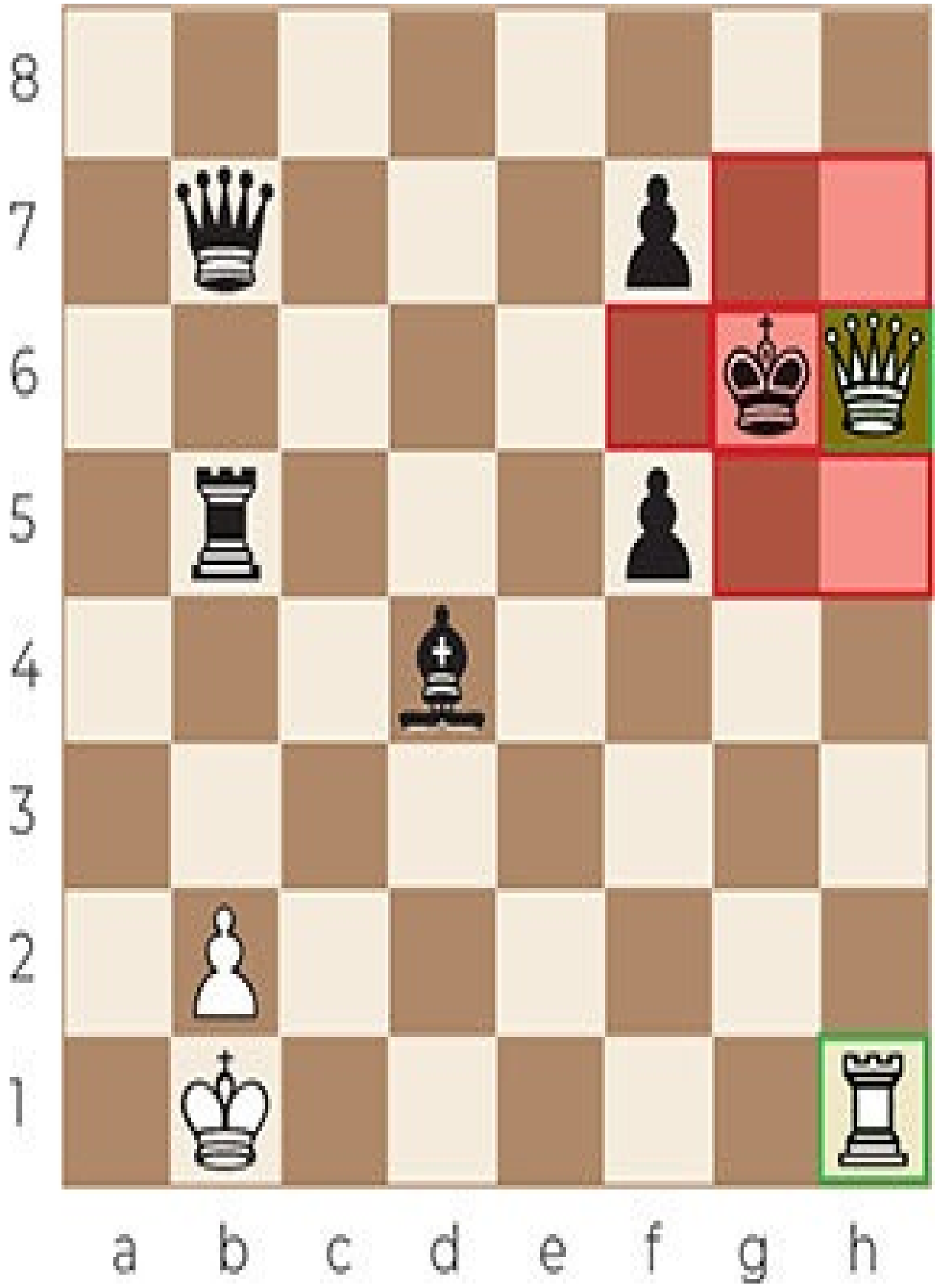
Another name for this checkmate is the Guéridon mate. Guéridon is French for ‘pedestal table’.

Swallow’s tail mate 1

Sometimes, a Swallow’s tail mate is preceded by a number of checks, mainly queen checks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

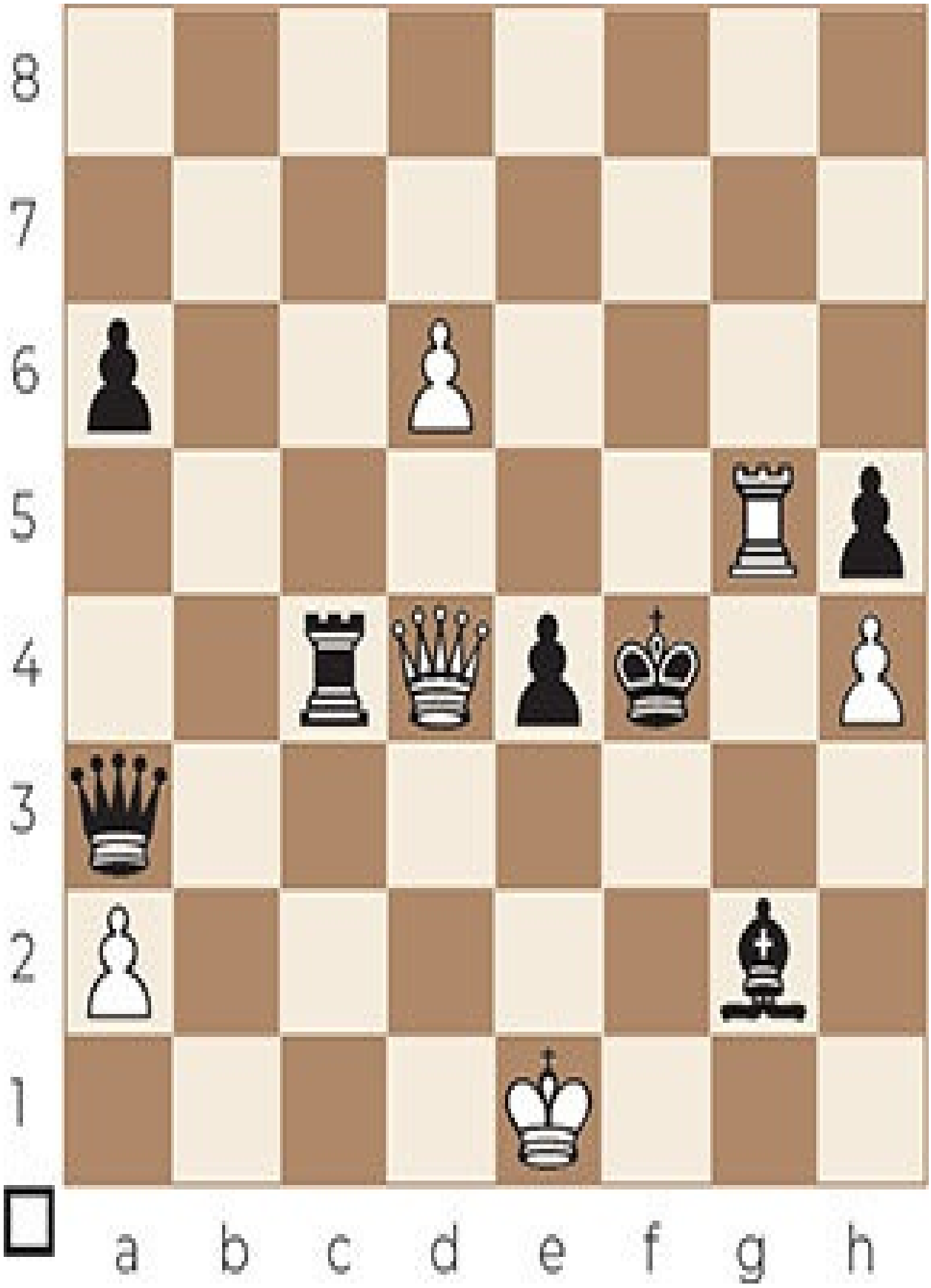
1.♕d8+ ♔g7 2.♕h8+ ♔g6 3.♕h6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 151

Movsziszian – Vidarte Morales

2007


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

57.♕f6+ ♔e3 58.♕f2+ ♔d3 59.♕d2#

Game 152

Pokojowczyk – Timoscenko

1979

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28...♕h3+

Weaknesses on his light squares cause problems for White.

29.♖g3

29.♔f2 ♕e3+ 30.♔f1 ♕e1#.

29...♕f1+ 30.♗f2

30.♖f2 ♖e3+ 31.♔xe3 ♕d3#

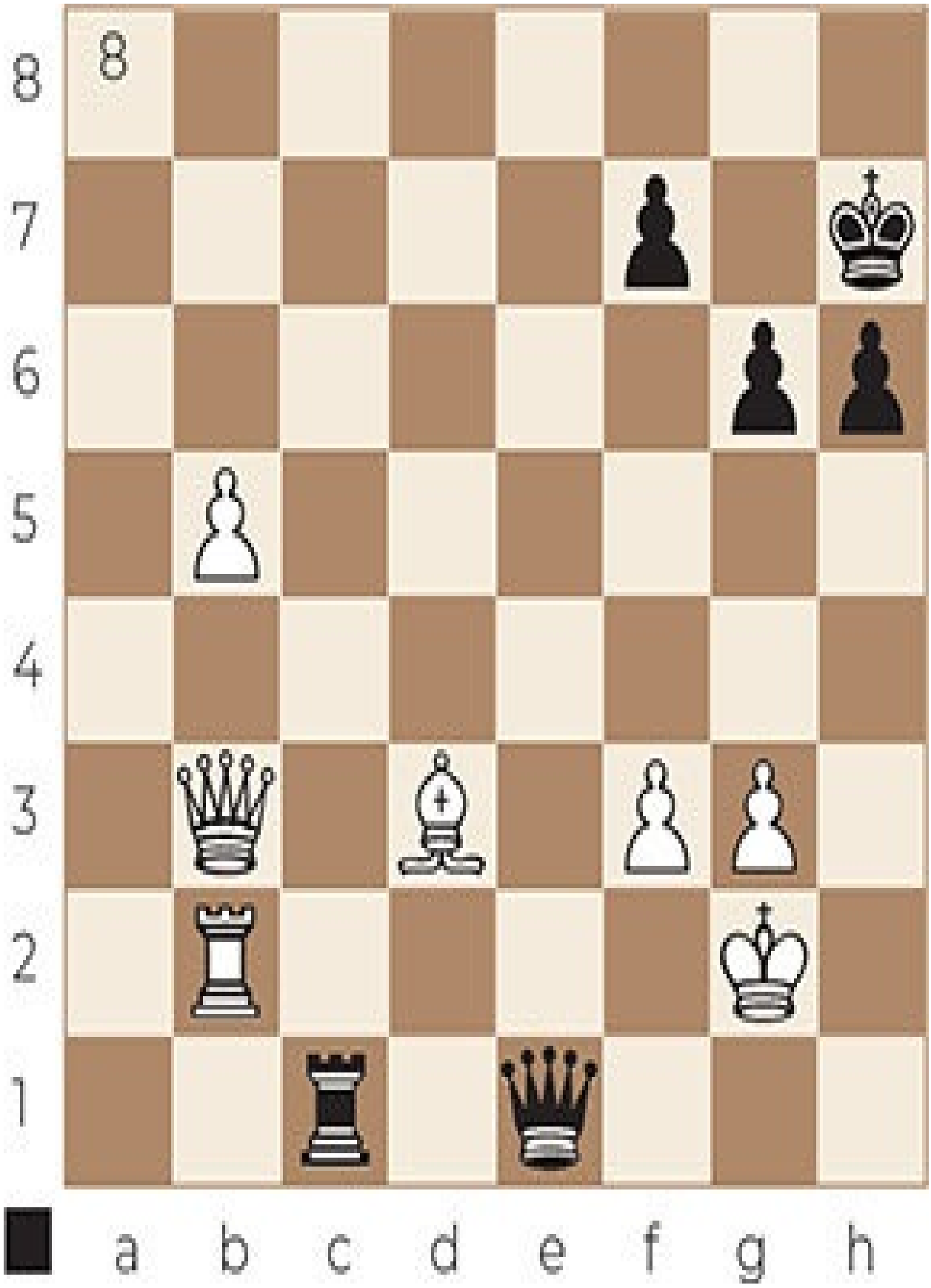
(Swallow's tail mate).

30...♕h1+ 31.♖g2 ♕h5+ 32.♔g3 ♕h3#

Game 153

Schlosser – Ganguly

20168


8
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

52...♕h1+ 53.♔f2 ♕g1+ 54.♔e2 ♕e1#

Game 154

Concha Munoz – Careno

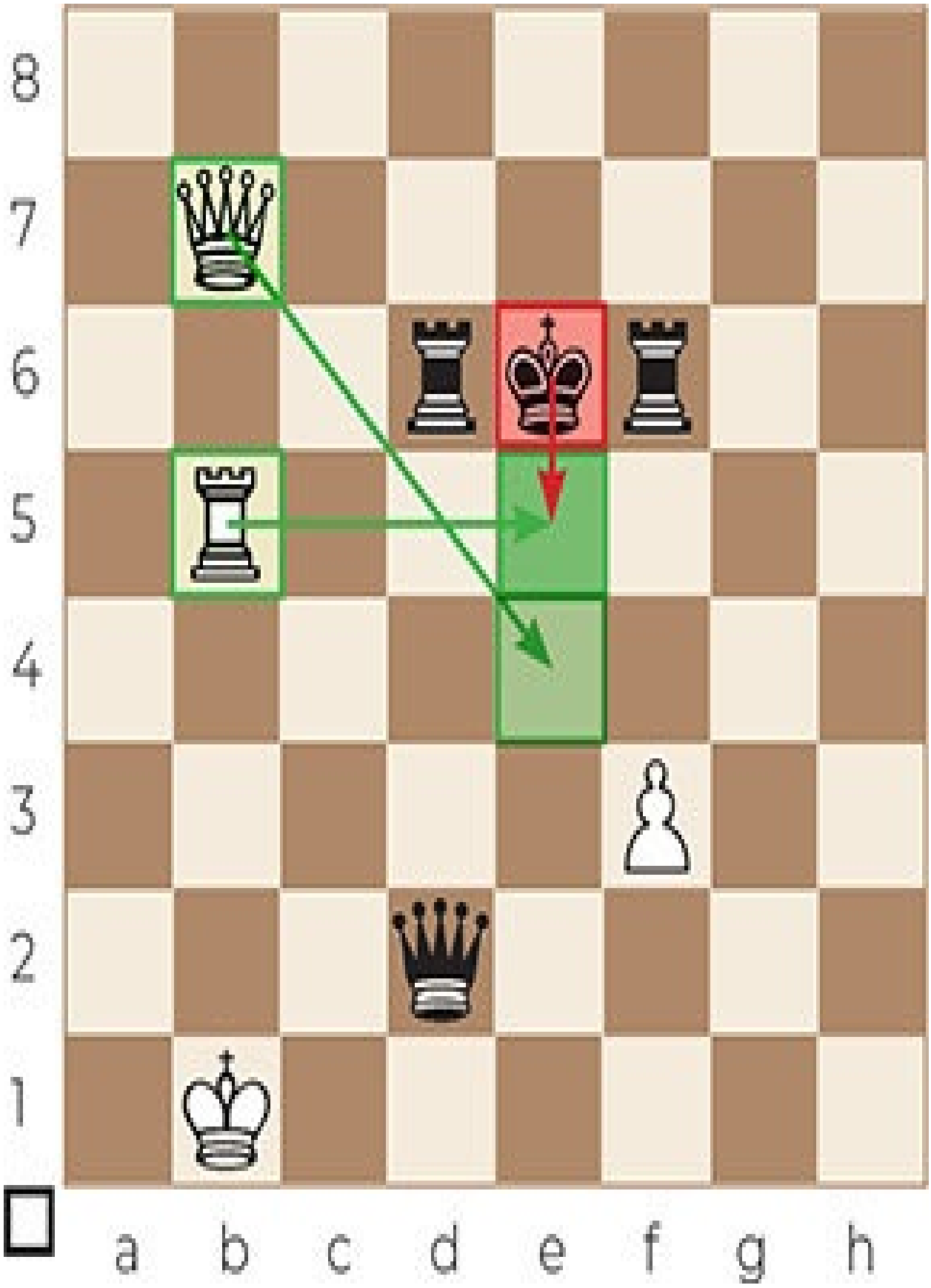
2002

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

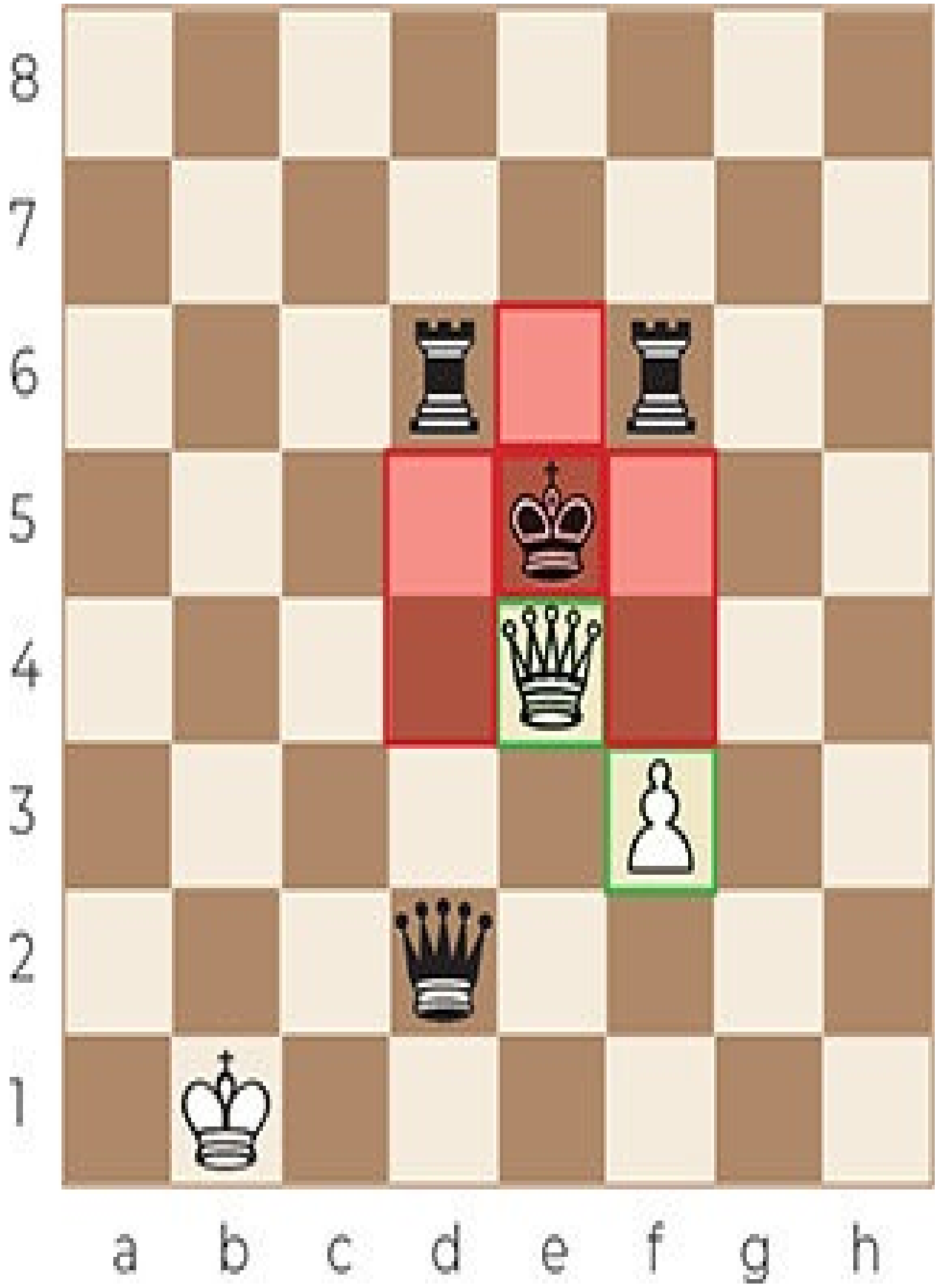
25...♕h1+ 26.♕g1 ♕h3+ 27.♔f2 ♕f3#

Swallow’s tail mate 2

In some cases, a Swallow’s tail mate is preceded by a sacrifice to lure the king to a certain square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

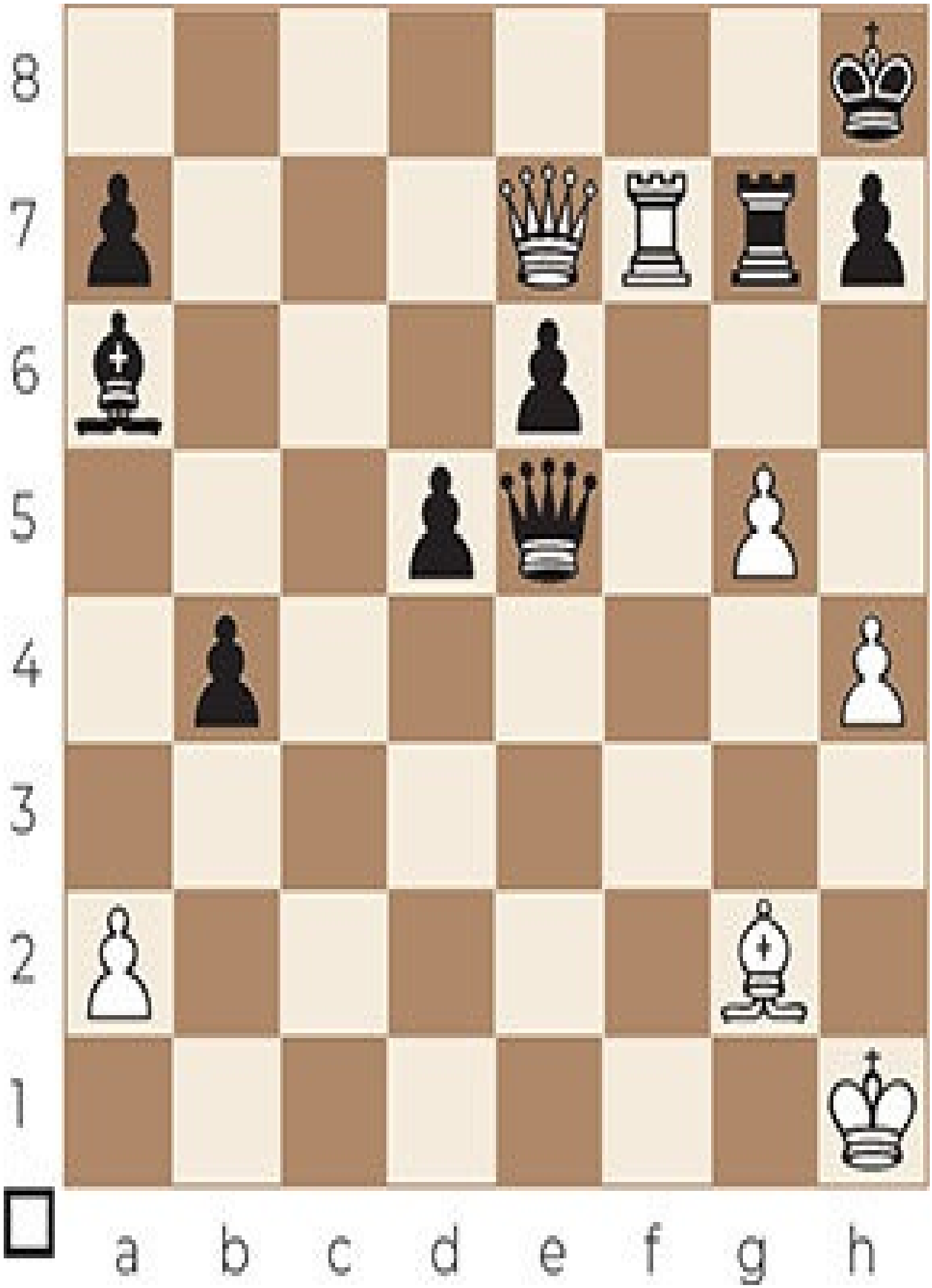
1.♖e5+ ♔xe5 2.♕e4#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 155

Glinert – Haessel

2001

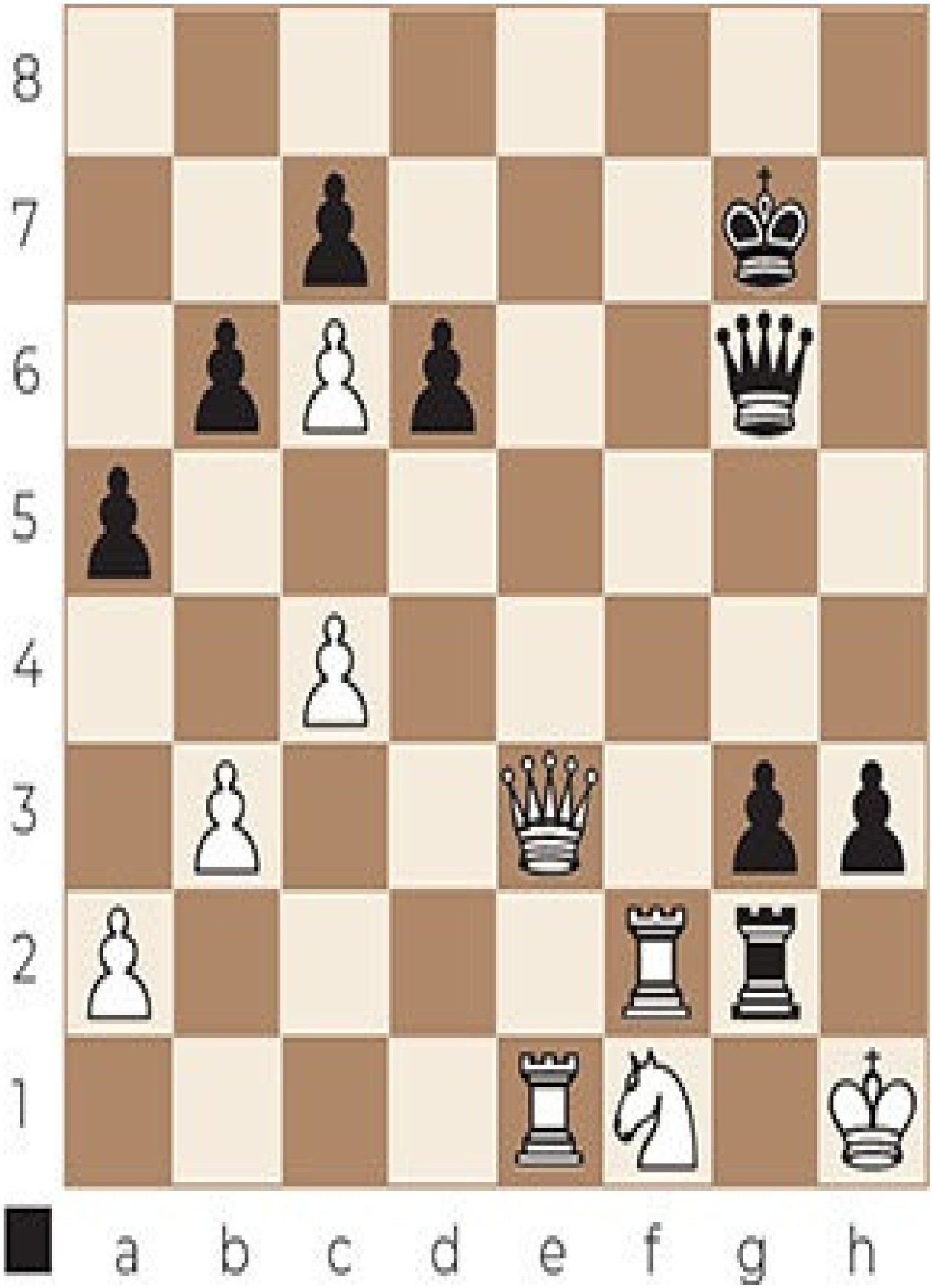

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

43.♕f8+ ♖g8 44.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 45.♕h6#

Game 156

Nenarokov – Romanovsky

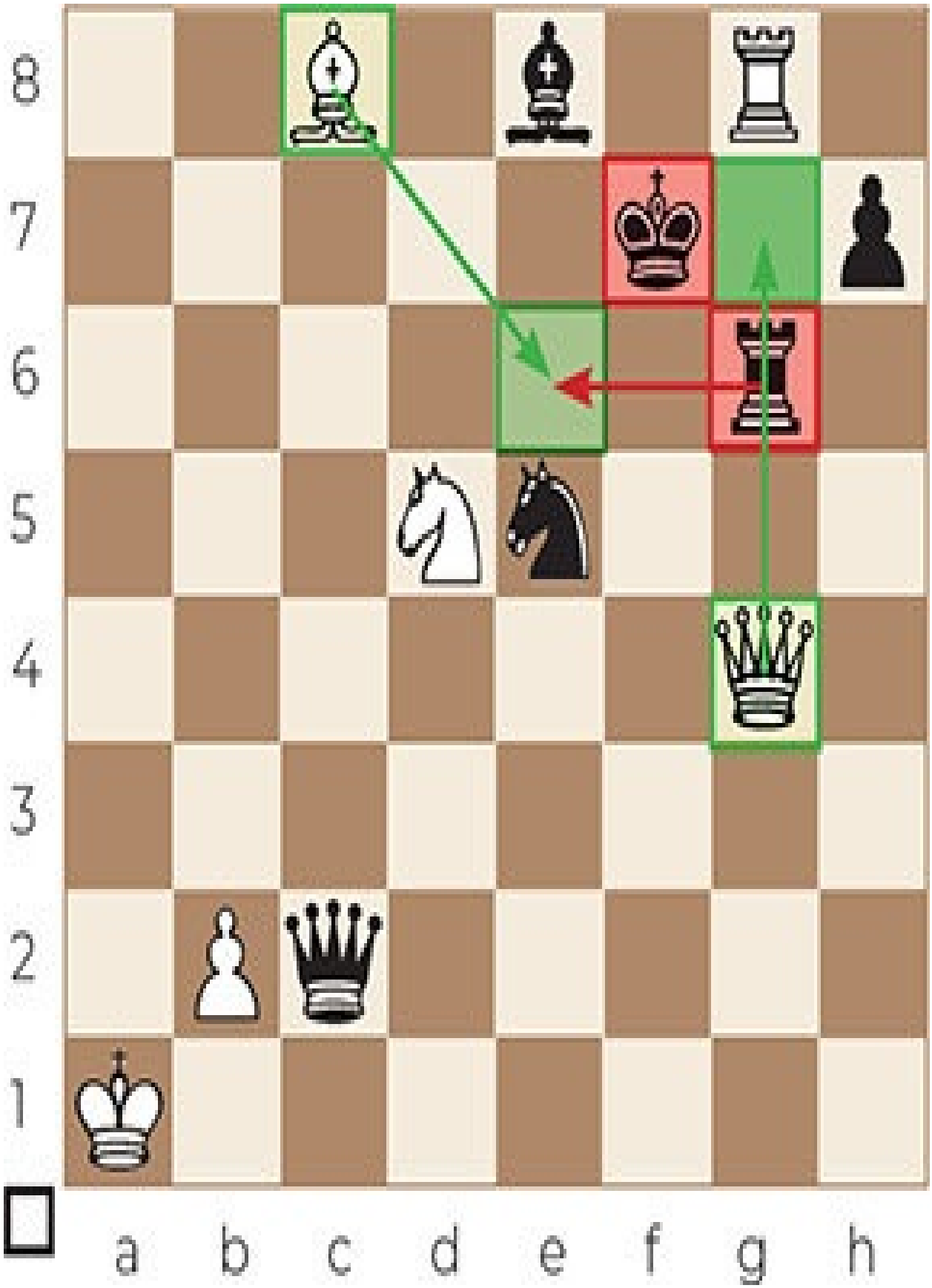
1927


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

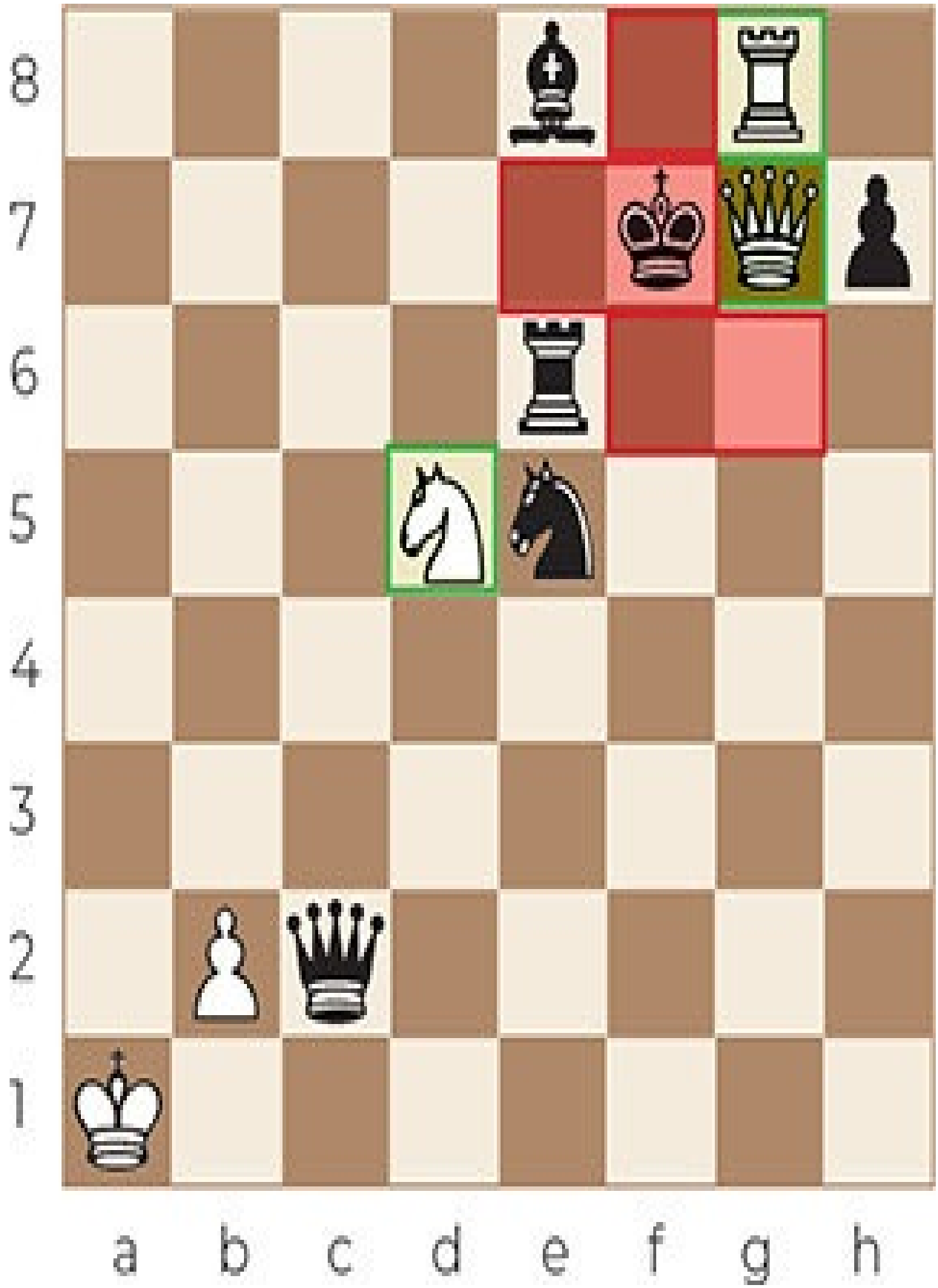
48...♖g1+ 49.♔xg1 gxf2+ 50.♔xf2 ♕g2#

Swallow’s tail mate 3

In some cases, a Swallow’s tail mate is preceded by a sacrifice to force the opponent to put one of his pieces on a square that should serve as a flight square for the king.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

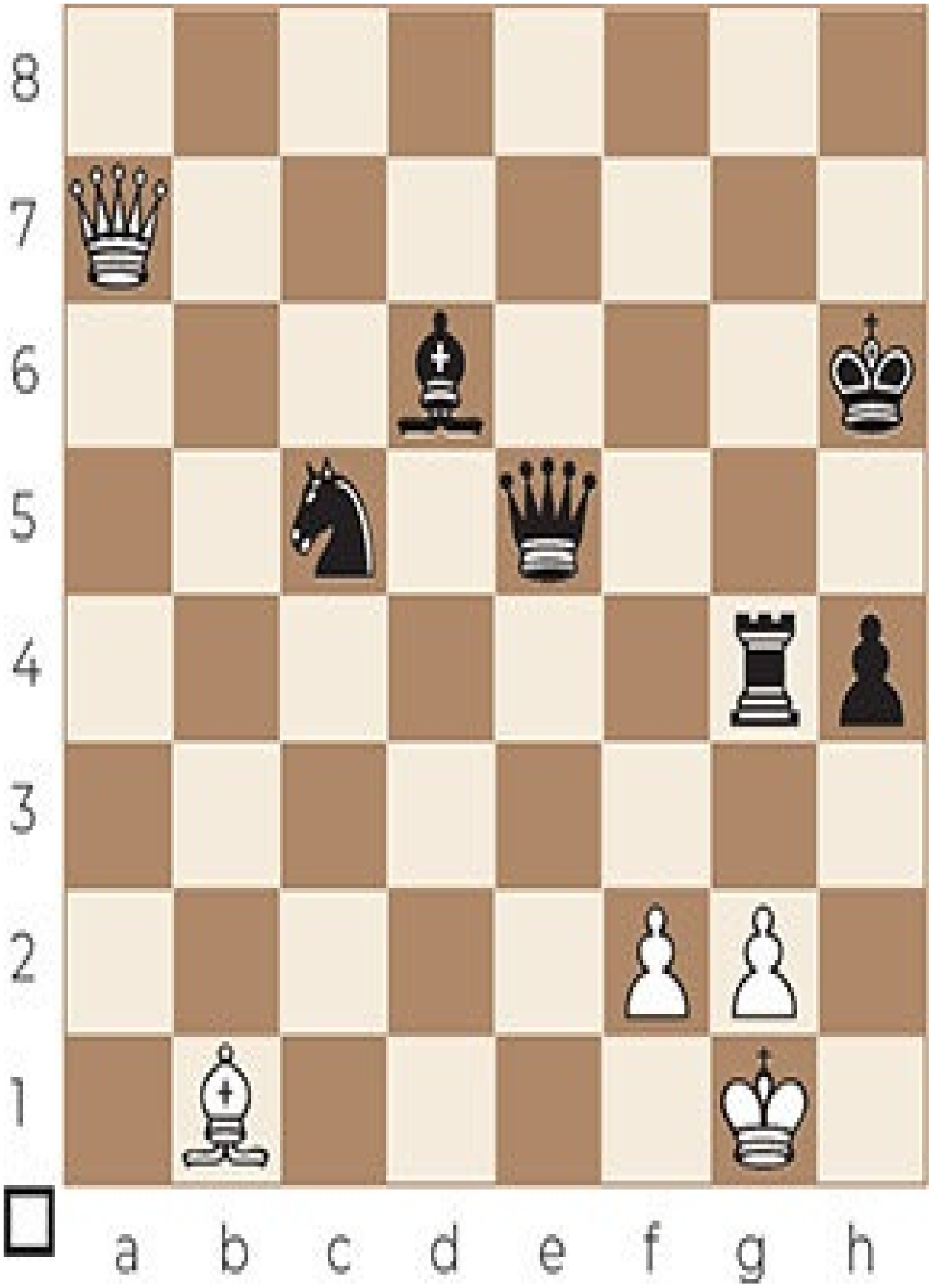
1. ♗e6+ ♖xe6 2.♕g7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 157

Helin – Jorgensen

2000


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

58.♕h7+ ♔g5 59.♕g6+ ♔f4 60.♕f7+ ♔g5 61.f4+

Covering the king’s only escape square.

61...♖/♕xf4 62.♕g6#

Game 158

Akobian – Lugo

2005

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

34.♕e5+

Exploiting the weaknesses on the dark squares.

34...♔h7

Other variations also lead to mate:

A) 34...♔h6 35.♕h8+ ♕h7 36.♖h4+ ♔g5 37.♕f6#;

B) 34...♔g8 35.♖xg6+ ♔h7 36.♕h5# (Lawnmower mate).

35.♖f7+ ♕xf7 36.♖h4+ ♔g8 37.♕h8#

Game 159

De la Prida – Rocha

1968

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

41...♕a1+ 42.♔e2

42.♔f2 ♕e1+ 43.♔g2 ♕g1# (Hook mate).

42...♕e1+ 43.♔d3 ♗e4+ 44.♕xe4 ♕d2#

CHAPTER 18

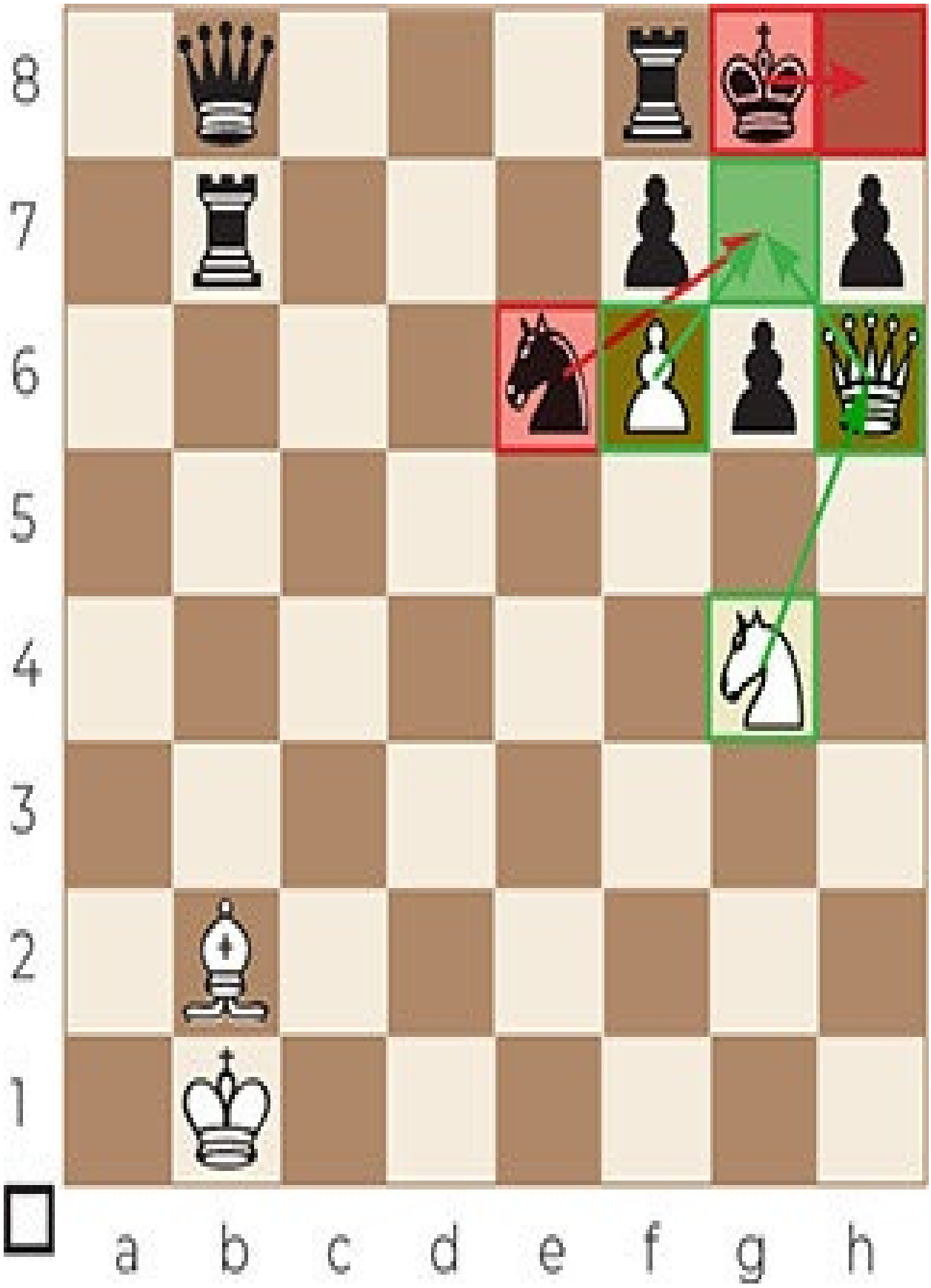
David & Goliath mate

In the David & Goliath mate, a protected pawn delivers checkmate. It doesn't matter how possible escape squares of the king are covered or blocked.

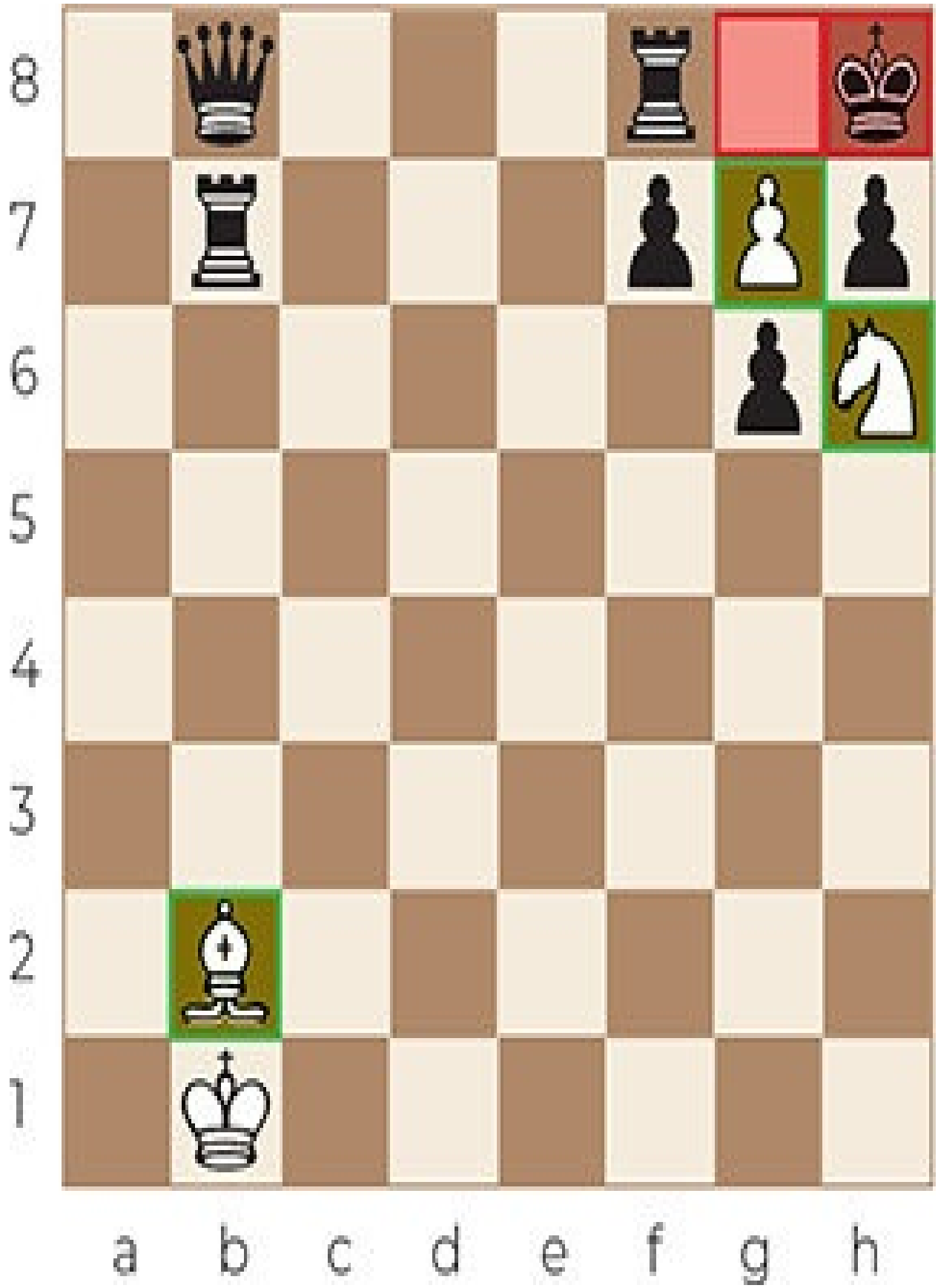
Its name is taken from the biblical account of David & Goliath. The phrase 'David & Goliath' today indicates a situation where the underdog (a pawn) beats a much stronger opponent (the king).

David & Goliath mate 1

Most of the times the David & Goliath mate is preceded by a sacrifice. If the sacrifice is accepted, a pawn will take (immediately or delayed) and checkmate the king.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕g7+ ♘xg7 2.♘h6+ ♔h8 3.fxg7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 160

Mlotkowski – Deacon

1913

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

11.♕f7+ ♘xf7 12.exf7#

Game 161

Külaots – Levin

2006

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33.♕b5+ axb5 34.axb5#

Game 162

Juhasz – Bors

2002

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

30...♕e2+

A beautiful queen sacrifice.

31.♘xe2

31.♔c1 ♕c2# (Lolli's mate).

31...♖c2+

The white pieces are completely out of coordination, mate is inevitable.

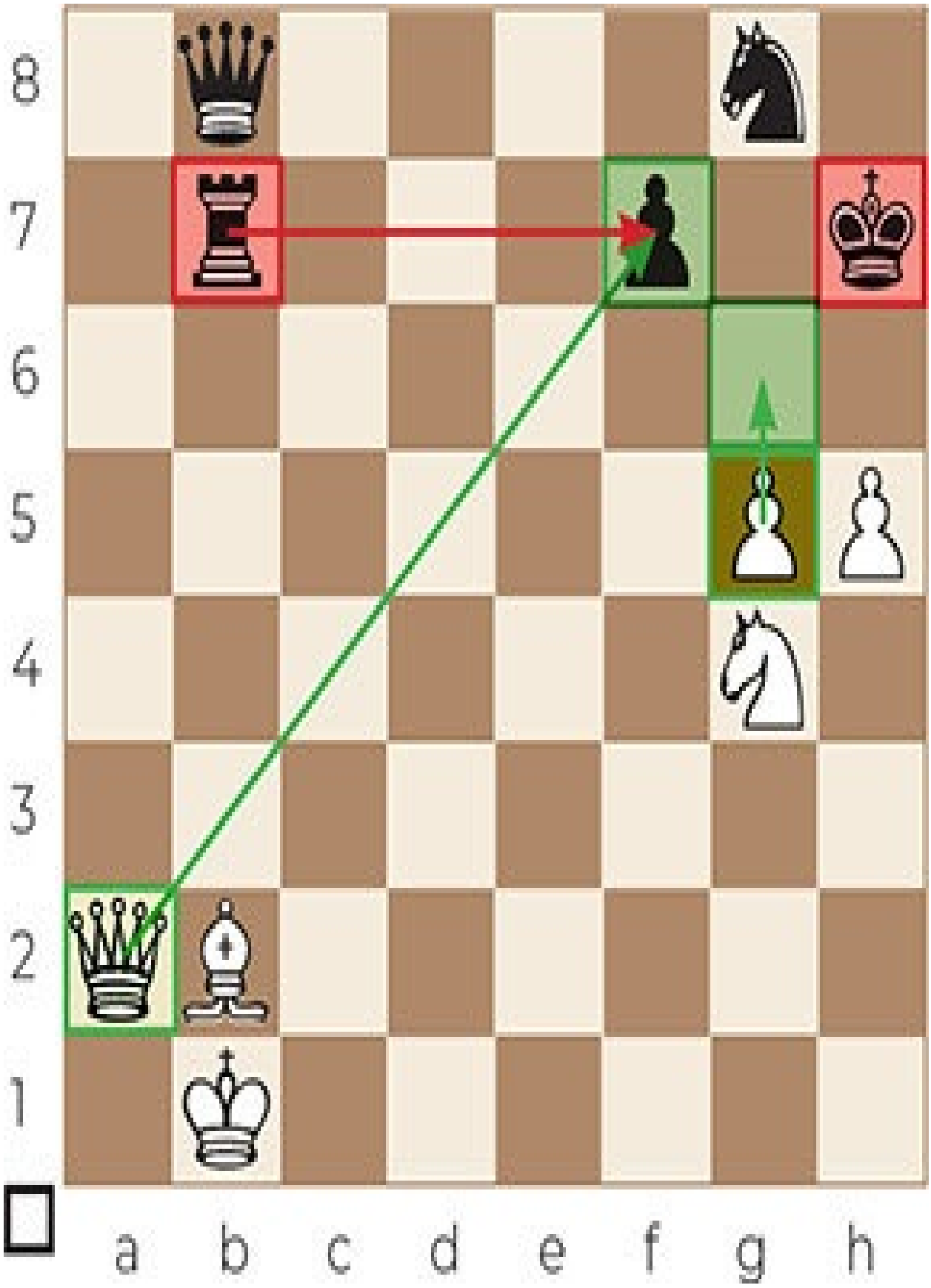
32.♔e1

32.♔d1 dxe2+ 33.♔e1 ♘d3/f3#.

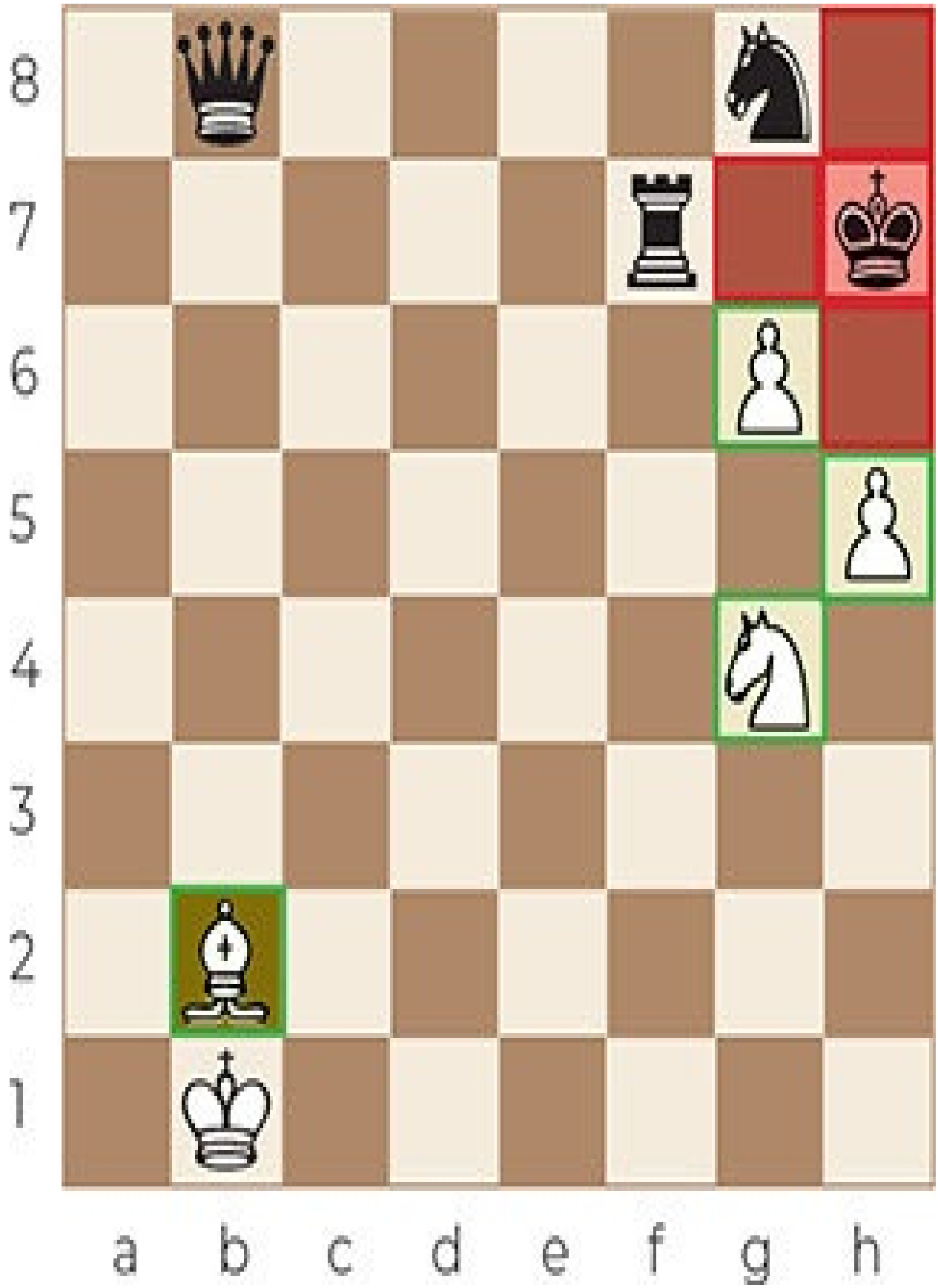
32...♘f3+ 33.♔d1 dxe2#

David & Goliath mate 2

Sometimes, a David & Goliath mate is preceded by a sacrifice to remove or distract the defender of the square on which a pawn will deliver checkmate (immediately or later in the game).


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

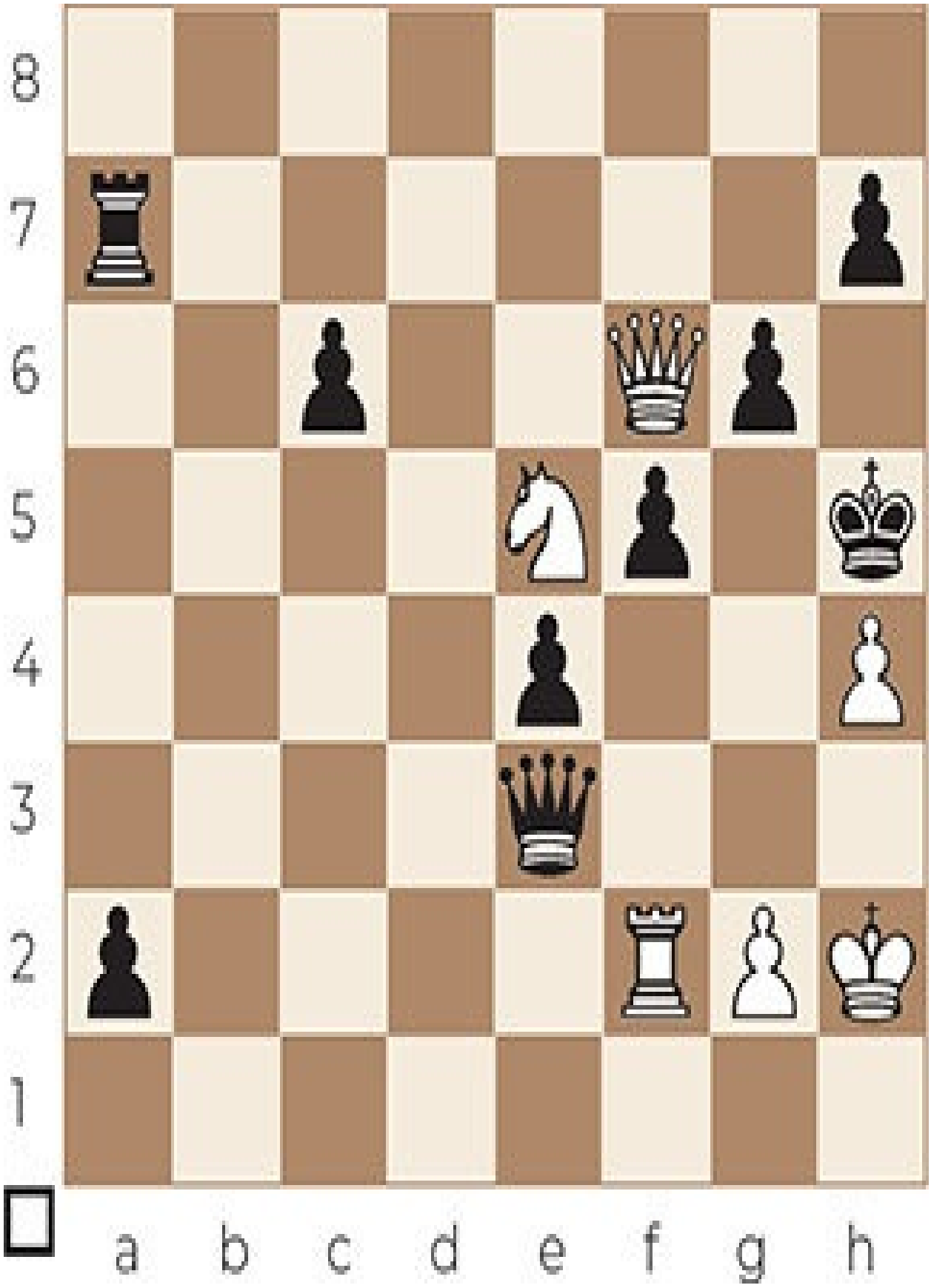
1.♕xf7+ ♖xf7 2.g6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 163

Kveinys – Krylov

2000

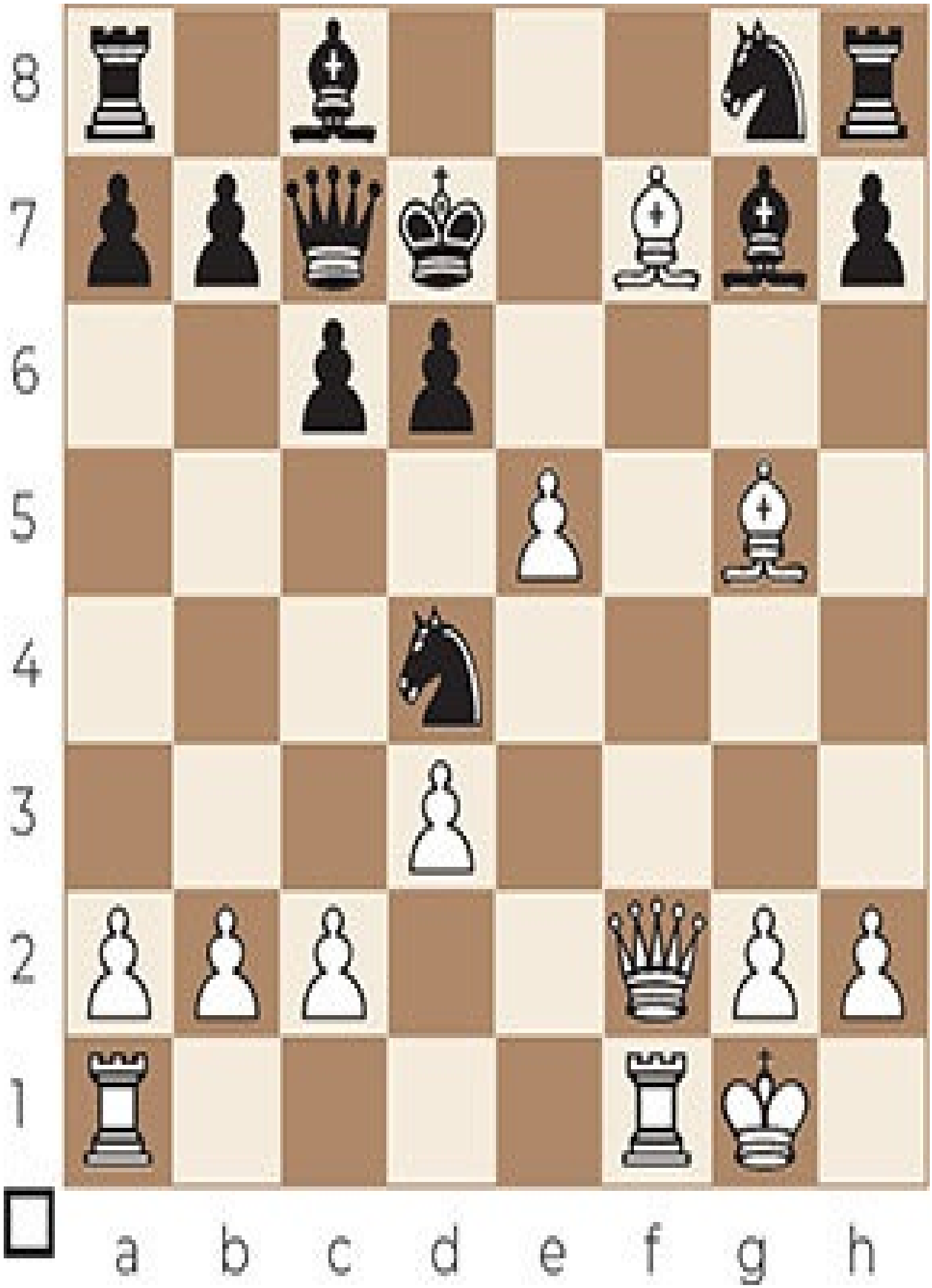

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

48.♖xf5+ gxf5 49.♕xf5+ ♔h6 50.♕f6+ ♔h5 51.g4#

Game 164

Niemzowitsch – Neumann

18998

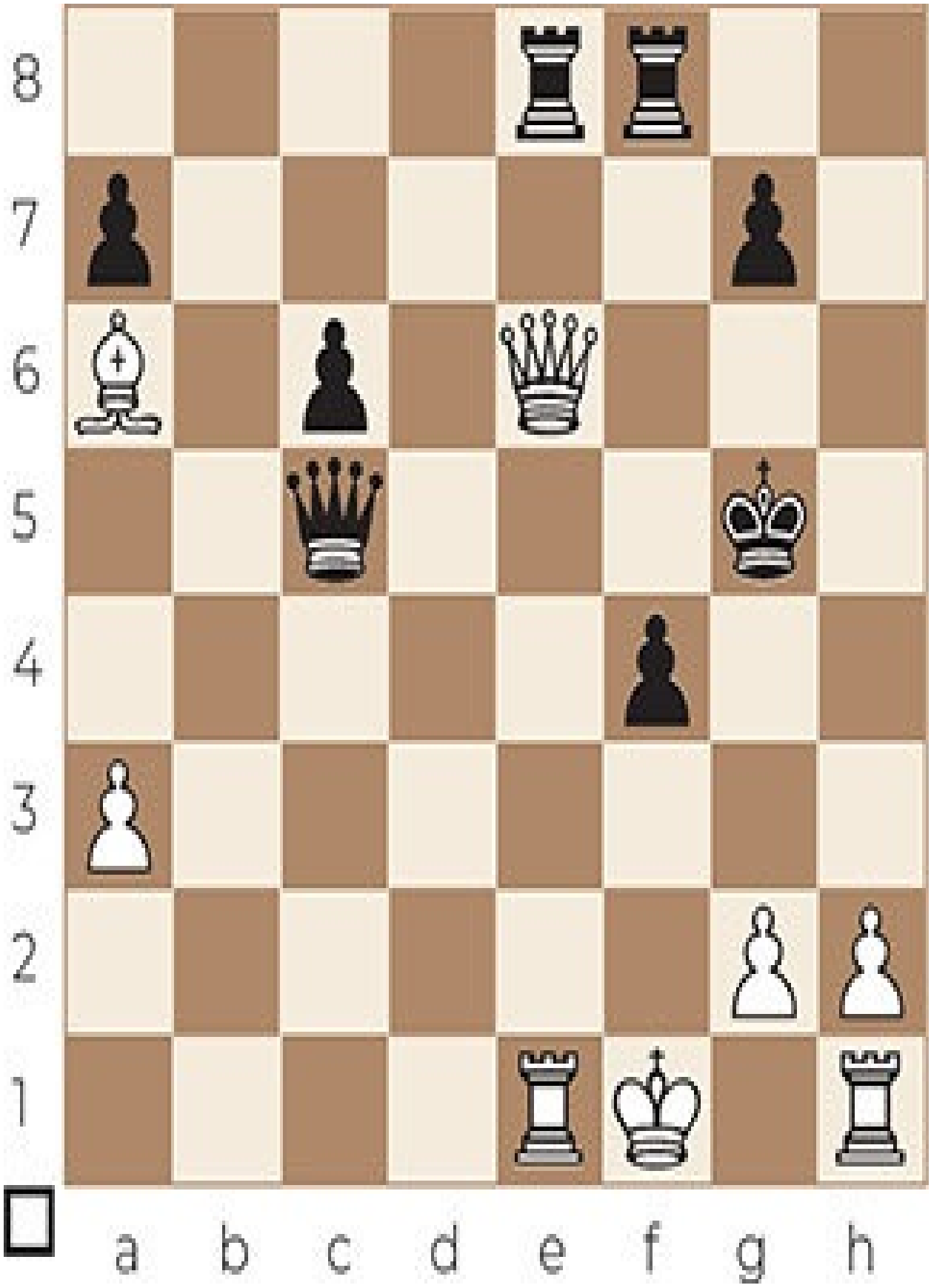

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

16.♕f5+ ♘xf5 17.e6#

Game 165

Bittencourt Filho – Dianda

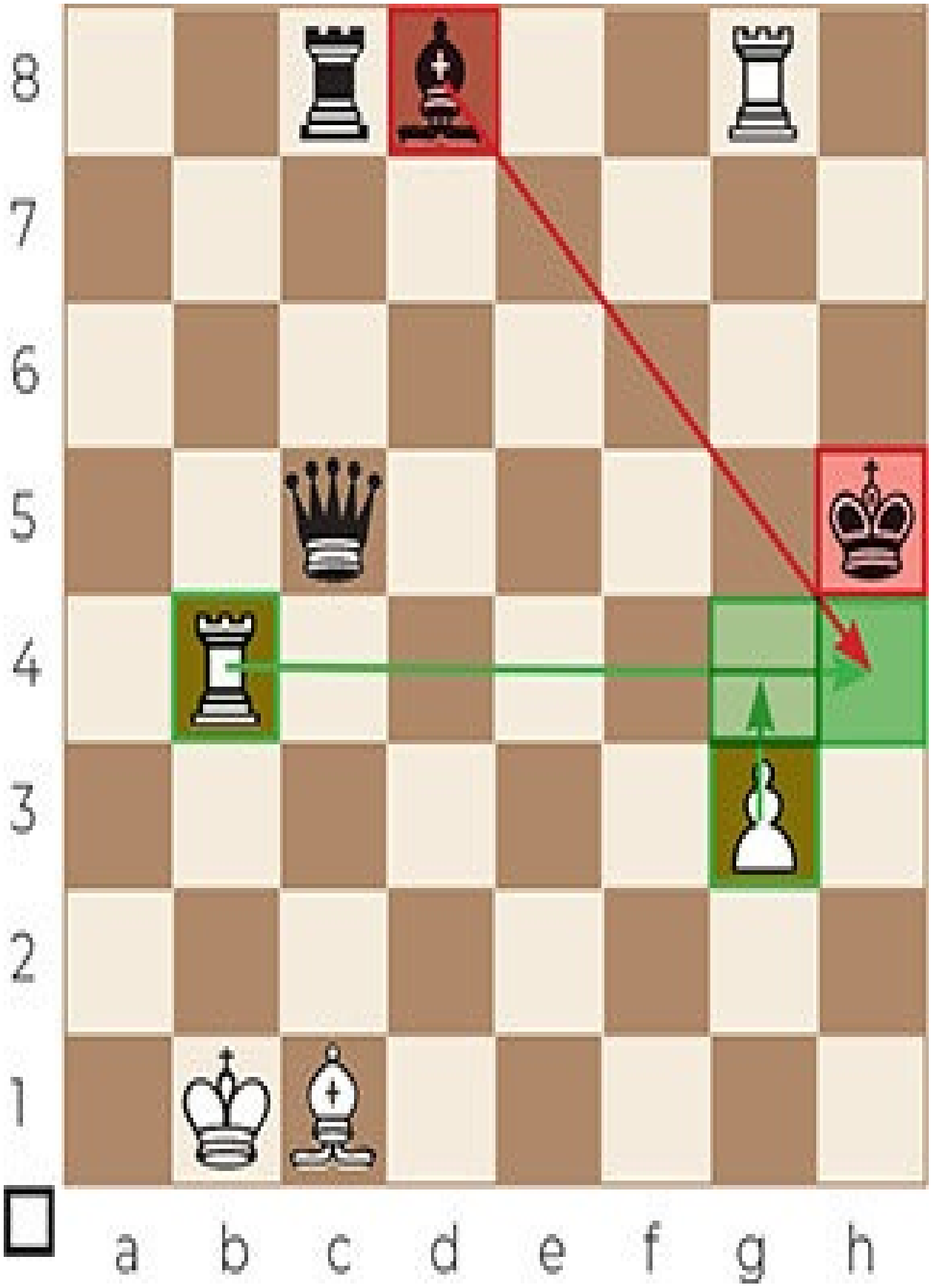
1995


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

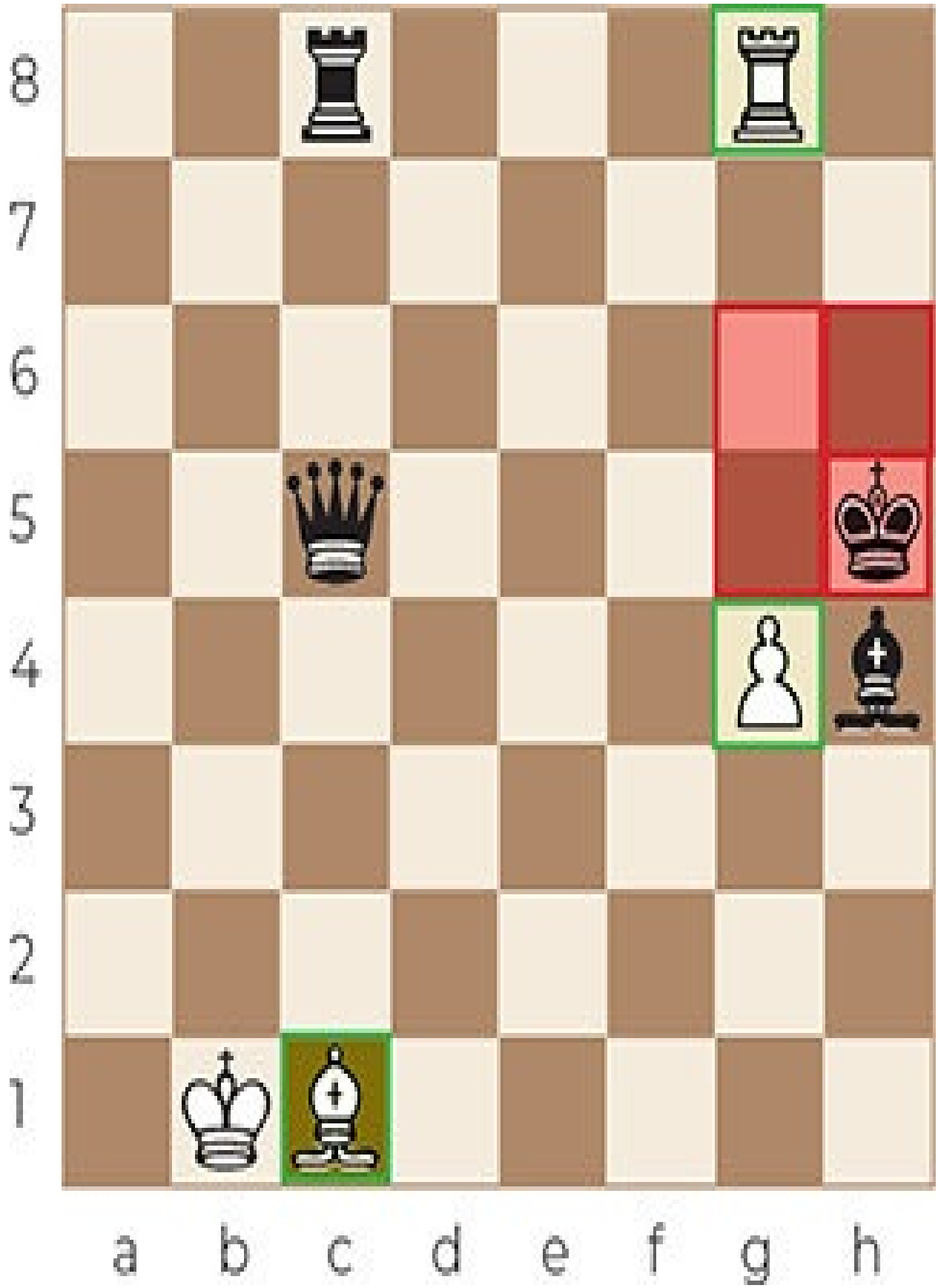
28.h4+ ♔h5 29.♗e2+ f3 30.g4#

David & Goliath mate 3

Sometimes, a David & Goliath mate is preceded by a queen or rook sacrifice to force the opponent to put one of his pieces on a square that should have served as a flight square for the king later in the game.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

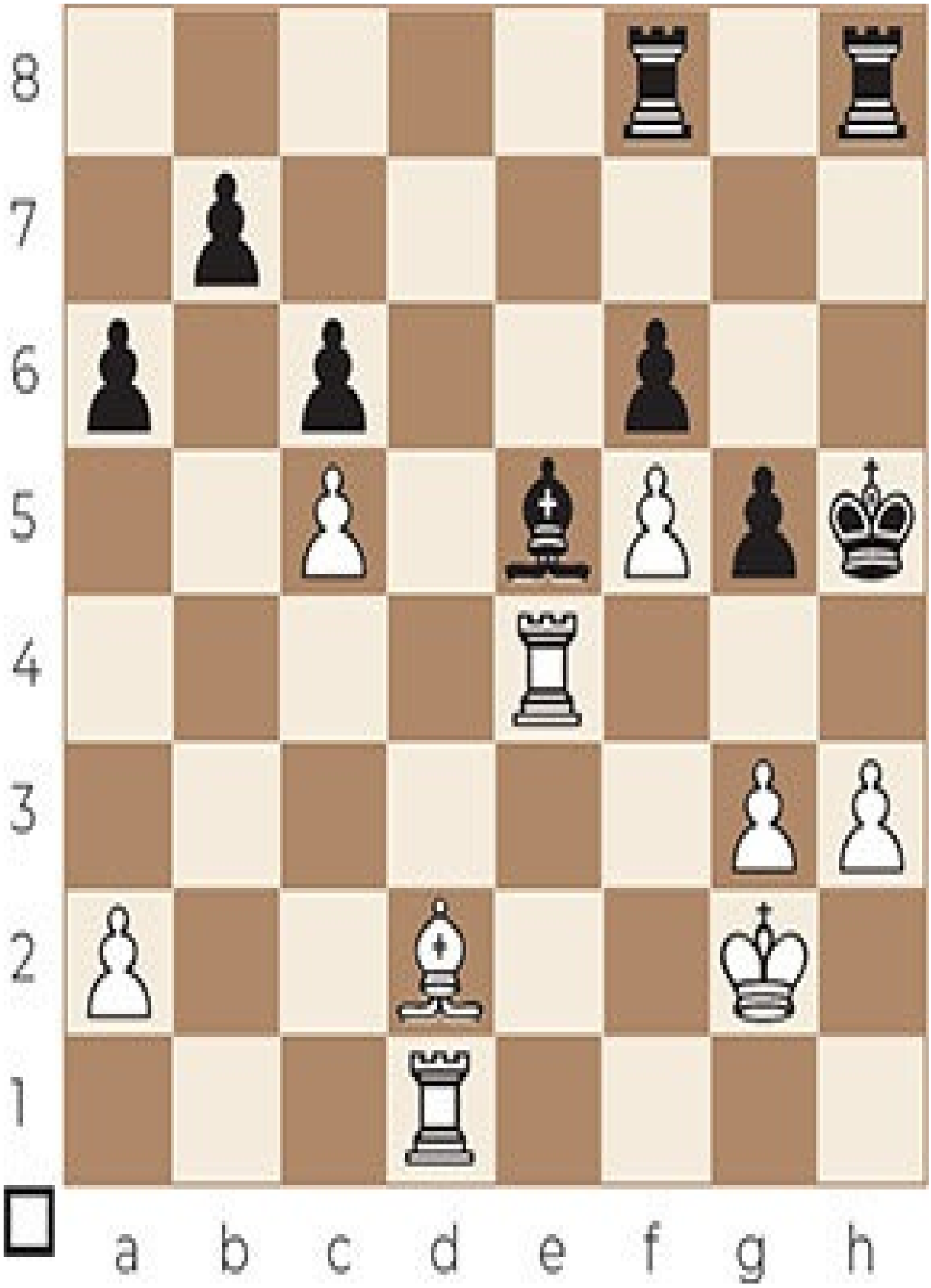
1.♖h4+ ♗xh4 2.g4#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 166

Karpov – Mickiewicz

1997

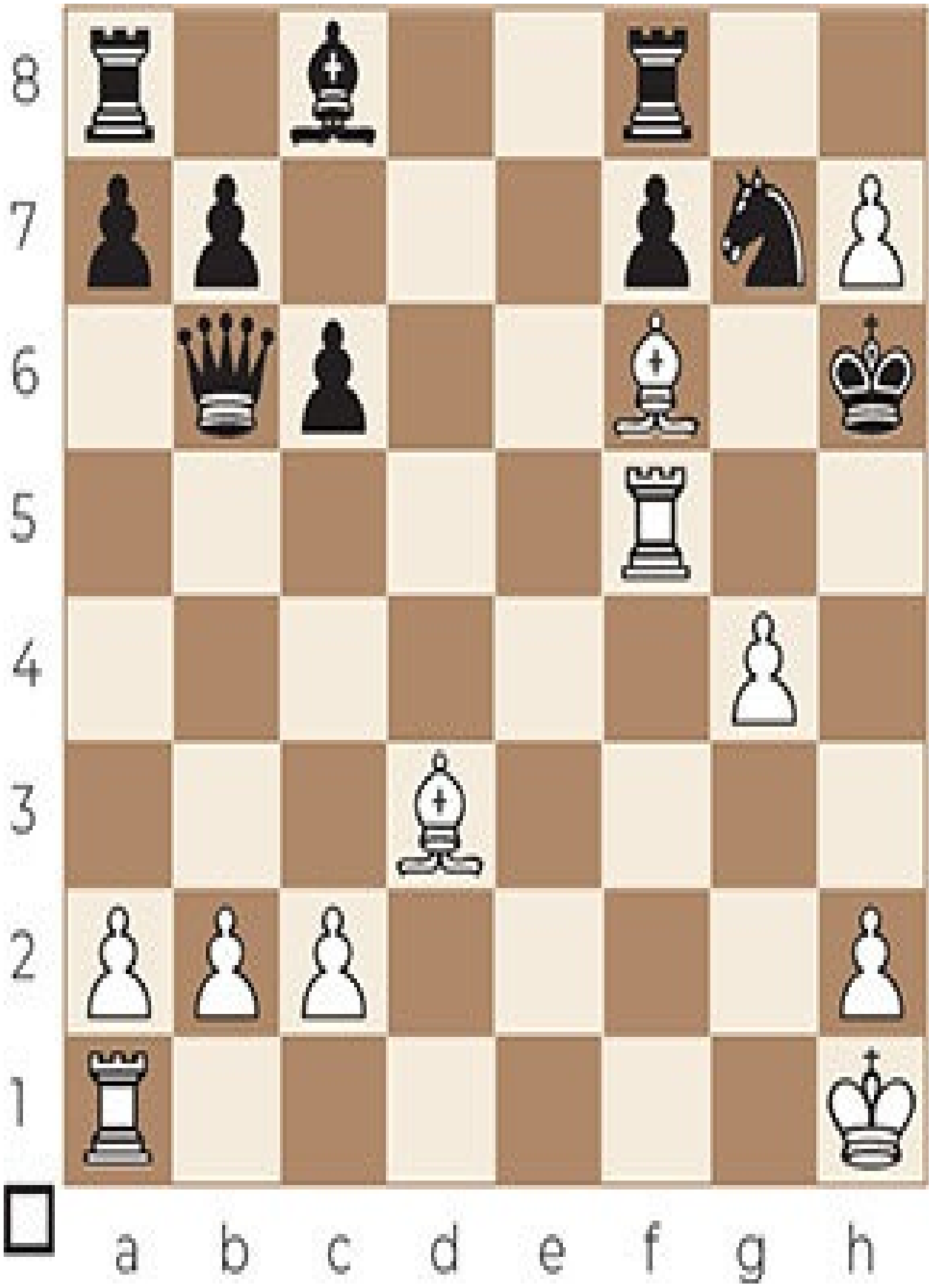

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

47.♖h4+ gxh4 48.g4#

Game 167

Petrosian – Minasian

2006

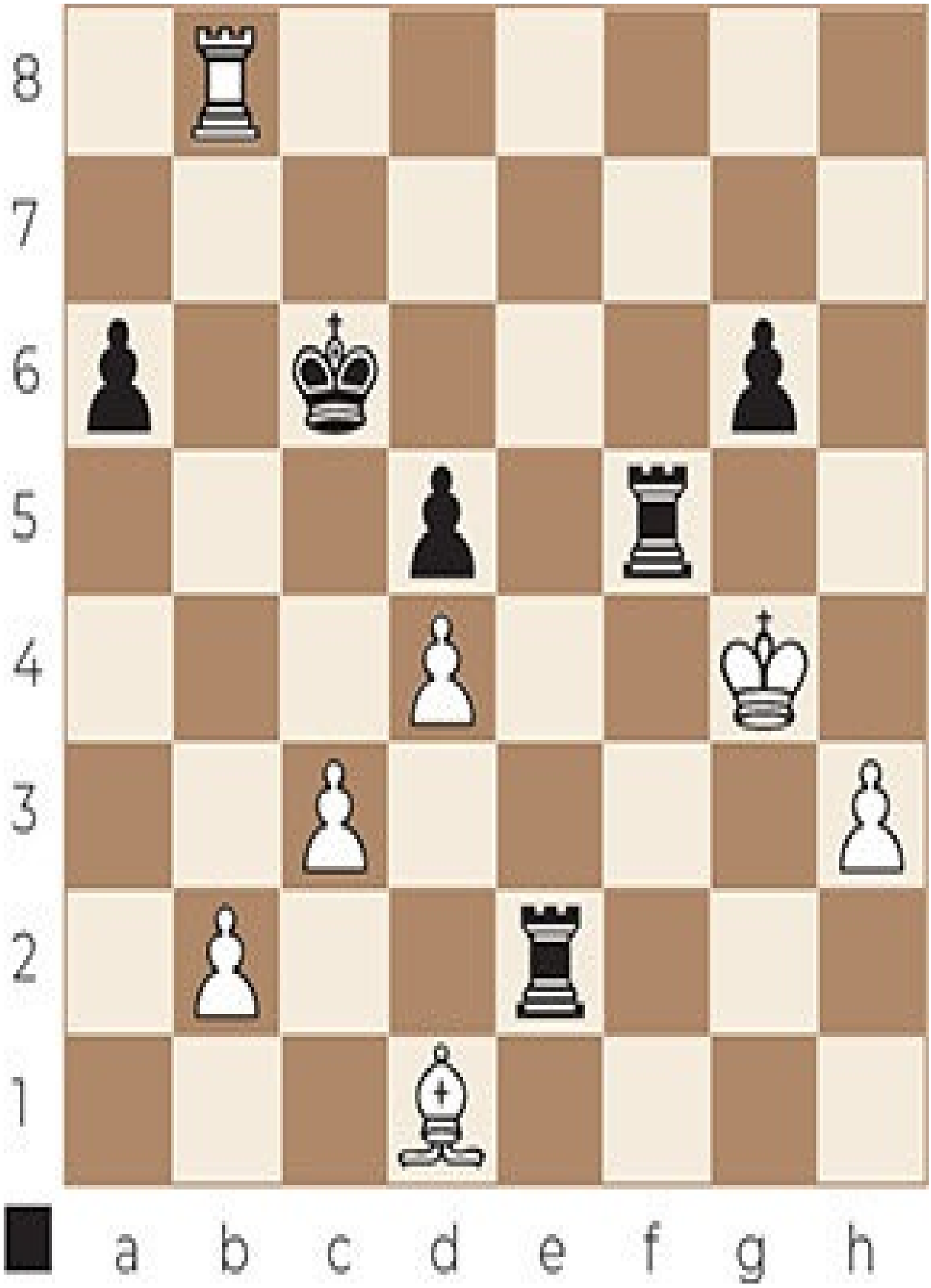

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

29.♖h5+ ♘xh5 30.g5#

Game 168

Seidman – Soltis

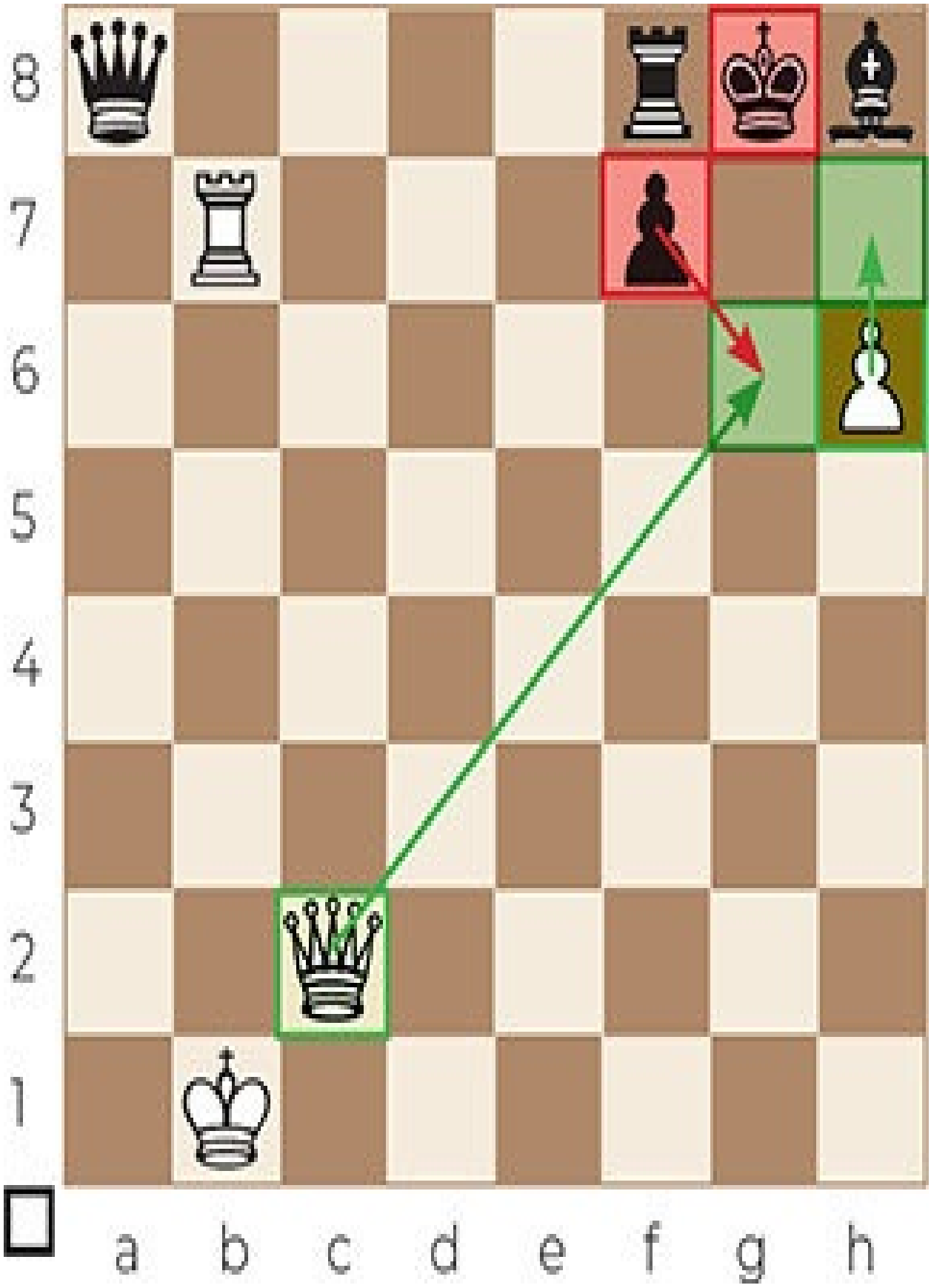
1968


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

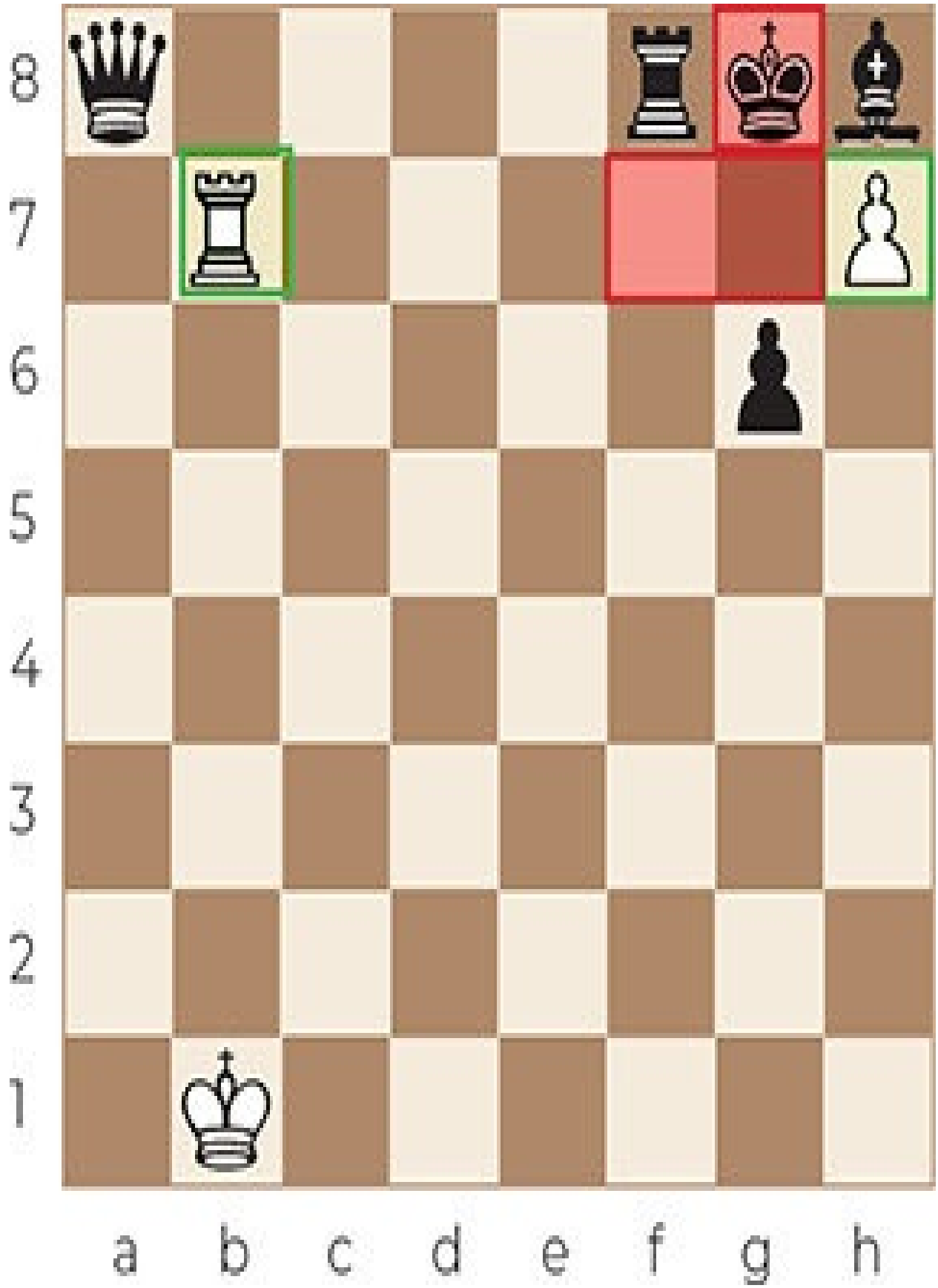
44...♖g2+ 45.♔h4 ♖h5+ 46.♗xh5 g5#

David & Goliath mate 4

Sometimes, a David & Goliath mate is preceded by a sacrifice to open a file or rank for a rook. It allows the rook to cover more escape squares of the king and/or support the pawn that delivers checkmate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕g6+ fxg6 2.h7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 169

Glücksberg – Najdorf

1935

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

21...♘e5+ 22.fxe5 h5#

Game 170

Mendoza – Garcia

2000

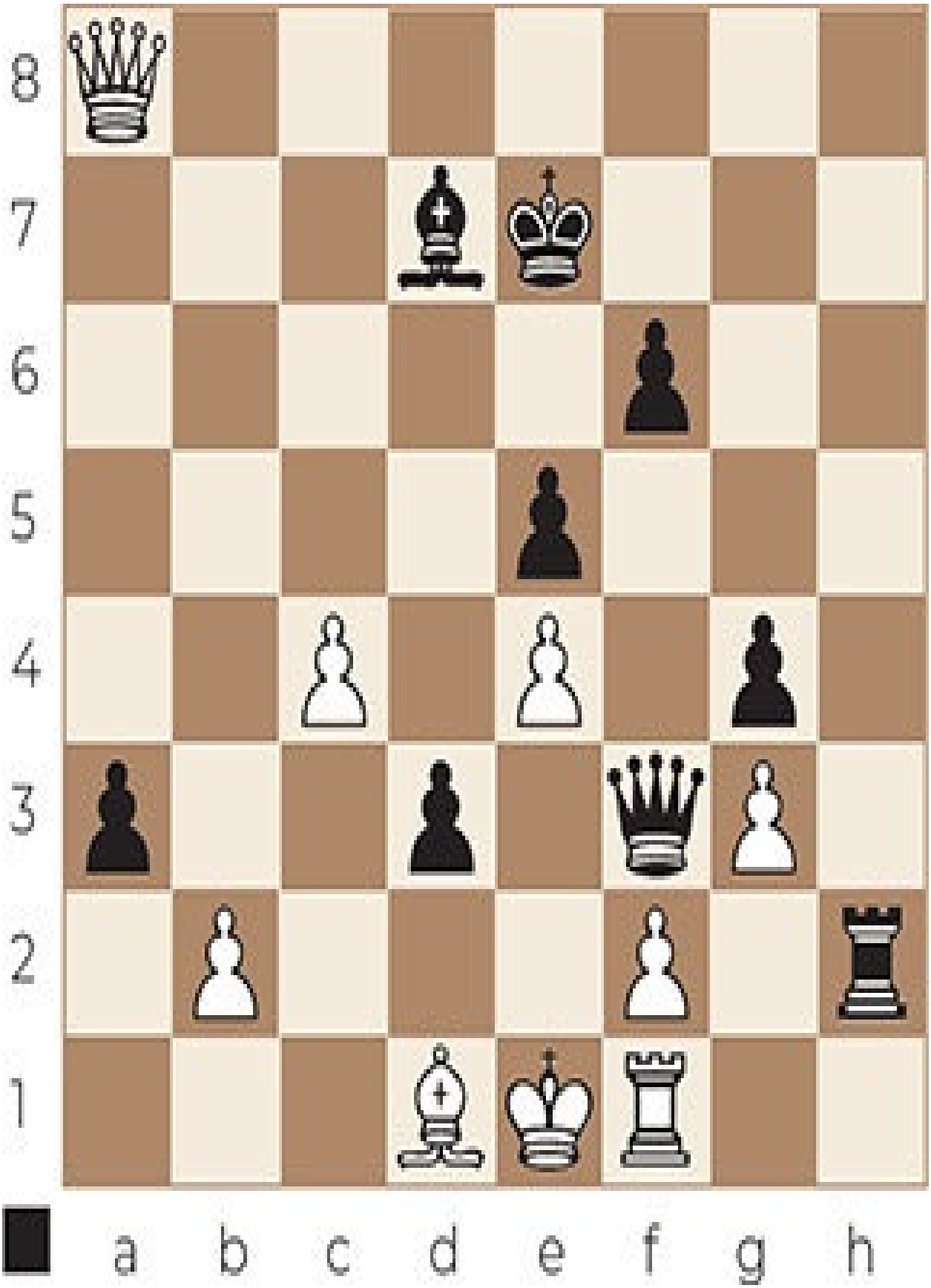
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28...♘a4+ 29.bxa4 d4#

Game 171

Pecori – Ambrus

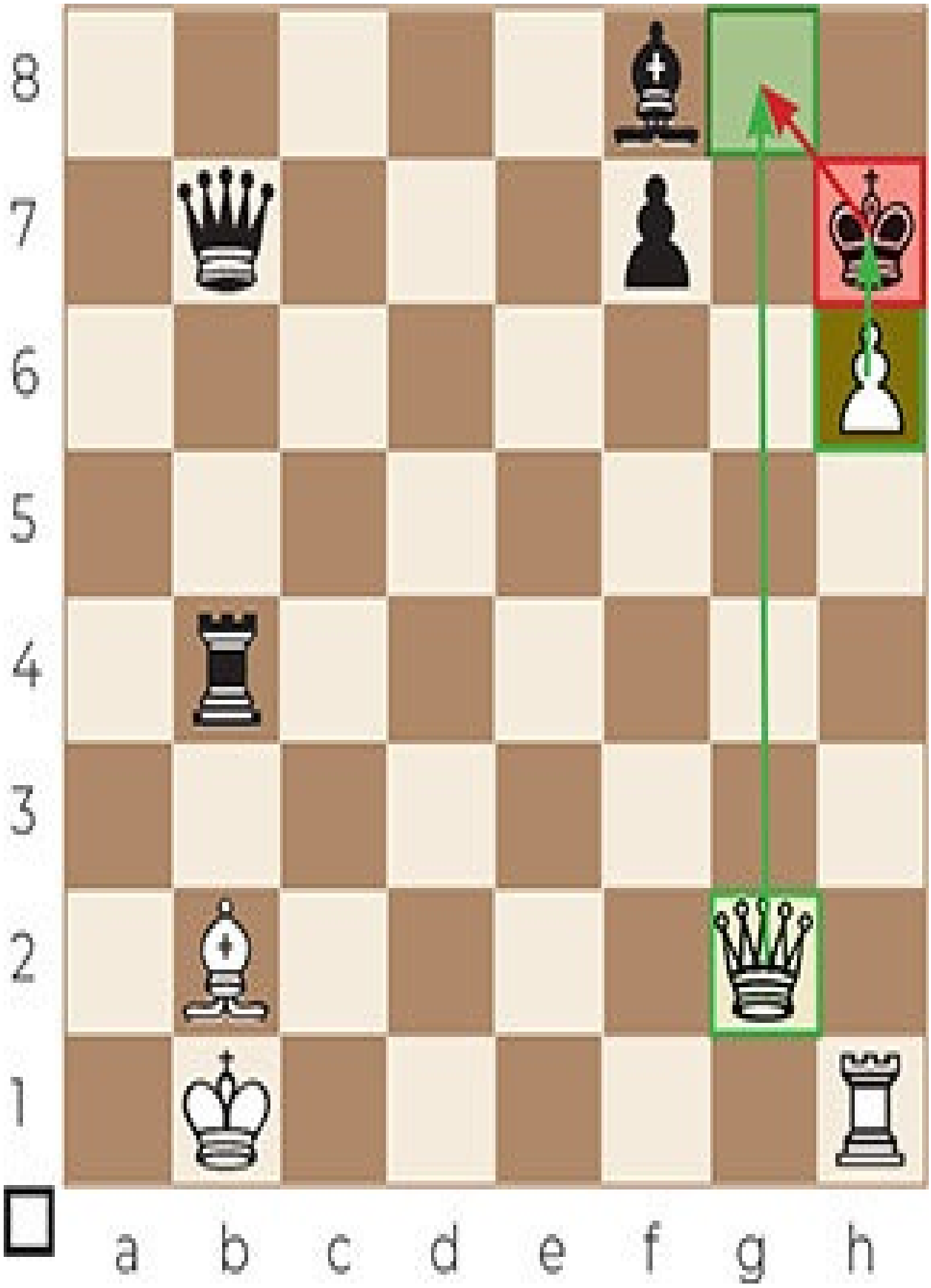
2008


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

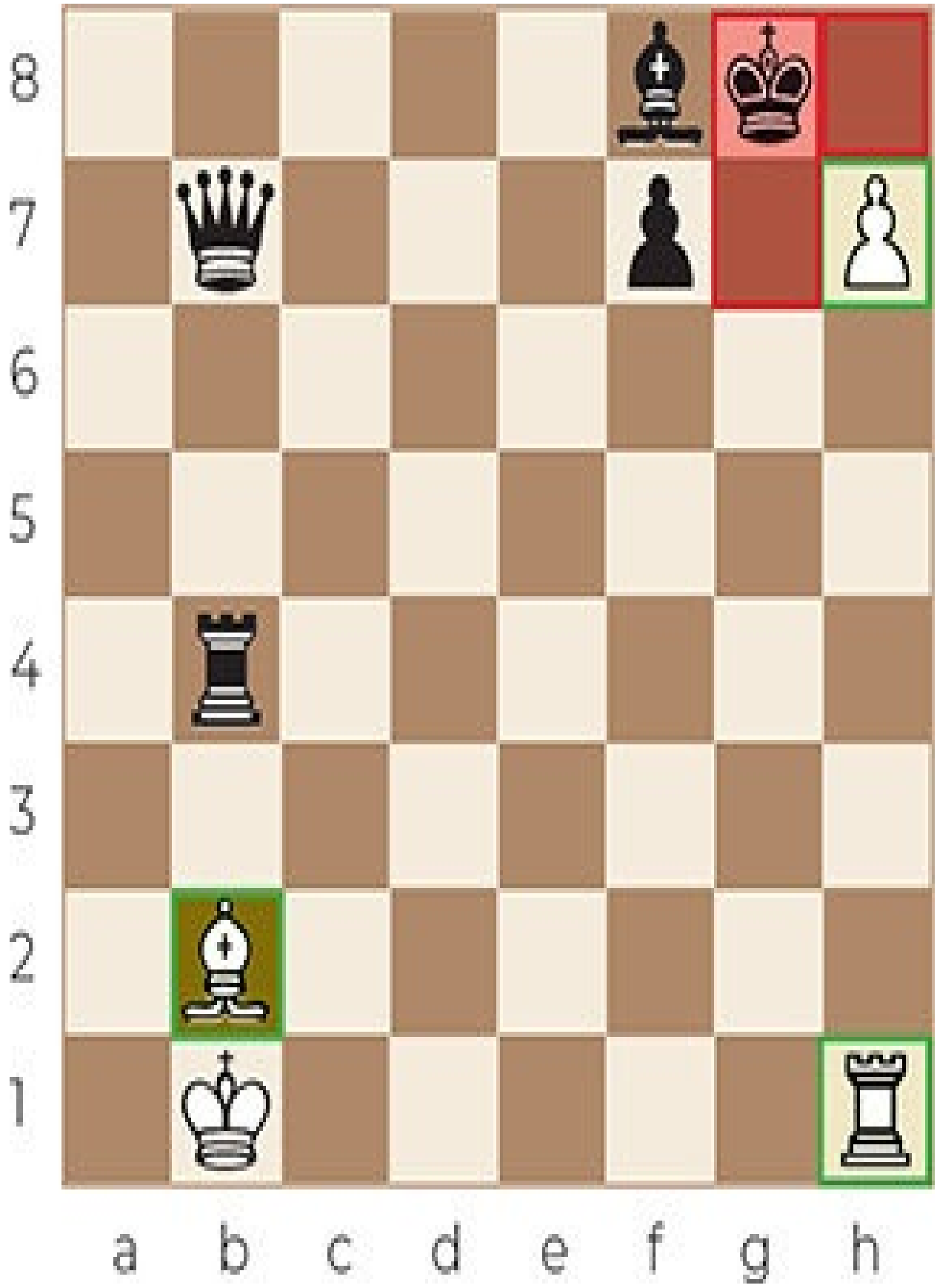
42...♕e3+ 43.fxe3 d2#

David & Goliath mate 5

Sometimes, a David & Goliath mate is preceded by a sacrifice to lure the king to a certain square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

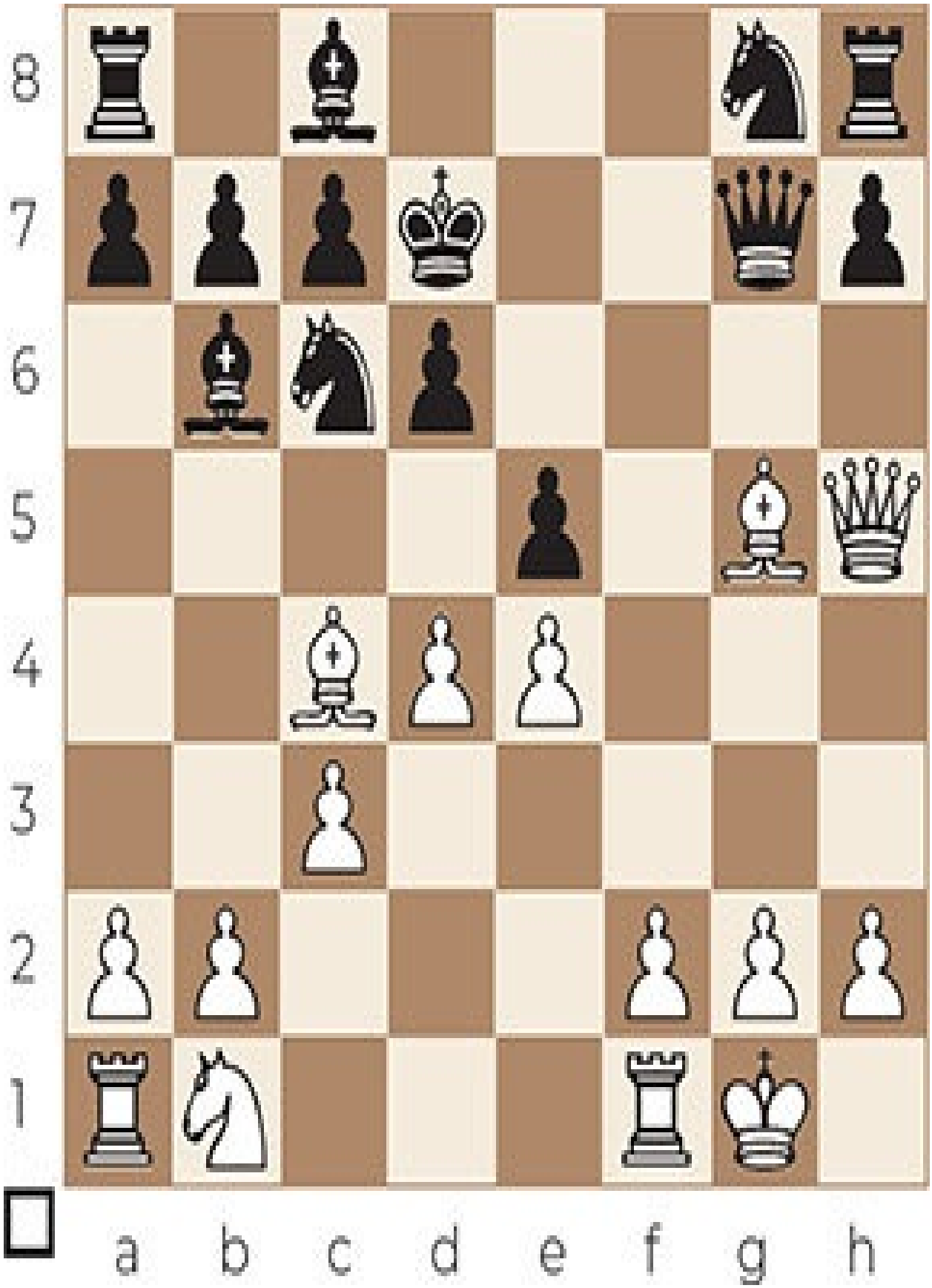
1.♕g8+ ♔xg8 2.h7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 172

Busnardo – NN

1590

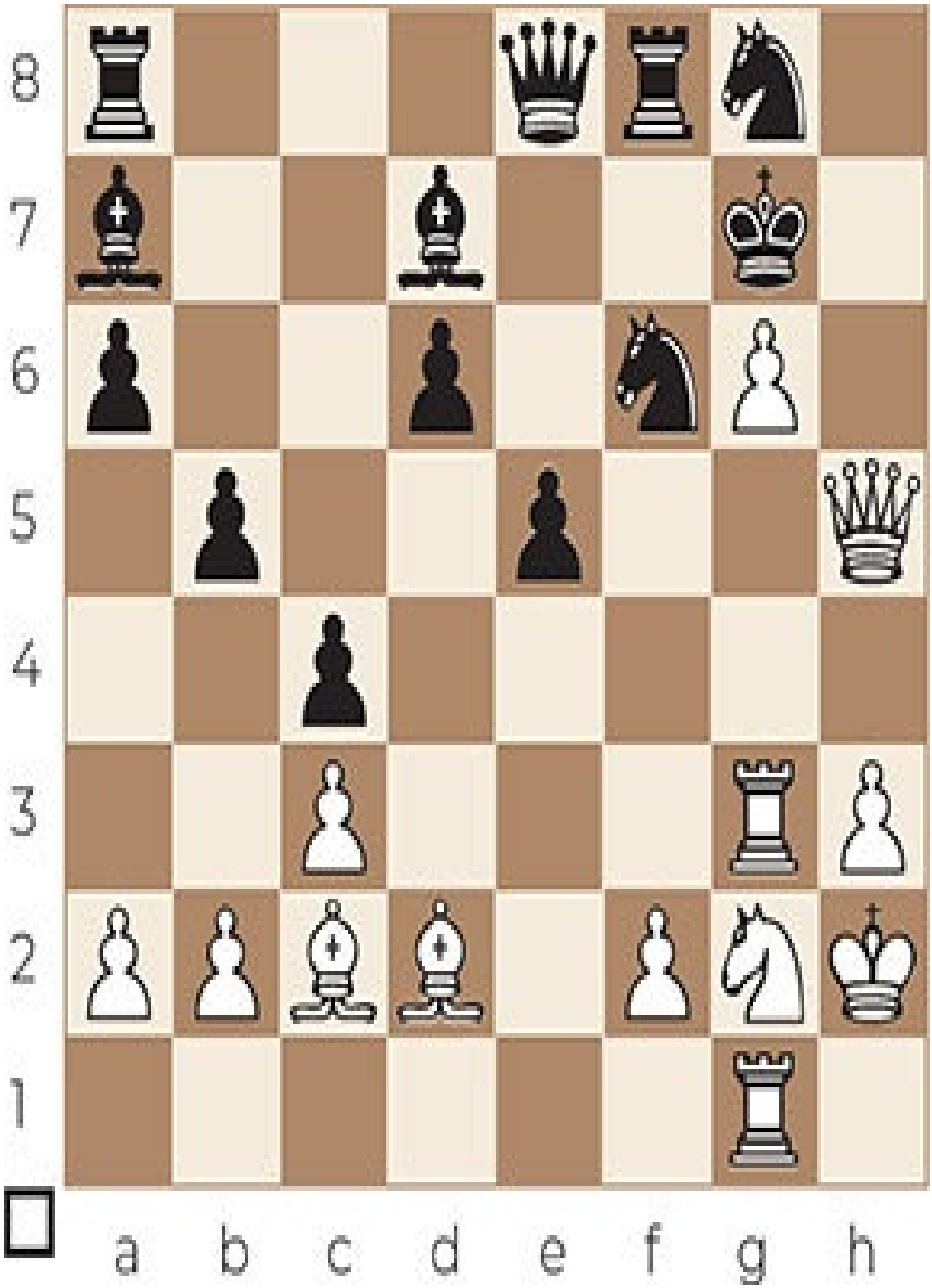

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

12. ♗e6+ ♔xe6 13.♕e8+ ♘ge7 14.d5#

Game 173

Kofidis – Voiska

1992


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

29.♕h8+ ♔xh8 30.g7#

Game 174

Korpa – Nguyen

2014

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26.g5+ ♔xg5 27.h4+

A last sacrifice of a pawn before the mate.

27...♔xh4

27...♔h6 28.♕f4+ ♔h5 29.♕g5#.

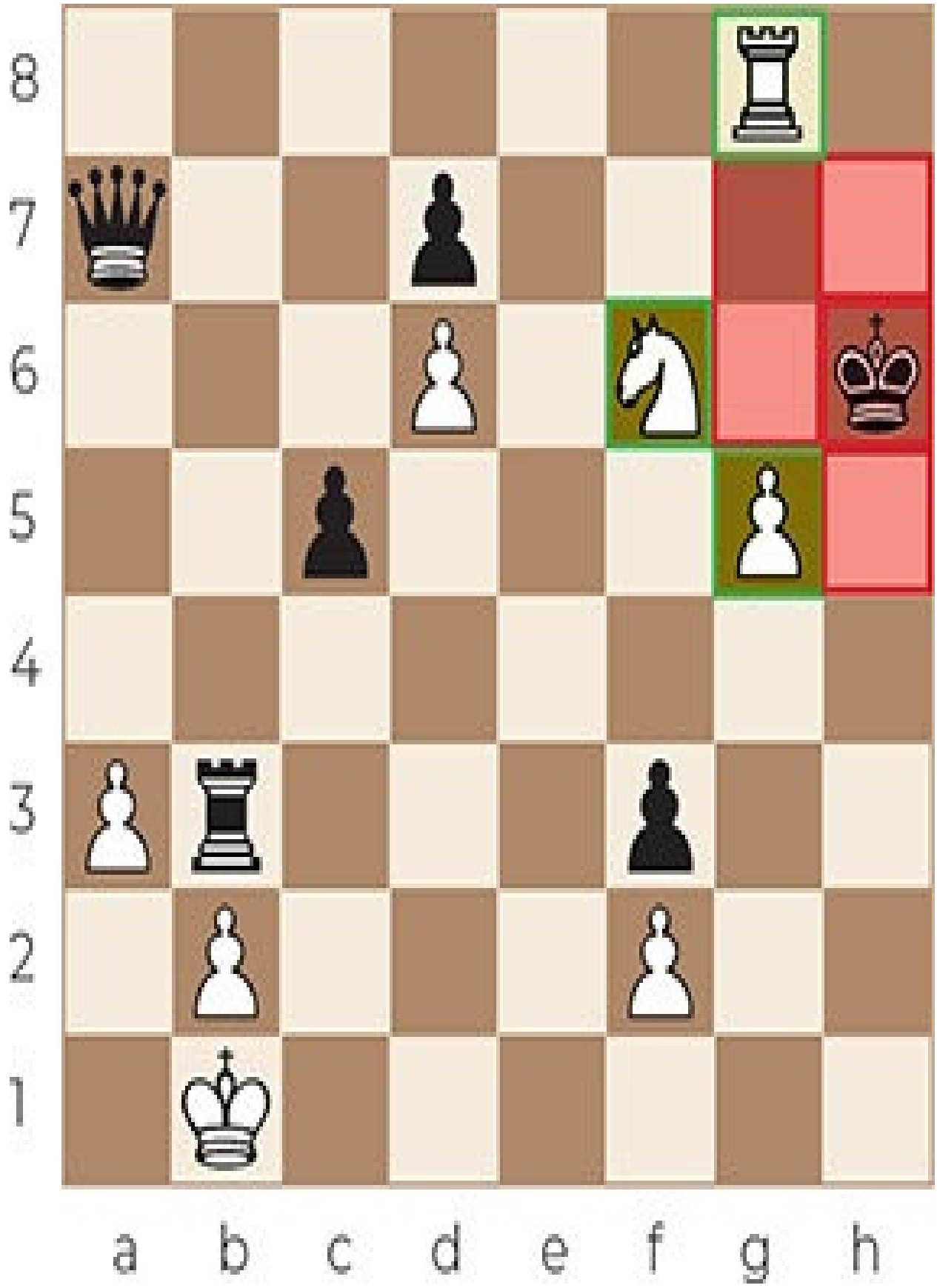
28.♕g3+ ♔h5 29.♕h3+ ♔g5 30.f4#

David & Goliath mate 6

Sometimes, a David & Goliath mate is preceded by a quiet move in order to prevent the enemy king from escaping out of a mating net. A quiet move is a move which does not alter material (thus no captures nor promotions) and doesn’t give a check.

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

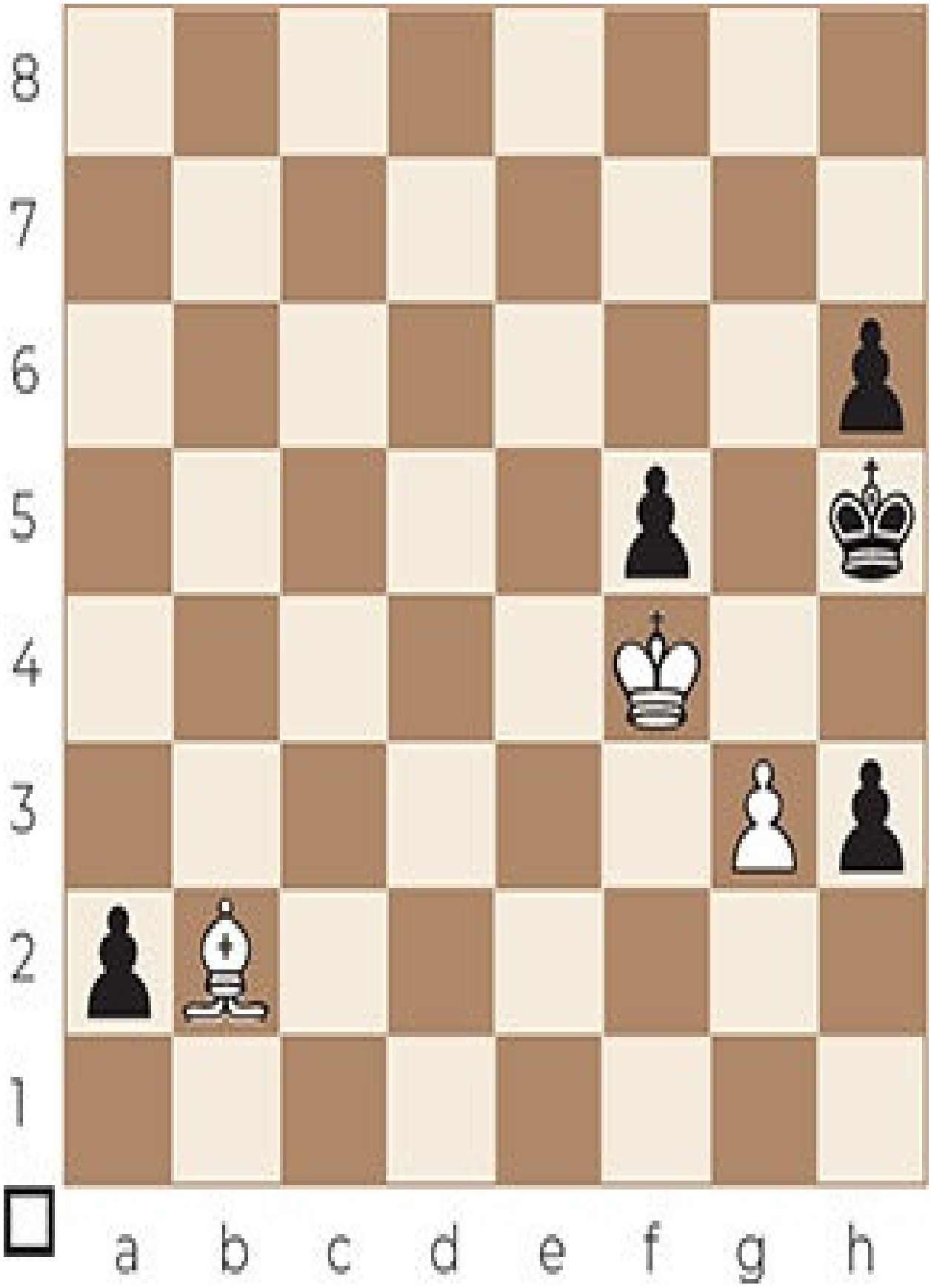
1.g4 ♖xb3 2.g5#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 175

Sallay – Honfi

1973


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

49.♔xf5 h2

49...a1♕ doesn’t help Black: 50.♗xa1 h2 (only move) 51.♗f6 h1♕ (only move) 52.g4#.

50.♗f6 h1♕ 51.g4#

Game 176

Westphal – Vogler

1992

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

43...♘f5 44.♗d3 f6#

Game 177

Chow – Hamilton

2002

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

37... ♗e7 38. ♖xd3 g4#

CHAPTER 19

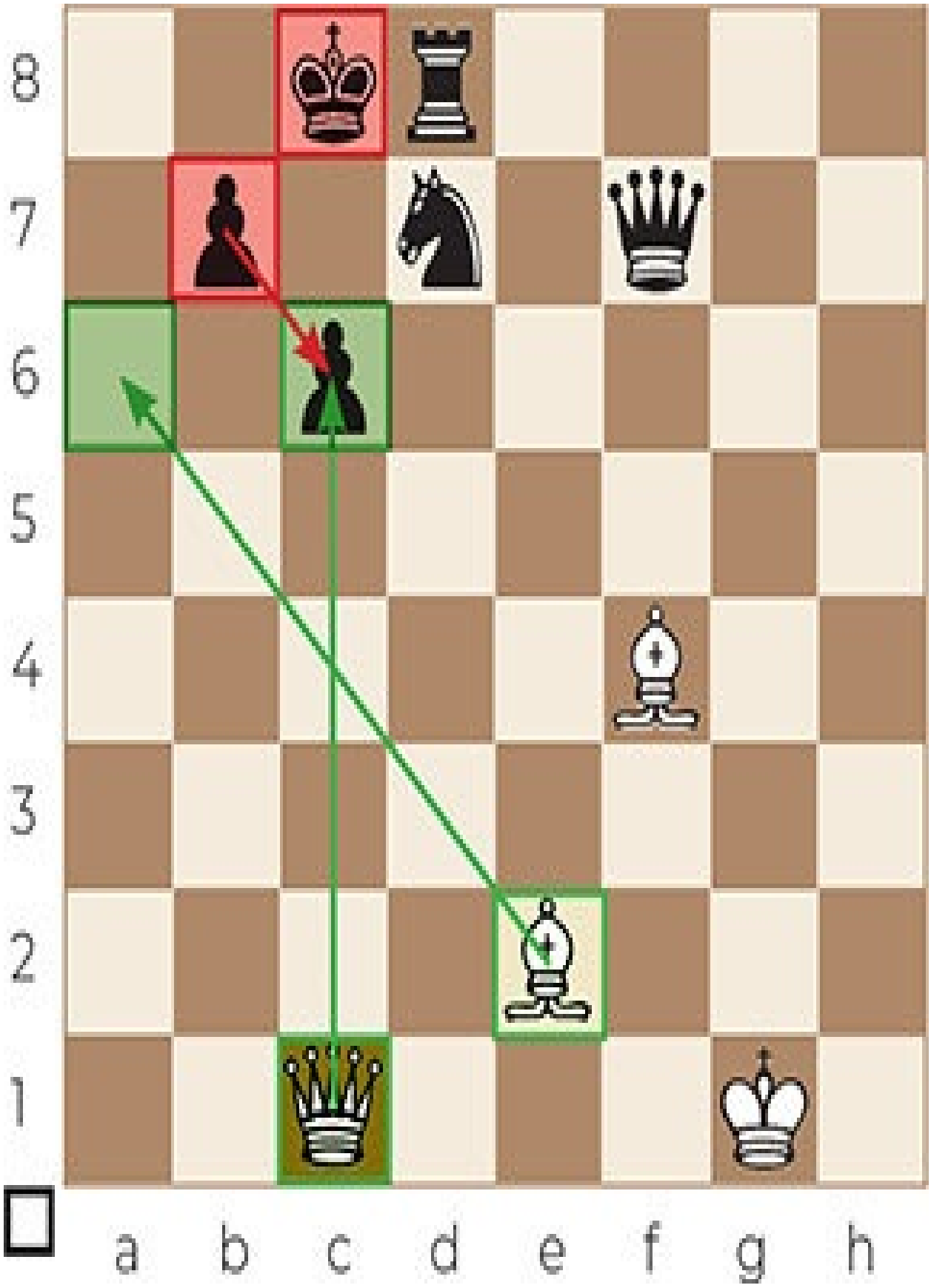
Boden’s mate

In Boden’s mate, two bishops along two intersecting diagonals deliver checkmate, with possible escape squares occupied by friendly pieces, or covered by e.g. a queen or rook of the opponent. In some cases, one of the bishops is replaced by a queen, who gives a diagonal check or controls squares diagonally.

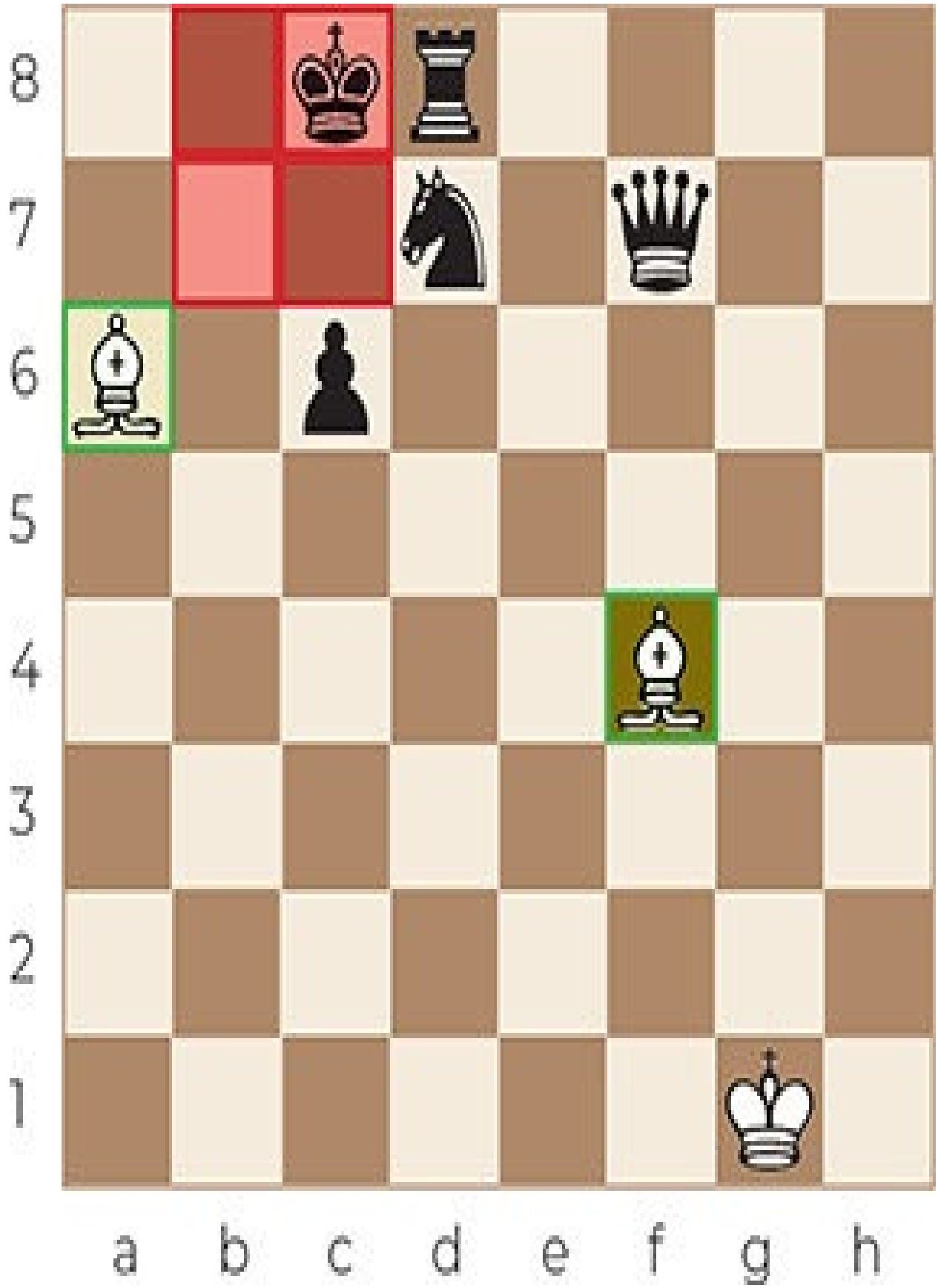
The mate has its name from the British chess player Samuel Boden (1826-1882). However, it had been known previously from the game Horwitz-Popert, Hamburg 1844.

Boden’s mate 1

Often, Boden’s mate occurs when the defender’s king has castled queenside. In those cases, the mate is almost always preceded by a queen or rook sacrifice that opens up the diagonal on which a bishop delivers checkmate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1. ♕xc6+ bxc6 2. ♗a6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 178

Lasker – Englund

1913

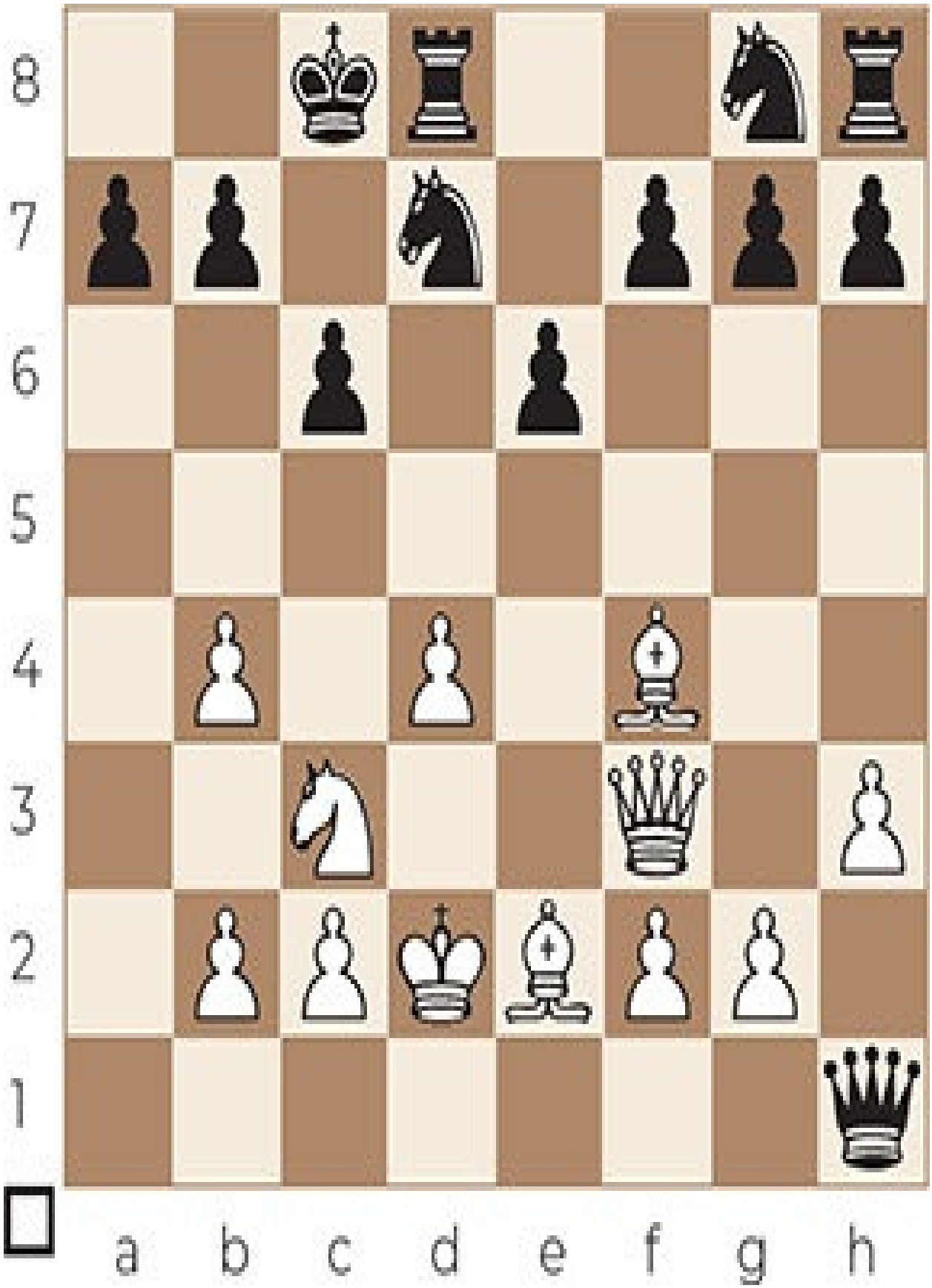
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

20.♕xc6+ bxc6 21.♗a6#

Game 179

Canal – NN

1934


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

13.♕xc6+ bxc6 14.♗a6#

Game 180

Schulder – Boden

1860

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

14...♕xc3+ 15.bxc3 ♗a3#

Game 181

Stroud – Fraser

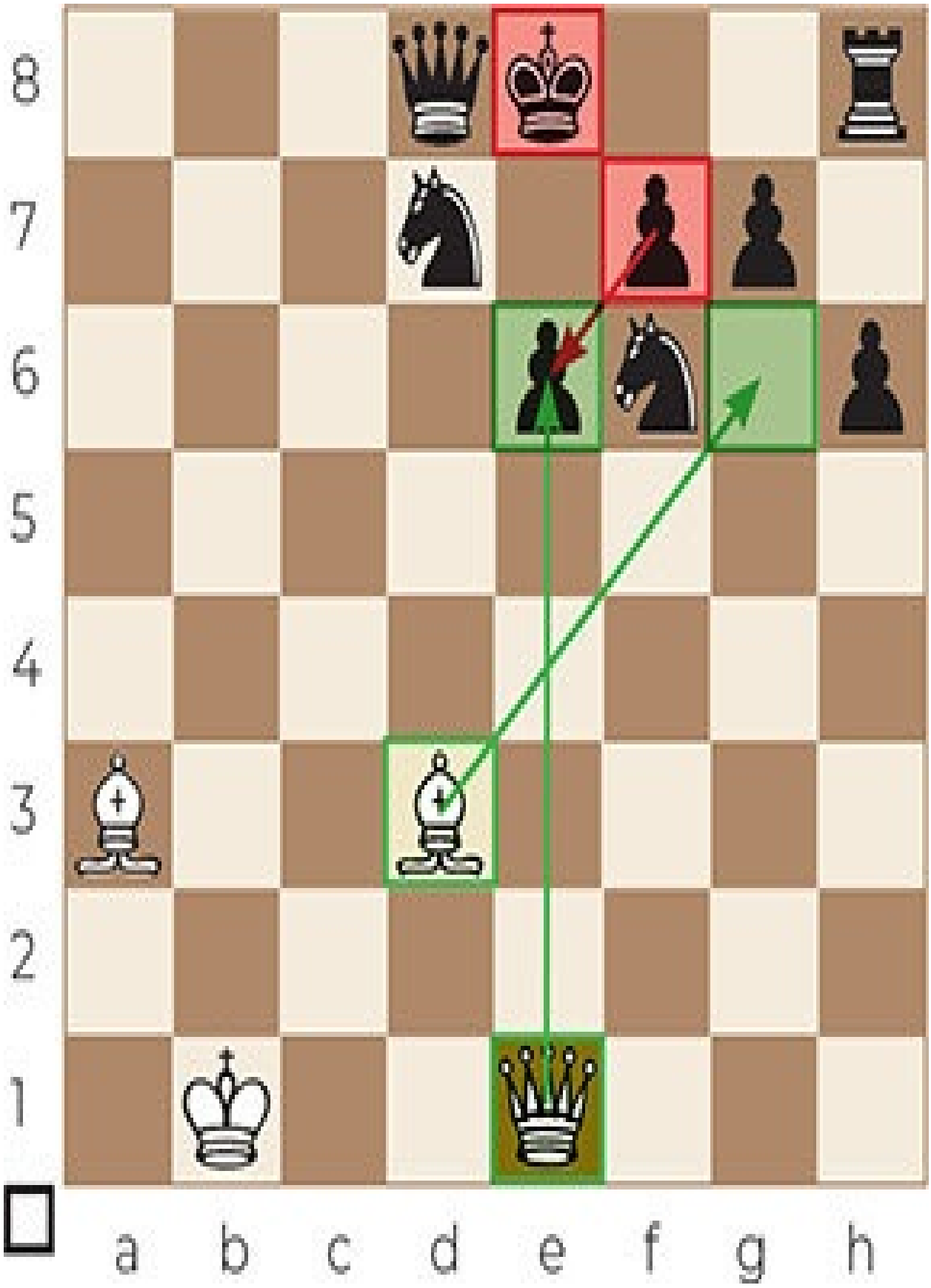
1961

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

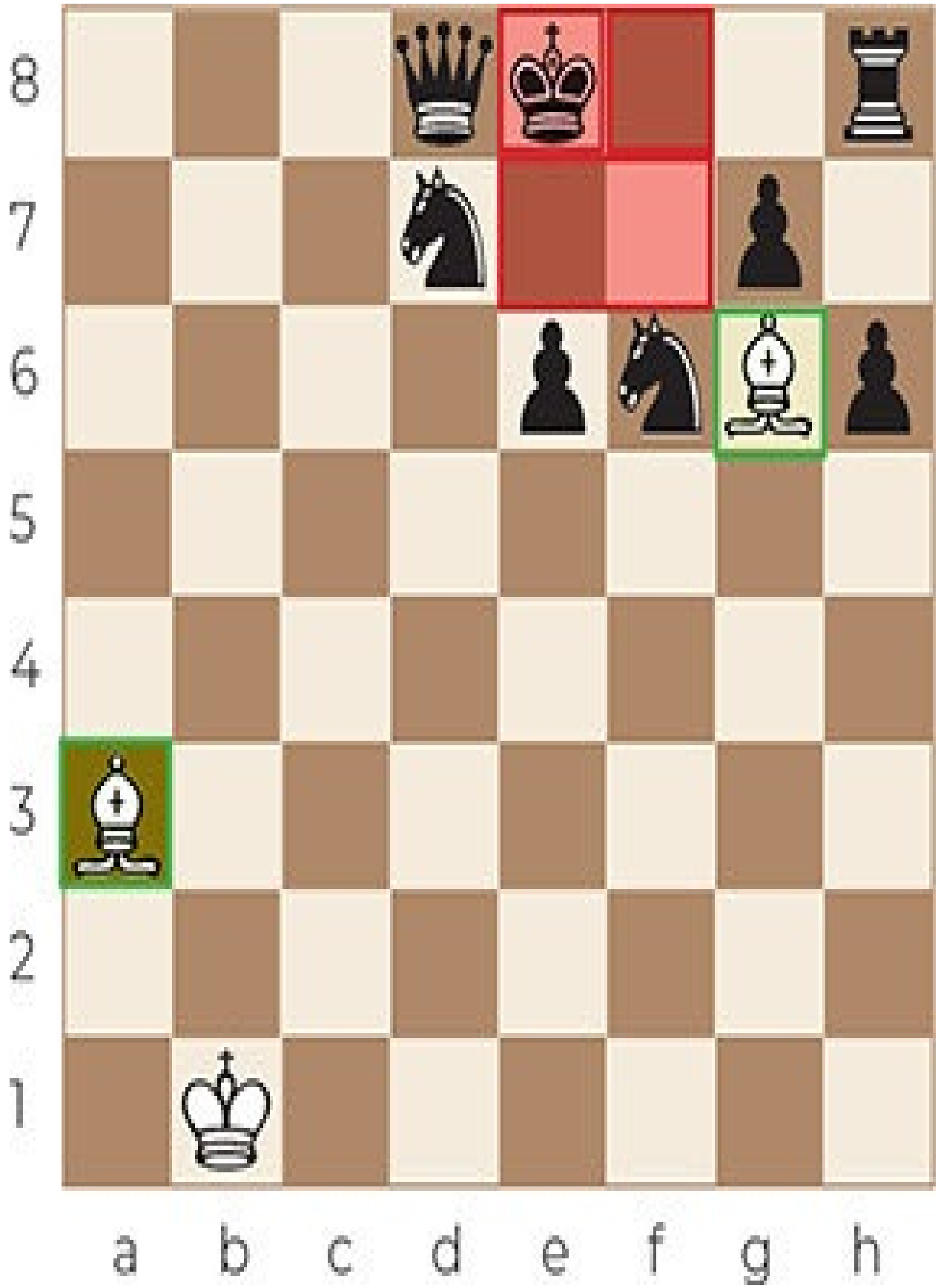
14...♕xc3+ 15.bxc3 ♗a3#

Boden’s mate 2

When the defender’s king hasn’t castled yet, Boden’s mate is often preceded by a queen or rook sacrifice that opens up the diagonal on which a bishop delivers checkmate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1. ♕xe6+ fxe6 2. ♗g6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 182

Alekhine – Vasic

1931

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

10.♕xe6+ fxe6

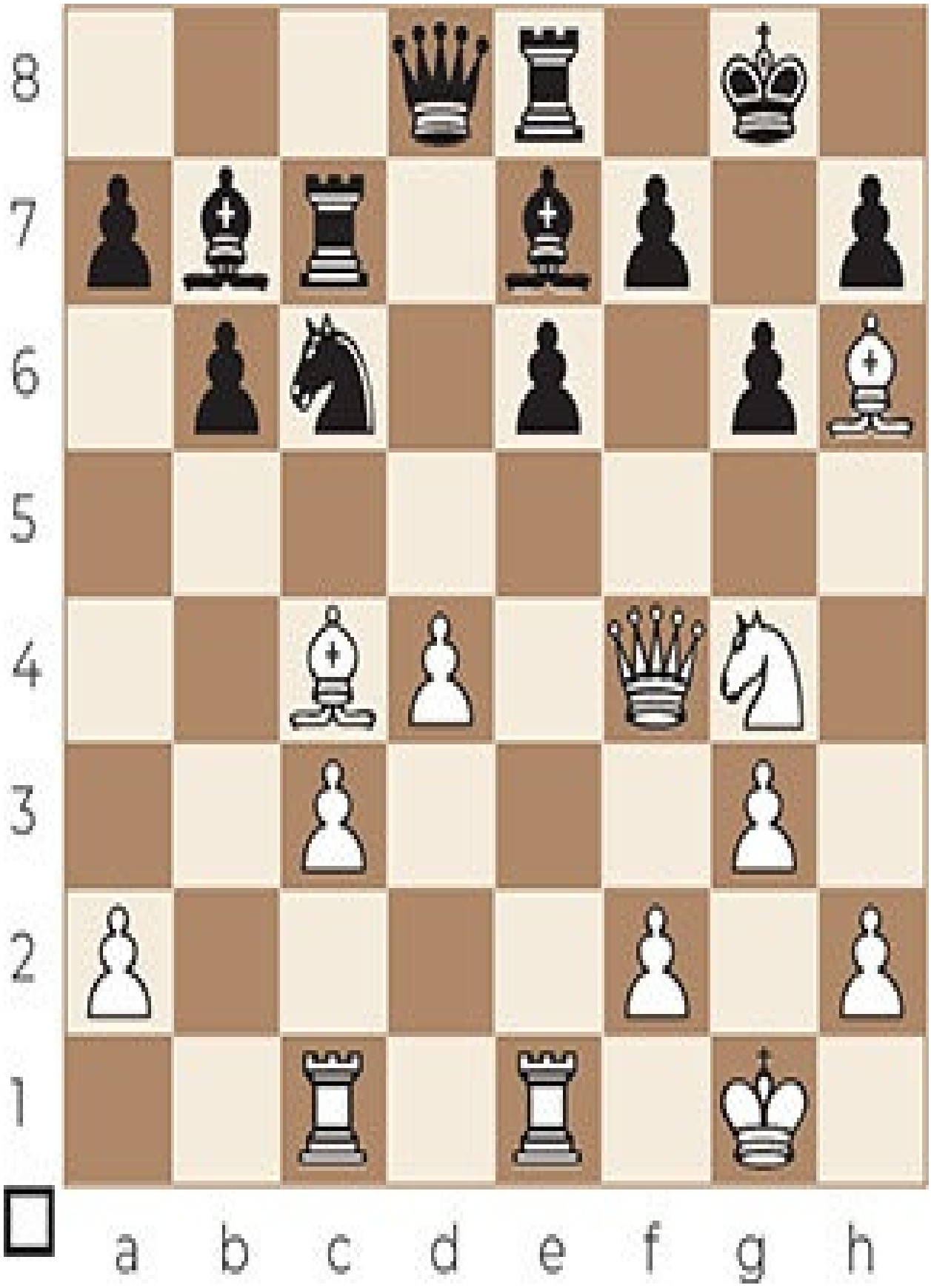
10...♕e7 11.♕xe7# (Damiano’s bishop mate).

11.♗g6#

Game 183

Bolbochan – Pachman

1956


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

22.♕xf7+ ♔xf7

22...♔h8 23.♕g7# (Damiano’s bishop mate).

23. ♗xe6#

Game 184

Tukmakov – Hulak

1999

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♕xe6+ ♗xe6 28.♗c6+ ♗d7 29.♗xd7#

Game 185

Ghitescu – Kavalek

1967

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28...♕xh3+ 29.♖xh3 ♗xh3#

CHAPTER 20

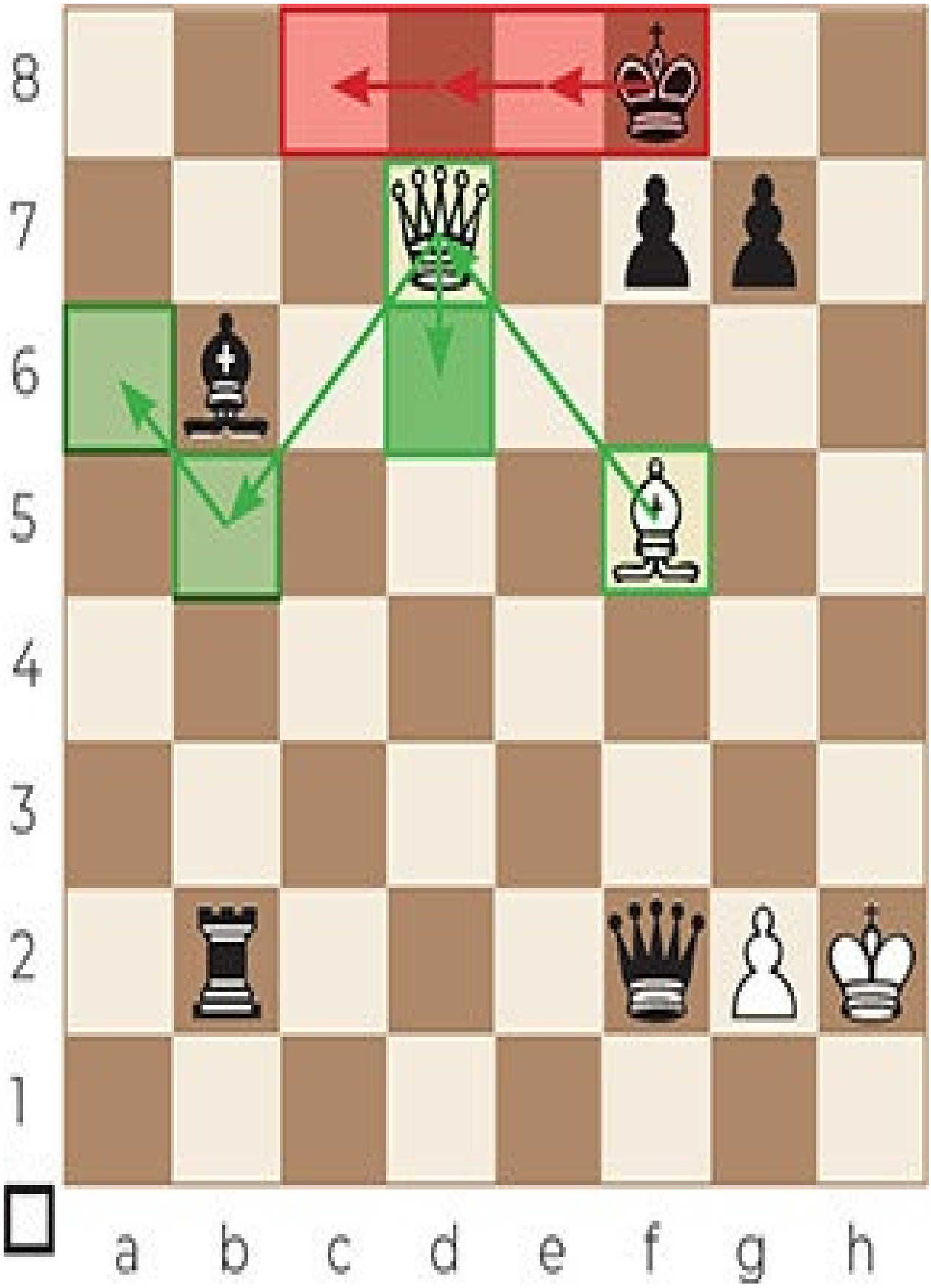
Balestra mate

In the Balestra mate, a bishop delivers checkmate while the queen is able to block (almost) all the escape squares, without the help of the opponent's pieces. The queen and bishop in the Balestra mate are always placed on squares with different colors, often with 2 squares in between.

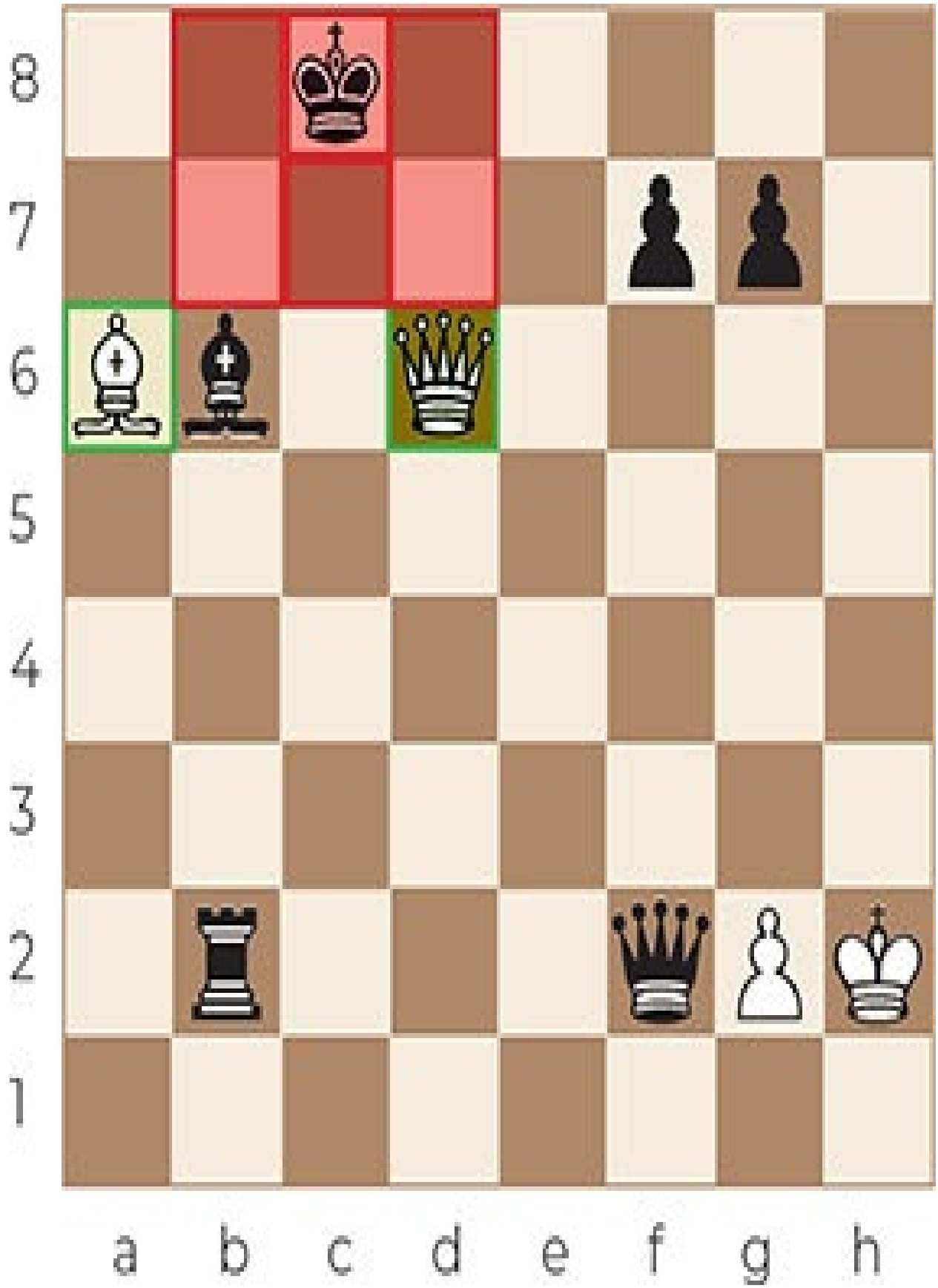
Sometimes, the lesser known Balestra mate is incorrectly referred to as 'Boden's mate', although there is indeed a difference between the two. It appears that the name Balestra mate was first used as a tag on www.chesstempo.com, in order to distinguish it from Boden's mate.

Balestra mate

Often, the Balestra mate is preceded by moves/checks with the queen to put the king in such a position that the bishop can give the final blow.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

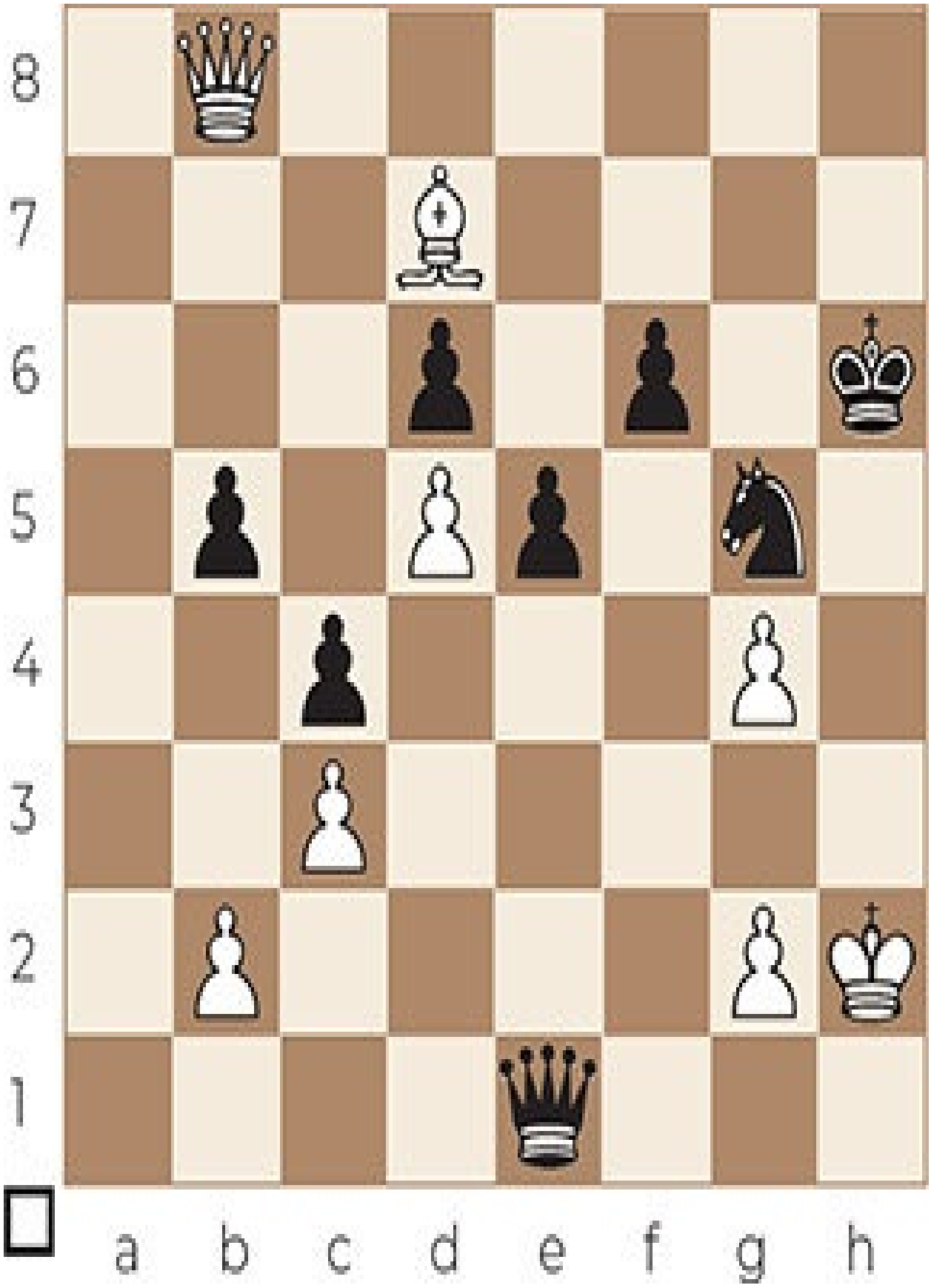
1. ♕d6+ ♔e8 2. ♗d7+ ♔d8 3. ♗b5+ ♔c8 4. ♗a6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 186

Wahlbom – Fridh

1972


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

55.♕f8+

The black queen cannot defend her king.

55...♔h7

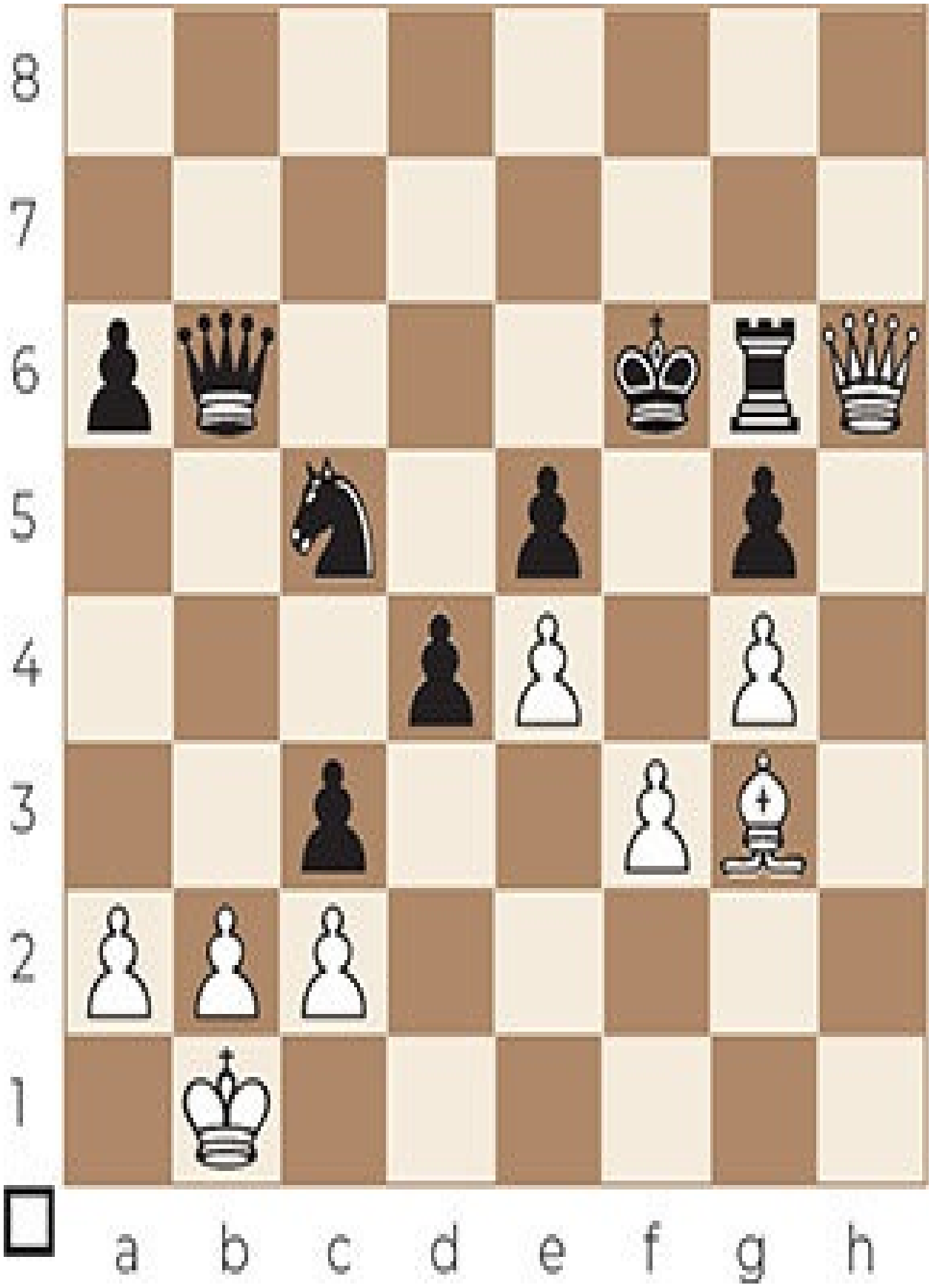
55...♔g6 56.♗f5#.

56.♗f5#

Game 187

Meneses – Diaz

1992


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

35.♕f8+ ♔e6 36.♕e8+ ♔d6/f6

37.♗xe5#

Game 188

Prakash – Prasad

2001

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

44...♕xh3+ 45.♔xg5 f6+

Cutting off the king’s escape.

46.exf6

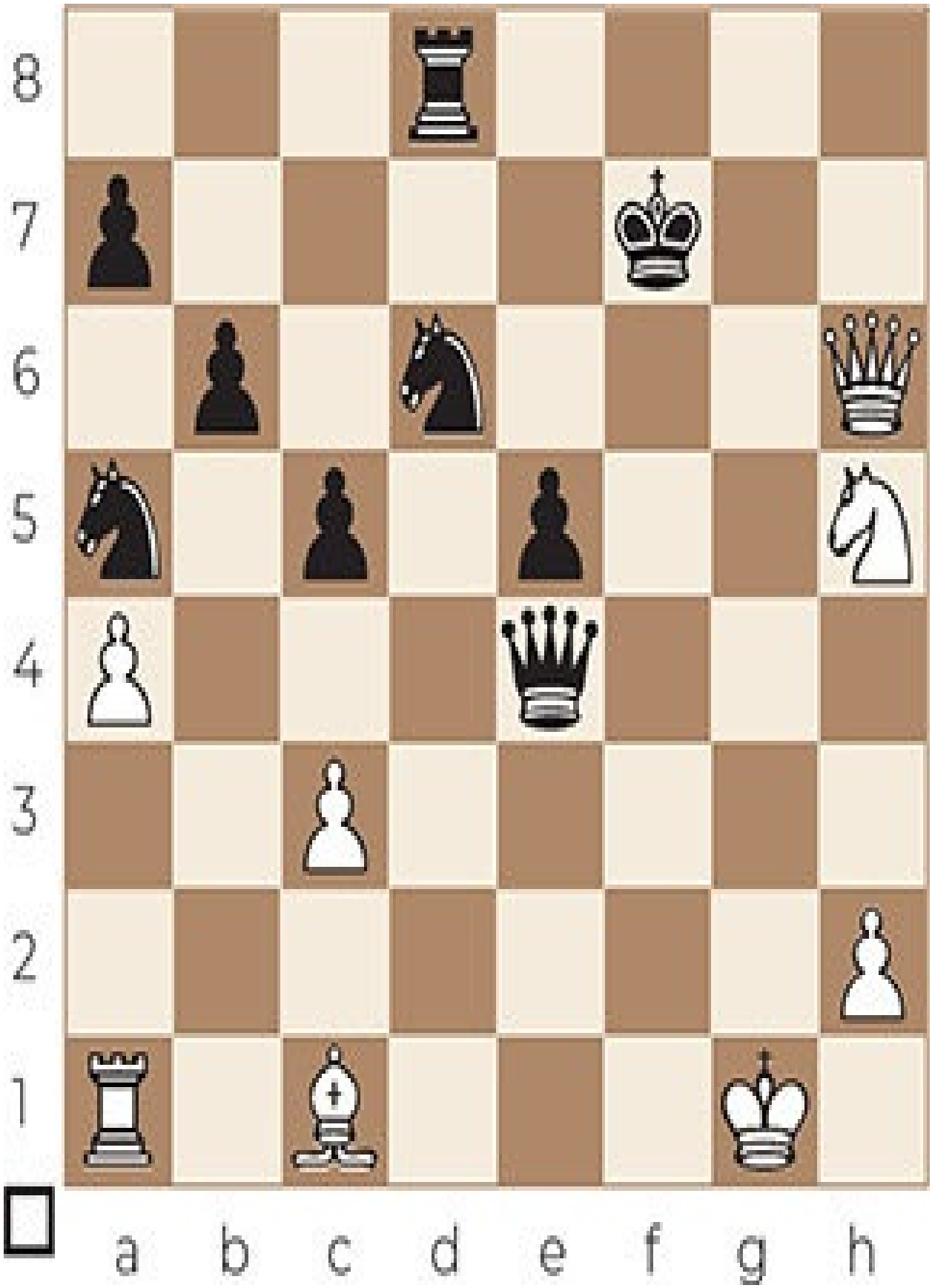
46.♔f4 will end with 46...♕h4#.

46... ♗h6#

Game 189

Karttunen – Heinimaki

1996


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

39.♕f6+ ♔e8

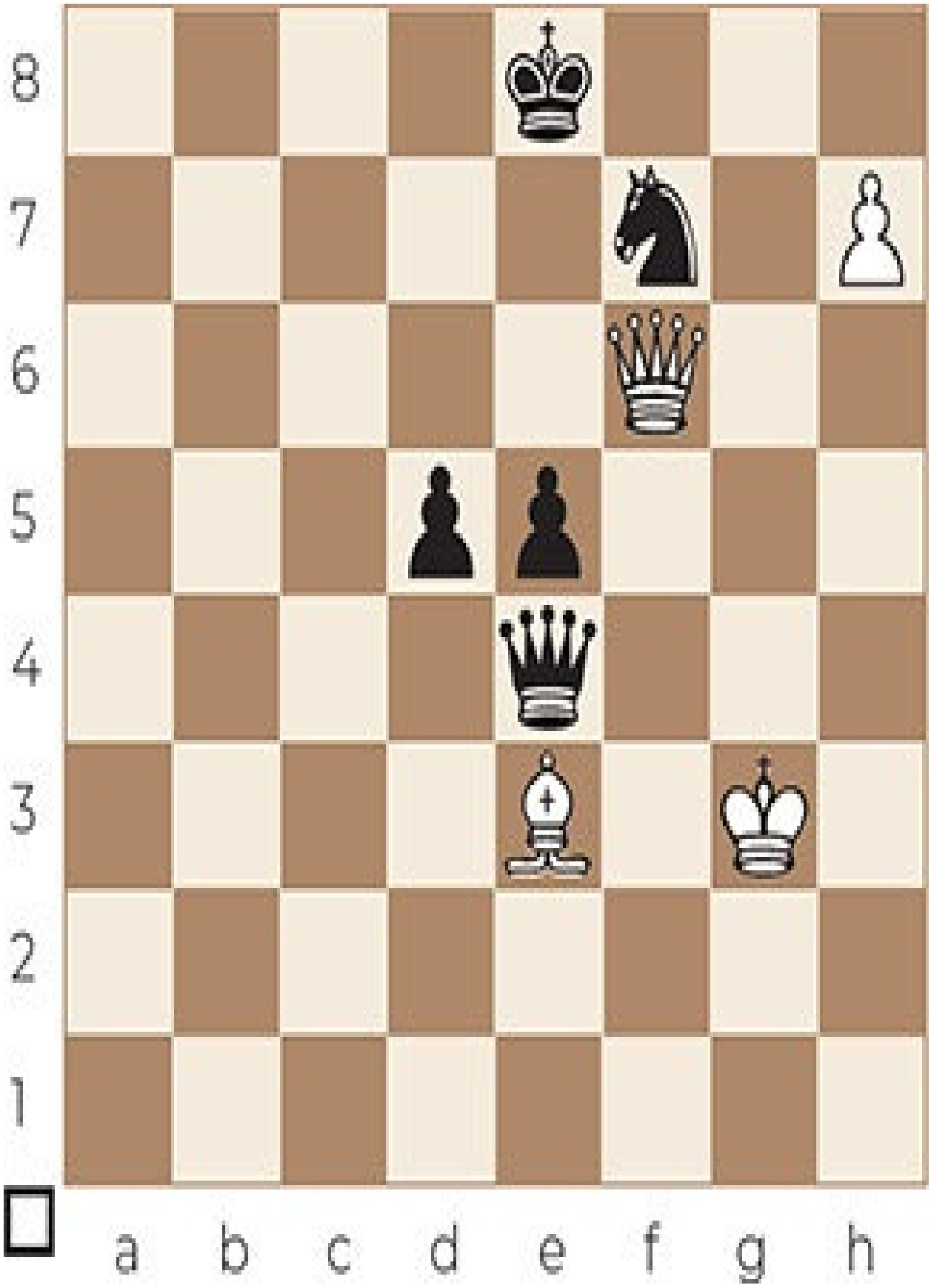
39...♔g8 40.♕g7#.

40.♕e6+ ♔f8 41.♗h6#

Game 190

Bujisho – Anic

2005


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

75.♕e6+ ♔f8

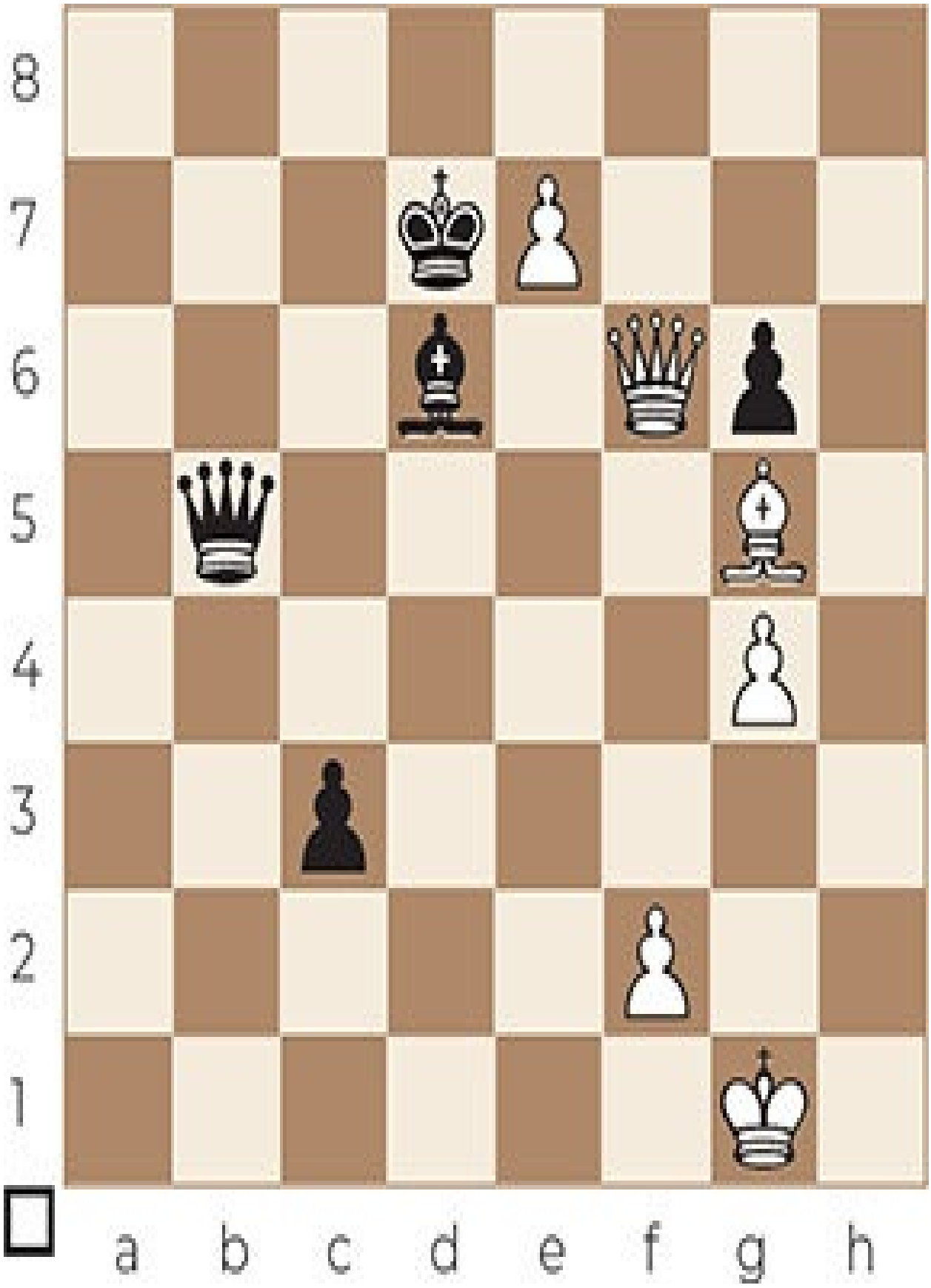
75...♔d8 is immediately punished by 76.♗b6# (Balestra mate).

76.h8♕+ ♘xh8 77.♗h6#

Game 191

Yanofsky – Reshevsky

1957


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

50.e8♕+

Black has no way to defend against mate:

50...♔xe8

Black could have survived one move longer with 50.....♔c7 51.♕fd8+ ♔b7 52.♕xb5+ ♔a7 53.♕da5# (Lawnmower mate).

51.♕e6+ ♔f8 52.♗h6#

Game 192

Stock – Chandler

2001

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

37...♖xb2+

Destroying the pawn chain.

38.♔xb2

38.♔c1 isn’t good either, because of 38...♕xc3+ 39.♔d1 ♕d2#.

38...♕b3+ 39.♔c1 ♗f4#

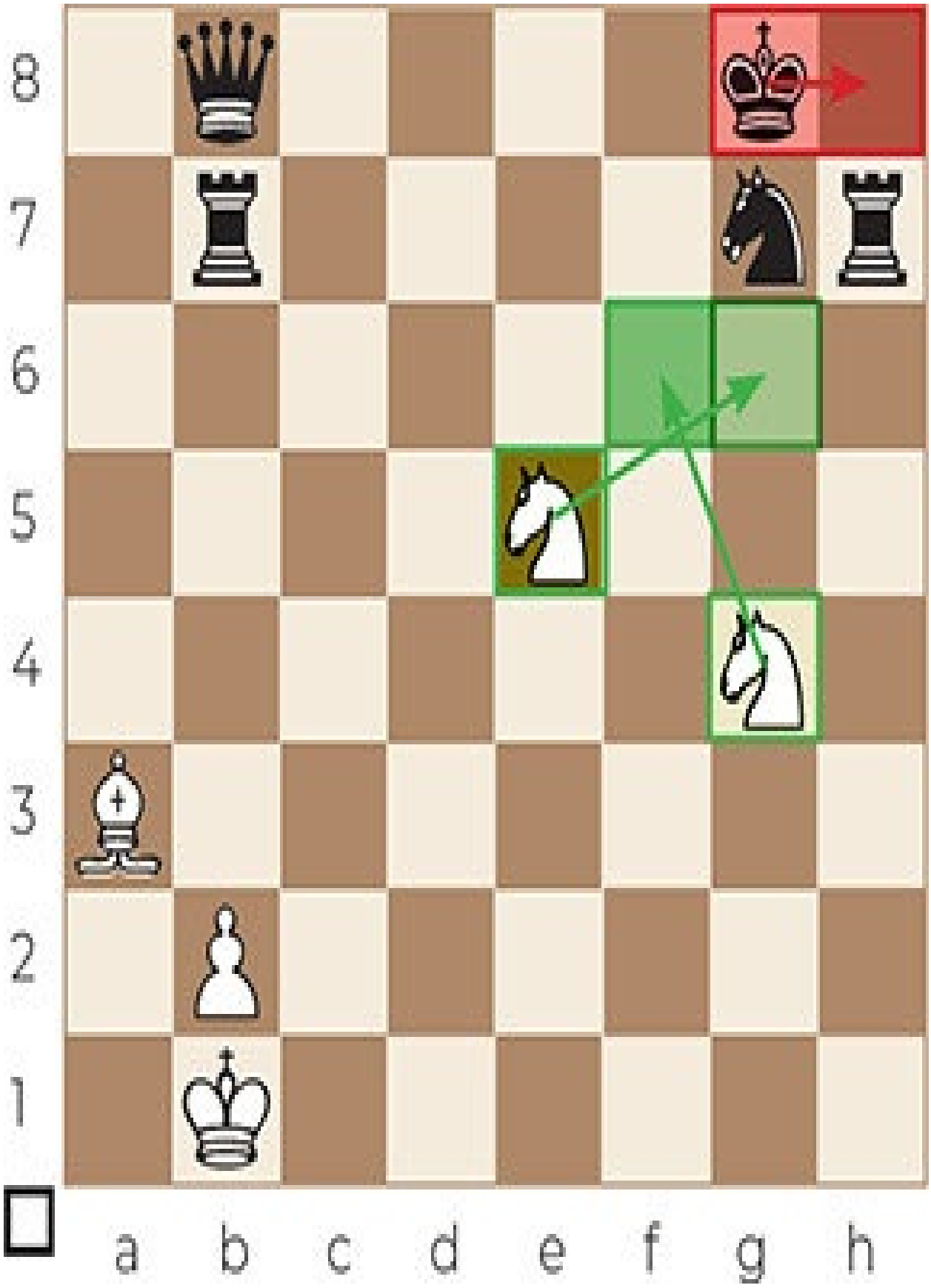
CHAPTER 21

Double knights mate

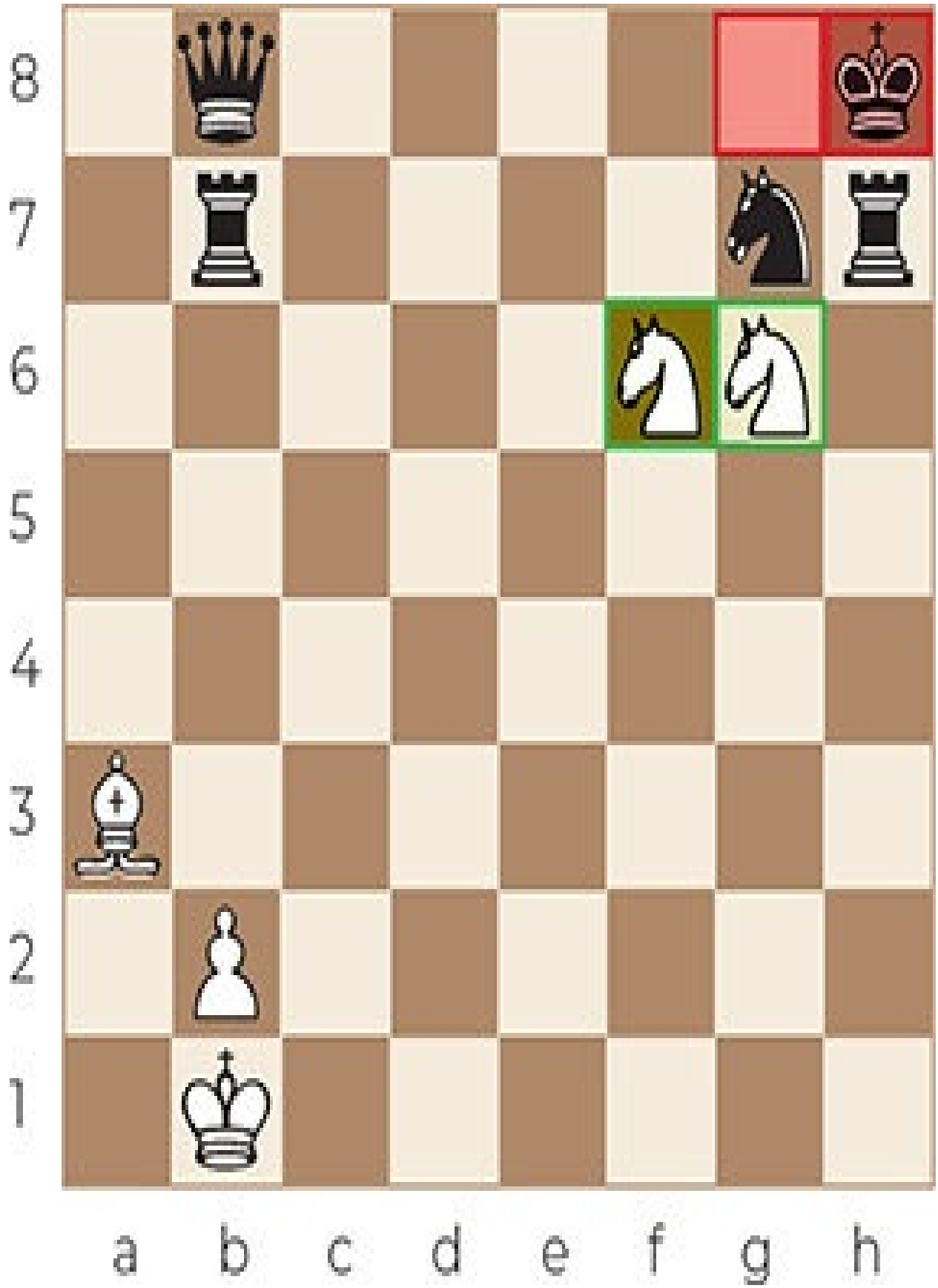
In the Double knights mate, two knights work together to checkmate the king, usually near the corner of the board. The two knights are almost always placed on squares with different colors: next to each other, or protecting each other. This way, they cover the largest number of squares.

Double knights mate 1

Sometimes, a Double knights mate is preceded by one or more knight checks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

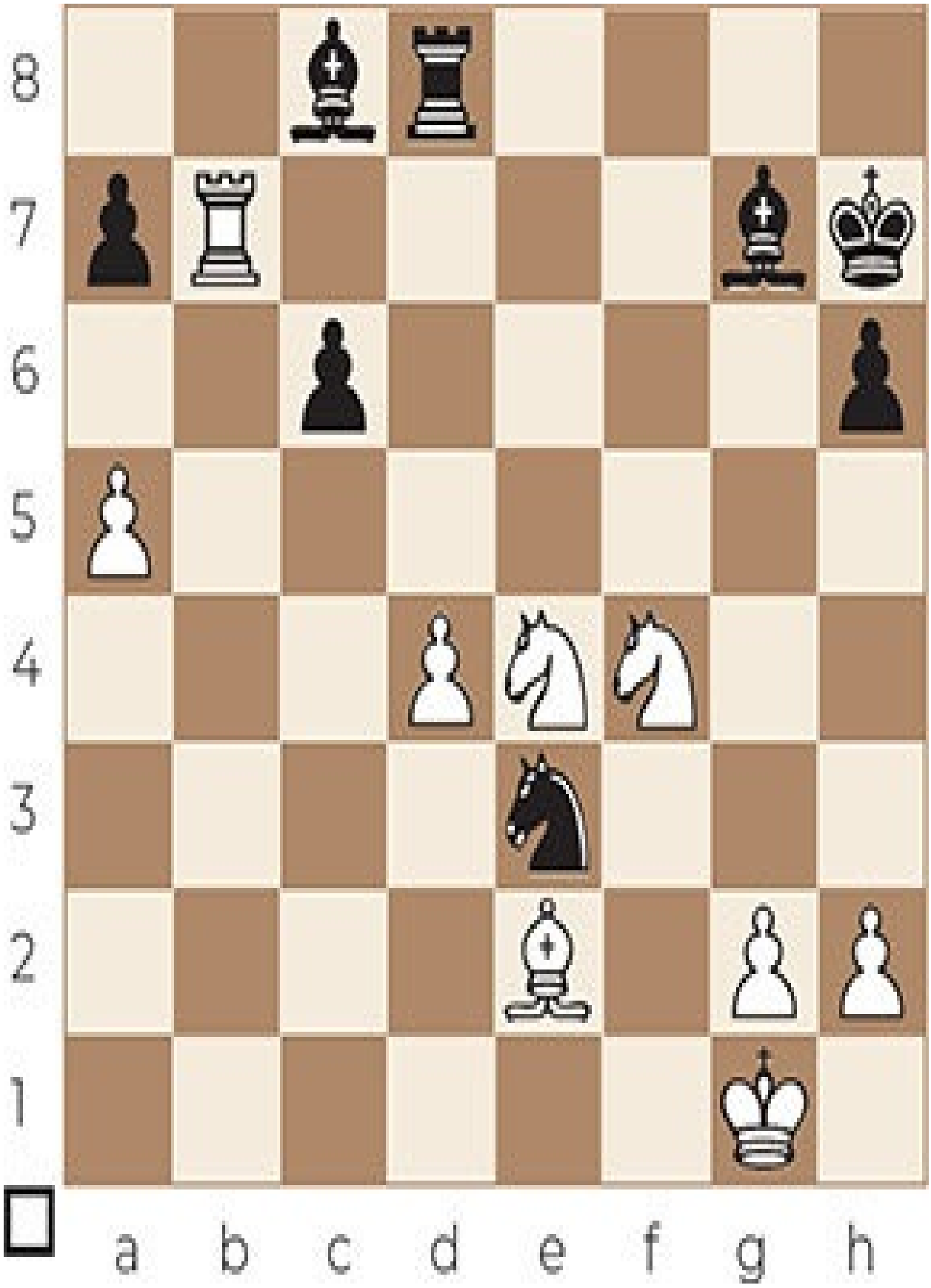
1.♘f6+ ♔h8 2.♘g6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 193

Ionov – Yevseev

2005

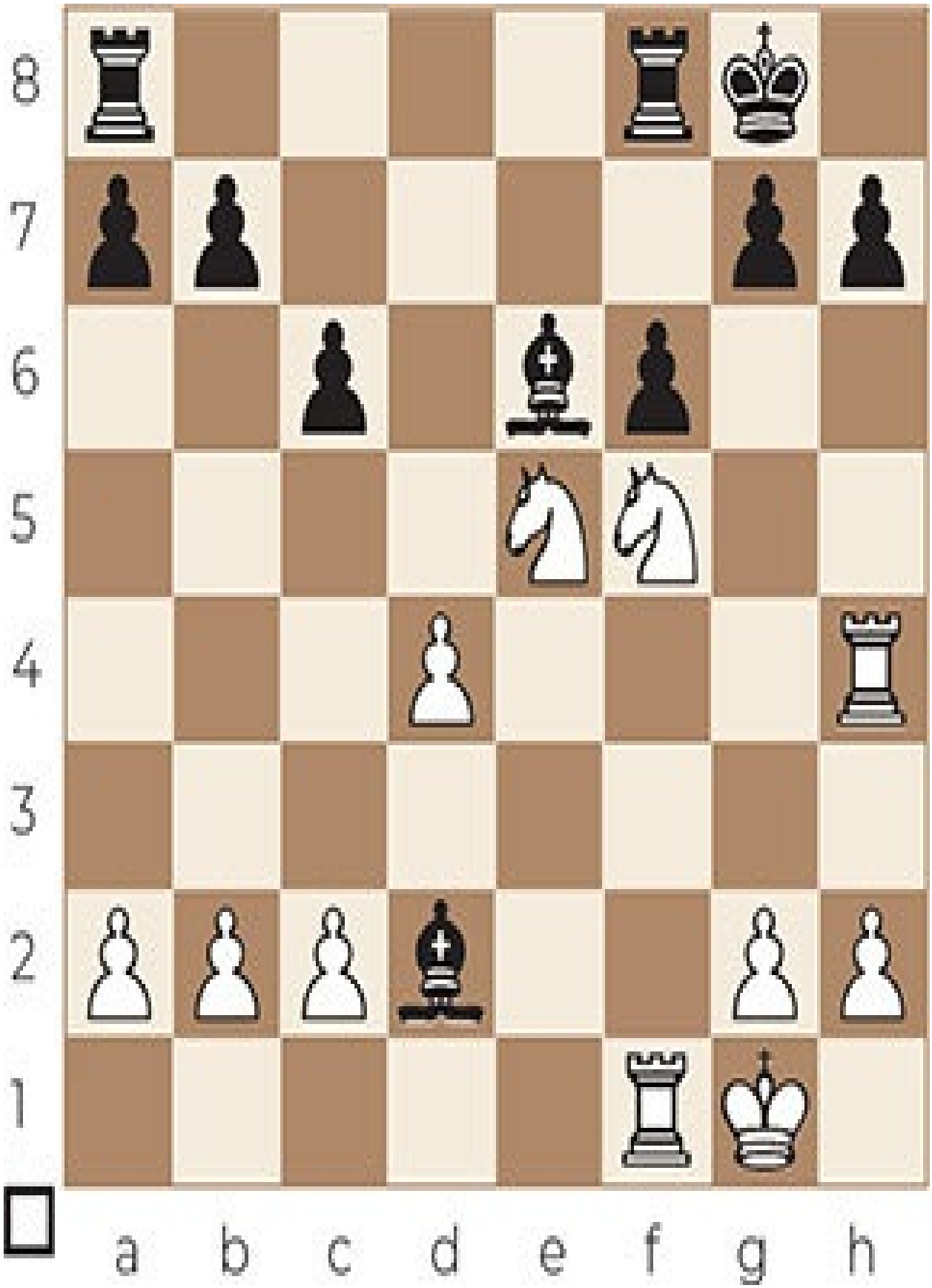

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

30.♘f6+ ♔h8 31.♘g6#

Game 194

Nilsson – Andersson

2002


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

20.♘e7+ ♔h8 21.♘5g6#

Game 195

Vukic – Mednis

1976

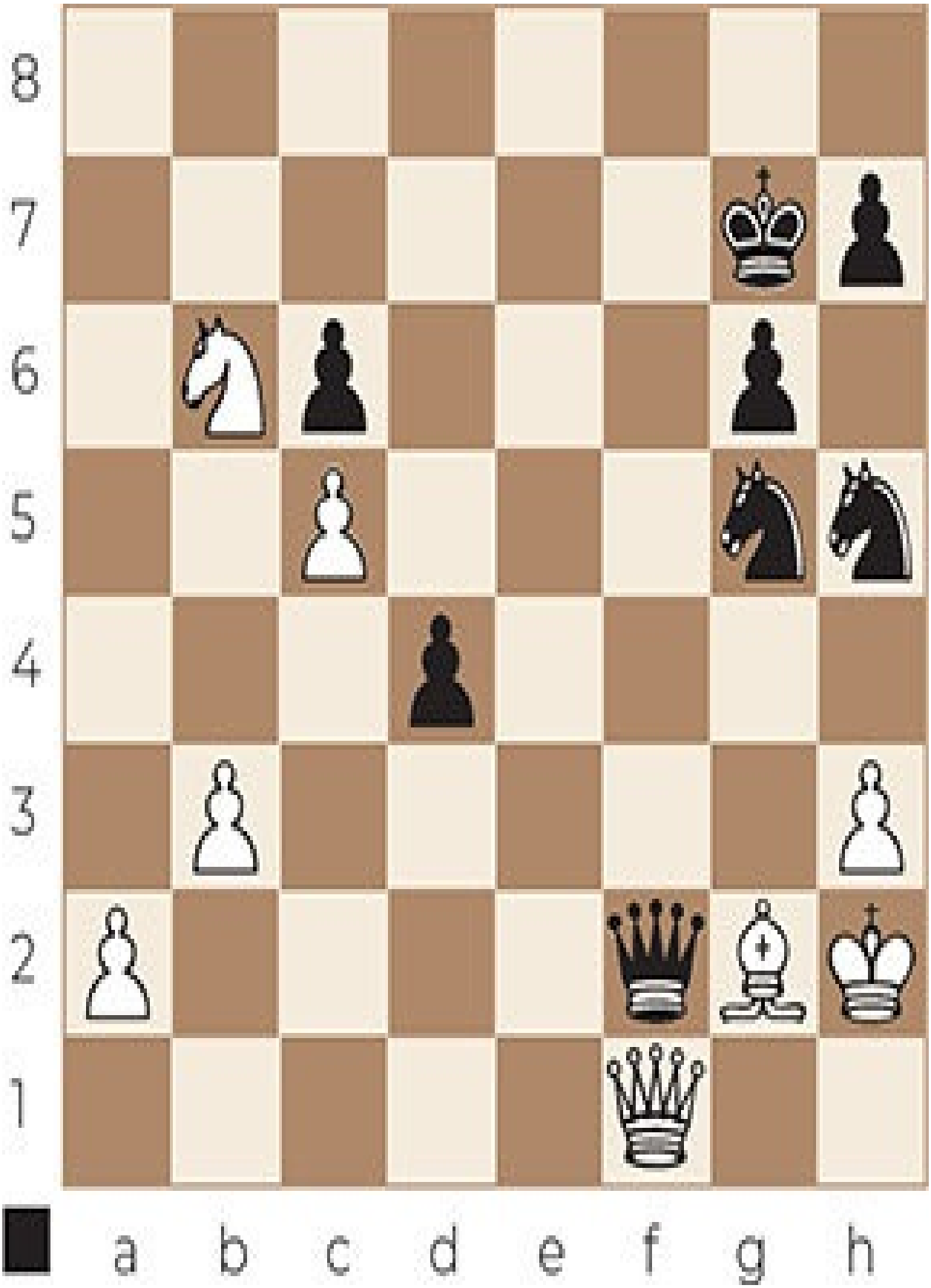
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

40.♖d8+ ♔f7 41.♘d6+ ♔g6 42.♘e7+ ♔h6 43.♘f7#

Game 196

Mortensen – Agdestein

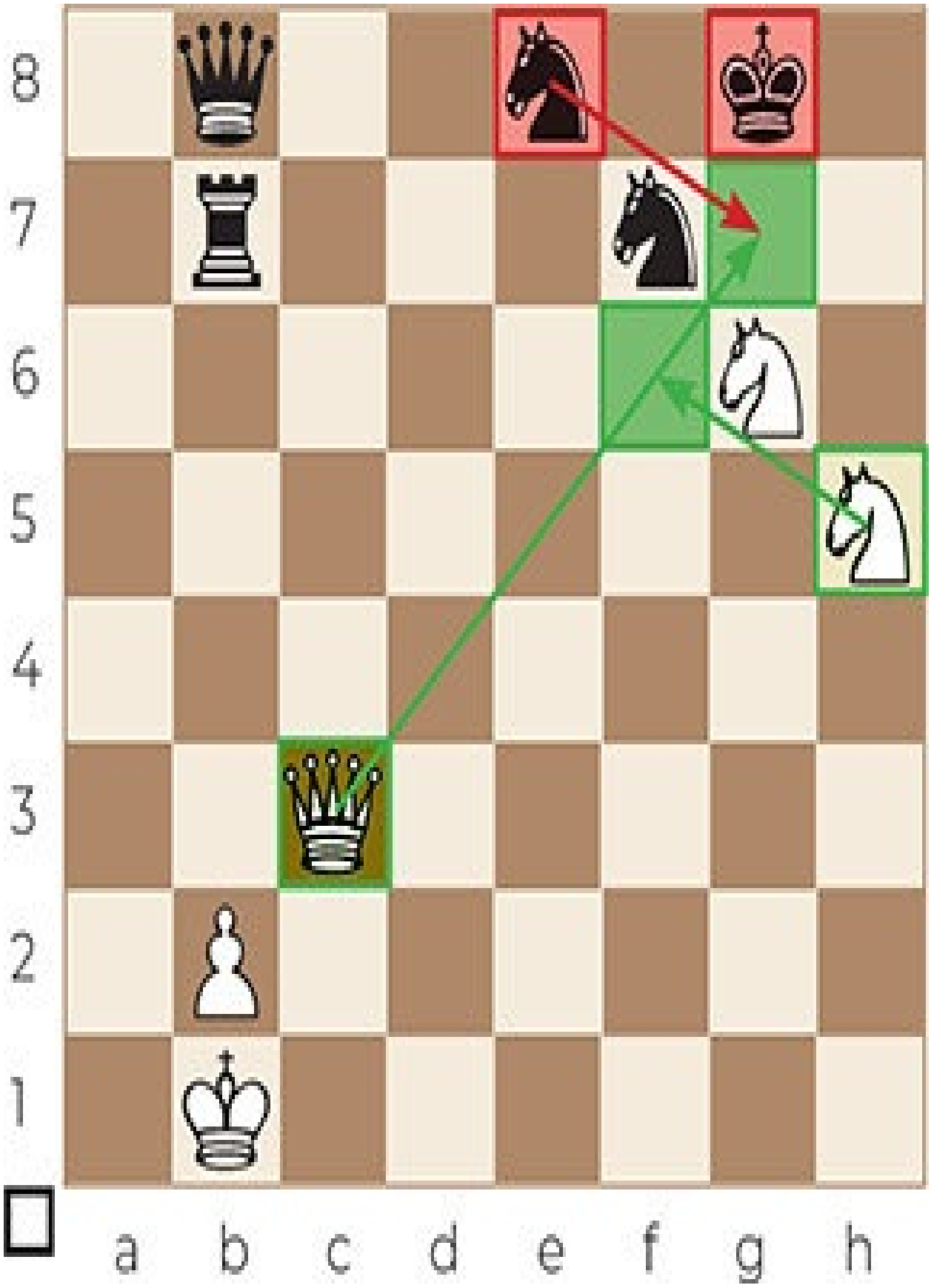
1995


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

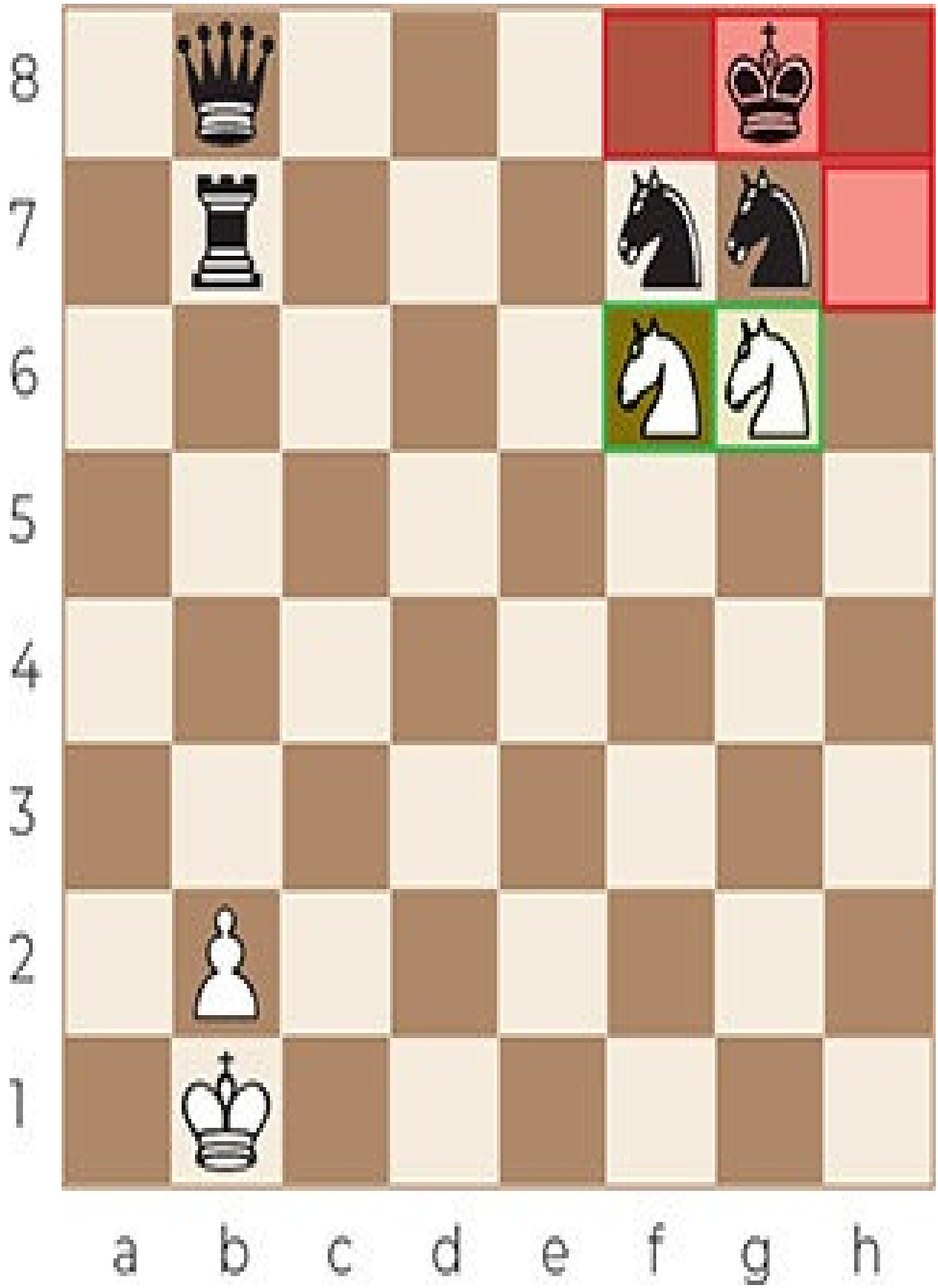
37...♘f3+ 38.♔h1 ♘g3#

Double knights mate 2

Sometimes, a Double knights mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice to lure a piece or even the king itself to a certain square.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕g7+ ♘xg7 2.♘f6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 197

Schelle – Hoy

2000

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♕xg6+ ♔h8

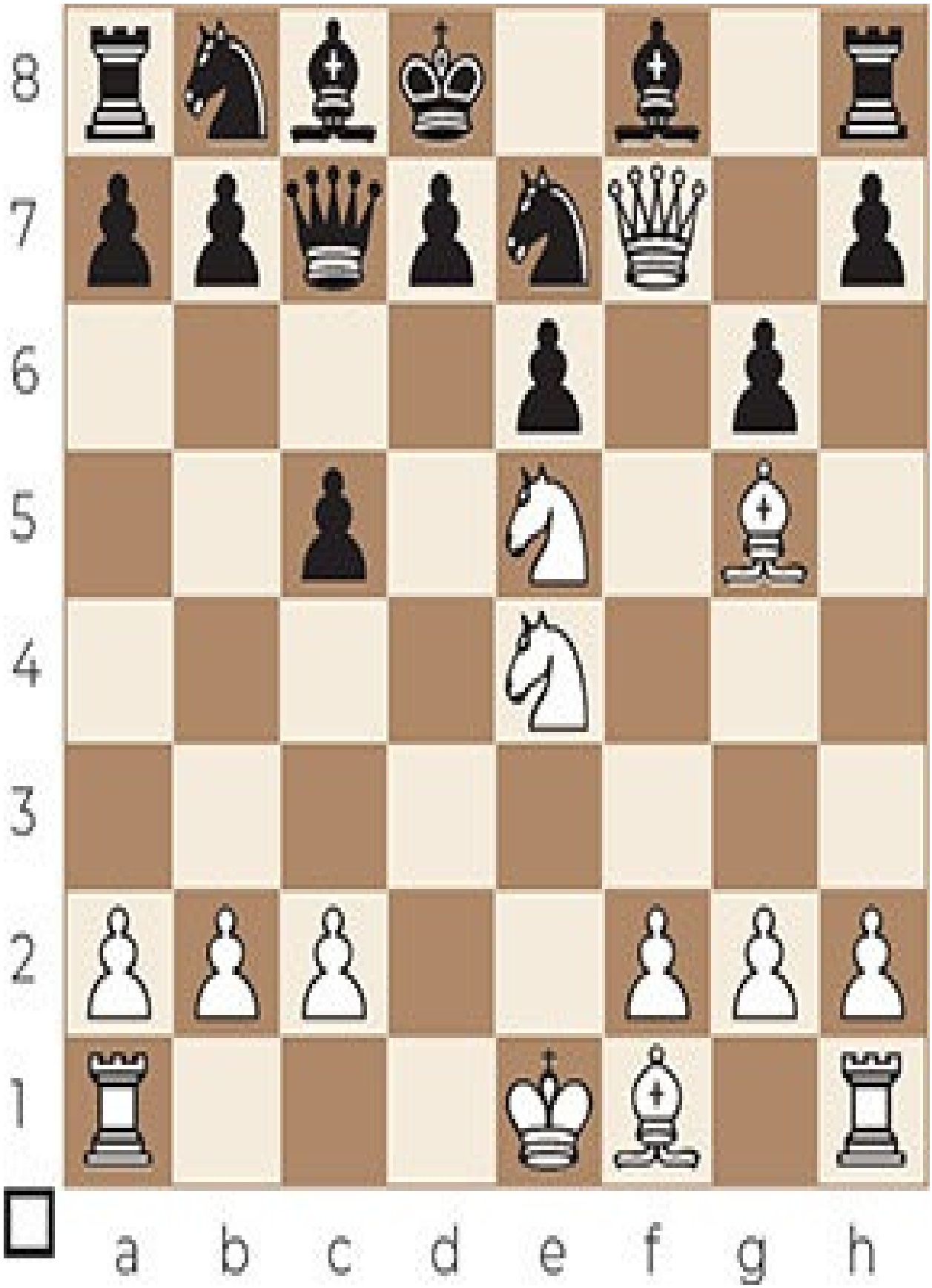
27...♔g8 28.♕h7+ ♔xh7 29.♘f6+ (double check) 29...♔h8 30.♘g6# (Double knights mate), and if 27...♔g8 28.♕h7+ ♔f8 29.♘g6#.

28.♕h7+ ♔xh7 29.♘f6+ ♔h8 30.♘g6#

Game 198

Saalbach – Pollmächer

1861


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

11.♕e8+ ♔xe8 12.♘f6+ ♔d8 13.♘f7#

Game 199

Capon – Taylor

1873

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

16...♔d7

16...♔e7? allows counterplay with 17.♕f6+! ♔xf6 18.♗b2+ ♔e7 19.♗xe4.

17.♕g7

17.♖xf2 ♘xf2# (Double knights mate).

17...♕g1+ 18.♖xg1 ♘f2#

Game 200

Ziatdinov – Gurevich

1995

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26...♘b3+ 27.♔b1 ♕c1+ 28.♖xc1 ♘cd2#

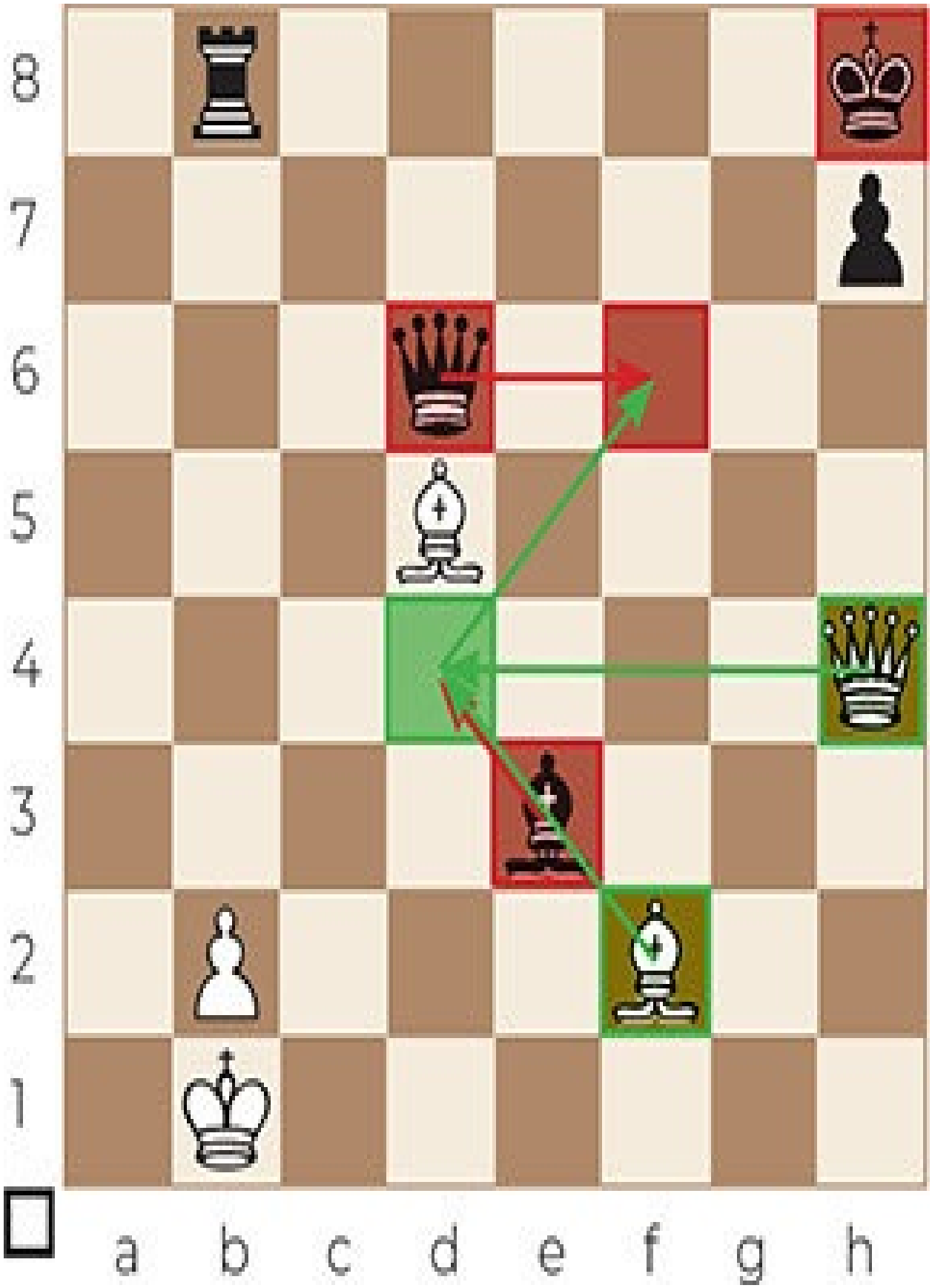
CHAPTER 22

Double bishops mate

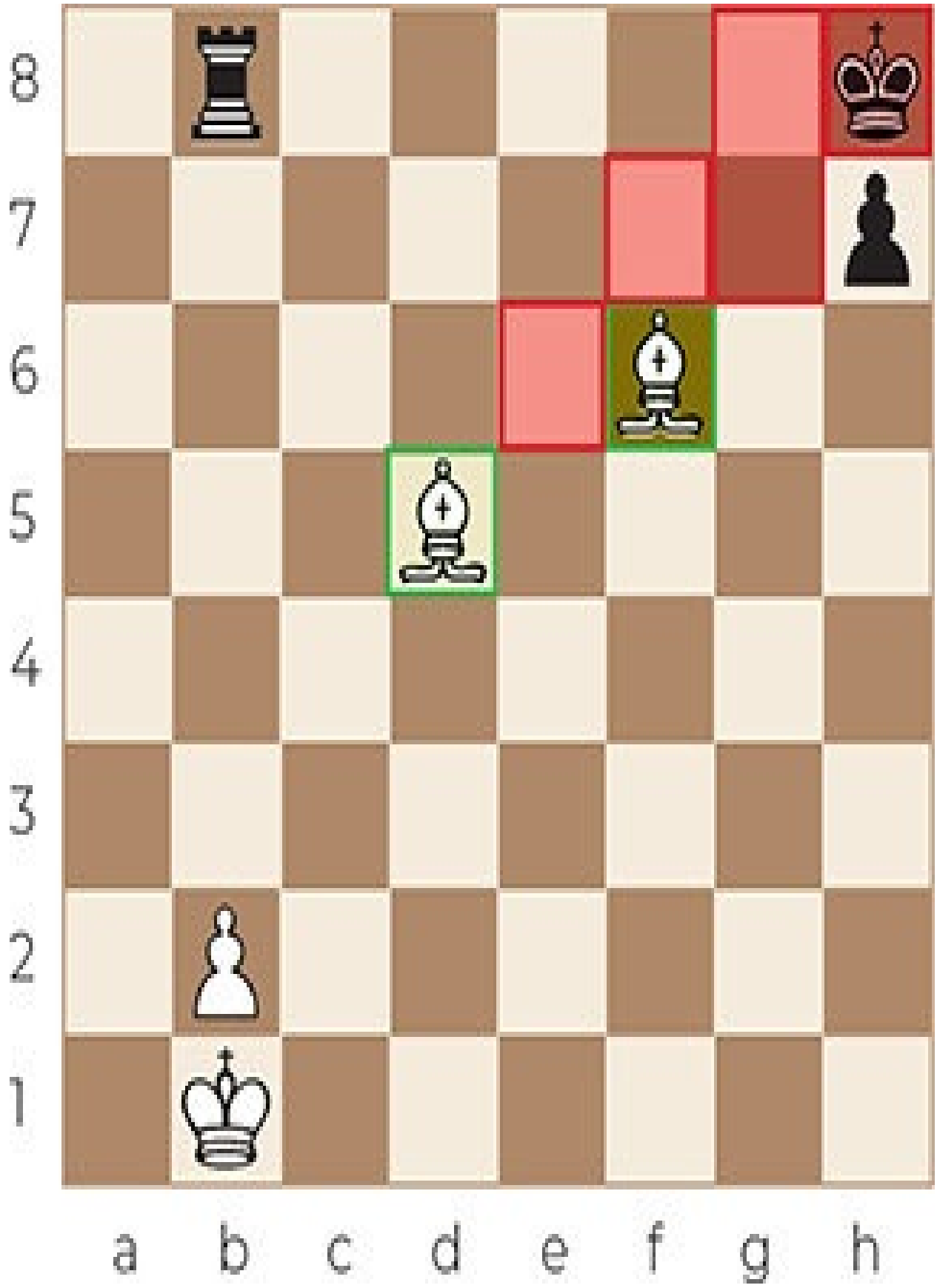
In the Double bishops mate, two bishops deliver checkmate to the king (usually on the edge of the board) by controlling two adjacent diagonals. One or more escape squares are blocked by the opponent's own pieces.

Double bishops mate 1

Sometimes, the Double bishops mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice to lure the opponent's bishop/queen onto another square along the same diagonal of his own bishop.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1. ♕d4+ ♗xd4 2. ♗xd4+ ♕f6 3. ♗xf6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 201

Khmelnitsky – Alburt

1996

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

24. ♗g7+ ♔g8 25. ♕d5+ ♗xd5 26. ♗xd5+ ♖e6 27. ♗xe6#

Game 202

Kahn – Hartlaub

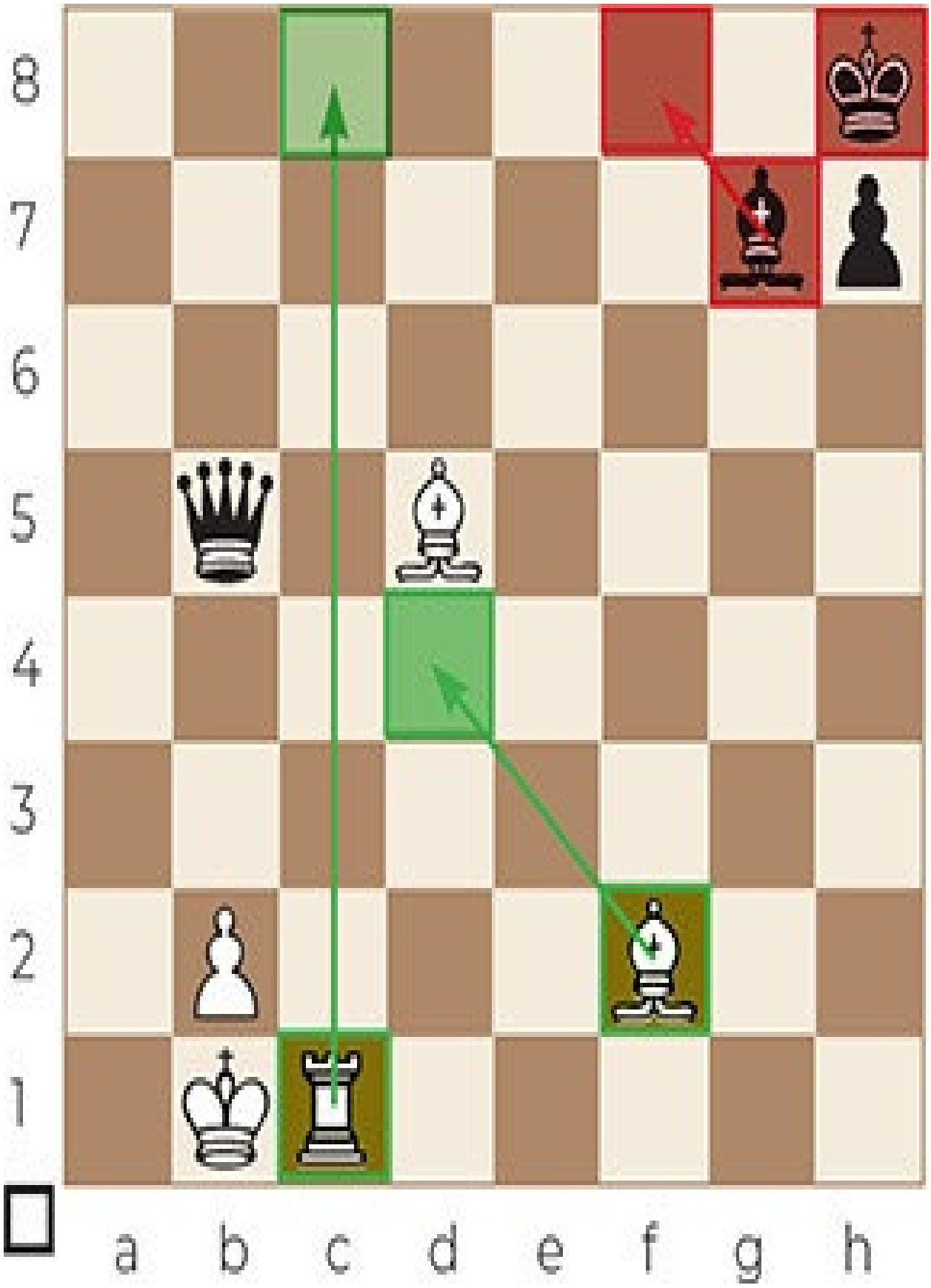
1916

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

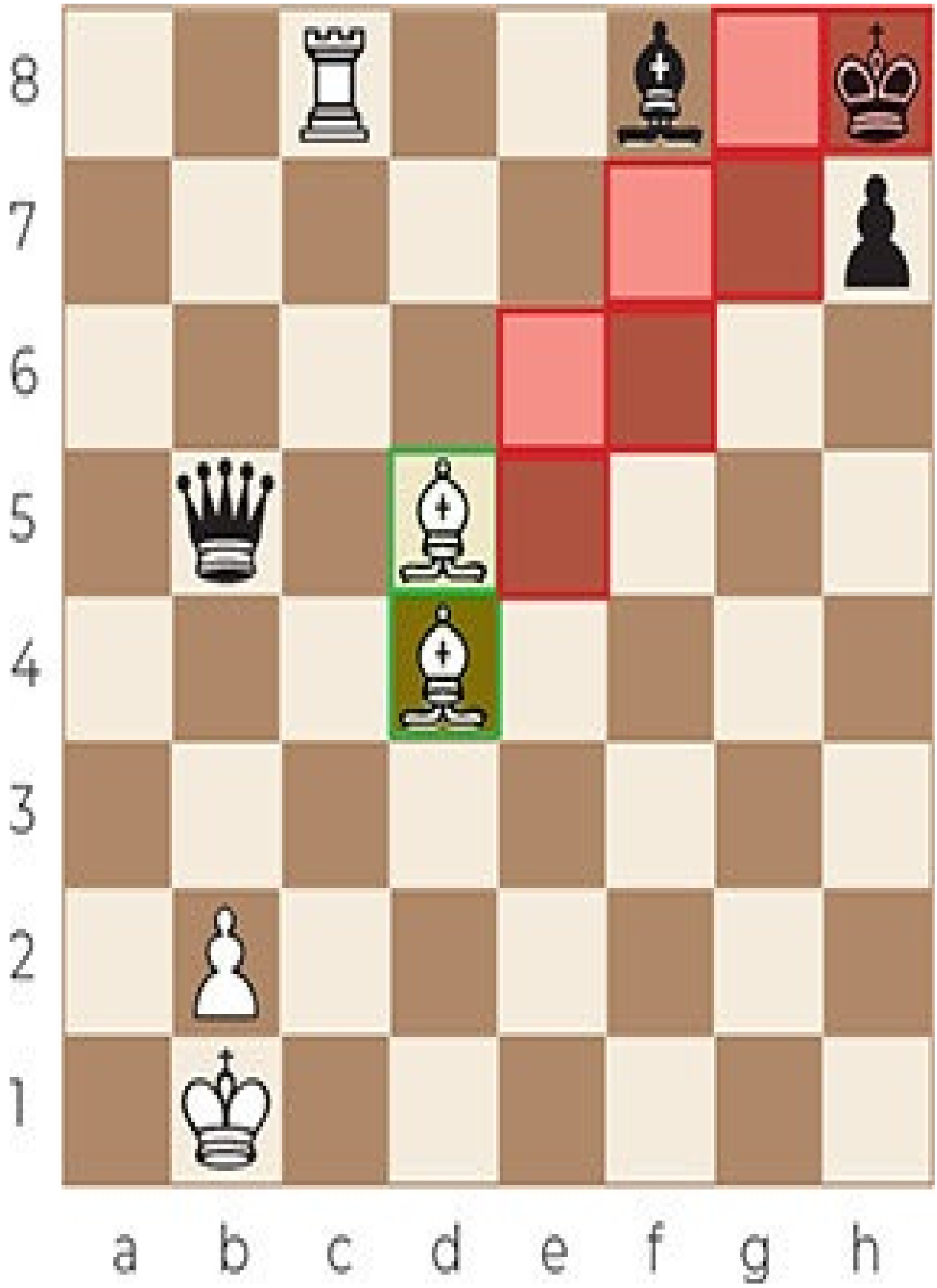
15...♕xf3+ 16.♗xf3 ♗xf3#

Double bishops mate 2

Sometimes, the Double bishops mate is preceded by a check to lure the opponent’s bishop/queen away from the diagonal on which his own bishop will deliver checkmate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

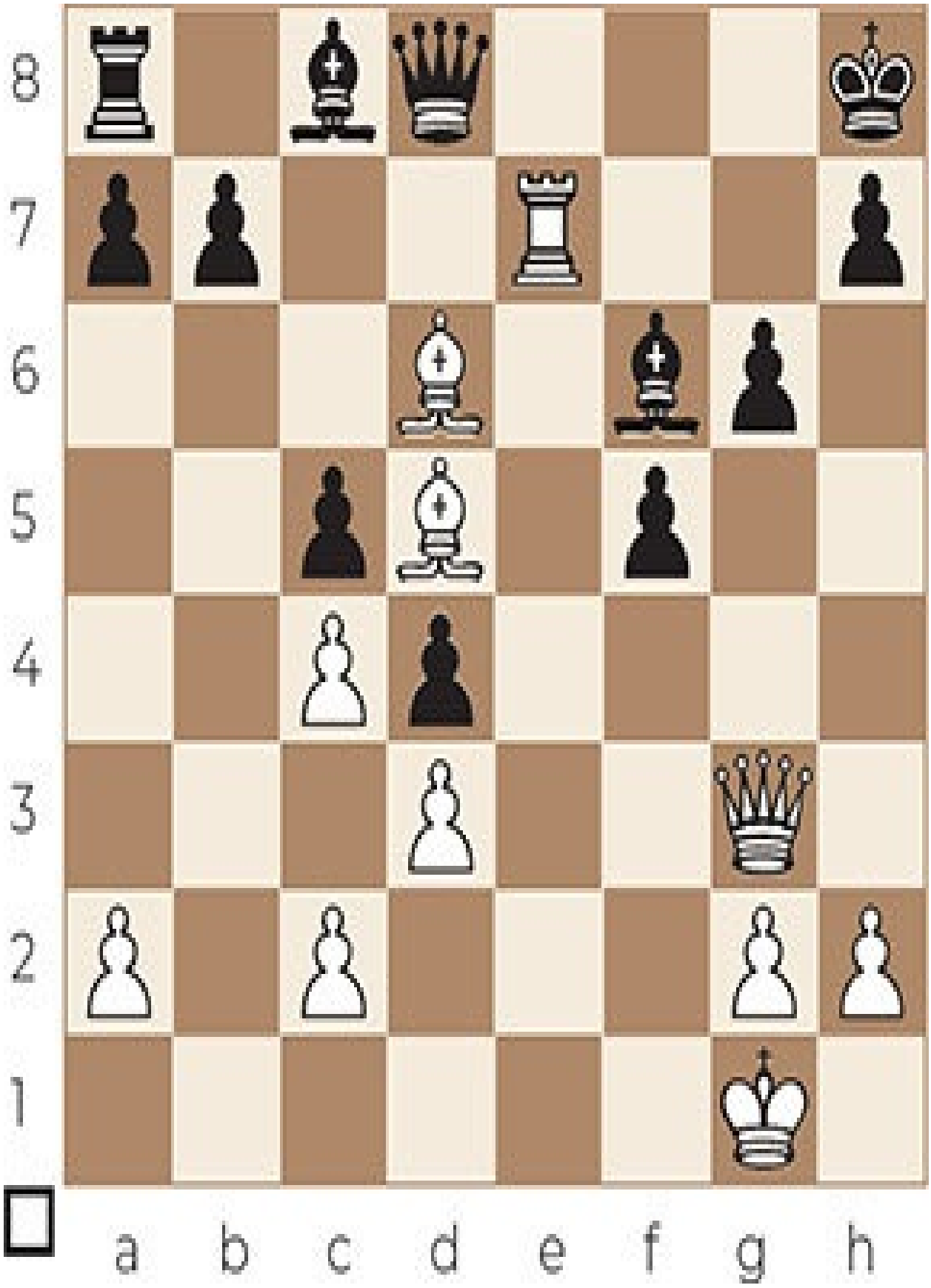
1. ♖c8+ ♗f8 2. ♗d4#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 203

Ranneforth – Dobell

1903


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

23.♕e5

Threatening the queen and the bishop, the only defenders of the black king.

23...♕xe7

23...♕f8 protects the bishop, but loses the queen and the game for Black after 24.♖e8. Taking White's queen is even worse because of 24...♗xe5 25.♗xe5# (Double bishops mate).

24.♕xe7 ♗xe7 25.♗e5+ ♗f6 26.♗xf6#

Game 204

Martinez Villar – Esquivias Gomez

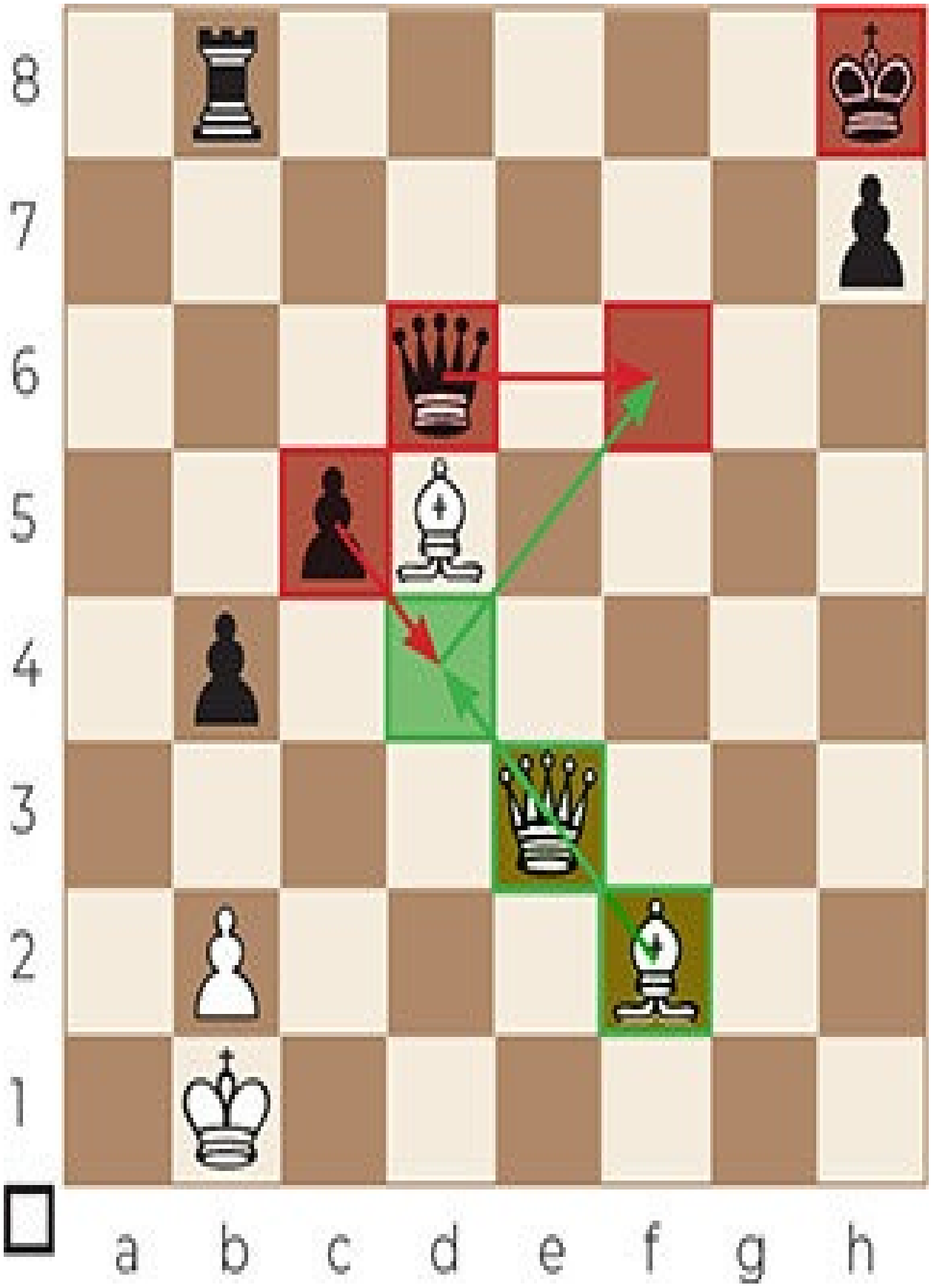
2002

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

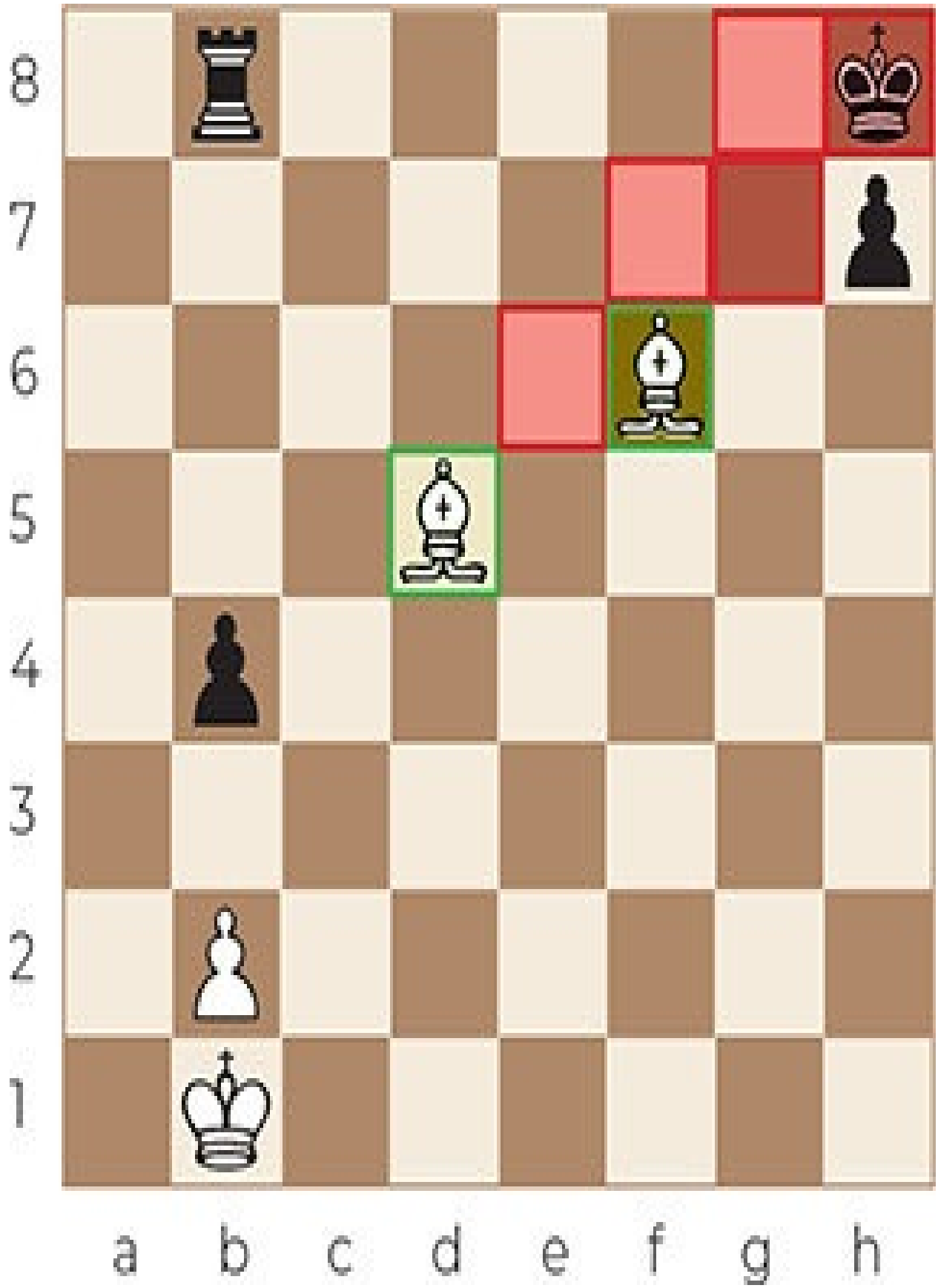
18. ♘c7+ ♕xc7 19. ♕b5+ axb5 20. ♗xb5+ ♕d7 21. ♗xd7#

Double bishops mate 3

Sometimes, the Double bishops mate is preceded by a sacrifice to remove or distract the defender of the square on which a bishop will deliver checkmate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

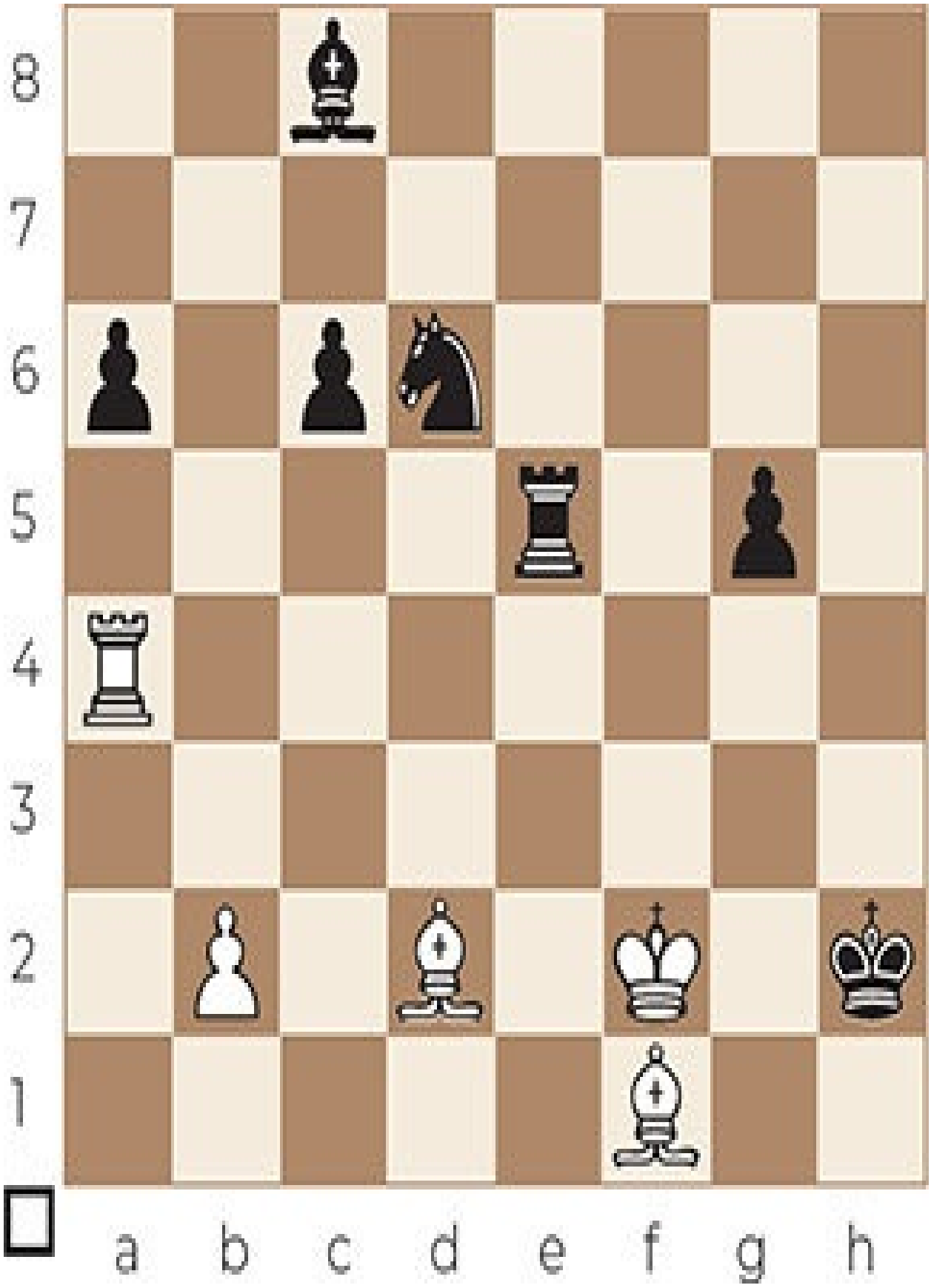
1. ♕d4+ cxd4 2. ♗xd4+ ♕f6 3. ♗xf6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 205

Krstic – Ostojic

2006


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

48.♖h4+

A beautiful rook sacrifice.

48...gxh4

48...♗h3 49.♖xh3#.

49.♗f4+ ♔h1 50.♗g2#

Game 206

Rashkovsky – Anikaev

1966

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

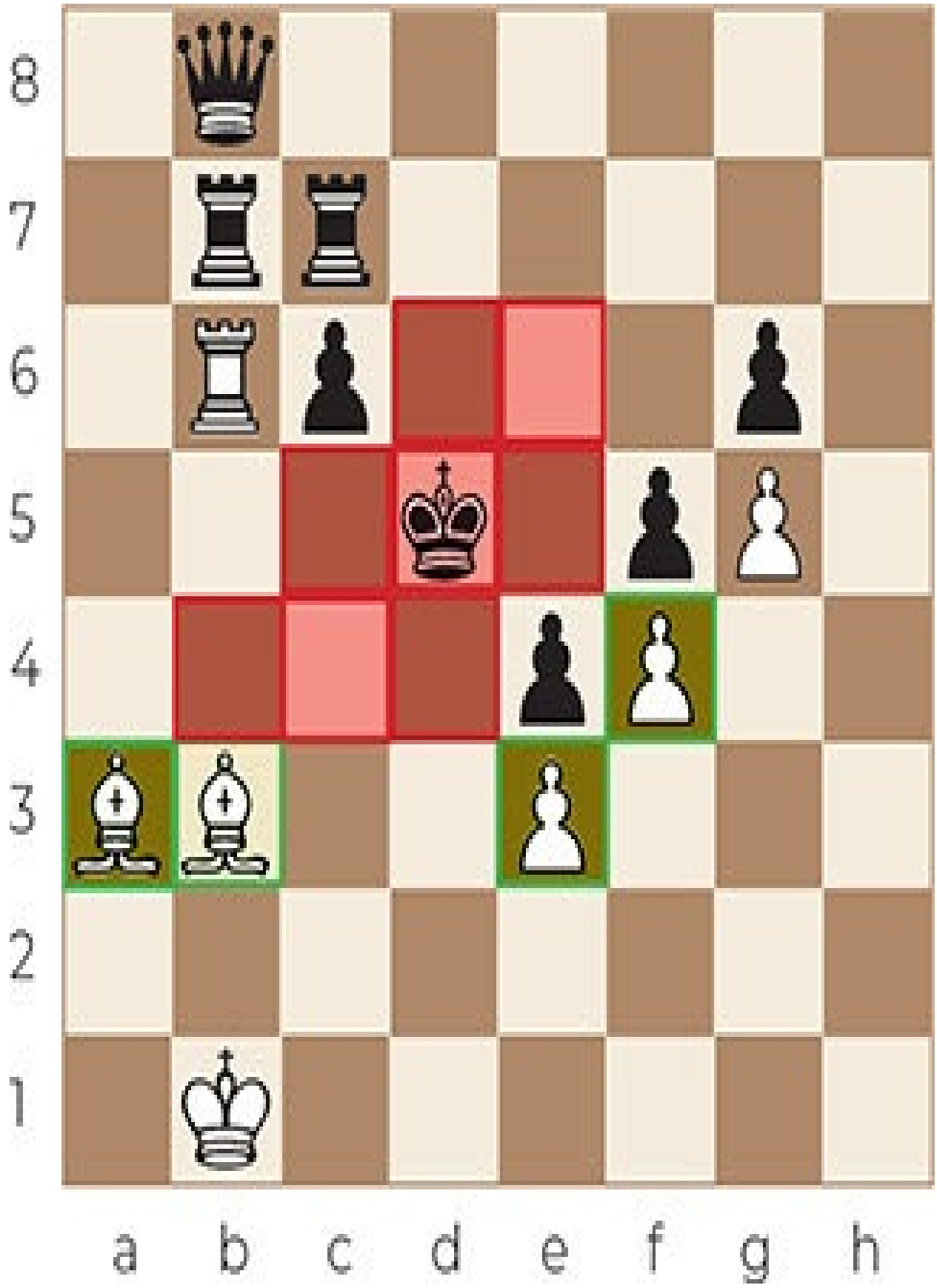
27. ♕d5+ cxd5 28. ♗xd5+ ♖e6 29. ♗xe6#

Double bishops mate 4

Sometimes, a checkmate with two bishops involved is preceded by a queen sacrifice to force the king into a mating net. This isn’t a real Double bishops mate, but it’s a similar pattern worth remembering.

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕xd5+ ♔xd5 2.♗b3#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 207

Ter-Sahakyan – Sochacki

2006

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

40.♕xd5+ ♔xd5 41.♗e4#

Game 208

Markos – Konnyu

2011

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

55.♕xf4+

With inevitable mate:

55...♔xf4

55...♔h4 56.♖h1#.

56.♗d2#

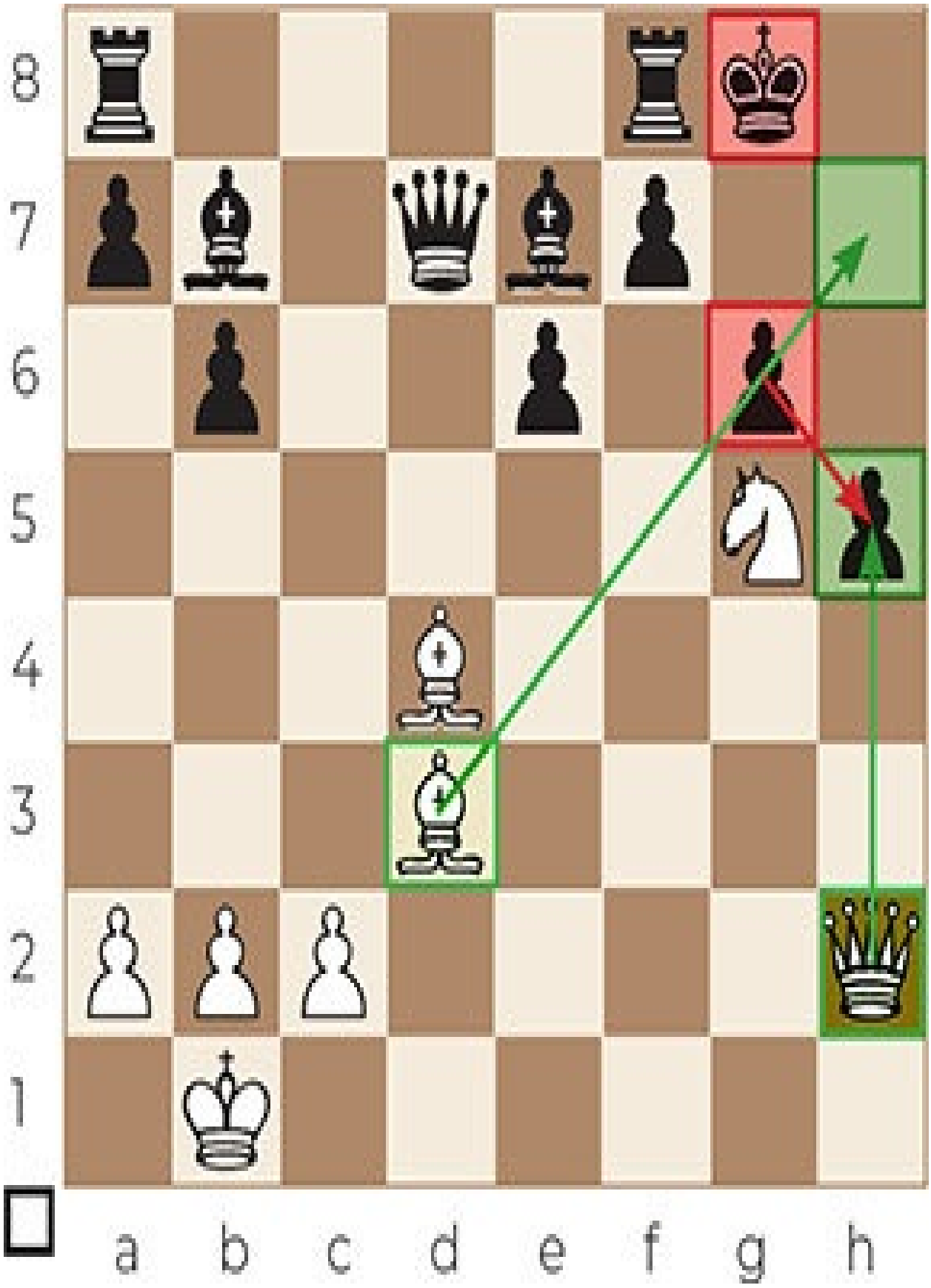
CHAPTER 23

Blackburne’s mate

In Blackburne’s mate, one bishop delivers checkmate on a square adjacent to the king while being protected by a knight. Possible escape squares are covered by a second bishop or blocked by the opponent’s own pieces. This rare mate has its name from the British chess player Joseph Henry Blackburne (1841-1924).

Blackburne’s mate 1

Often, Blackburne’s mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice on h4 or h5, to open up a diagonal for a bishop. If the sacrifice is accepted, Blackburne’s mate will be the result. If the sacrifice is not accepted, the king will usually get checkmated in a less spectacular way.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1. ♕xh5 gxh5 2. ♗h7#

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 209

Olesen – Bühl

1992

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

24.♘h6+ ♘xh6 25.♗xh7#

Game 210

Flohr – Pitschak

1930

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

16...♘g4

Causing weaknesses in the pawn structure defending the white king.

17.h4

White has to prevent Black from taking on h2.

White's try with for example 17.♘df3 fails to 17...♘xf3+ 18.♘xf3 ♗xf3, renewing the threat on h2. After 19.h4, Black wins with 19...♕xh4 20.gxh4 ♗h2# (Blackburne's mate).

17...♕xh4 18.gxh4 ♗h2#

Game 211

Stefansson – Bruzon Batista

2001

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

22.♕xh5

A lethal sacrifice.

22...gxh5

Black’s best try would have been 22...♗xg5 23.♗xg6 h6 24.fxg5. White is now a piece up and Black can’t stop the mate.

Another move to consider is 22...♖f7. After 23.♗xg6, this will lead to a victory for White, no matter what Black plays, e.g. 23...hxg6 24.♕h8# (Opera mate).

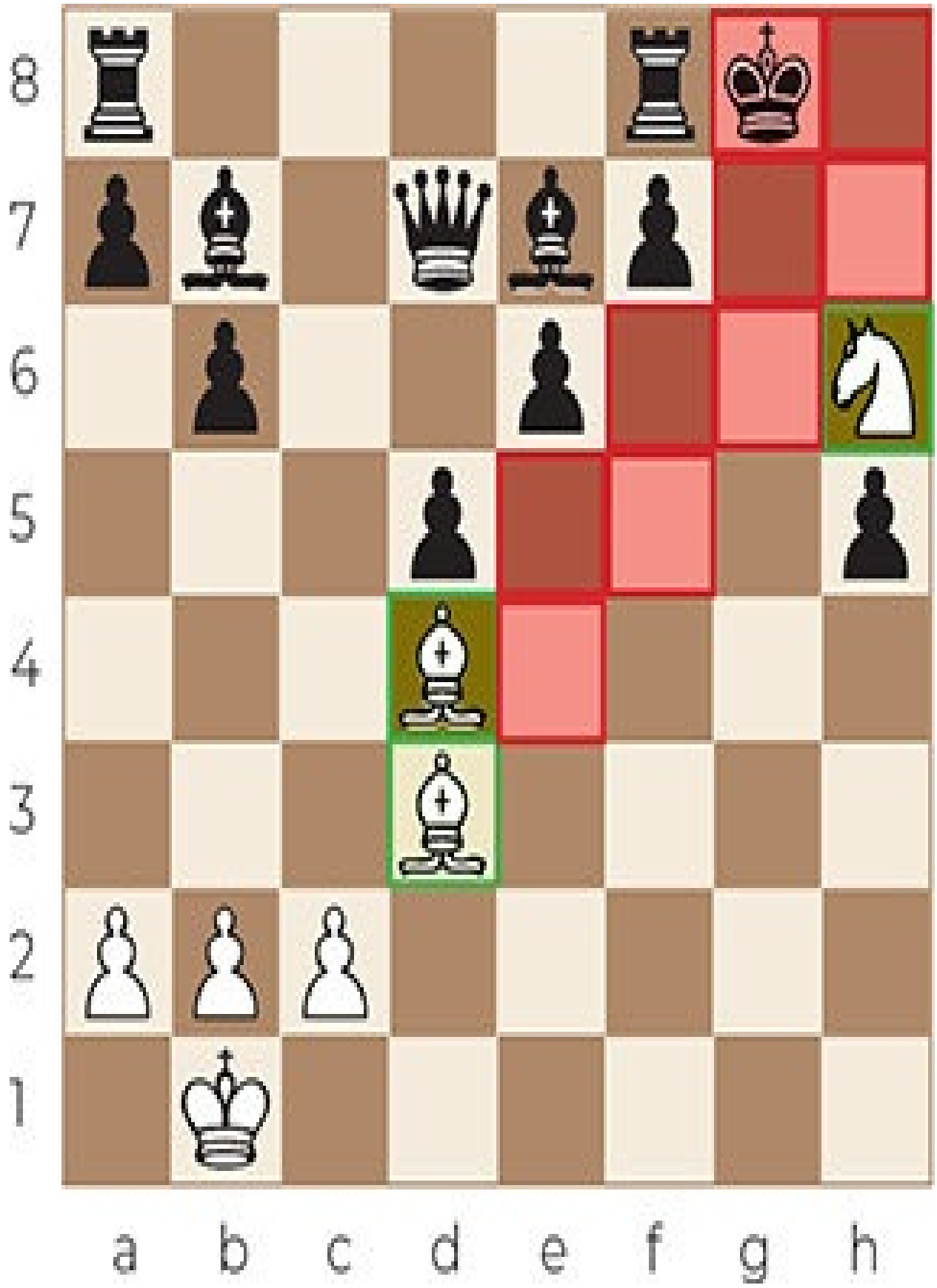
23.♗xh7#

Blackburne’s mate 2

Sometimes, the two bishops and a knight will deliver checkmate to the king in a similar way to Blackburne’s mate. This isn’t a real Blackburne’s mate, but it’s a similar pattern worth remembering.

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕xh5 gxh5 2.♘h6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 212

Chiburdanidze – Larsen

1993

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

31.♕xh6+ gxh6 32.♘f7+ ♔g8 33.♘xh6#

Game 213

Rudolf – NN

1912

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

11. ♕xh6+ gxh6 12. ♗e5#

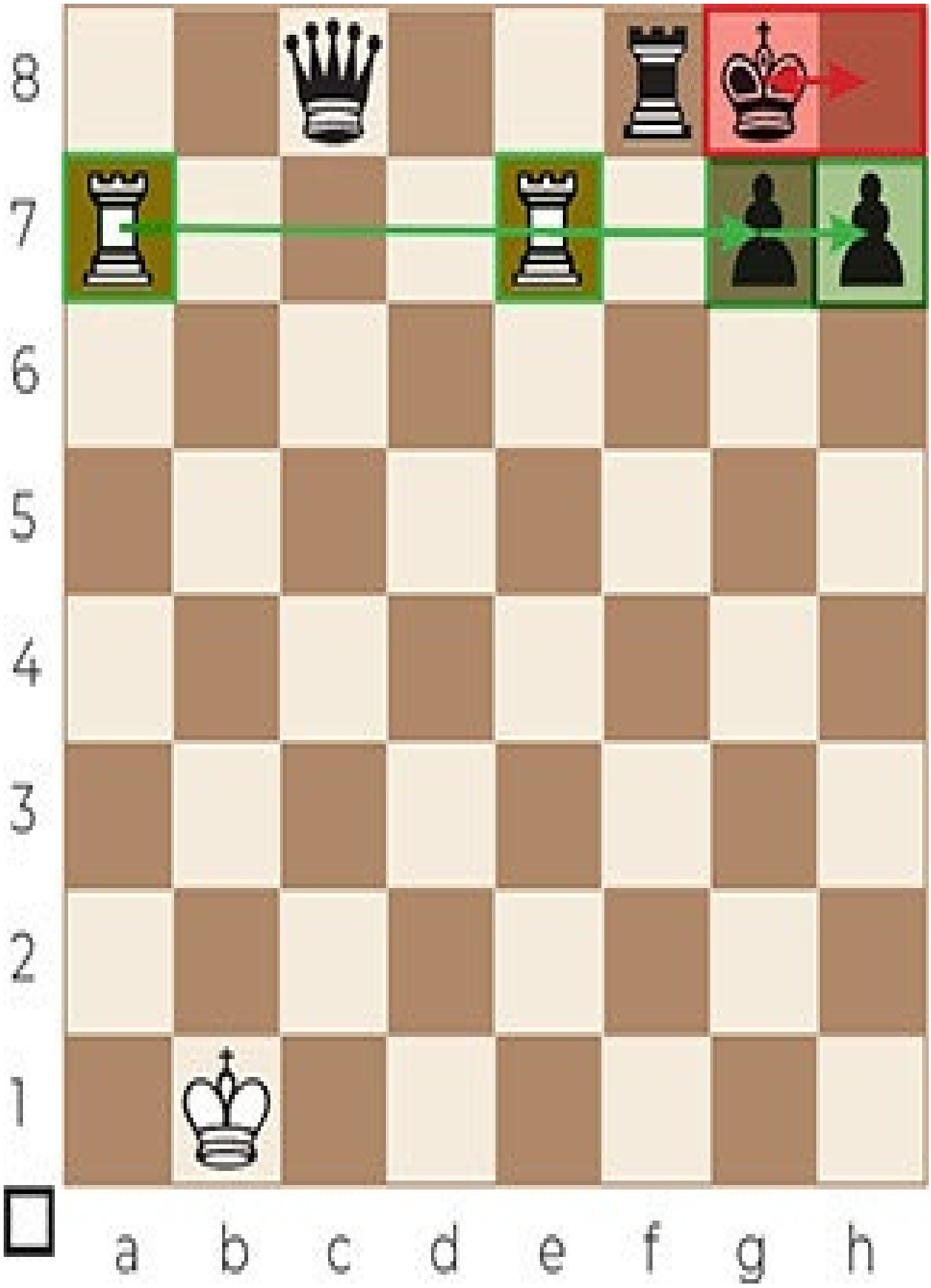
CHAPTER 24

Blind swine mate

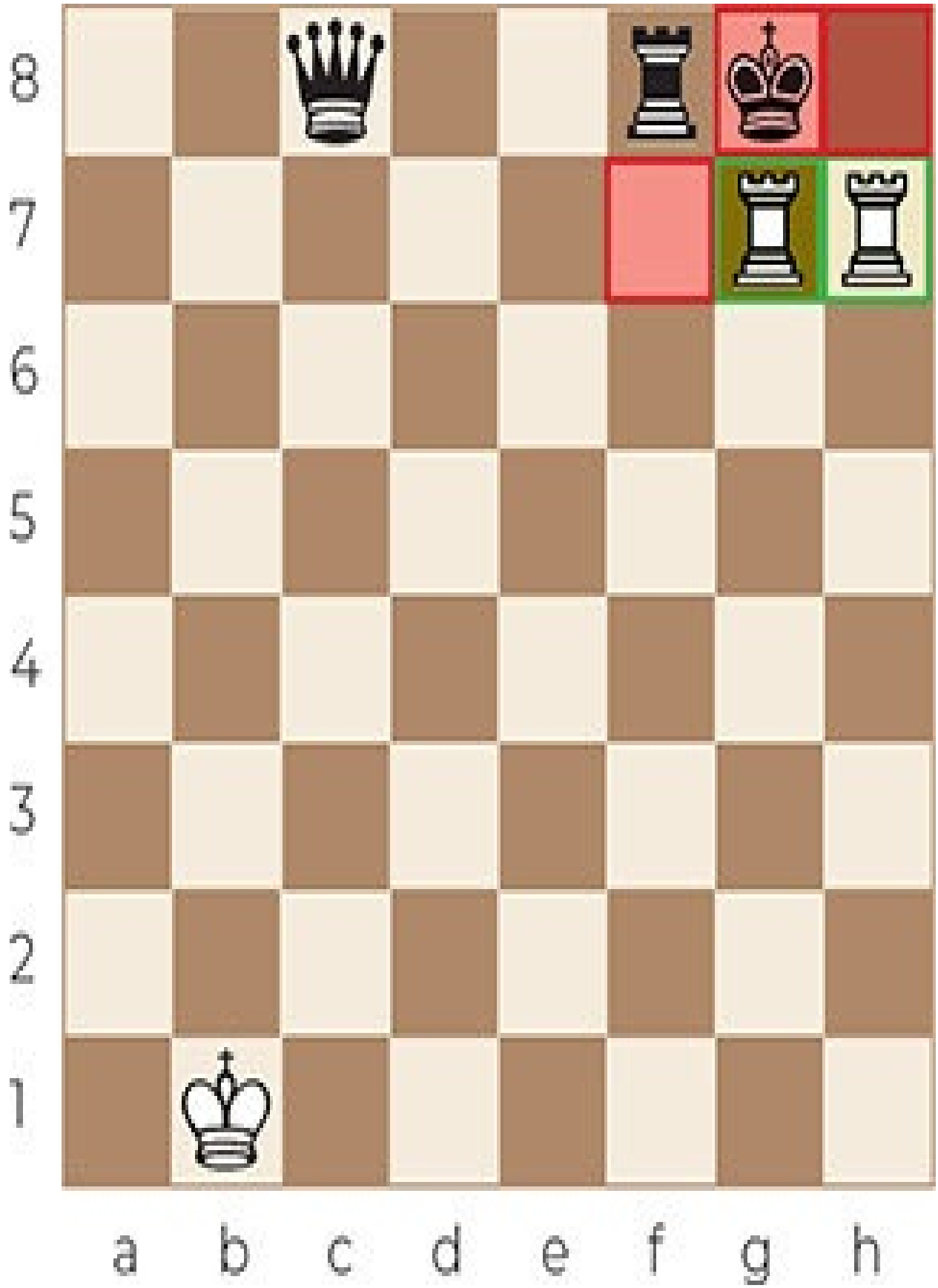
In the Blind swine mate, two rooks on the 7th rank support each other to deliver checkmate to the king. Possible escape squares are usually blocked by the opponent's own pieces. This mate is attributed to Polish master Dawid Janowski (1868-1927) who referred to doubled rooks on a player's 7th rank as 'swine'.

Blind swine mate

Often, a Blind swine mate is preceded by one or more rook checks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖xg7+ ♔h8 2.♖xh7+ ♔g8 3.♖ag7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 214

Alekhine – Yates

1922

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

37.♖xg7

With inevitable mate:

37...♖xf6

37...e5+ can’t save the game for Black: 38.dxe5 ♖xf6 39.♖h7+ ♔g8 40.♖cg7+ ♔f8 41.exf6 ♖a7 42.♖h8# (Lawnmower mate).

38.♔e5 ♖ff8 39.♖h7+ ♔g8 40.♖cg7#

Game 215

Swiderski – Nimzowitsch

1905

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

31.♖g7+ ♔h8 32.♖cc7 ♕xb2 33.♖h7+ ♔g8 34.♖cg7#

Game 216

Movsesian – Pantsulaia

2012

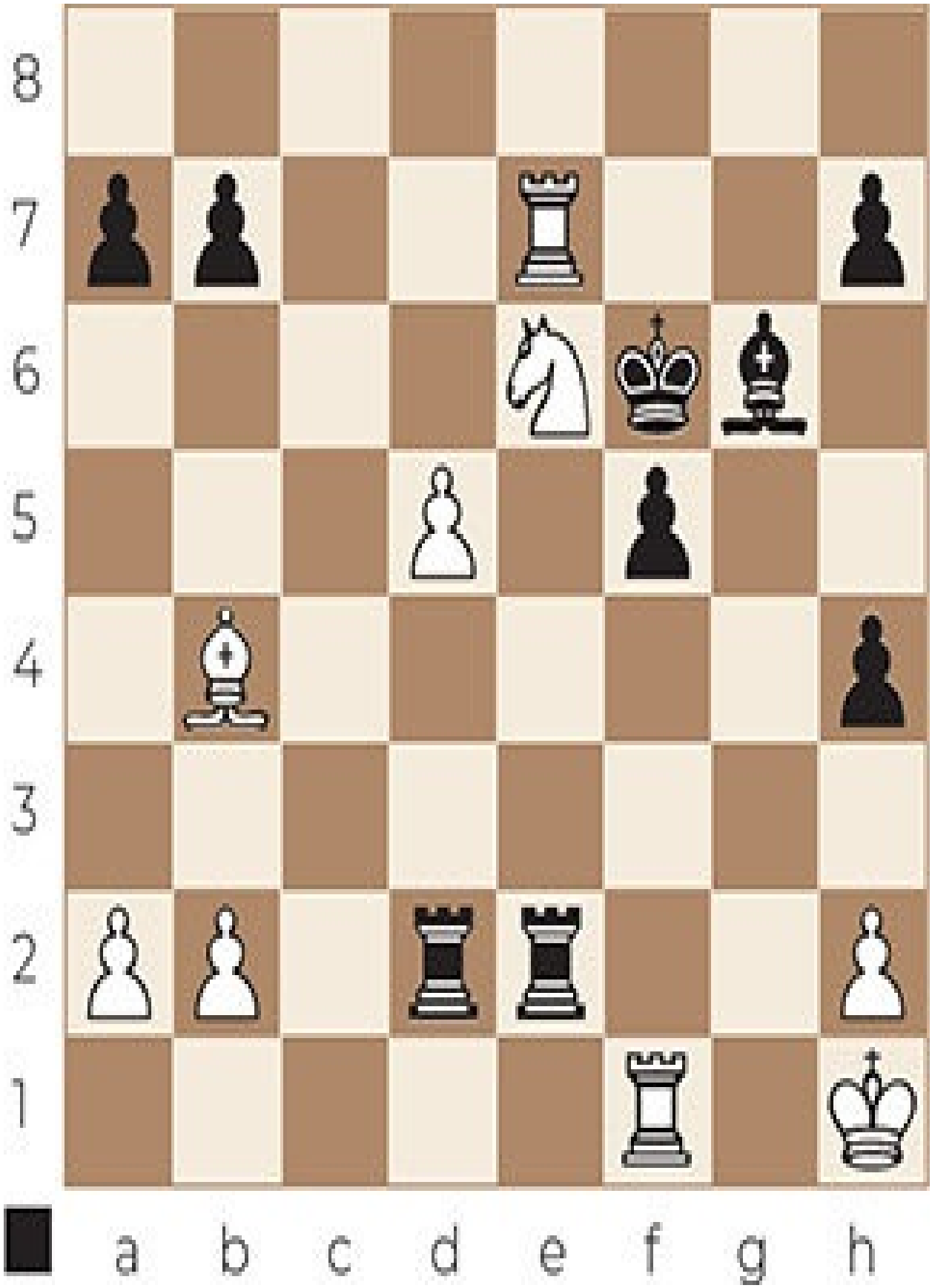
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

31.♖fxf7+ ♔g8 32.♖xg7+ ♔f8 33.♖df7#

Game 217

Chigorin – Steinitz

1892


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

32...♖xh2+ 33.♔g1 ♖dg2#

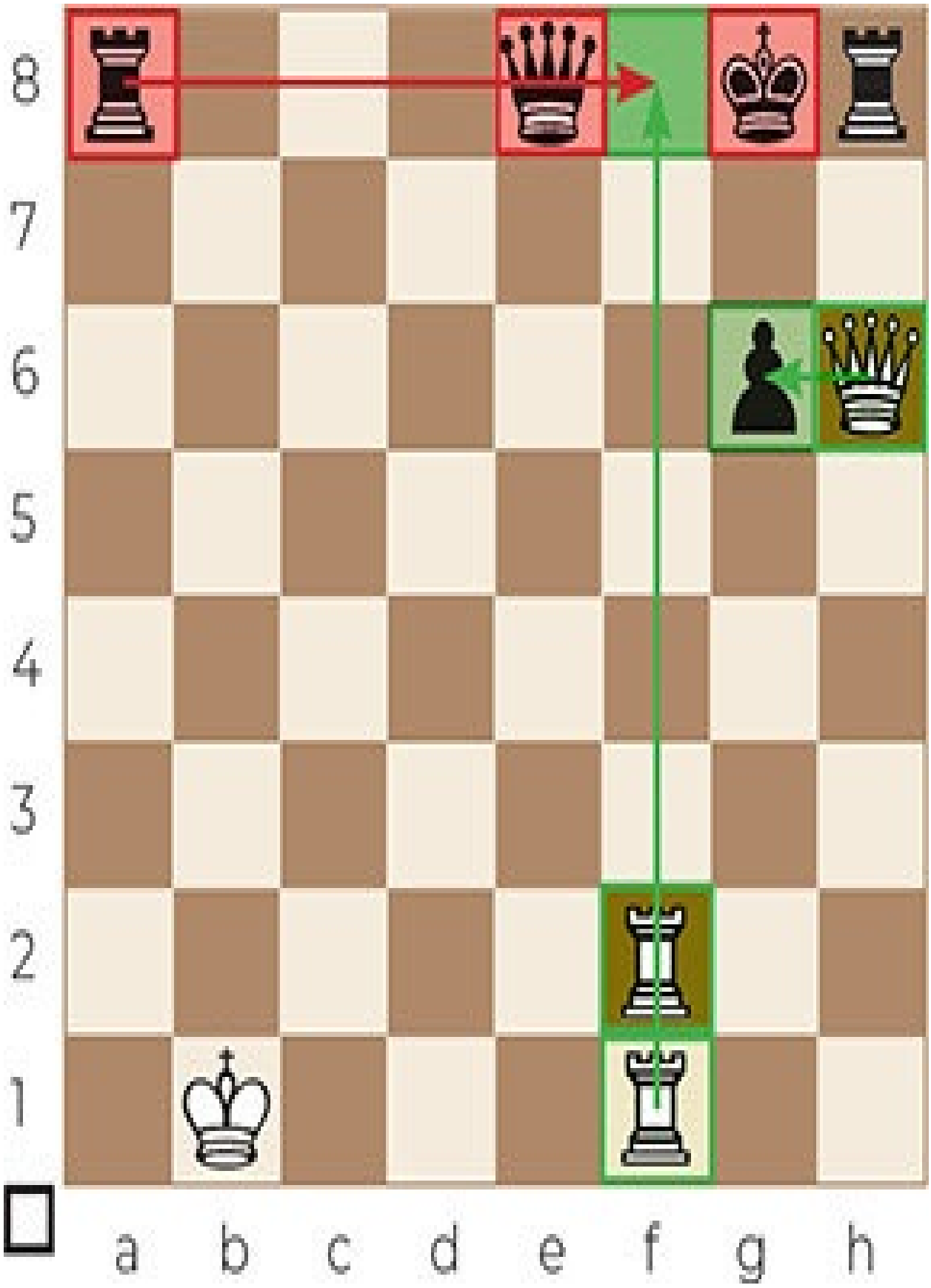
CHAPTER 25

Epaulette mate

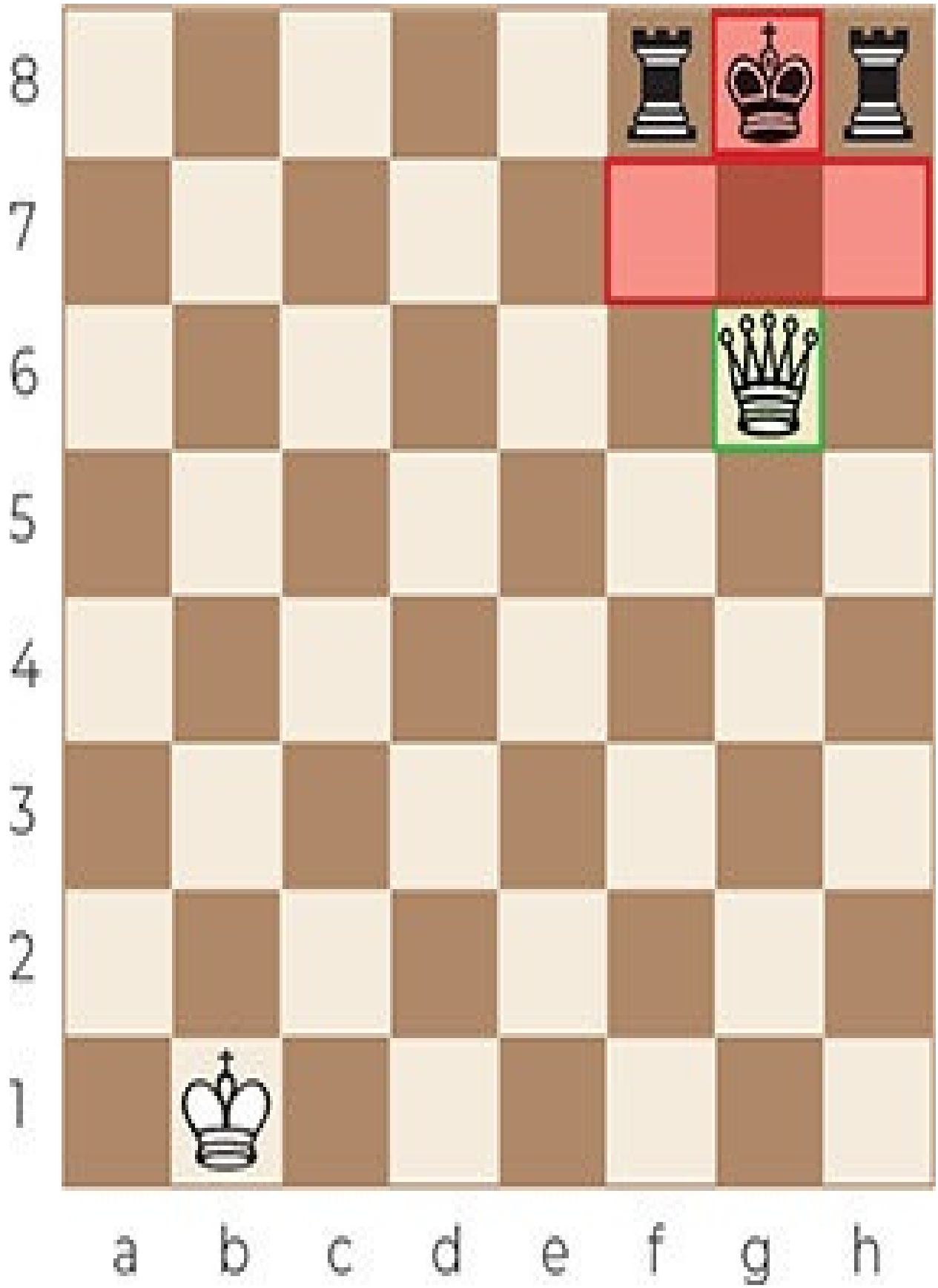
In the Epaulette mate, a queen or protected rook delivers checkmate to the king. The defender's king is sandwiched between two of its own pieces (often rooks), or a rook and the edge of the board.

The most common Epaulette mate involves the king on the edge of the board (e.g. its back rank), trapped between two rooks, checkmated by a queen. However, the Epaulette mate can also occur on other parts of the board, or with a protected rook instead of a queen.

This mate has its name from the perceived visual similarity between the rooks and epaulettes, ornamental shoulder pieces worn on military uniforms.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖f8+ ♕xf8 2.♖xf8+ ♖xf8 3.♕xg6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 218

Gourlay – Lewis

2000

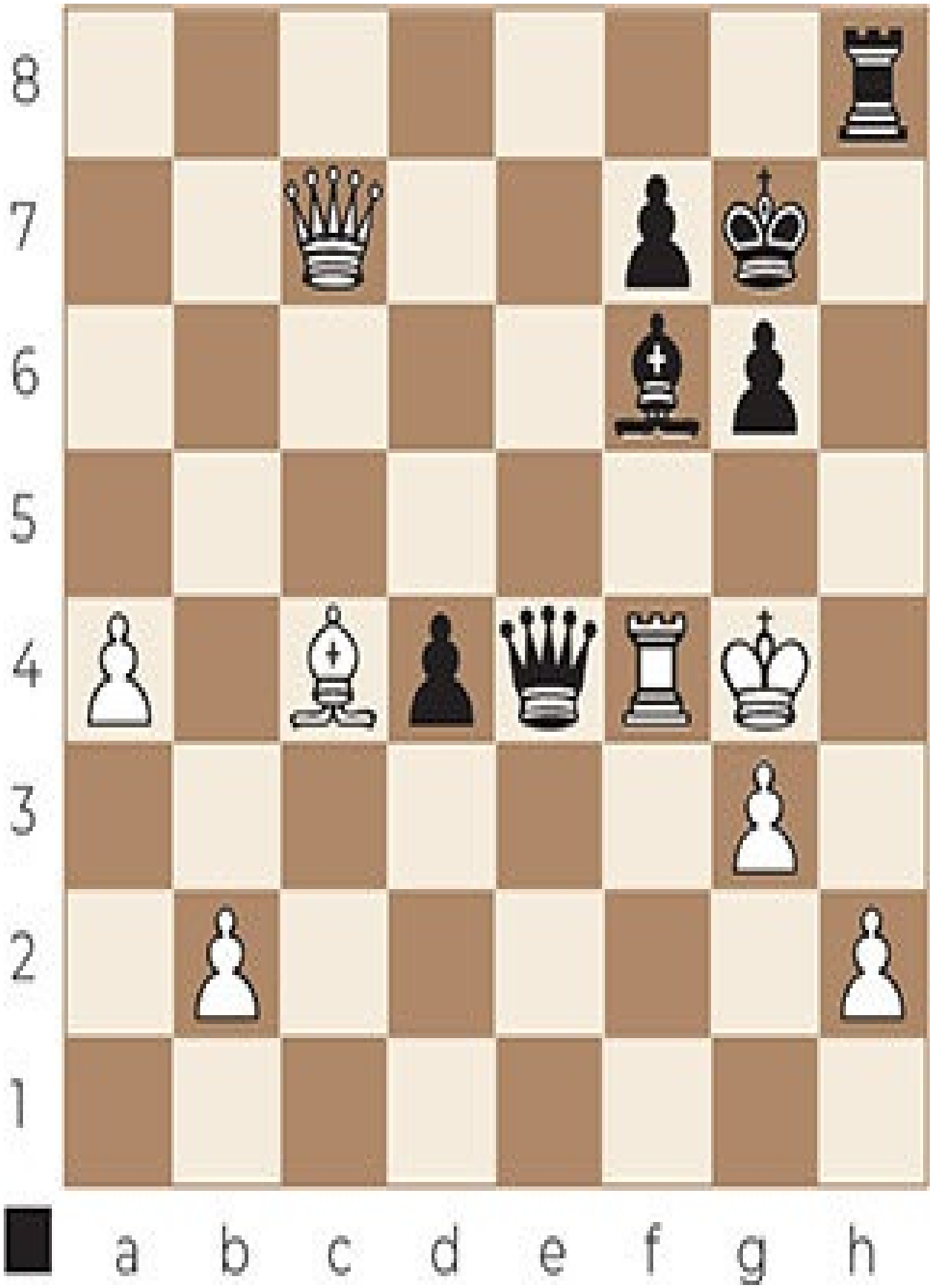
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

44...♕f3+ 45.♖g2 ♕f1+ 46.♖g1 ♘g3+ 47.hxg3 ♕h3#

Game 219

Goncalves – Pinto Paiva

1972

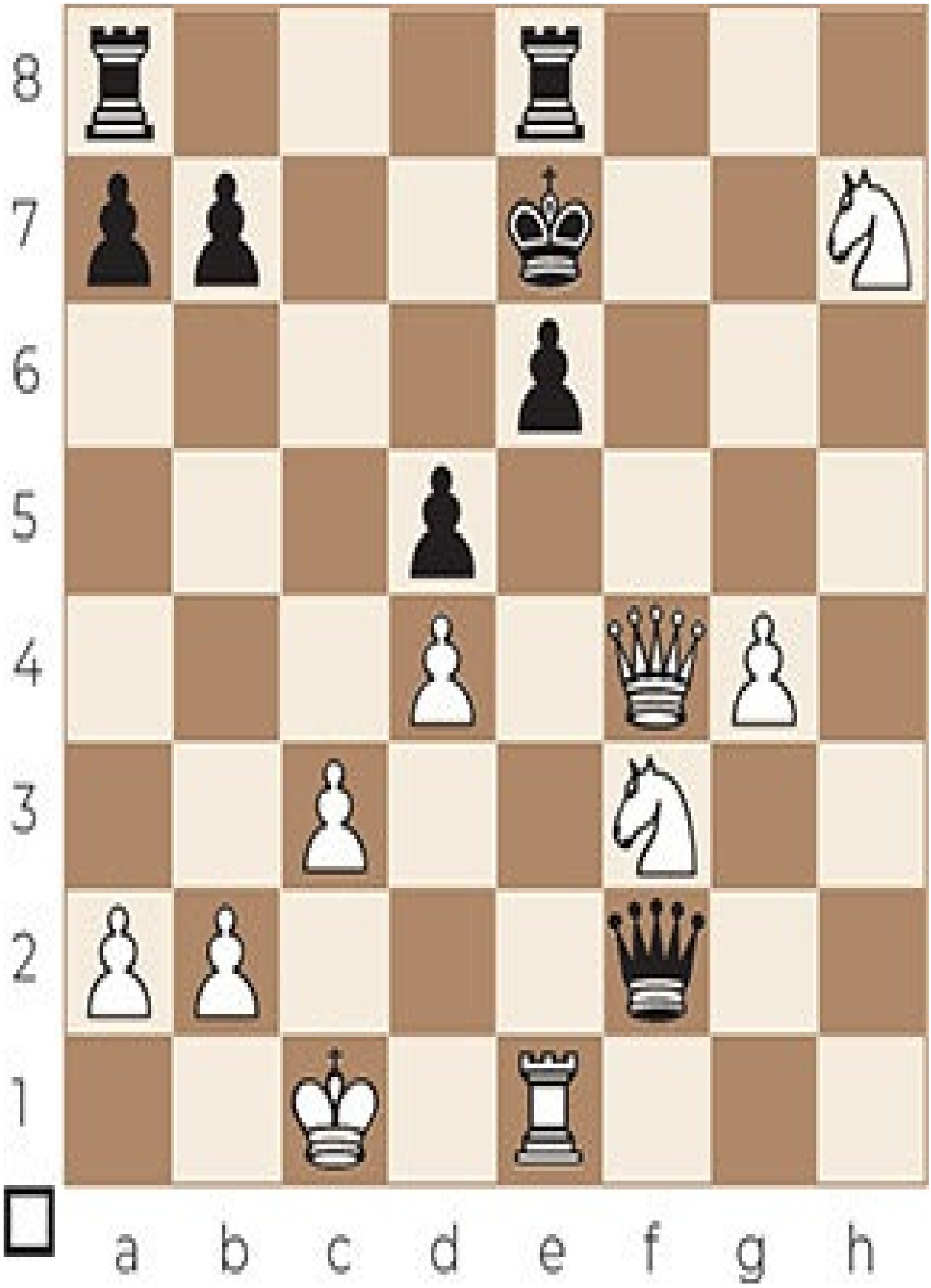

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33...♖h4+ 34.gxh4 ♕g2#

Game 220

Cech – Gregor

1990


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

29.♕c7#

Game 221

Monsieux – Delorme

2003

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

20. ♗f6+

The weakness on Black's dark squares is lethal.

20...♔xf6

20...♔g8 21.♕g5# (Pillsbury's mate) or 20...♔g6 21.♕g5# (Swallow's tail mate) were also possible.

21.♕h6#

Game 222

Smeets – Berkvens

2002

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

45...♕d3+ 46.♔e1 ♖g1+ 47.♘f1

47.♖f1 ♕e3# (Epaulette mate).

47...♖xf1+ 48.♖xf1 ♕e3#

Game 223

Osnos – Komarov

1986

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

25.♘d6+

Taking advantage of the lack of harmony between the black pieces, very opportune sacrifices arise for White.

25...♔b8

25...♔a7 26.♖c7+ ♗xc7 27.♖b7# (Epaulette mate).

26.♖c8+ ♔a7 27.♖c7+

With inevitable mate:

27... ♗xc7

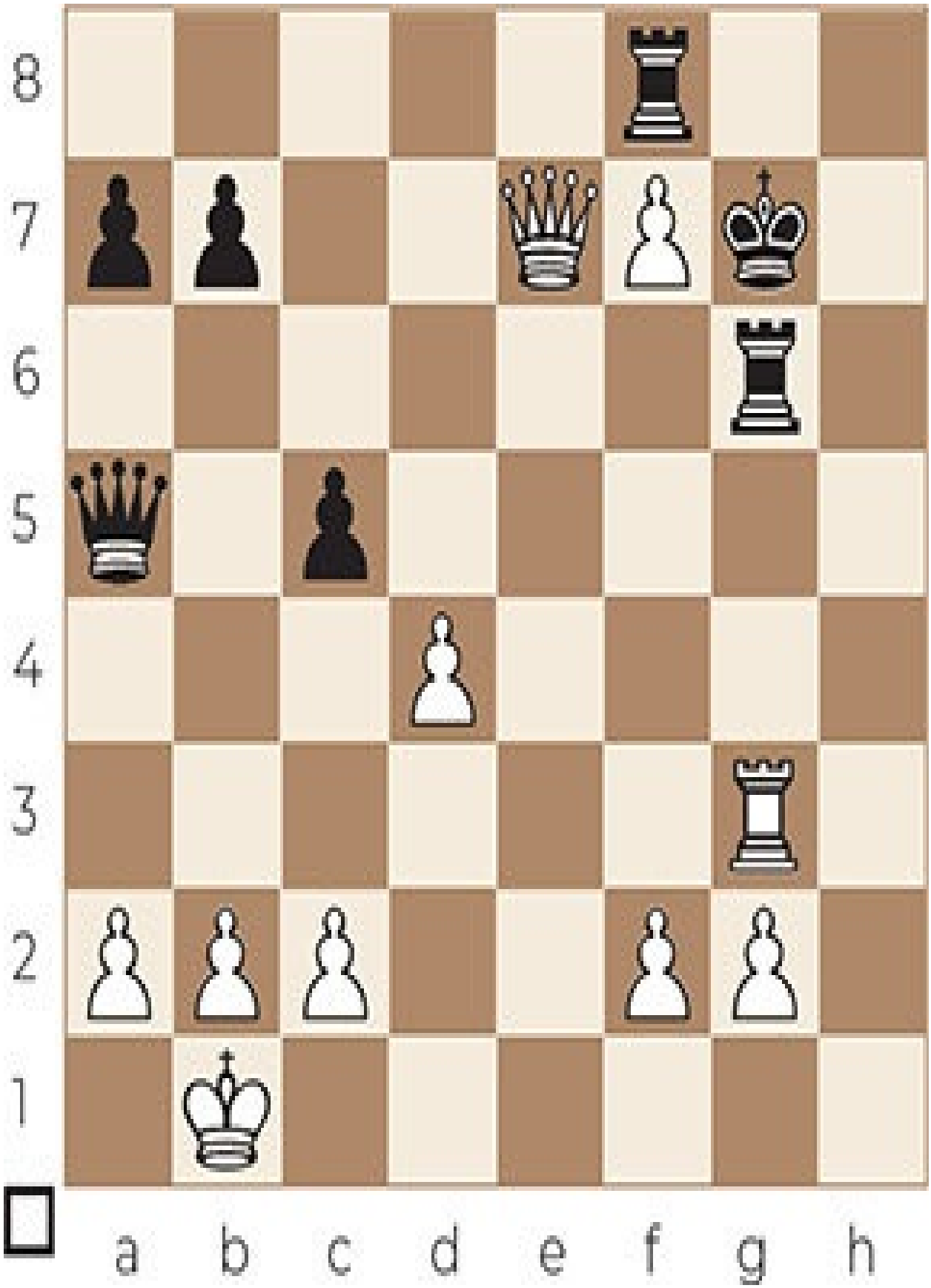
27...♔b8 28.♖b7# (Arabian mate).

28.♖b7#

Game 224

Carlsen – Ernst

2004


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♕e5+

The black king is in trouble.

27...♔xf7

27...♔h7 28.♕h5+ ♖h6 29.♕f5+ ♔h8 30.♕e5+ ♖f6 31.♕xf6+ ♔h7 32.♖h3#.

28.♕f5+ ♖f6

After 28...♔e7 or 28...♔e8, the struggle could have continued as follows:
29.♖e3+ ♔d8 30.♕xf8+ ♔c7 31.♕f7+ ♔c8 32.♖e8+ ♕d8 33.♖xd8+ ♔xd8
34.♕xg6. Black has no chance, being a queen down.

29.♕d7#

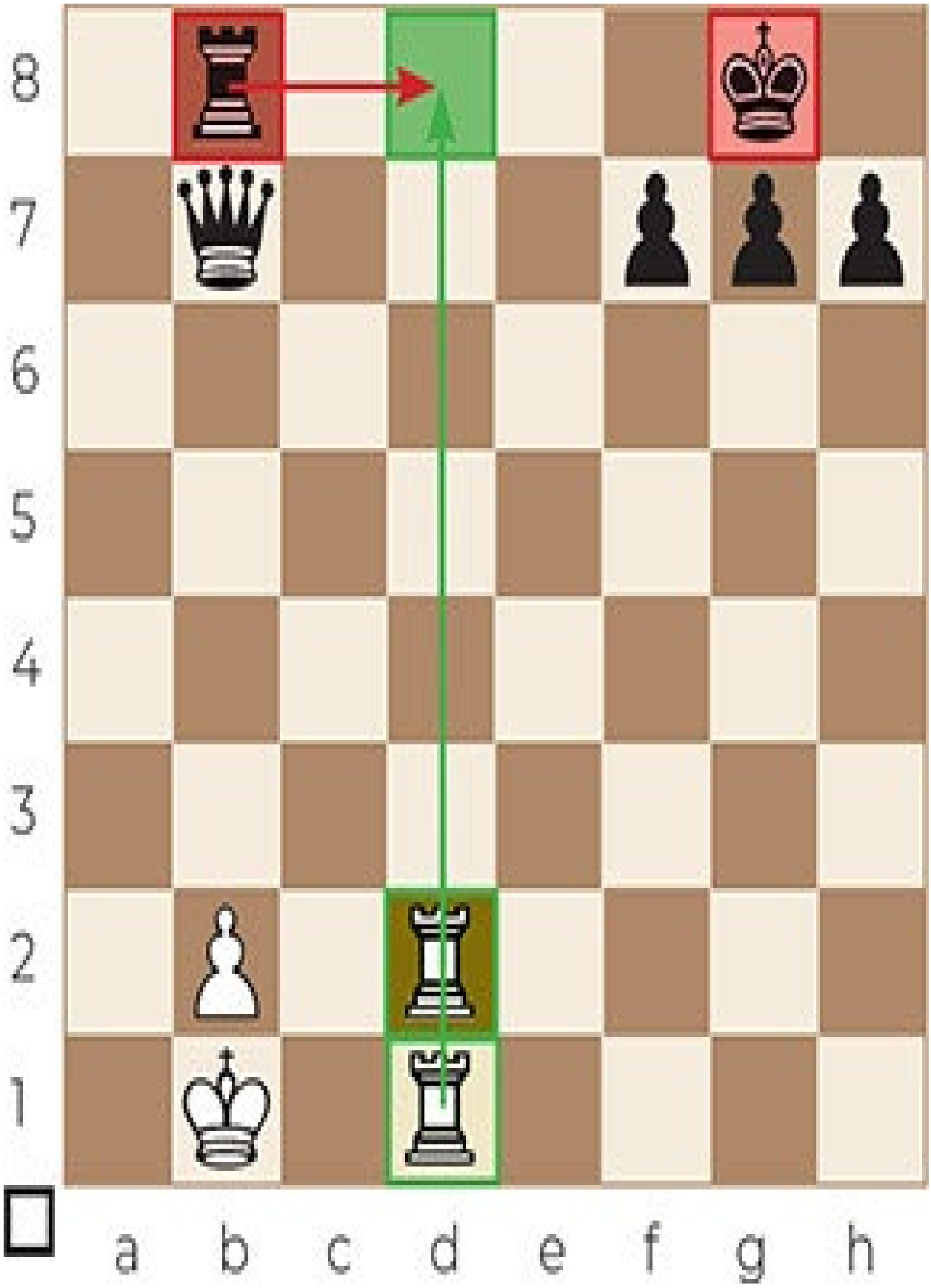
CHAPTER 26

Back rank mate

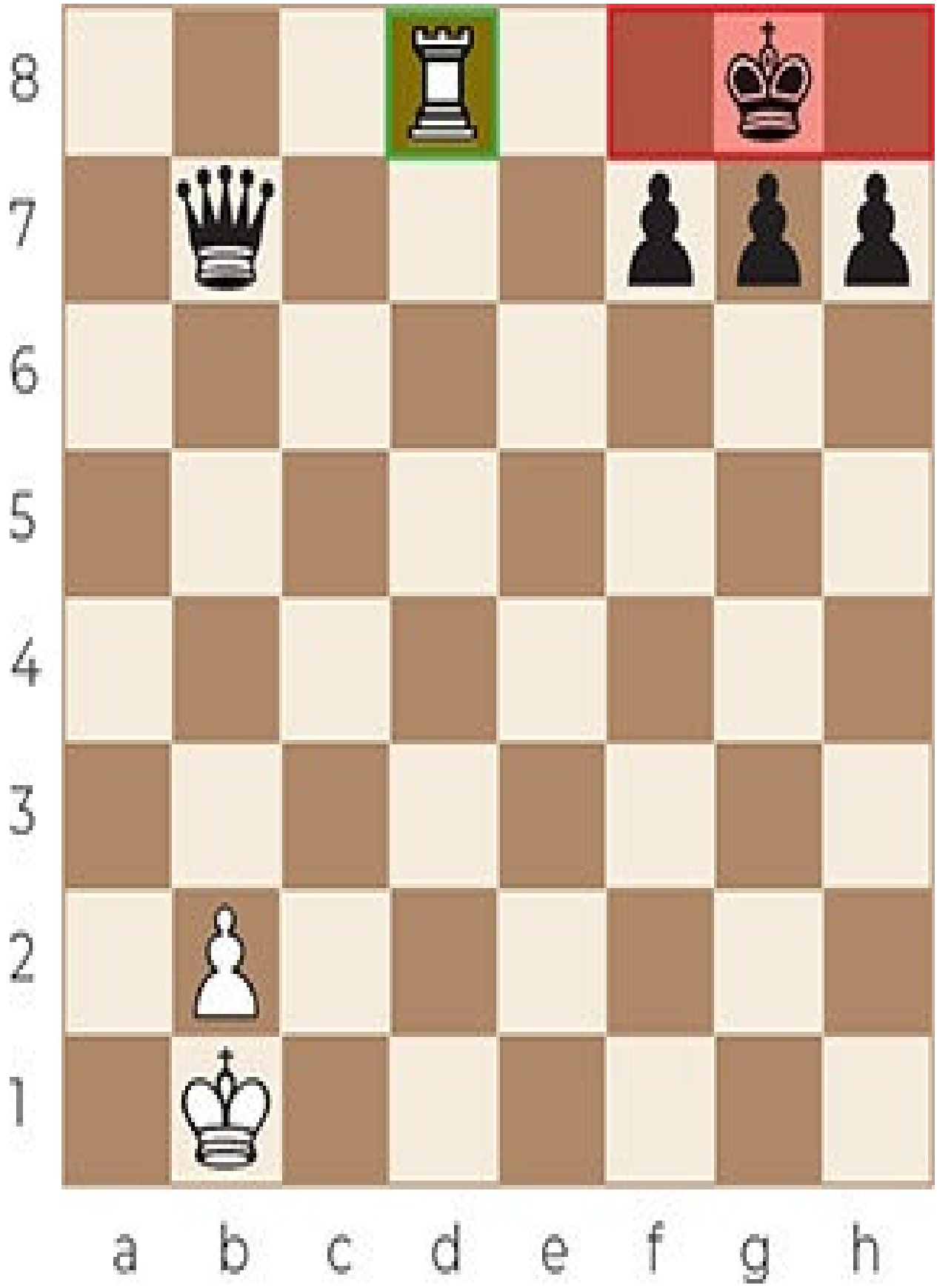
In the Back rank mate, a queen or rook delivers checkmate to the king on its first rank or back rank (= the row on which the pieces – not pawns – stand at the start of the game). The king is unable to move up the board because it is blocked by friendly pieces (usually pawns) on the second rank.

Back rank mate 1

Sometimes, a Back rank mate is preceded by queen and/or rook checks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖d8+ ♖xd8 2.♖xd8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 225

Bullen – Fathallah

2014

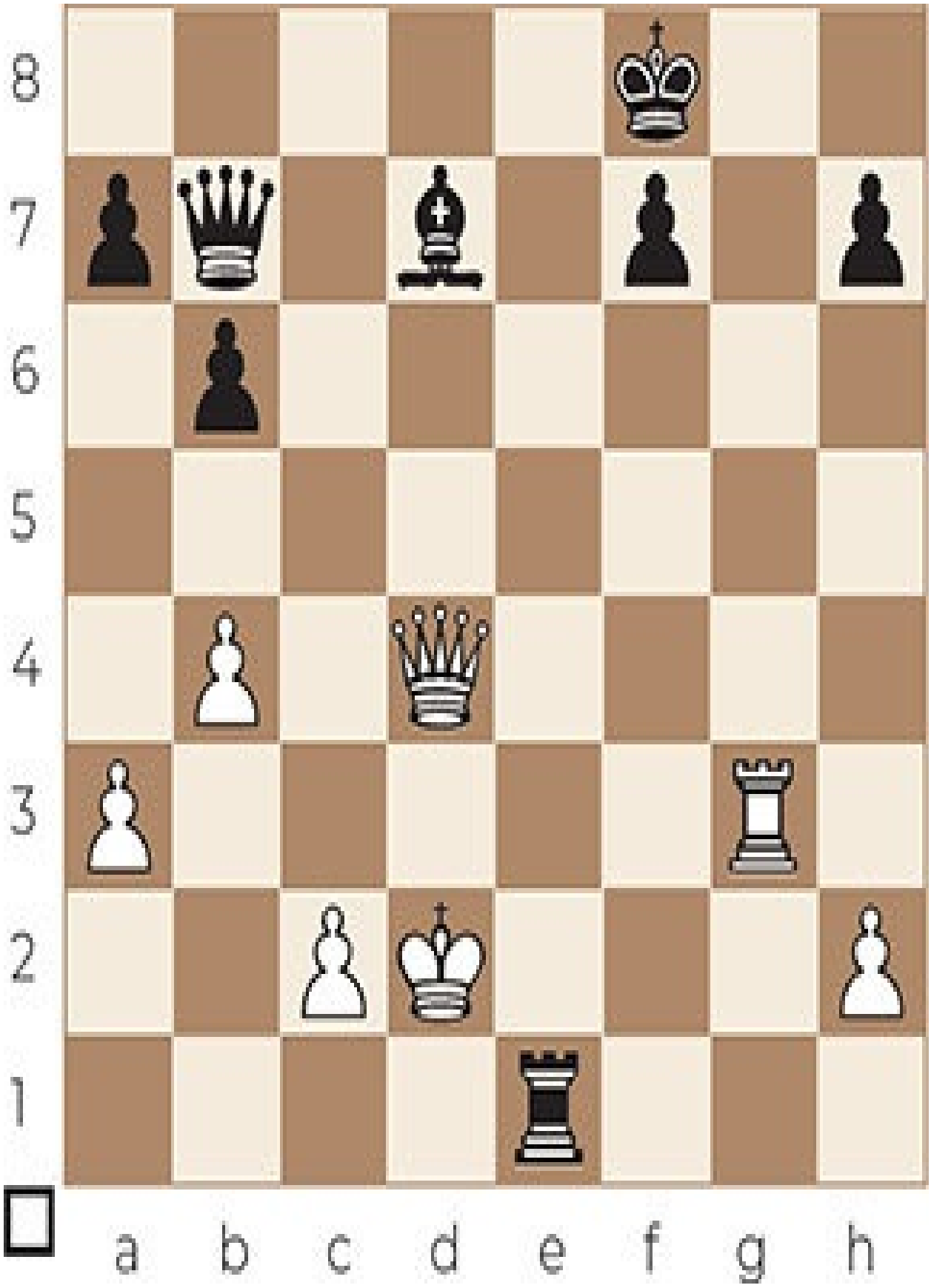
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

31.♖d8+ ♖xd8 32.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 33.♕e8#

Game 226

Baklan – Perunovic

2017


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

38.♕d6+ ♖e7

38...♔e8 39.♖g8# (similar to Greco's mate).

39.♕h6+ ♔e8 40.♖g8#

Game 227

Polgar – Bareev

1996

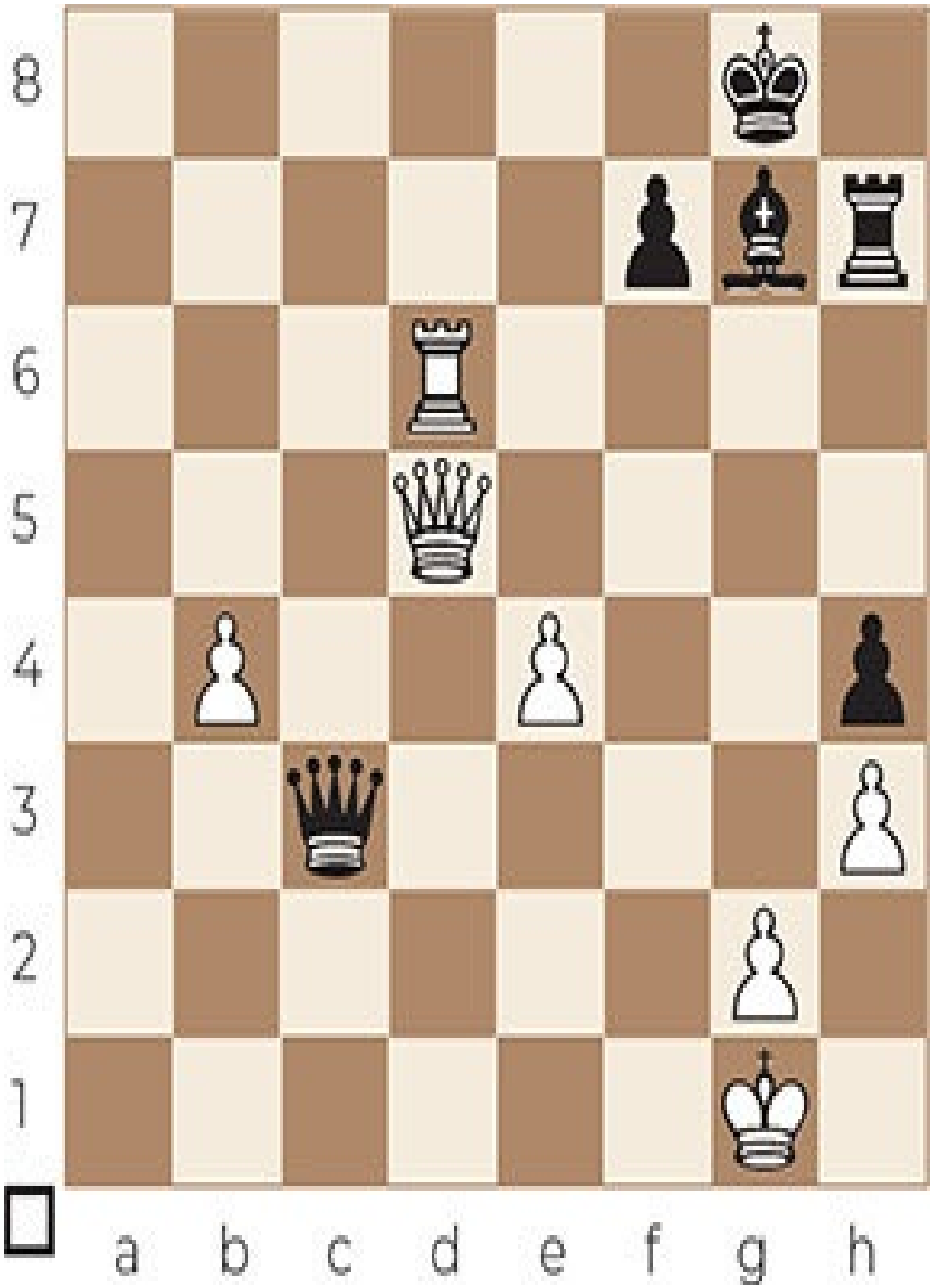
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28.♖c8+ ♘xc8 29.♕d8#

Game 228

Lasinskas – Schliessmann

2002


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

62.♖d8+ ♗f8 63.♕g5+ ♖g7 64.♖xf8+

Eliminating the defender.

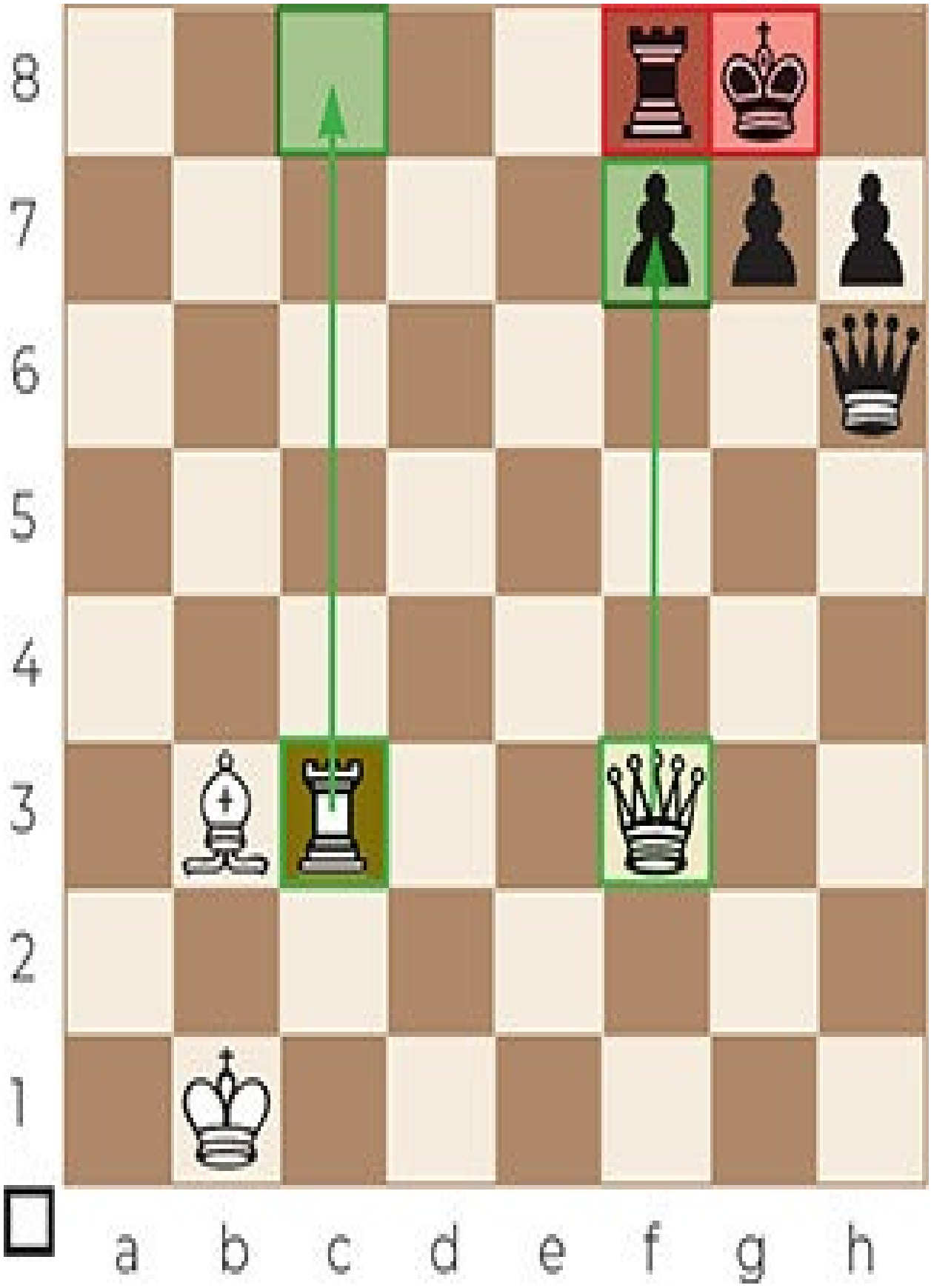
64...♔xf8

64...♔h7 65.♕h5#.

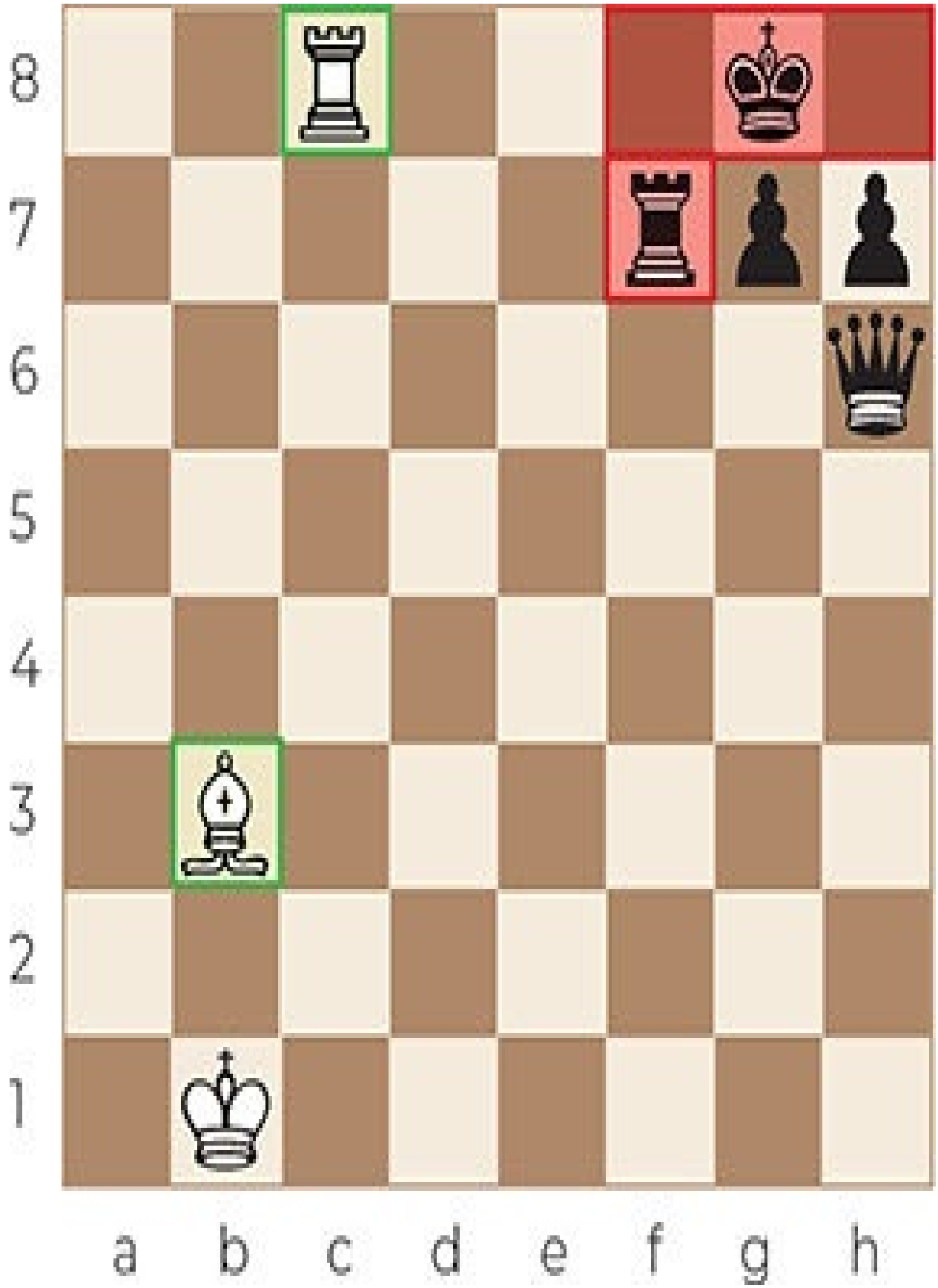
65.♕d8#

Back rank mate 2

Sometimes, a Back rank mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice to decoy a defending rook/queen. A rook will deliver checkmate on the next move. The defending rook/queen can’t move because it is pinned by the bishop. This is sometimes referred to as Pin mate.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕xf7+ ♖xf7 2.♖c8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 229

Mayet – Anderssen

1862

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

20...♖d1+

Taking advantage of White's weak back rank.

21.♖f1

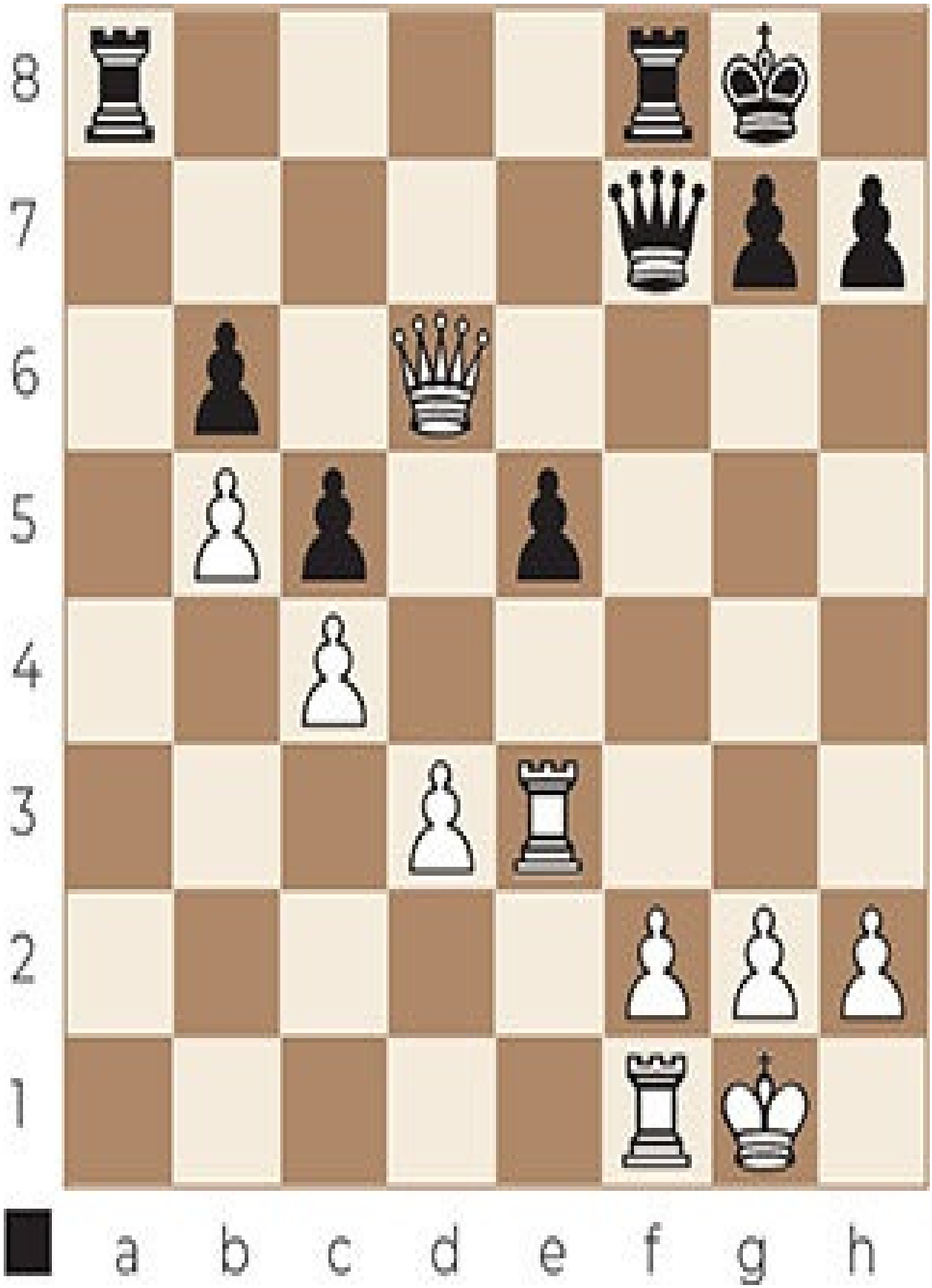
21.♕xd1 ♕xg2# (Damiano's bishop mate). White's queen is overloaded: she needs to guard both the back rank and g2.

21...♕xg2+ 22.♕xg2 ♖xf1#

Game 230

Timmermans – Hortensius

2005


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

29...♕xf2+ 30.♖xf2 ♖a1+ 31.♖e1 ♖xe1+ 32.♖f1 ♖exf1#

Game 231

Potze – Bitalzadeh

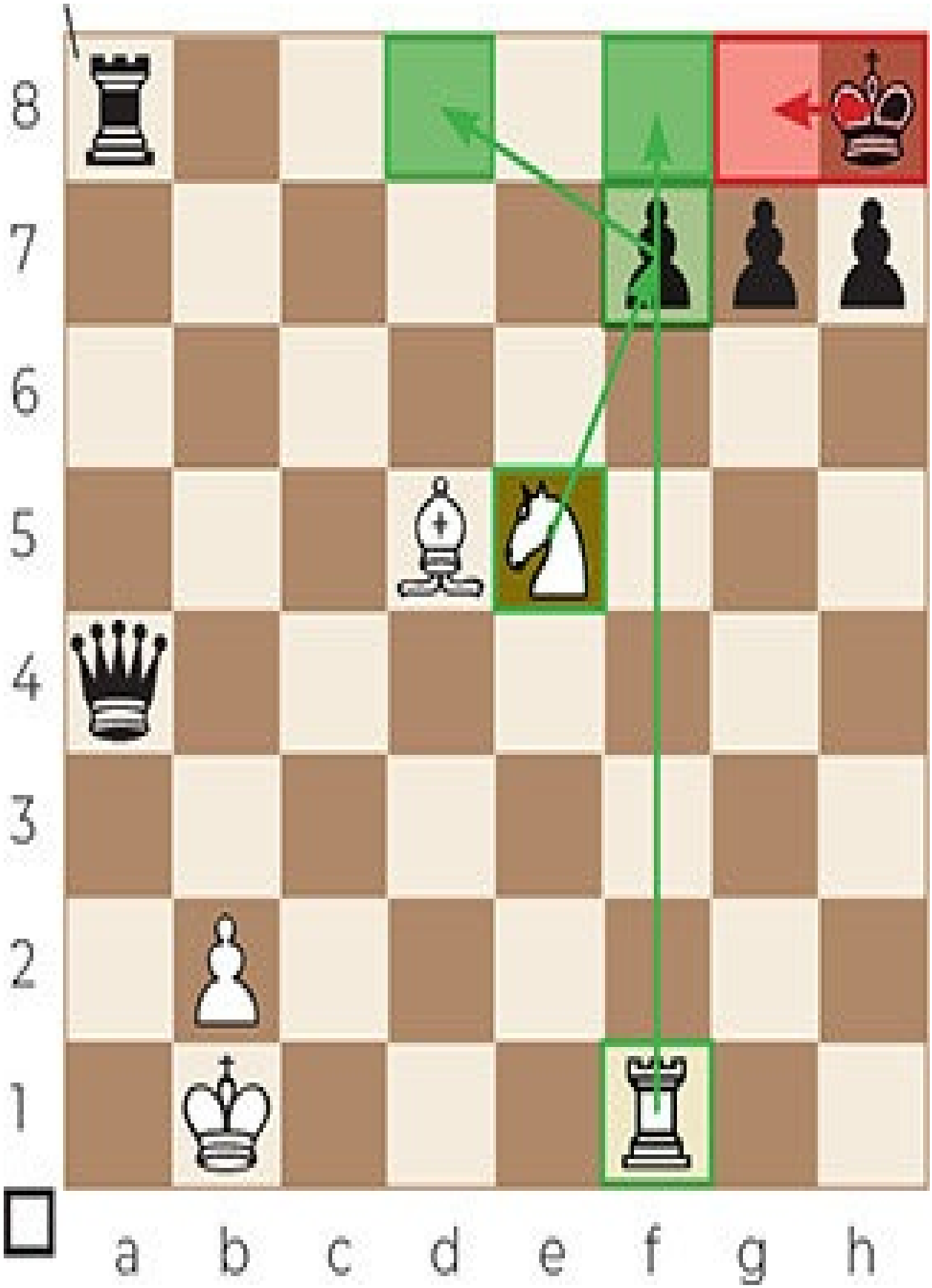
2005

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

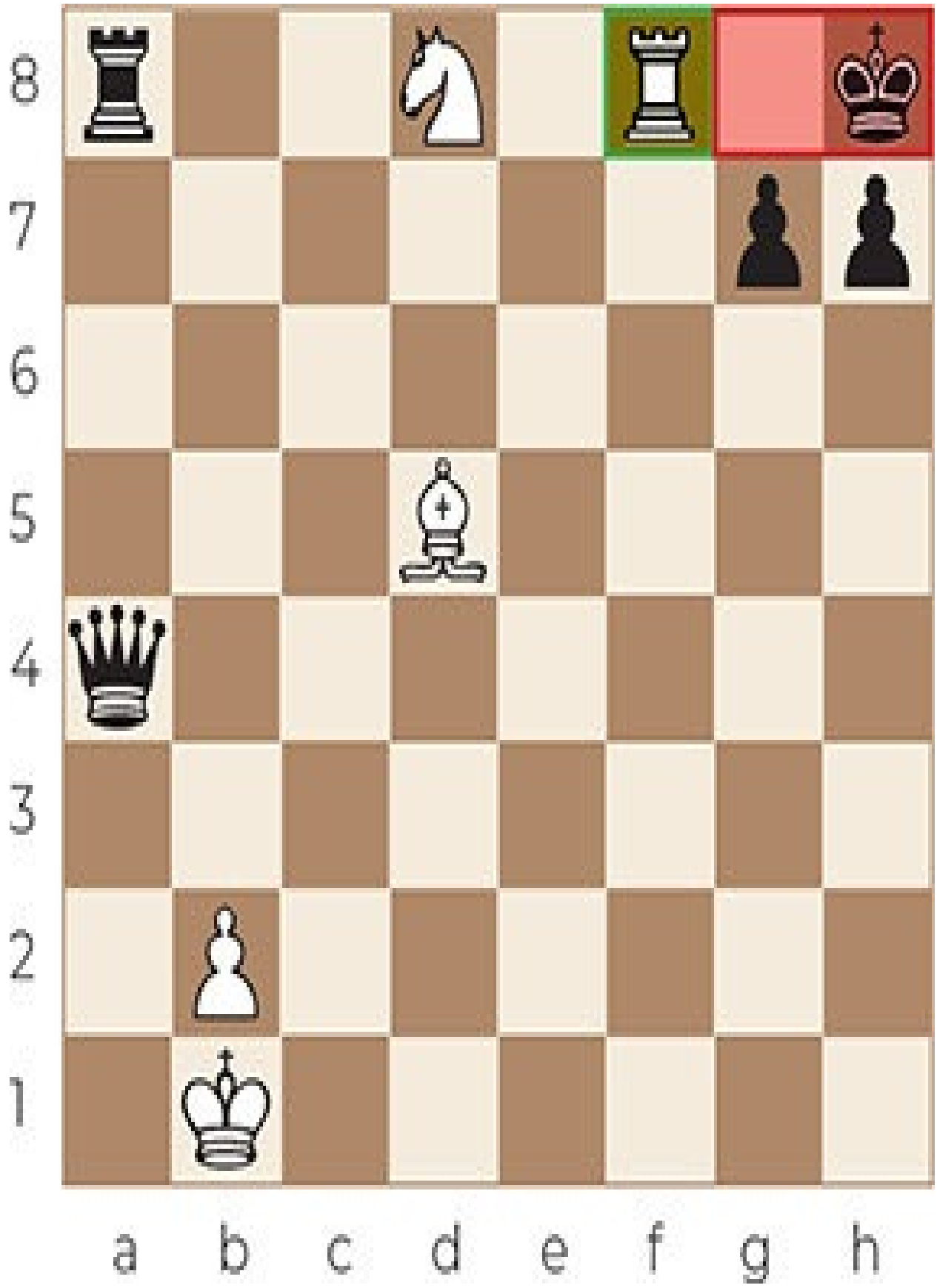
30...♕xg2+ 31.♖xg2 ♖e1+ 32.♘f1 ♖xf1#

Back rank mate 3

Occasionally, a Back rank mate is preceded by a cut-off maneuver via a discovered check with a knight on the back rank. A queen or rook will deliver checkmate on the next move.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♘xf7+ ♔g8 2.♘d8+ ♔h8 3.♖f8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 232

Fier – Eljanov

2014

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

35.♖f7+ ♔g8 36.♖xf6+ ♔h8 37.♘f7+ ♔g8 38.♘d8+ ♔h8 39.♖f8#

Game 233

La Flamme – Moore

1996

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26...♕d4+

A beautiful queen sacrifice.

27.♗xd4

27.♔h1 ♘f2+ 28.♔g1 ♘d1+, and if the bishop doesn’t take now on d4, the game will be concluded with 29.♔h1 ♖f1# (Back rank mate).

In this variation, 28...♘h3+?? (Smothered mate pattern) doesn’t work, because of 29.♔h1 ♕g1+ 30.♗xg1! and Black will lose the game.

27...♗xd4+ 28.♔h1 ♘f2+ 29.♔g1 ♘d1+ 30.♔h1 ♖f1#

Back rank mate 4

At higher levels, a Back rank mate will almost never appear on the board. However, a Back rank mate threat is sometimes used to win a piece. For the defending side, it is impossible to defend both the back rank and the piece.

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♕e4

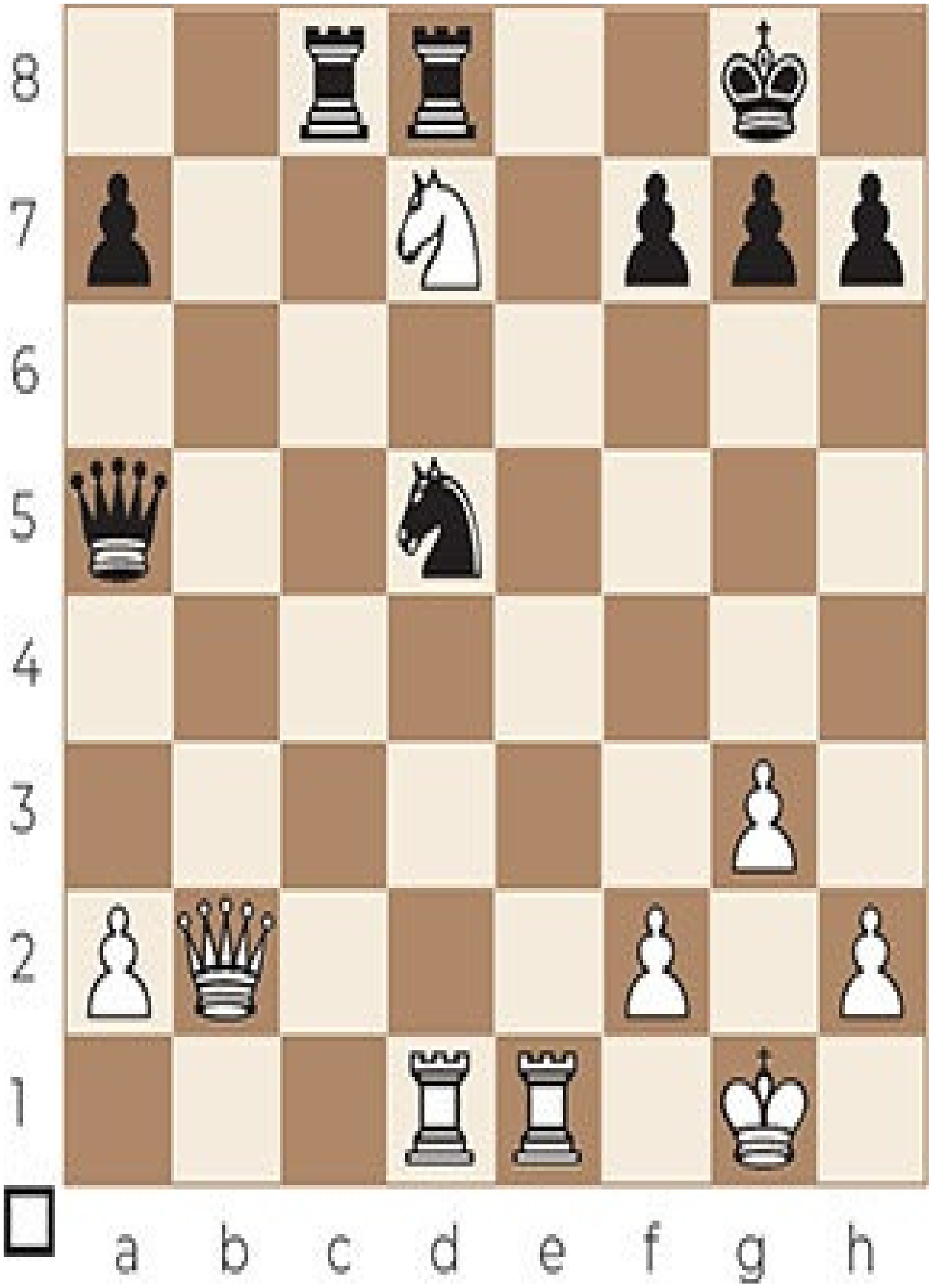
Threatening to capture the knight on f4, and 1...♕xe4 fails to 2.♖d8+ ♕e8 3.♖xe8#.

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 234

Aronian – Gelfand

2008


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26.♕e5

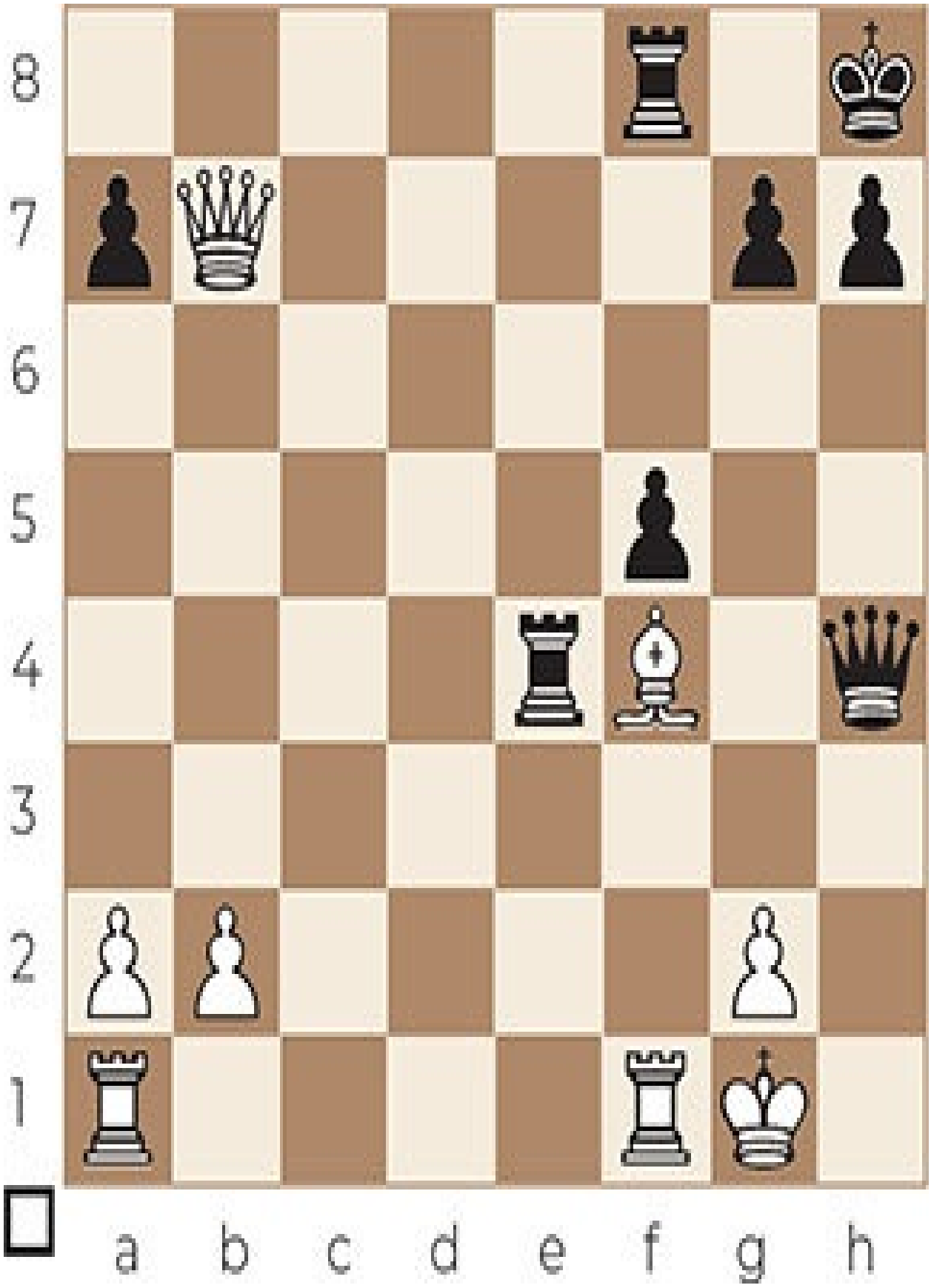
The Back rank mate threat wins material. Possible continuations:

26...♖xd7 27.♕e8+ ♖xe8 28.♖xe8# (Back rank mate), or 26...h6 27.♖xd5 (Black prevents the Back rank mate, but loses the knight).

Game 235

Velcheva – Puuska

2007


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26.♕xe4 fxe4 27.♗g5

The Back rank mate threat wins material. Possible continuations:

27...♖xf1+ 28.♖xf1 ♕xg5 29.♖f8# (Back rank mate), or 27...♖b8 28.♗xh4 (Black prevents the Back rank mate, but loses the queen).

Game 236

Xie Jun – Seirawan

2002

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

24...♕e4

The Back rank mate threat wins material. Possible continuations:

25.♕xe4 ♖xd1# (Back rank mate), or 25.g3 ♕xg4 26.♖xd8 ♕f5 27.♗e7 ♔g7 28.♗xf8+ ♔f6 (White prevents the Back rank mate and loses the queen, but she is still in the game).

Game 237

Moen – Topalov

2013

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33... ♗h6

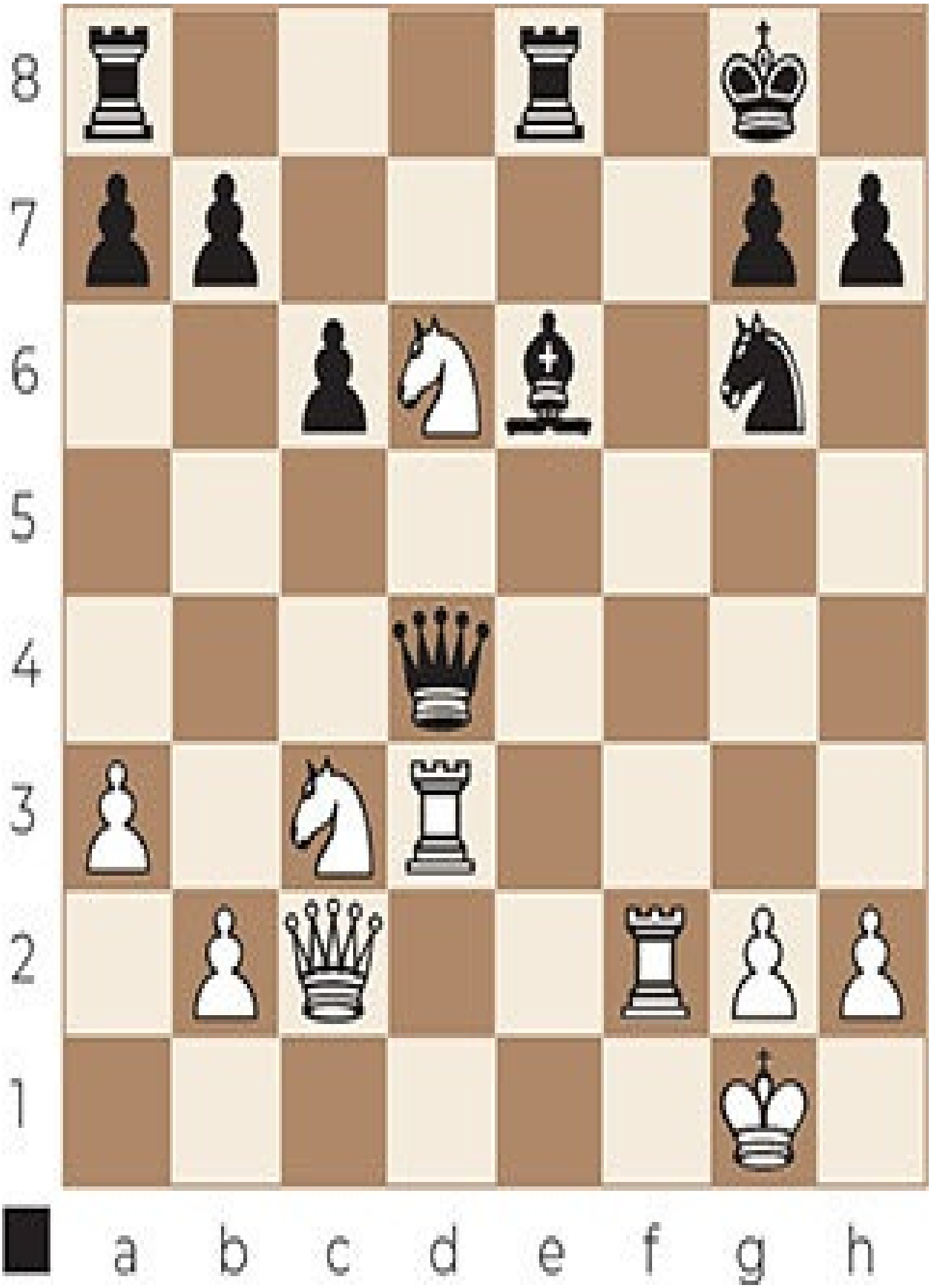
The Back rank mate threat wins material. Possible continuations:

34.♕xh6 ♕e1+ 35.♖xe1 ♖xe1# (Back rank mate), or 34.♕f1 ♗xc1 35.♖xc1 (preventing the Back rank mate; White is still in the game).

Game 238

McShane – Mirumian

1999


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

22... ♗c4

The Back rank mate threat wins material. Possible continuations:

23.♘xc4 ♖e1# (Back rank mate), 23.♖xd4 ♖e1+ 24.♖f1 ♖xf1# (Back rank mate), or e.g. 23.♖d1 ♕xd6 (White prevents the Back rank mate but loses a knight).

CHAPTER 27

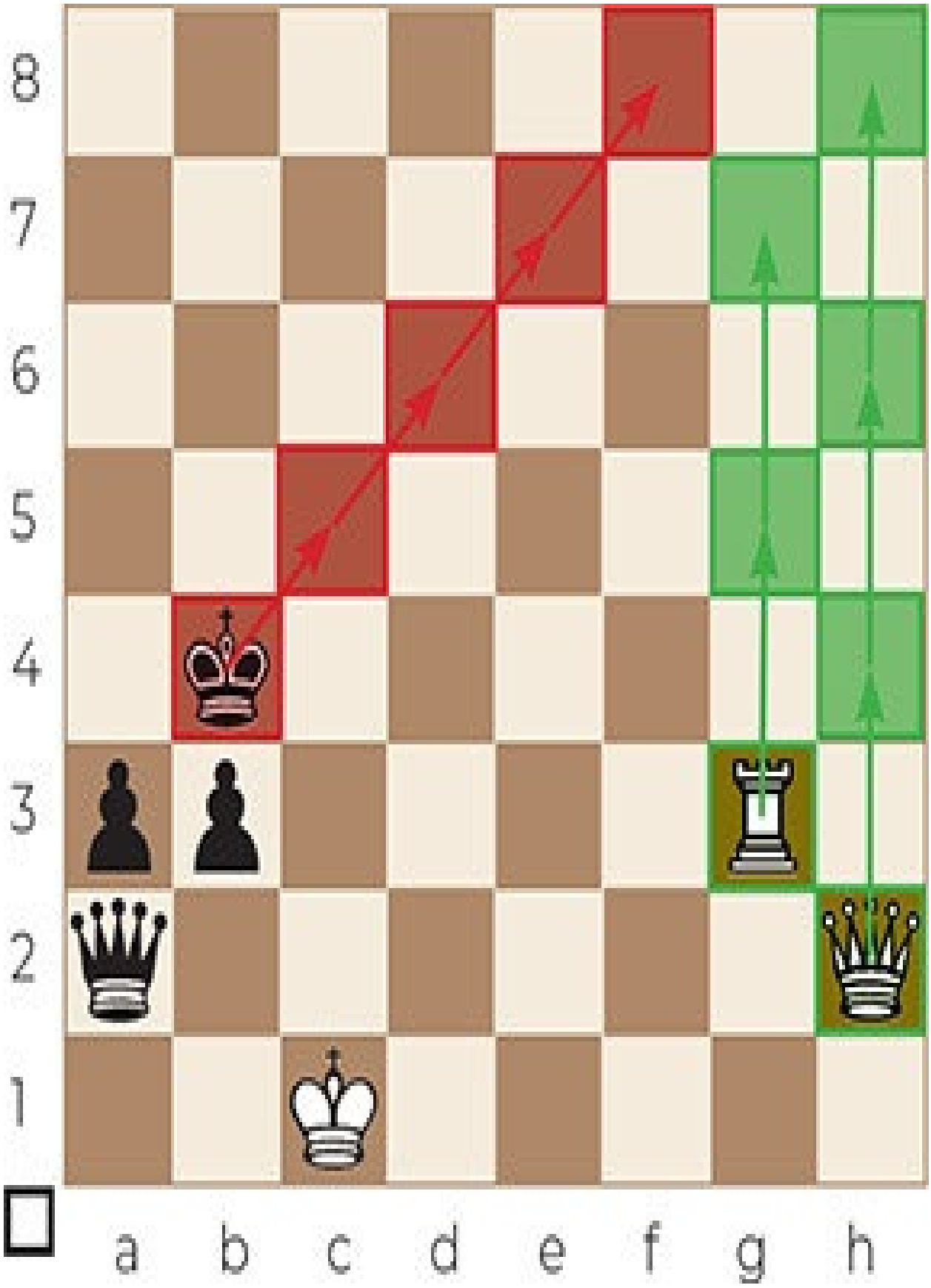
Lawnmower mate

In the Lawnmower mate, two major pieces (two rooks, two queens or a queen and a rook) deliver checkmate to the king on the edge of the board, usually without the support of other pieces. One major piece prevents the king from moving away from the edge, while the other delivers checkmate on the same rank or file as the king.

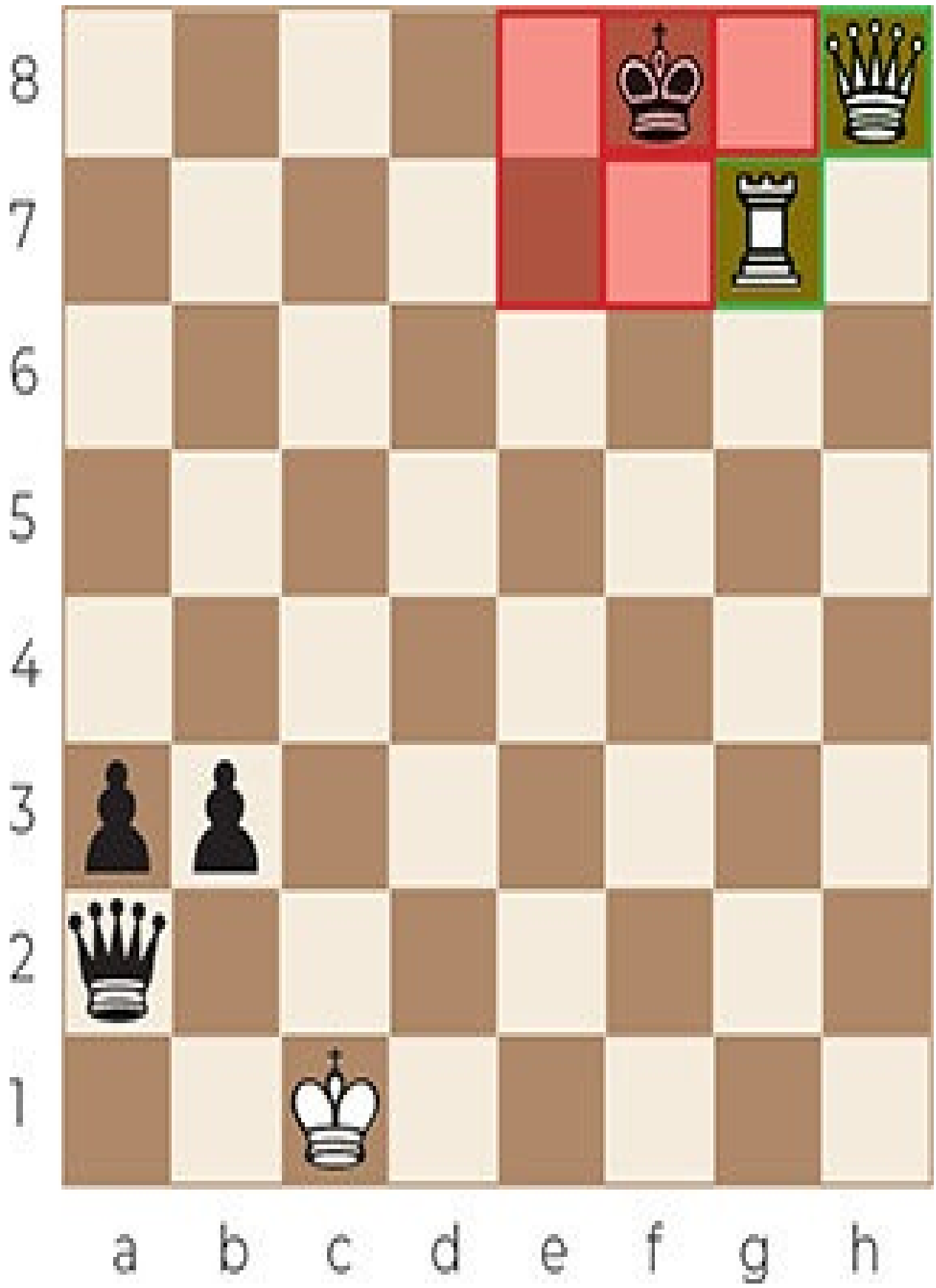
This mate has its name from the fact that the king is gradually forced to the edge of the board, one file/rank at a time, just like a lawn is mowed one strip at a time.

Lawnmower mate 1

Sometimes, the Lawnmower mate is preceded by a lot of queen and/or rook checks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

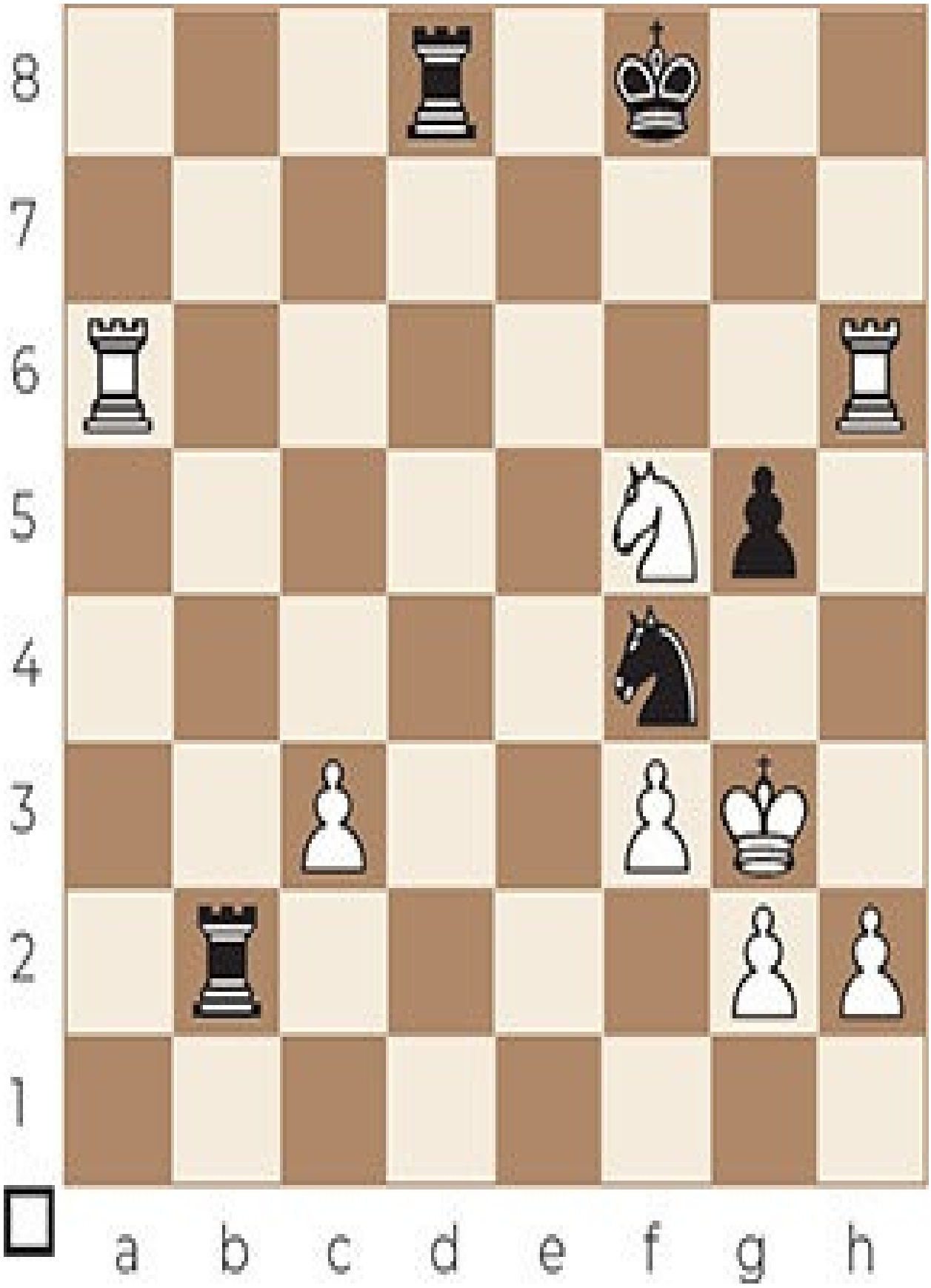
1.♕h4+ ♔c5 2.♖g5+ ♔d6 3.♕h6+ ♔e7 4.♖g7+ ♔f8 5.♕h8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 239

Volkov – Rasulov

2012


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

37.♖h8+ ♔f7 38.♖h7+ ♔e8

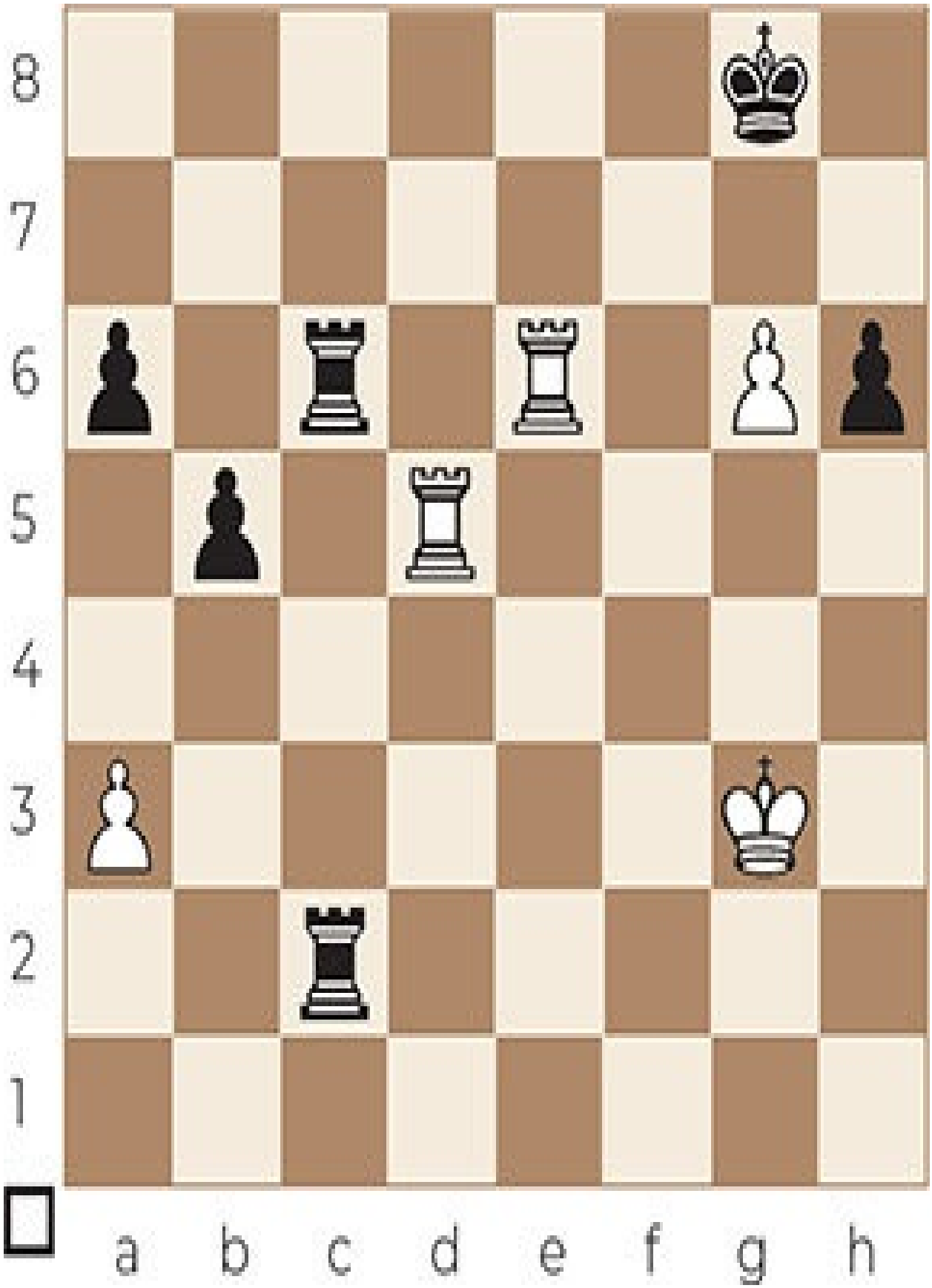
38...♔g8 39.♖g7+ ♔f8 40.♖f6+ ♔e8 41.♖e7#.

39.♖e7+ ♔f8 40.♖f6+ ♔g8 41.♖g7+ ♔h8 42.♖h6#

Game 240

Stander – De Villiers

2005

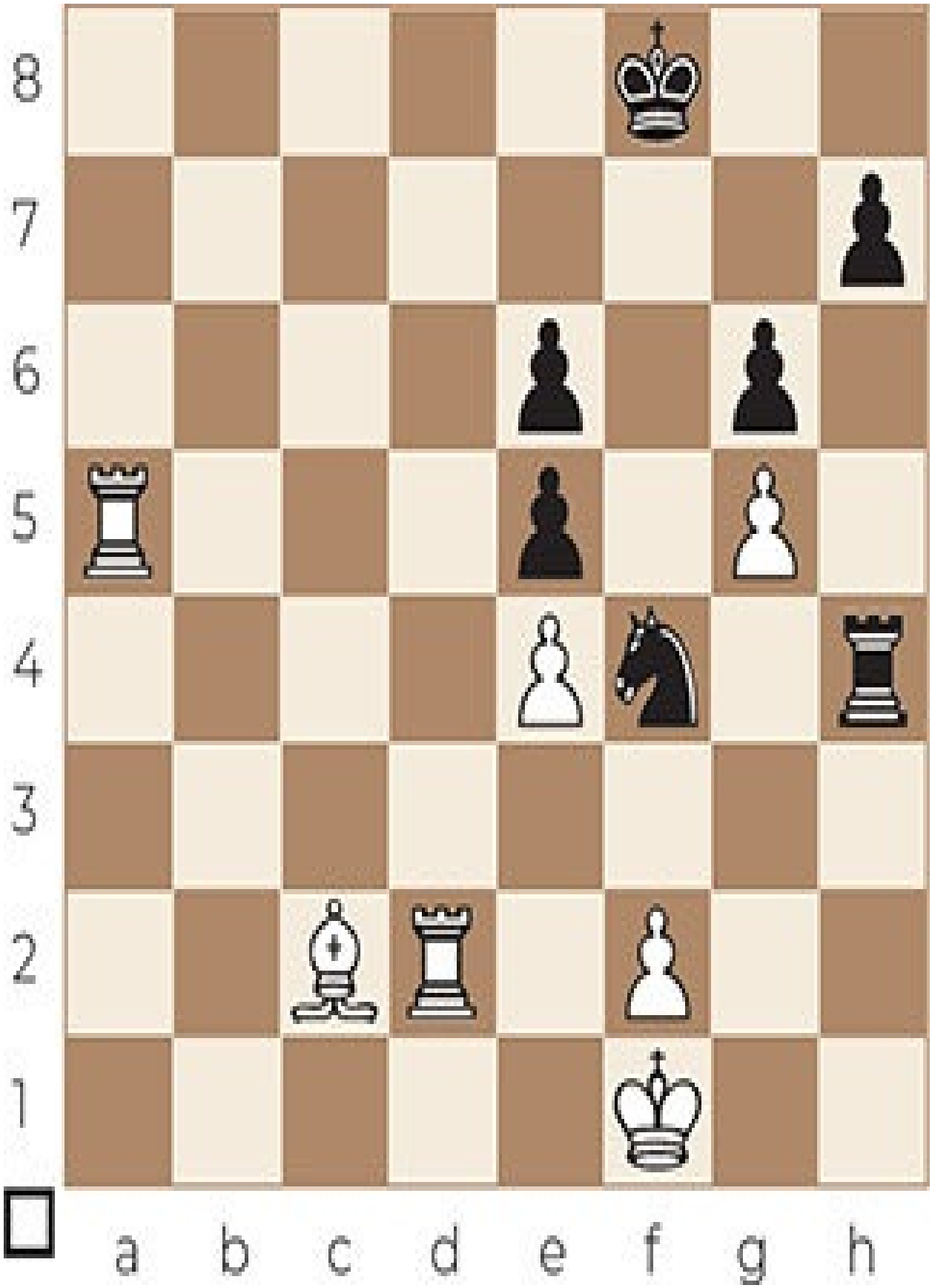

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

39.♖d8+ ♔g7 40.♖d7+ ♔f8 41.♖f7+ ♔g8 42.♖e8#

Game 241

Batsiashvili – Javakhishvili

2016

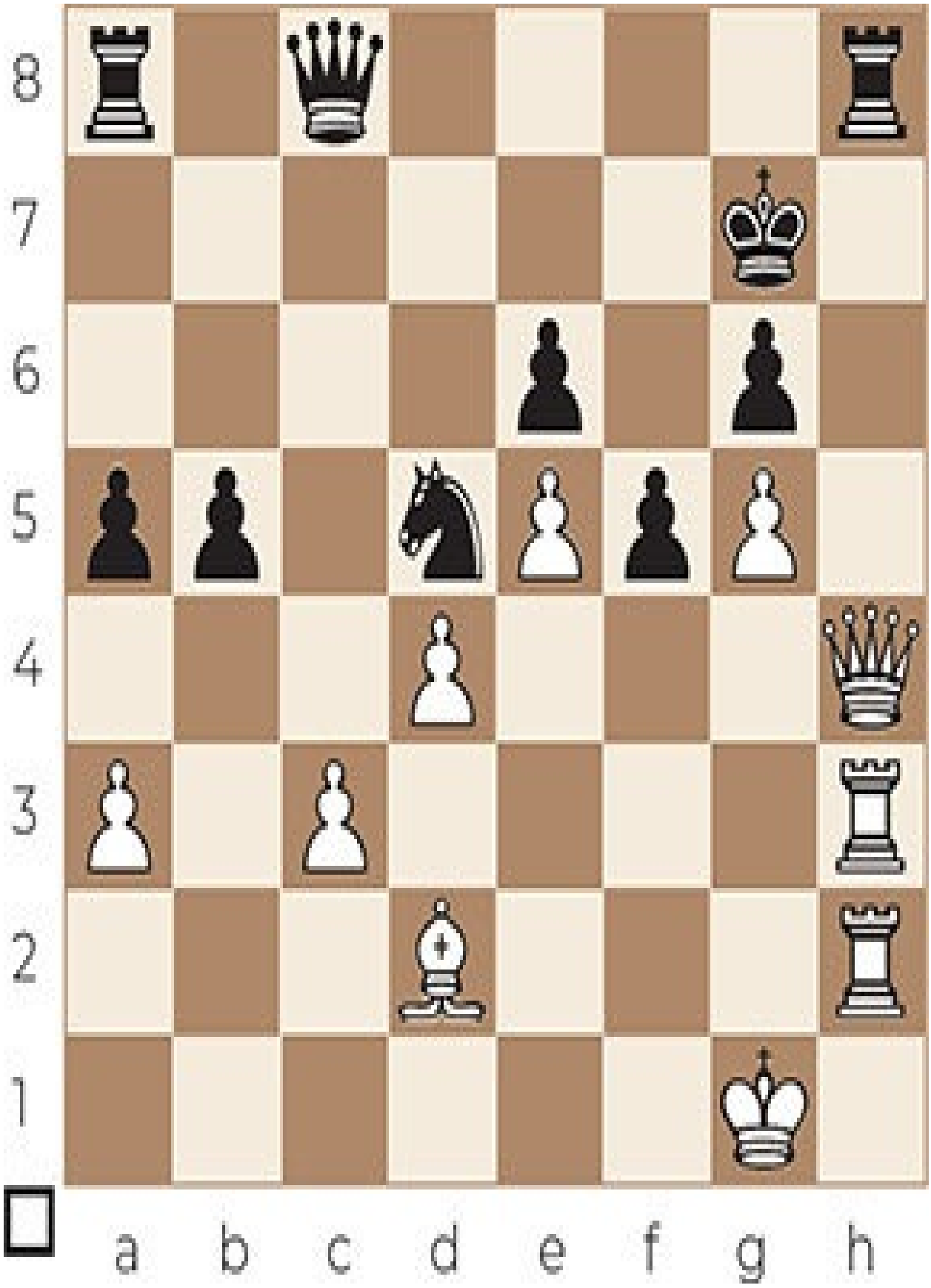

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

50.♖a8+ ♔e7 51.♖a7+ ♔e8 52.♗a4+ ♔f8 53.♖d8#

Game 242

Laco – Trombettoni

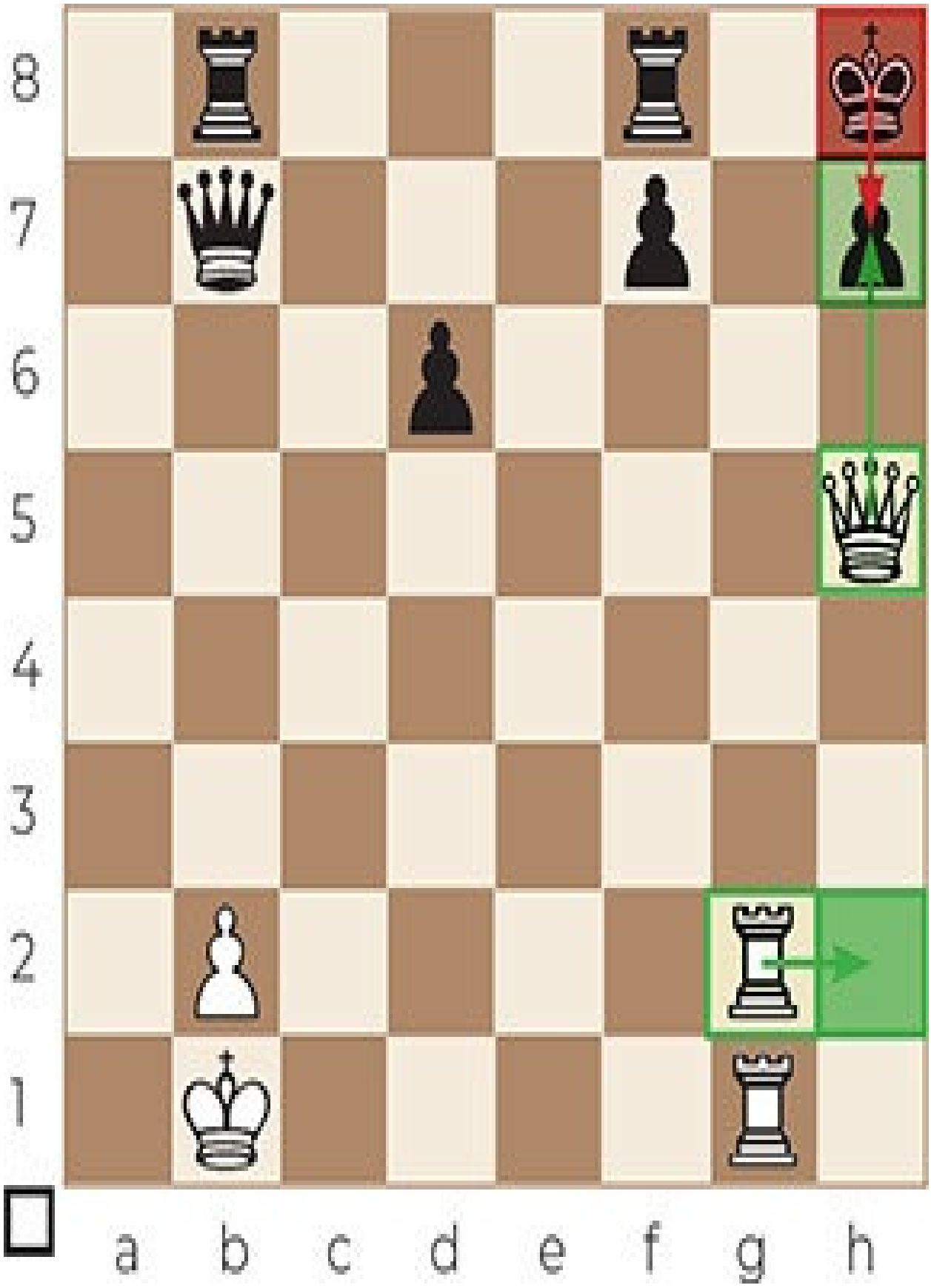
2000


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

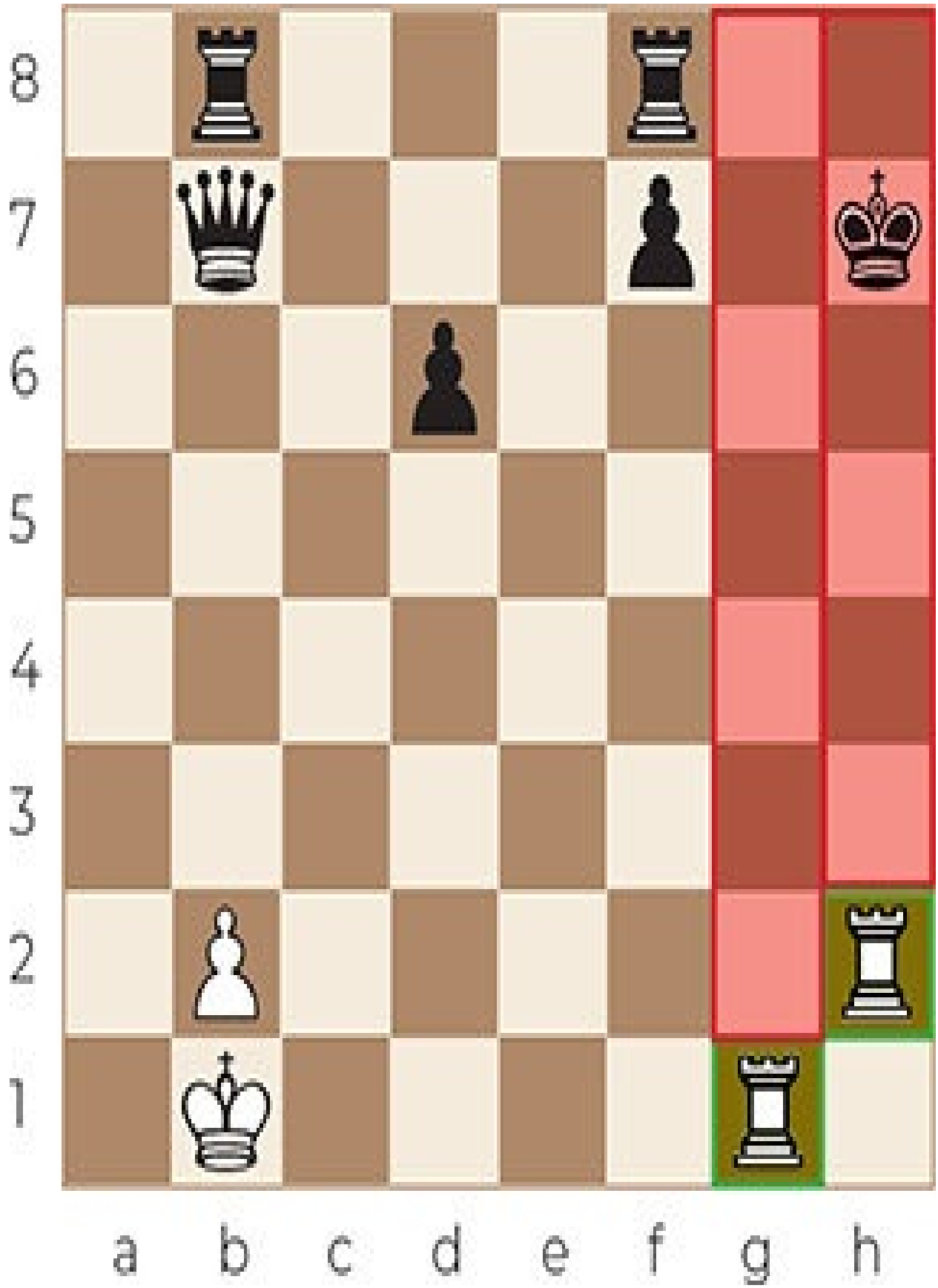
43.♕h7+ ♖xh7 44.♖xh7+ ♔f8 45.♖h8+ ♔e7 46.♖2h7#

Lawnmower mate 2

Sometimes, a Lawnmower mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice on h2 or h7, to open up the h-file for a rook.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

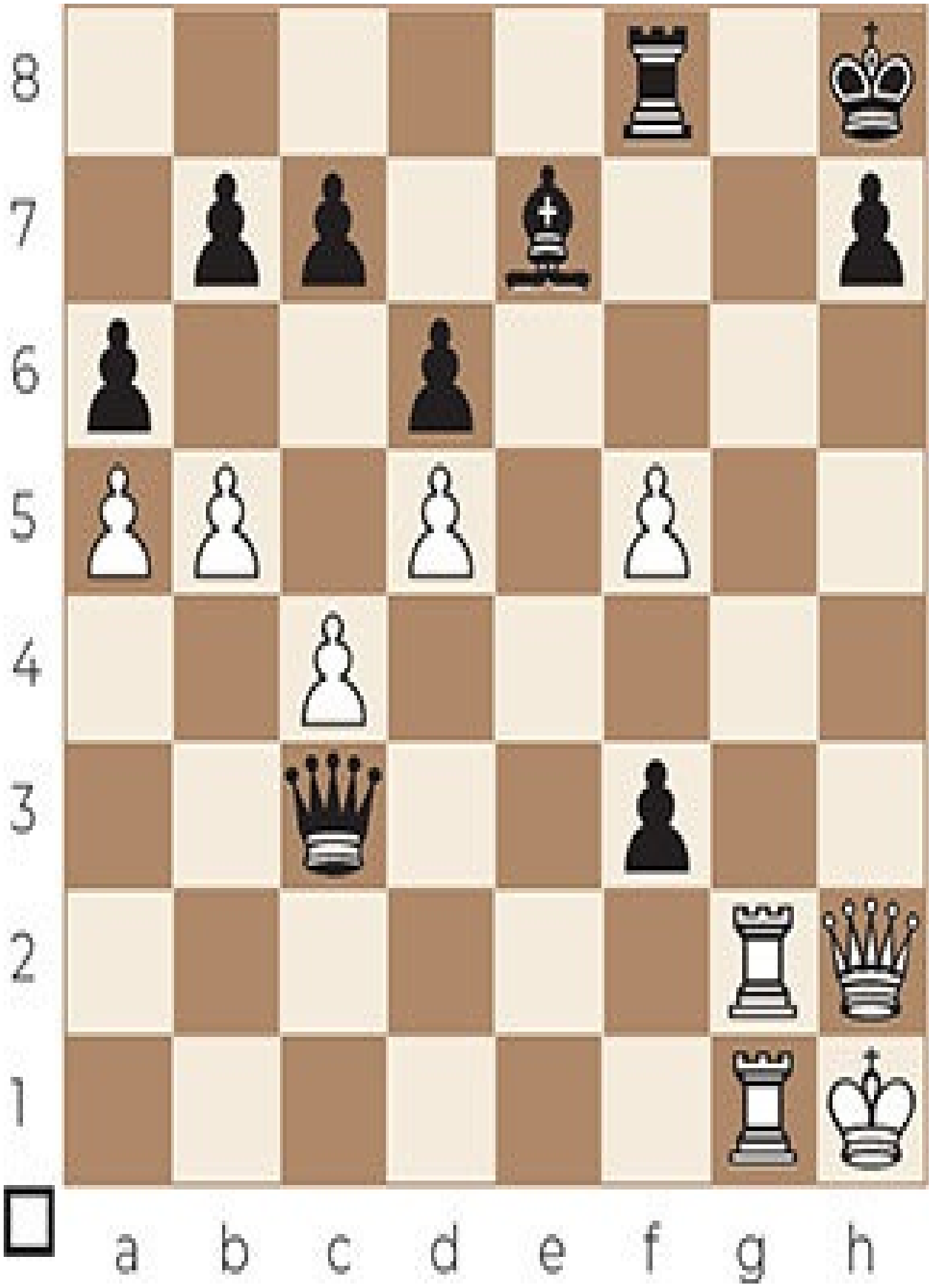
1.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 2.♖h2#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 243

Williams – Hebden

2006

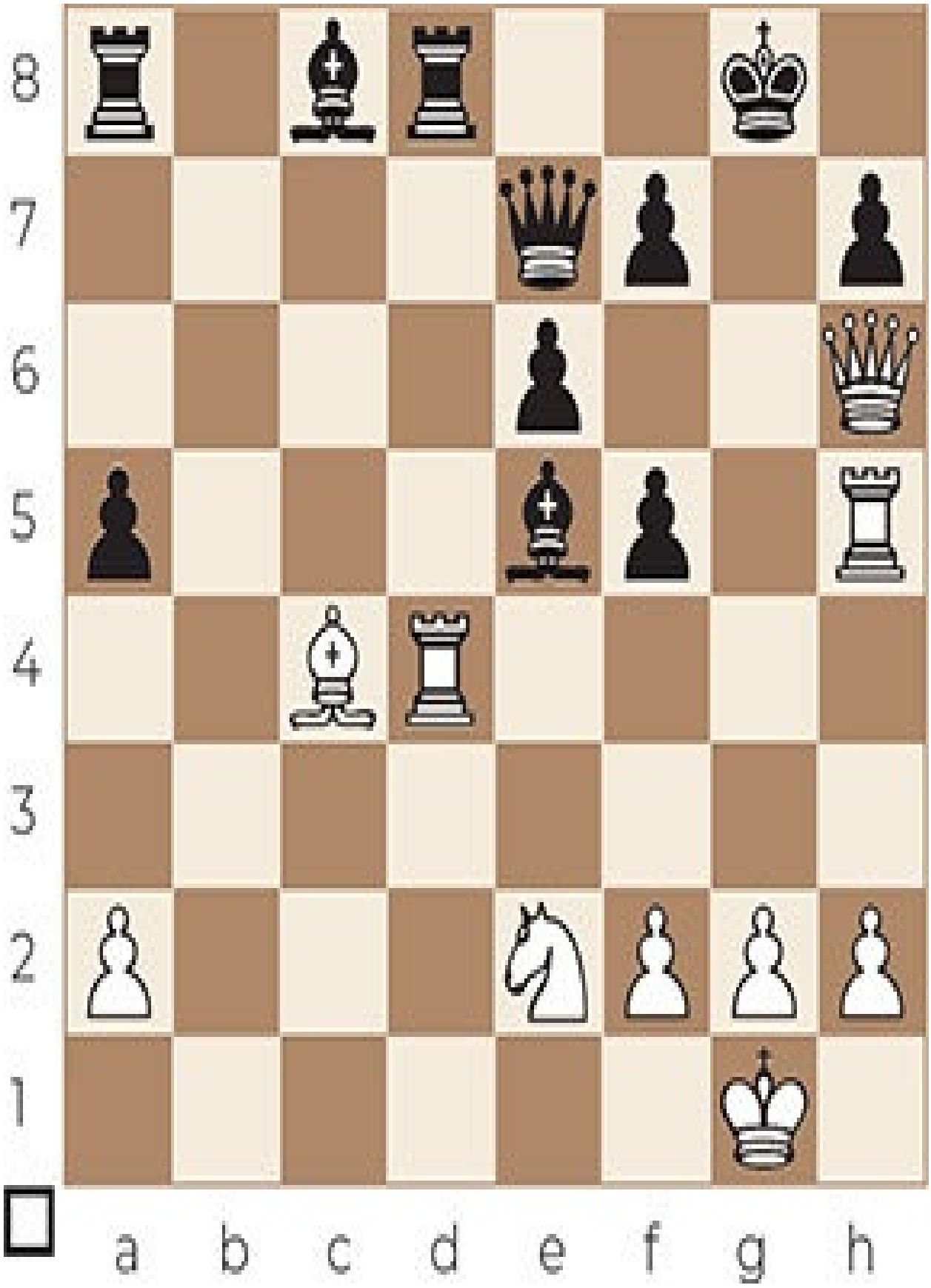

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

39.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 40.♖h2+ ♗h4 41.♖xh4#

Game 244

Kotsuba – Domnin

2001


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

25.♖g5+

The king has no defense.

25...♔h8

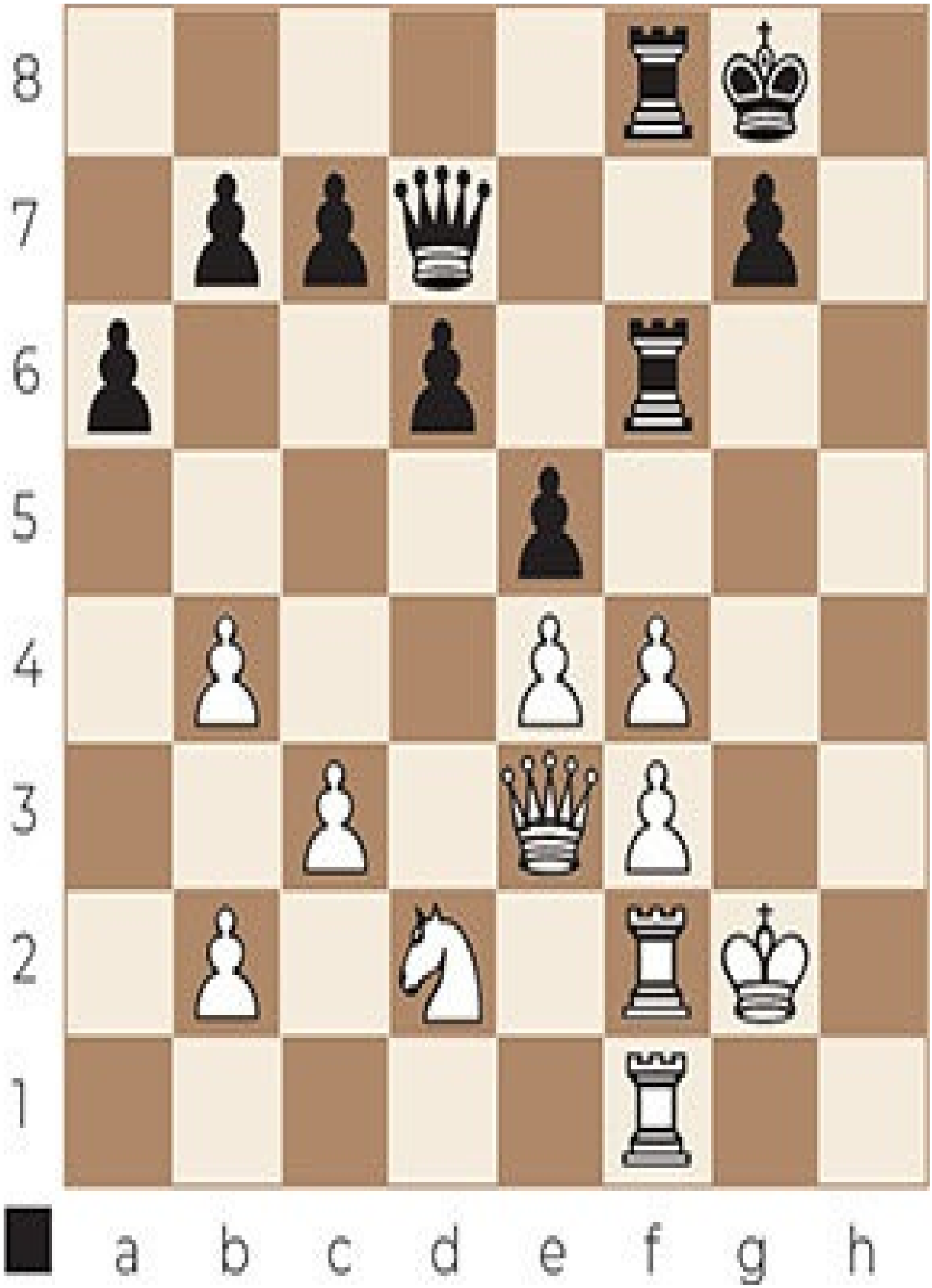
25...♕xg5 26.♕xg5+ ♗g7 27.♖xd8# (Back rank mate).

26.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 27.♖h4#

Game 245

Neiksans – Stefansson

2004


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

24...♖g6+

The white king is in serious trouble.

25.♔h1

25.♔h2 ♔f7 26.♖g2 ♕h3+ 27.♔xh3 ♖h8# (Lawnmower mate).

25...♕h3+ 26.♖h2 ♕xh2+ 27.♔xh2 ♔f7 28.fxe5 ♖h8+ 29.♕h6 ♖hxh6#

Game 246

Prokopp – Scholz

1996

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

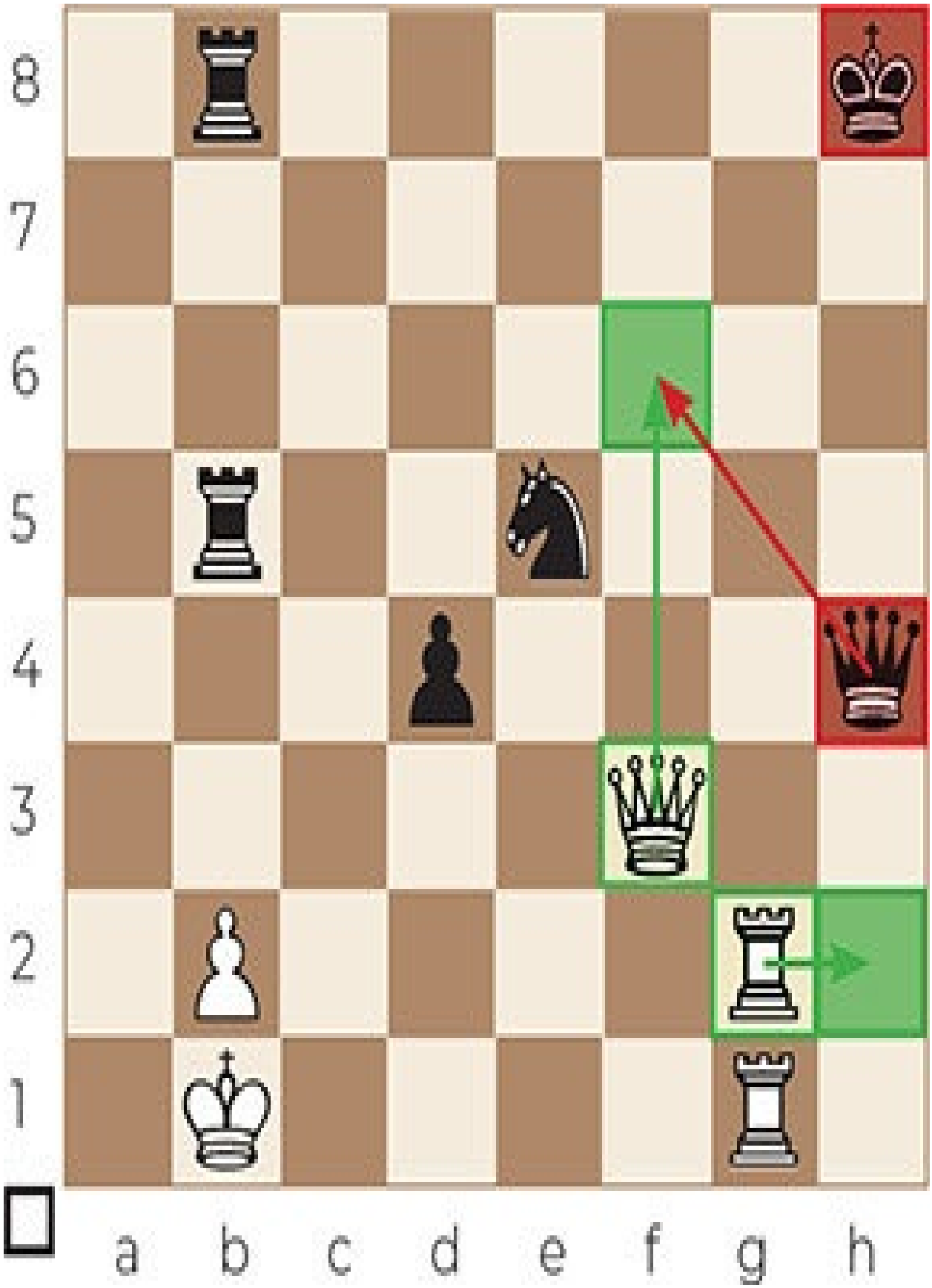
25...♕xh2+ 26.♔xh2 ♖f6 27.♗xh7+ ♔h8

27...♔xh7 would be a mistake, in view of 28.♕c2+! ♗f5 29.♕g2!! ♖h6+ 30.♔g1 ♖xg2+ 31.♔xg2. White is better now.

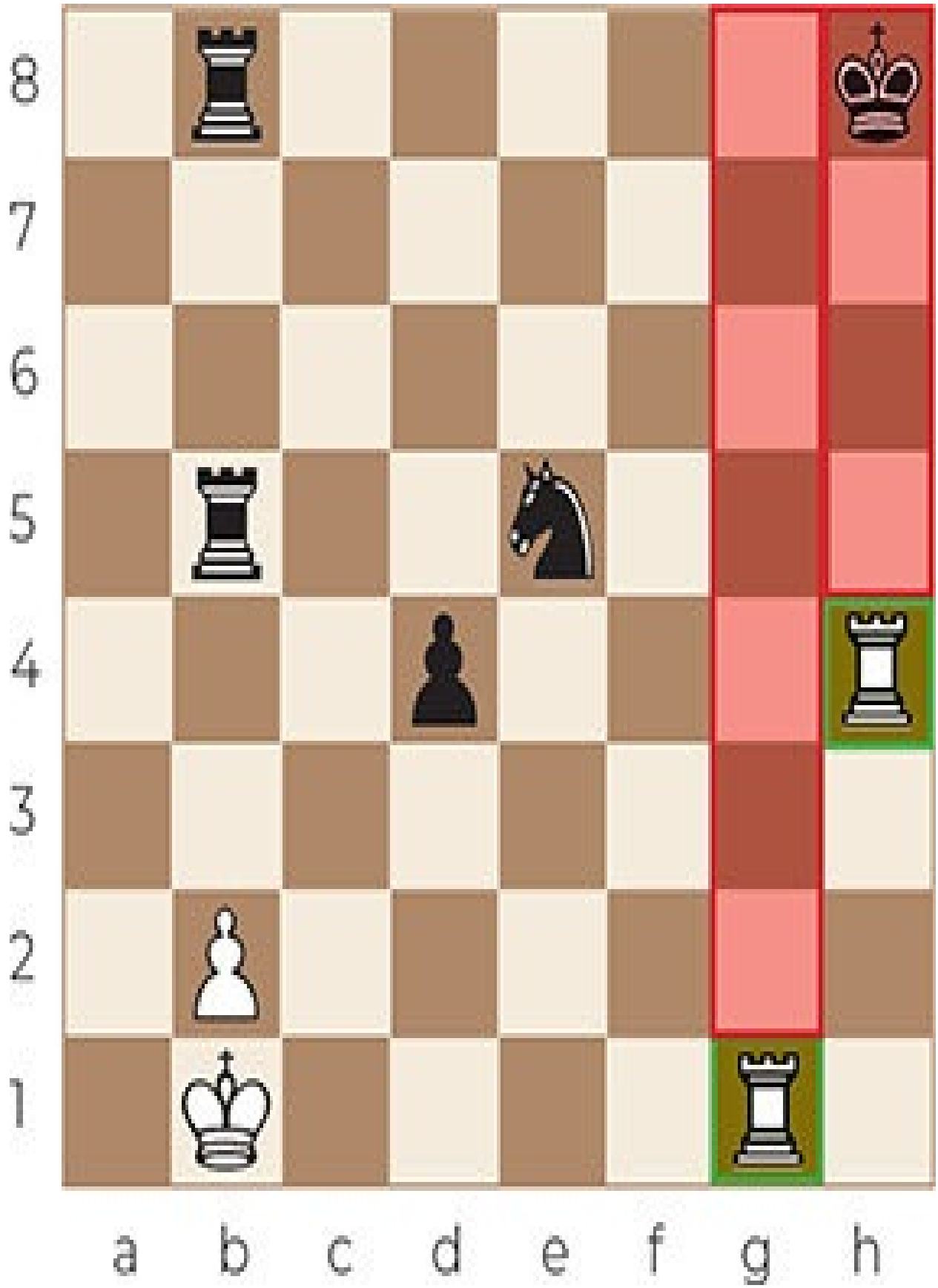
28.♗g6 ♖fxg6 29.f4 ♖h6+ 30.♕h5 ♖hxh5#

Lawnmower mate 3

Sometimes, a Lawnmower mate is preceded by a queen sacrifice other than on h2 or h7, to remove or decoy a key defender of the king.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

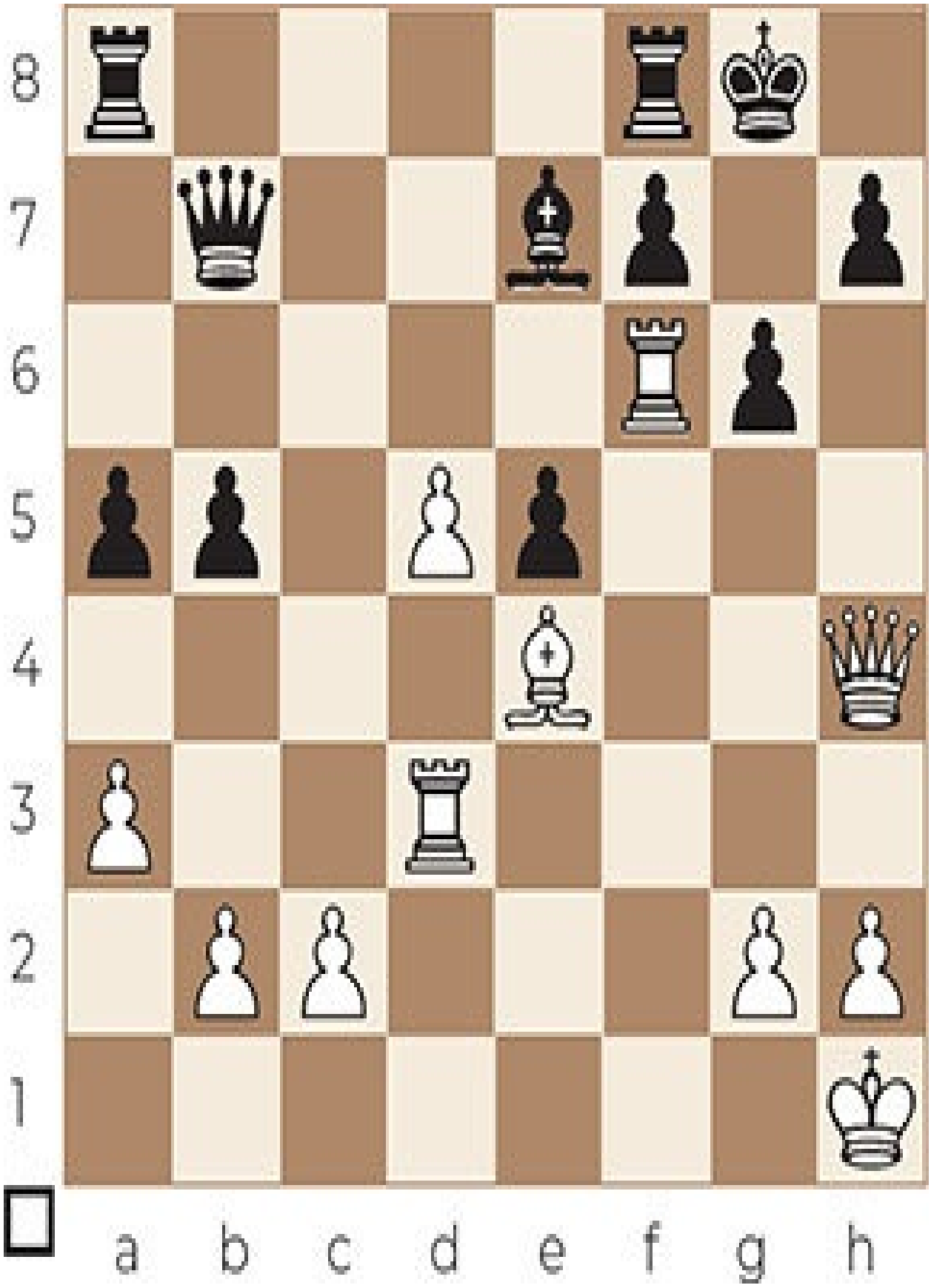
1.♕f6+ ♕xf6 2.♖h2+ ♕h4 3.♖xh4#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 247

Kobalia – Van Wely

2010


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

29.♖h3 h5

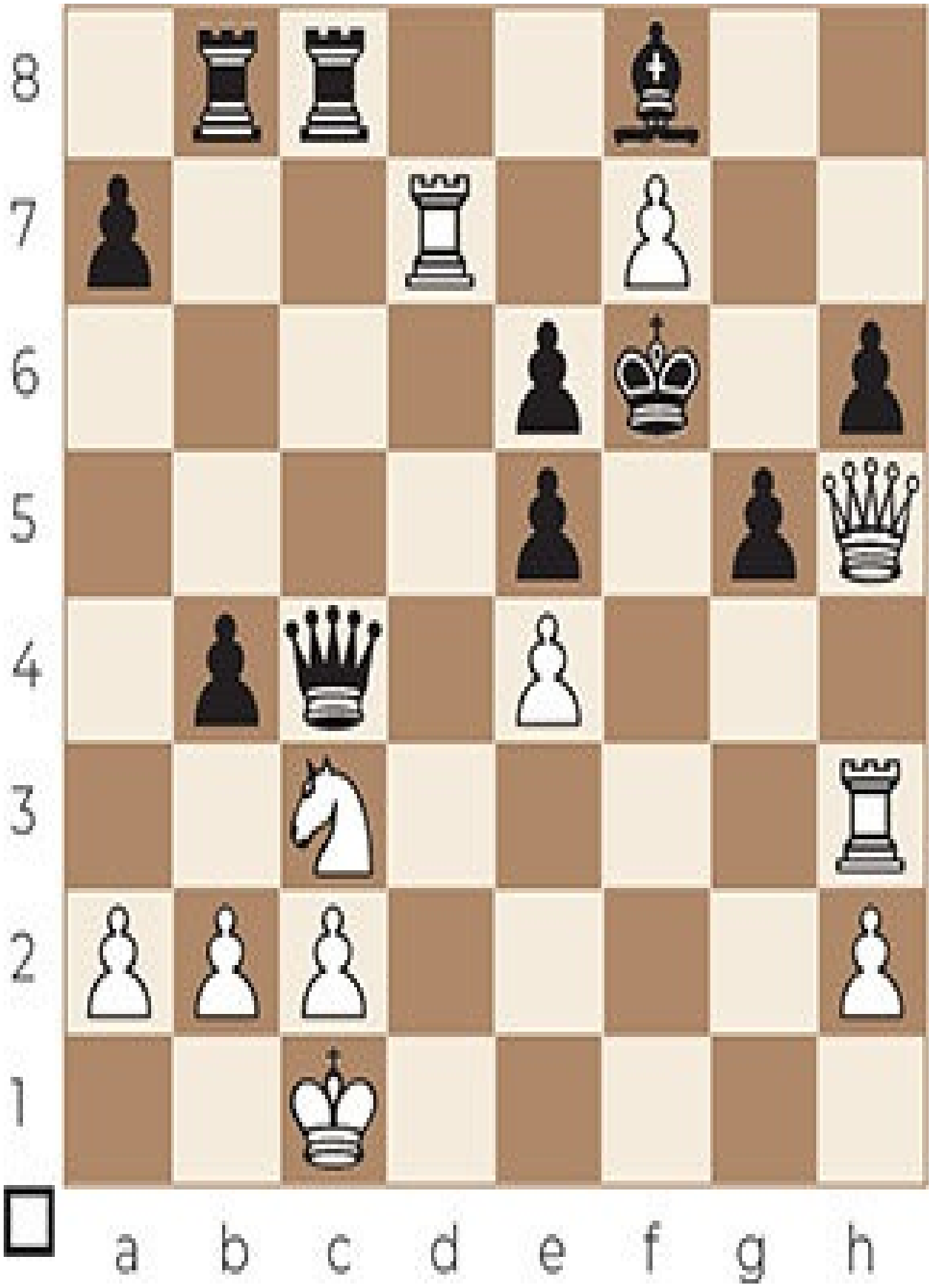
29...♔g7 30.♕h6+ ♔xf6 31.♖f3#.

30.♕xh5 gxh5 31.♖g3+ ♔h8 32.♖h6#

Game 248

Hou Yifan – Sebag

2011


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

30.♕xh6+ ♗xh6 31.♖xh6+ ♔g7 32.f8♕+ ♔xf8 33.♖h8#

Game 249

Karakehajov – Thesing

2006

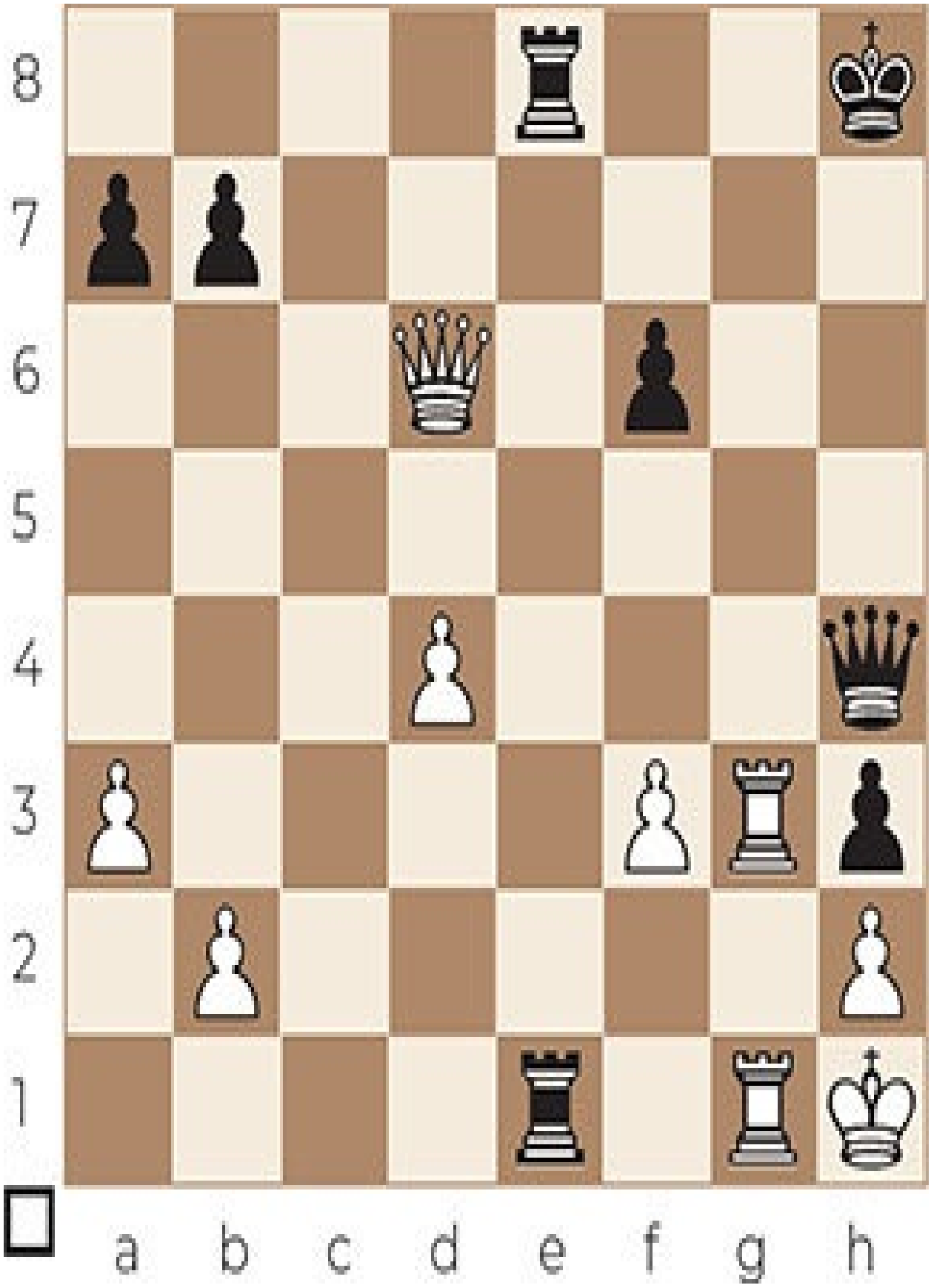
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28.♕xe7+ ♔xe7 29.♗xc5+ ♔f7 30.♖e7#

Game 250

Knaak – Luther

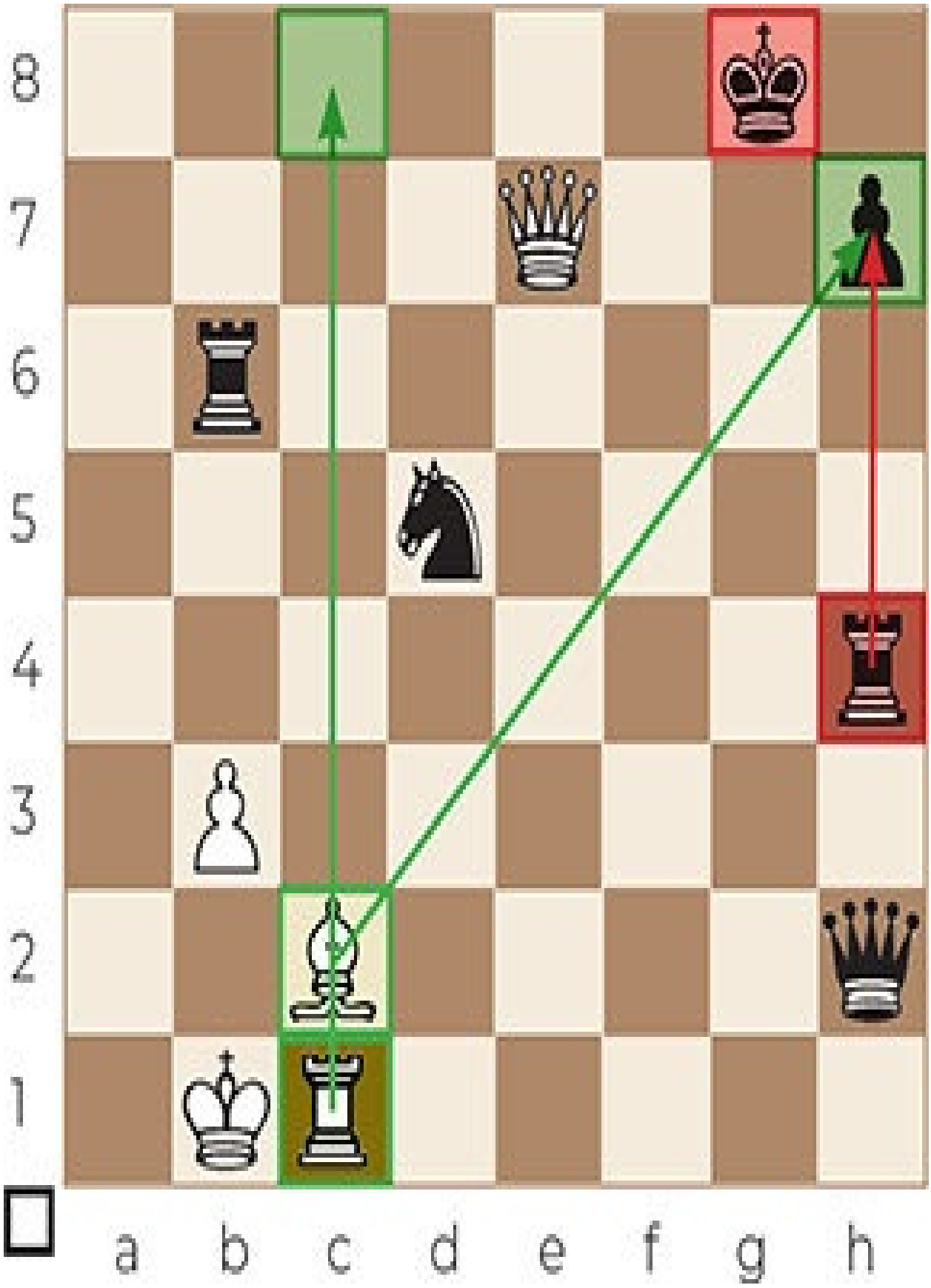
1988


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

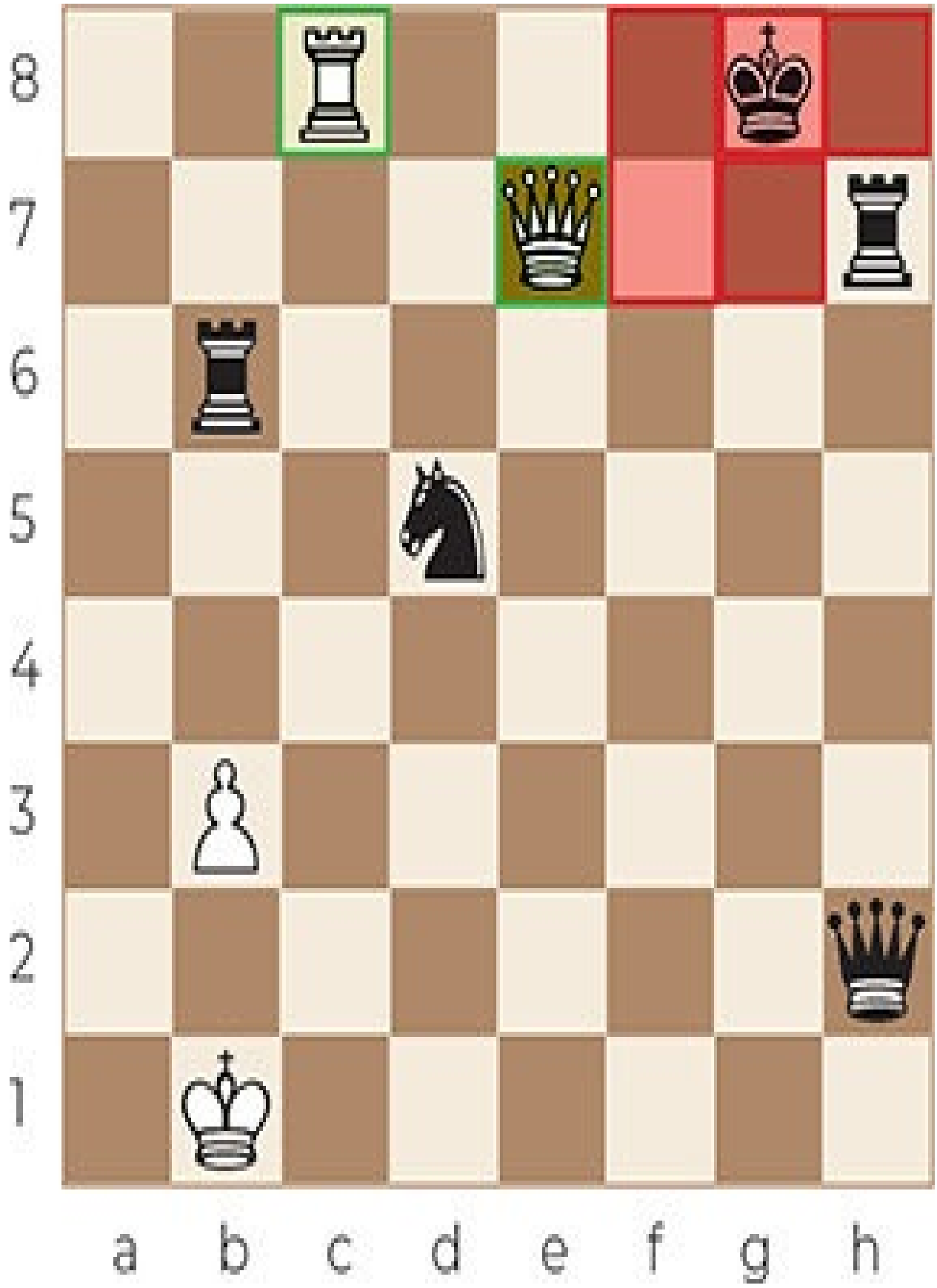
50.♕xf6+ ♕xf6 51.♖xh3+ ♕h6 52.♖xh6#

Lawnmower mate 4

Sometimes, a Lawnmower mate is preceded by one or more sacrifices to open up a rank or file for one of the rooks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

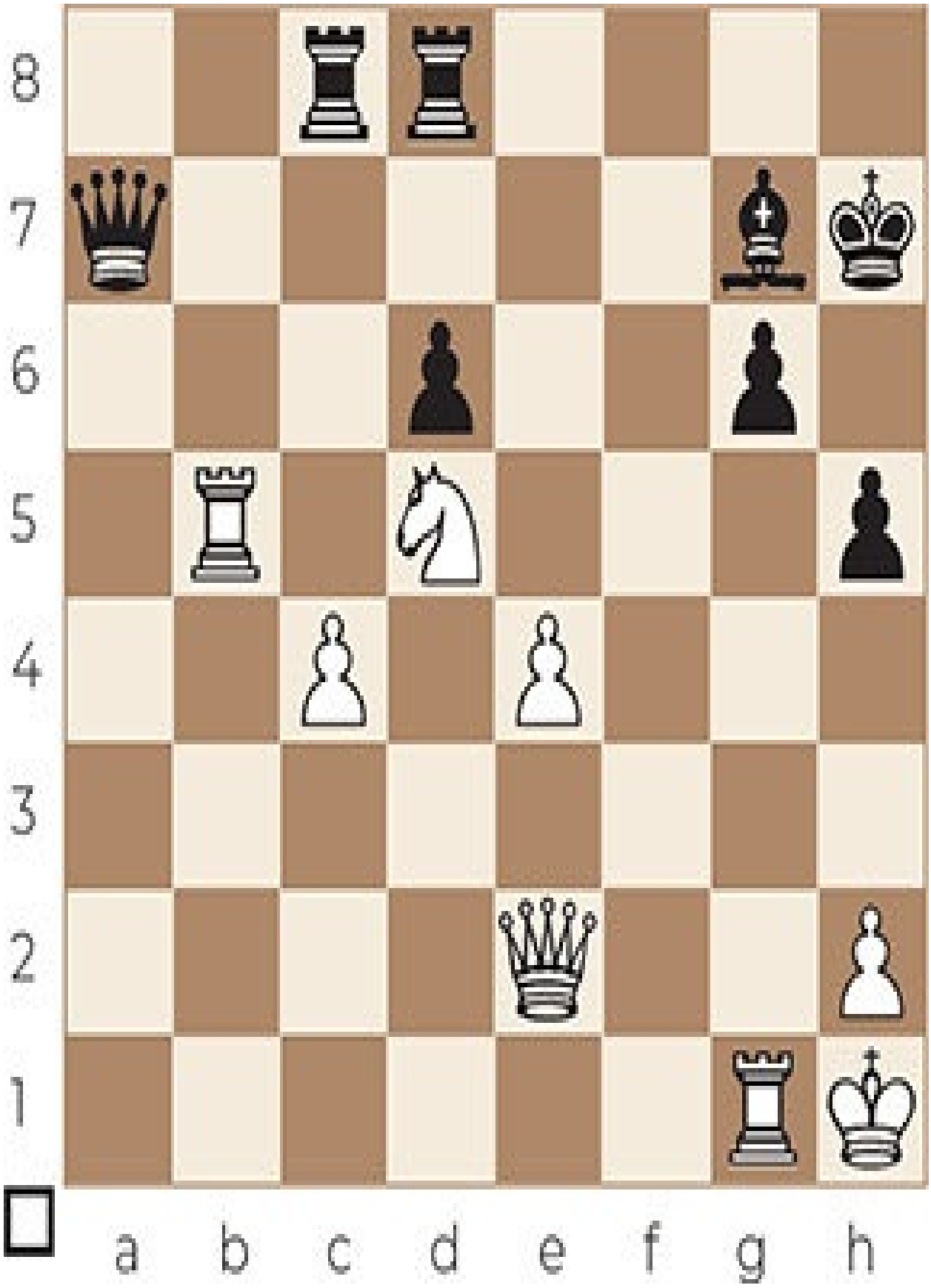
1. ♗xh7+ ♖xh7 2. ♖c8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 251

Bologan – Van Haastert

2005


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

40.♕xh5+ gxh5

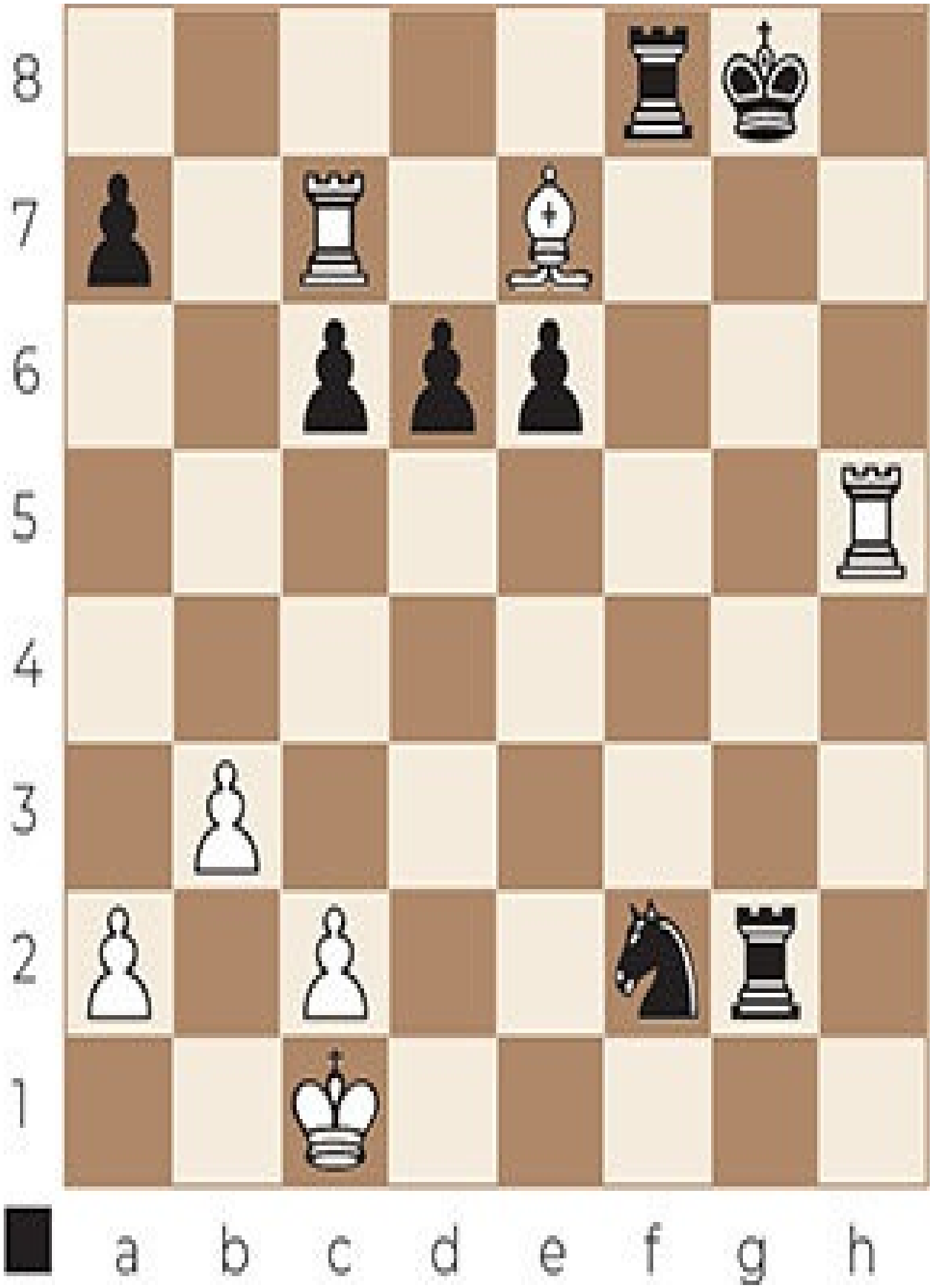
40...♔g8 would have been more challenging for White. White is winning after 41.♕xg6 ♖f8 42.♕e6+ ♔h8 43.♘e7 (blocking off the 7th rank for the queen, opening the 5th rank for his own rook and guarding important squares on the g-file) 43...♖c5 44.♕h3+.

41.♘f6+ ♗xf6 42.♖xh5#

Game 252

Kroeze – Reinderman

2014

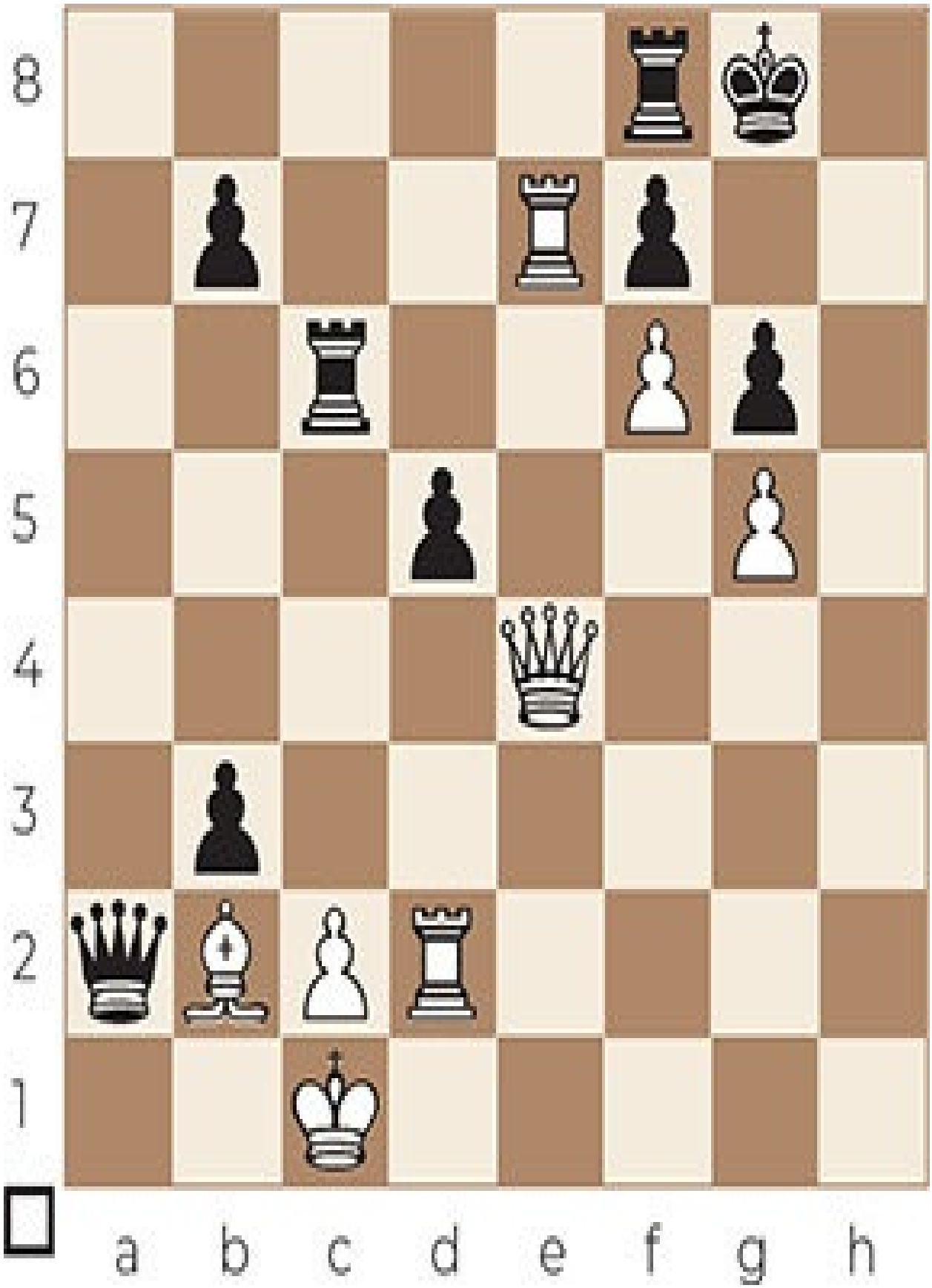

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

34...♘d3+ 35.cxd3 ♖f1#

Game 253

Van der Weide – Van Baarle

1970


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

36.♕xg6+ fxg6 37.♖g7+ ♔h8 38.♖h2#

Game 254

Jarva – Zardus

1995

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

28... ♗b5+

The lack of coordination between White's pieces is deadly.

29.♔g1

29.♖e2 (a desperate try) 29...♕xe2+ 30.♔g1 ♕f1# (Swallow's tail mate).

29... ♗xh2+ 30.♕xh2 ♖xe1#

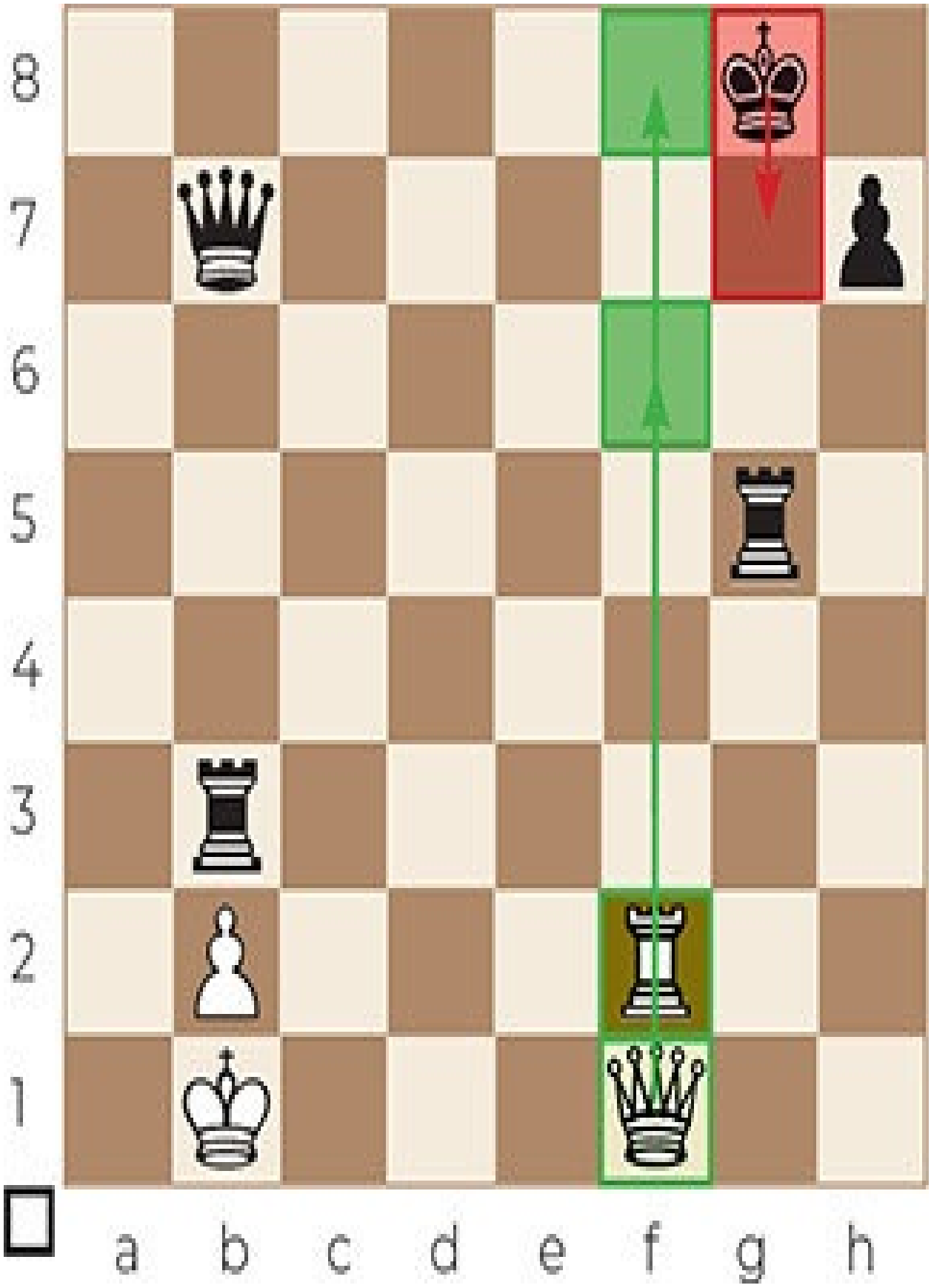
CHAPTER 28

Triangle mate

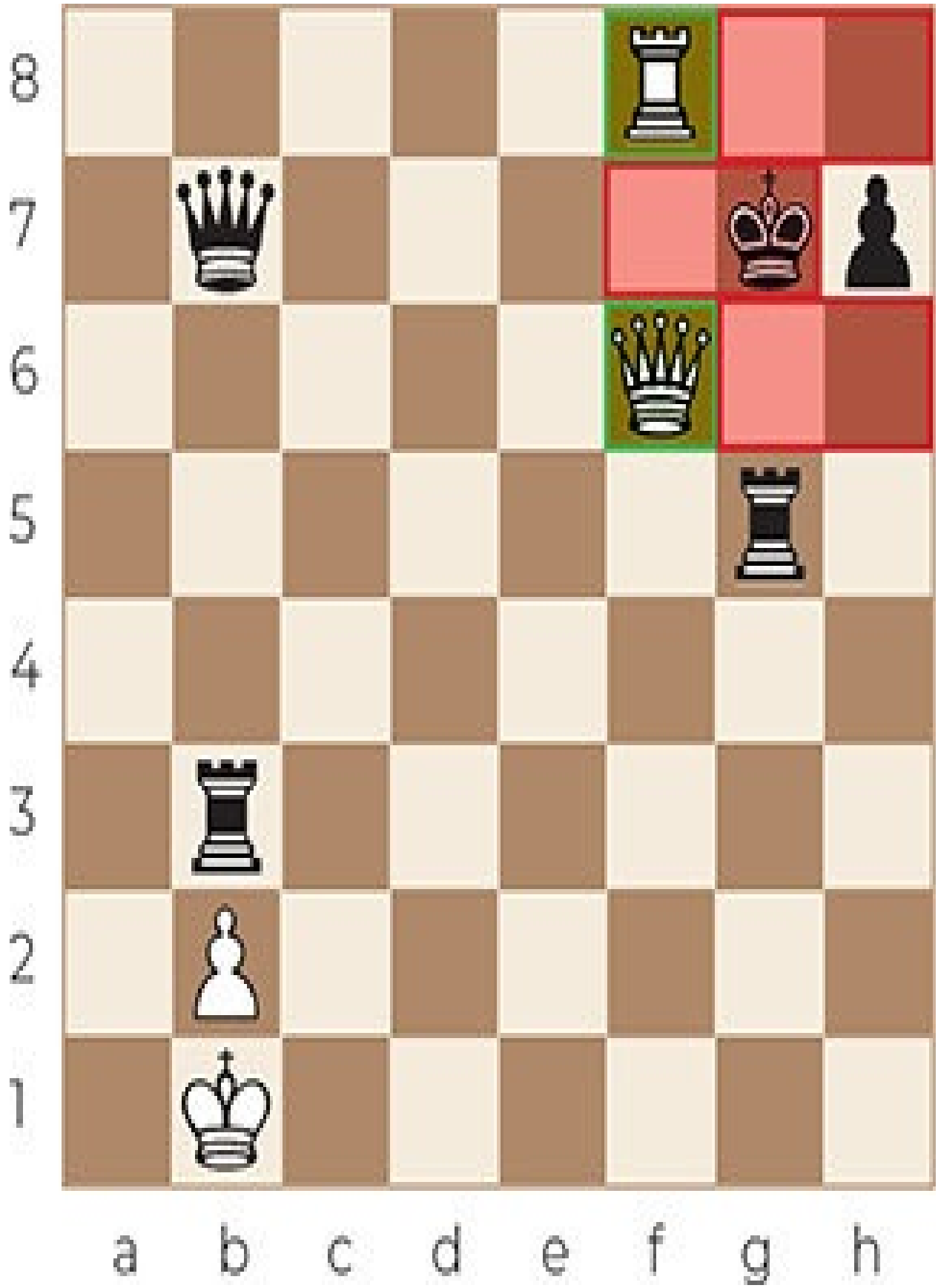
In the Triangle mate, a queen delivers checkmate to the king. The queen is supported by a rook, that also covers some escape squares. The queen, rook and king are all on the same color of squares and form a triangle. In case the mated king is on the edge of the board, no other pieces are involved. In case the mated king is not on the edge of the board, one of the opponent’s own pieces blocks the escape via the square not covered by the queen and rook.

Triangle mate 1

Often, a Triangle mate is preceded by queen and/or rook checks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

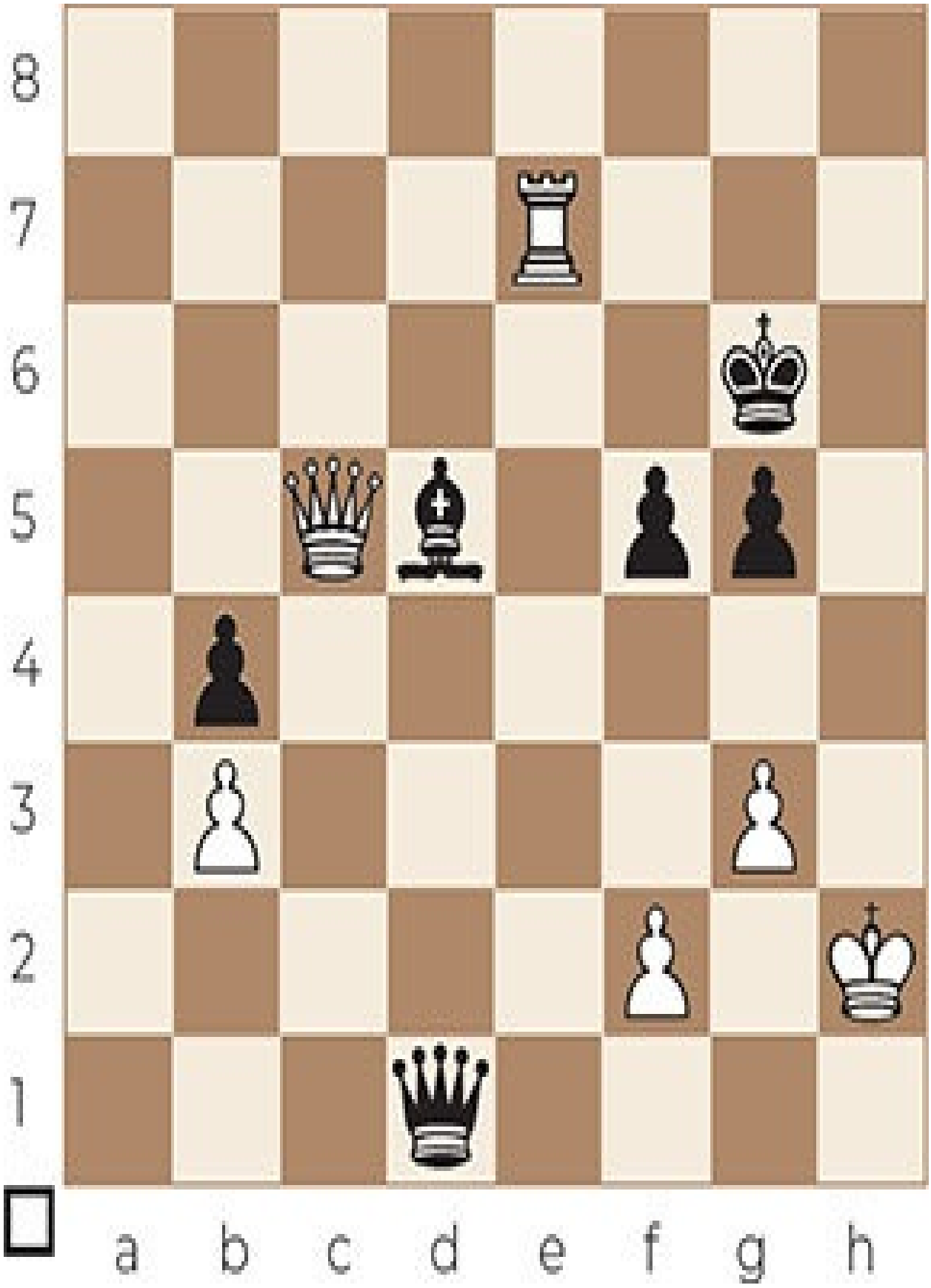
1.♖f8+ ♔g7 2.♕f6#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 255

Maier – Banusz

2012


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

50.♕d6+ ♔h5 51.g4+

Vacating the g3-square for the queen.

51...♔xg4

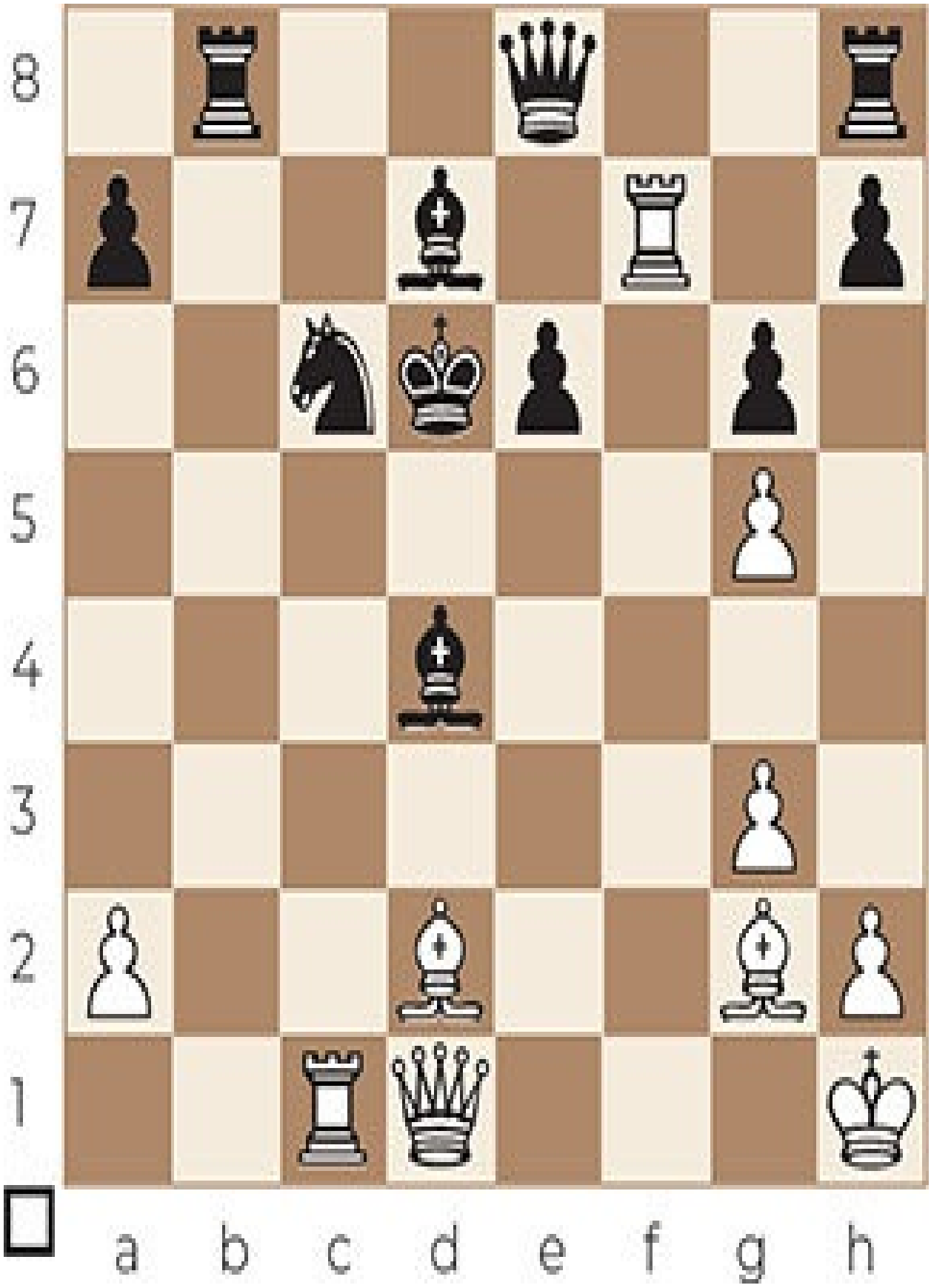
51...♔h4 52.♕g3#; 51...♕xg4 52.♖h7#; 51...fxg4 52.♖h7#.

52.♕g3+ ♔h5 53.♕h3+ ♔g6 54.♕h7+ ♔f6 55.♕g7#

Game 256

Monin – Polyakov

1997


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

23. ♗f4+

Taking advantage of the pin on the black bishop on the d-file.

23...e5

23...♘e5 24.♕xd4#.

24.♖xc6+ ♗xc6 25.♕xd4+

Black's king walking in the center is doomed.

25...♔e6

25...♗d5 26.♕xd5#.

26.♖f6+ ♔e7 27.♕d6#

Game 257

Szabo – Muhring

1946

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

26.♘g5+ fxg5 27.♖e7+ ♔f6 28.♕xg7#

Game 258

Tate – Abolianin

2000

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

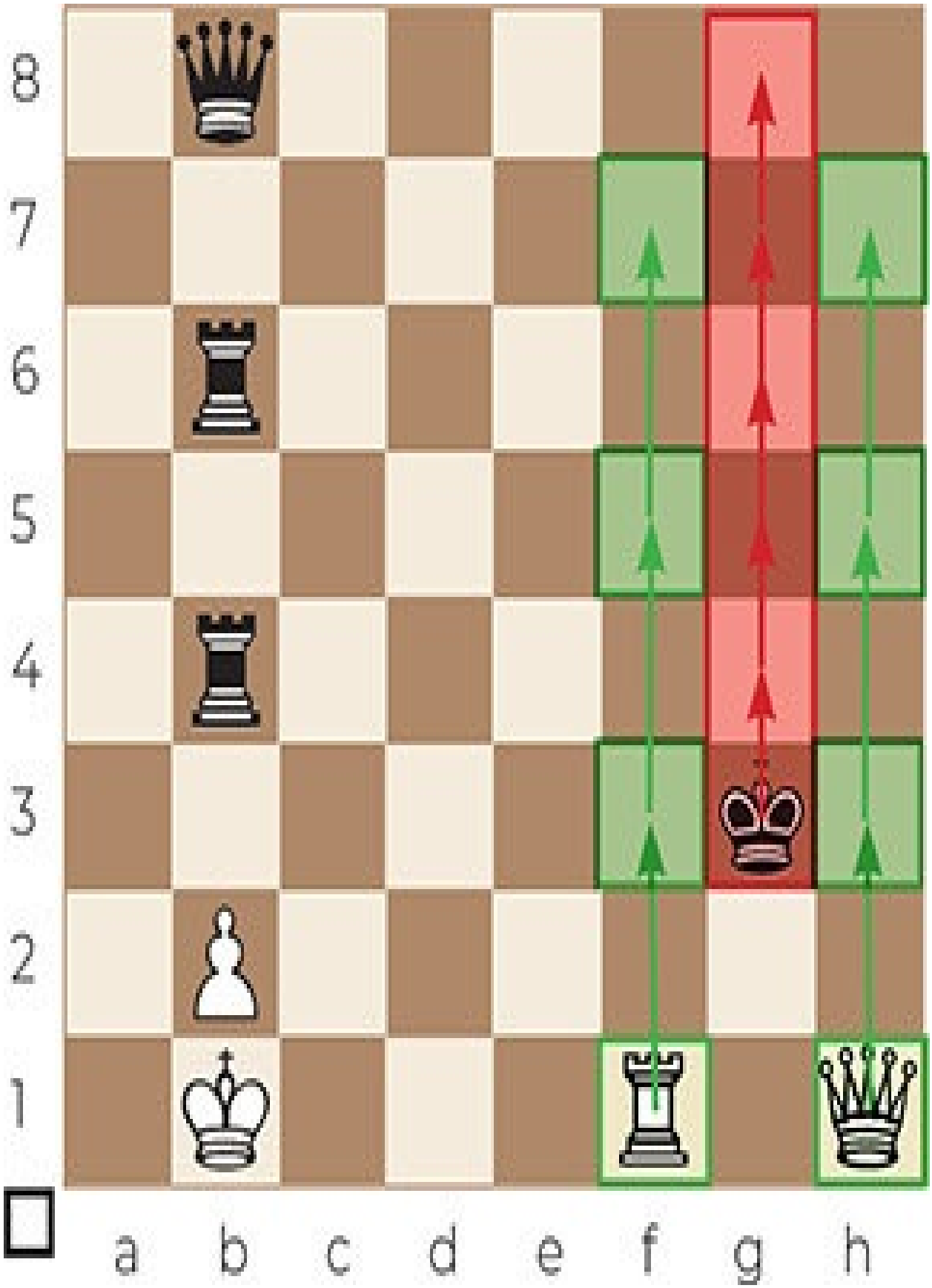
40.♕d8+ ♕c8

40...♔a7 41.♕b8# (Dovetail mate).

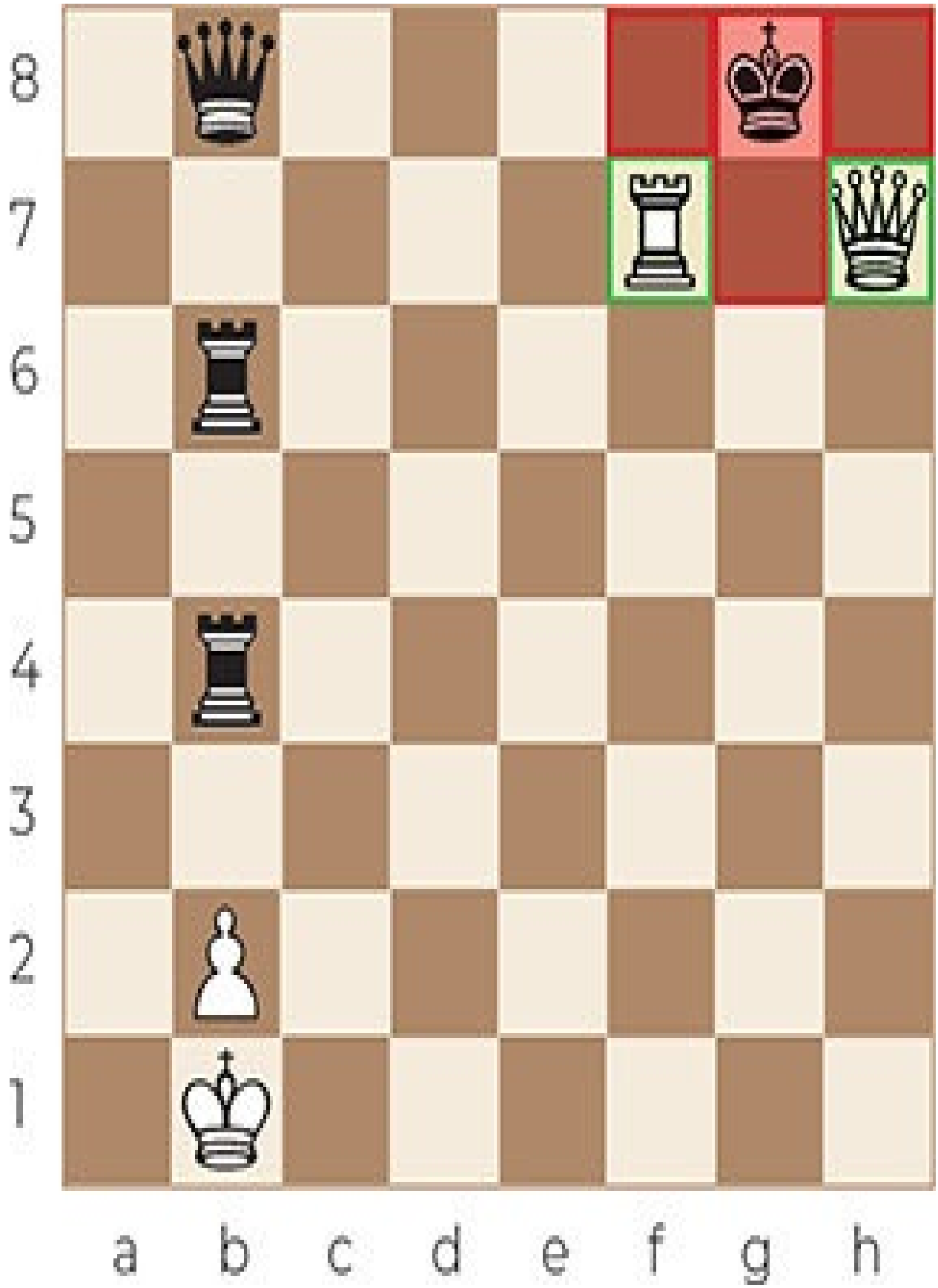
41.♖b8+ ♔a7 42.♕b6#

Railroad into Triangle mate

Sometimes, a Triangle mate is preceded by a ‘railroad’ maneuver: a queen and a rook are separated by one rank or file and force the opposing king with alternate checks to walk between them until mate (in this case, a Triangle mate) occurs. The queen and rook serve as railroad tracks and the king looks like a locomotive moving down the train tracks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

1.♖f3+ ♔g4 2.♕h3+ ♔g5 3.♖f5+ ♔g6 4.♕h5+ ♔g7 5.♖f7+ ♔g8 6.♕h7#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 259

Kingscrusher – kefind

2019

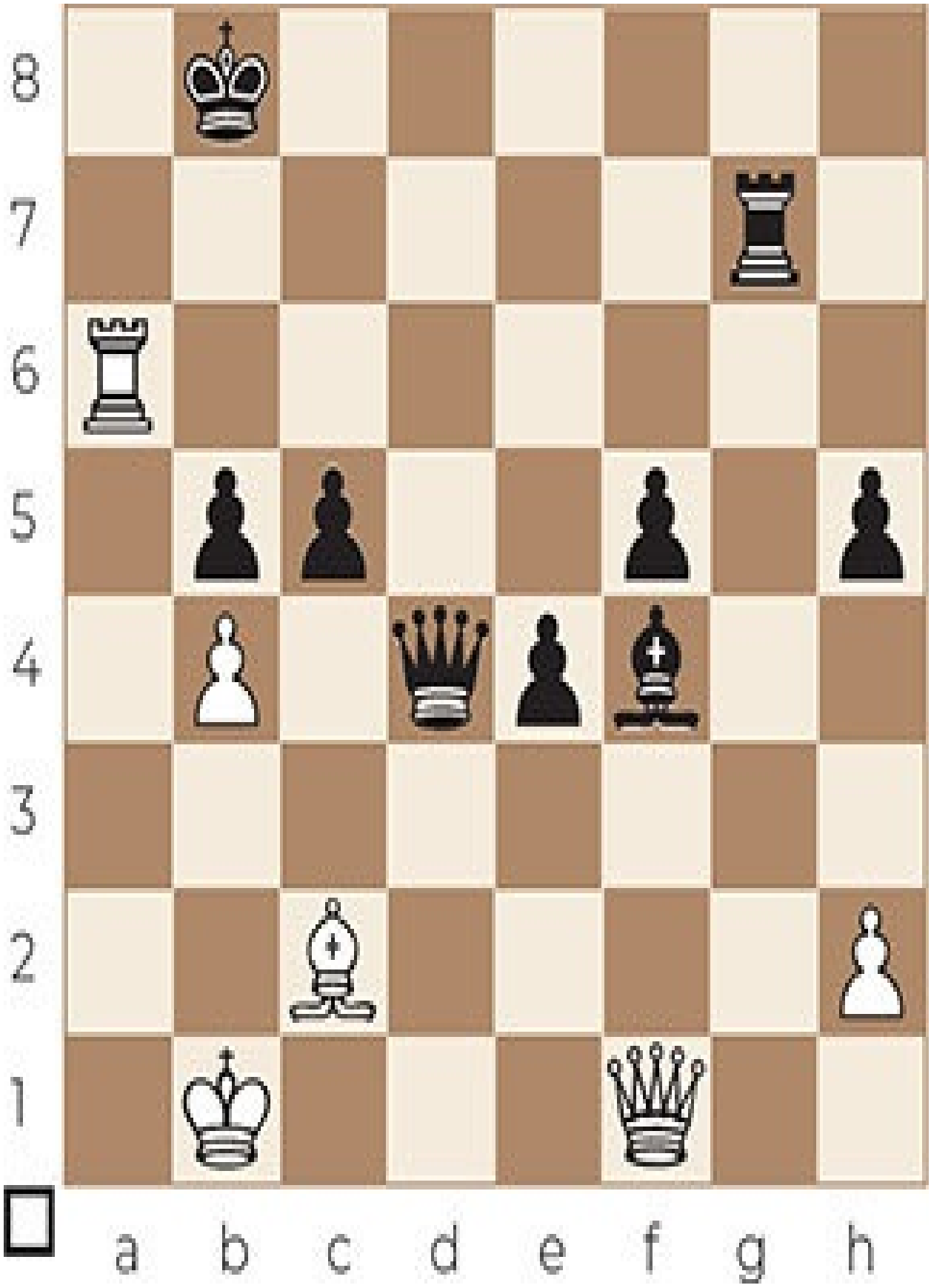
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

24.♖xh5+ gxh5 25.♕xh5+ ♔g7 26.♖f7+ ♔g8 27.♕h7#

Game 260

Ootes – Sprangers

2007


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

46.♕xb5+ ♔c7

46...♖b7 47.♕e8+ ♔c7 48.♖c6# (Box mate).

47.♕c6+ ♔d8 48.♖a8+ ♔e7 49.♖e8+ ♔f7 50.♕e6#

Game 261

Dergatchov – Rusakov

2002

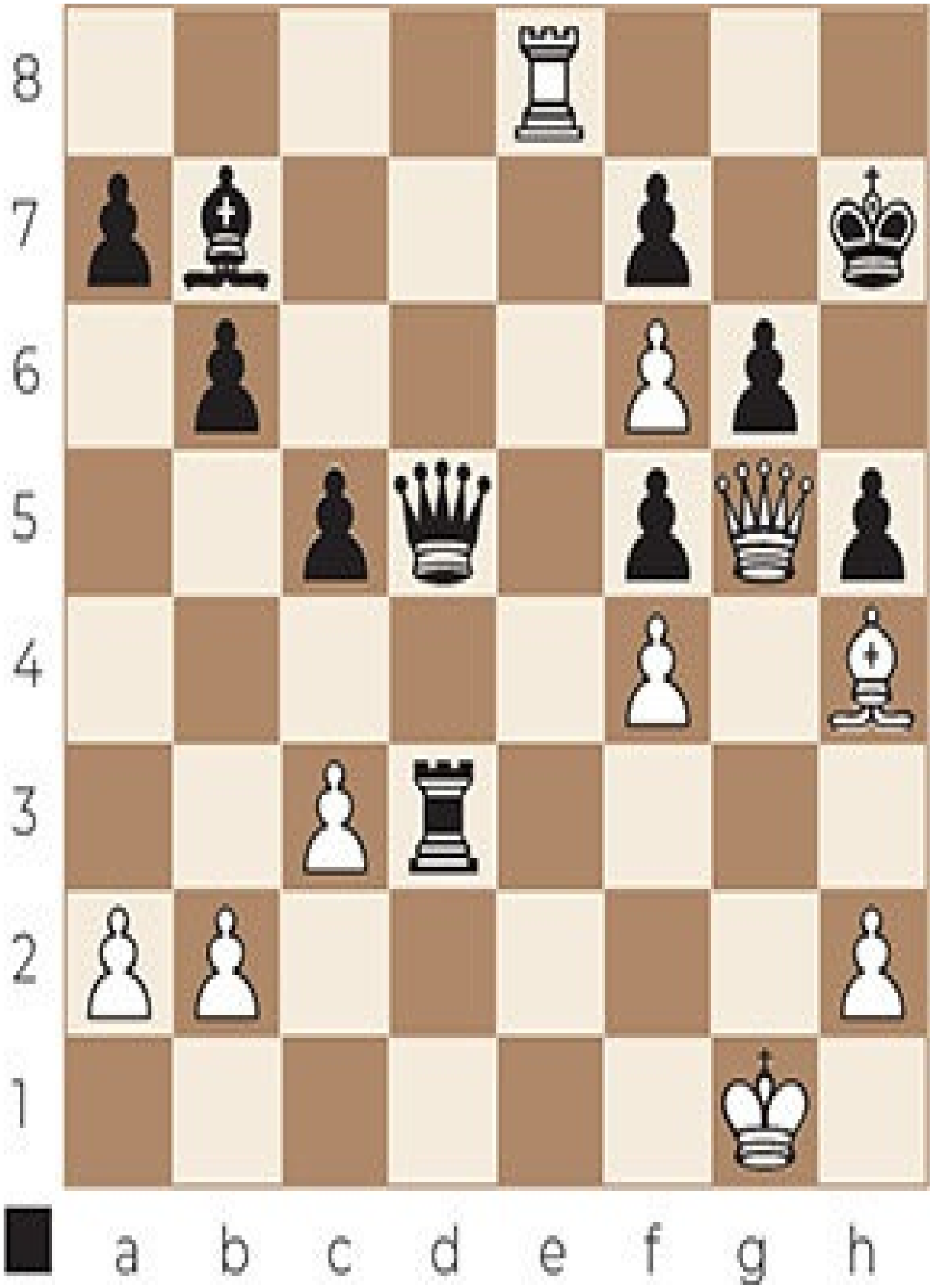
8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

37...♕g2+ 38.♔e3 ♕e4+ 39.♔f2 ♖g2+ 40.♔f1 ♕e2#

Game 262

Hoffmann – Nüsken

2007


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

34...♕h1+ 35.♔f2 ♖f3+ 36.♔e2 ♕f1+ 37.♔d2 ♖d3+ 38.♔c2 ♕d1#

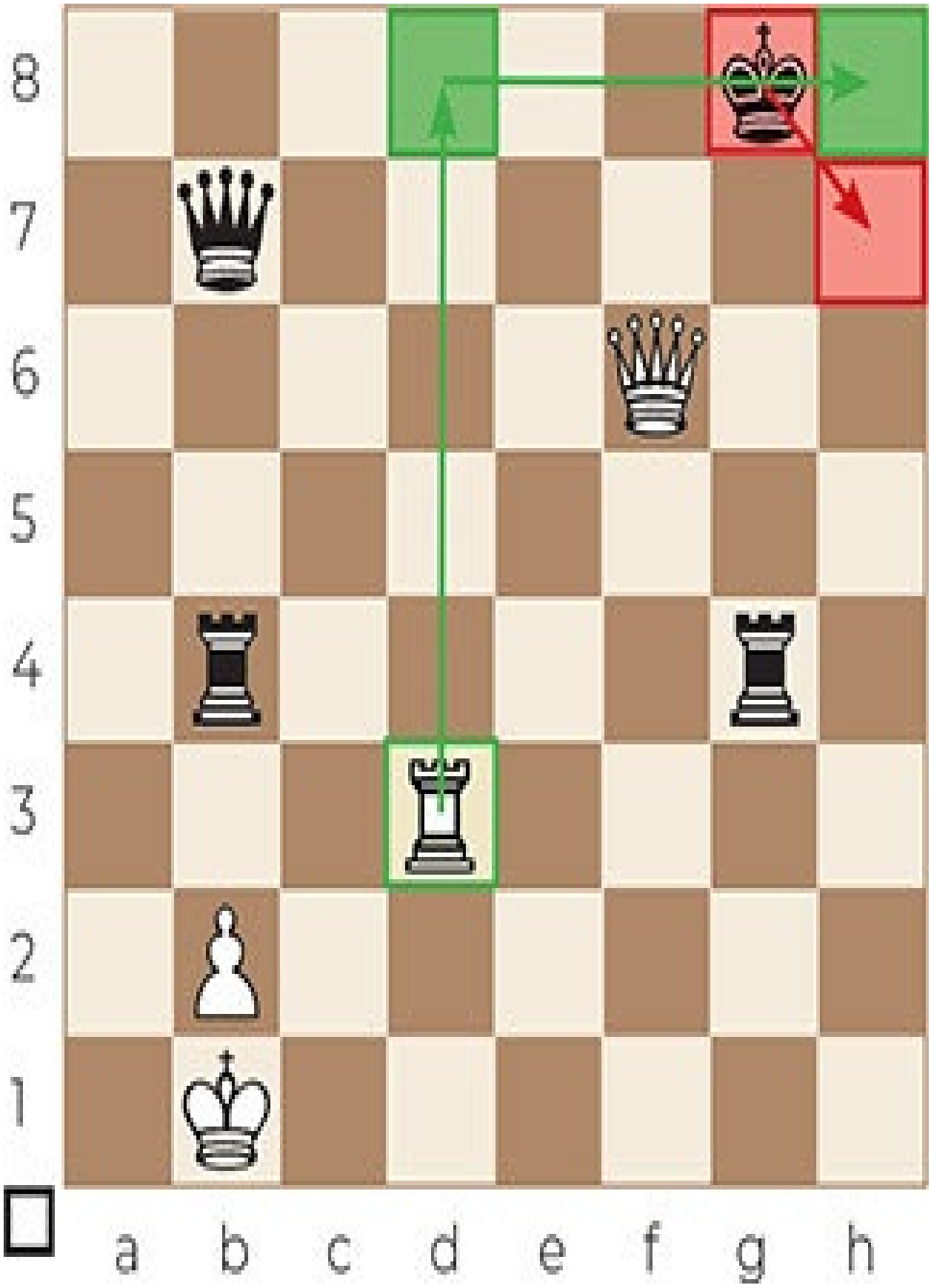
CHAPTER 29

Box mate

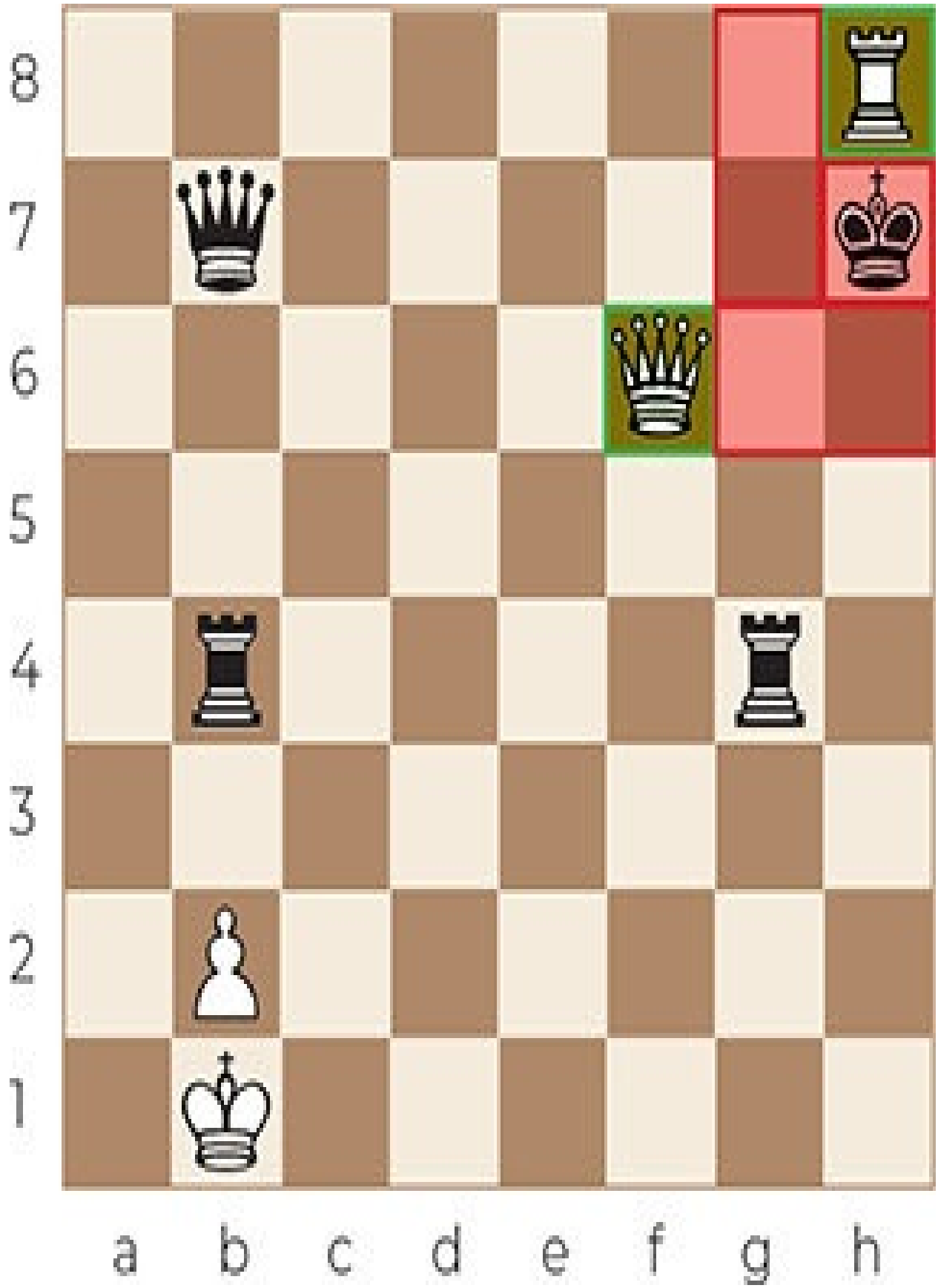
In the Box mate, a rook delivers checkmate to the king. The rook is supported by a queen that covers most escape squares. The rook is on a square adjacent to the king. The rook and the queen are on the same diagonal, with one square in between. The queen and rook form a 3x3 box. In case the mated king is on the edge of the board, no other pieces are involved. In case the mated king is not on the edge of the board, other pieces prevent the escape of the king.

Box mate 1

Often, a Box mate is preceded by queen and/or rook checks, and in some cases by a sacrifice.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

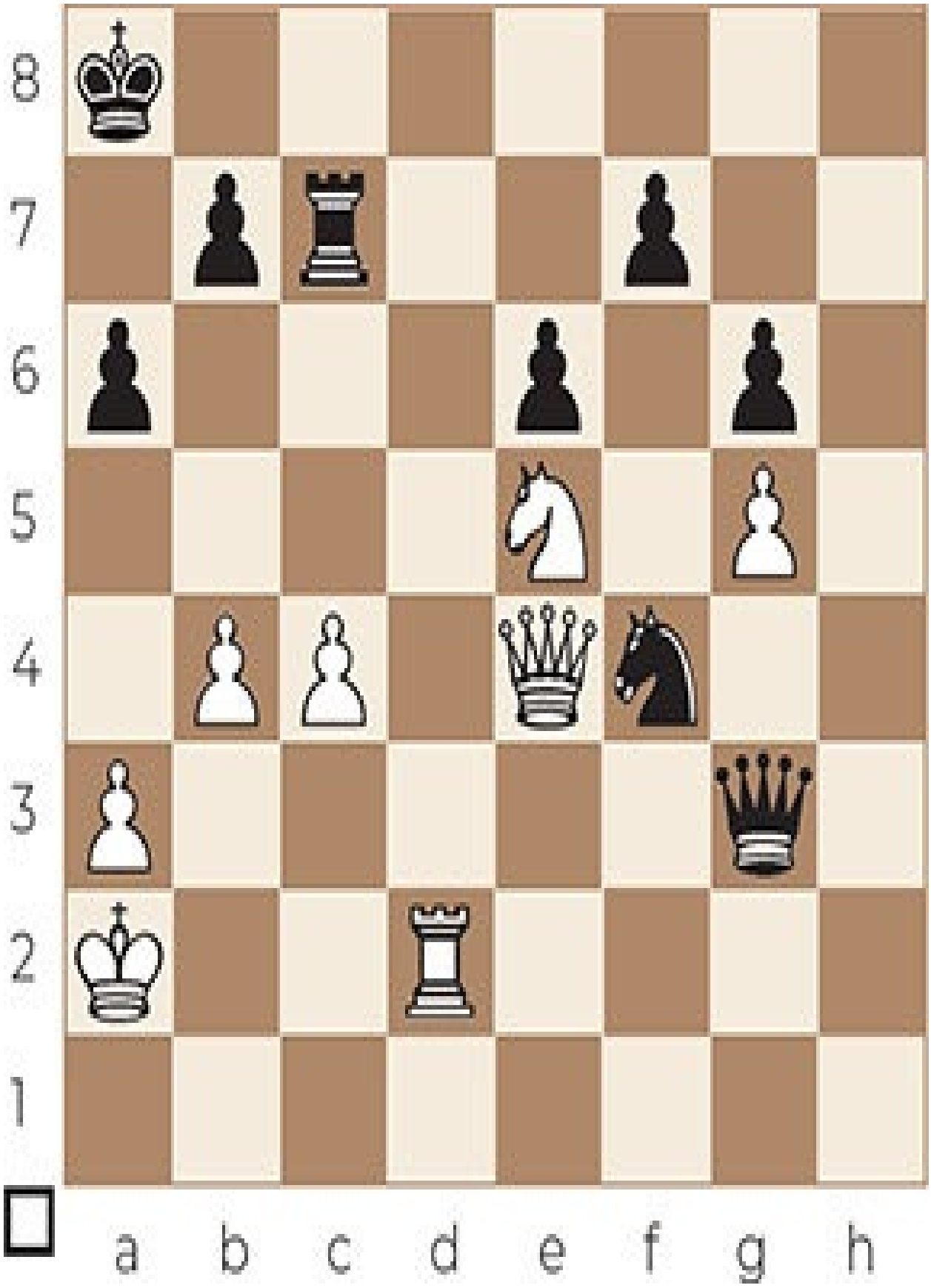
1.♖d8+ ♔h7 2.♖h8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 263

El Taher – Hassan

2000


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

40.♖d8+ ♔a7 41.♕d4+ b6 42.♘c6+

Incorporating his pieces into the attack.

42...♔b7

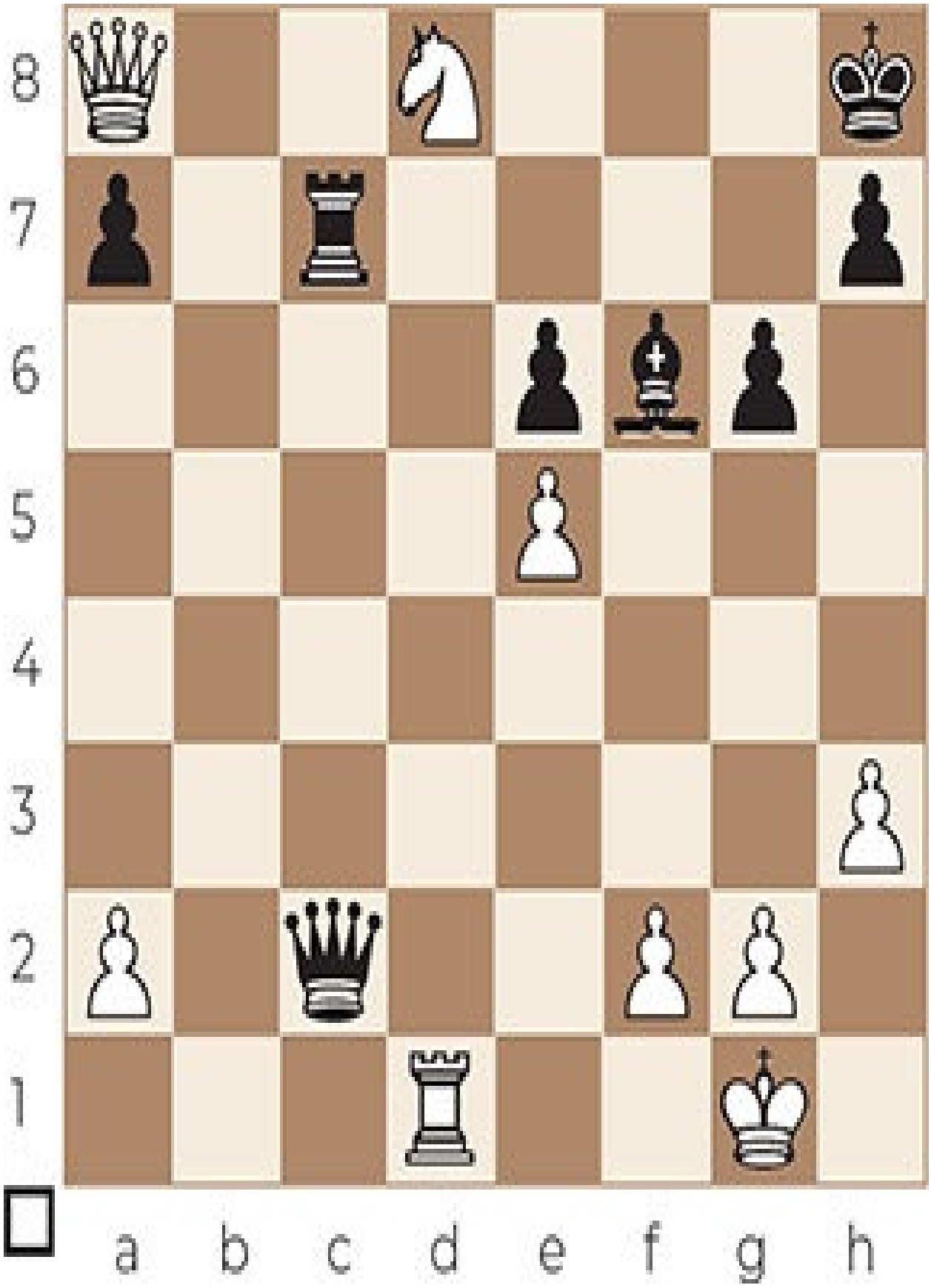
42...♖xc6 43.♕d7+ ♖c7 44.♕xc7# (Lawnmower mate).

43.♖b8+ ♔xc6 44.♖xb6#

Game 264

Parker – Howell

2008

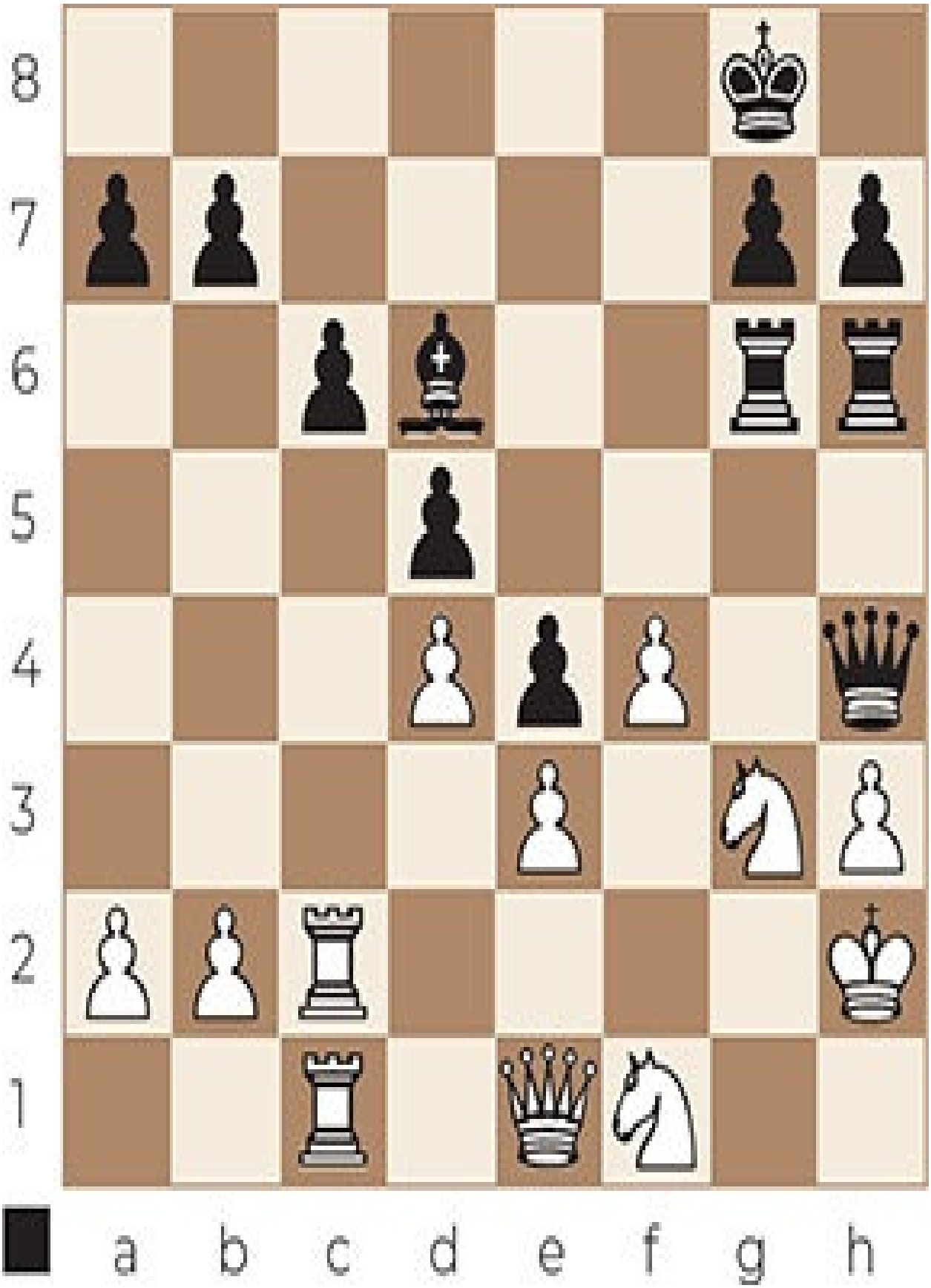

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27.♘f7+ ♔g7 28.♕h8+ ♔xf7 29.♕xf6+ ♔e8 30.♖d8#

Game 265

Norman – Thomas

1929

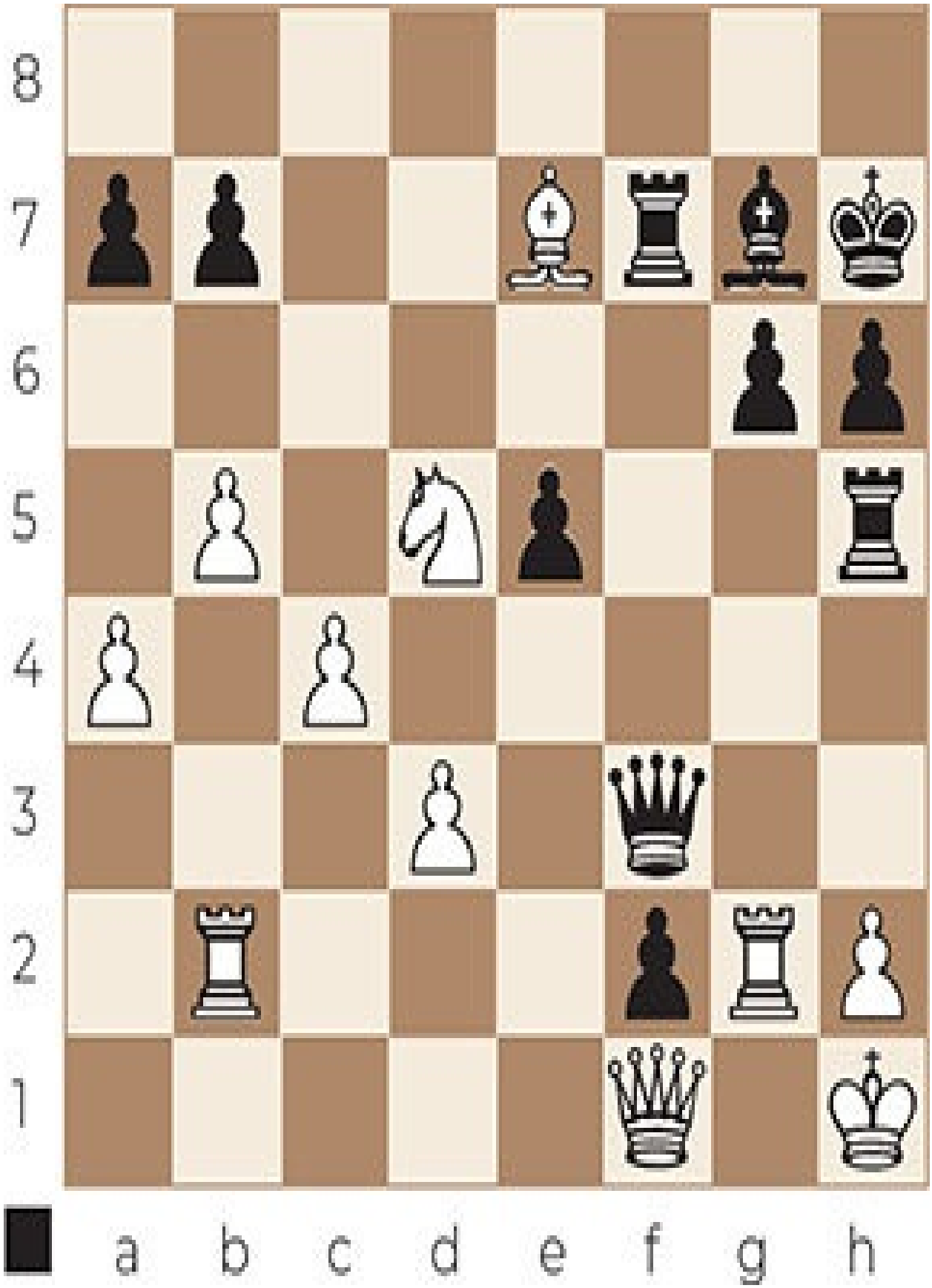

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

27...♕xh3+ 28.♔g1 ♕h1+ 29.♔f2 ♕f3+ 30.♔g1 ♖h1#

Game 266

Tolhuizen – Wharton

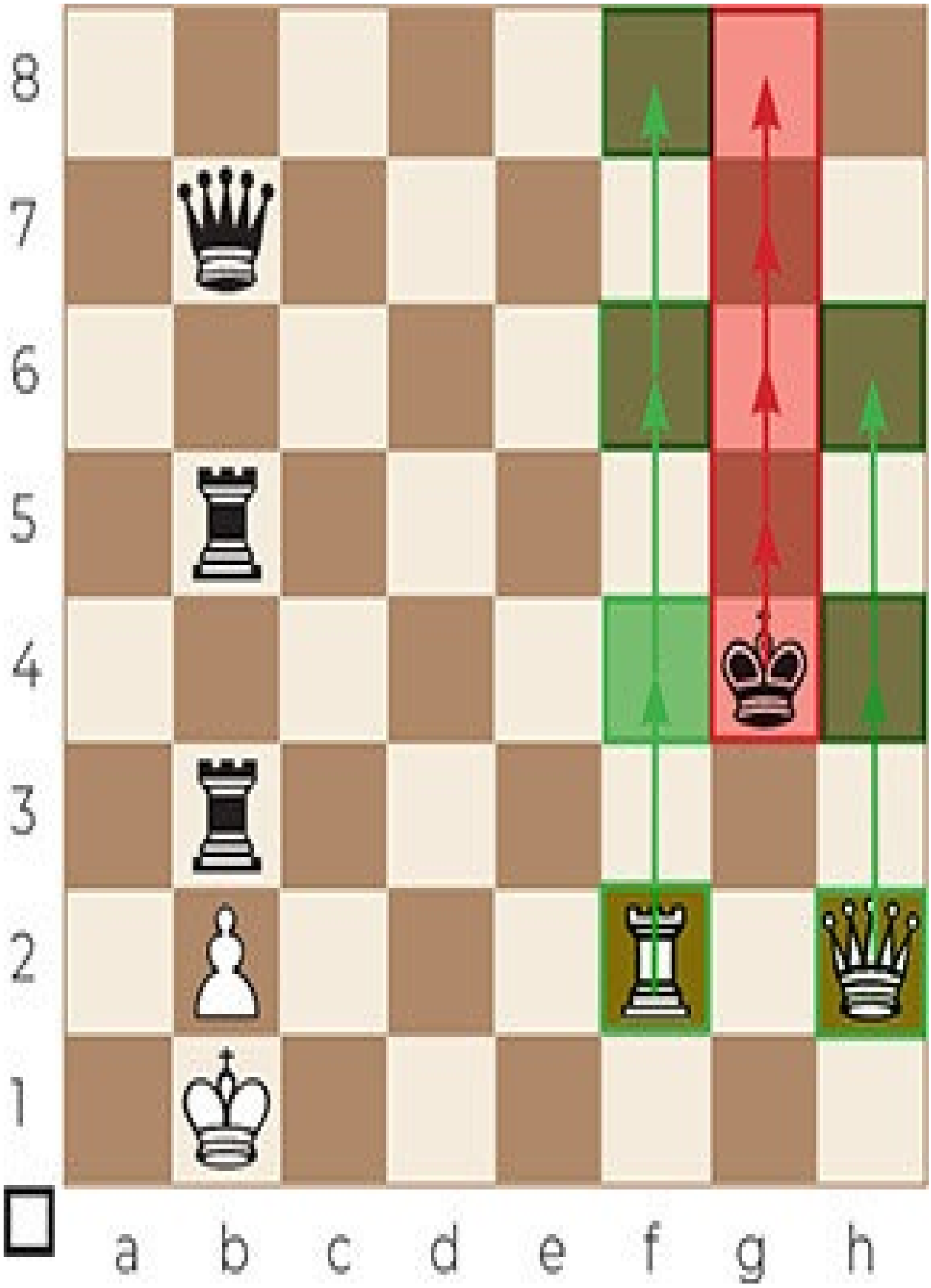
1992


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

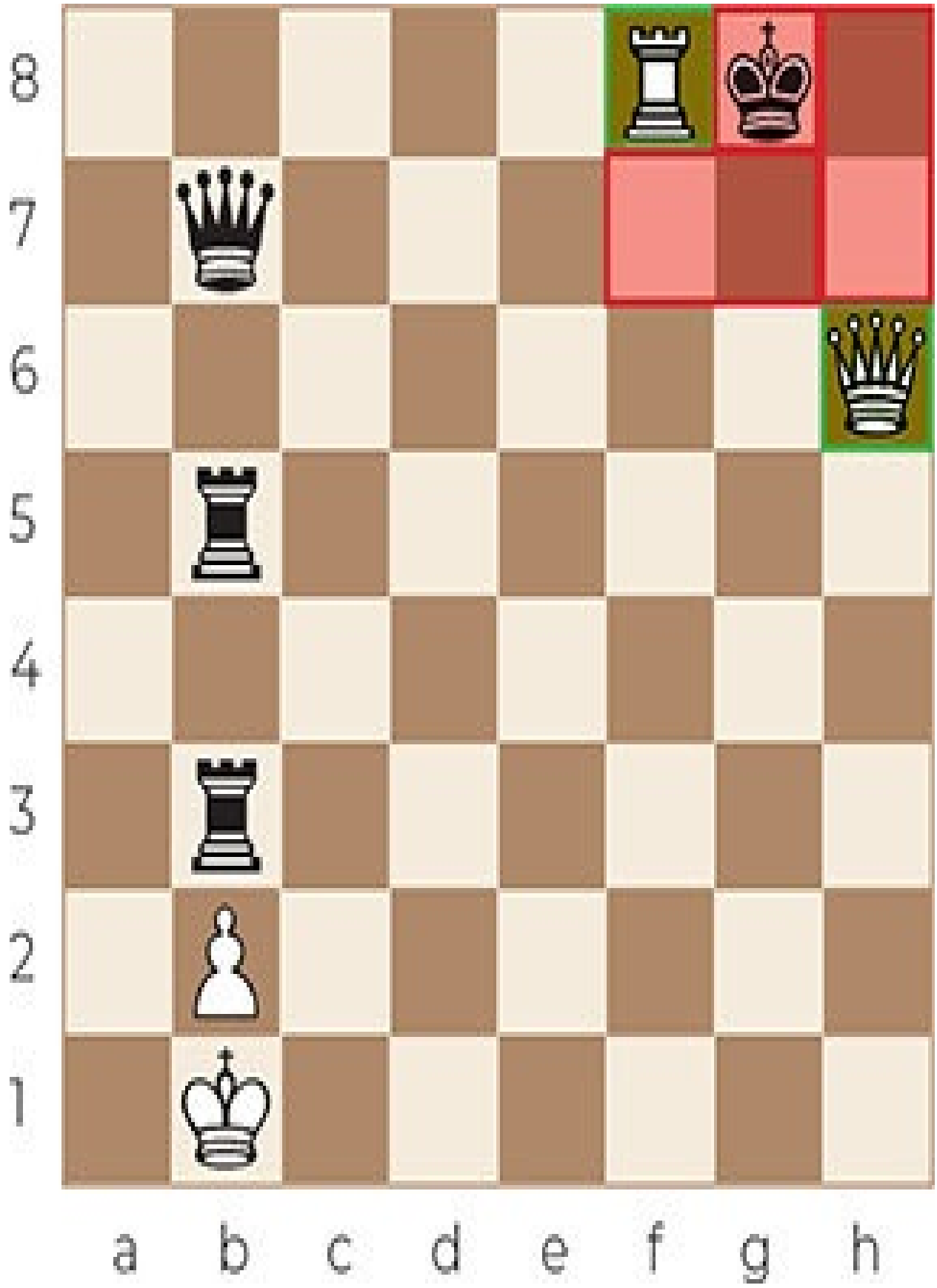
36...♖xh2+ 37.♔xh2 ♕h5+ 38.♔g3 ♖f3#

Railroad into Box mate

Sometimes, a Box mate is preceded by a ‘railroad’ maneuver: a queen and a rook are separated by one rank or file and force the opposing king with alternate checks to walk between them until mate (in this case a Box mate) occurs. The queen and rook serve as railroad tracks and the king looks like a locomotive moving down the train tracks.


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

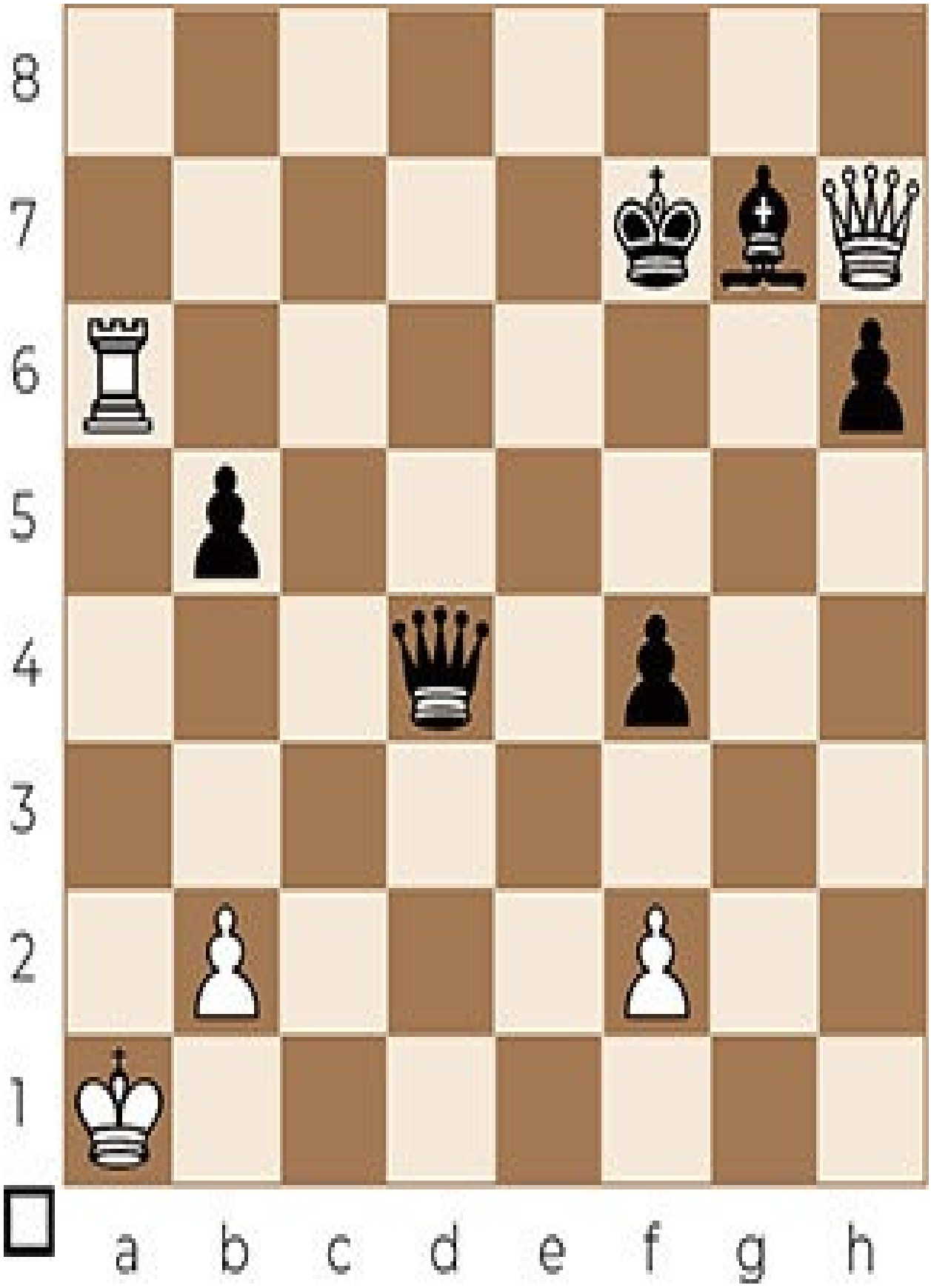
1.♖f4+ ♔g5 2.♕h4+ ♔g6 3.♖f6+ ♔g7 4.♕h6+ ♔g8 5.♖f8#


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 267

Zapata – Van der Wiel

1995


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

60.♕g6+ ♔f8

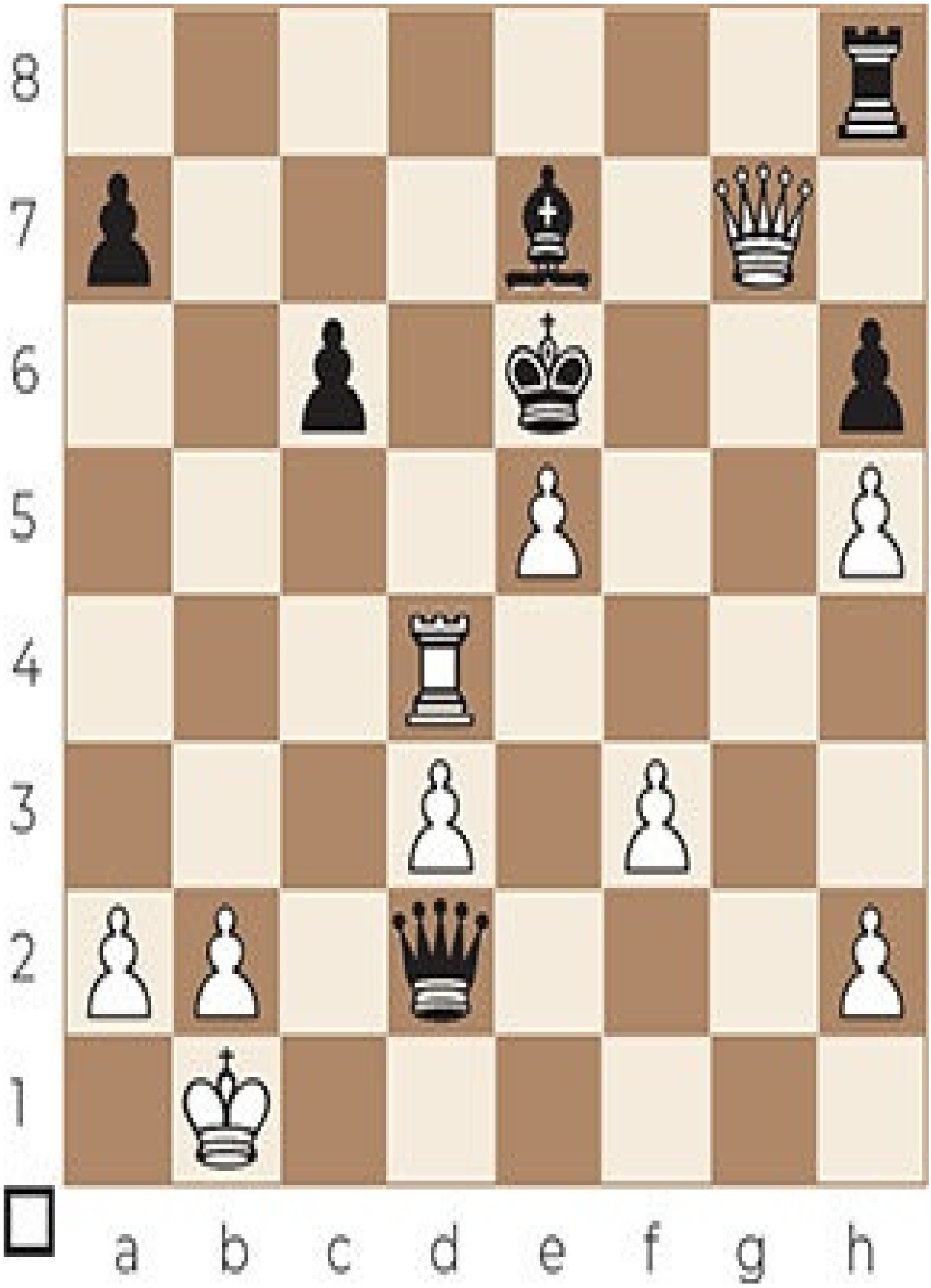
60...♔e7 61.♕e6+ ♔d8 62.♖a8+ ♔c7 63.♖c8+ ♔b7 64.♕c6+ ♔a7 65.♖a8# (Box mate).

61.♖a8+ ♔e7 62.♖e8+ ♔d7 63.♕e6+ ♔c7 64.♖c8+ ♔b7 65.♕c6+ ♔a7 66.♖a8#

Game 268

Harikrishna – Berg

2012

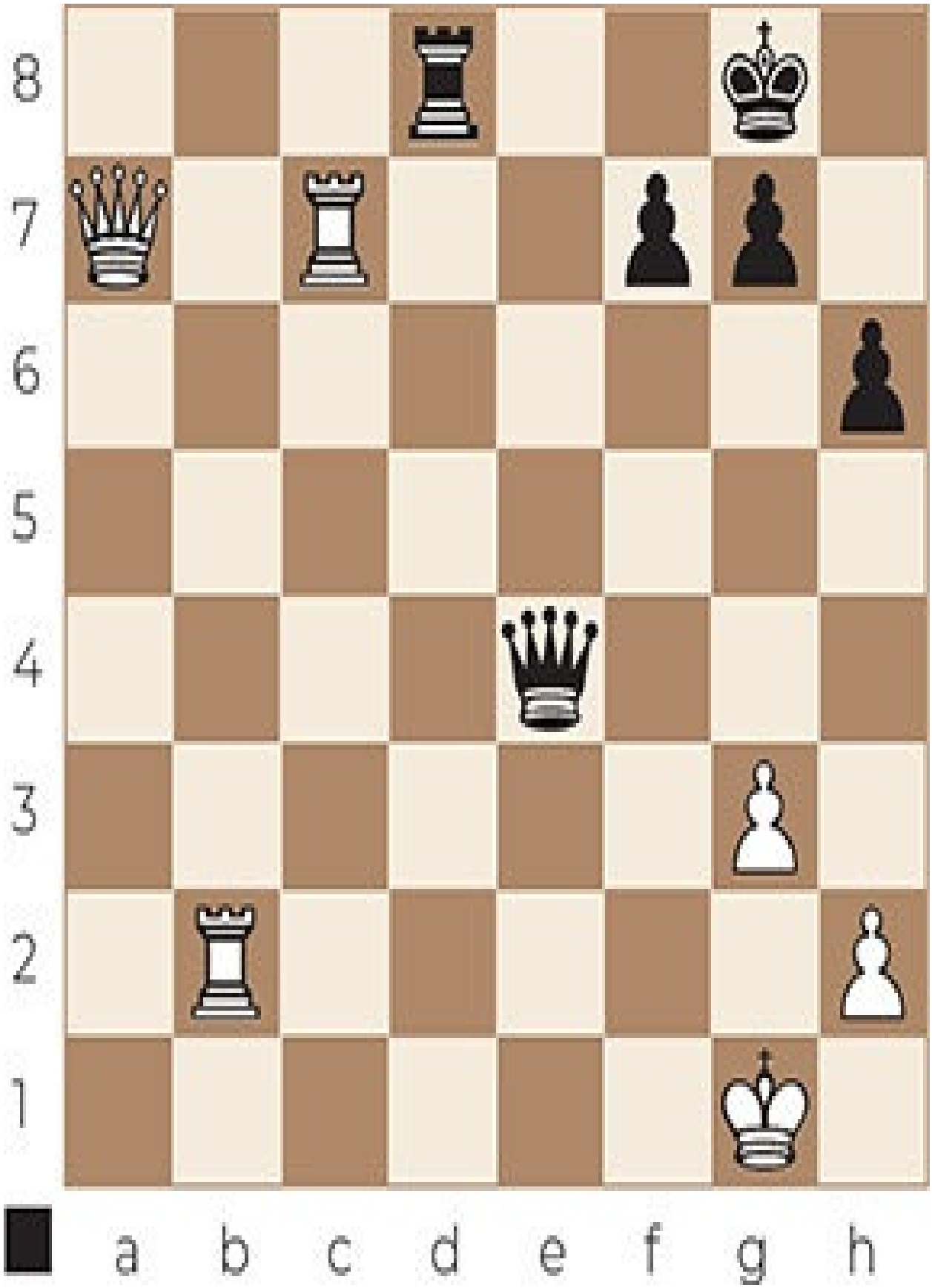

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

34.♕g6+ ♔xe5 35.♖e4+ ♔d5 36.♕e6+ ♔c5 37.♖c4+ ♔b5 38.♕xc6+ ♔a5 39.♖a4#

Game 269

Davidson – Wall

1975


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

33...♖d1+ 34.♔f2 ♕f5+ 35.♔e3

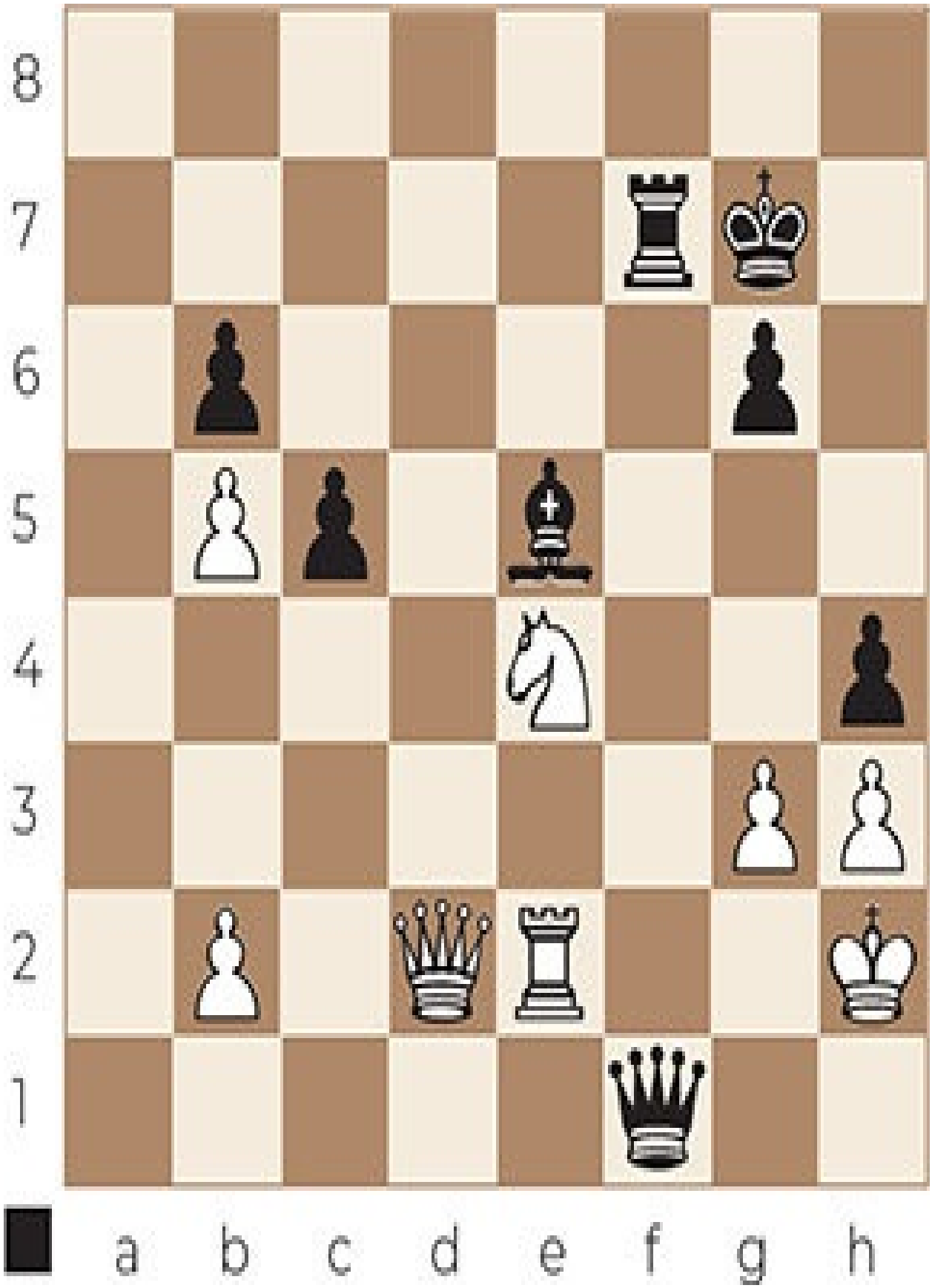
35.♔g2 ♕f1# (Dovetail mate); 35.♔e2 ♕f1+ 36.♔e3 ♖d3+ 37.♔e4 ♕f3+ 38.♔e5 ♖d5# (Box mate).

35...♖d3+ 36.♔e2 ♕f3+ 37.♔e1 ♖d1#

Game 270

Lokvenc – Tal

1963


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

39...hxg3+ 40.♘xg3 ♗xg3+ 41.♔xg3 ♖f3+ 42.♔g4 ♕xh3+ 43.♔g5 ♖f5#

CHAPTER 30

Mate in the opening

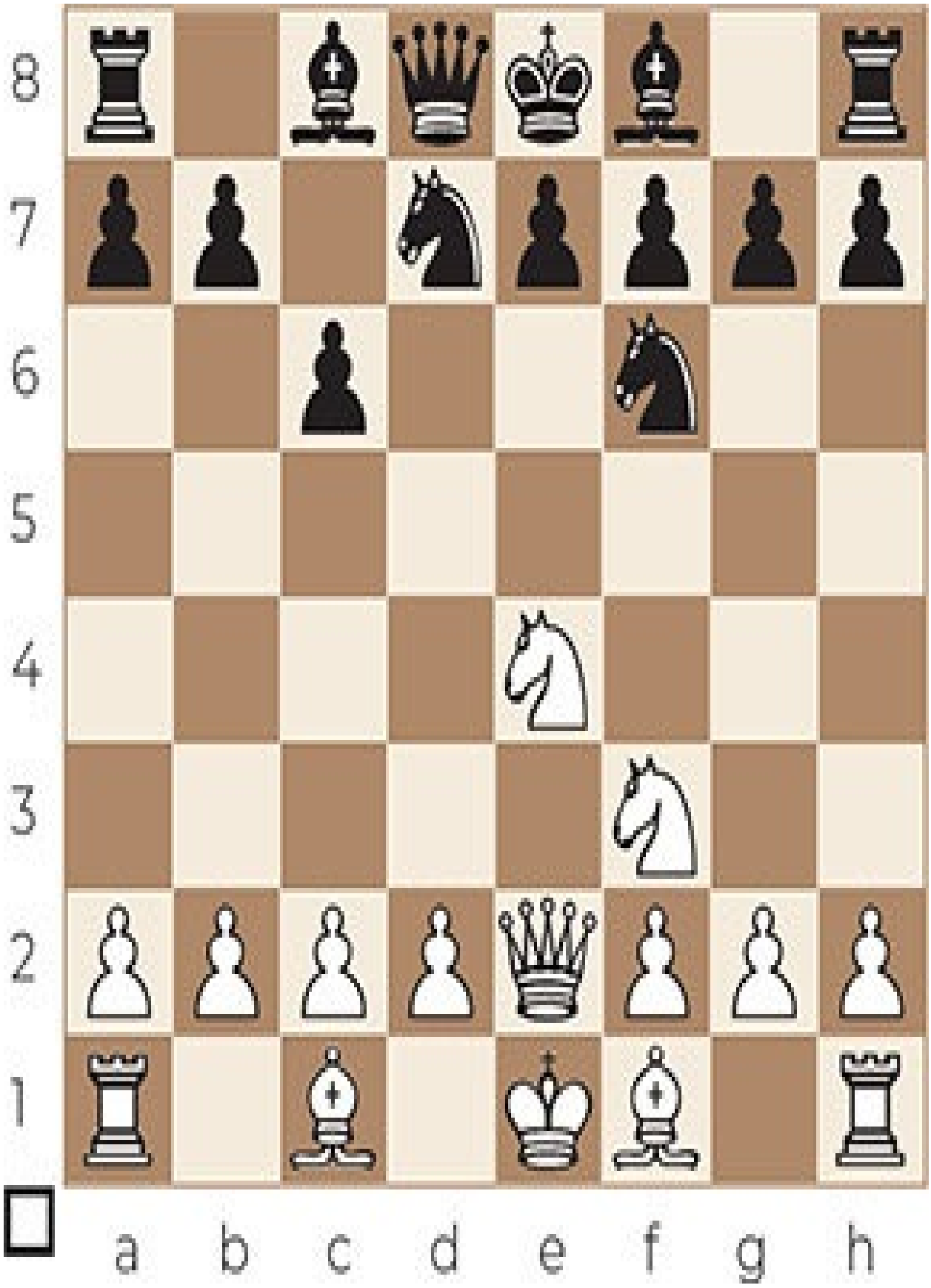
In this chapter we zoom in on checkmates in the early stages of the game. Some common or notable mating patterns have names of their own. These include the Fool’s mate, the Scholar’s mate, and Legal’s mate.

To start with, a number of examples will be given of opening traps or opening mistakes ending in a Smothered mate, a checkmate pattern we discussed earlier.

Game 271

from ‘Keep It Simple: 1.e4’ by Christof Sielecki

2018


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

6.♘d6#

Caro-Kann Defense, Two Knights Attack

Game 272

Hultin – Fromm

1992

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

9.♘d6#

Benko Gambit, Zaitsev Variation

Game 273

McGrouther – McCann

1893

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

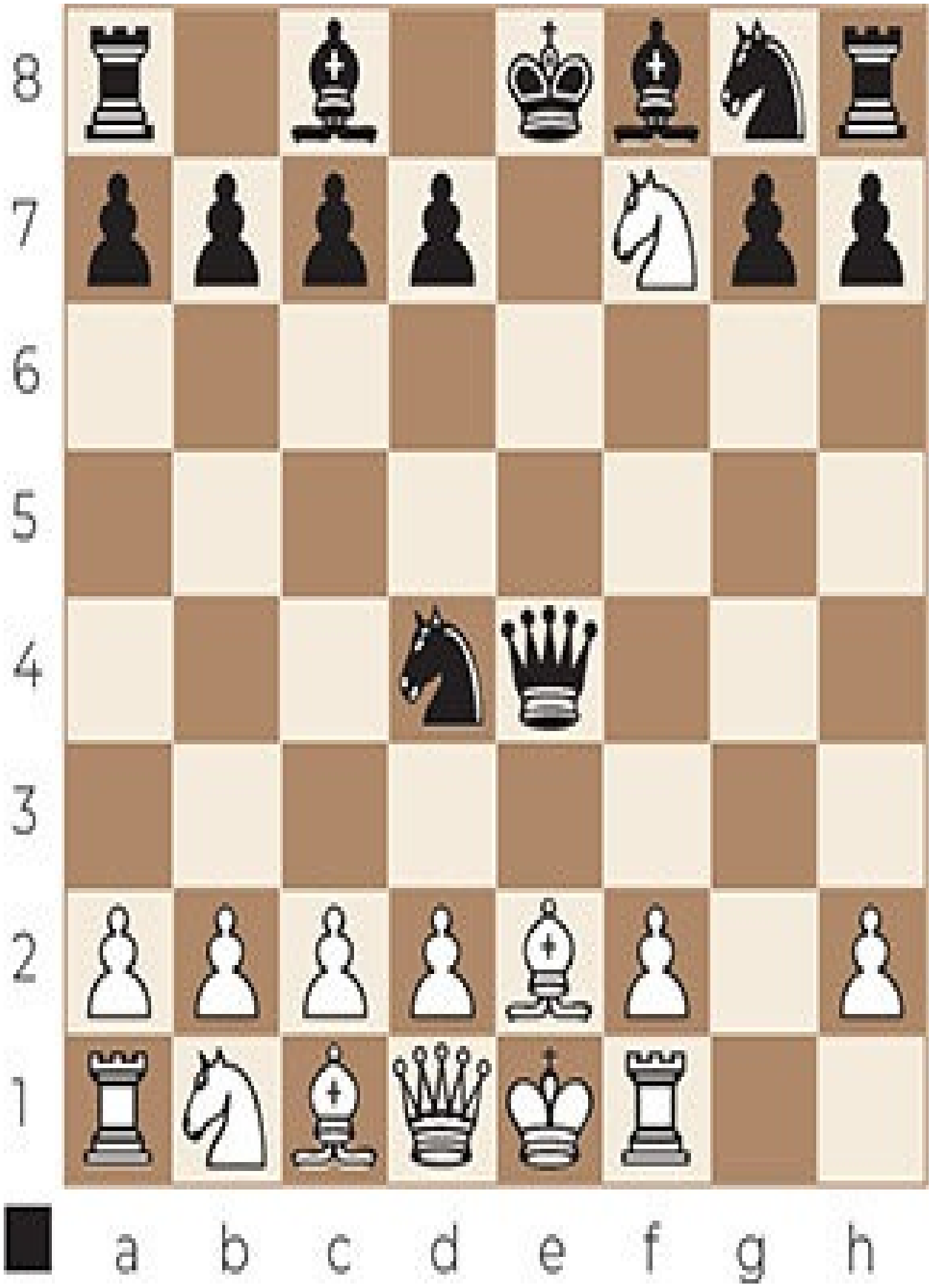
6.♘d6#

Sicilian Defense, Löwenthal Variation

Game 274

Muhlock – Kostic

1911


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

7...♘f3#

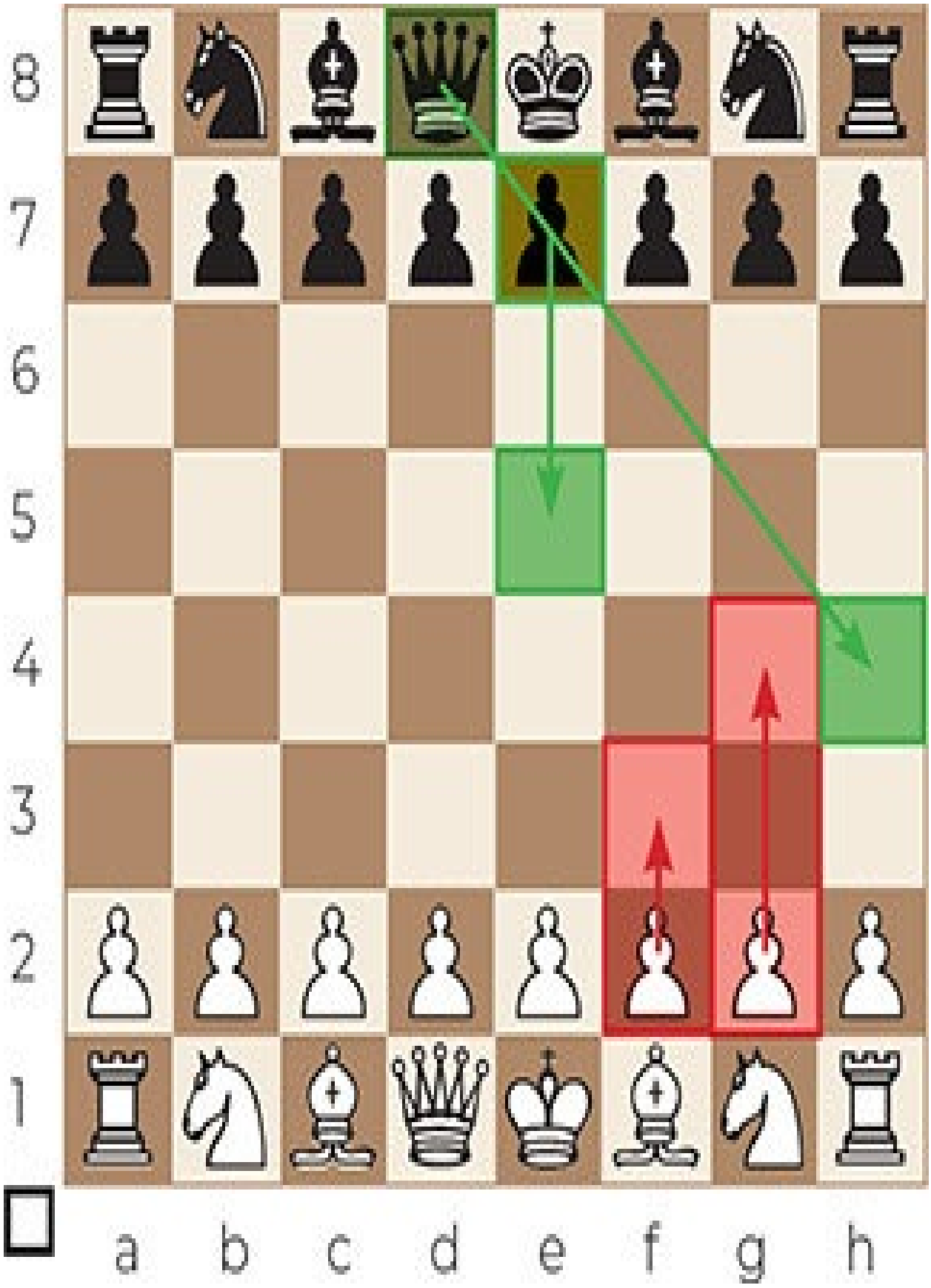
Italian Game, Blackburne Shilling Gambit

Fool’s mate

In the Fool’s mate, a queen or a bishop delivers checkmate. All flight squares are occupied by friendly pieces.

The original Fool’s mate, also known as Two-move checkmate, is the quickest possible checkmate in chess.

A Fool’s mate is preceded by careless moves of the pawns on the f- and g-file. Sometimes a sacrifice is used to remove a defender. A prime example of the Fool’s mate is the following:


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

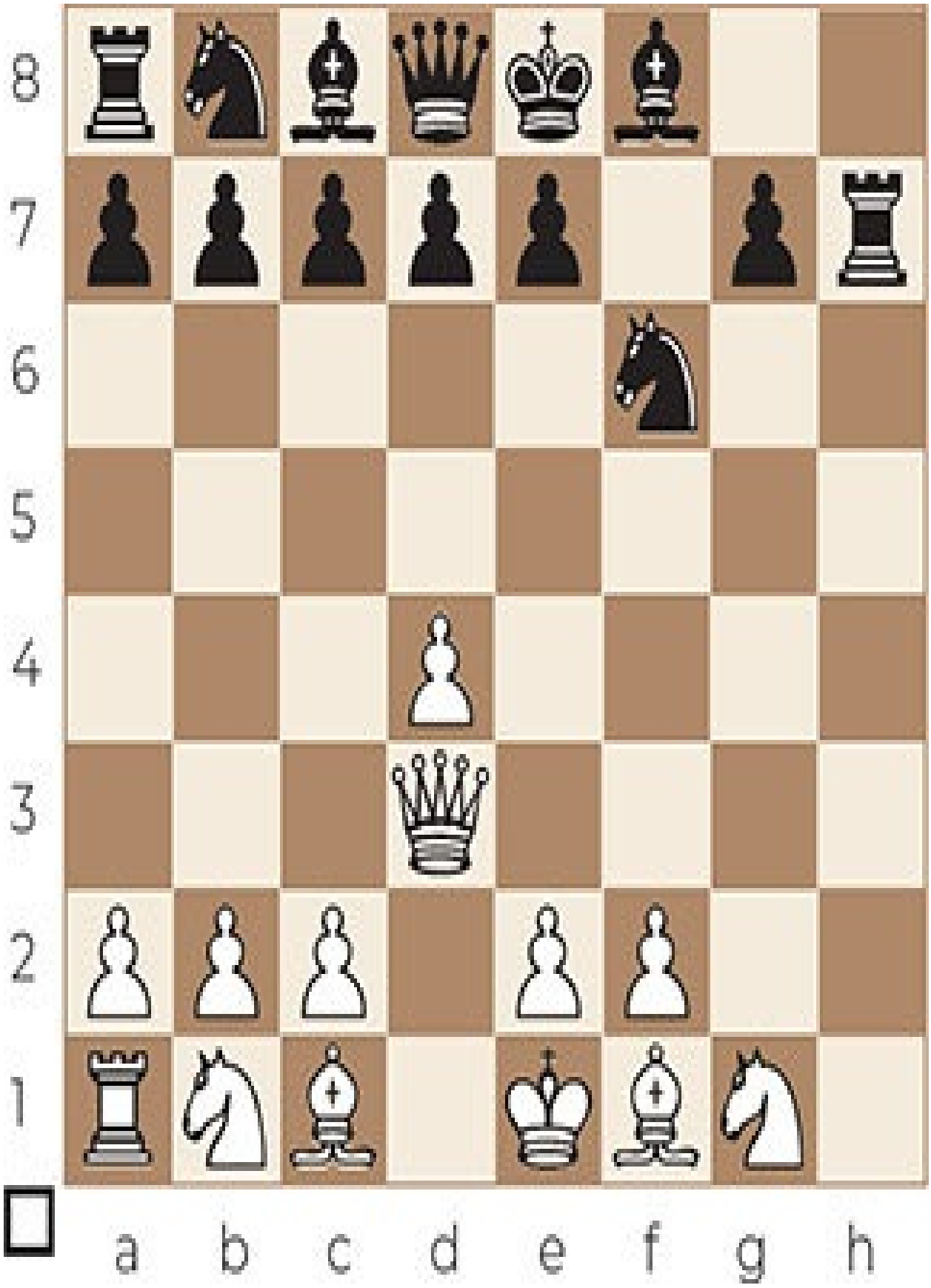
1.f3 e5 2.g4 ♕h4#

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 275

Bandres Carballo – Bustos Serrano

2001


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

7.♕g6#

Dutch Defense, Janzen-Kortchnoi Gambit

Game 276

Krejcik – NN

1908

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

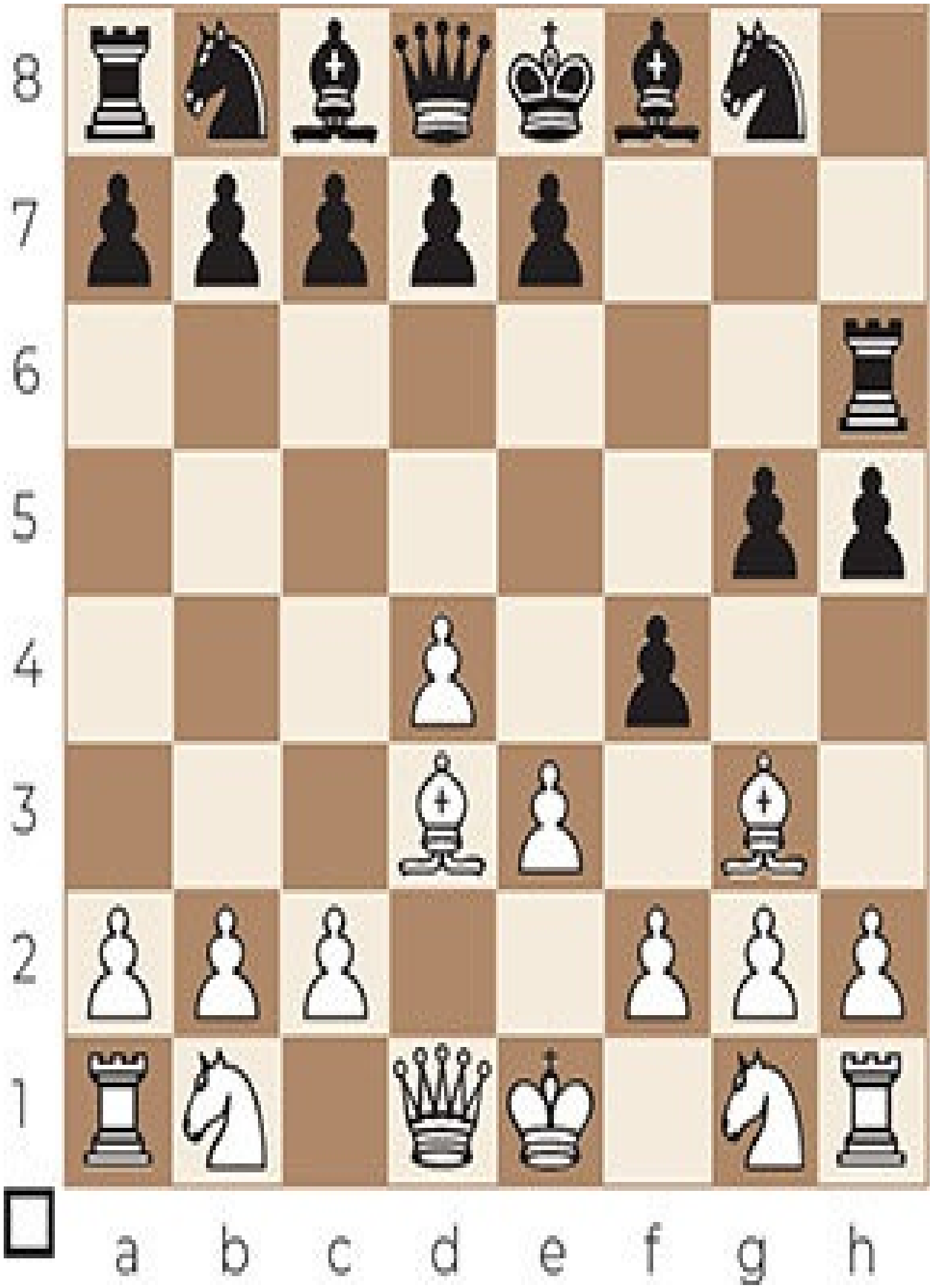
6. ♗g6#

Van ‘t Kruijs Opening

Game 277

Teed – Delmar

1896


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

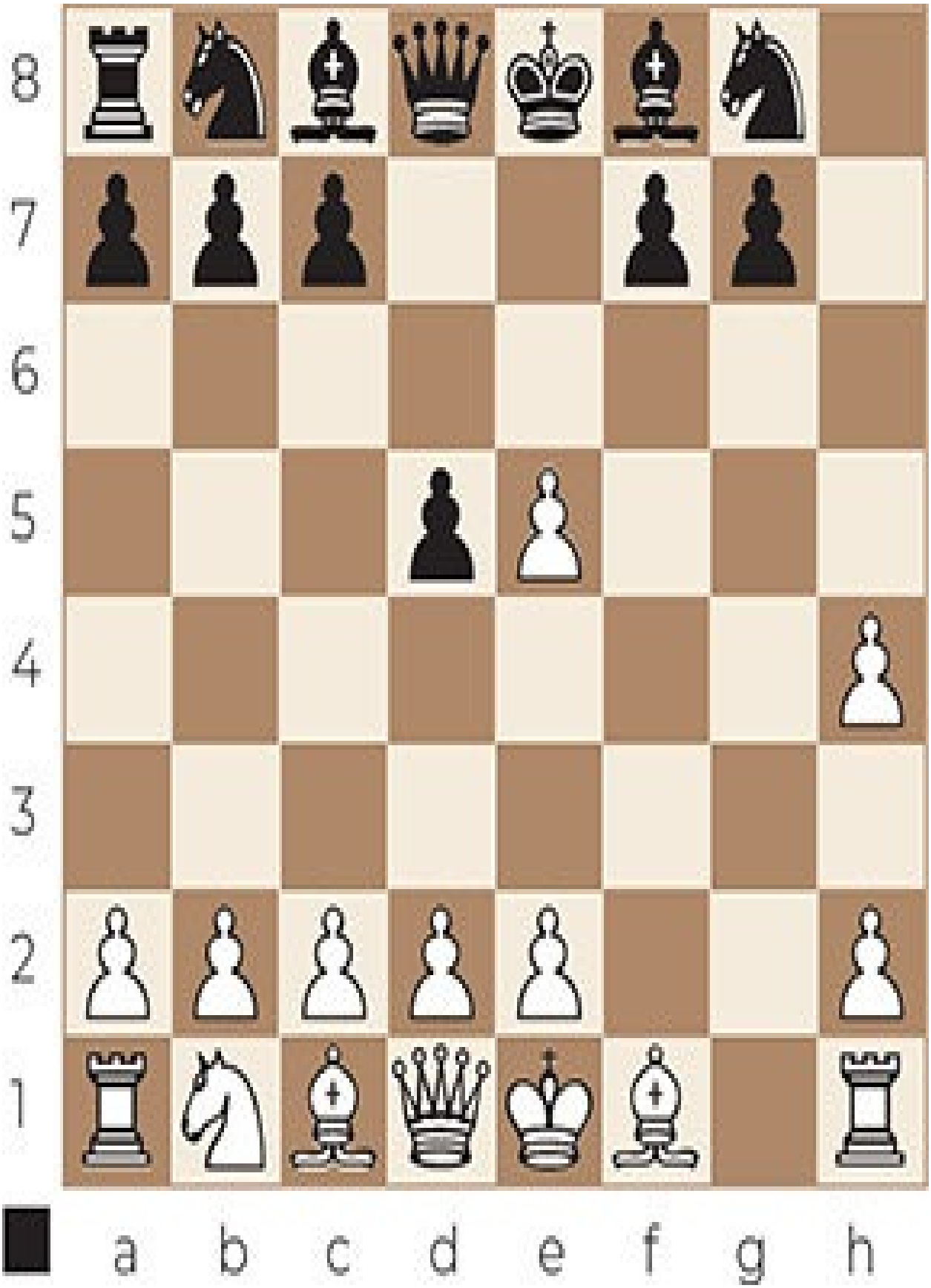
7.♕xh5+ ♖xh5 8.♗g6#

Dutch Defense, Hopton Attack

Game 278

Kourtesis – Kotronias

1989


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

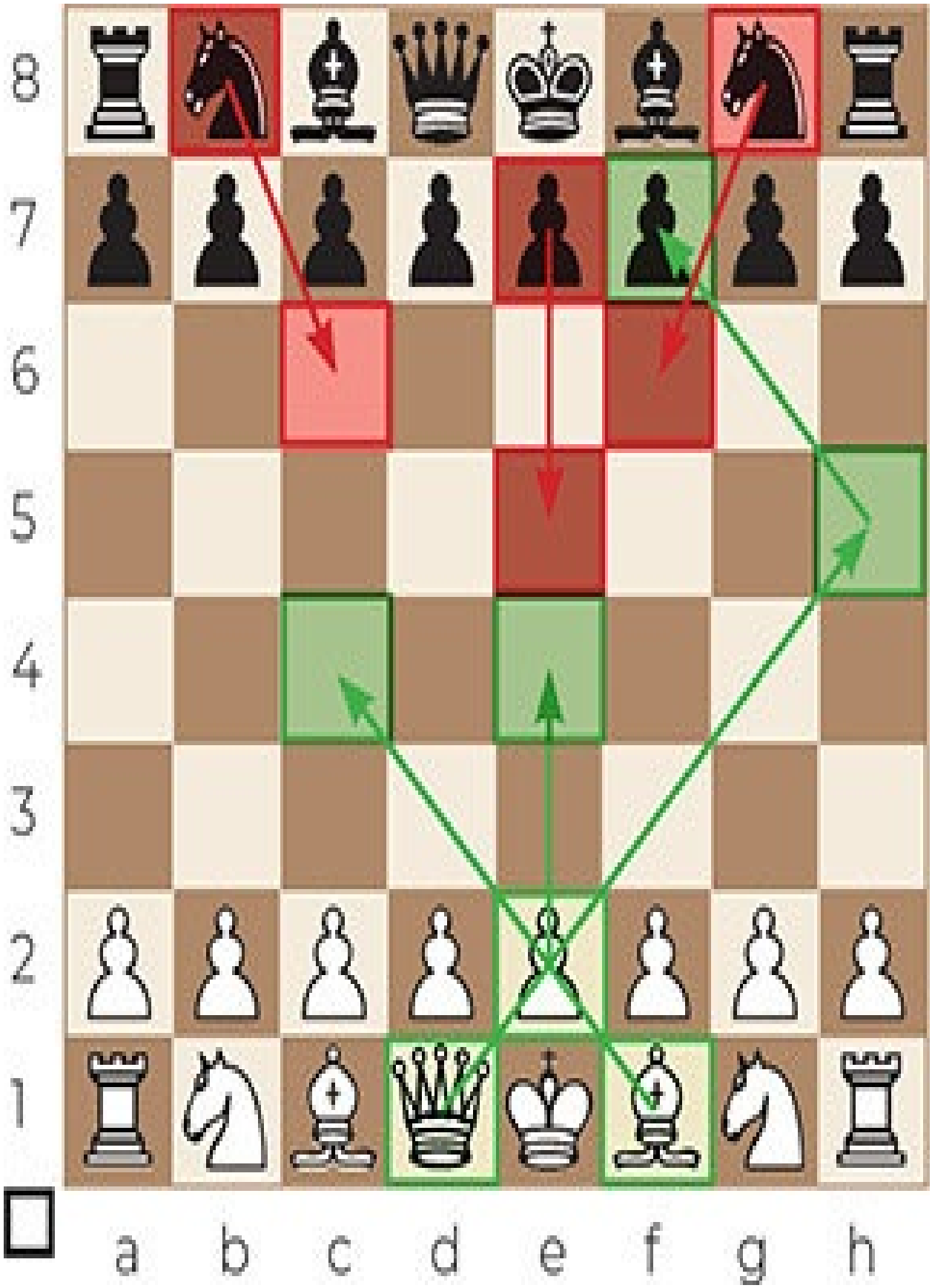
6...♕xh4#

Hungarian Opening

Scholar’s mate

In the Scholar’s mate, a queen, protected by a bishop, delivers mate on f2 or f7. This can be seen as a special type of Damiano’s bishop mate. The Scholar’s mate is fairly common at novice level.

The Scholar’s mate is traditionally achieved as follows:


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

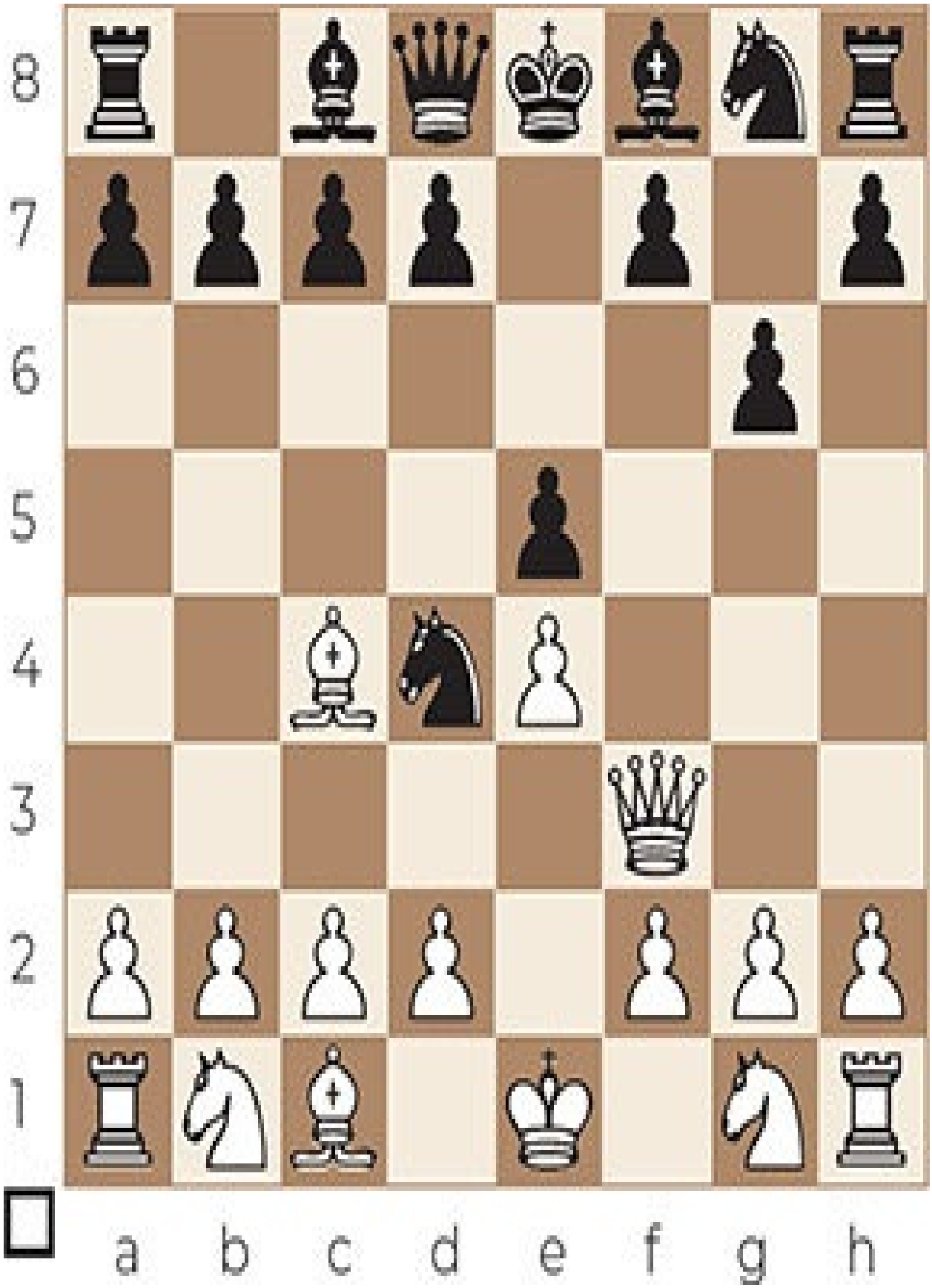
1.e4 e5 2.♕h5 ♘c6 3.♗c4 ♘f6 4.♕xf7#

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 279

Amillano – Löffler

1972


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

5.♕xf7#

King’s Pawn Game, Wayward Queen Attack

Game 280

Haas – Lee

1980

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

9.♕xf7#

Spanish Game, Morphy Defense, Mackenzie Variation

Game 281

B R – Wagner

1902

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

5...♕f2#

King’s Gambit Accepted, Bishop’s Gambit, Cozio Variation

Game 282

Spencer – Takacs

1981

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

4...♕xf2#

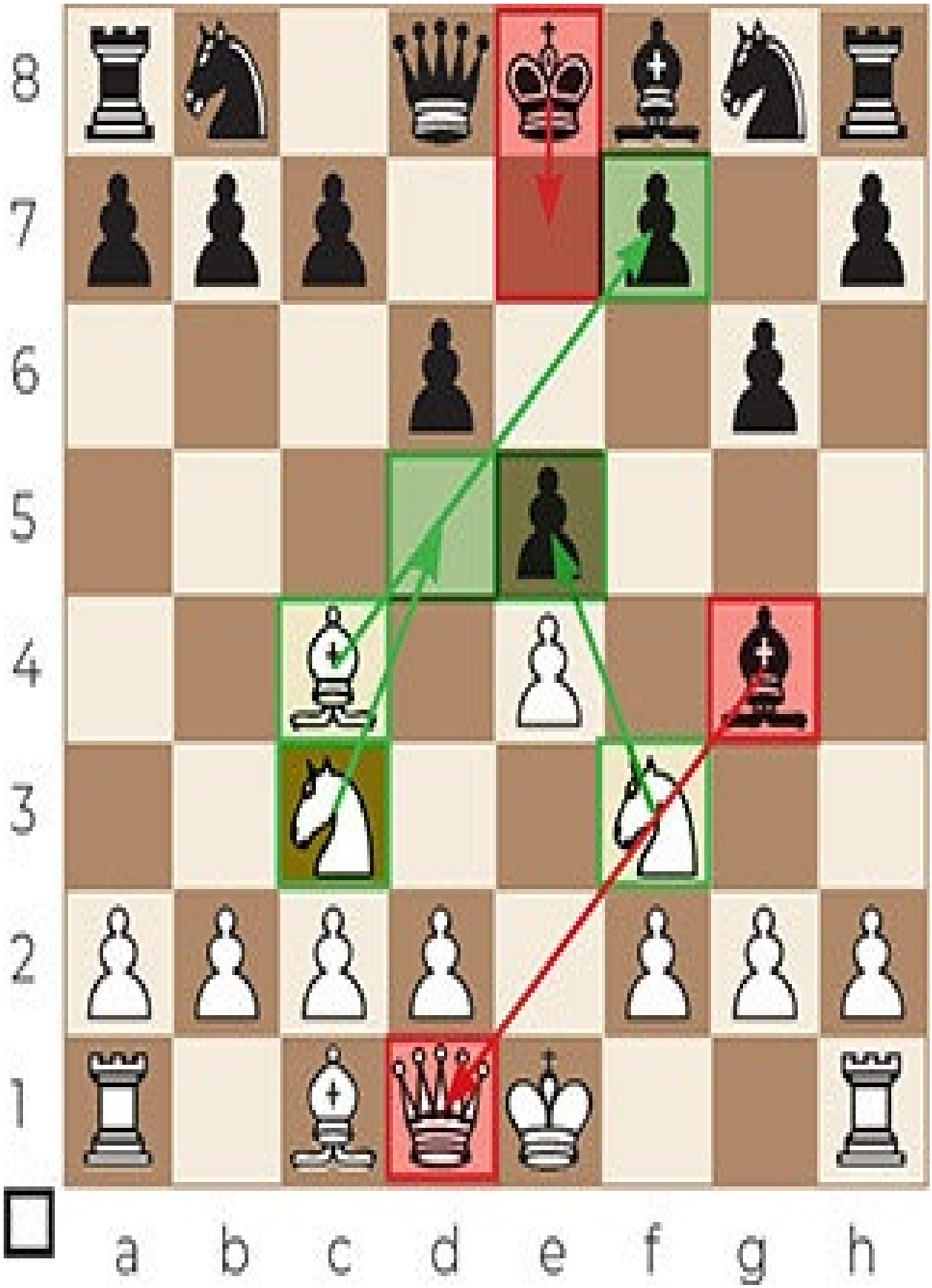
English Opening, King’s English Variation

Legal’s mate

In Legal’s mate, in most cases a knight delivers checkmate to the king, while other minor pieces (usually the other knight and a bishop) block all escape squares with the help of the opponent’s pieces.

Legal’s mate is an opening trap, named after the French chess player François Antoine de Kermur Sire de Legal (1702-1792).

Legal’s mate is preceded by a knight capture, ignoring the pin on the f3-knight and thus sacrificing the queen who is still on her starting square. If the sacrifice is accepted, 2 or 3 minor pieces work together to checkmate the king. Make sure the knight capture is a solid move even if your opponent does not accept the sacrifice!


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

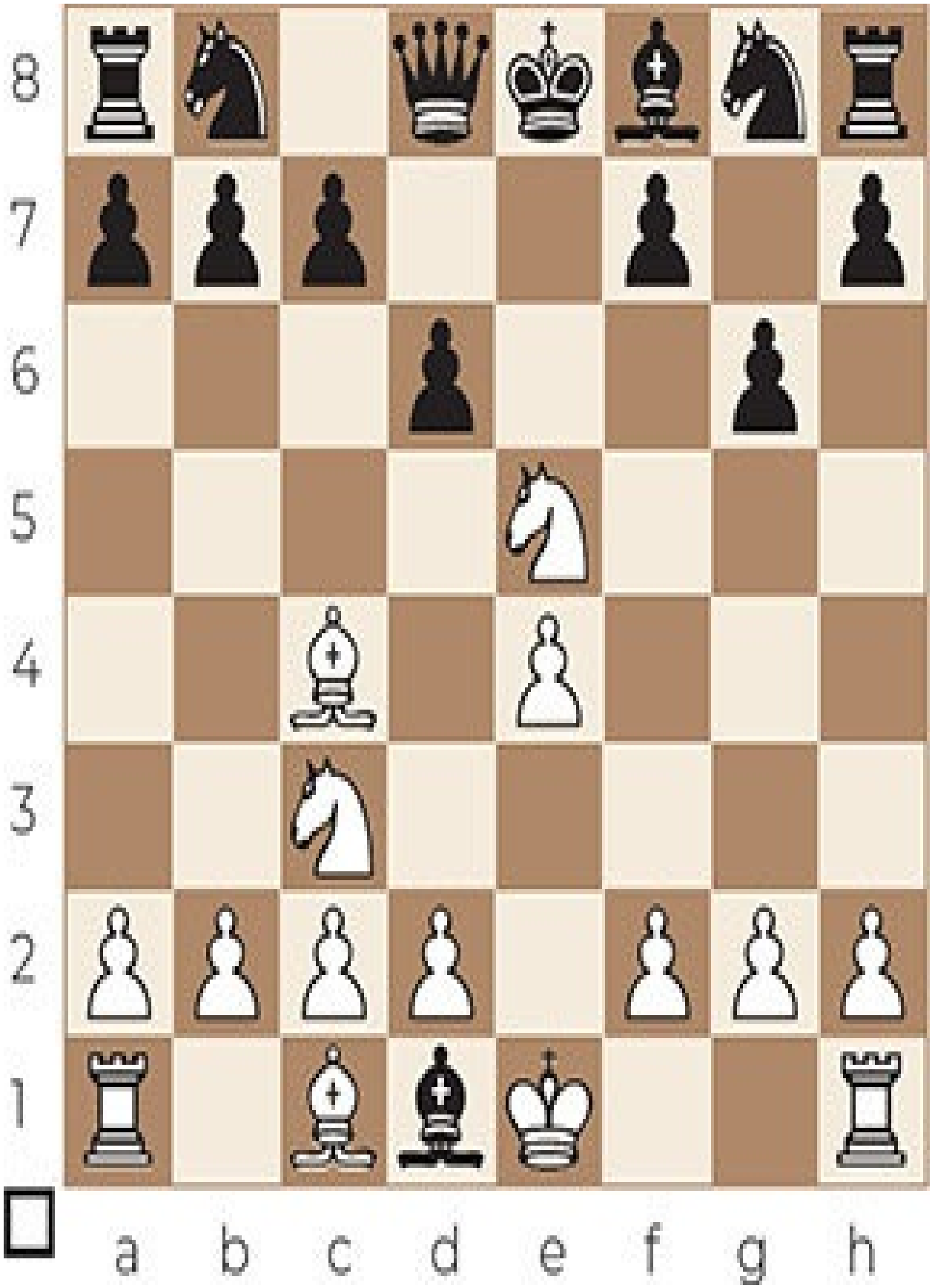
5.♘xe5 ♗xd1 6.♗xf7+ ♔e7 7.♘d5#

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Game 283

Legal – Saint Brie

1750


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

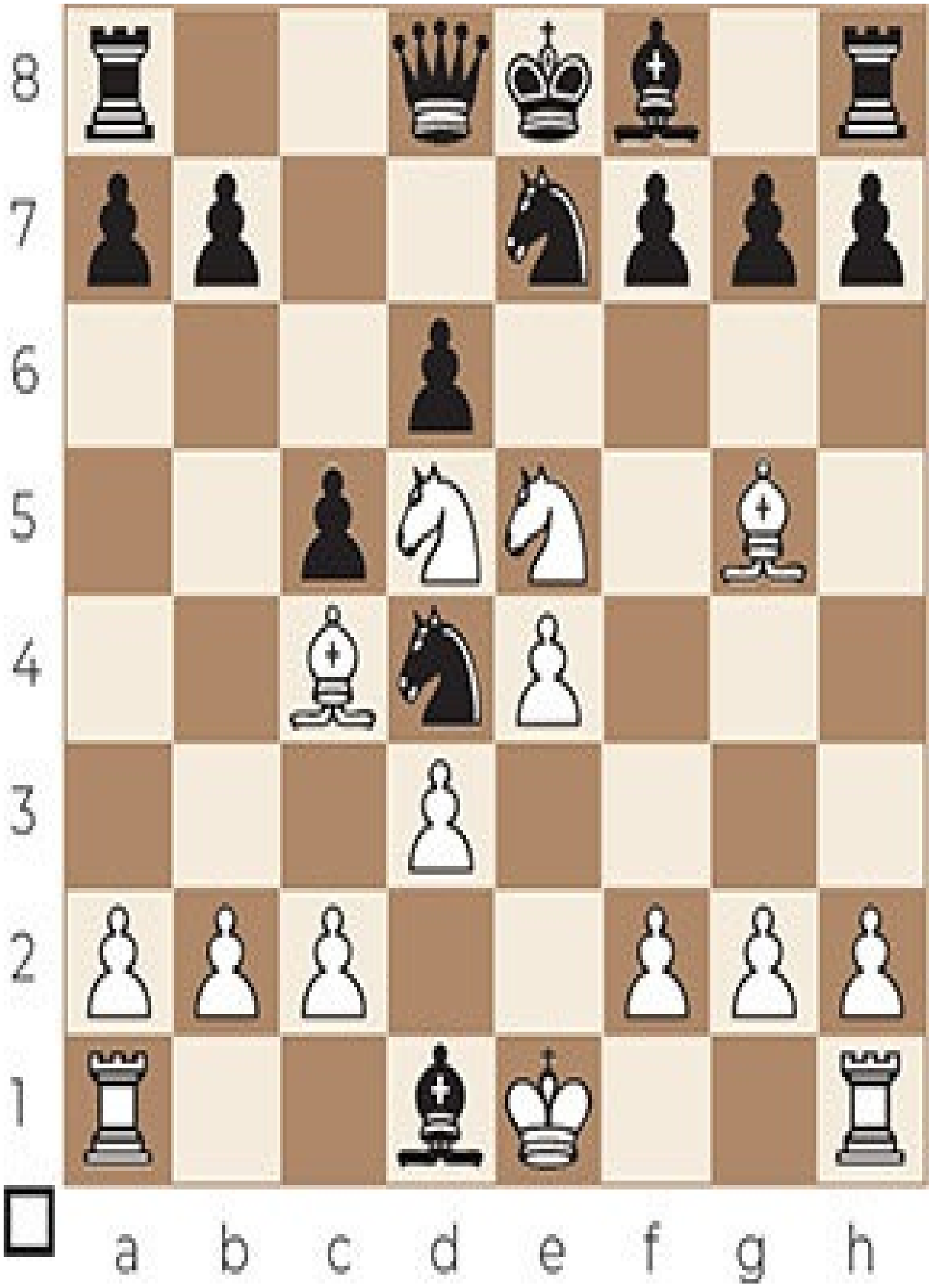
6. ♗xf7+ ♔e7 7. ♘d5#

Philidor Defense

Game 284

Buckle – NN

1840


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

9. ♘f6+ gxf6 10. ♗xf7#

Sicilian Defense

Game 285

Taylor – Dreyer

1934

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

8. ♗xf7+ ♔e7 9. ♗g5#

Bishop’s Opening, Boden-Kieseritsky Gambit

Game 286

NN – Geshev

1935

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

8... ♗xf2+ 9.♔e2 ♘d4#

Alekhine’s Defense, Scandinavian Variation, Geshev Gambit

EXERCISES B

Warming up test

EXERCISES B

Warming up test

This warming up test (B) contains over 200 exercises, to practice all you have learned in the 30 checkmate pattern chapters. These are especially interesting for beginners and casual players, but these can also serve for intermediate players as a warm-up. More than 80% of these exercises are mate-in-2 or mate-in-3.

Exercise B 1

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

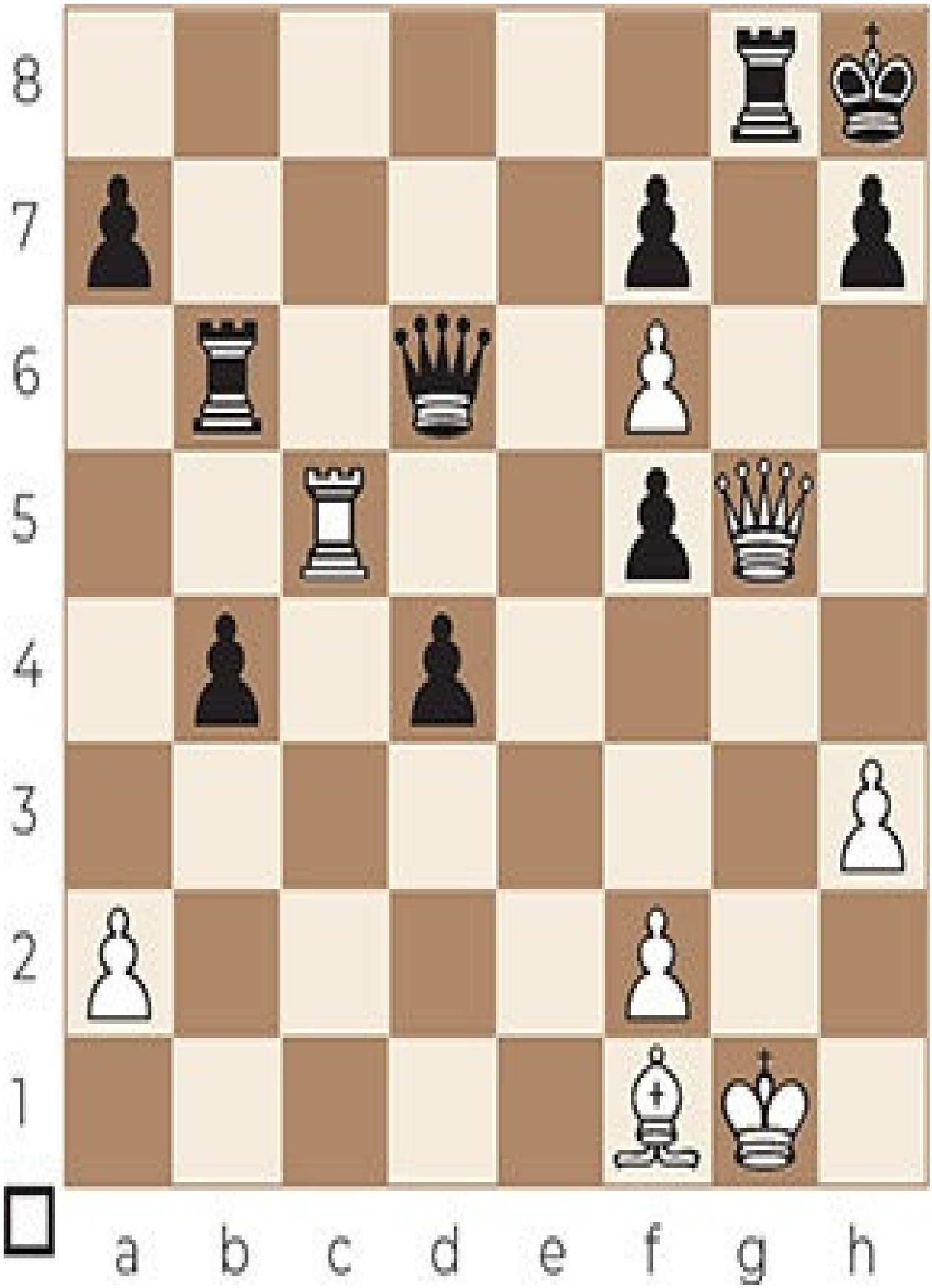
Exercise B 2

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

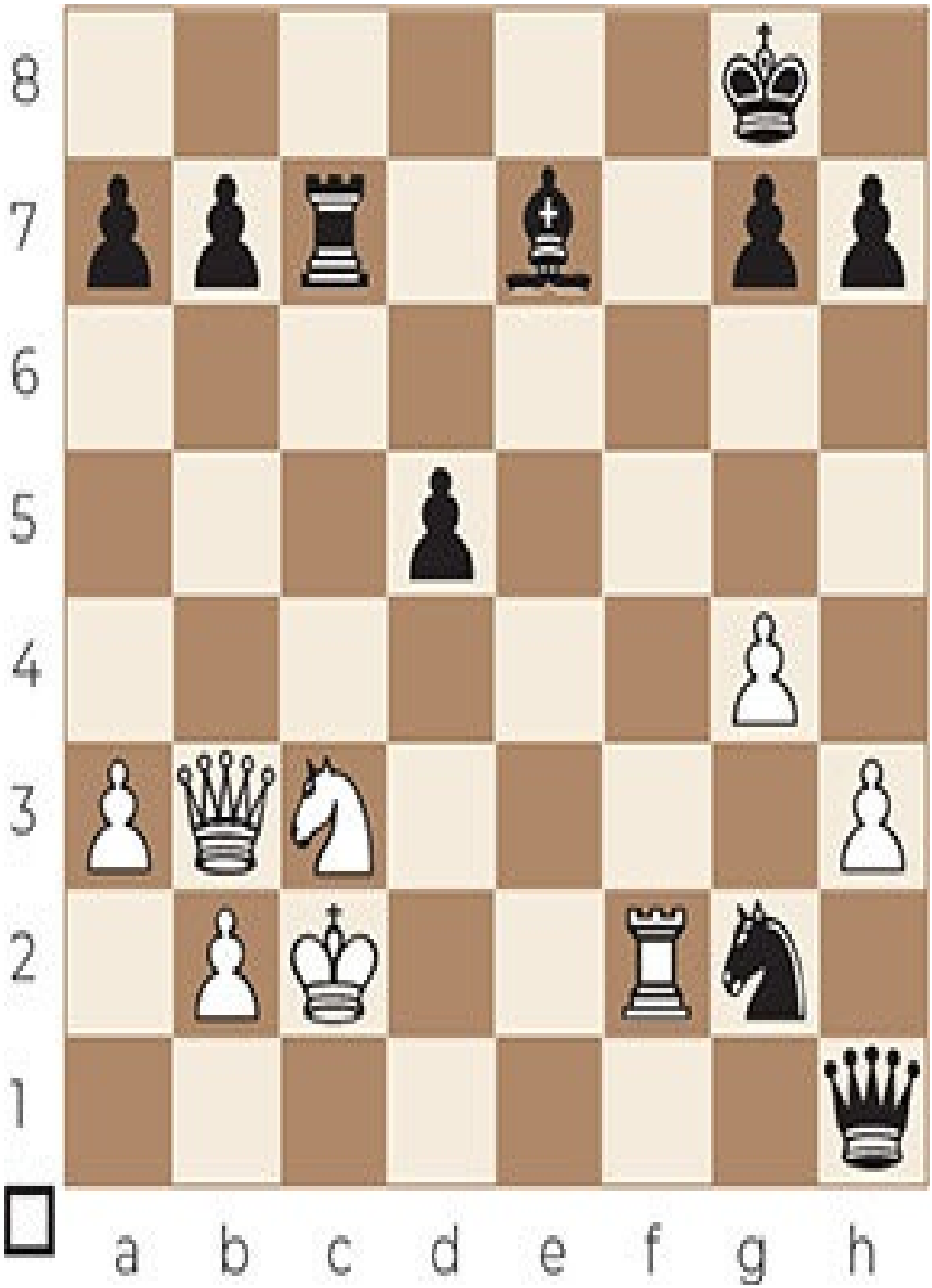
Exercise B 3

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 4


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

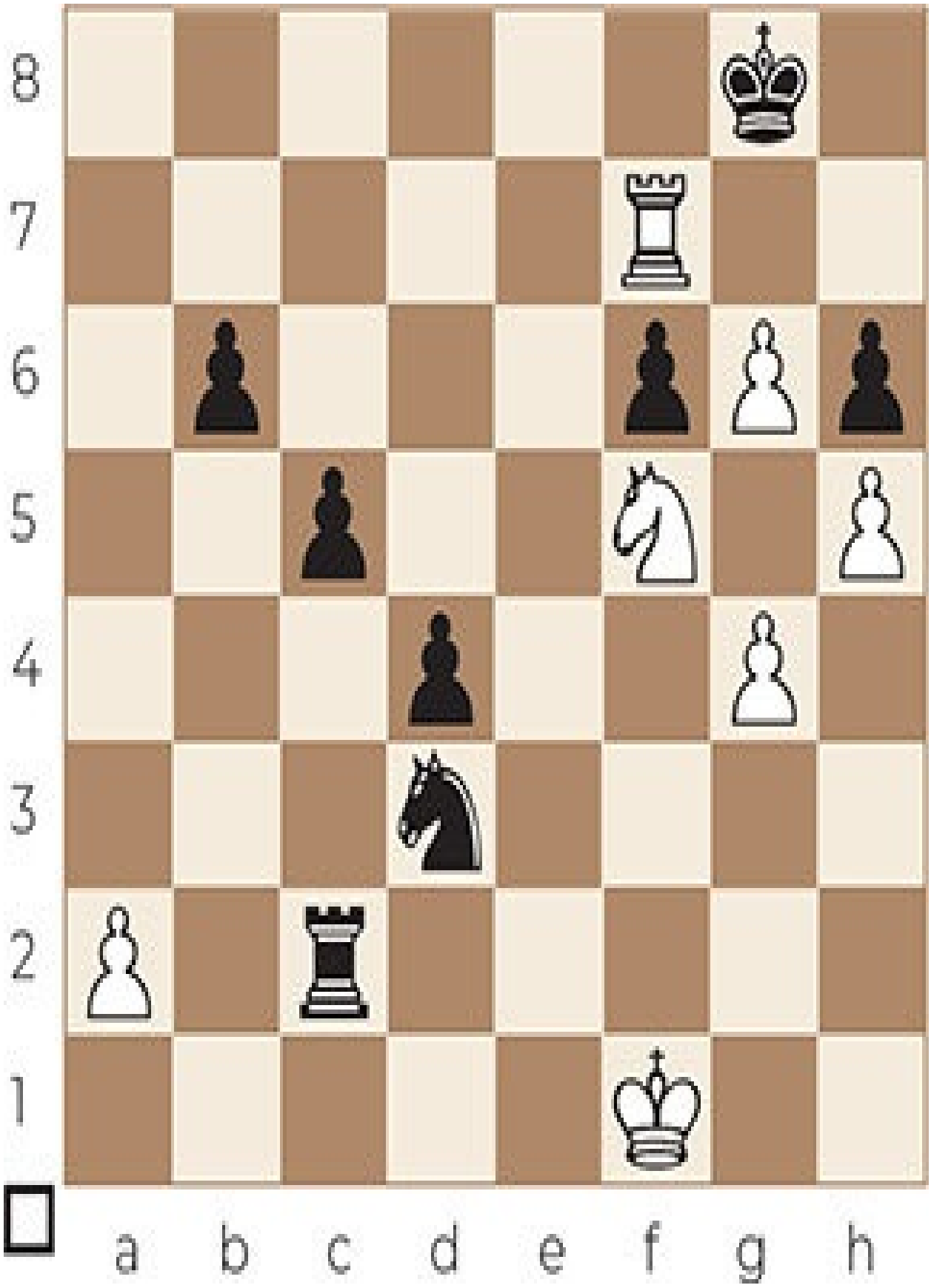
Exercise B 5


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

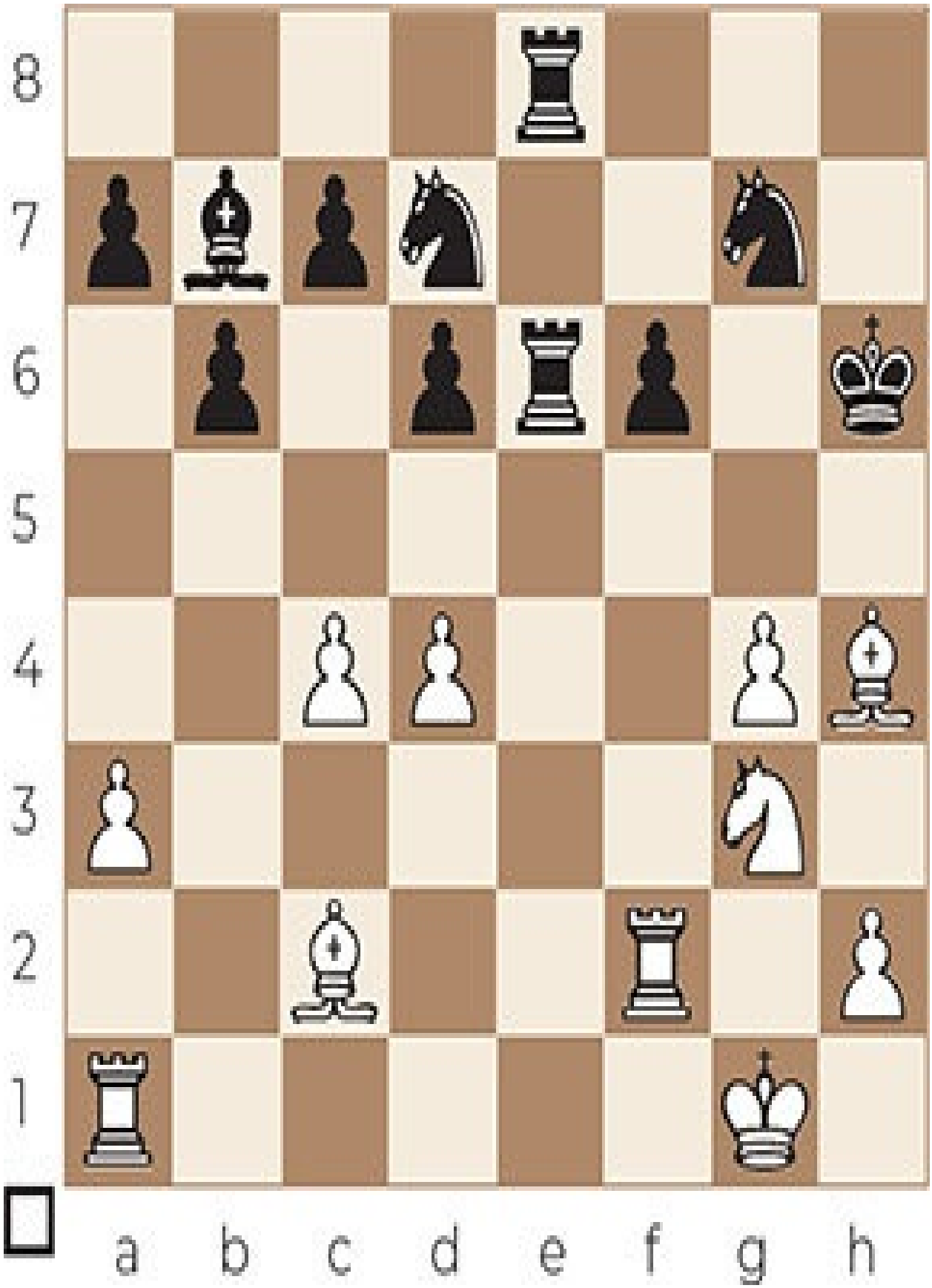
Exercise B 6

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 7


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 8


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

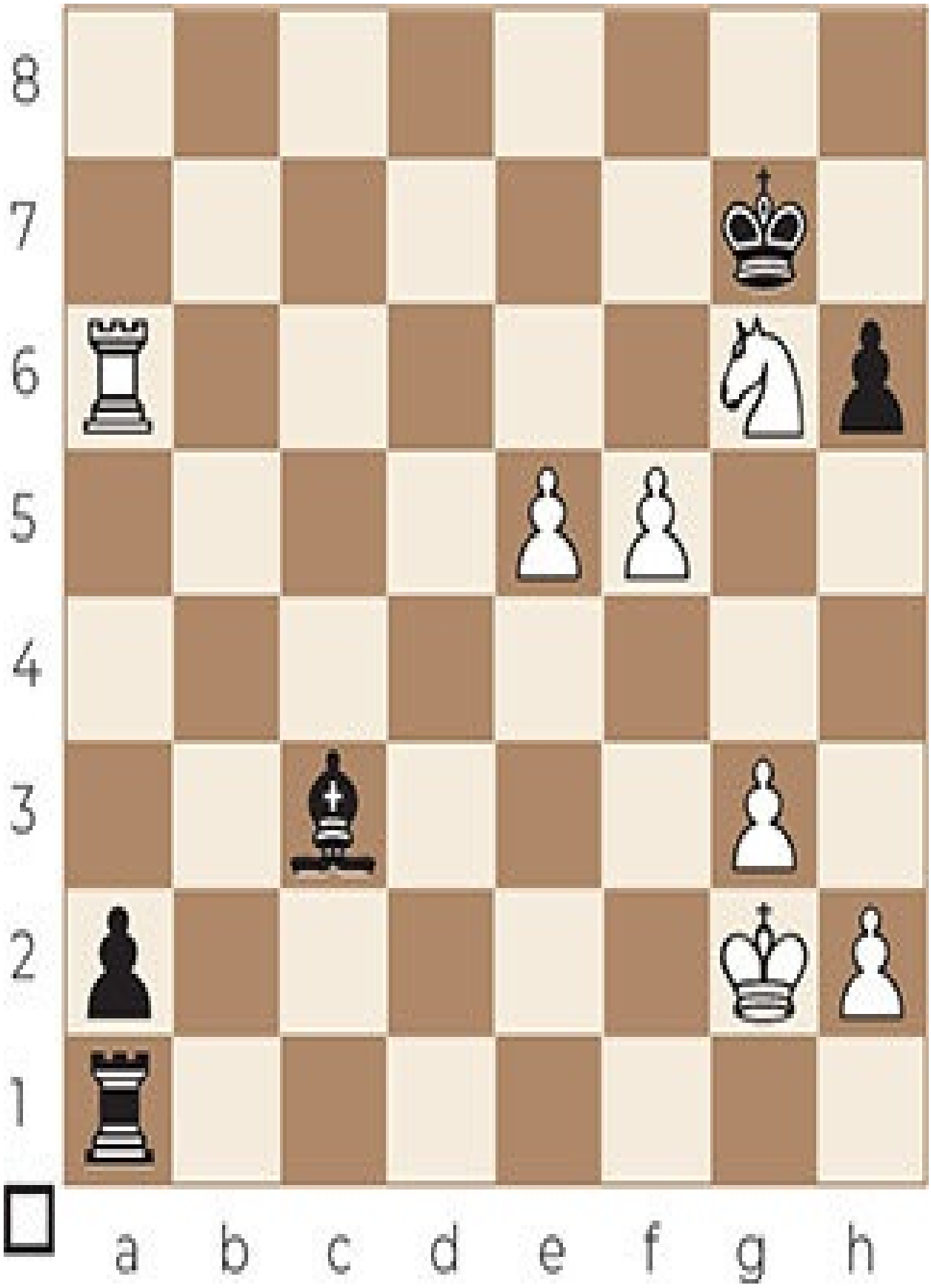
Exercise B 9

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 10

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 11


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

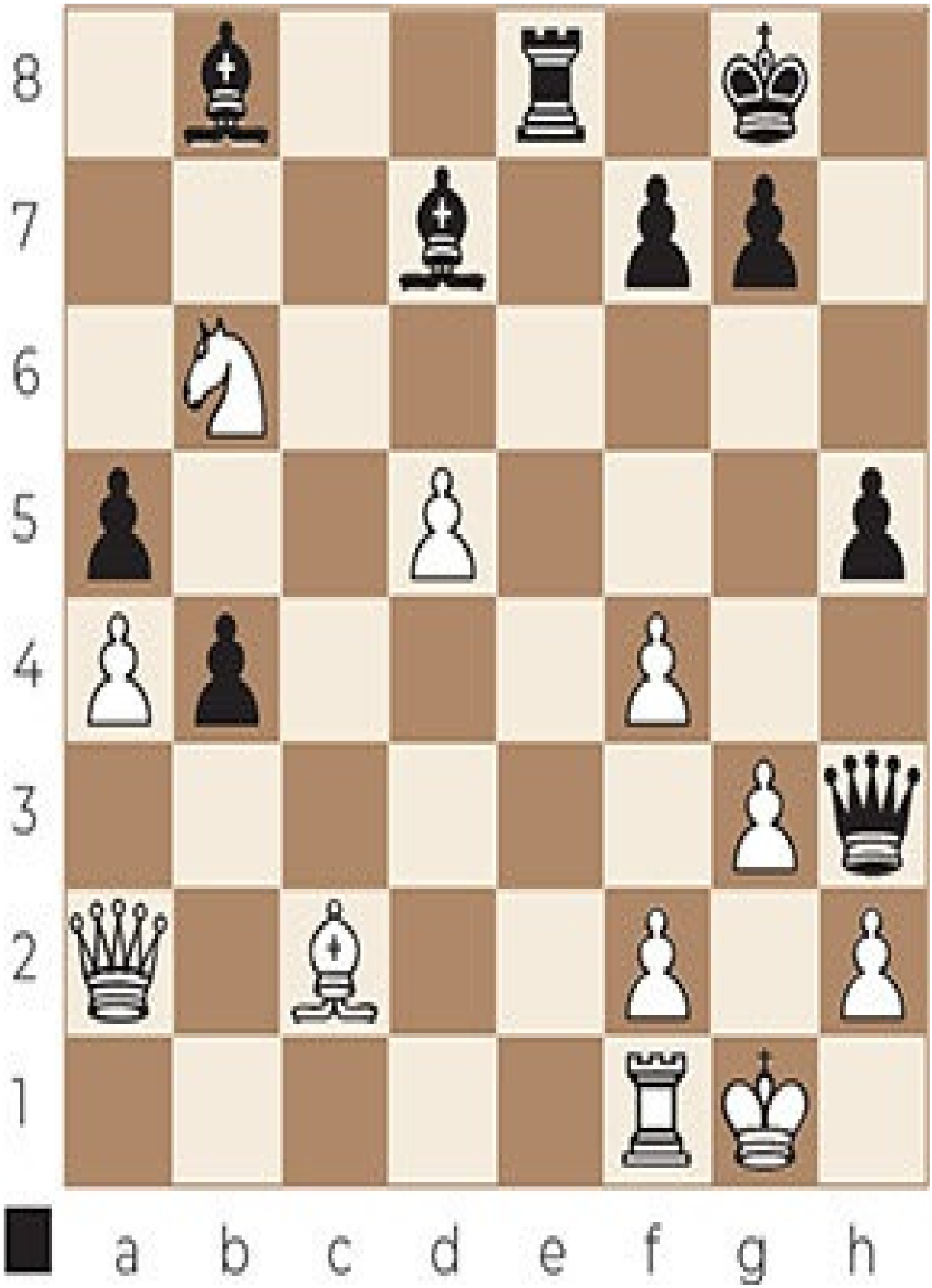
Exercise B 12

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

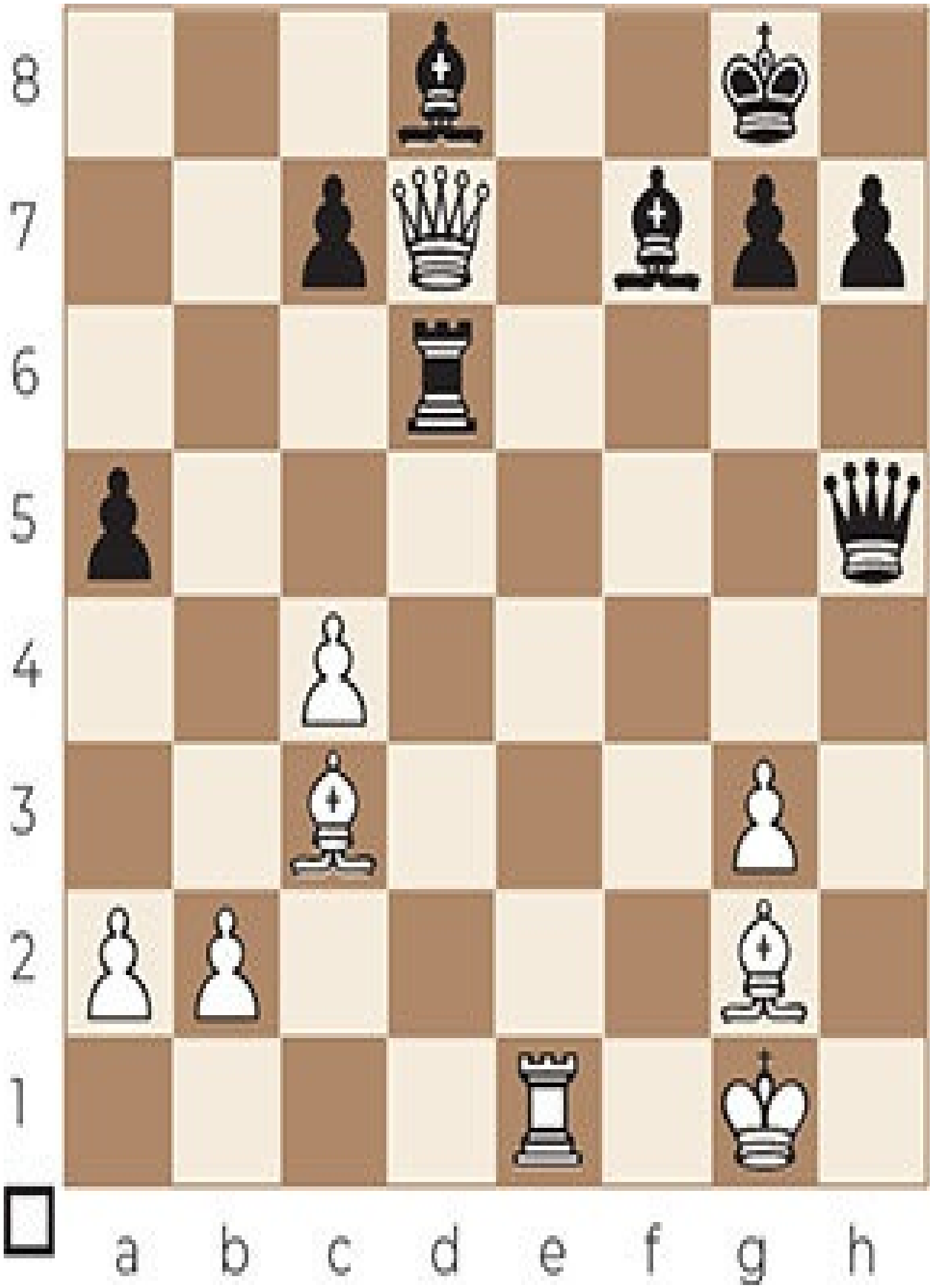
Exercise B 13

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

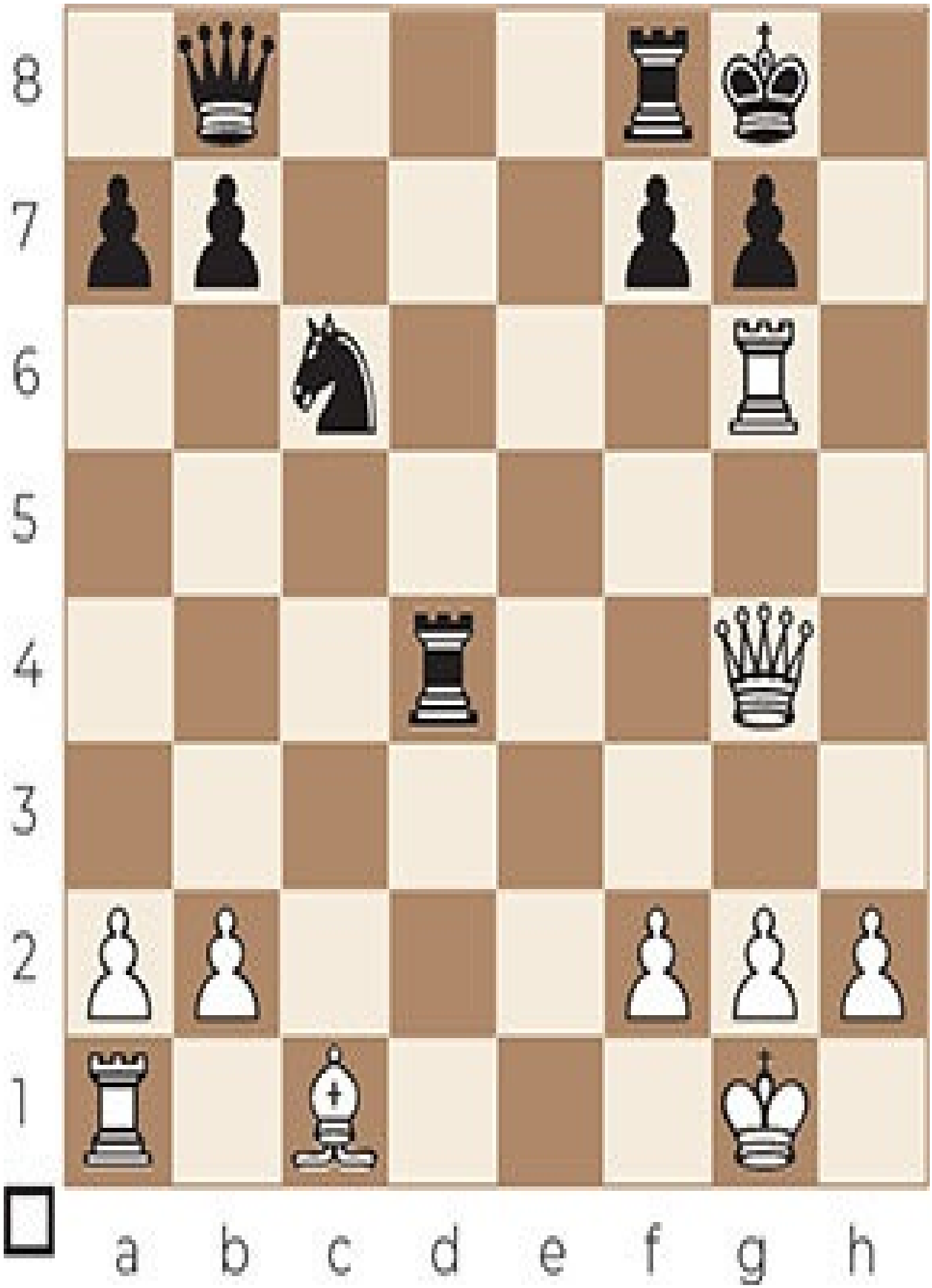
Exercise B 14


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 15


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 16


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 17

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 18

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 19

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 20

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

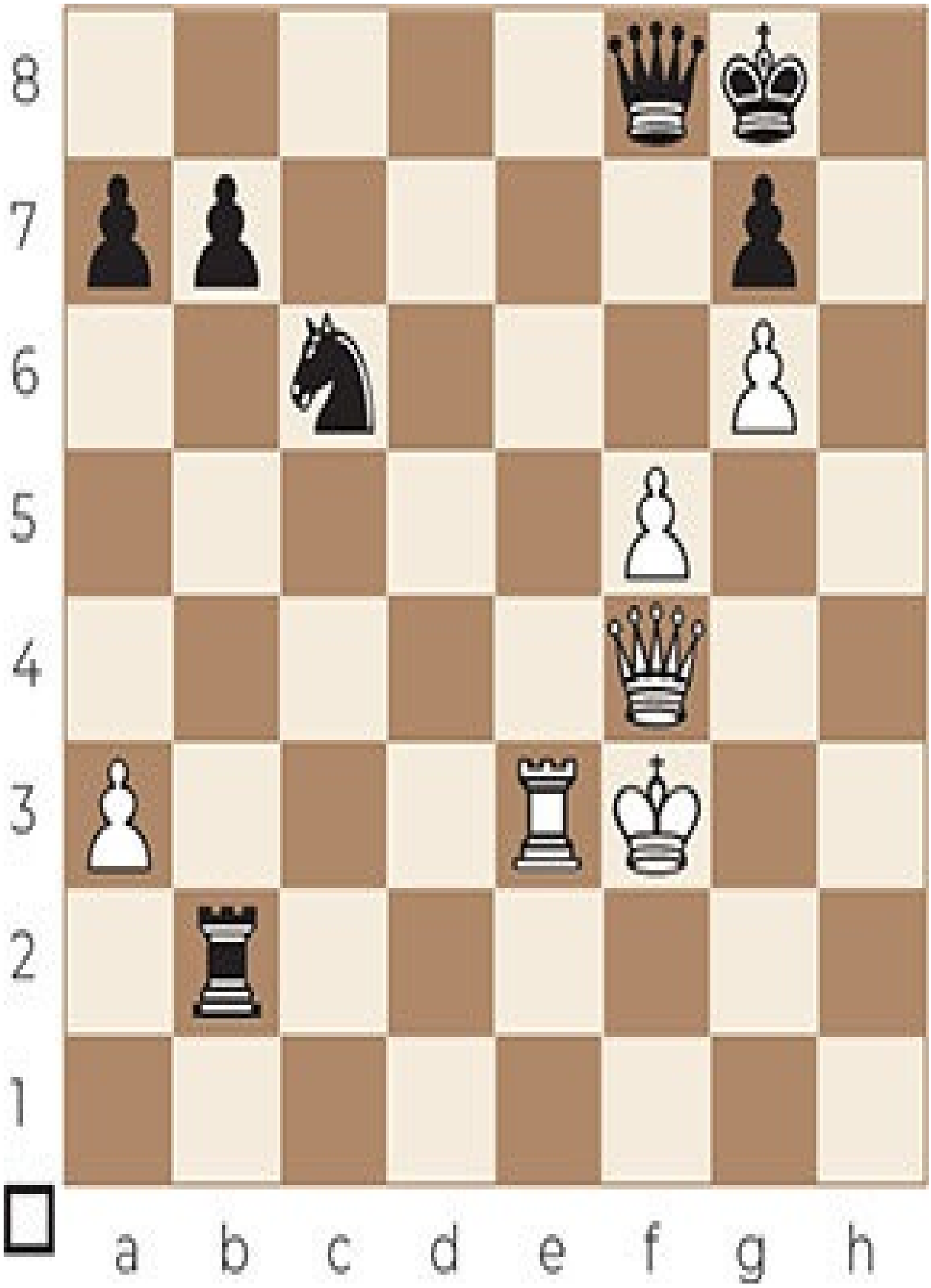
Exercise B 21

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 22

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

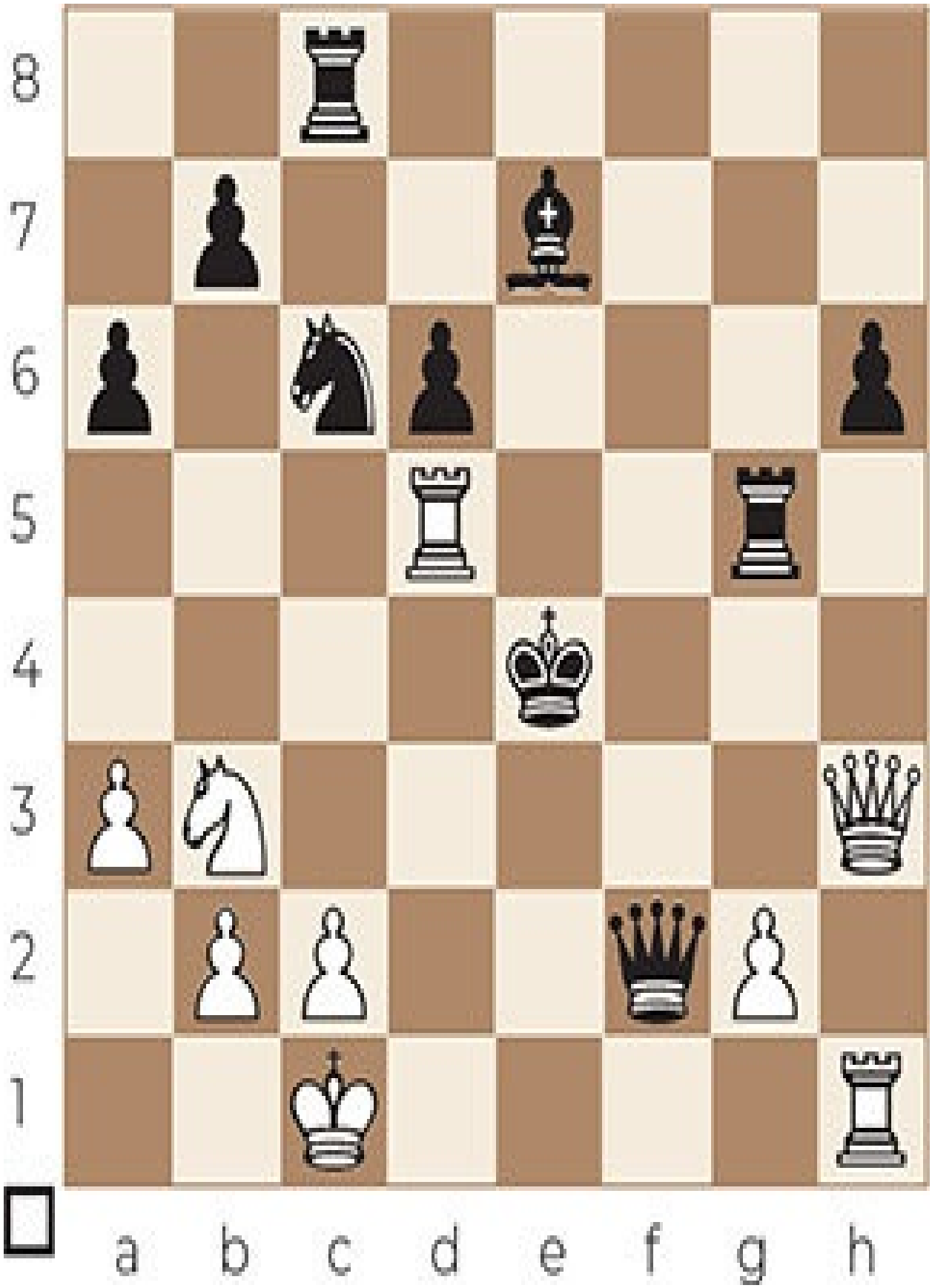
Exercise B 23


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 24

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 25


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

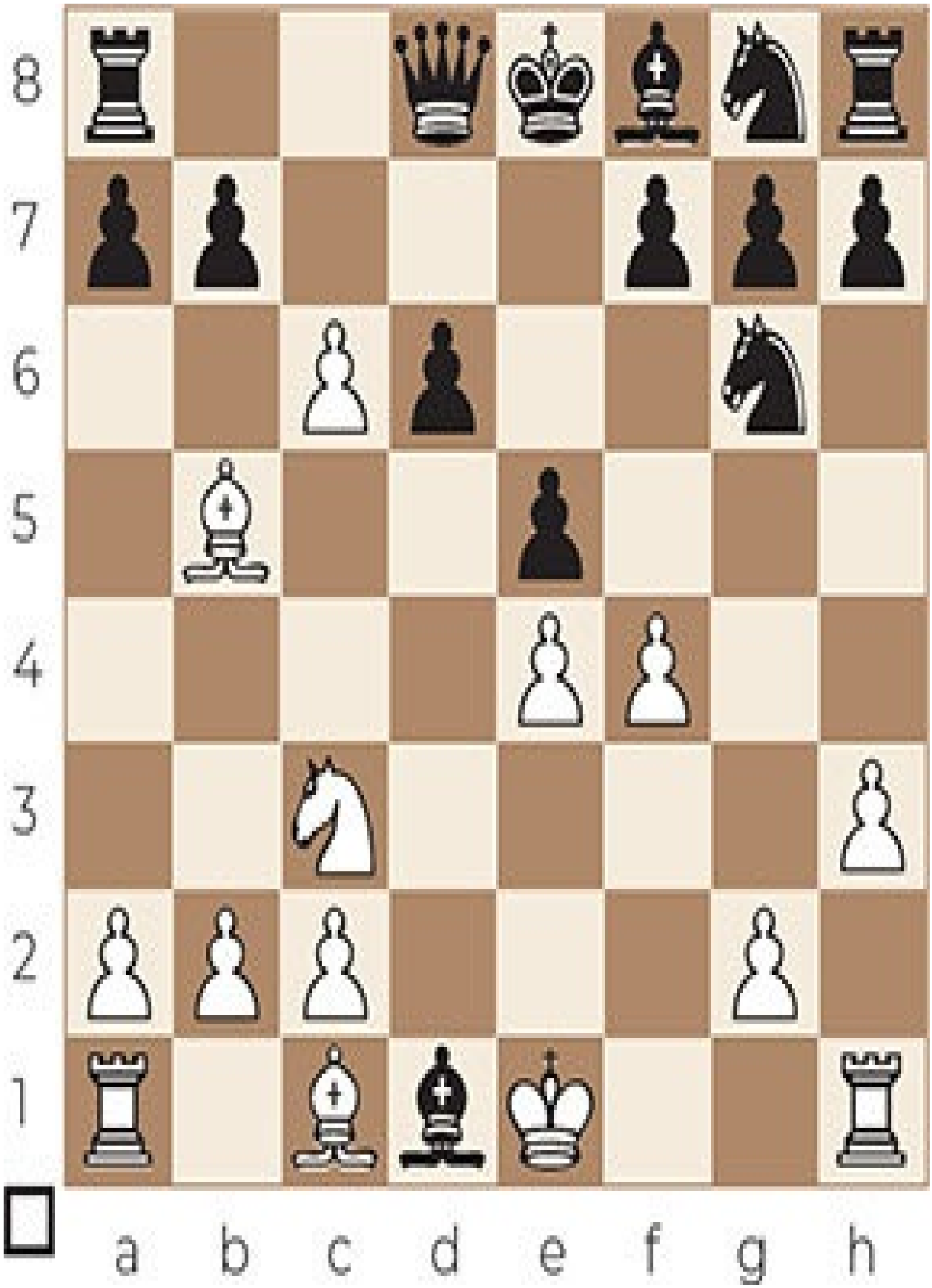
Exercise B 26

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

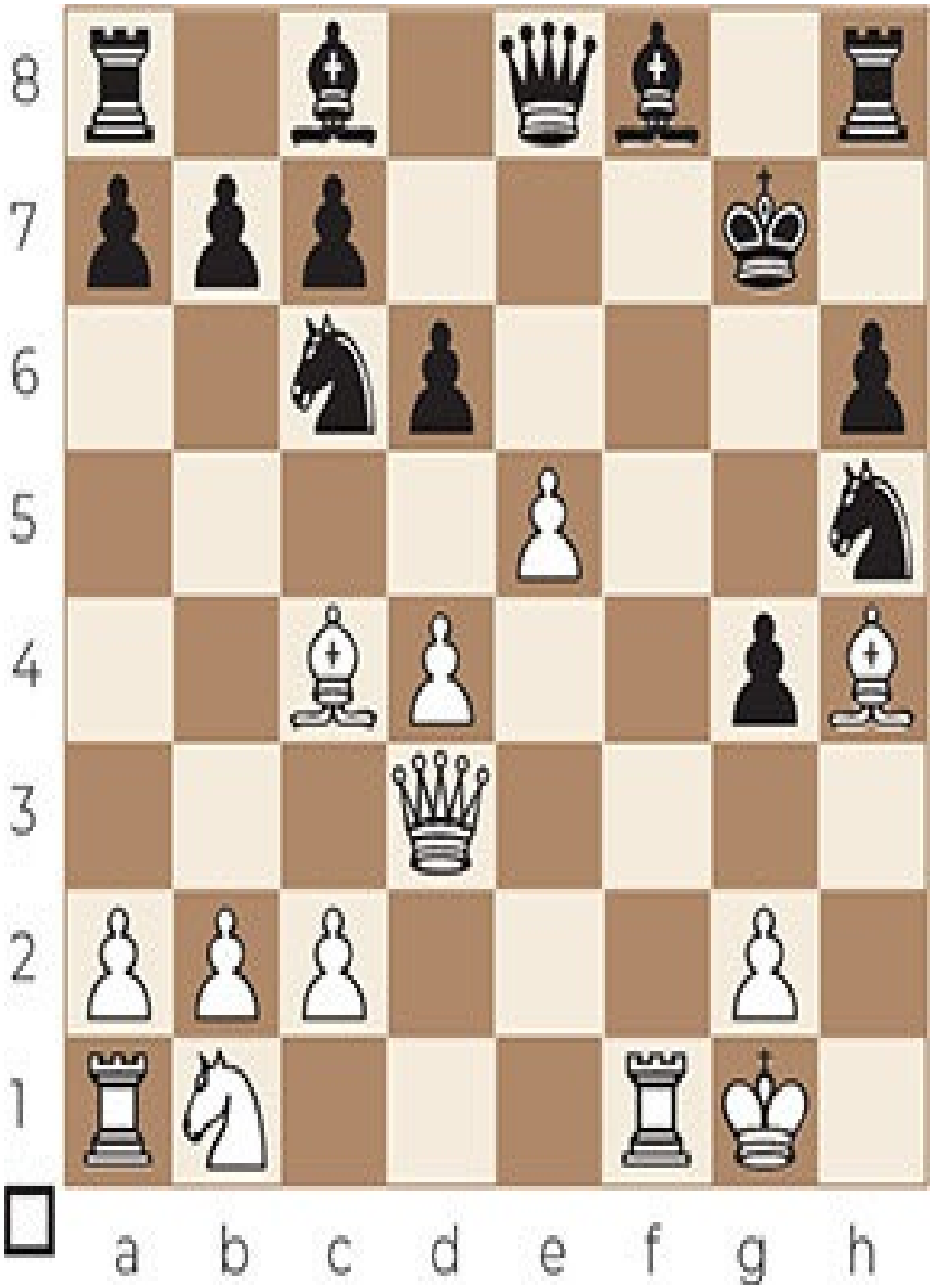
Exercise B 27

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

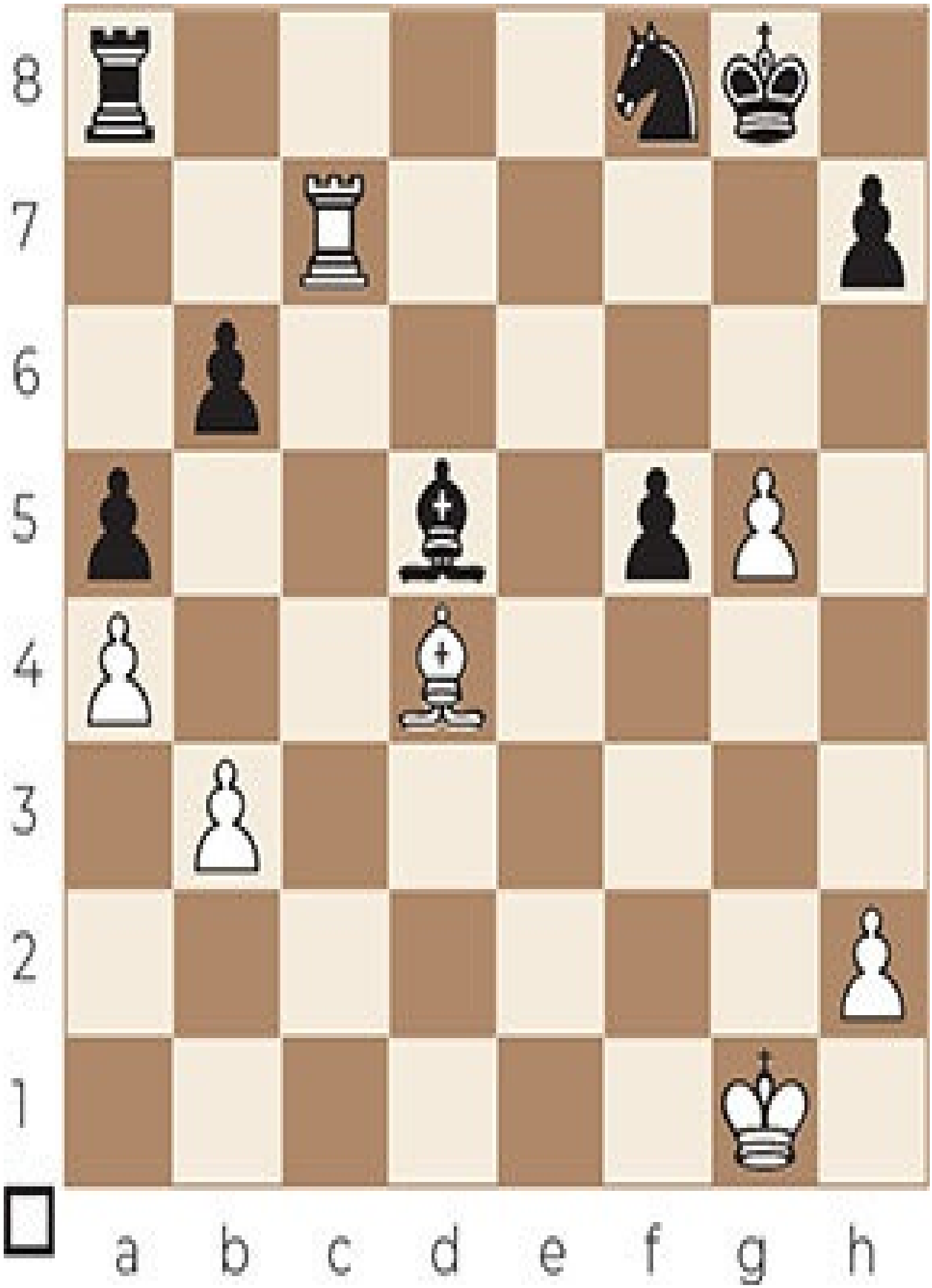
Exercise B 28


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 29


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 30


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

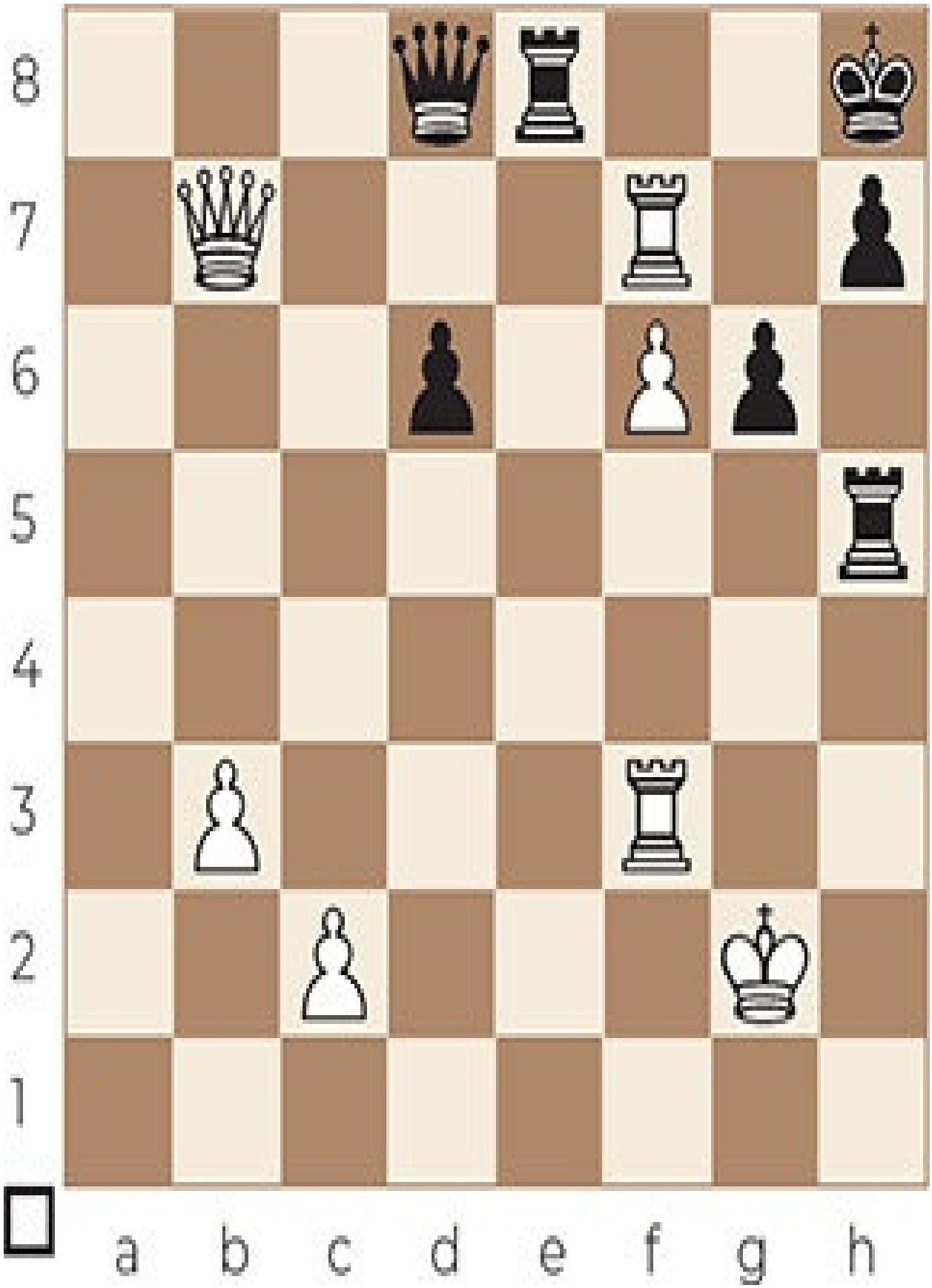
Exercise B 31

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

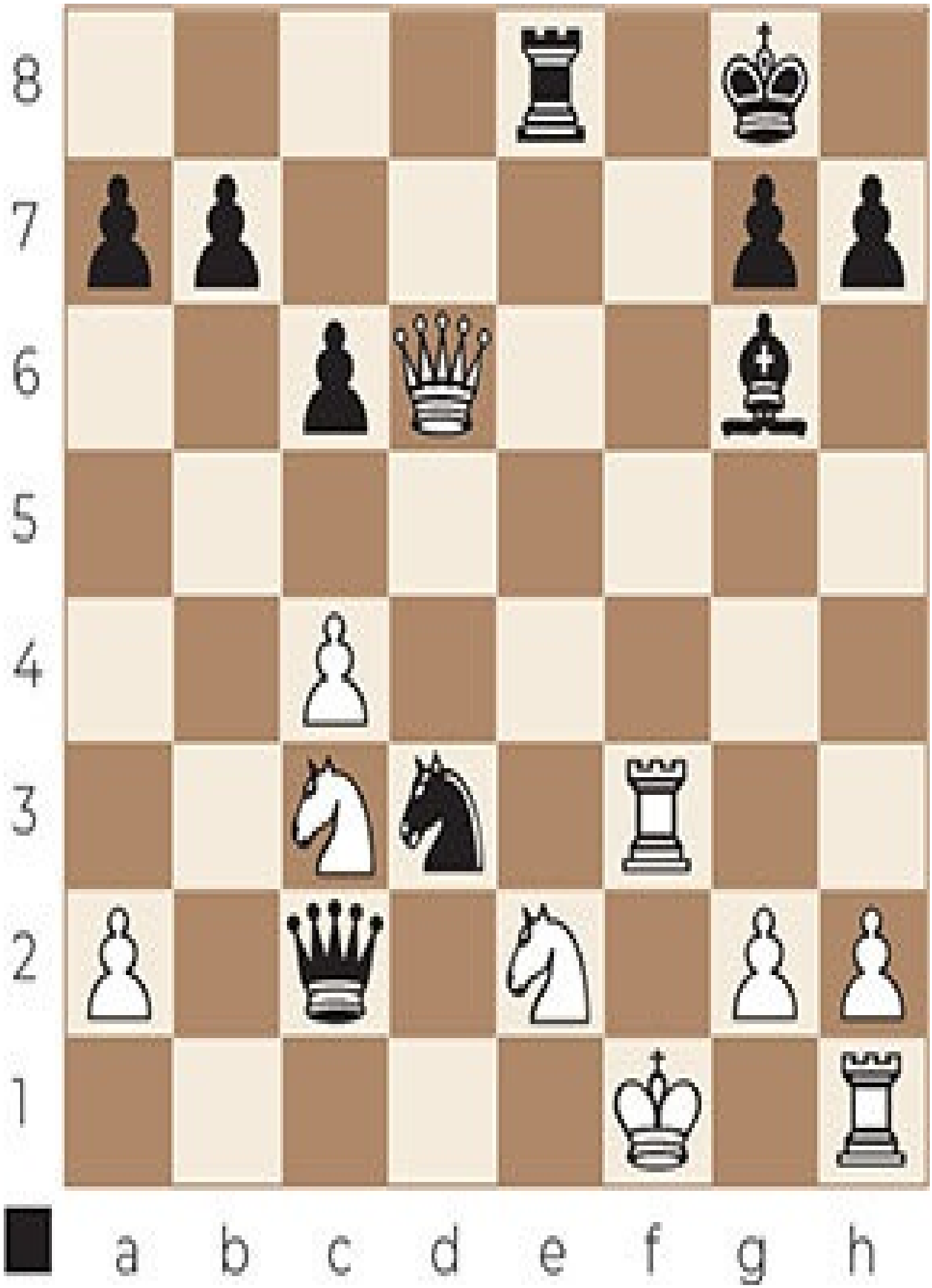
Exercise B 32

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

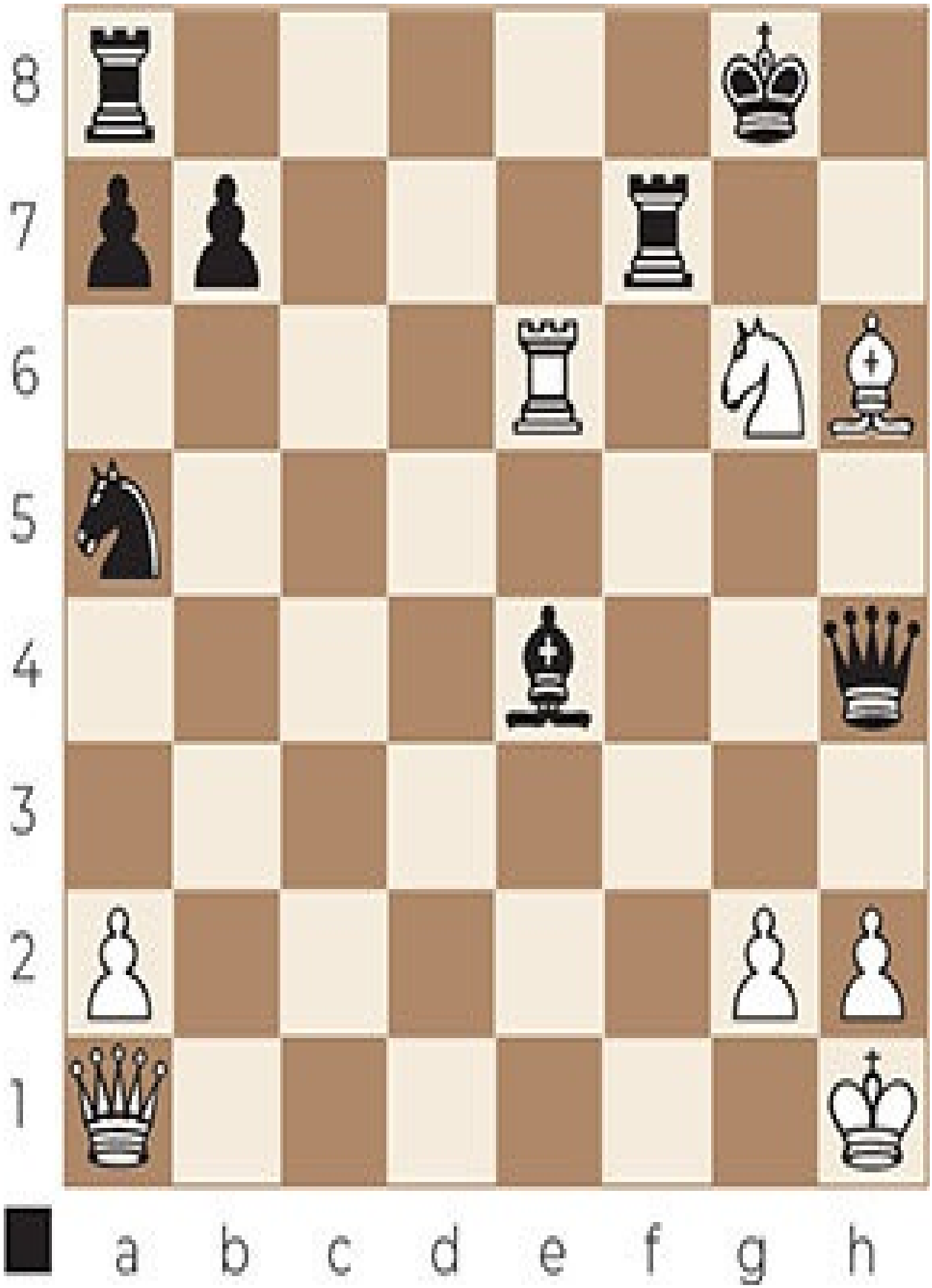
Exercise B 33


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 34


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 35


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

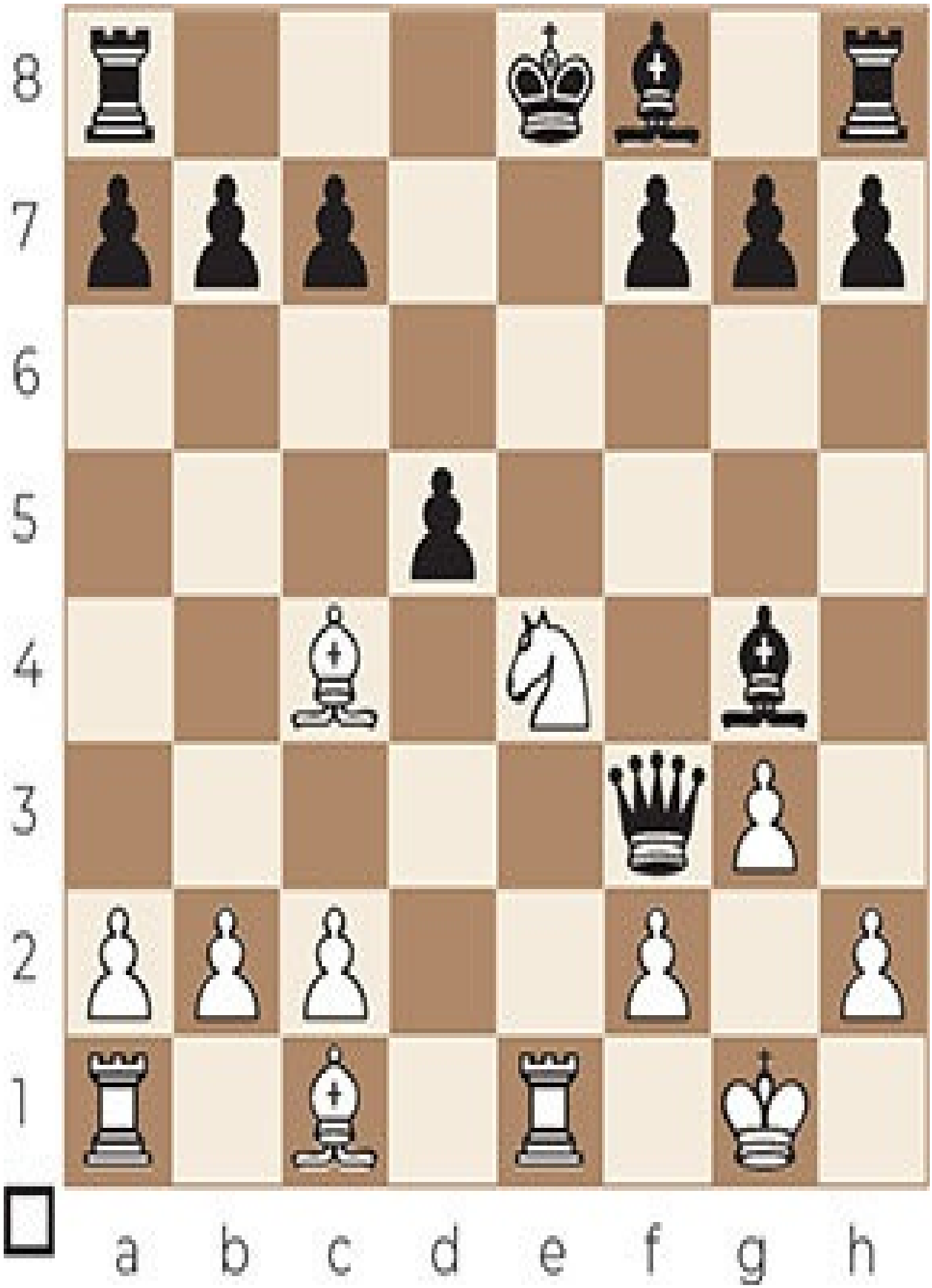
Exercise B 36

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 37

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

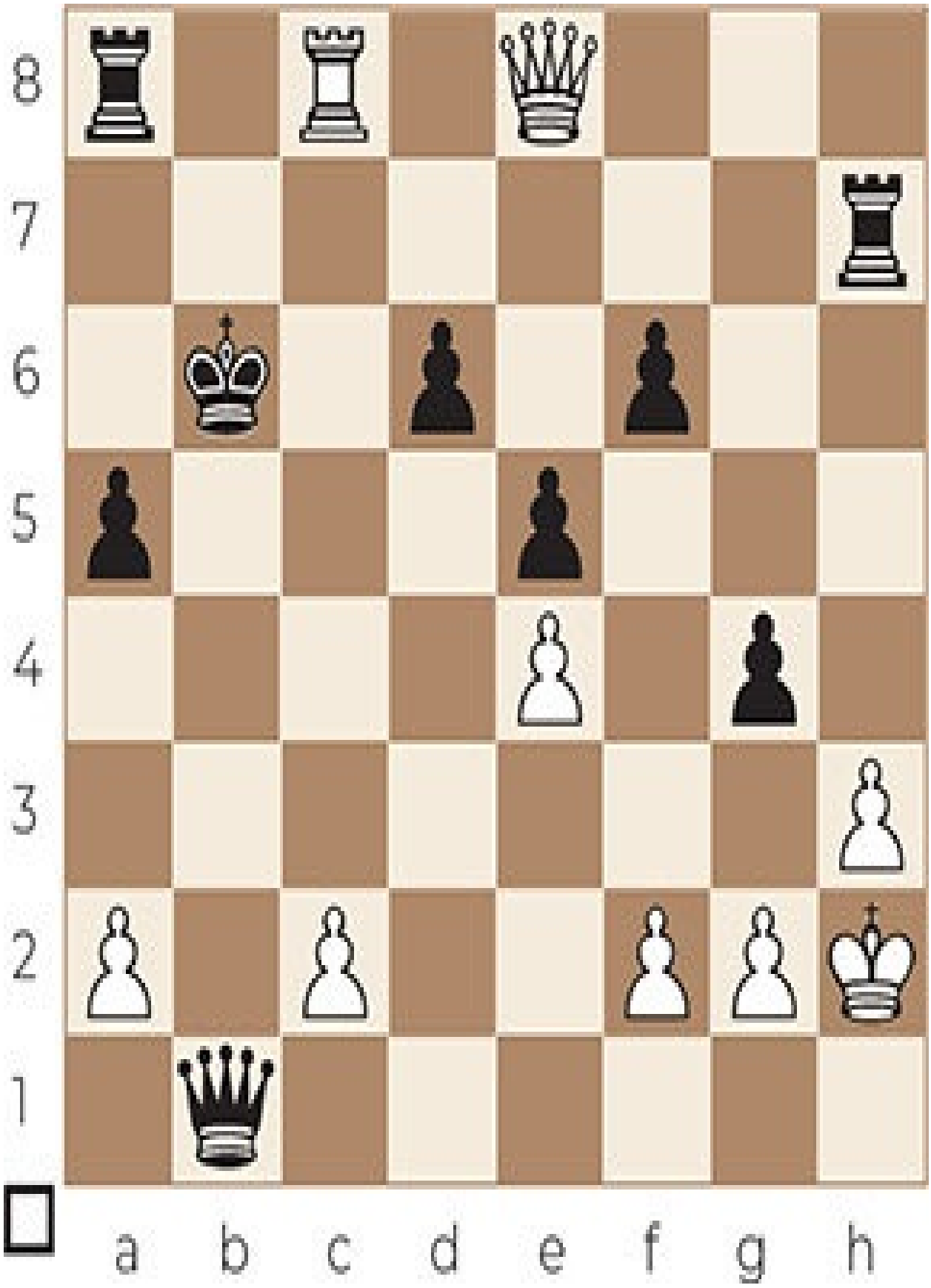
Exercise B 38


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

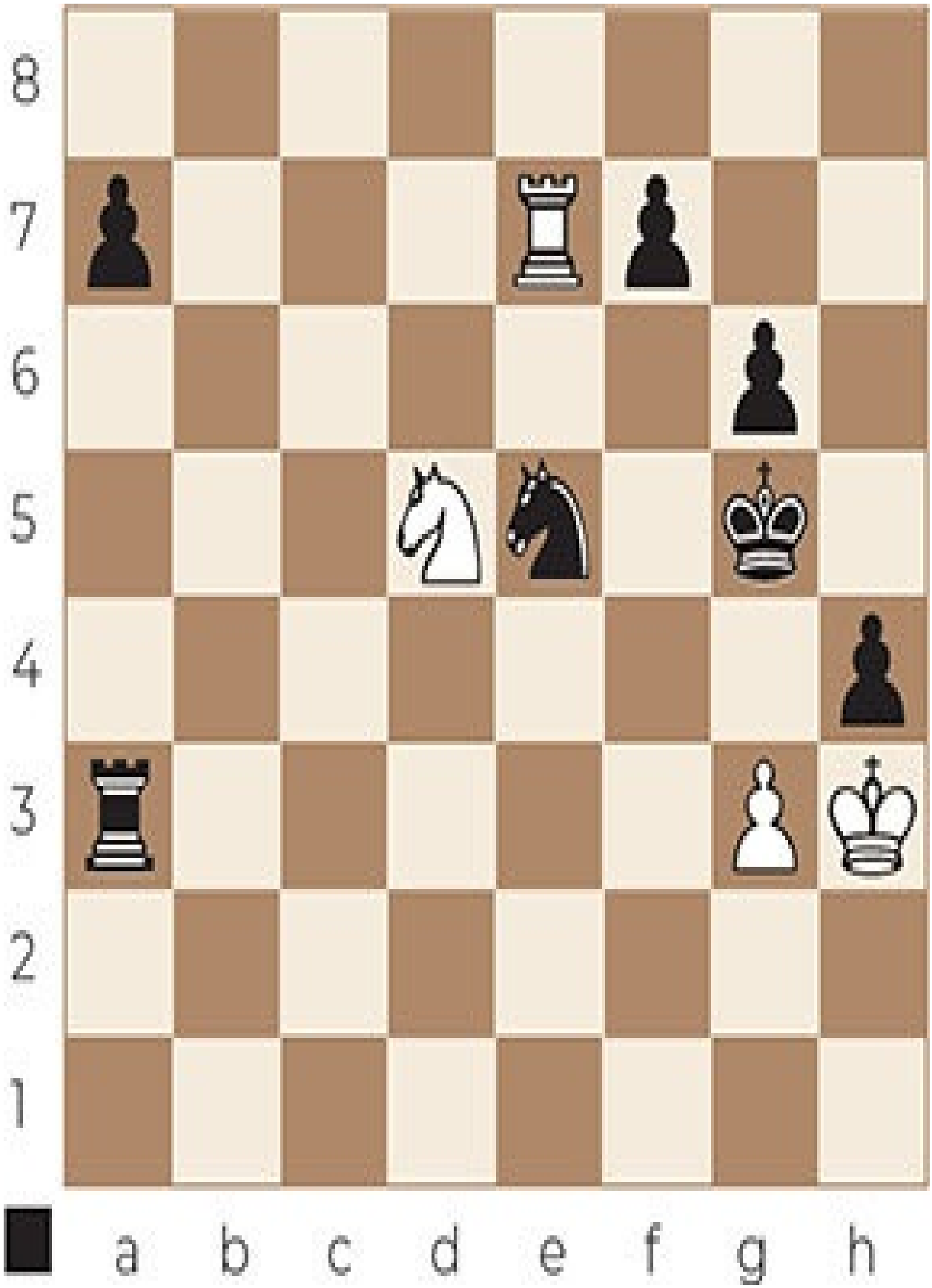
Exercise B 39

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

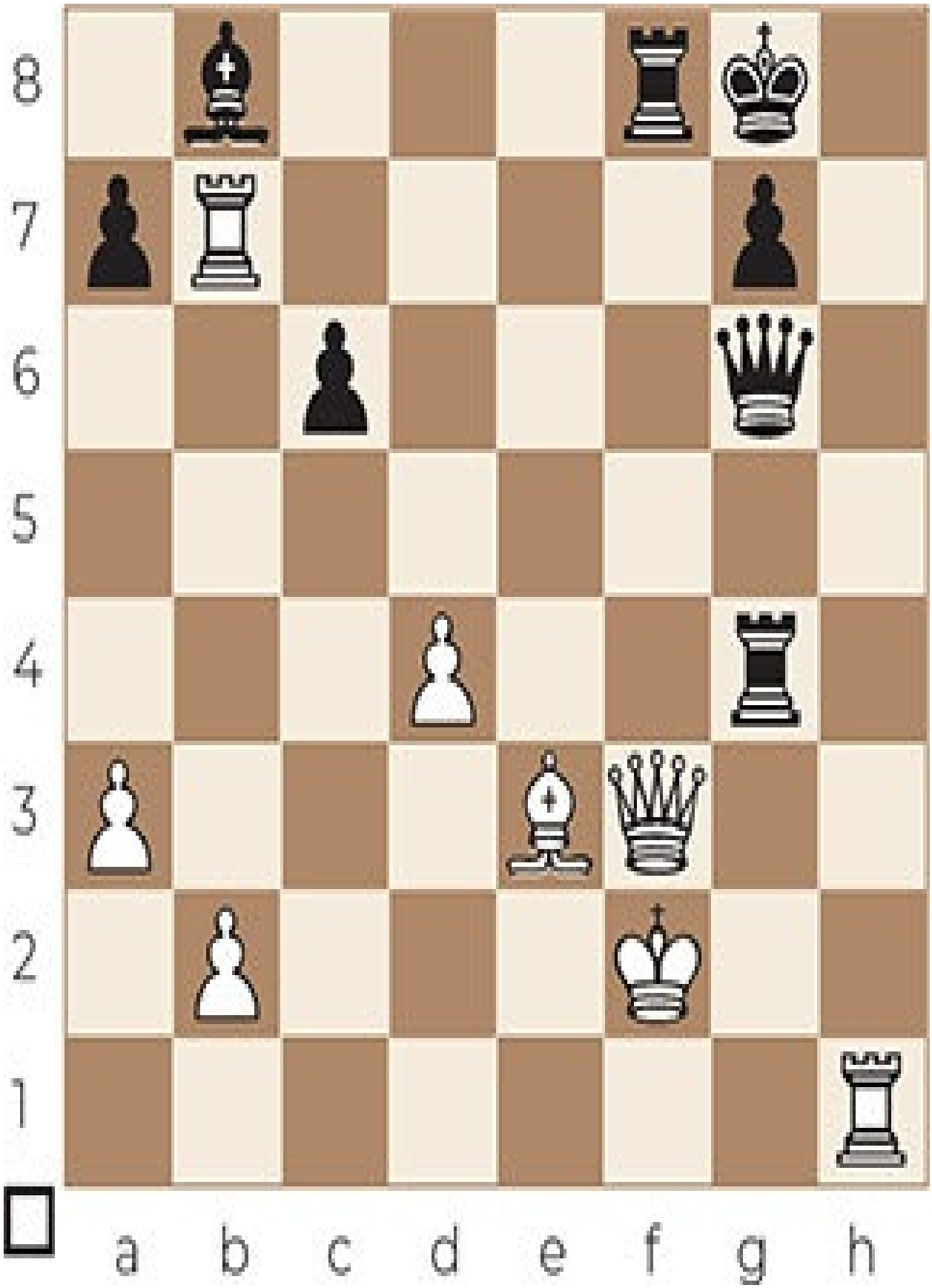
Exercise B 40


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 41


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

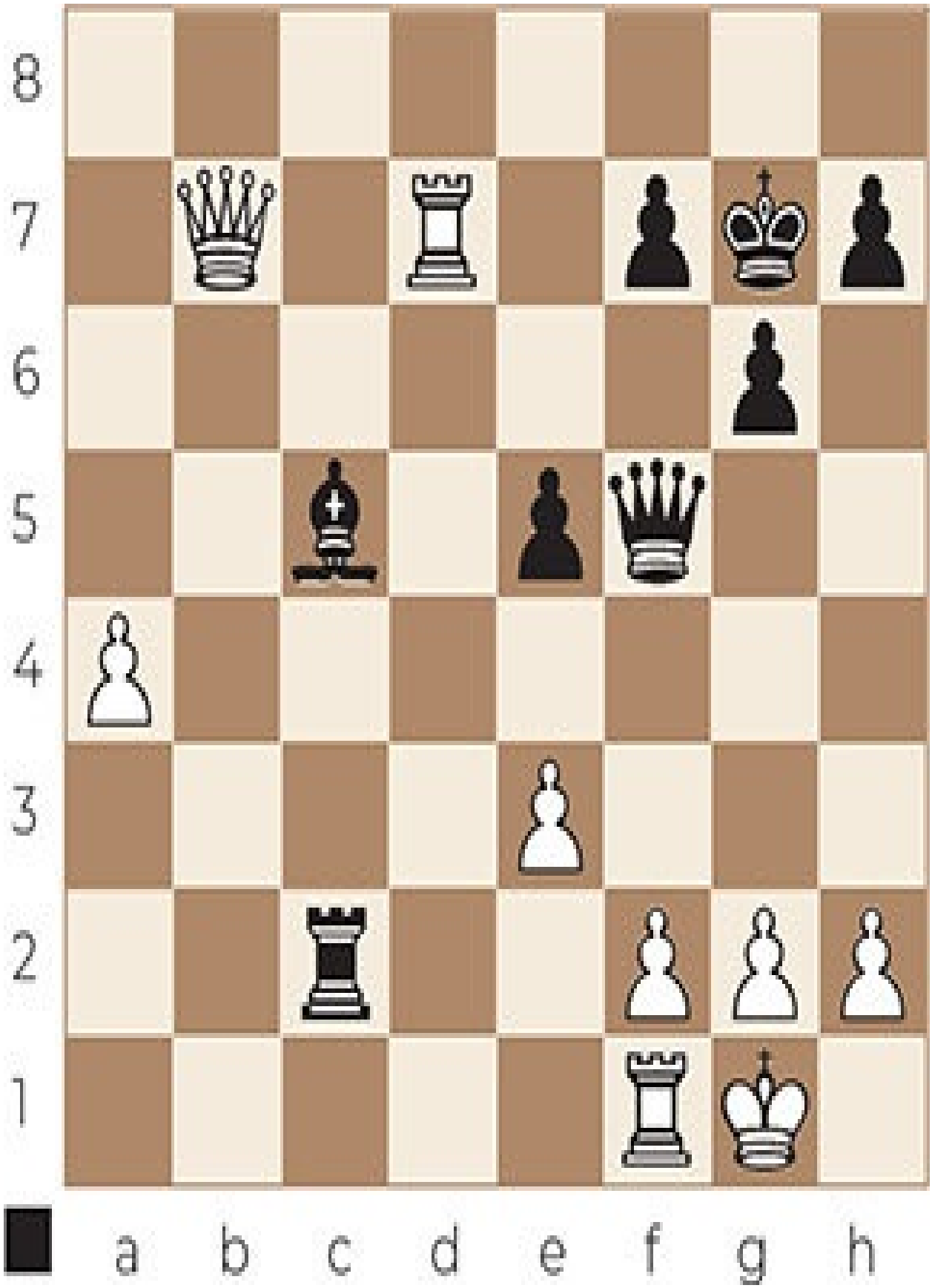
Exercise B 42


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

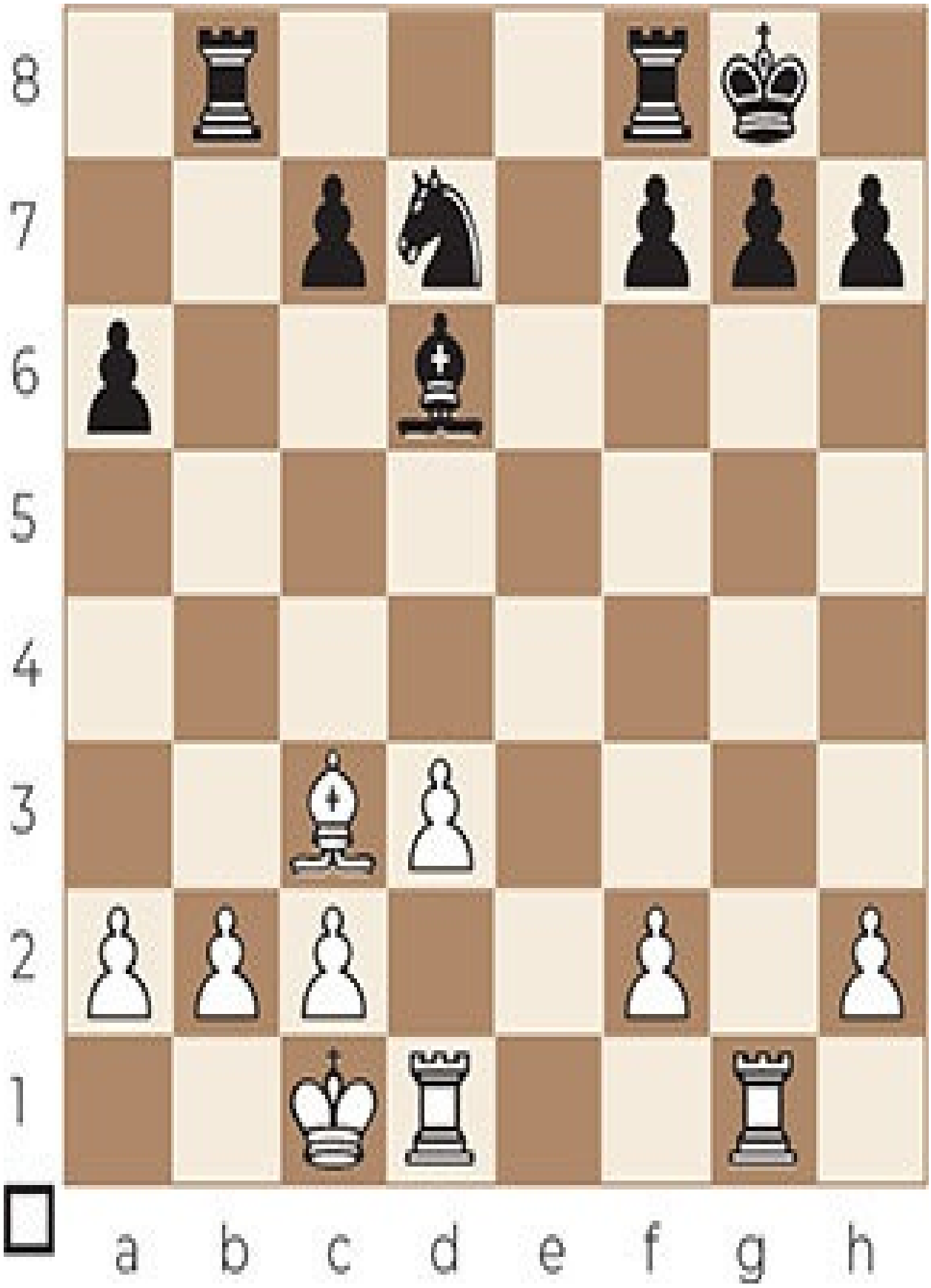
Exercise B 43

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

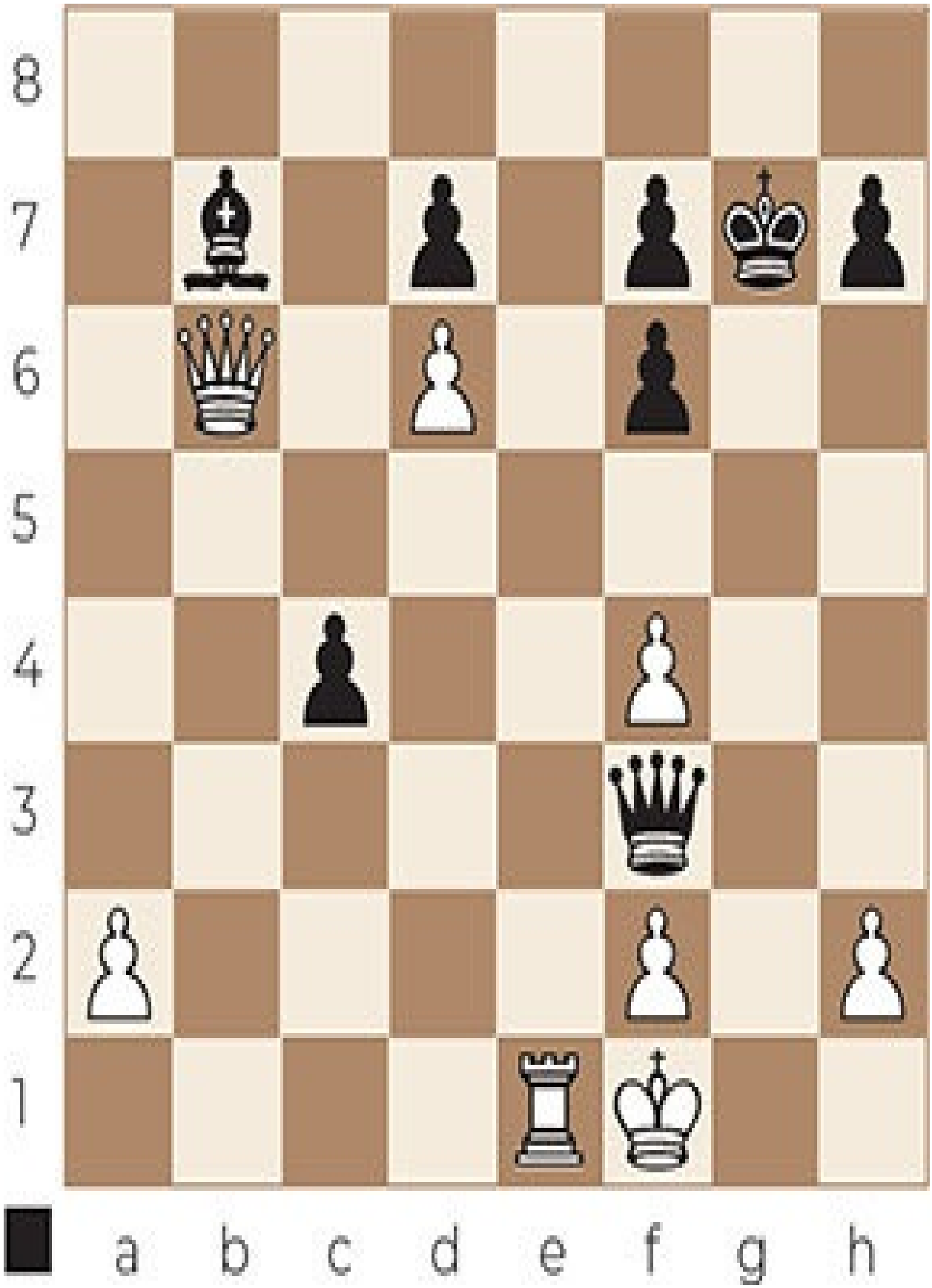
Exercise B 44


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

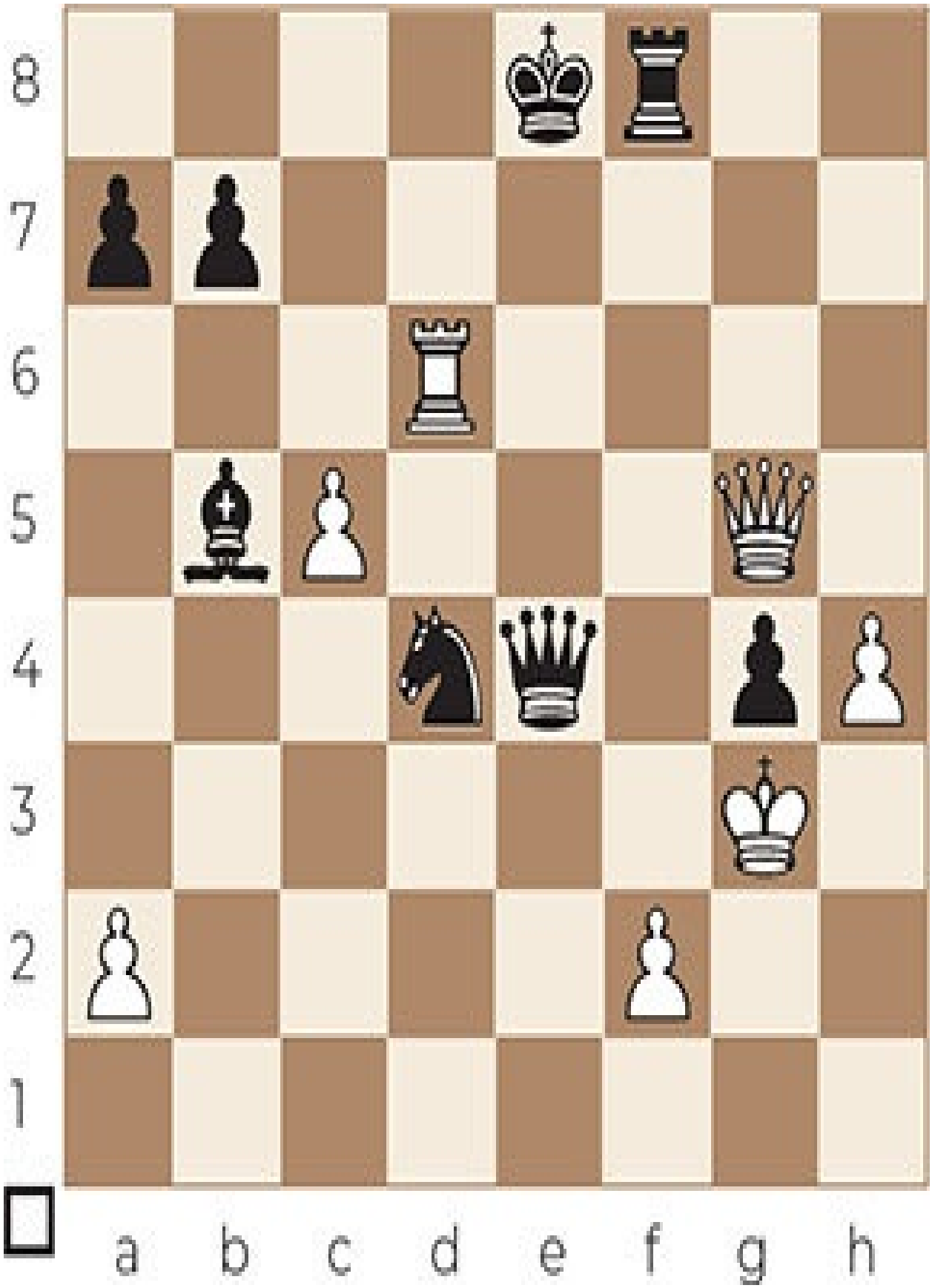
Exercise B 45


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

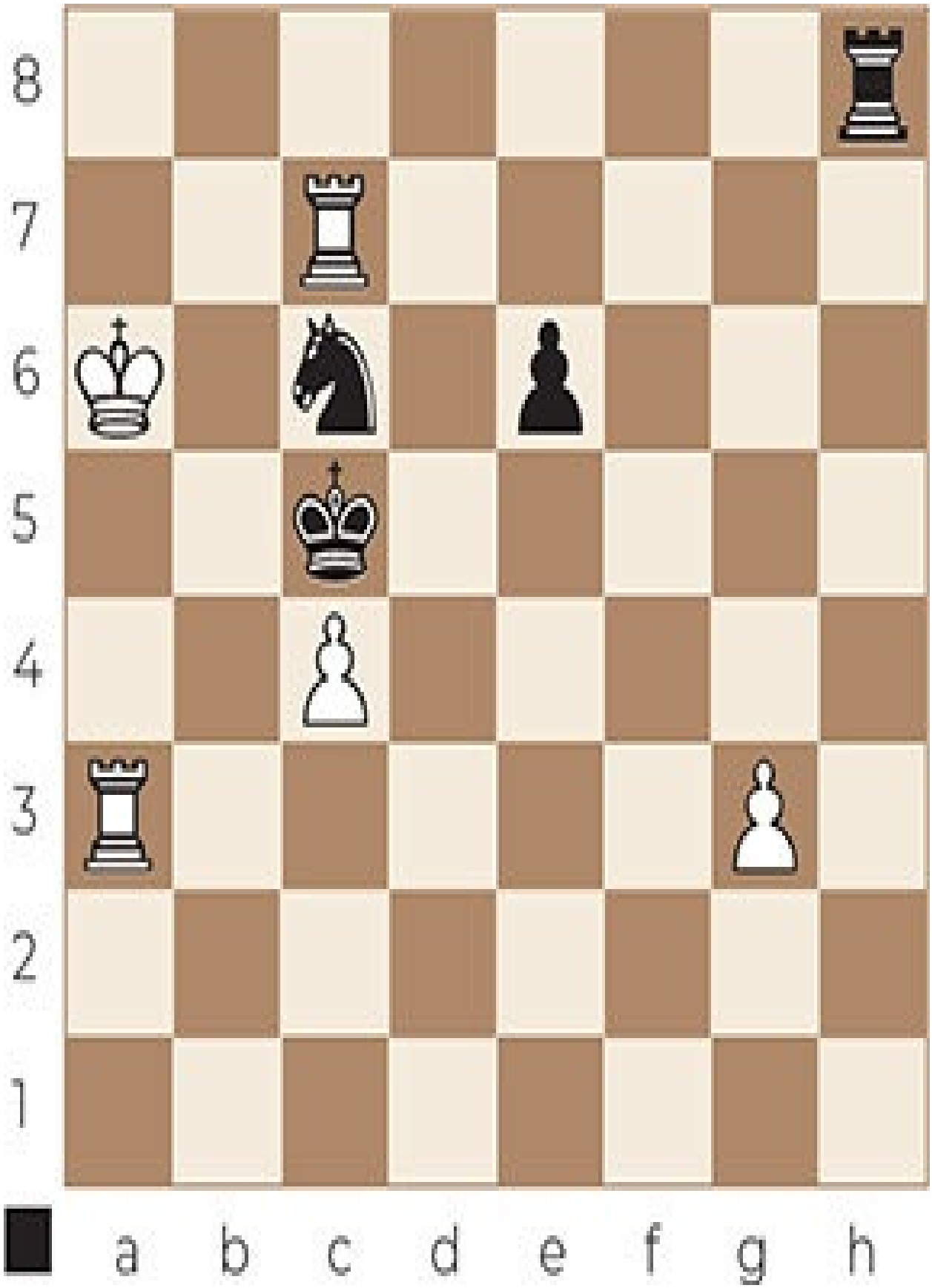
Exercise B 46


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 47


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

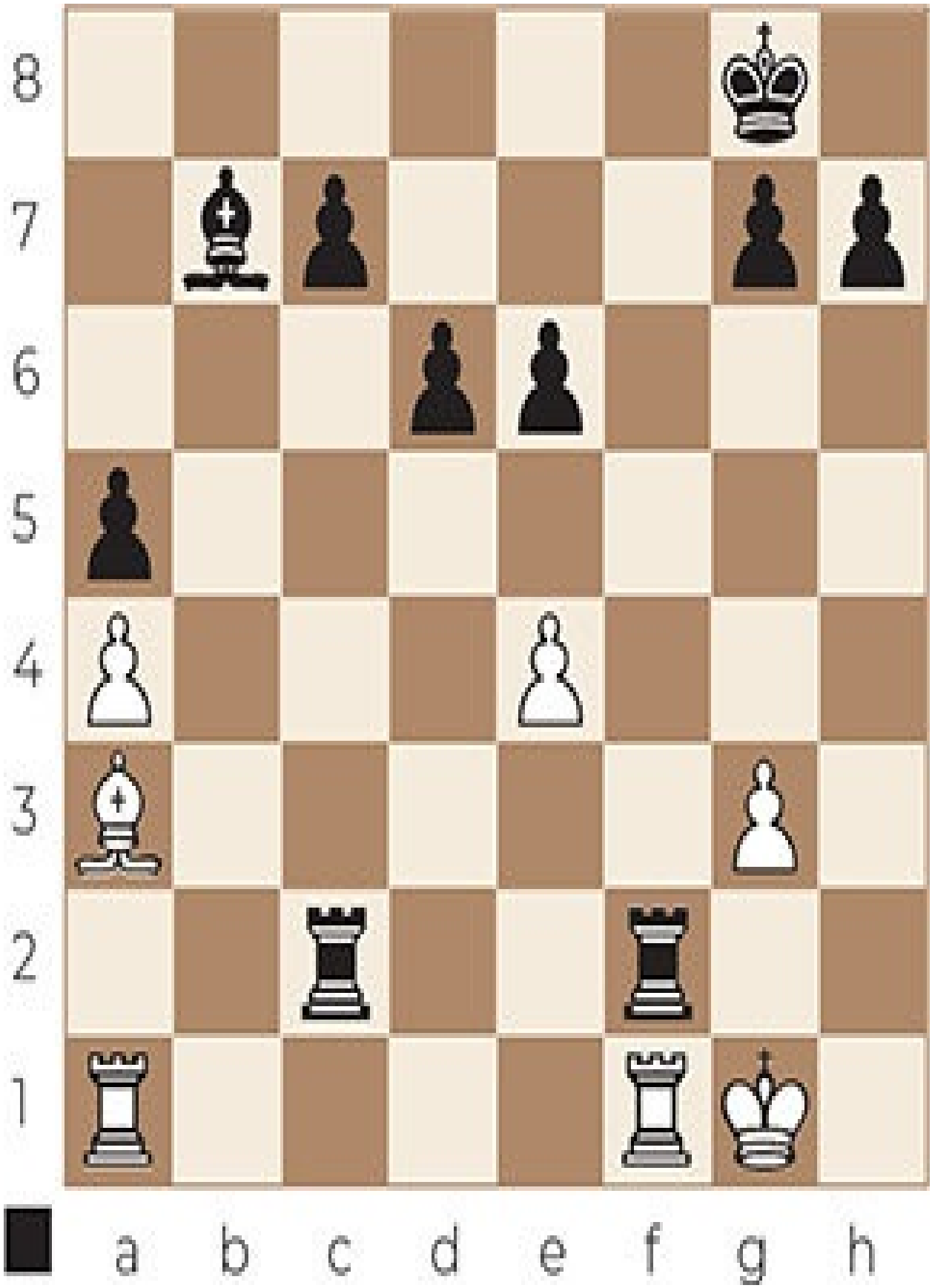
Exercise B 48


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

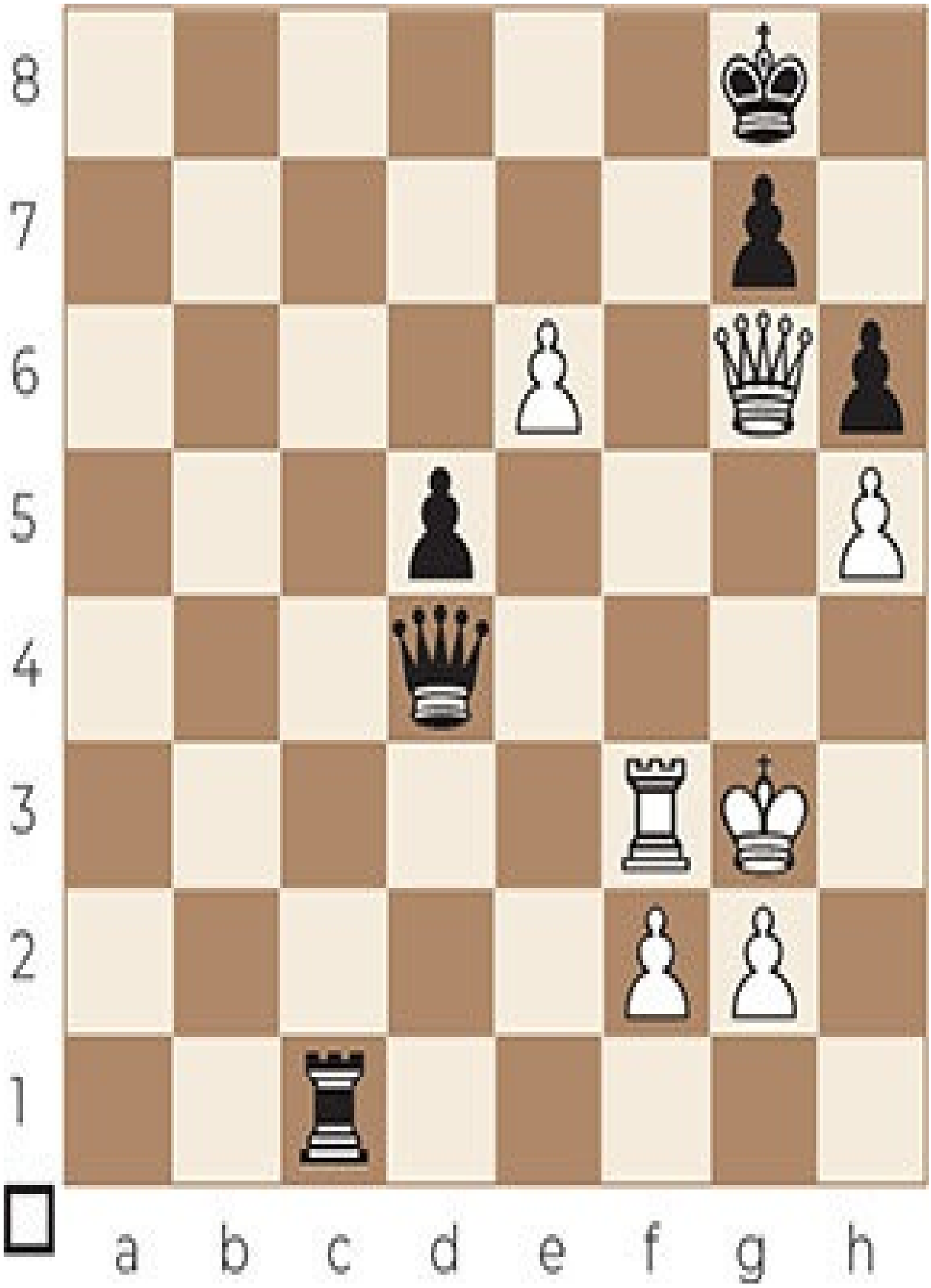
Exercise B 49

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 50


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

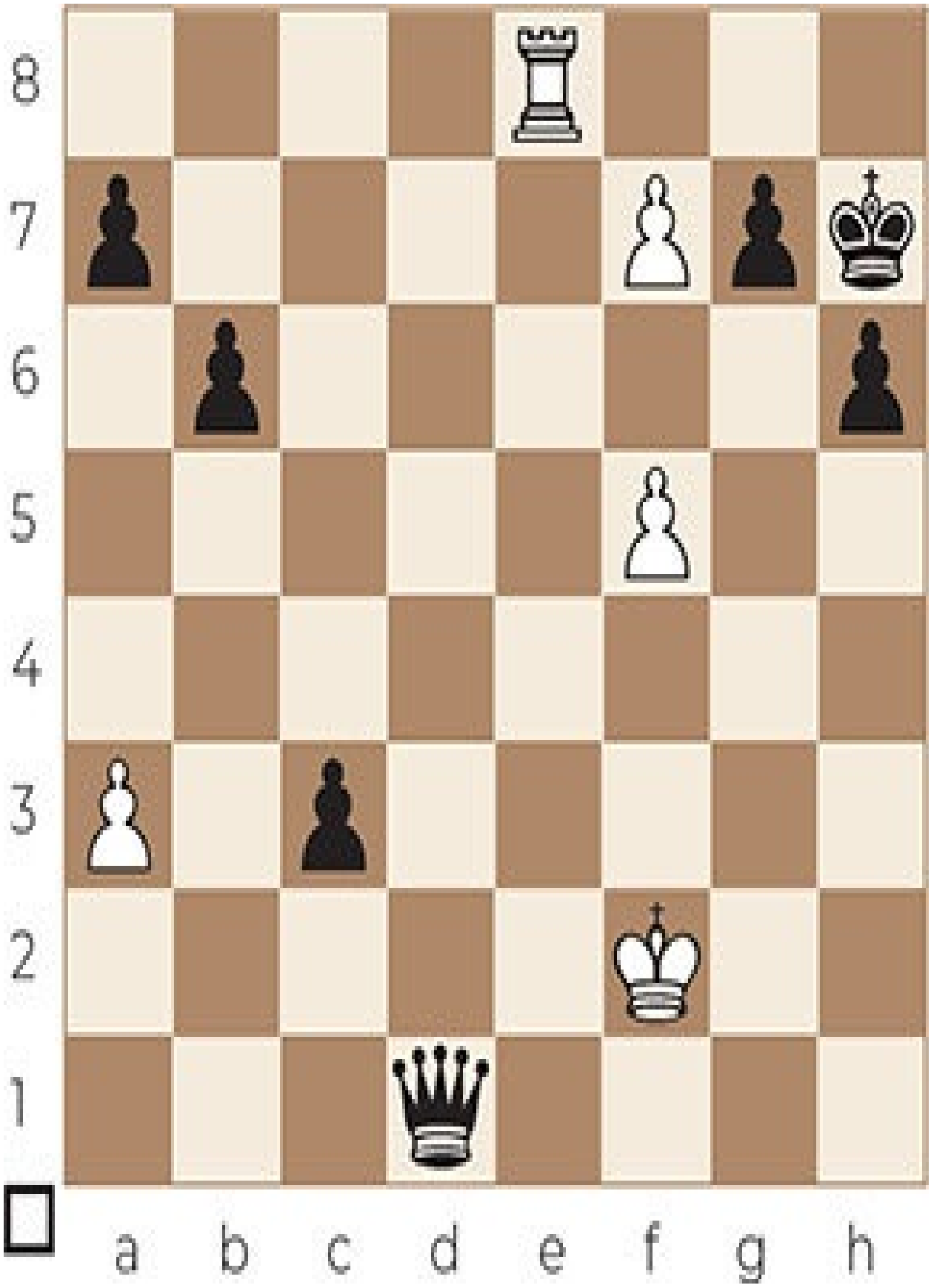
Exercise B 51


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 52

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

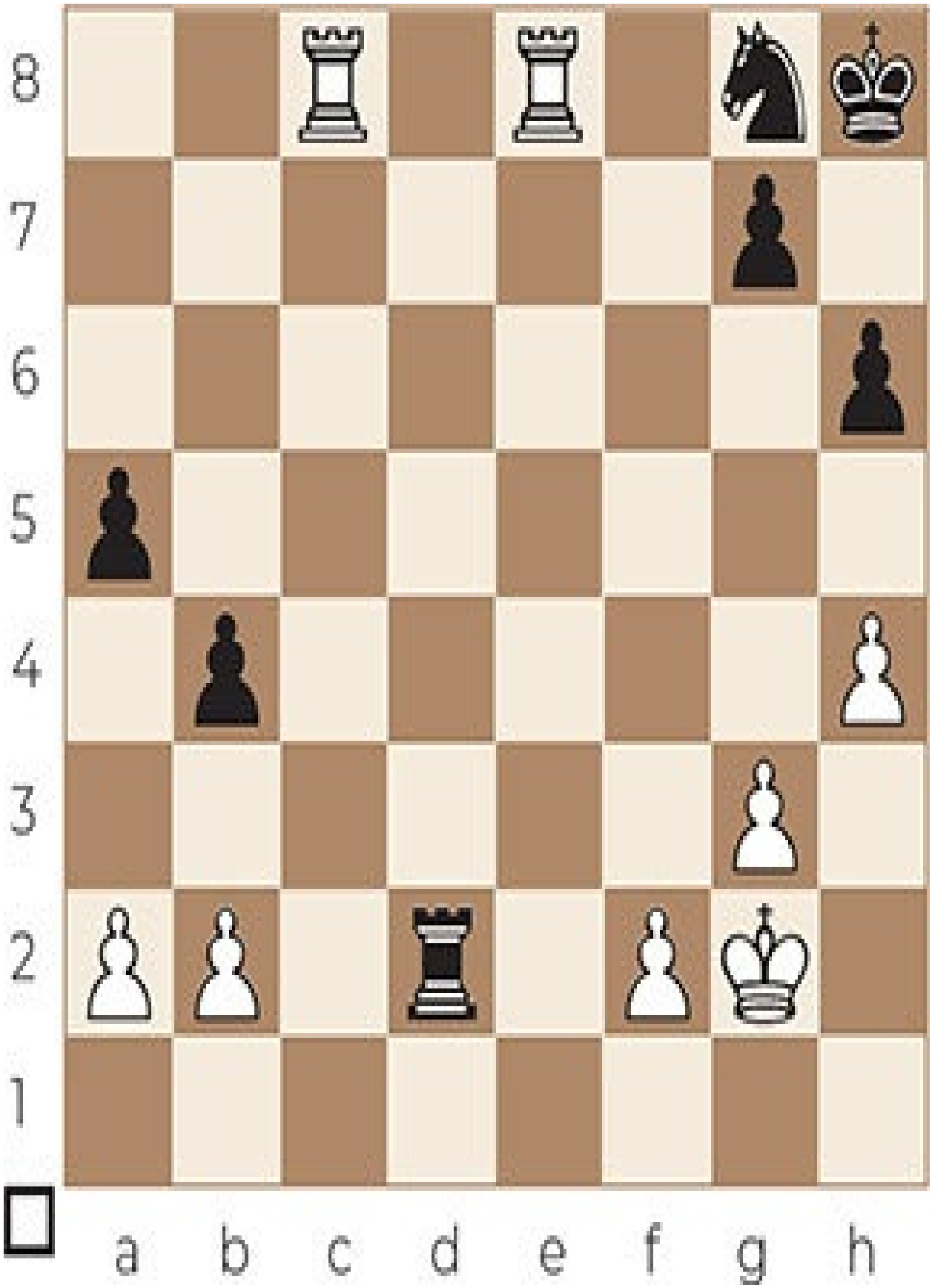
Exercise B 53


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 54

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 55


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

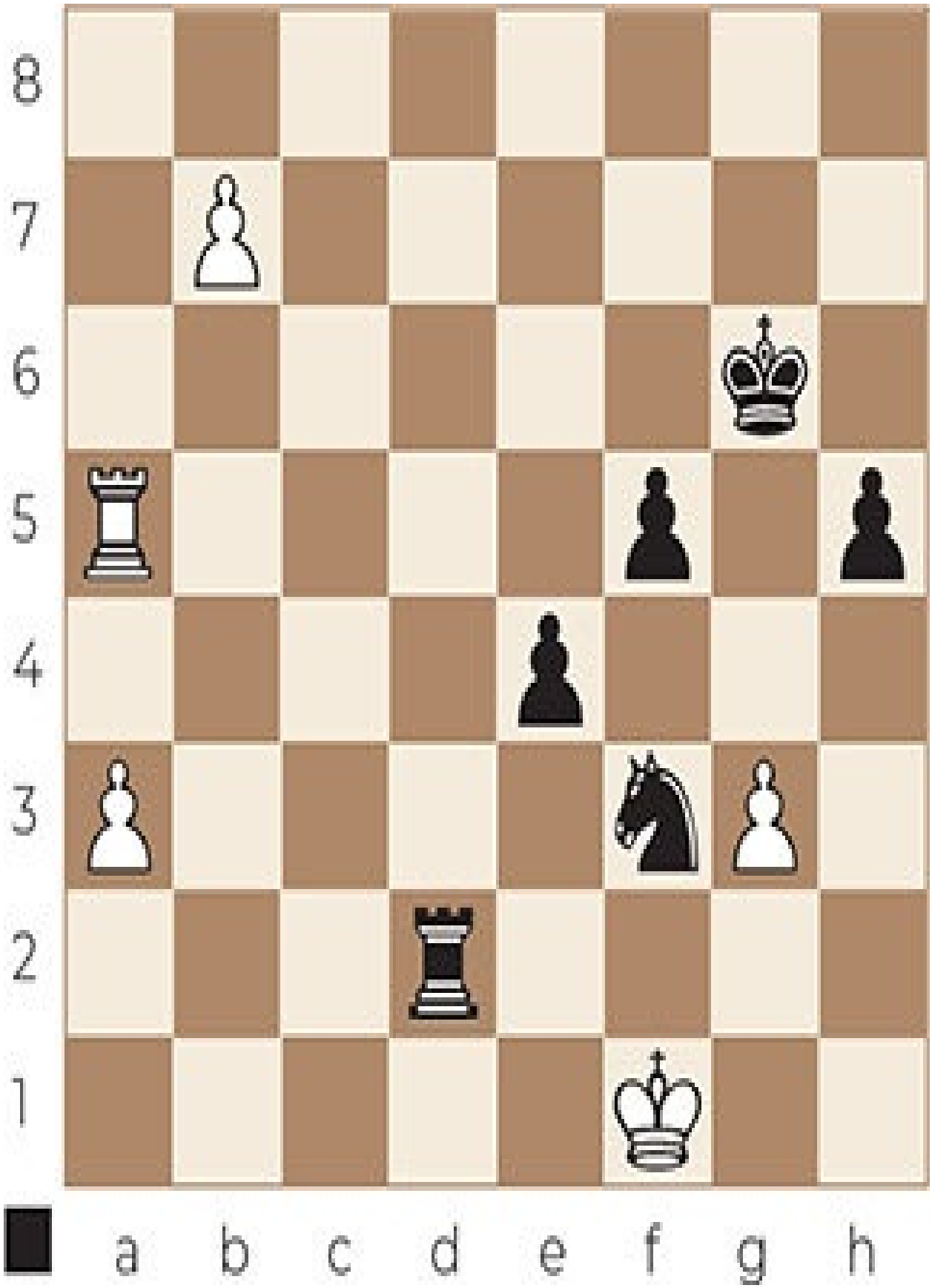
Exercise B 56

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

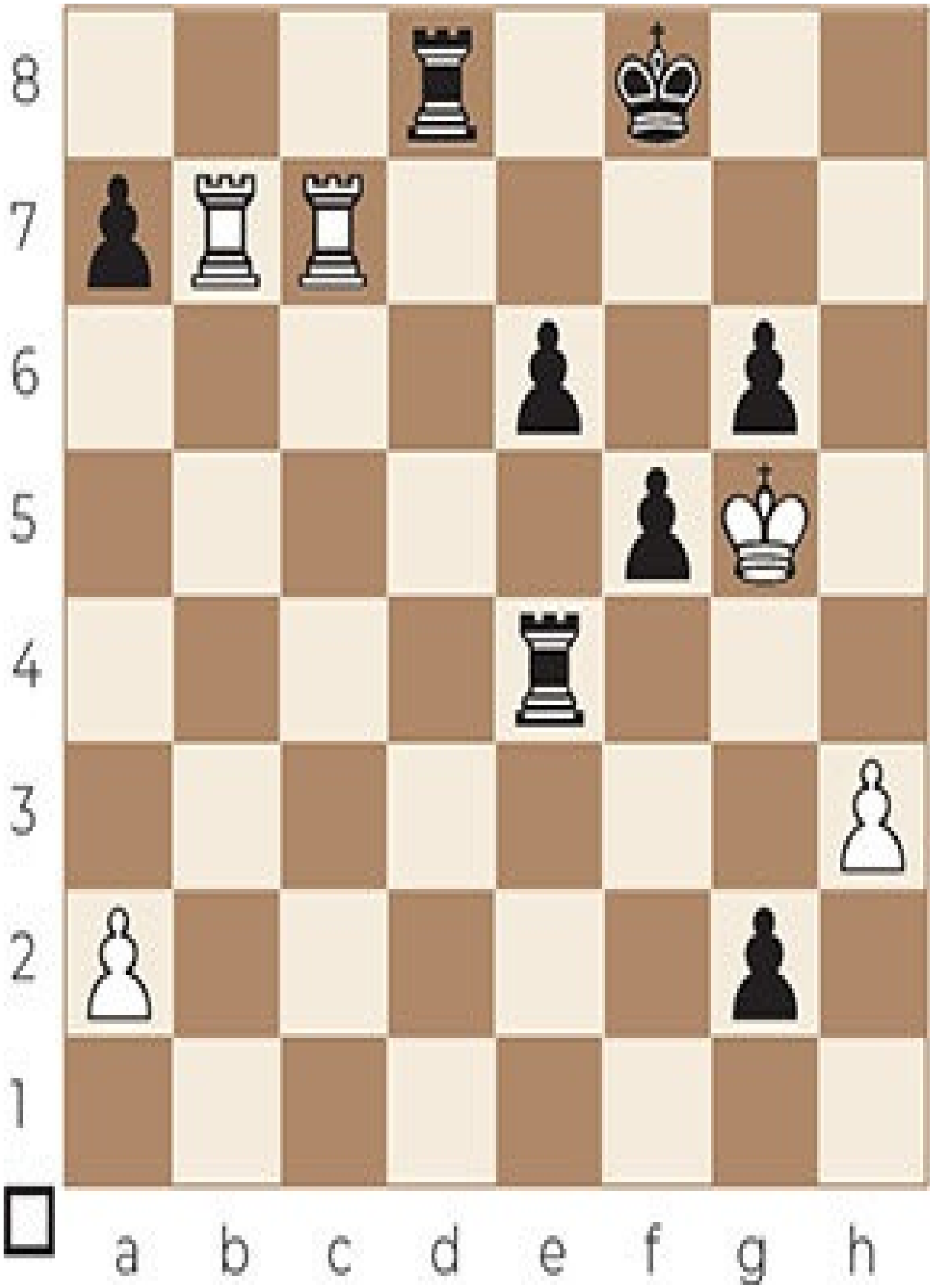
Exercise B 57

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 58


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

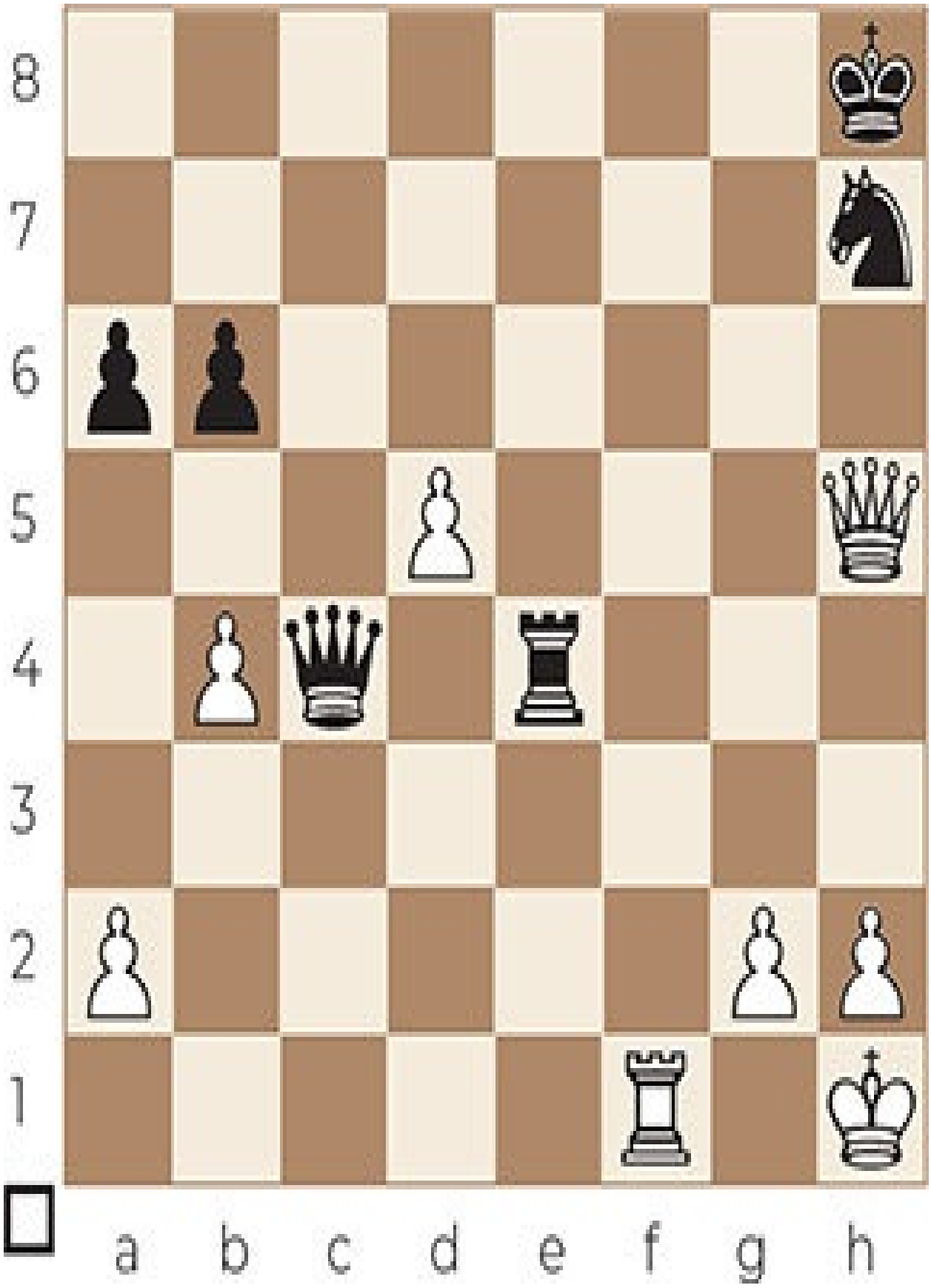
Exercise B 59


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

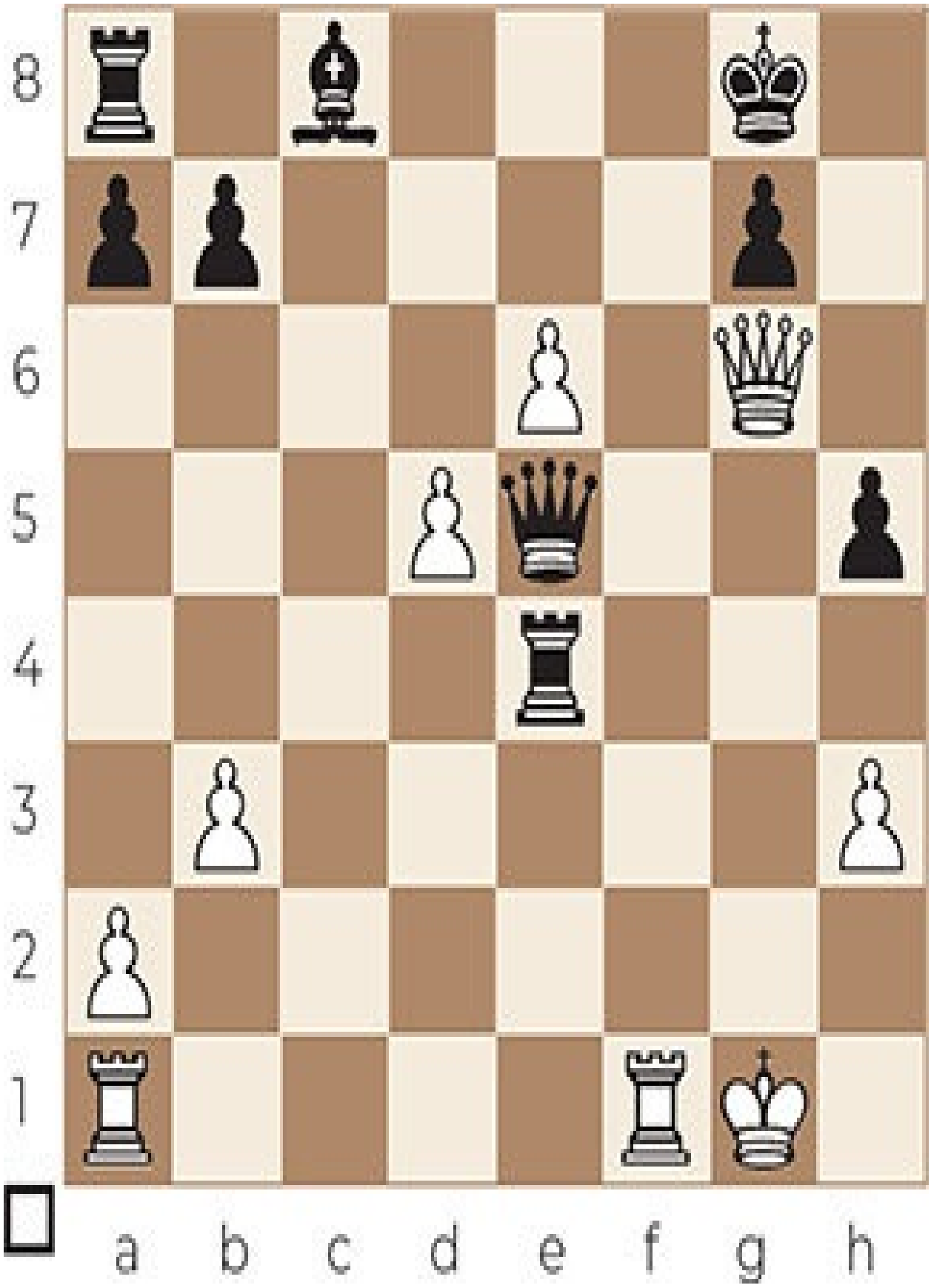
Exercise B 60

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

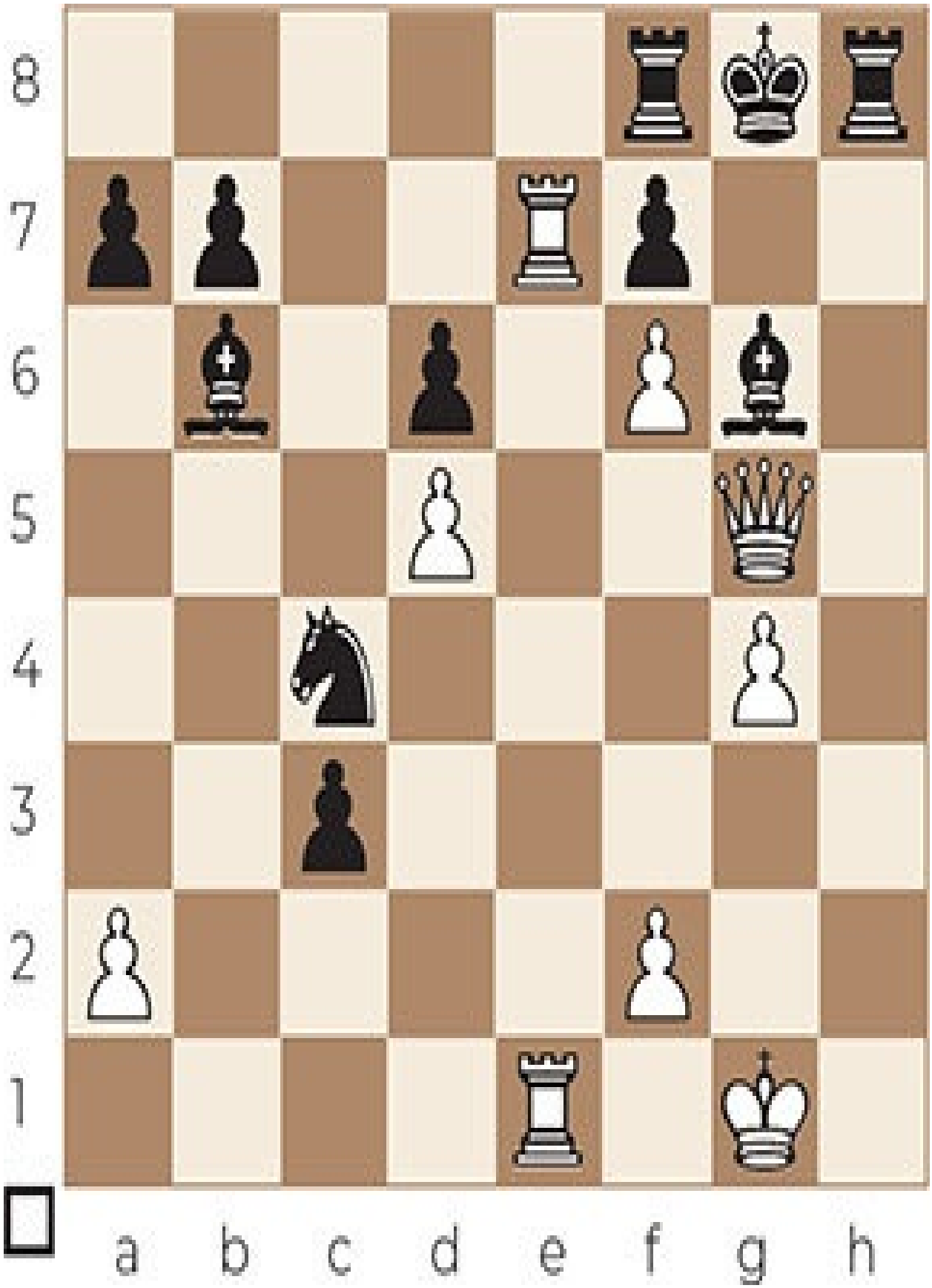
Exercise B 61


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 62


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 63


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 64

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

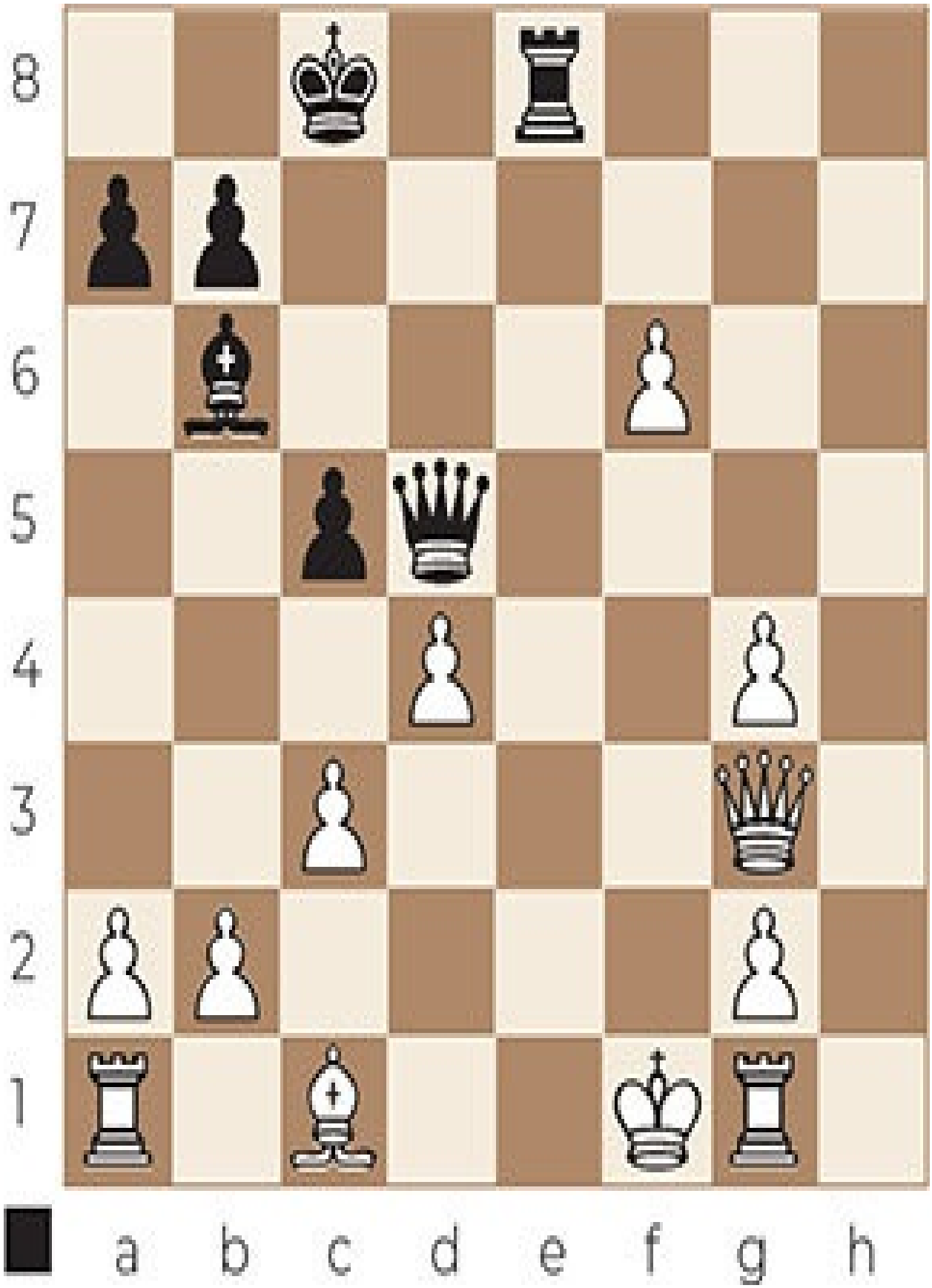
Exercise B 65

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 66

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 67


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

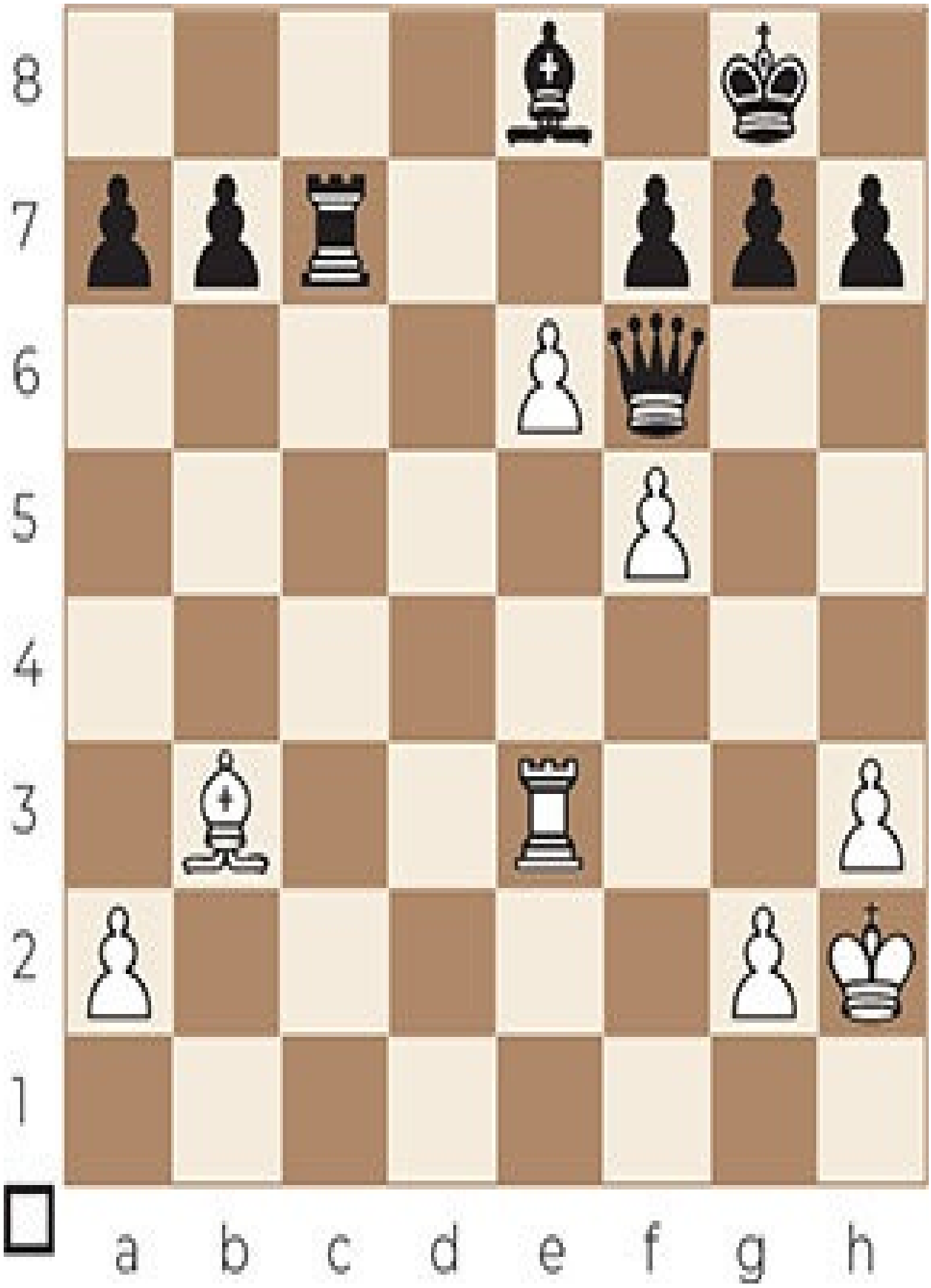
Exercise B 68

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 69

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 70


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 71

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 72

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

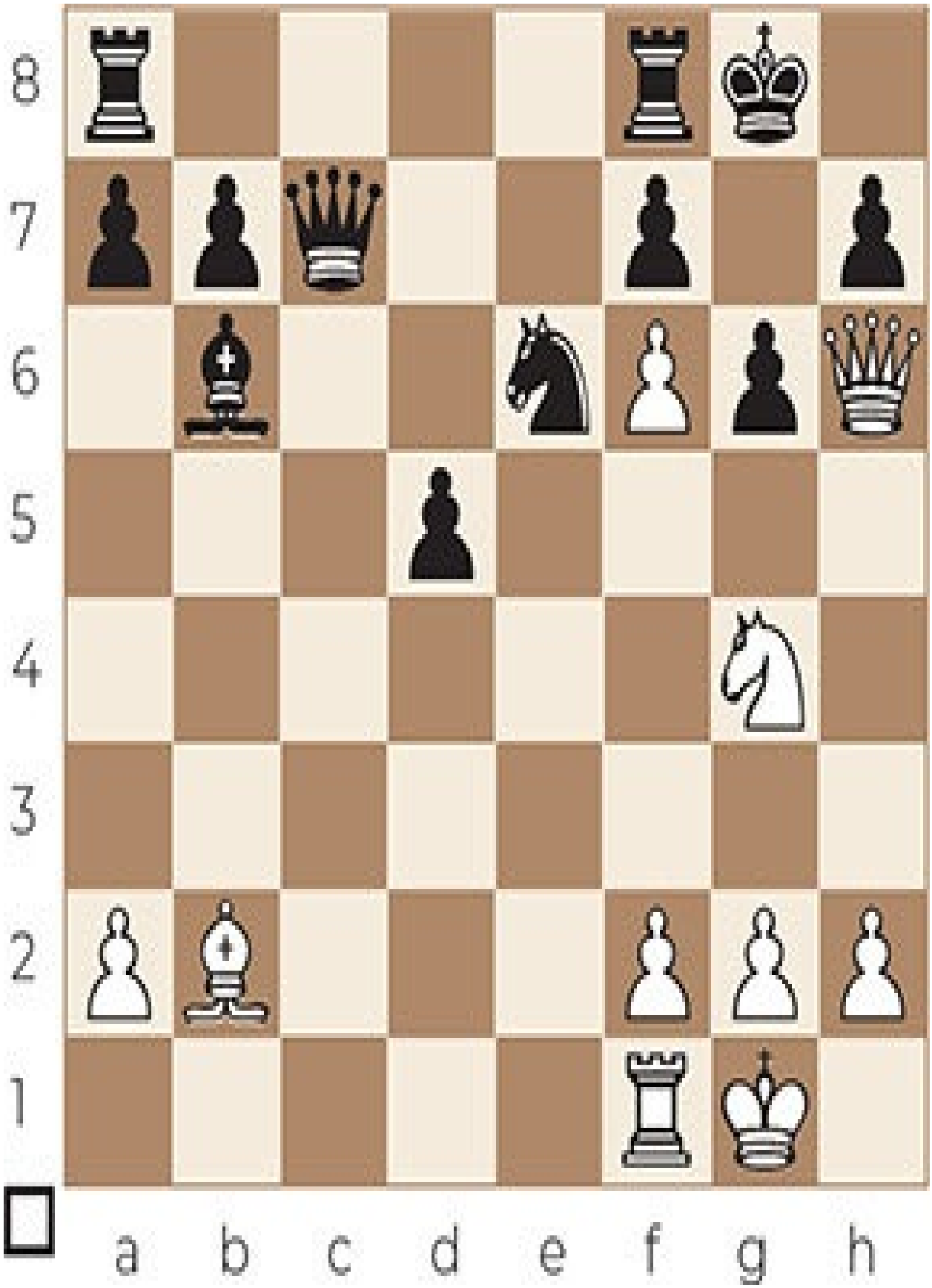
Exercise B 73

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

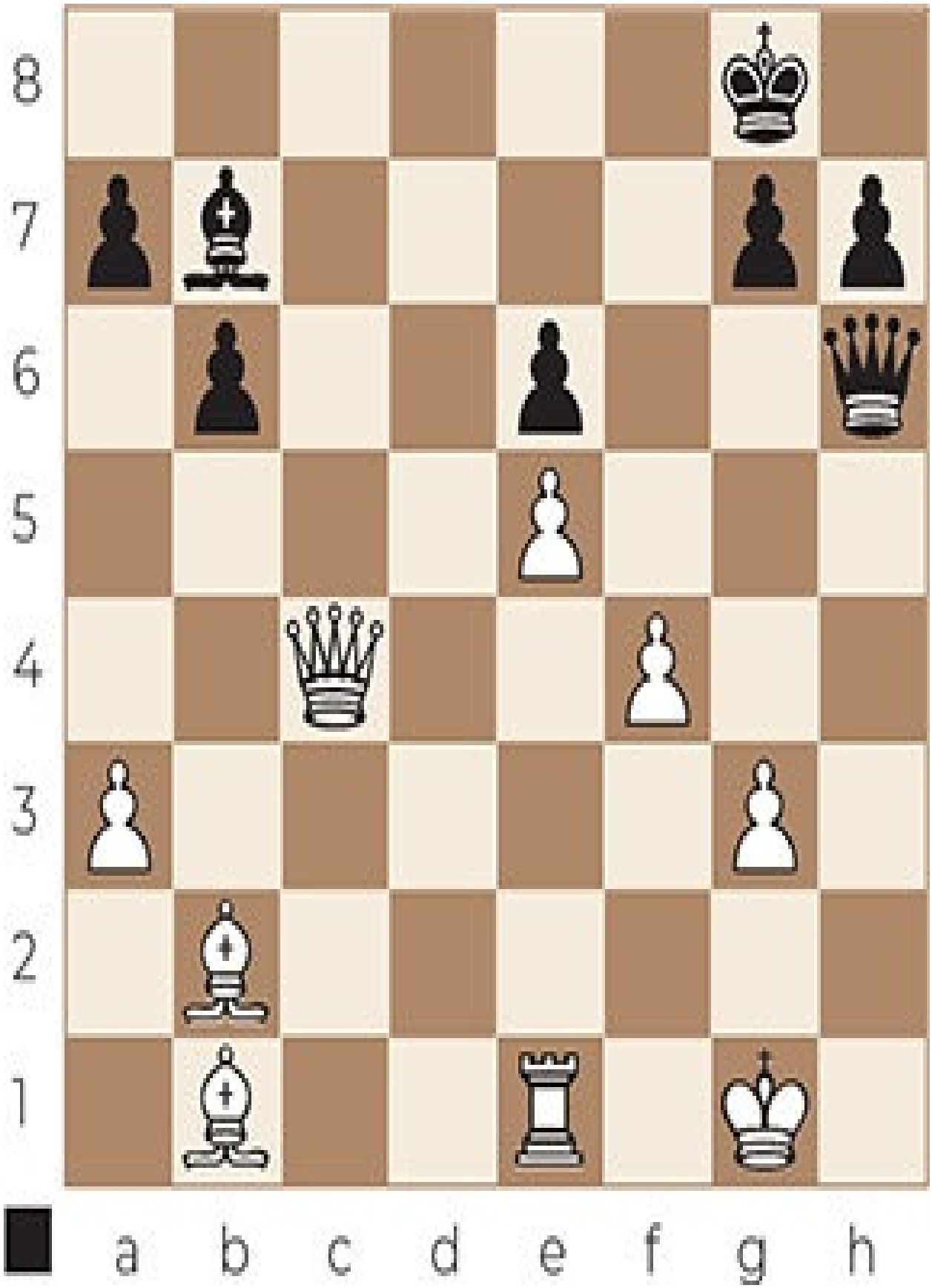
Exercise B 74

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

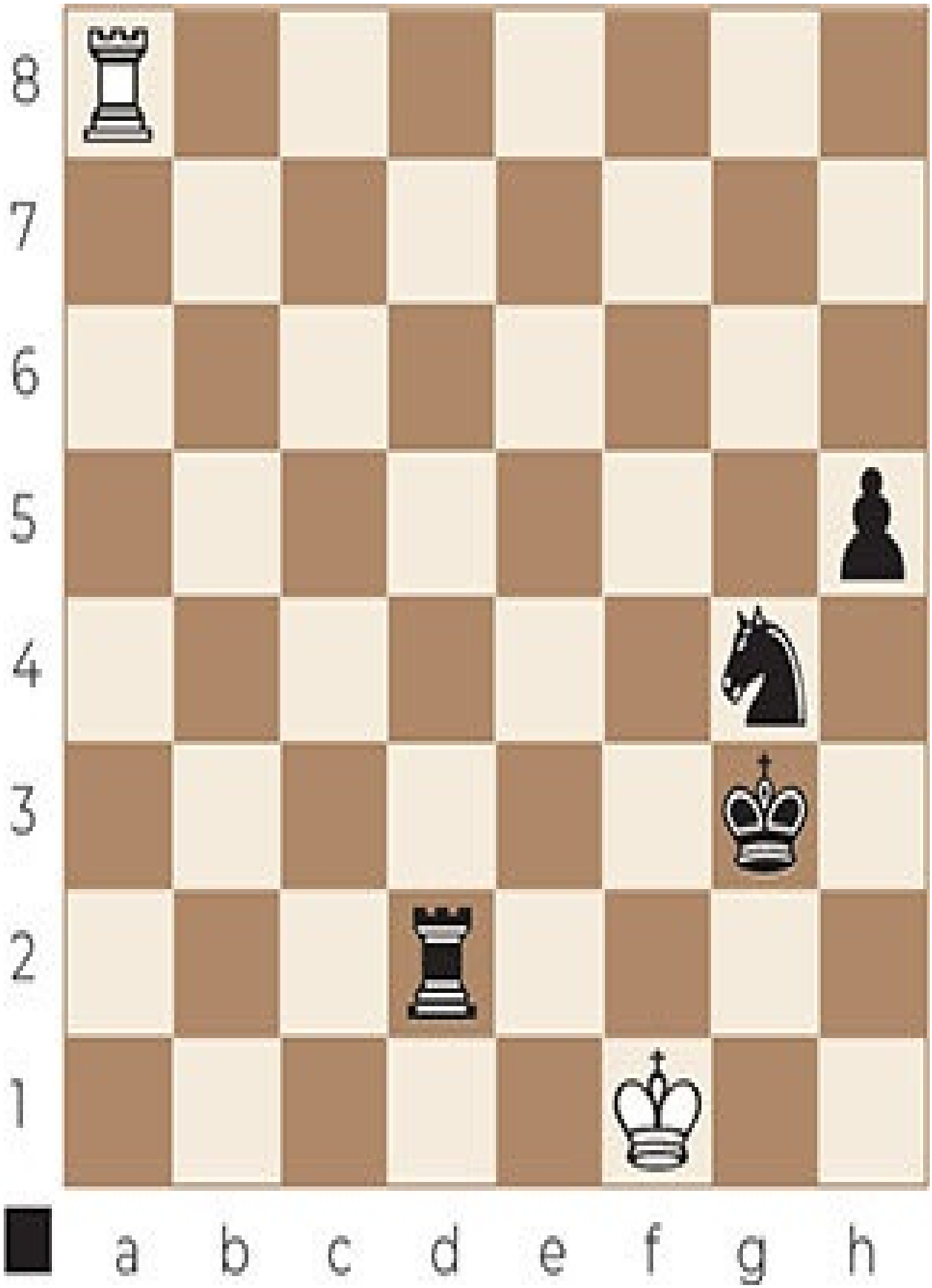
Exercise B 75


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

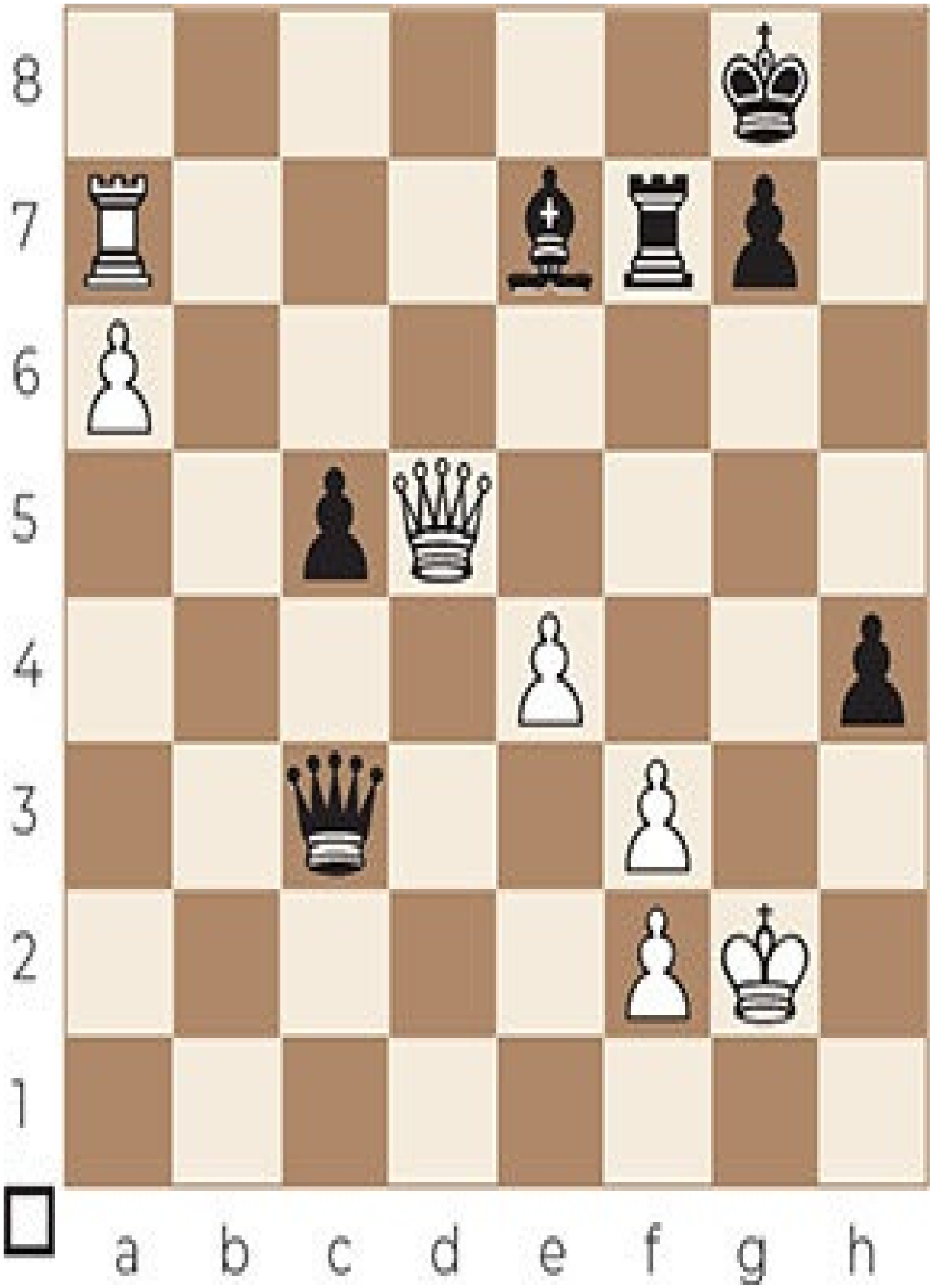
Exercise B 76


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

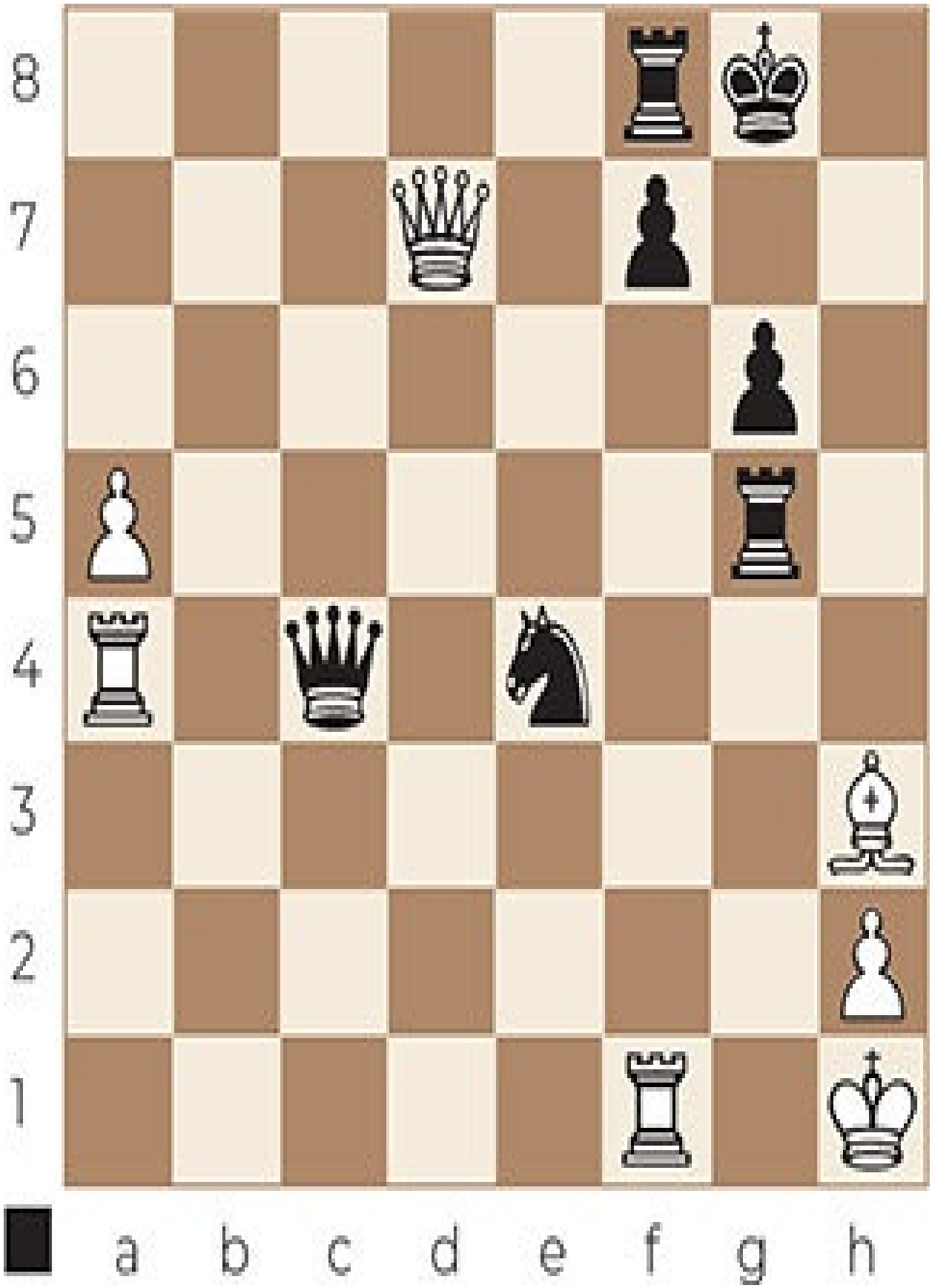
Exercise B 77


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 78


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

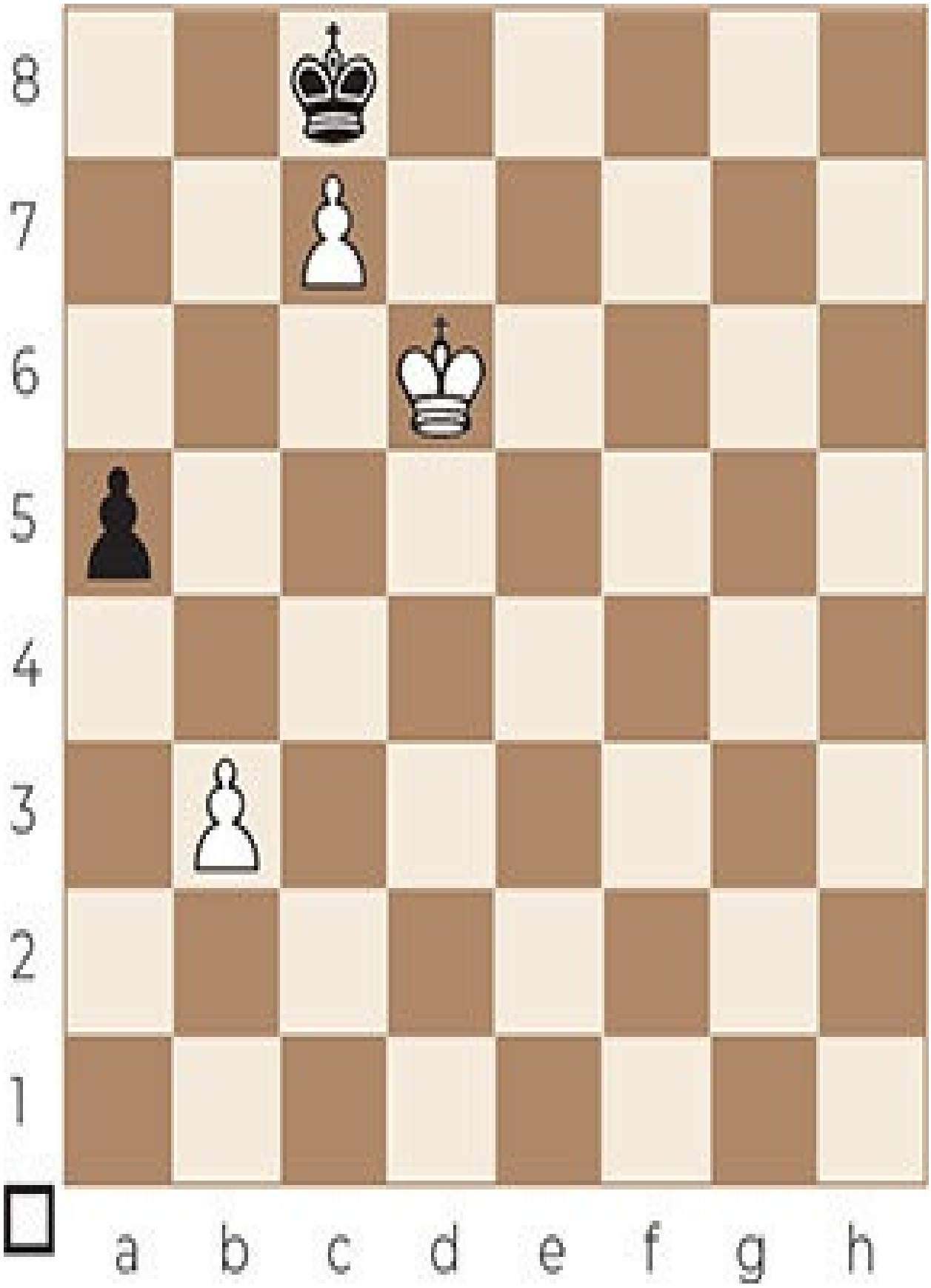
Exercise B 79


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

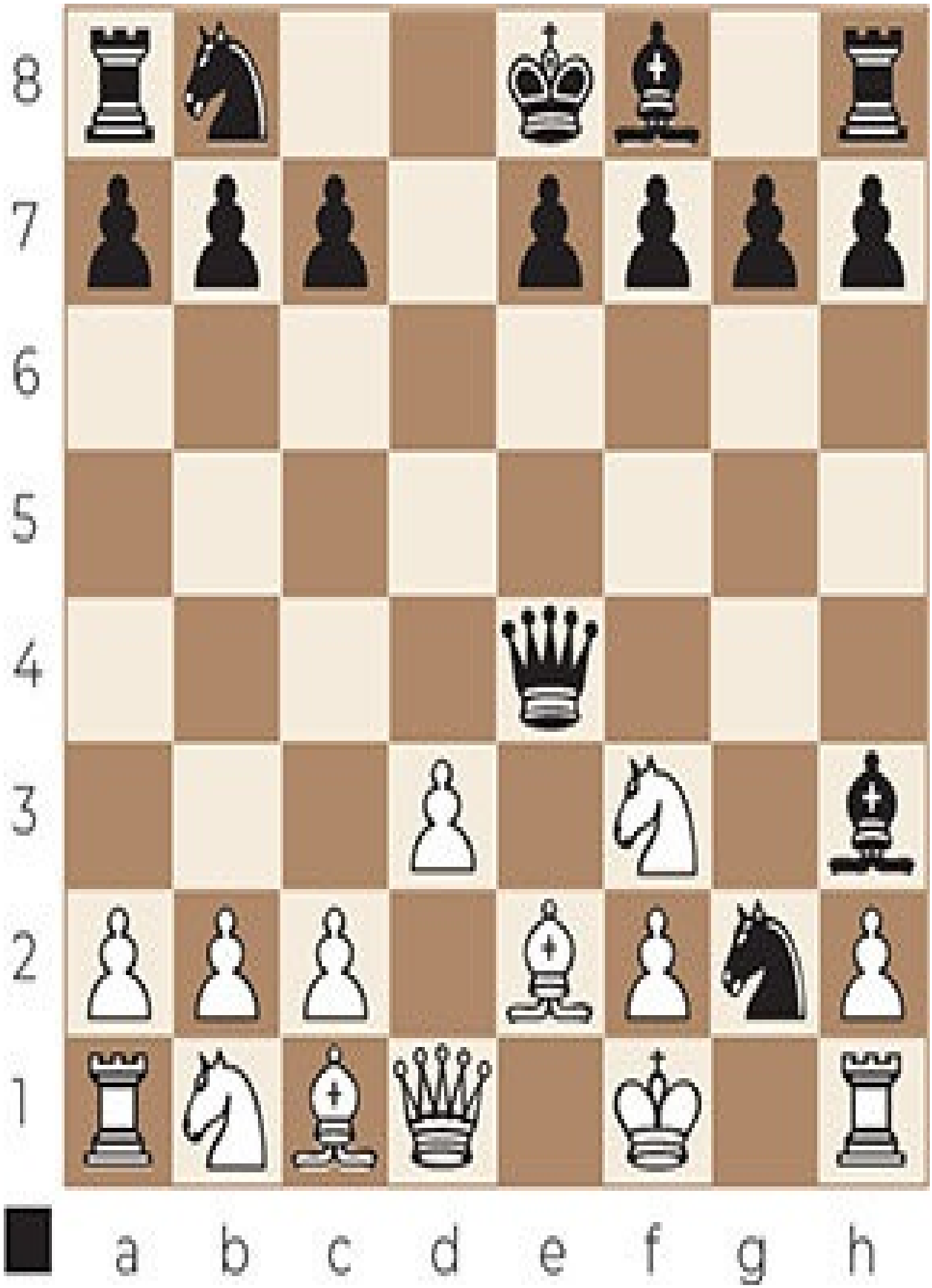
Exercise B 80

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 81


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 82


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 83

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 84

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

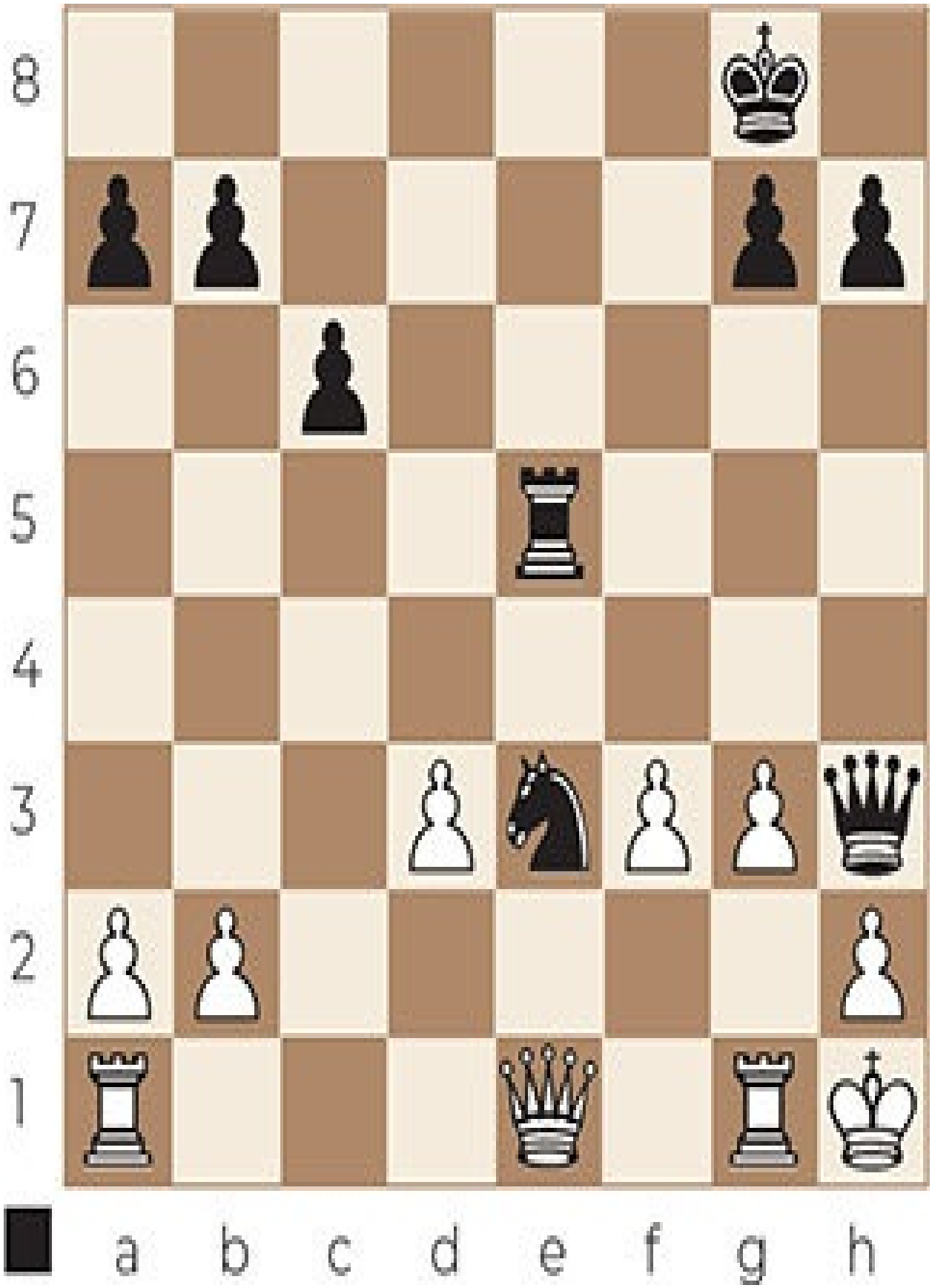
Exercise B 85

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 86

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

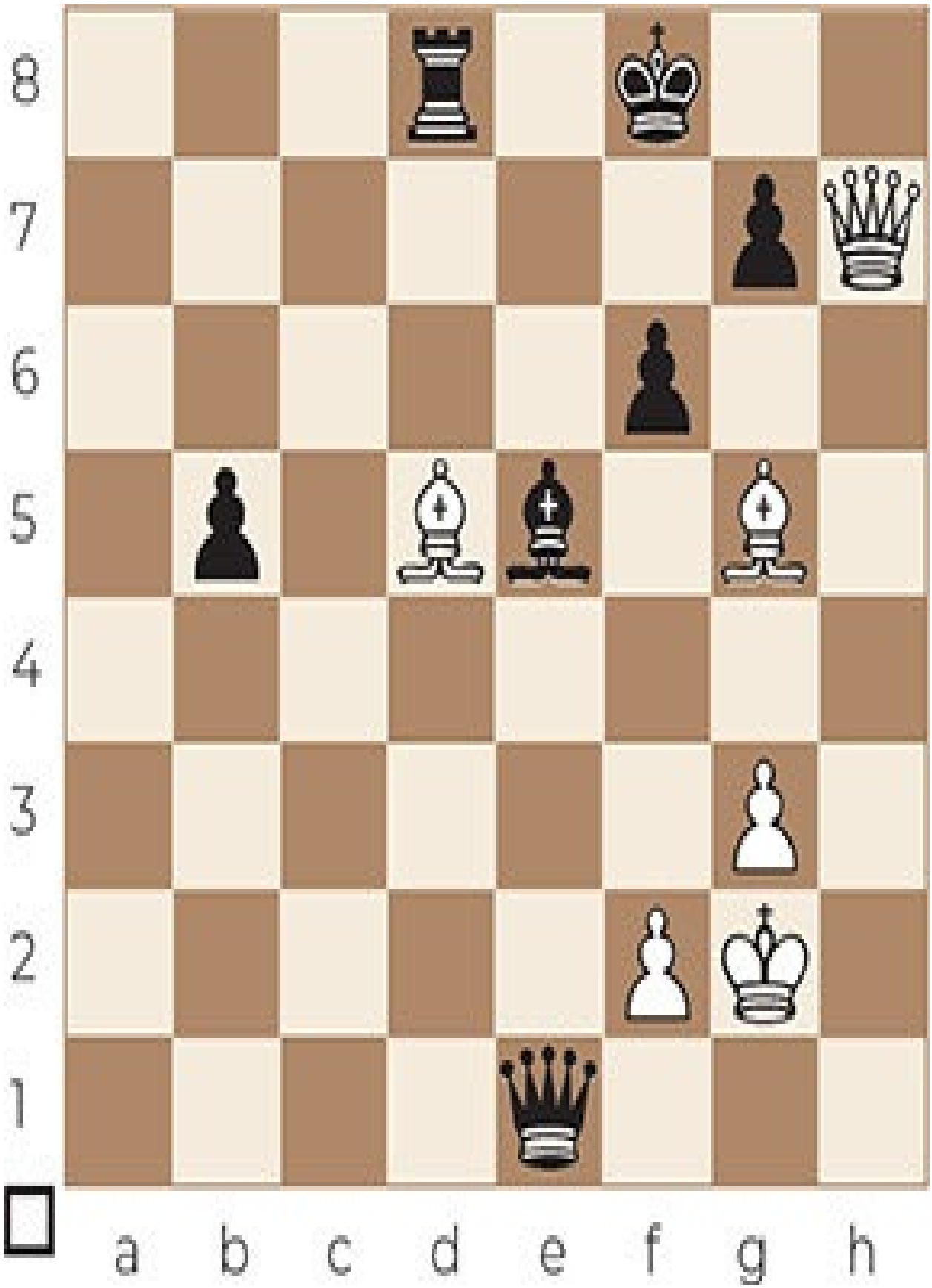
Exercise B 87


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 88

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 89


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 90

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 91

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 92

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 93

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 94

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 95

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 96

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 97

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

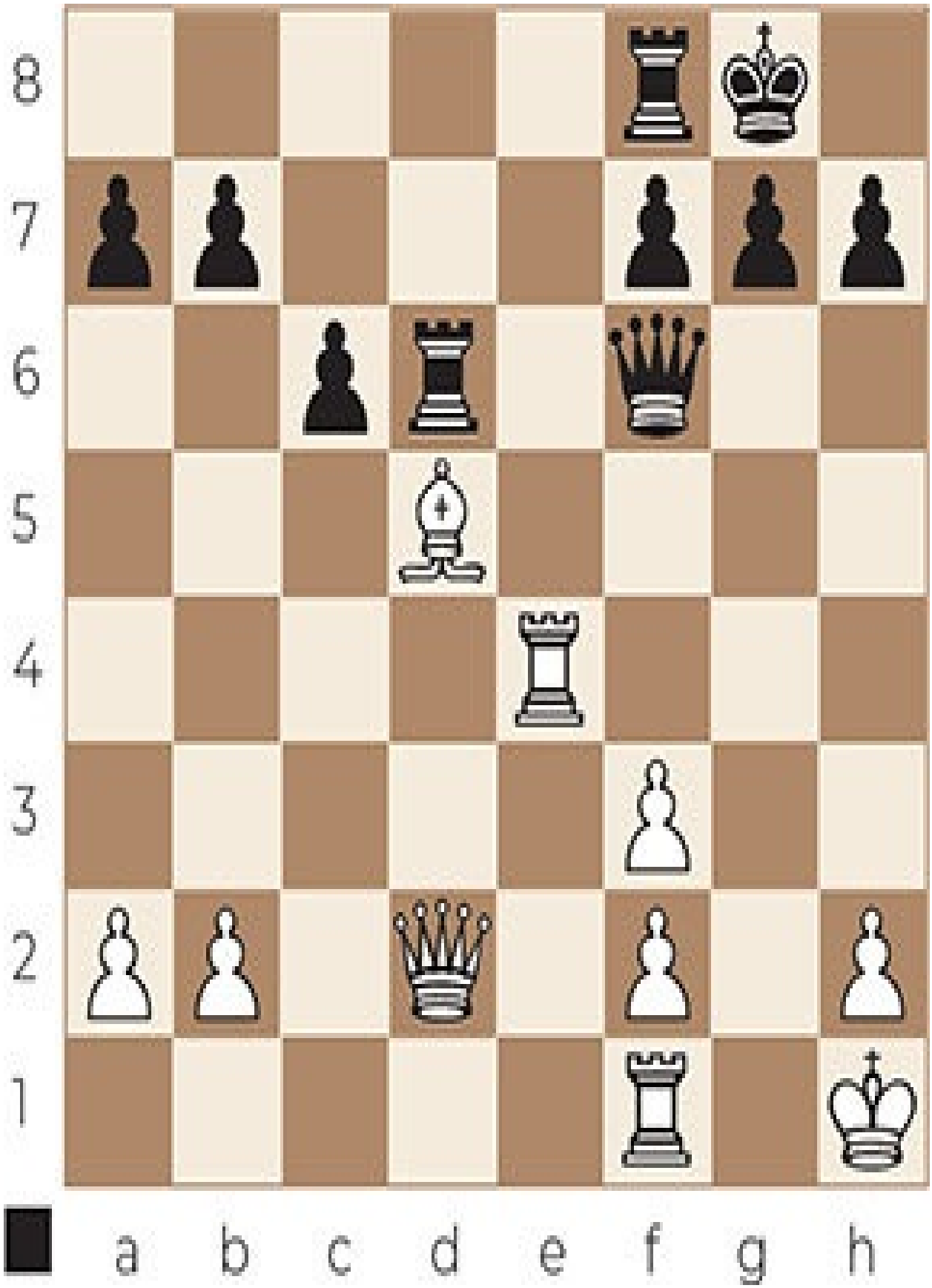
Exercise B 98

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

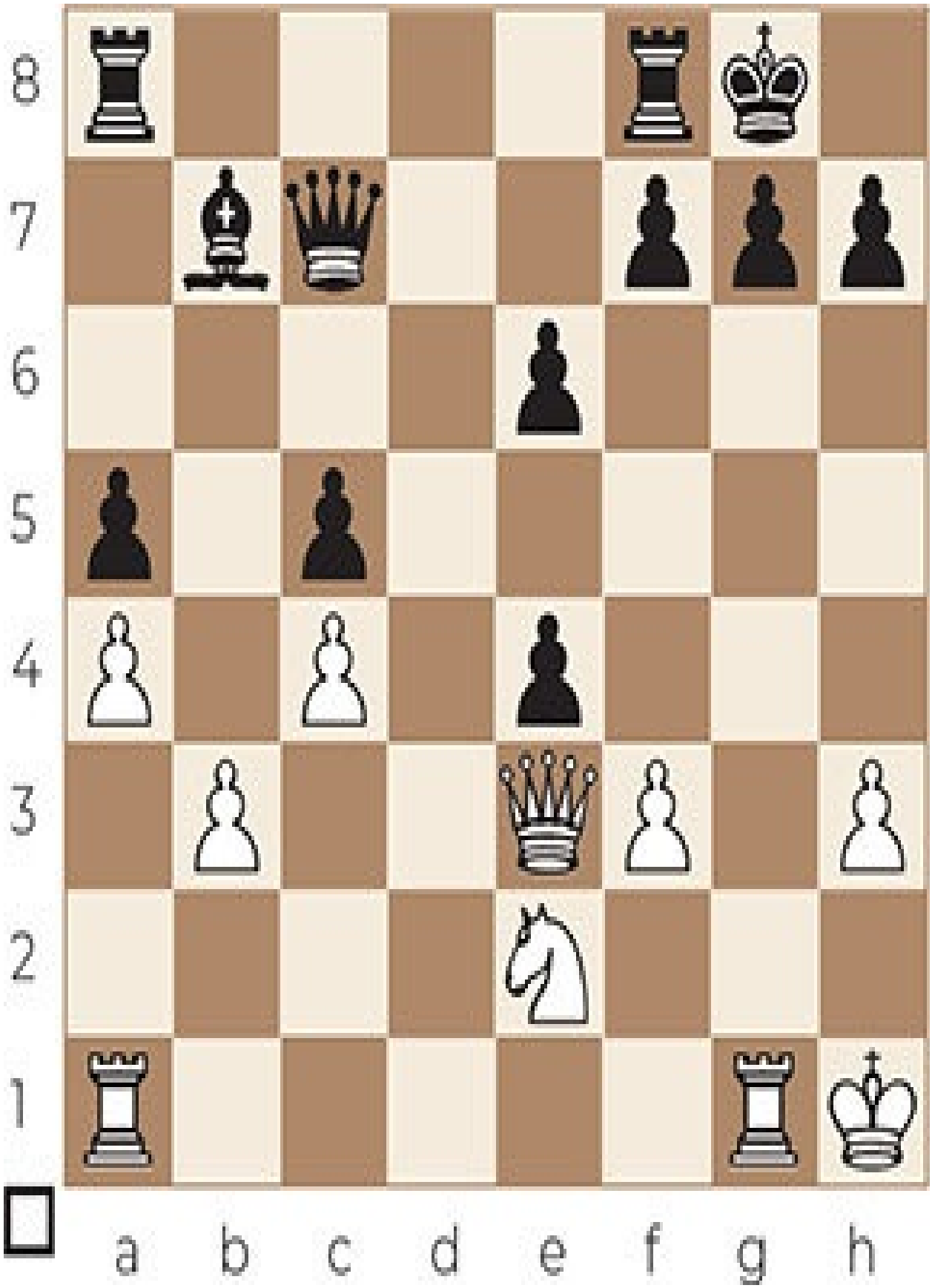
Exercise B 99

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 100


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

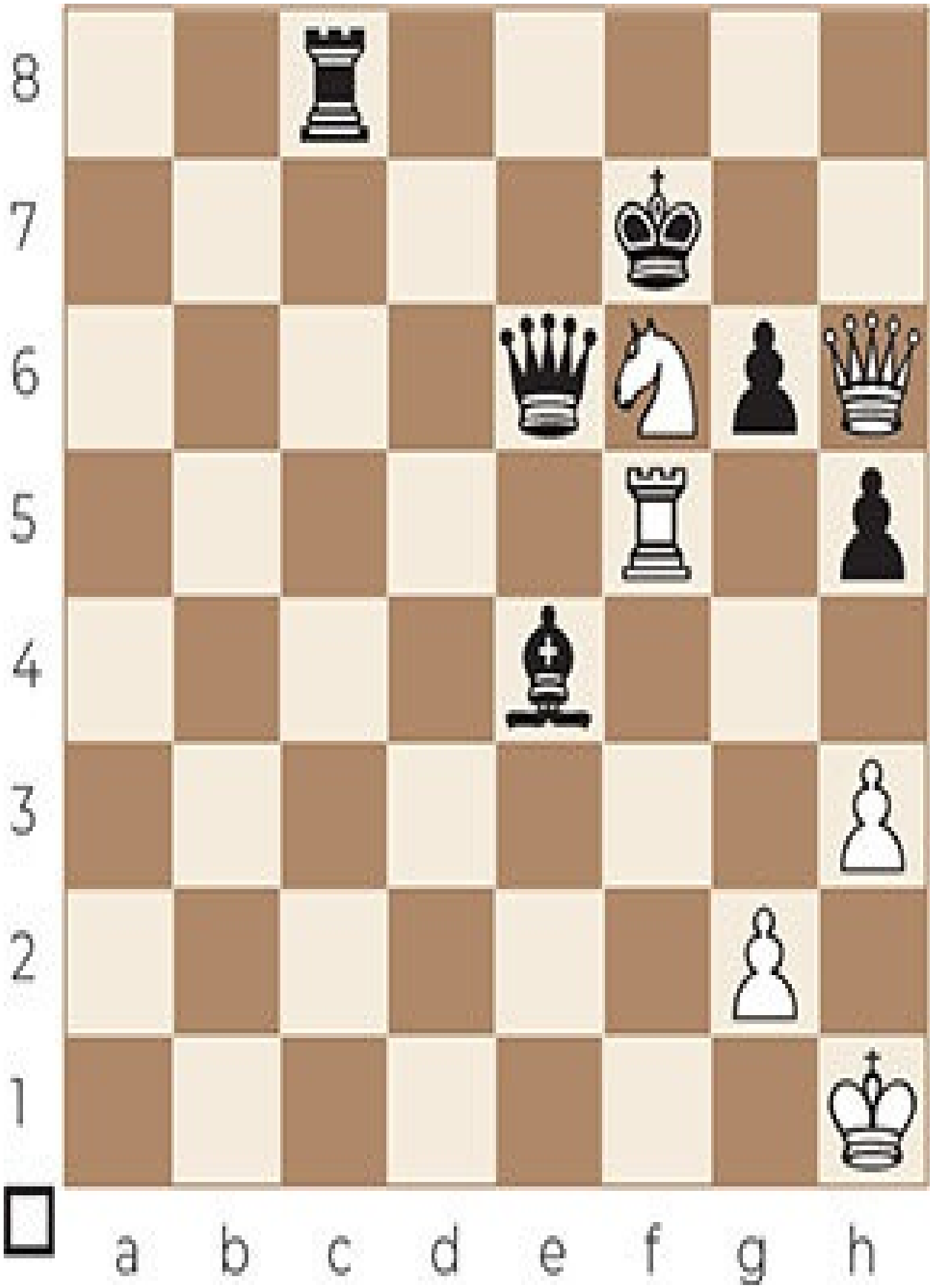
Exercise B 101


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 102

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

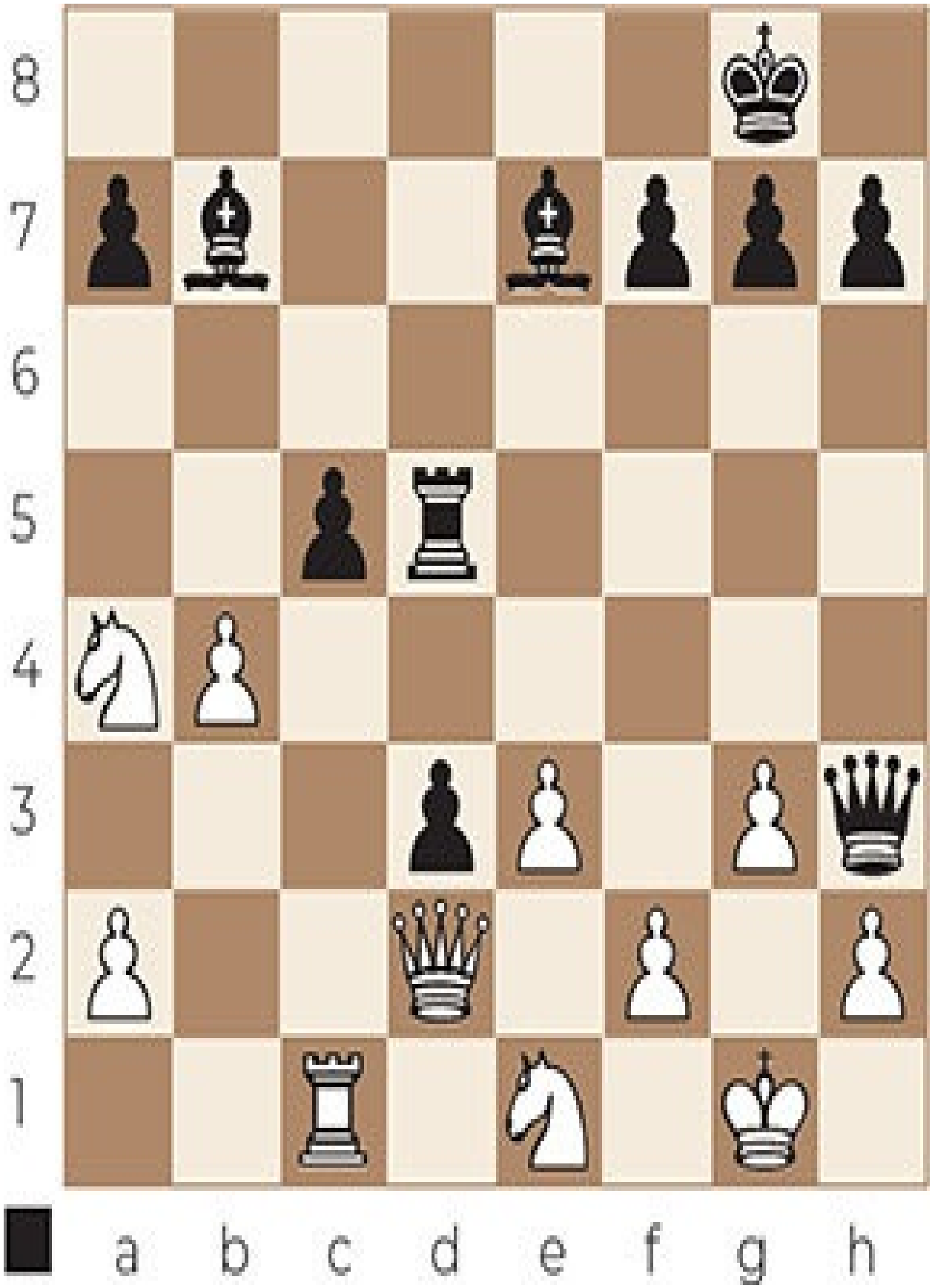
Exercise B 103


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 104

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 105


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

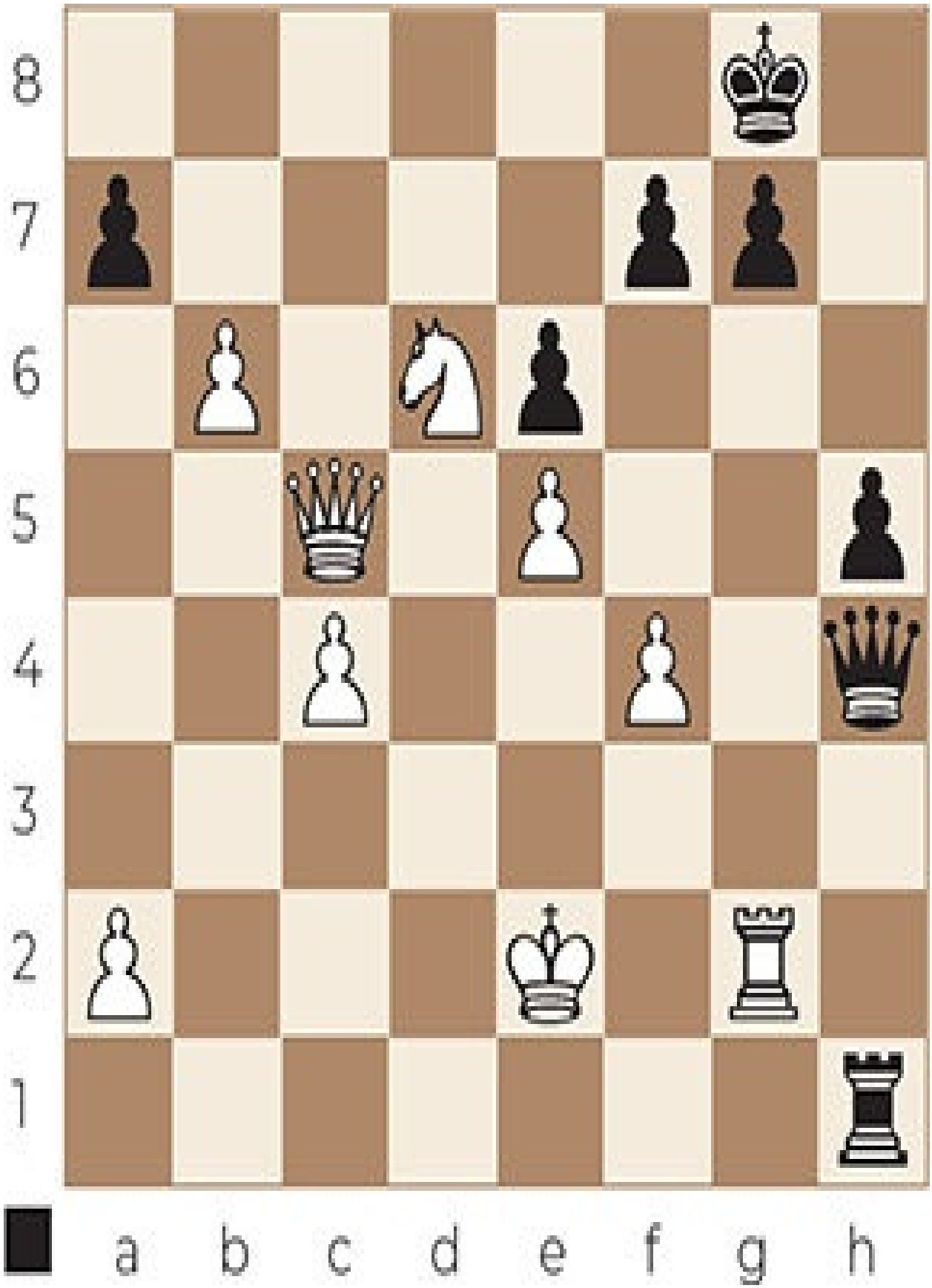
Exercise B 106

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 107

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 108


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 109

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 110

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

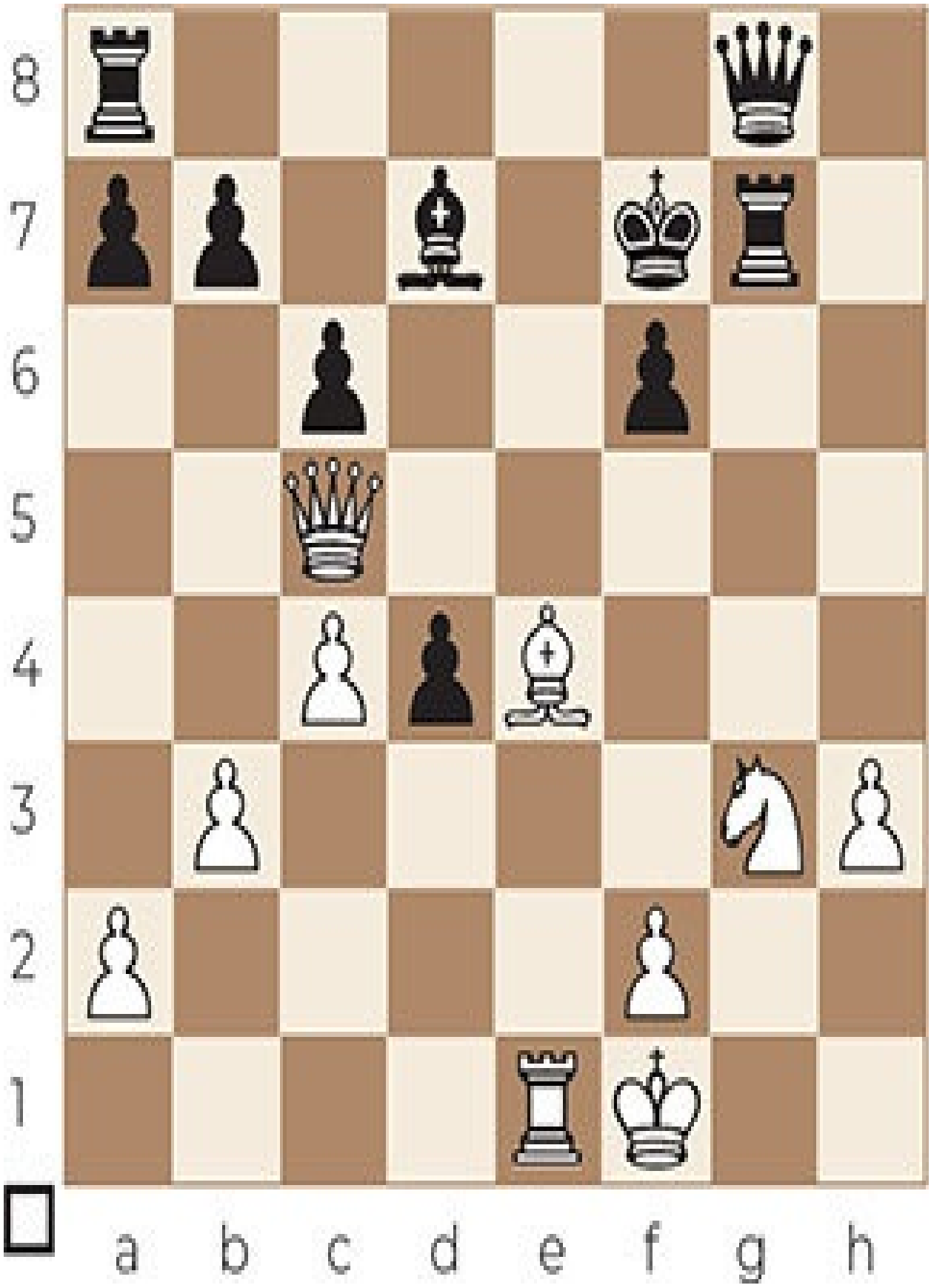
Exercise B 111

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 112

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 113


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

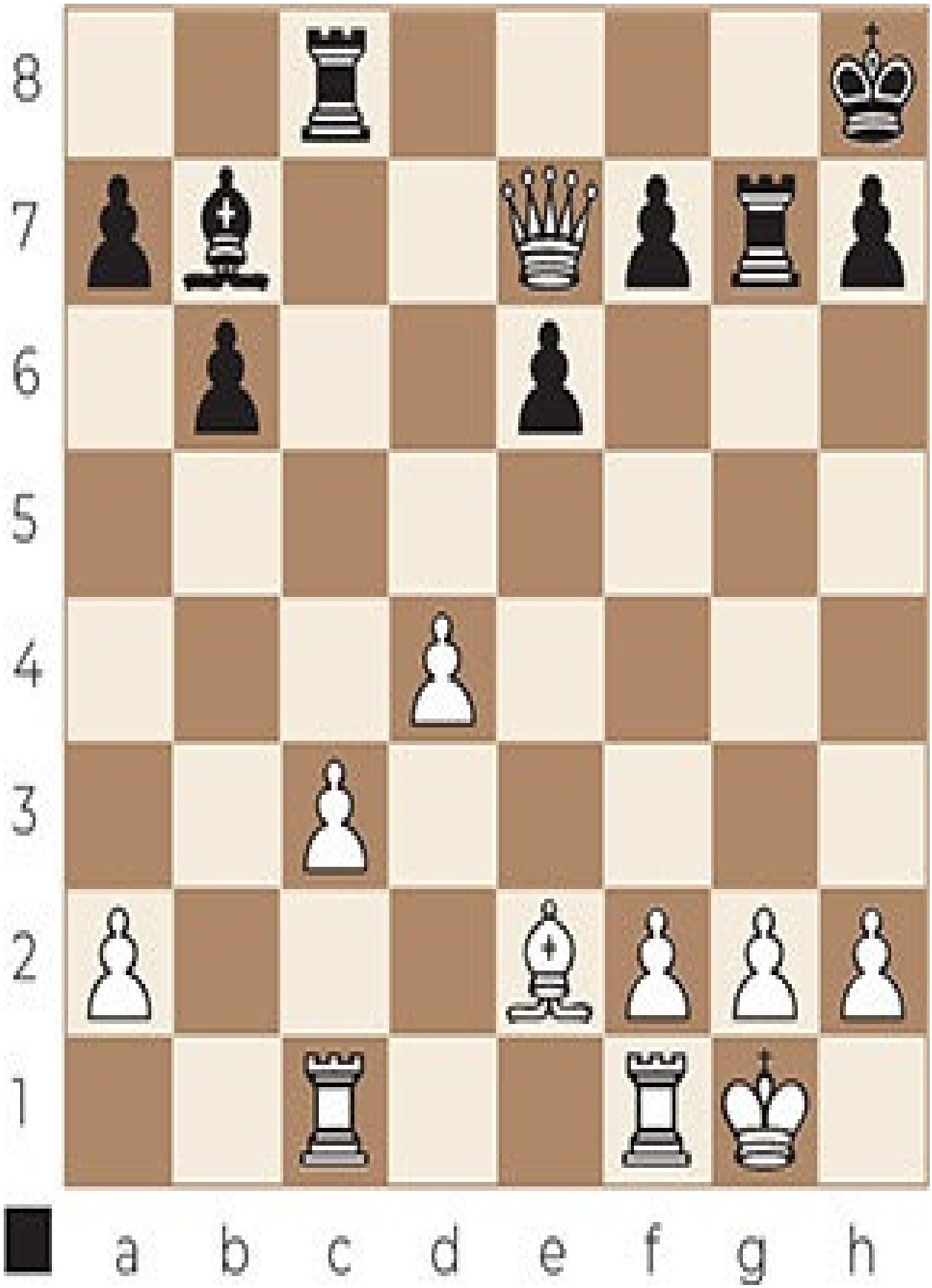
Exercise B 114

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 115

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

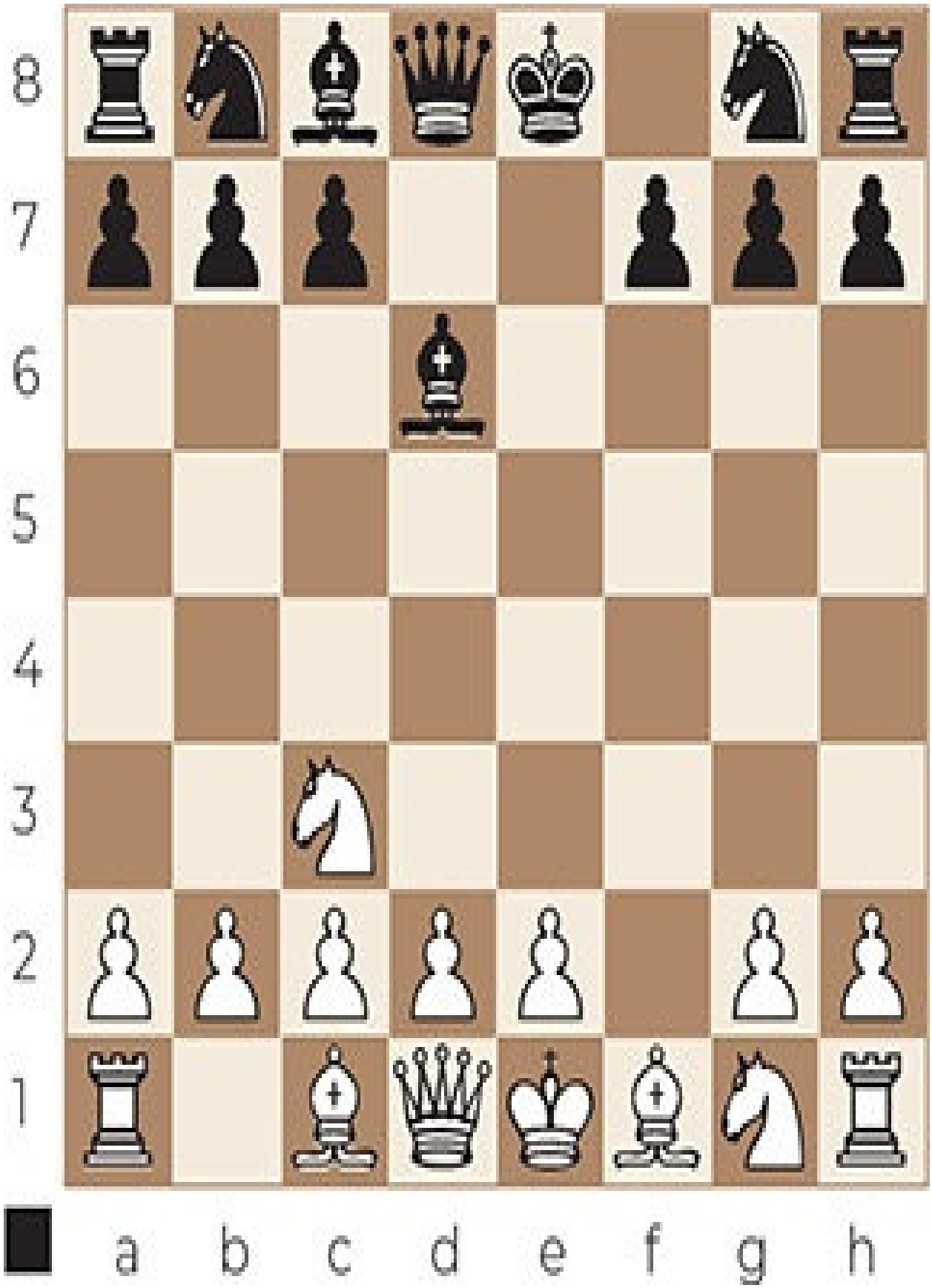
Exercise B 116


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 117

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 118


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

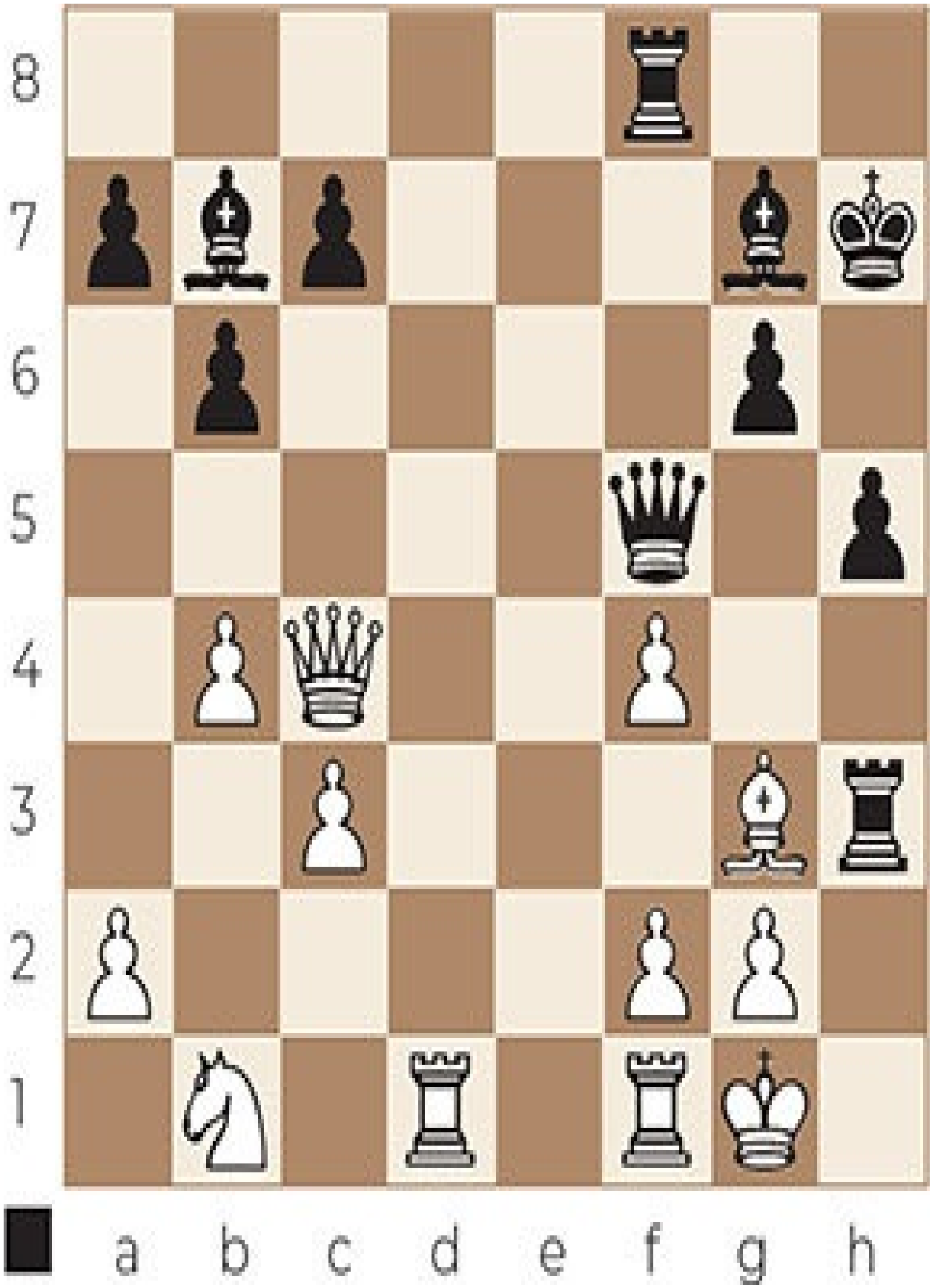
Exercise B 119

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

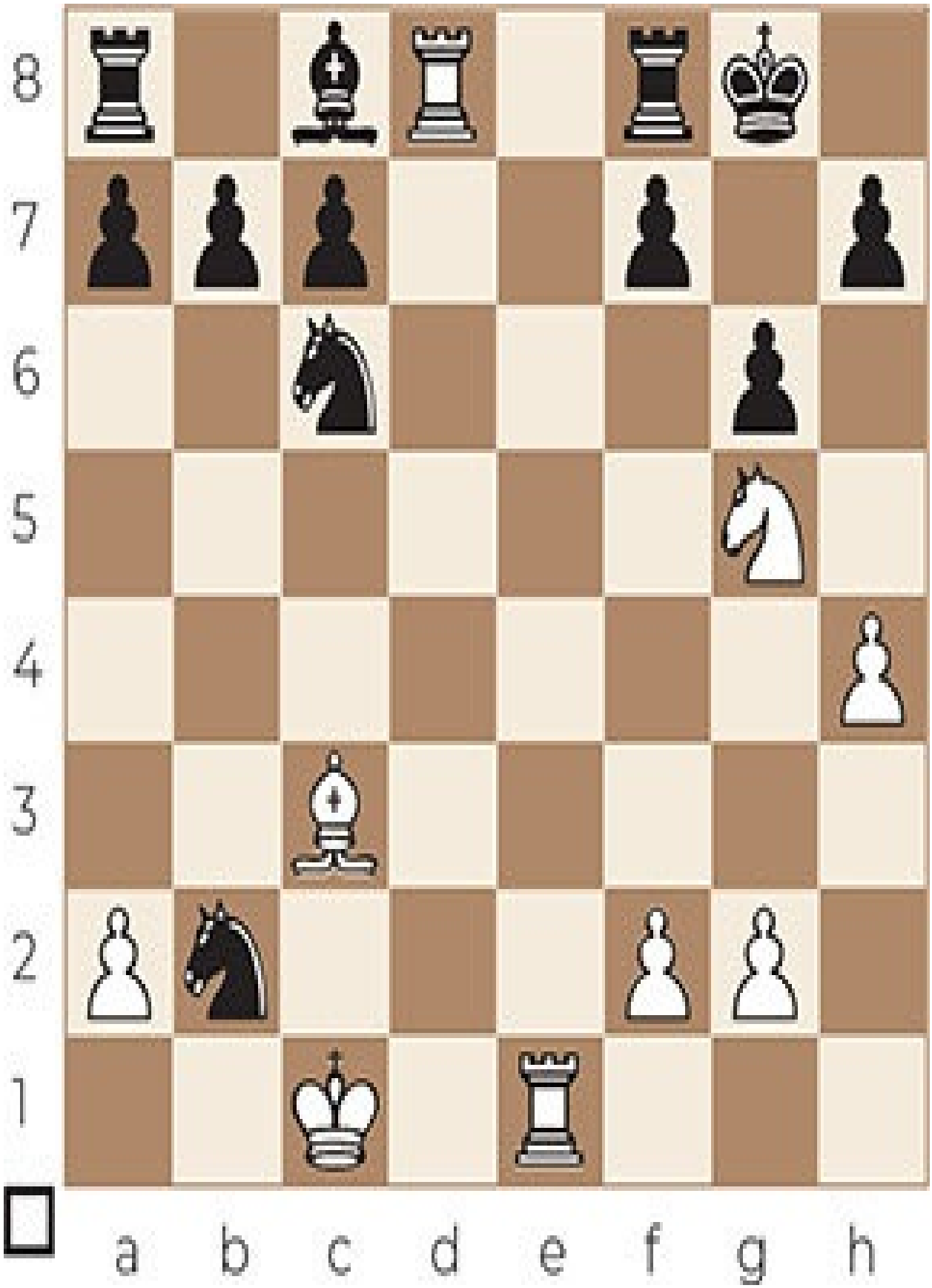
Exercise B 120

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 121


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

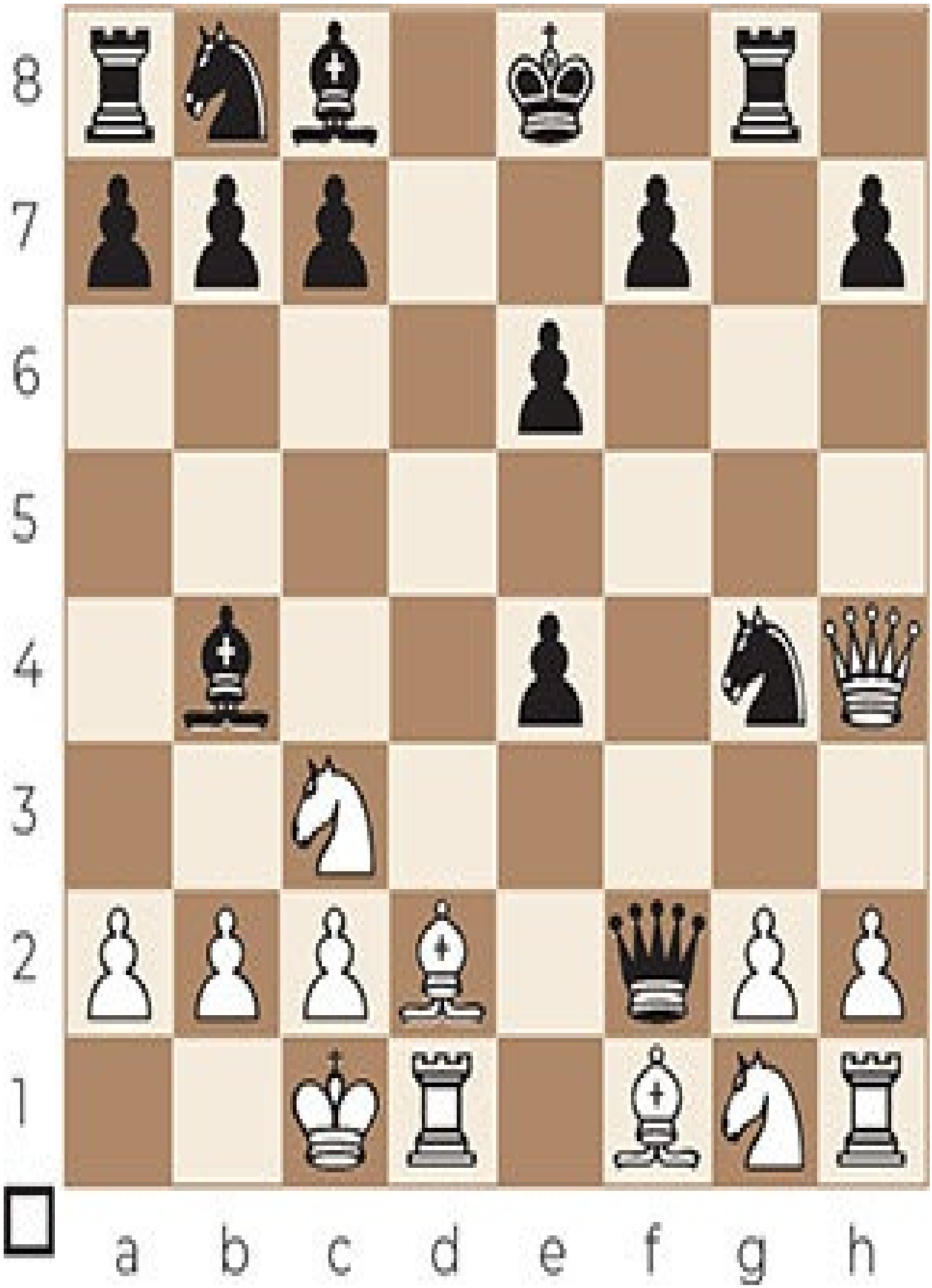
Exercise B 122


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 123

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 124


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

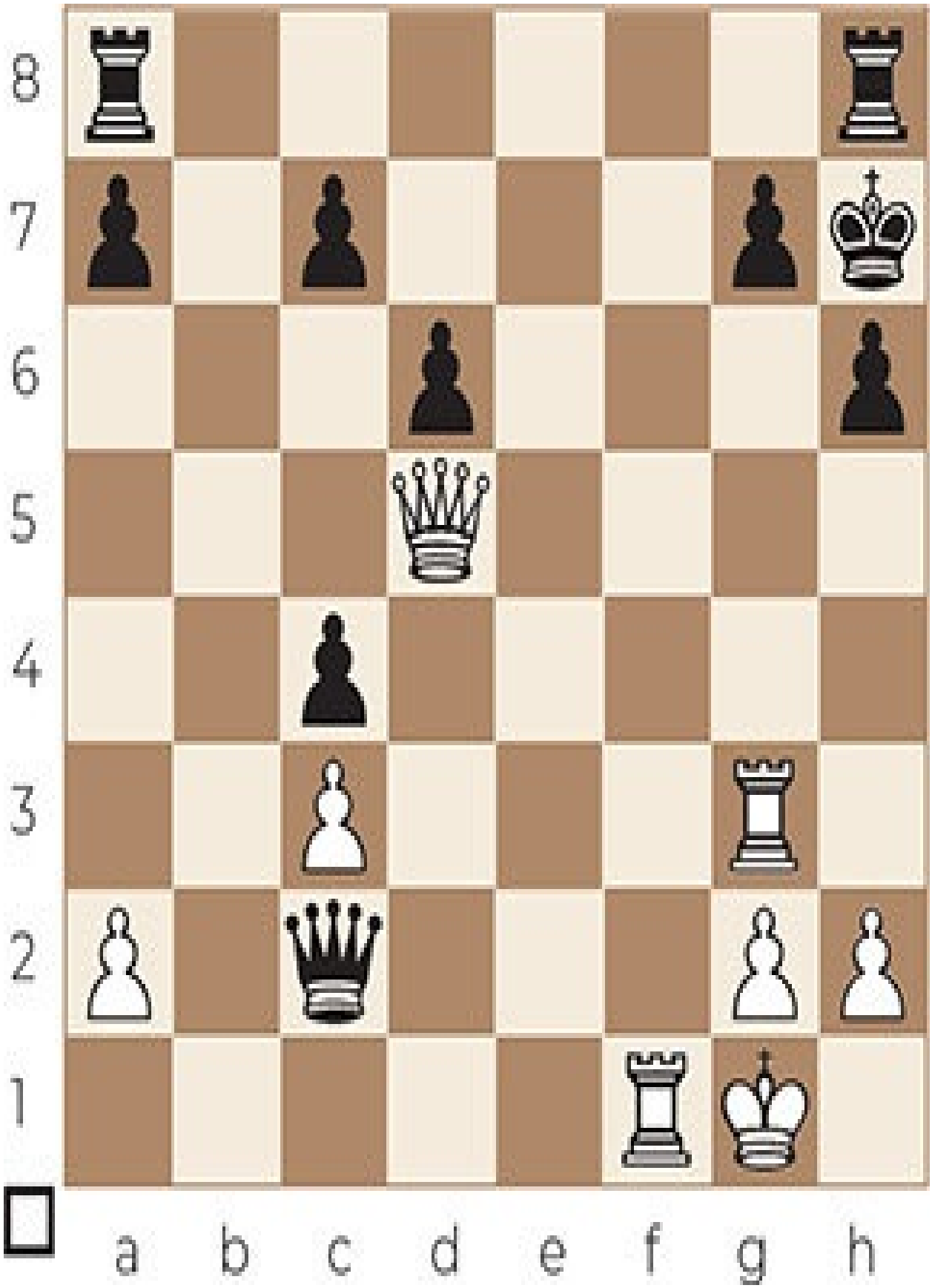
Exercise B 125

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 126

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 127


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

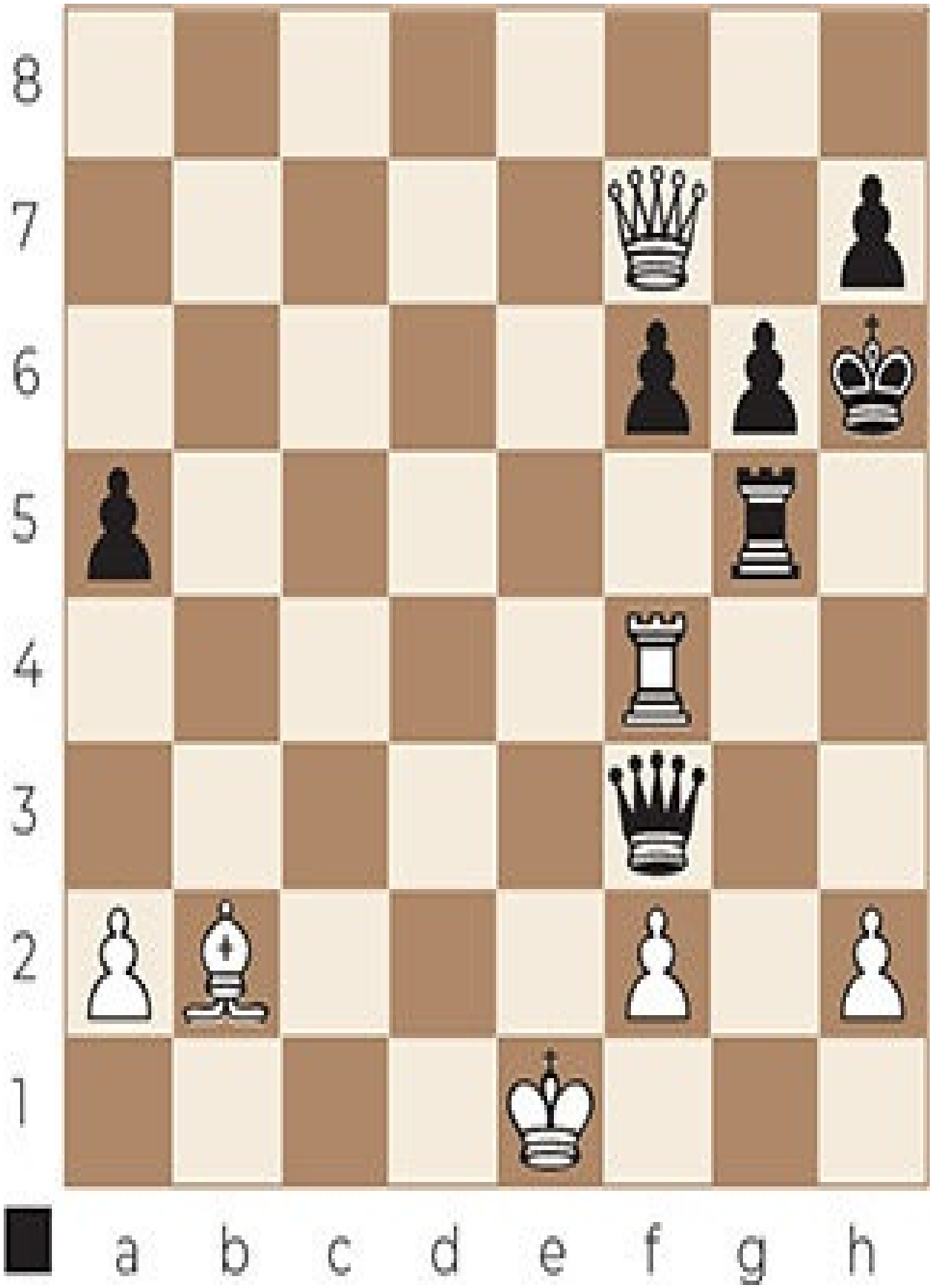
Exercise B 128

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

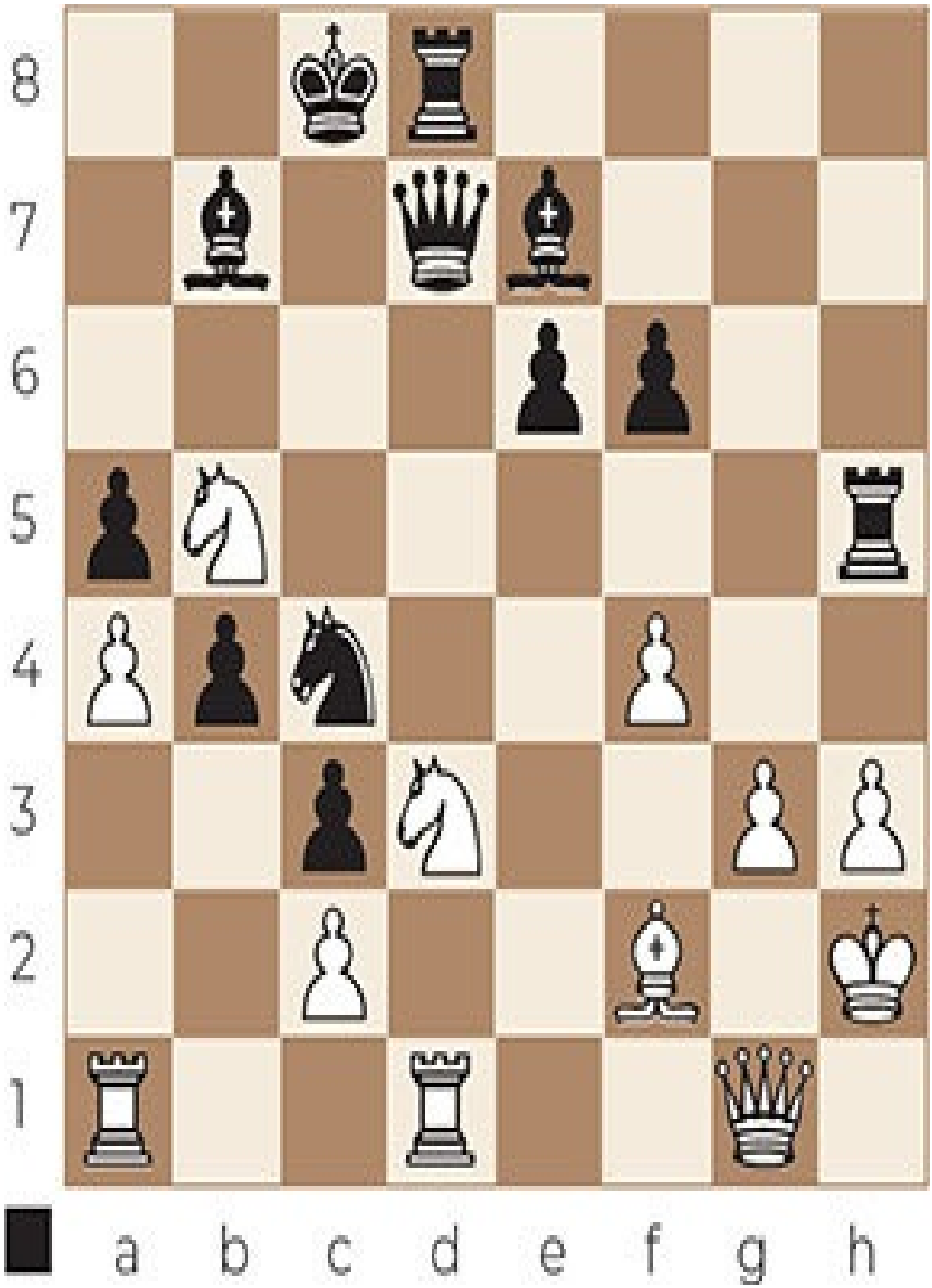
Exercise B 129

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

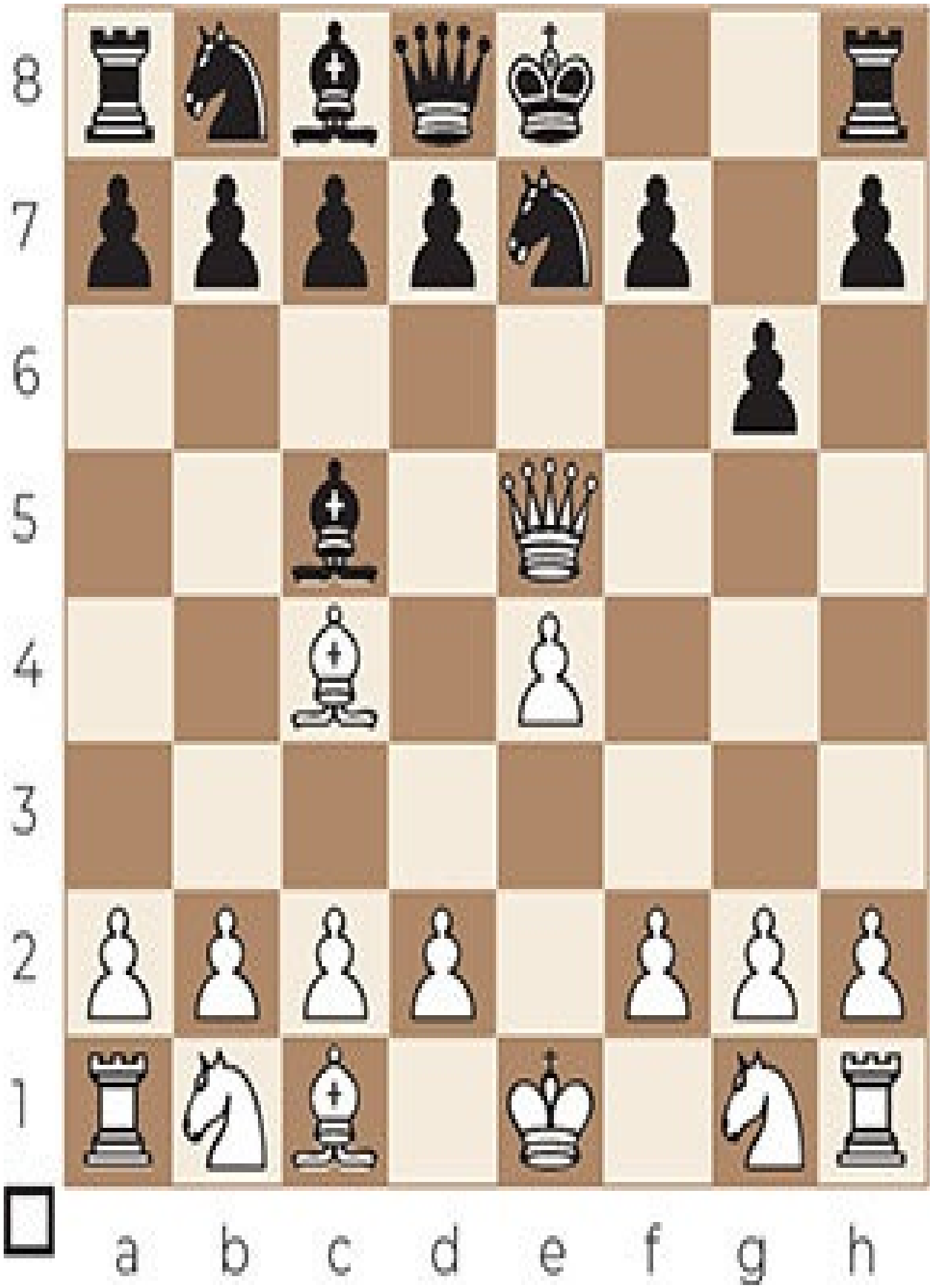
Exercise B 130


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 131


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 132


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 133

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

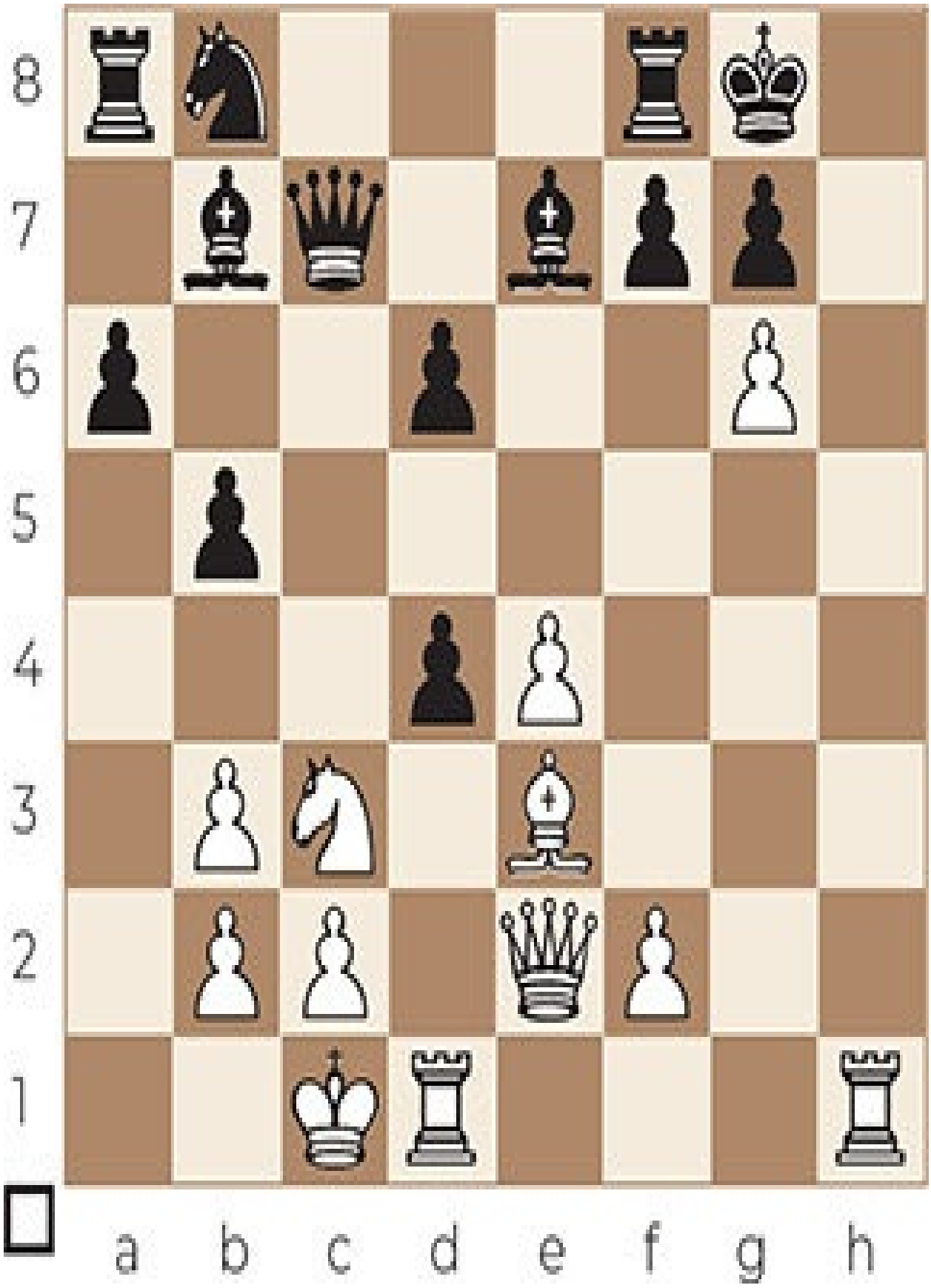
Exercise B 134

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 135

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

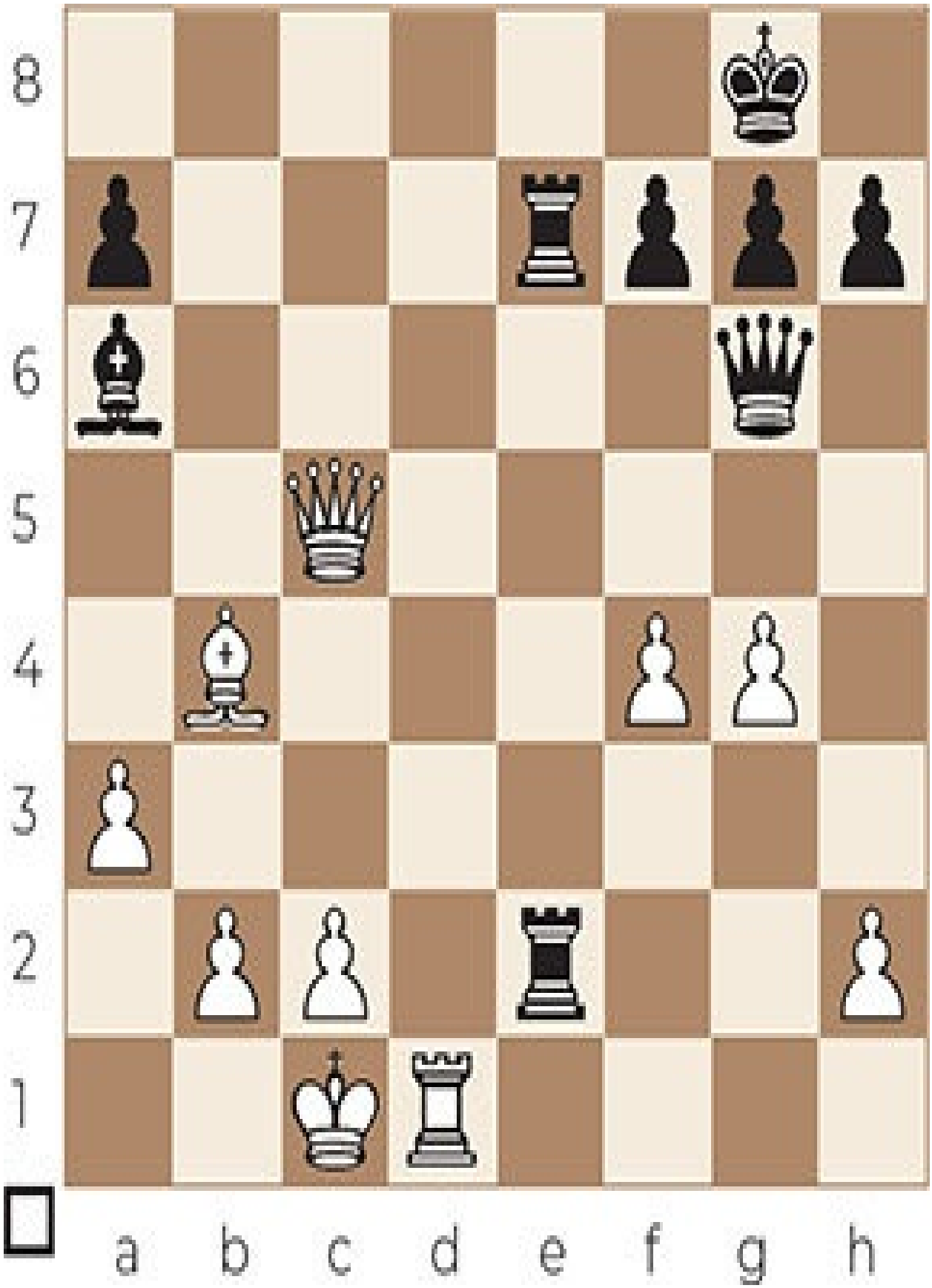
Exercise B 136


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 137

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

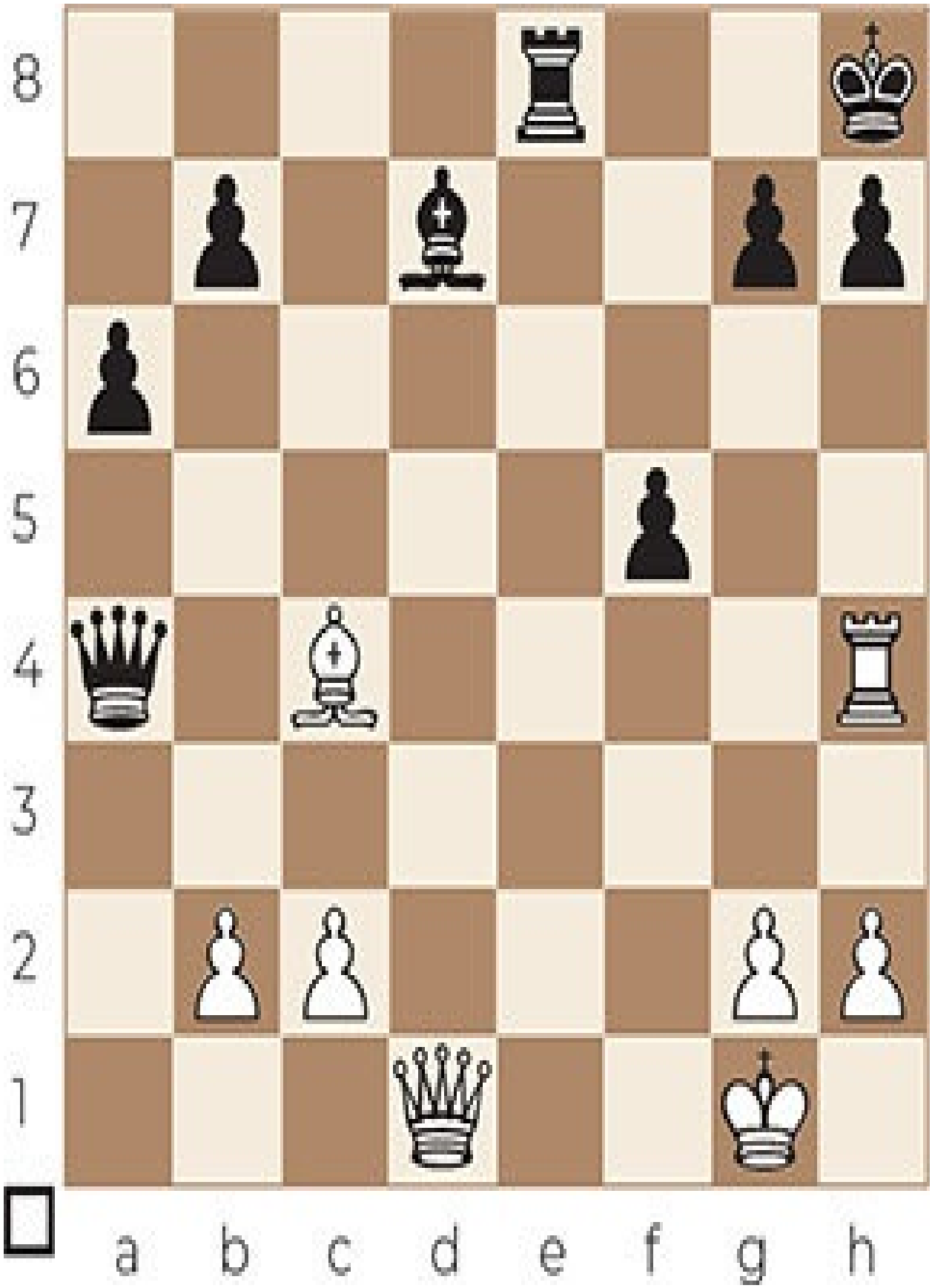
Exercise B 138


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 139

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 140


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 141

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

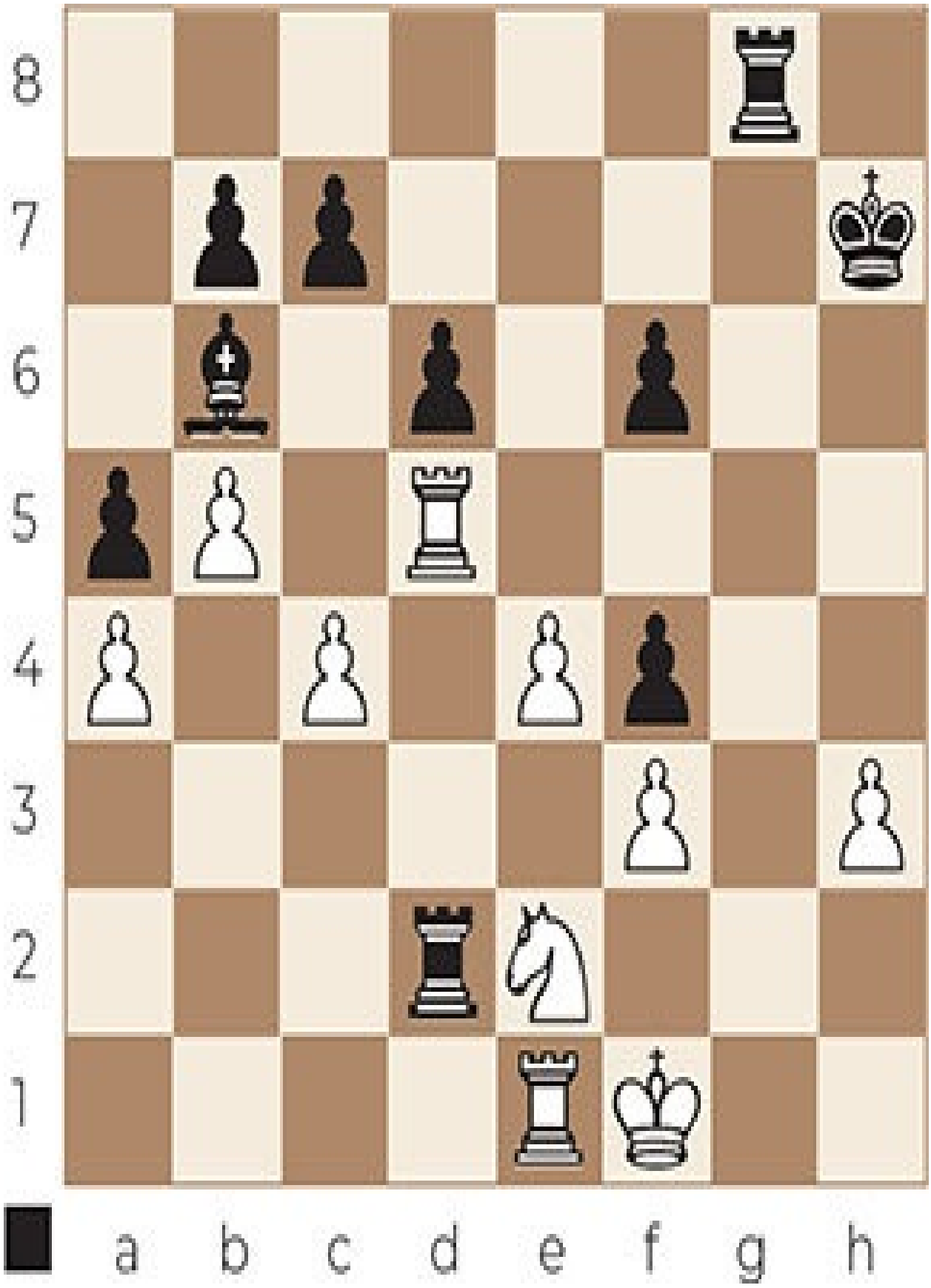
Exercise B 142

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

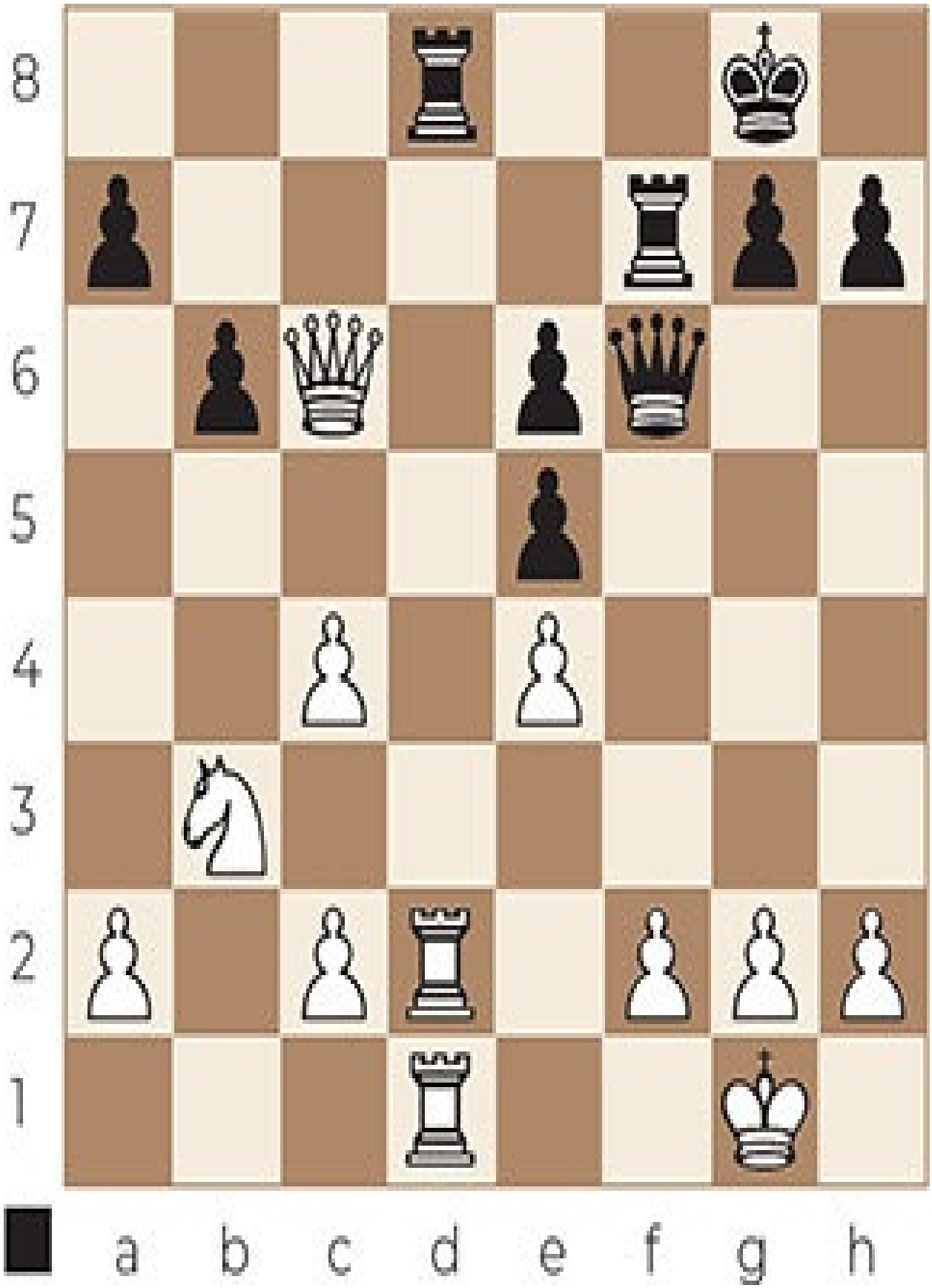
Exercise B 143

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

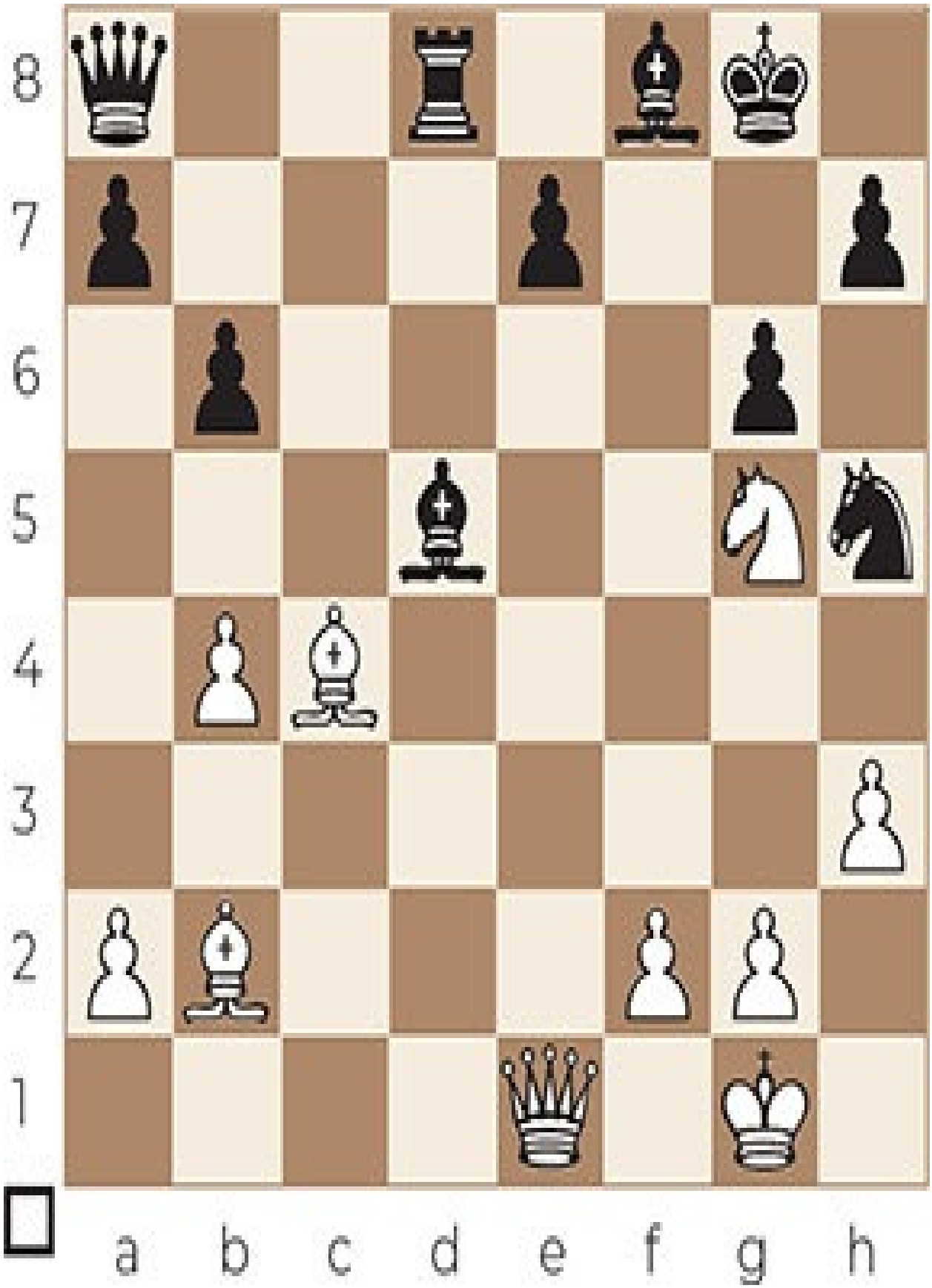
Exercise B 144


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 145


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 146


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

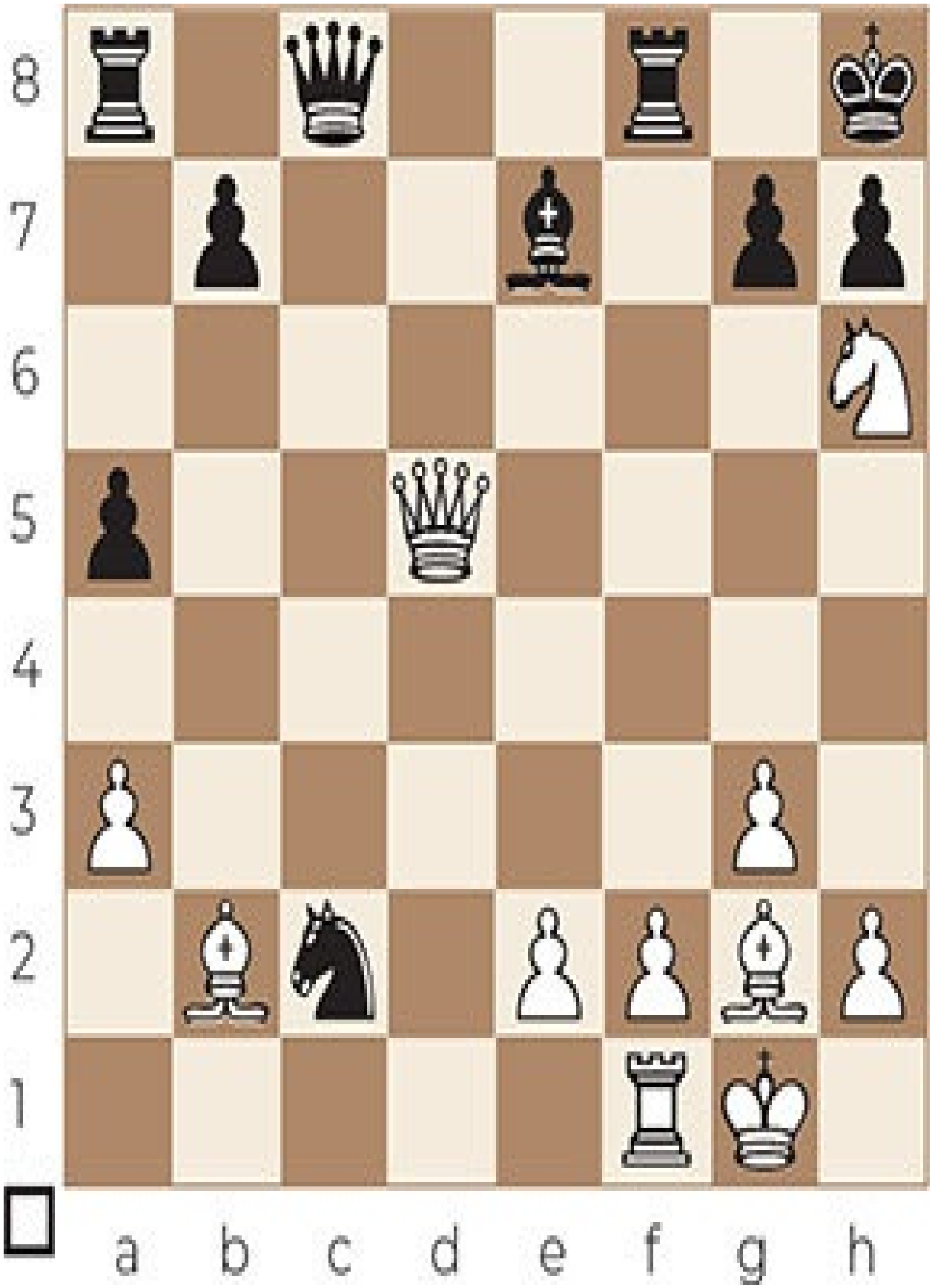
Exercise B 147

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

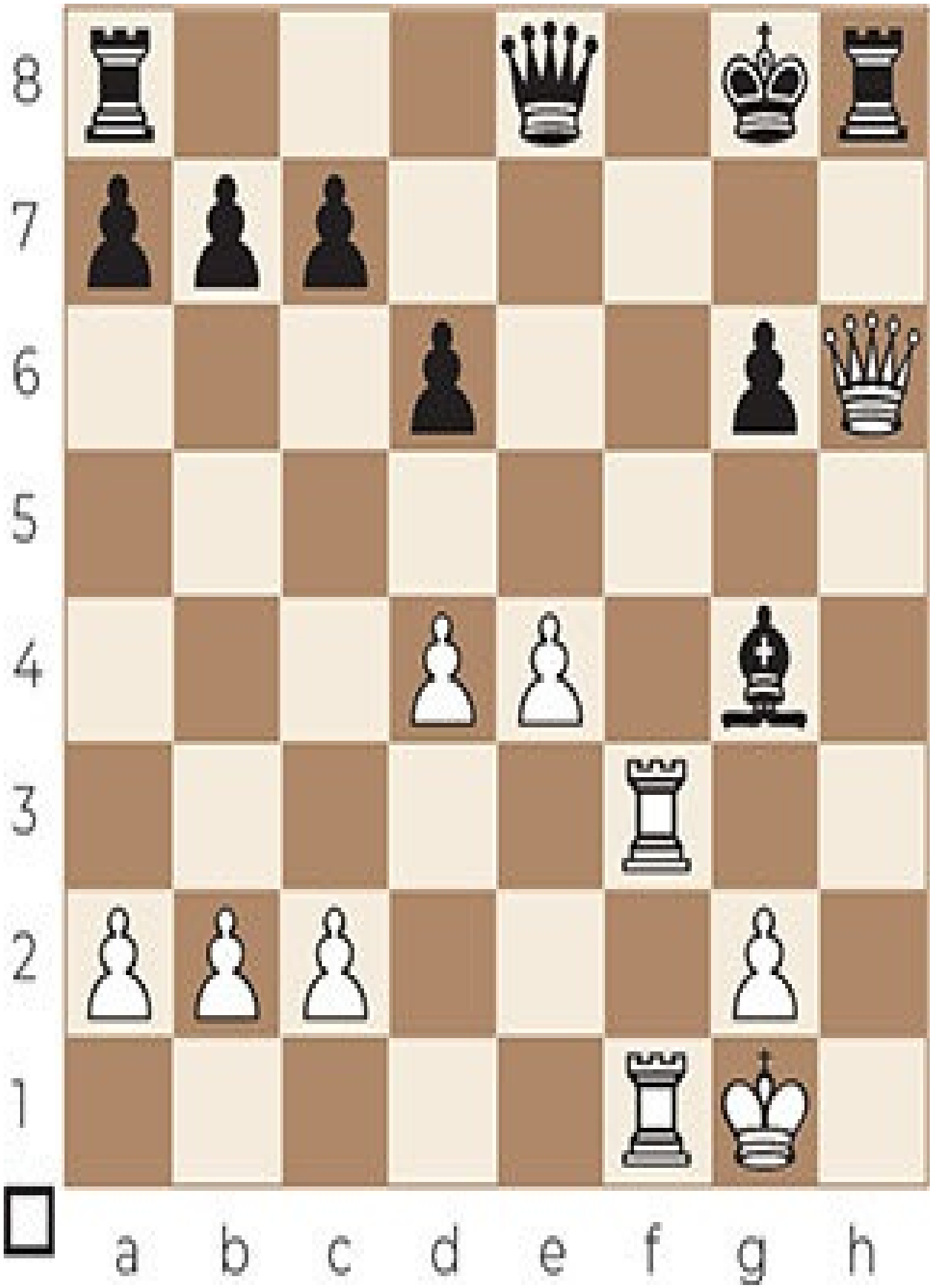
Exercise B 148

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 149


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 150


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

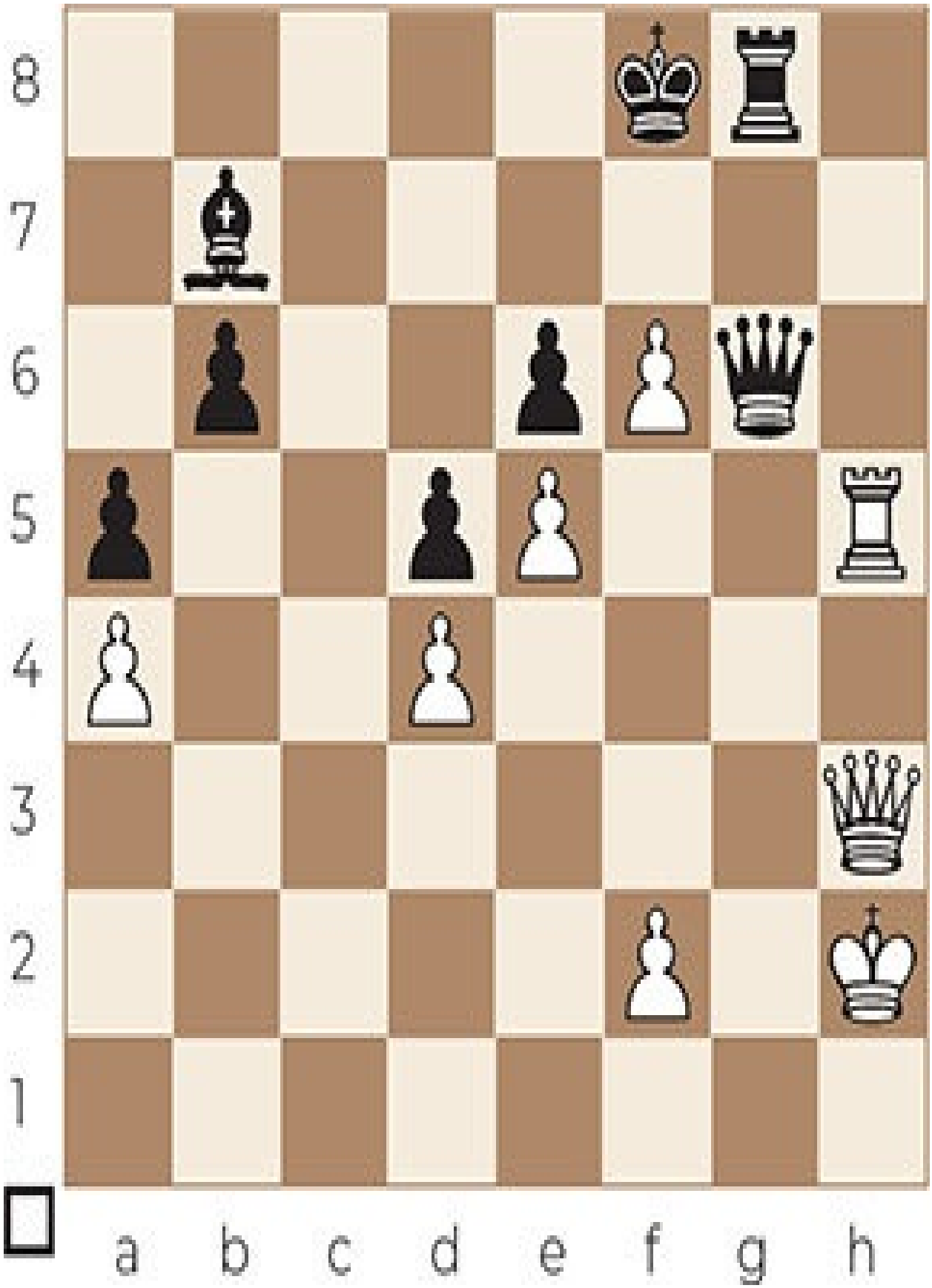
Exercise B 151

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

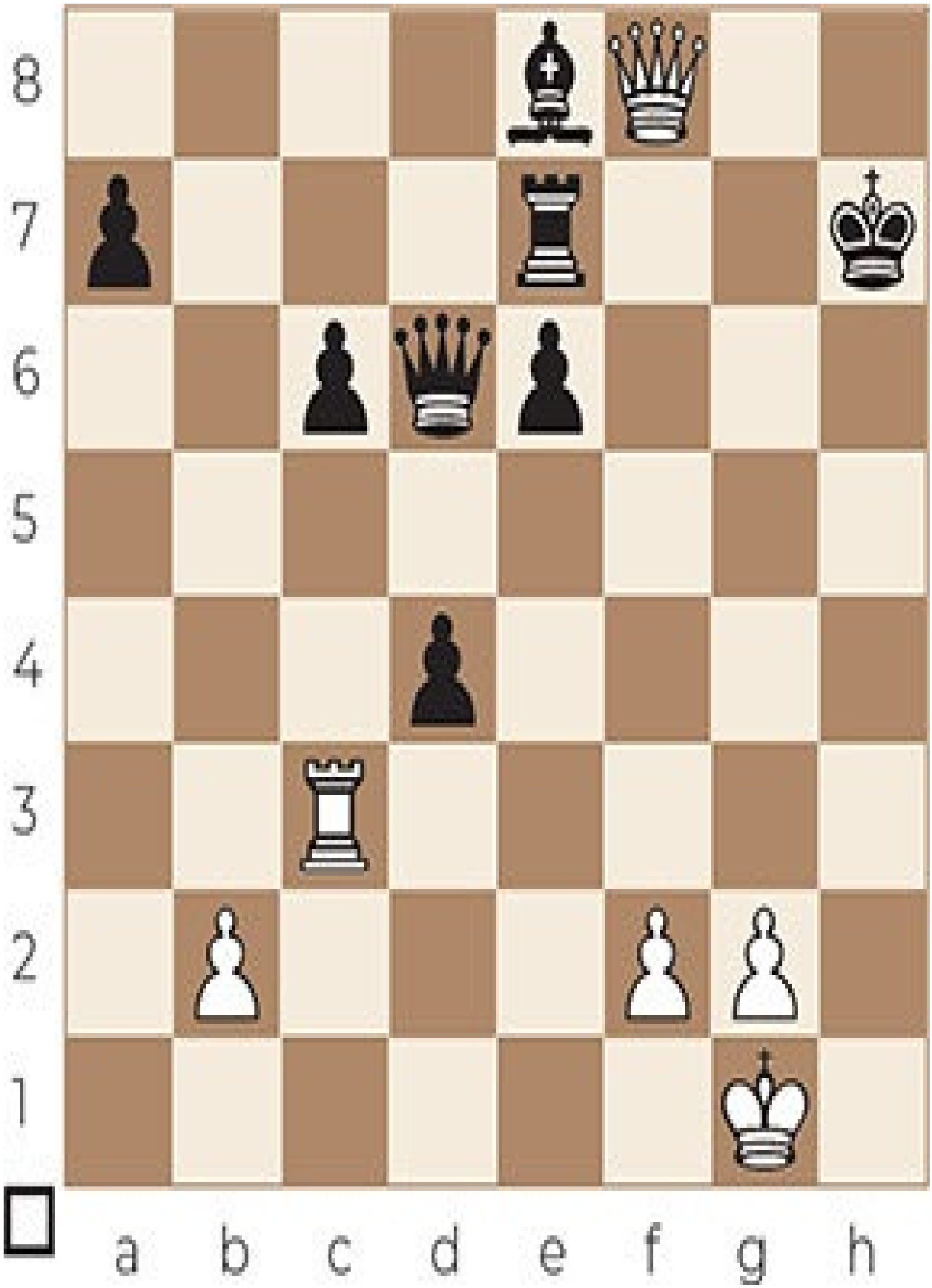
Exercise B 152

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

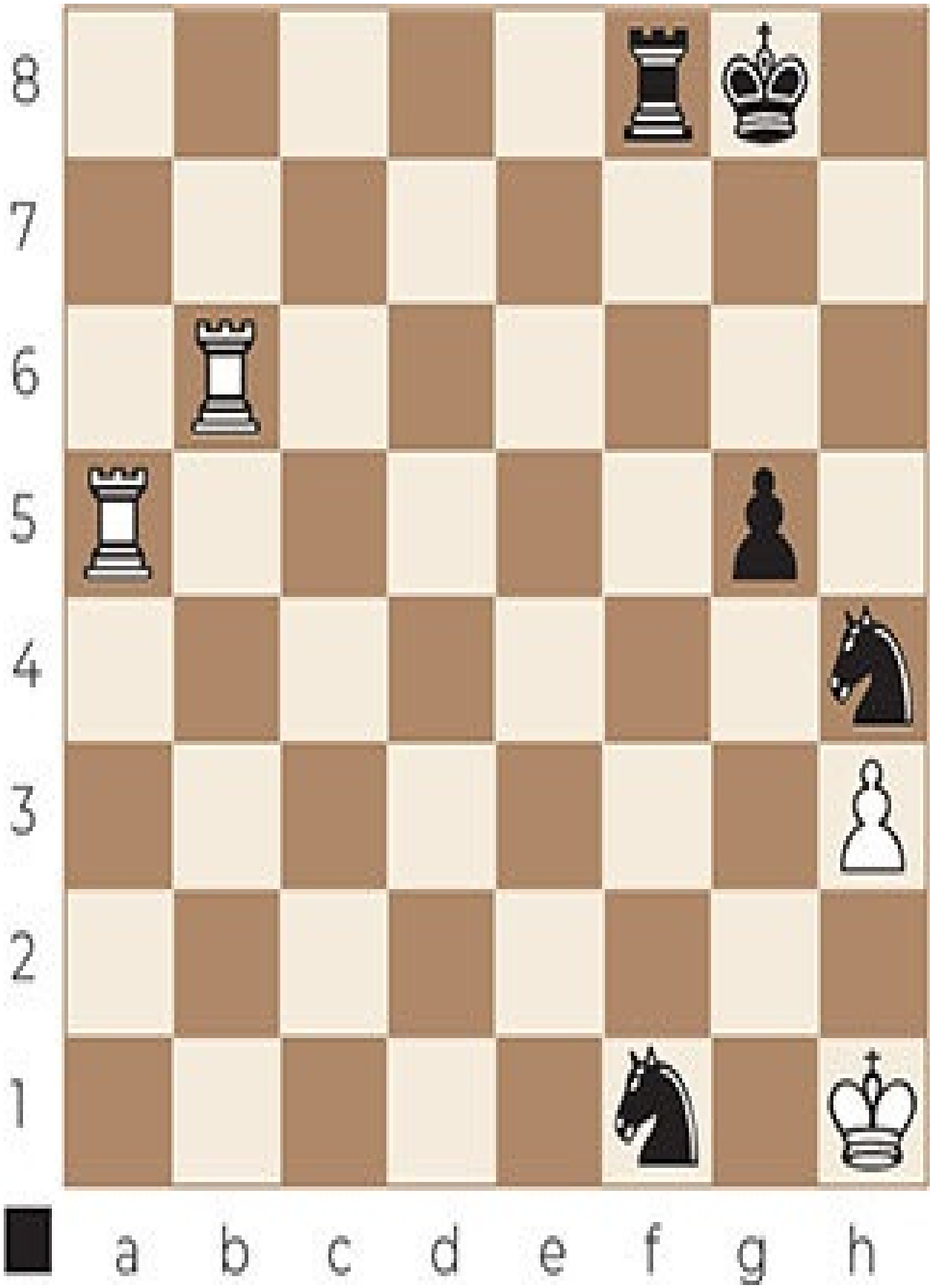
Exercise B 153


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 154


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 155


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 156

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 157

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

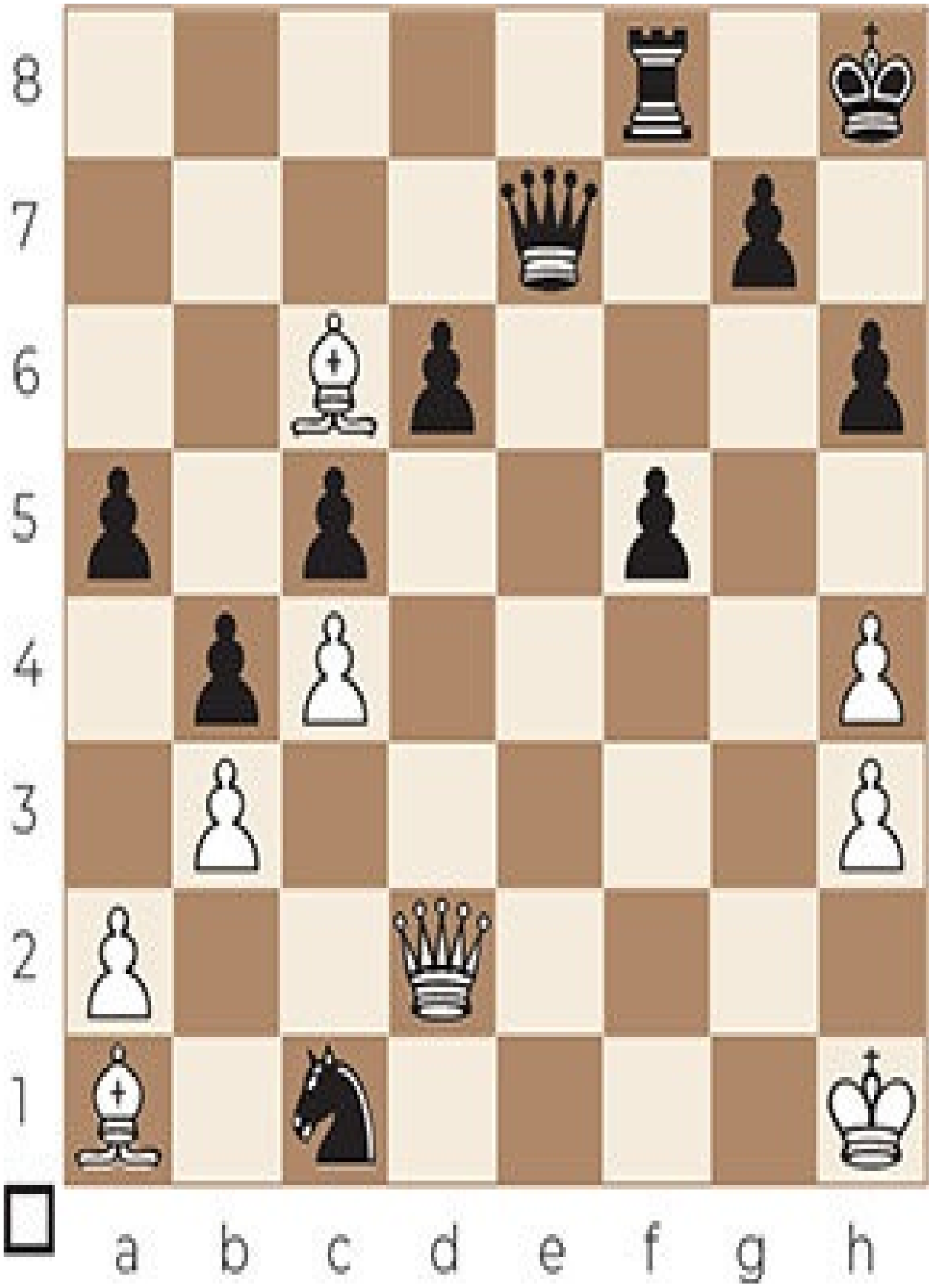
Exercise B 158

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 159

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

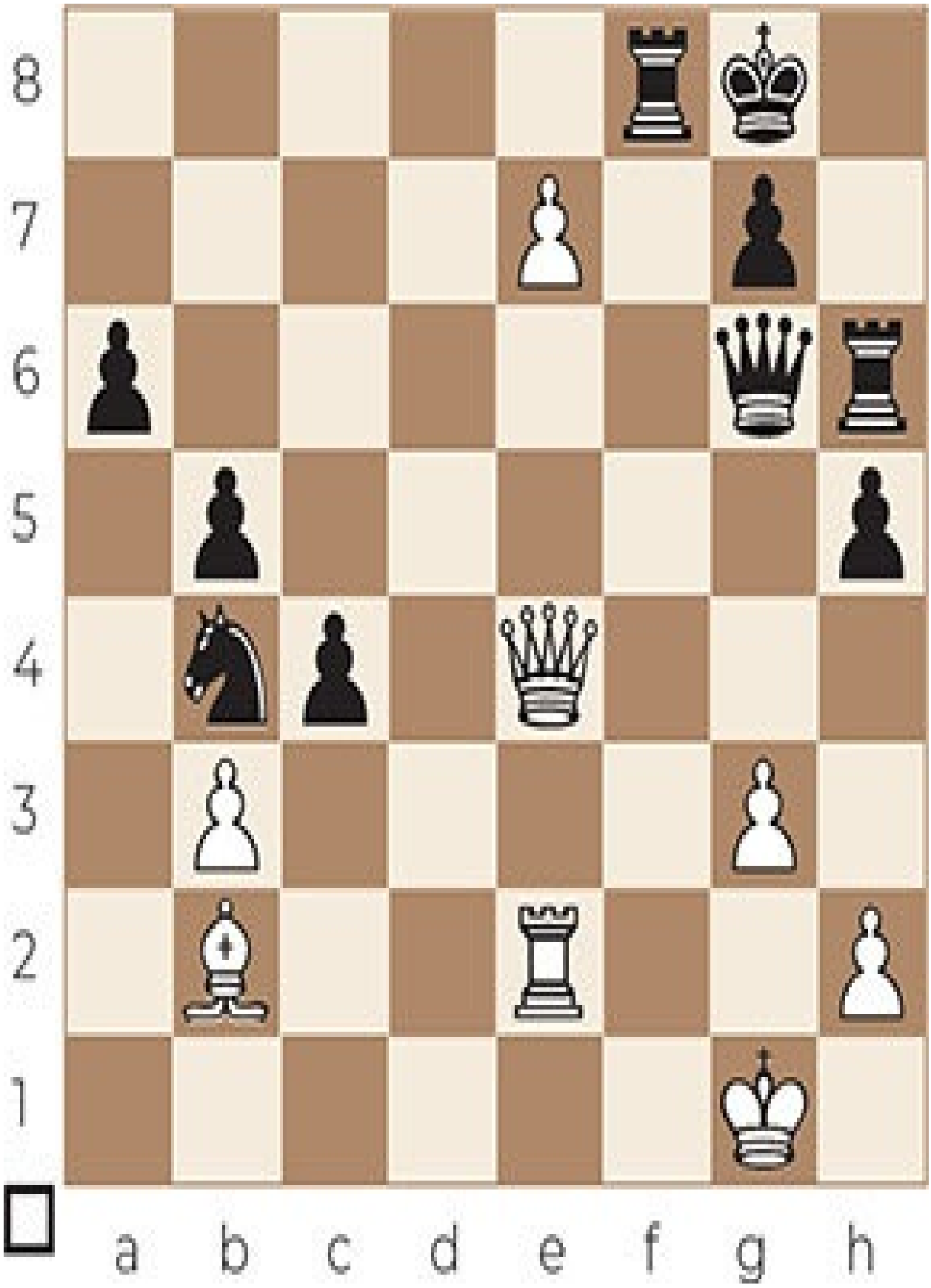
Exercise B 160


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 161

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 162


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 163

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 164

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 165

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 166

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 167

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 168

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

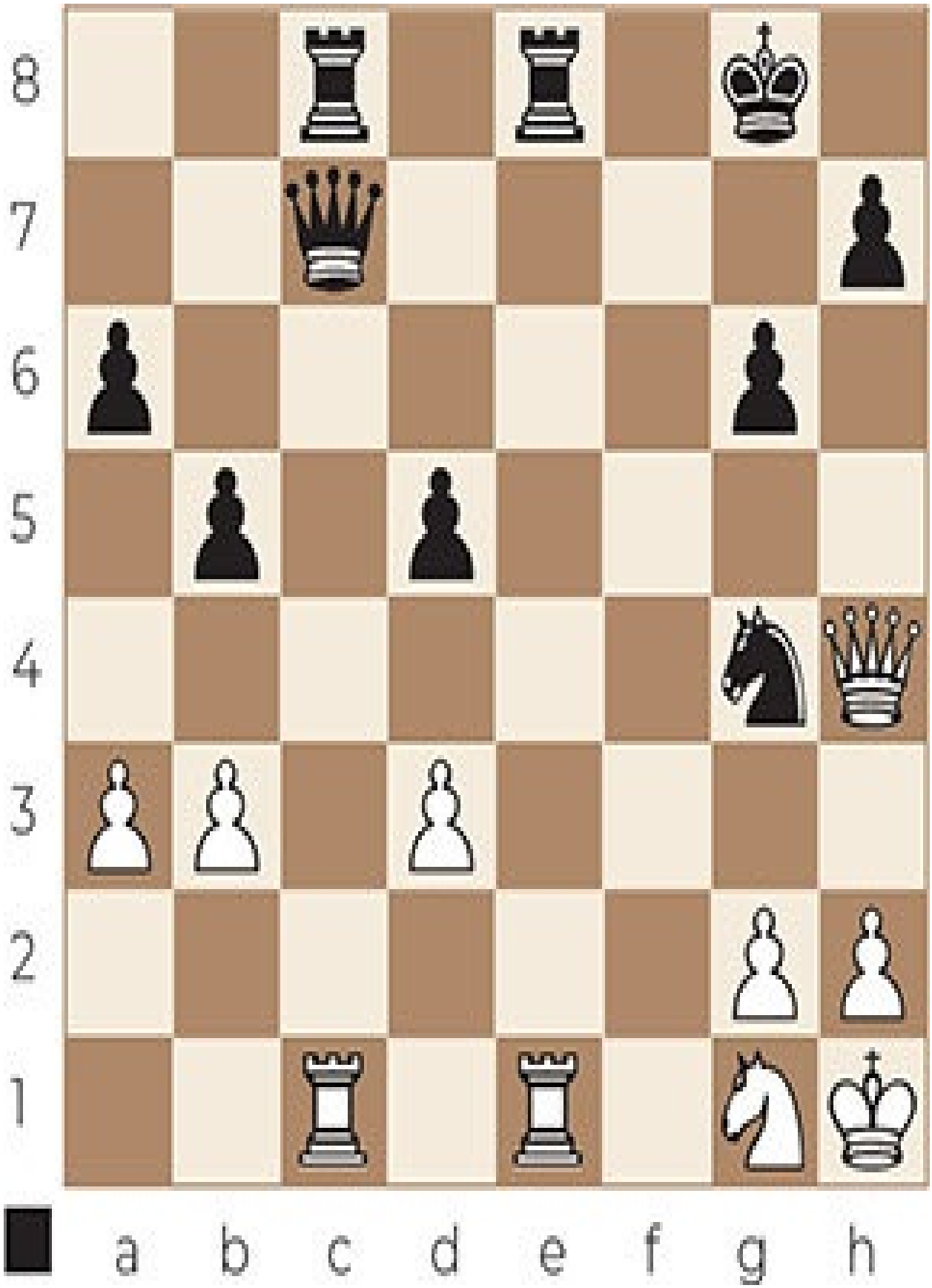
Exercise B 169

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 170

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

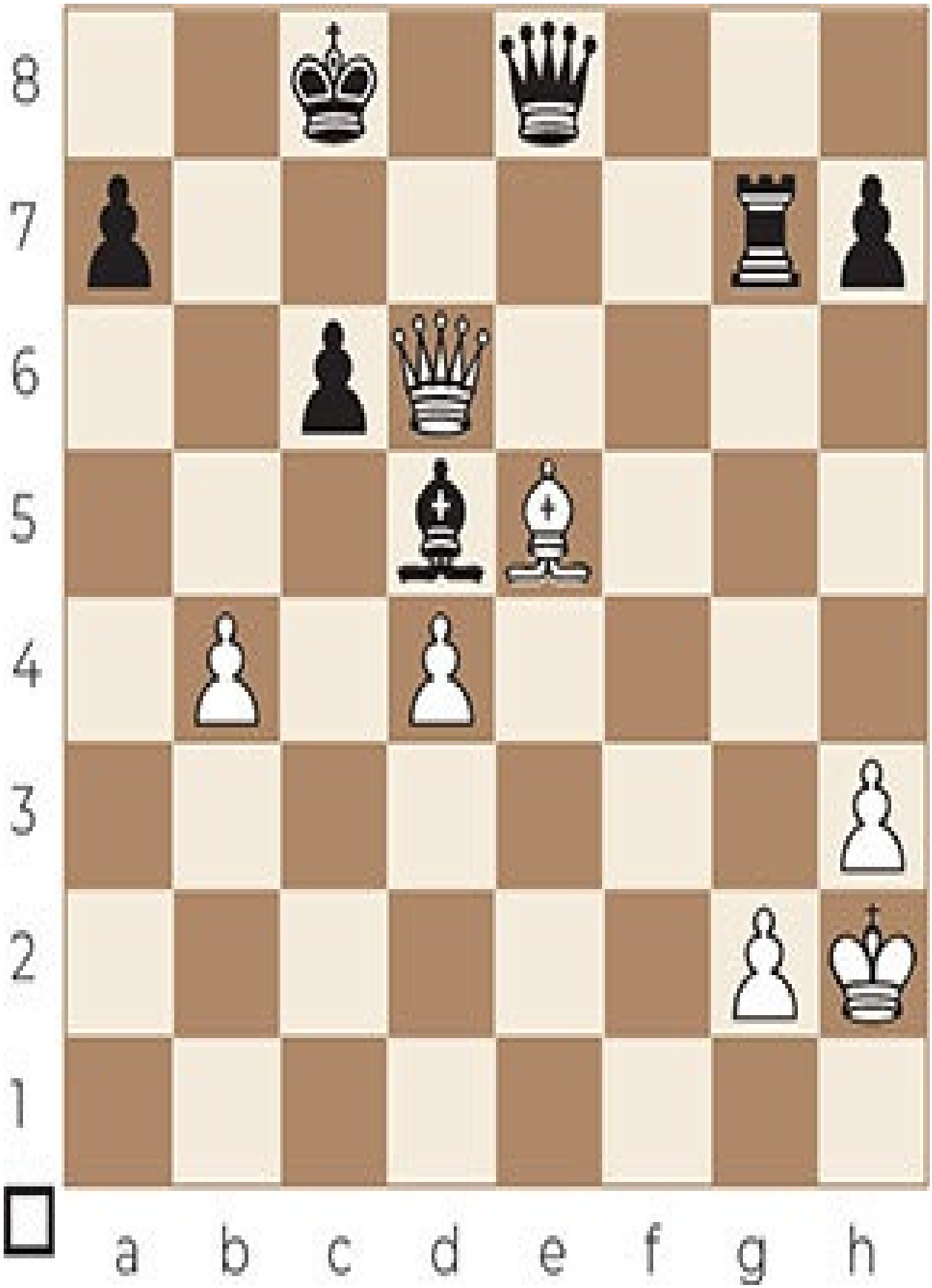
Exercise B 171


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 172

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

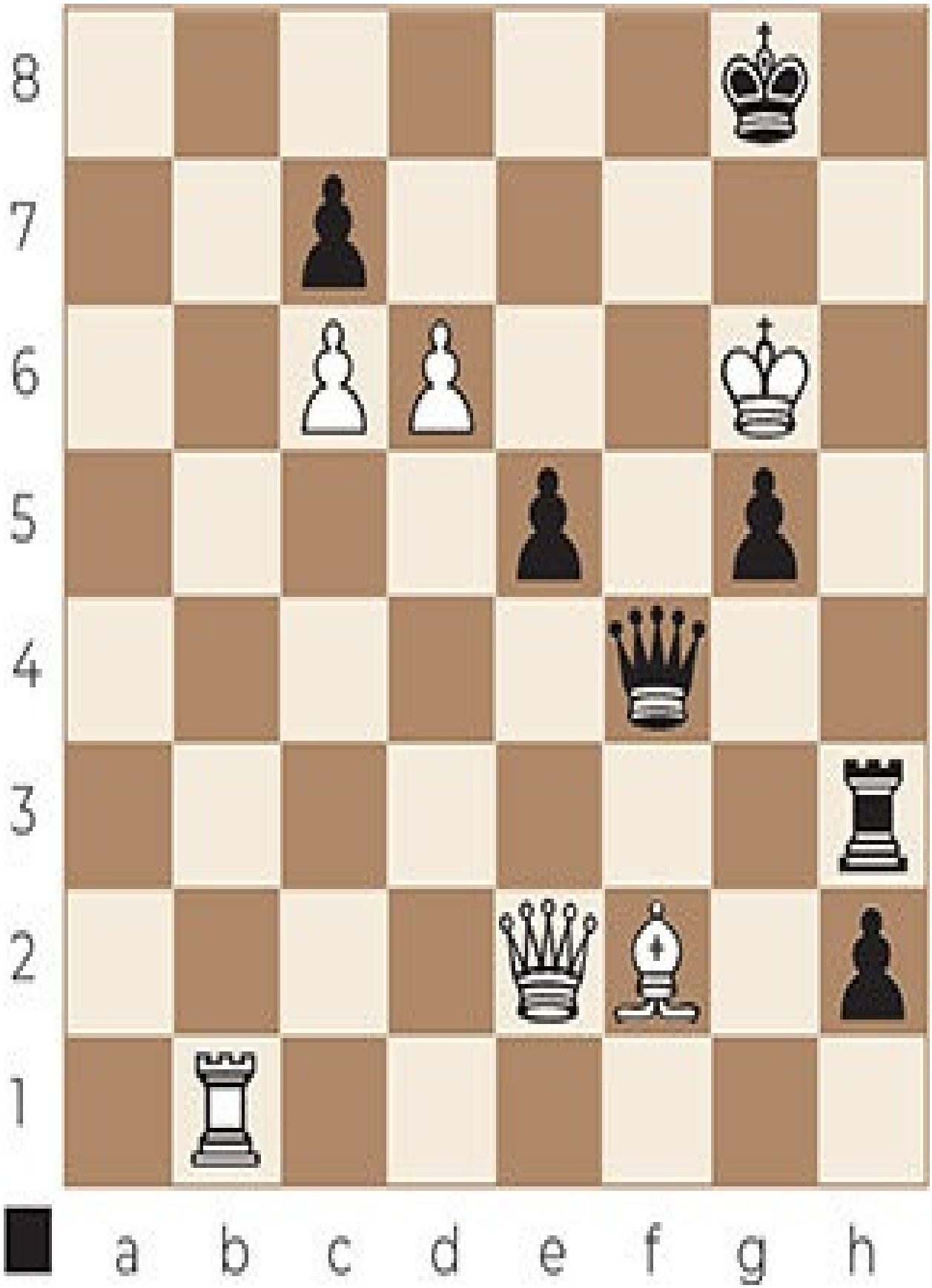
Exercise B 173


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

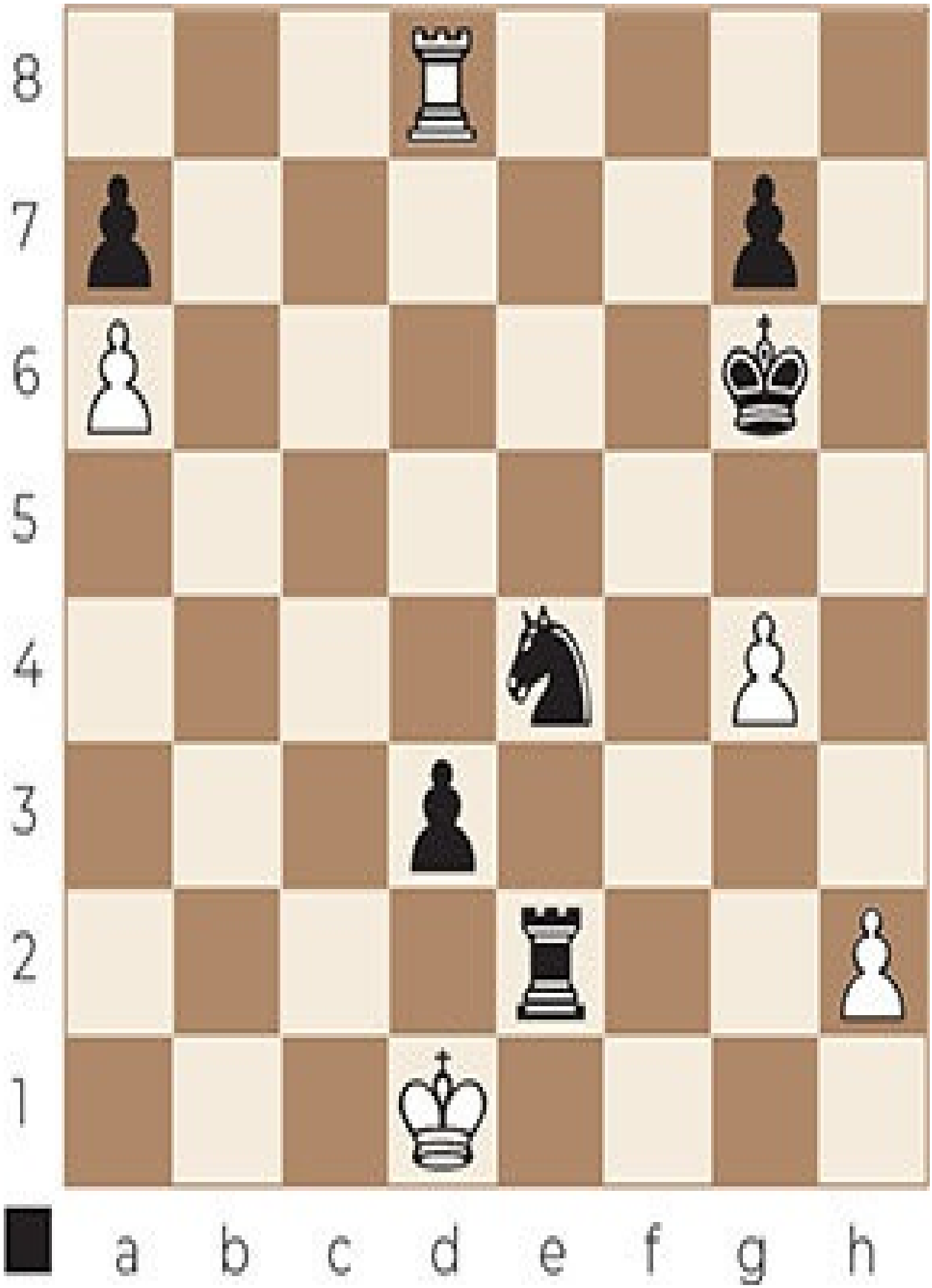
Exercise B 174

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

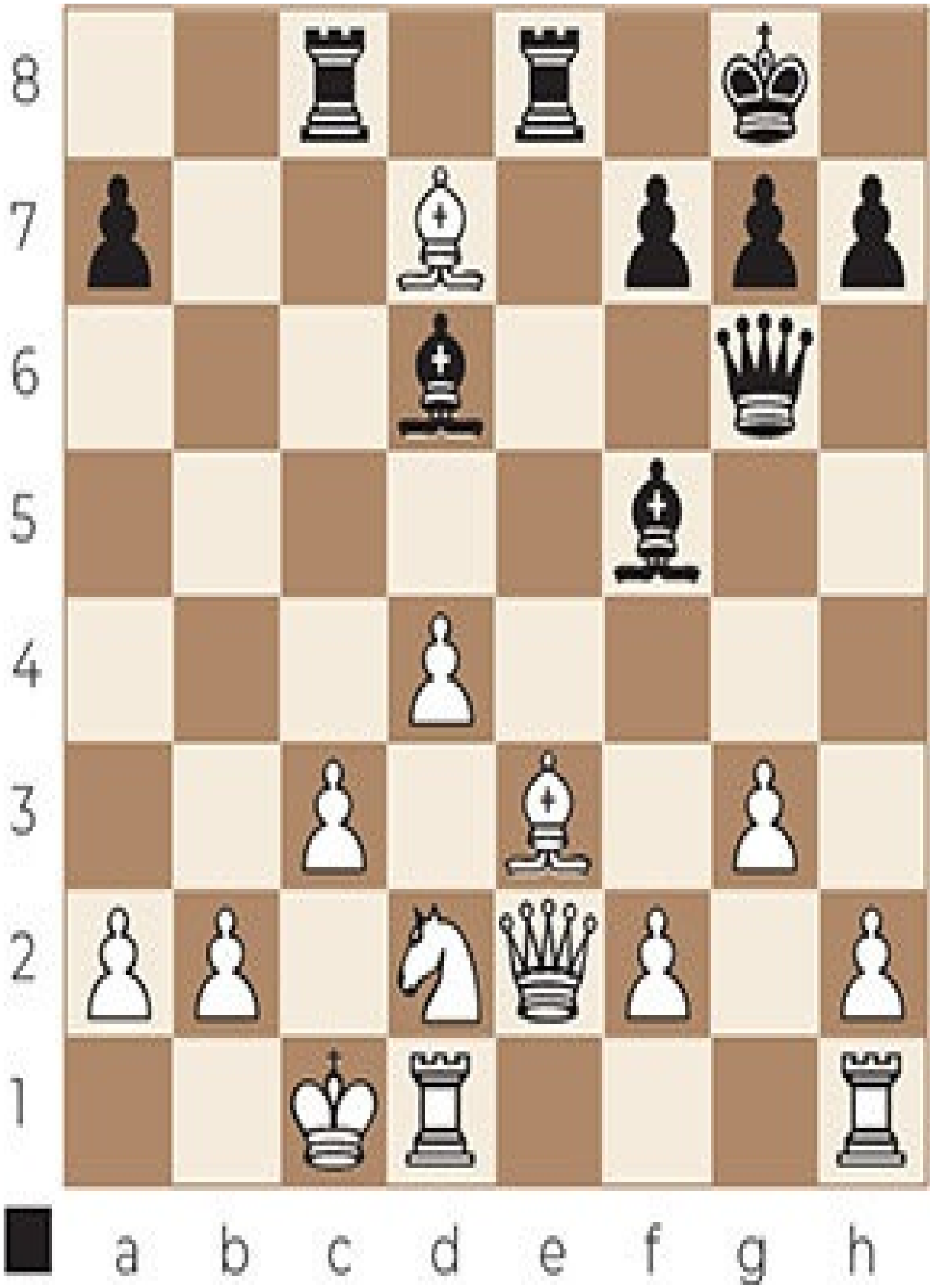
Exercise B 175


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 176


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 177


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

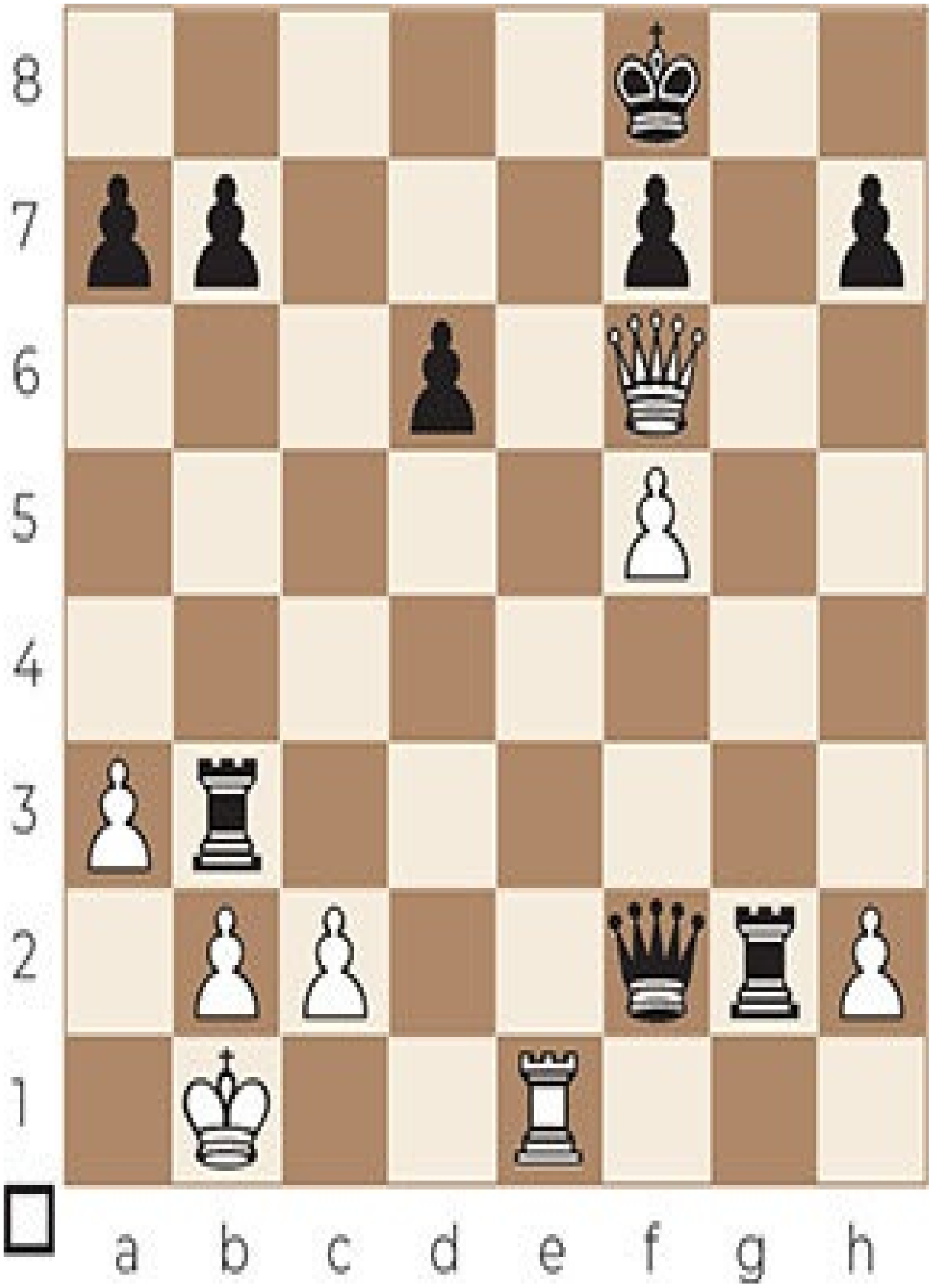
Exercise B 178

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

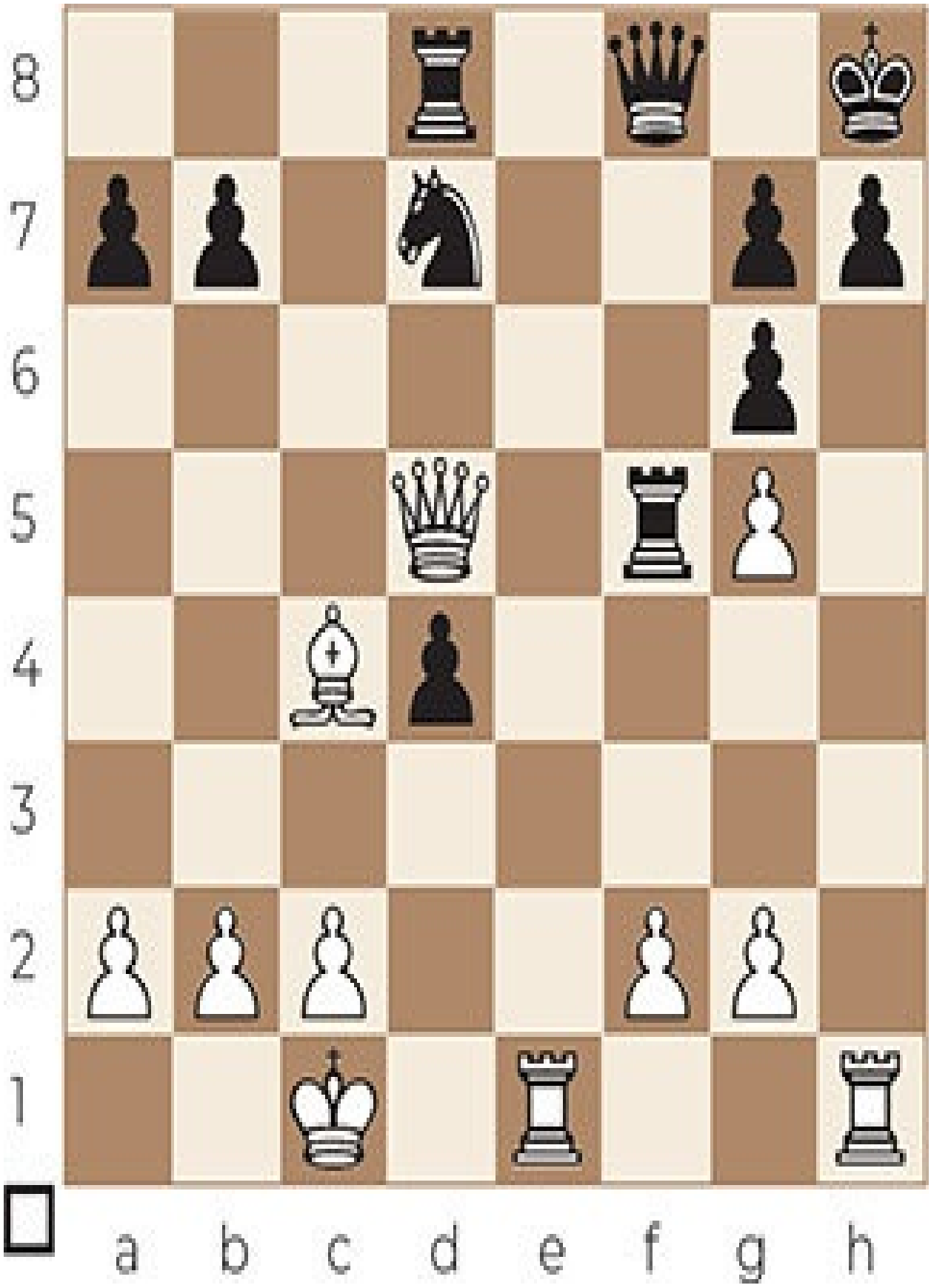
Exercise B 179

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

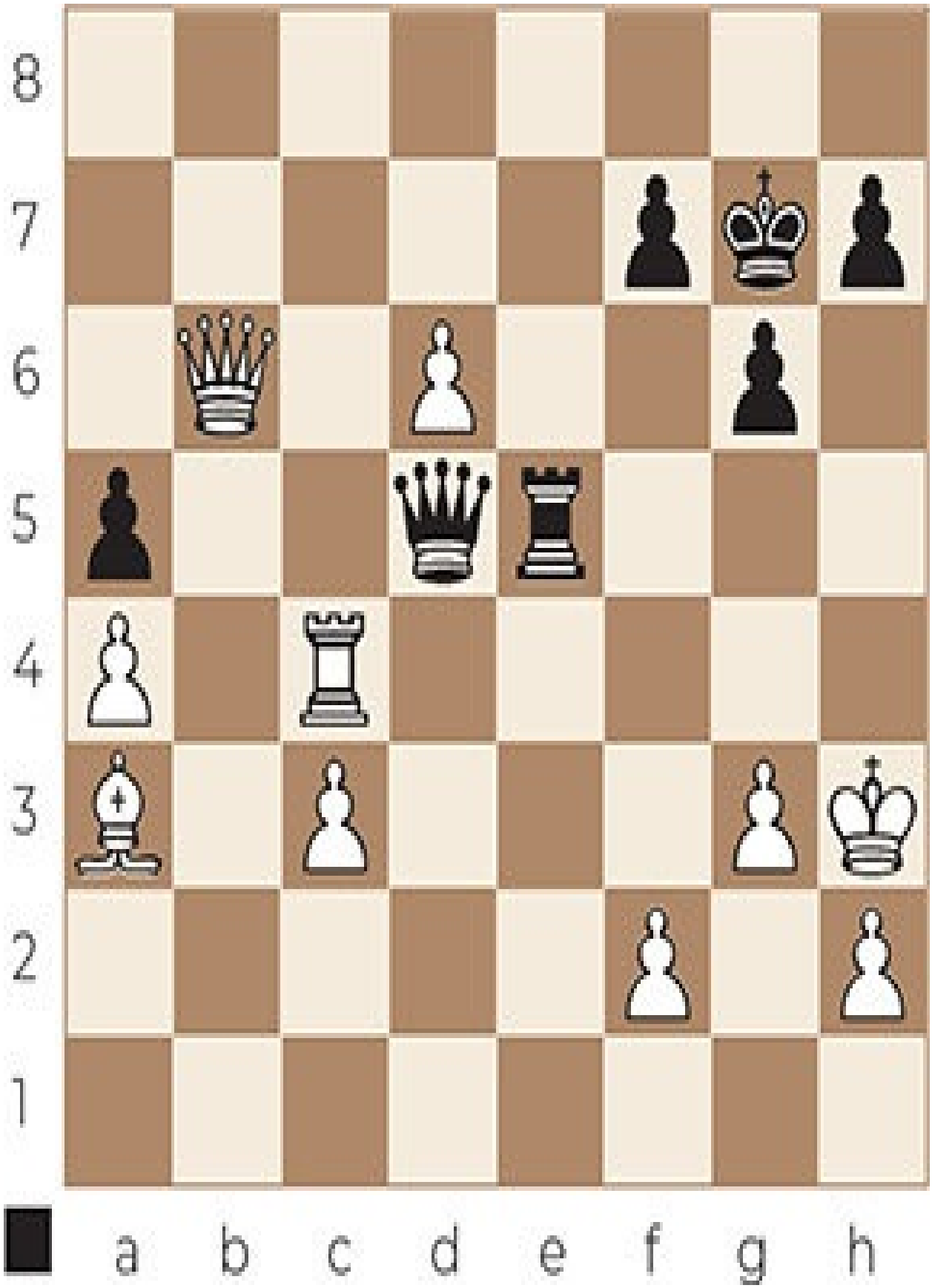
Exercise B 180


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

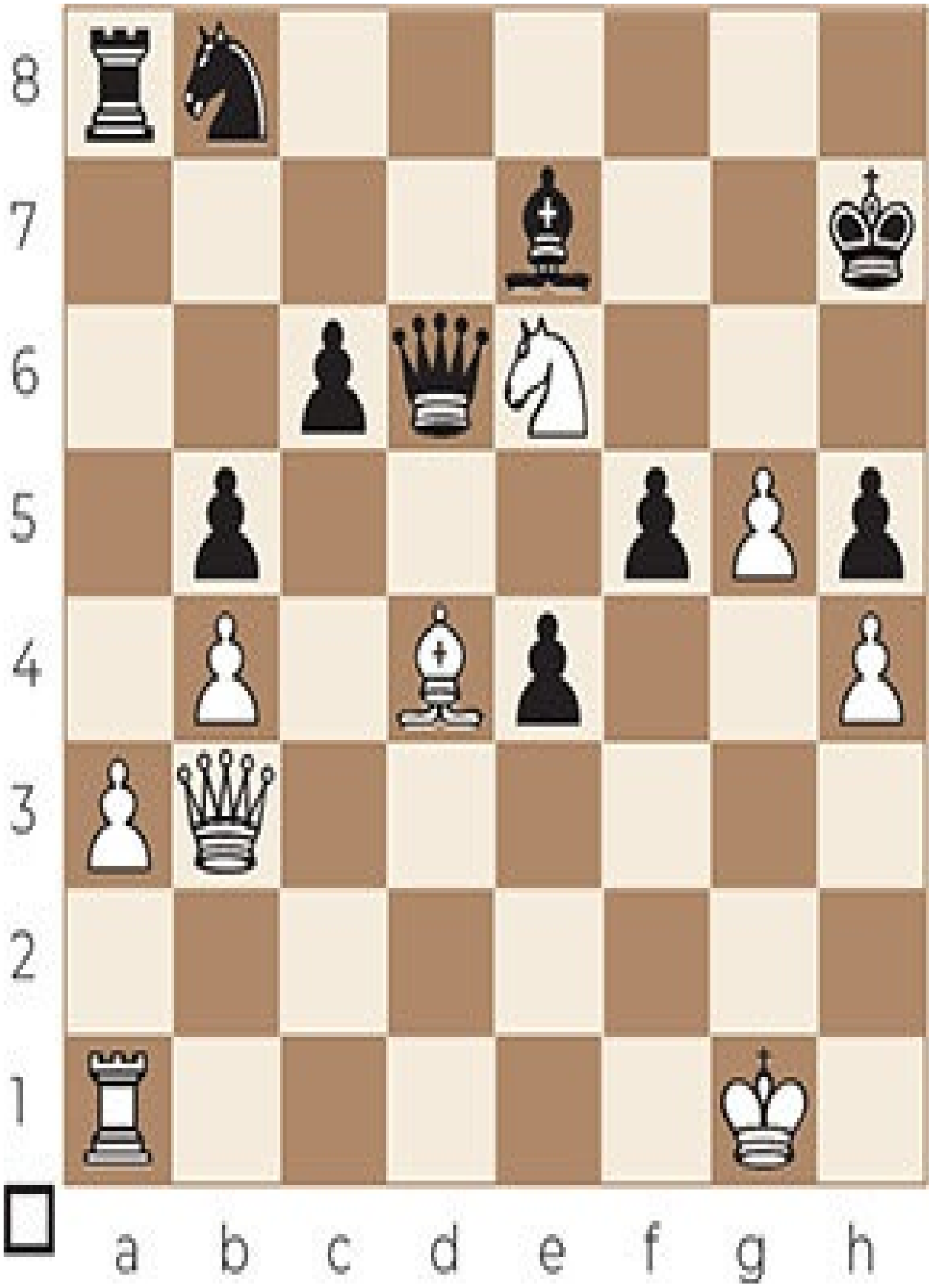
Exercise B 181


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 182


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 183


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 184

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

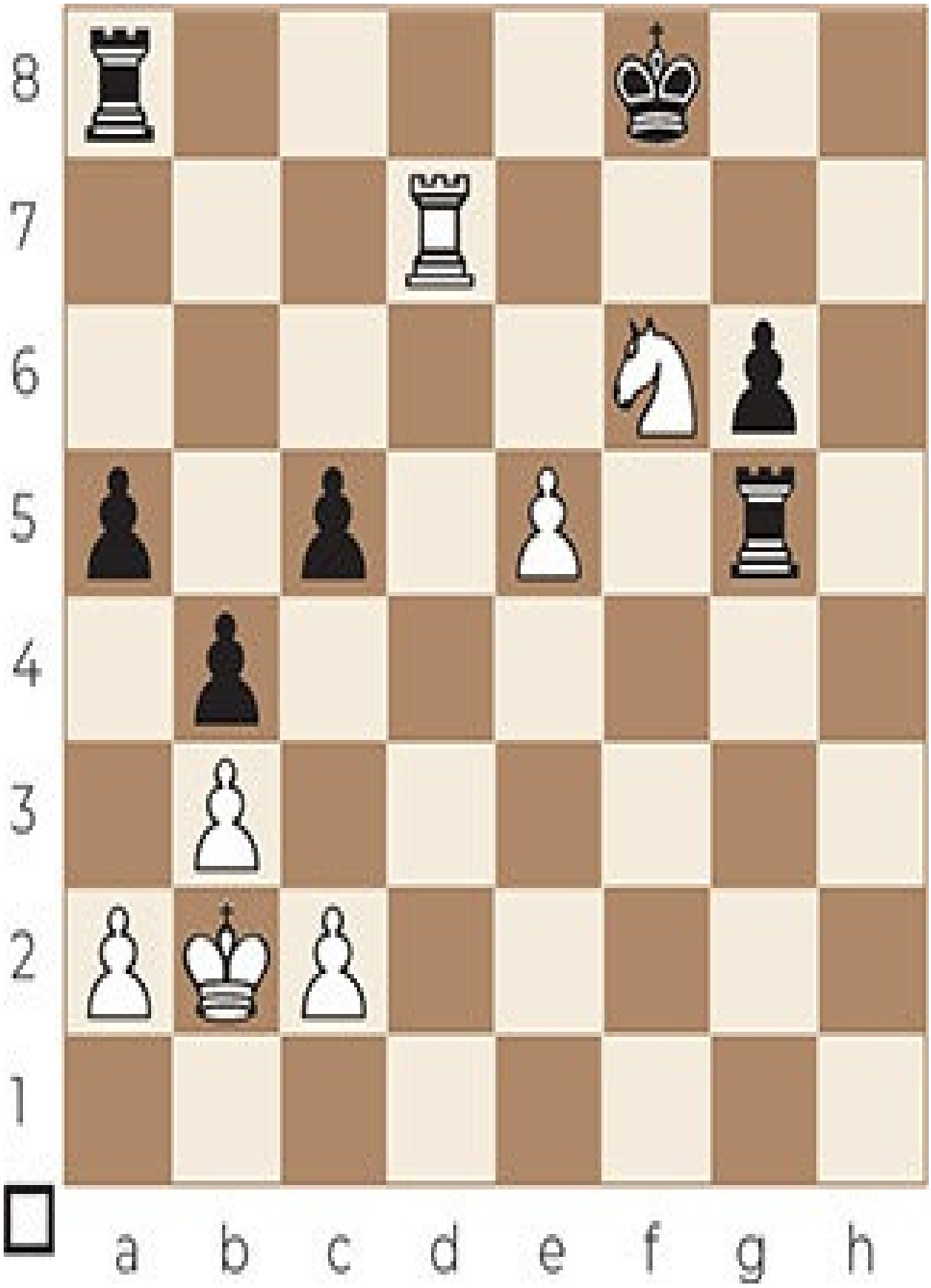
Exercise B 185

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 186

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

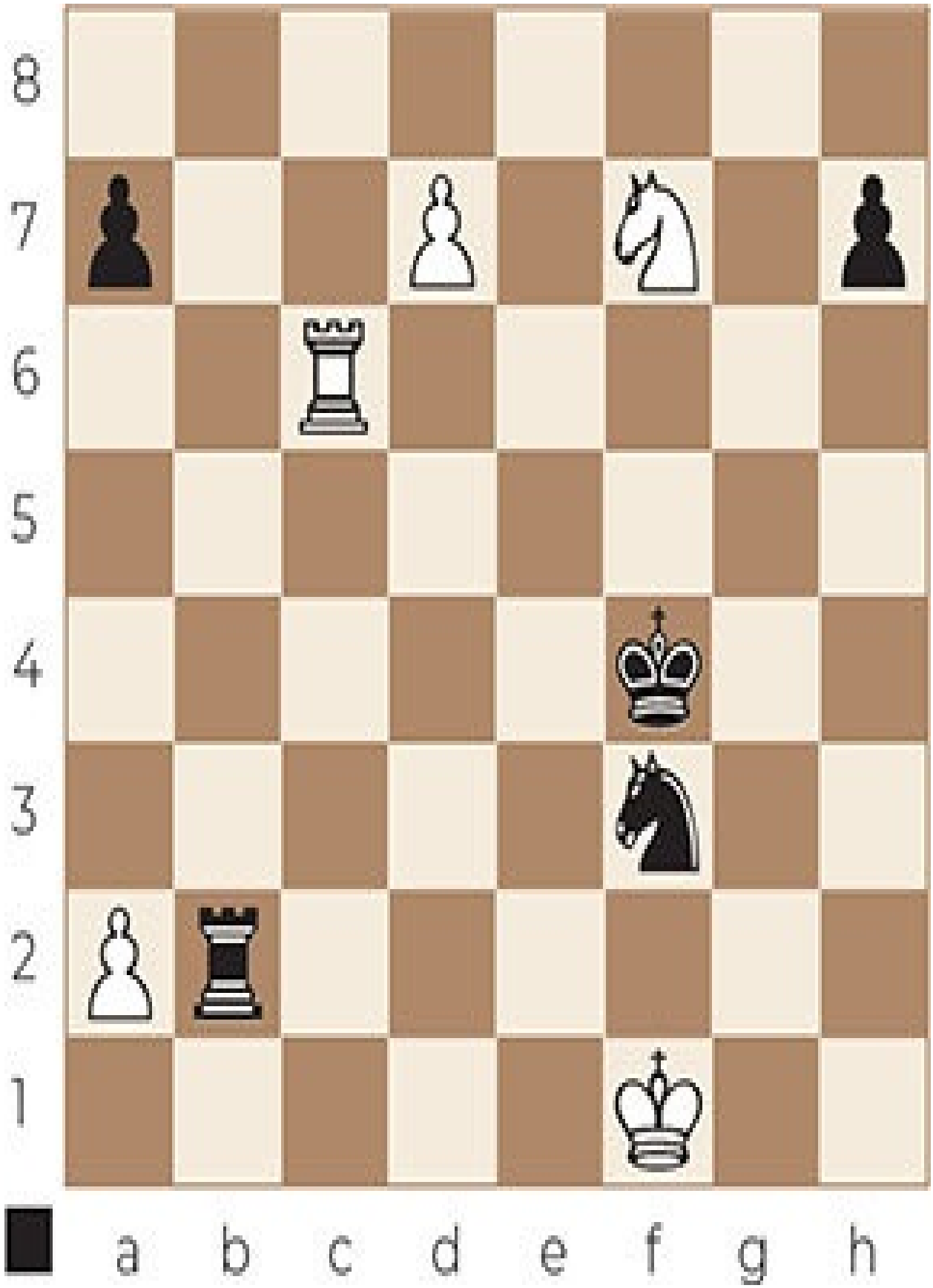
Exercise B 187


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 188

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 189


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 190

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 191

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

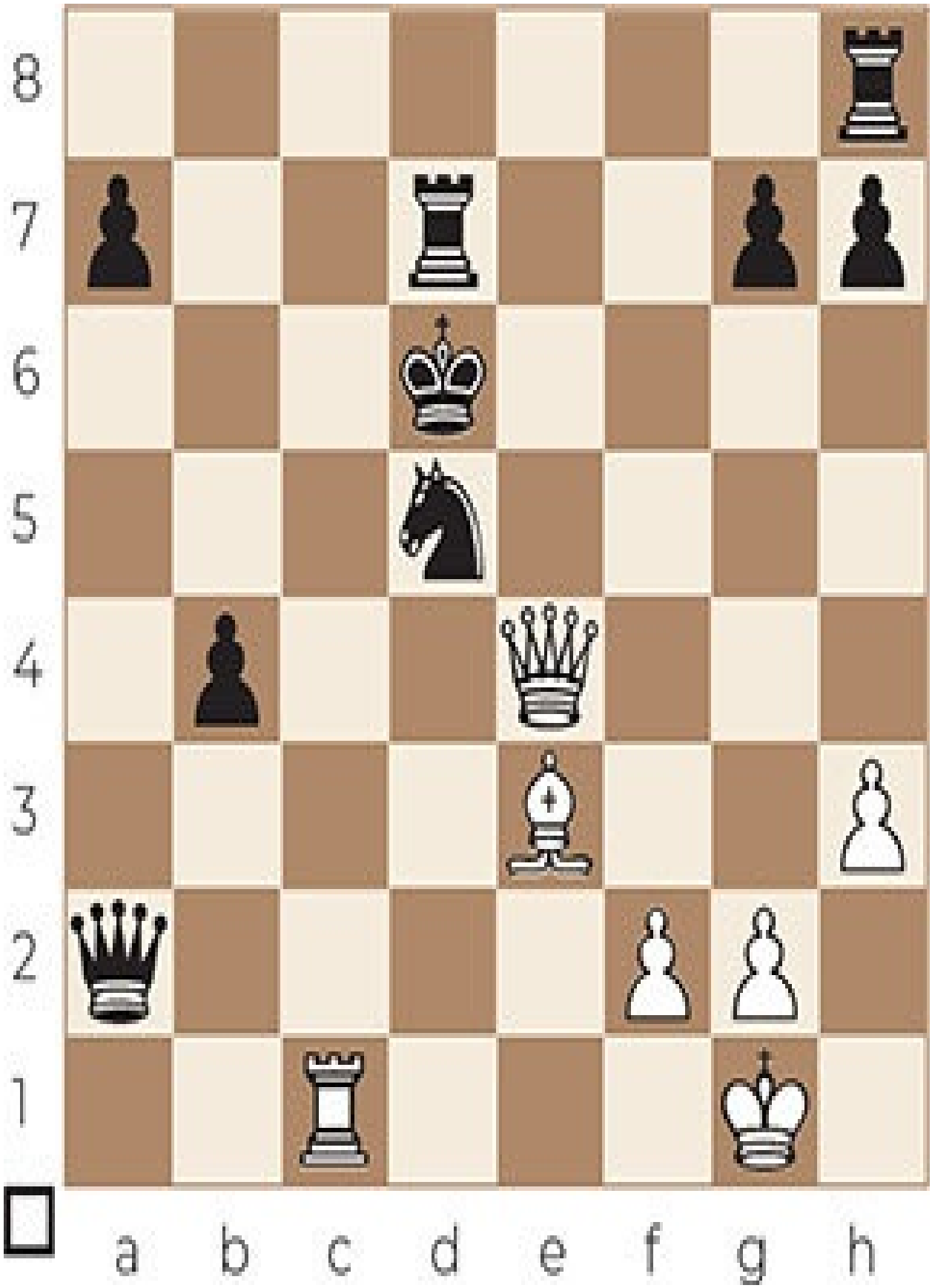
Exercise B 192

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

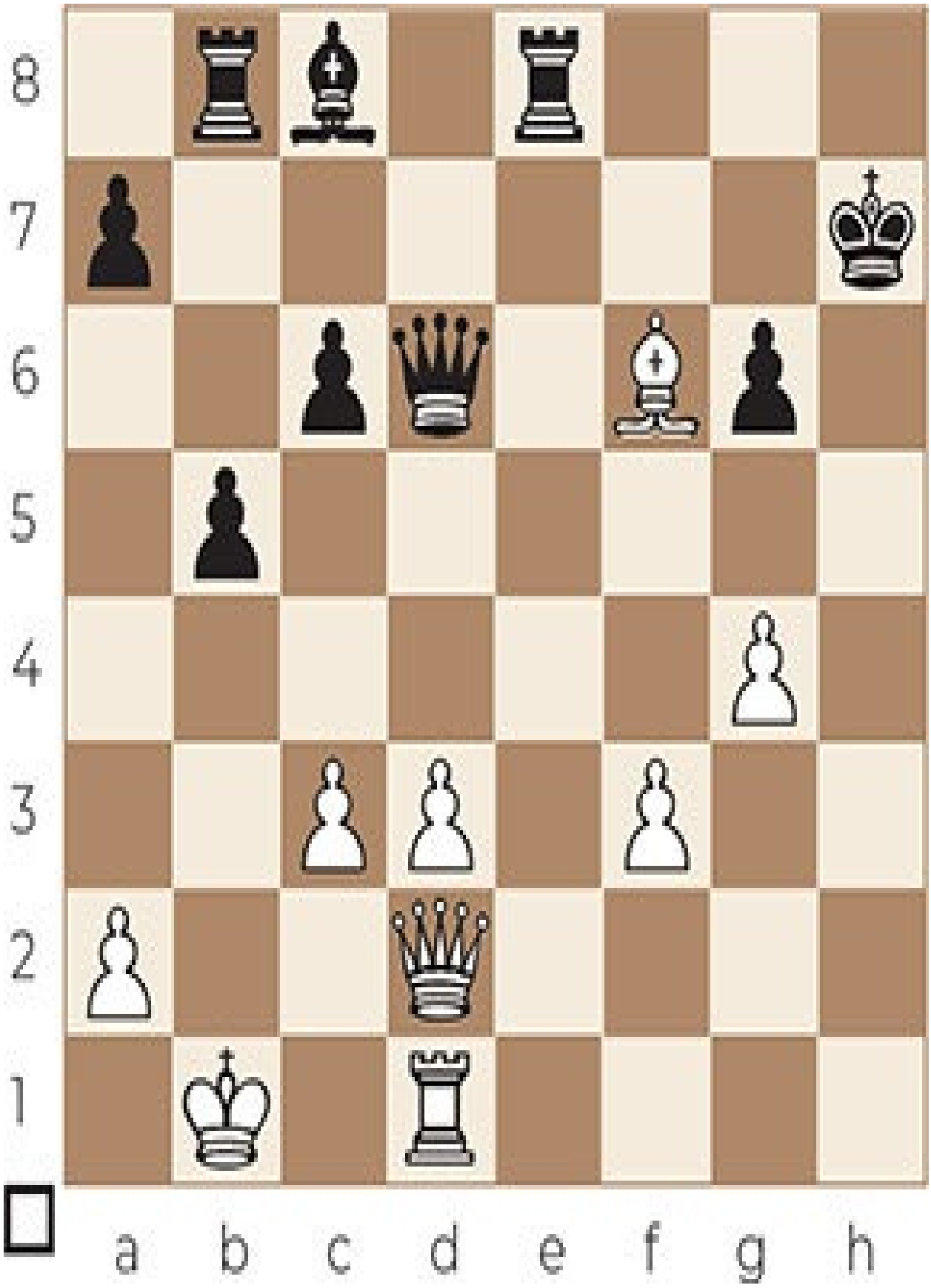
Exercise B 193

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 194


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

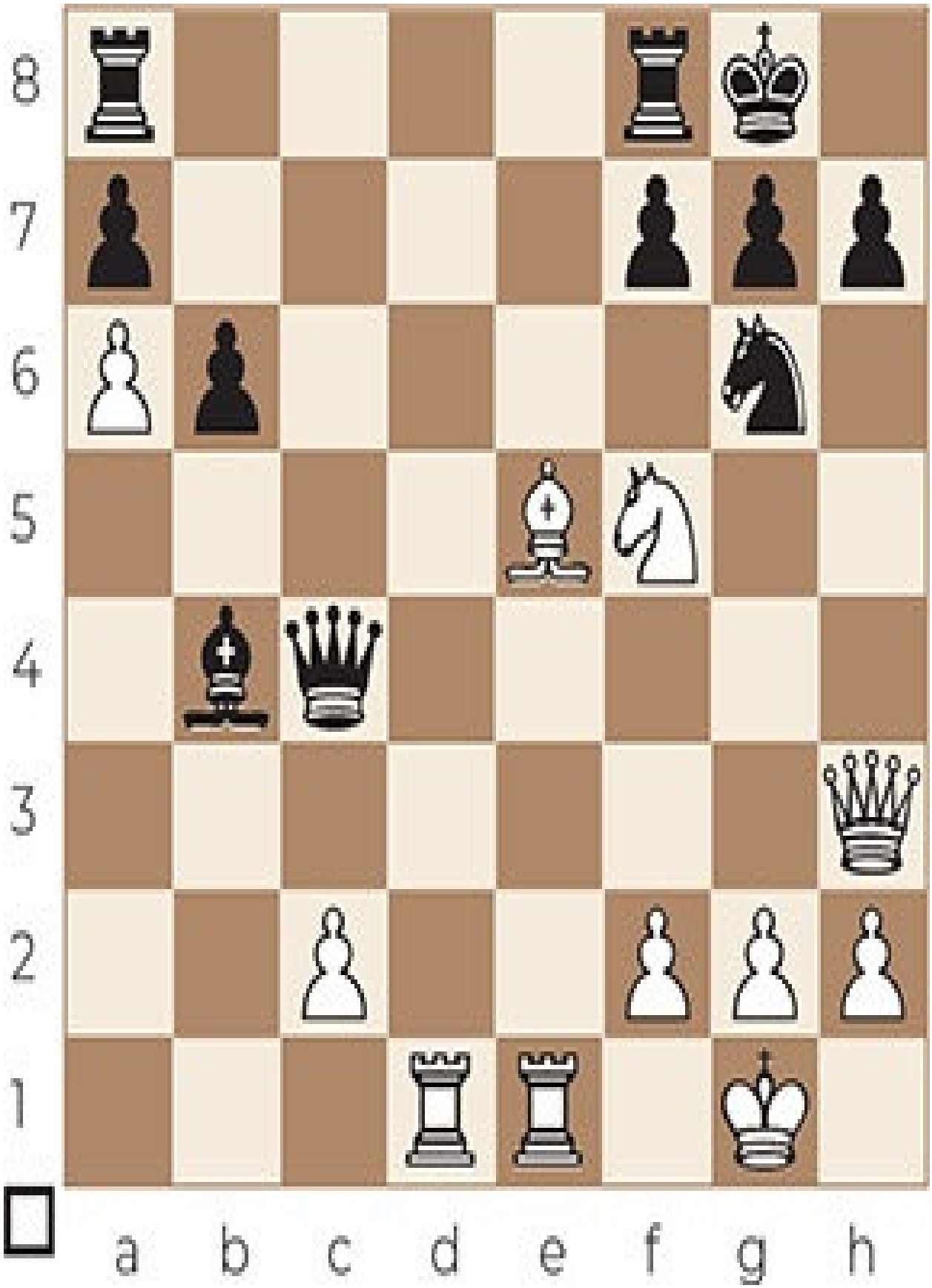
Exercise B 195


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 196

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 197


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 198

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 199

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

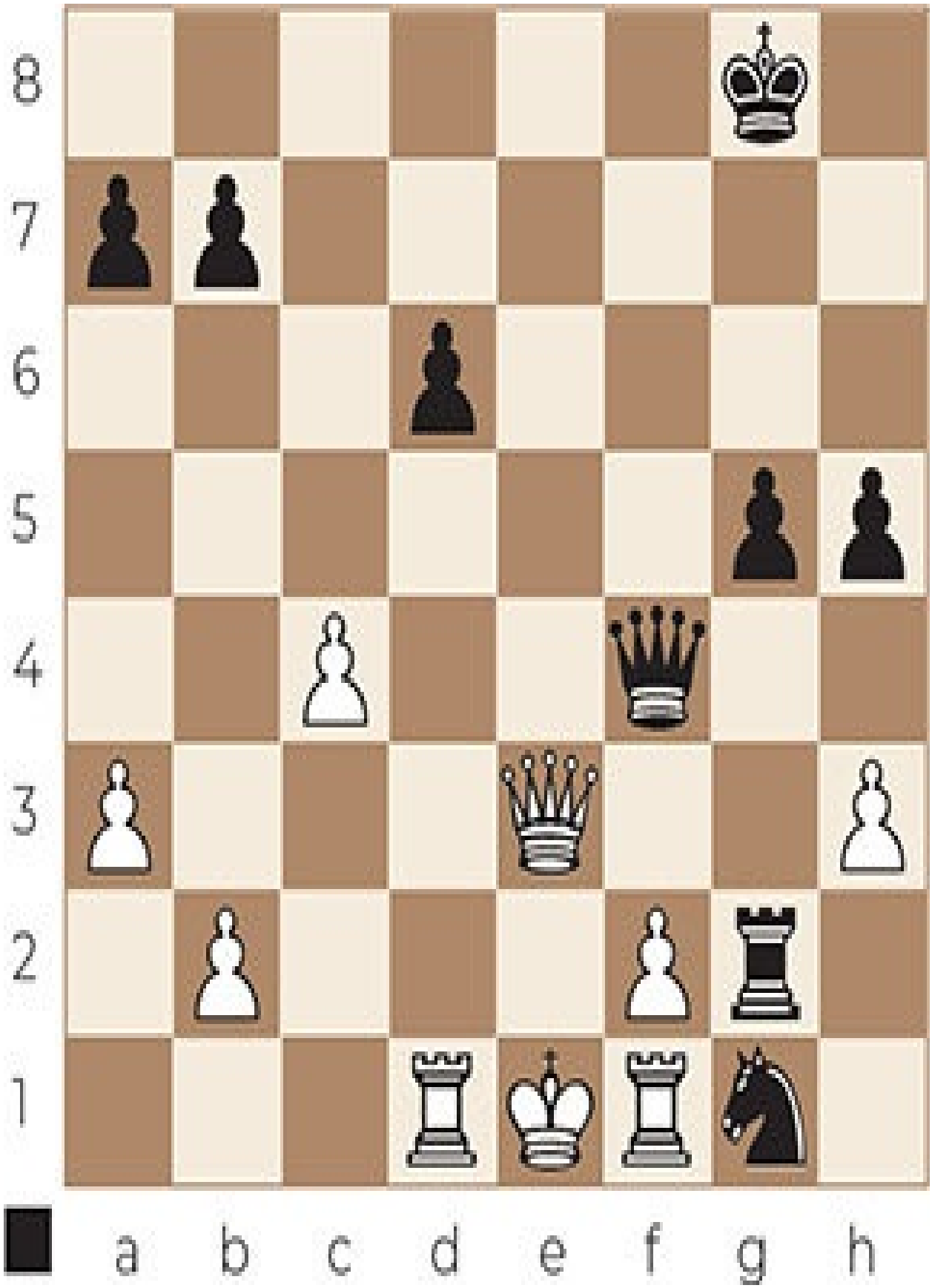
Exercise B 200

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 201

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 202


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 203

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

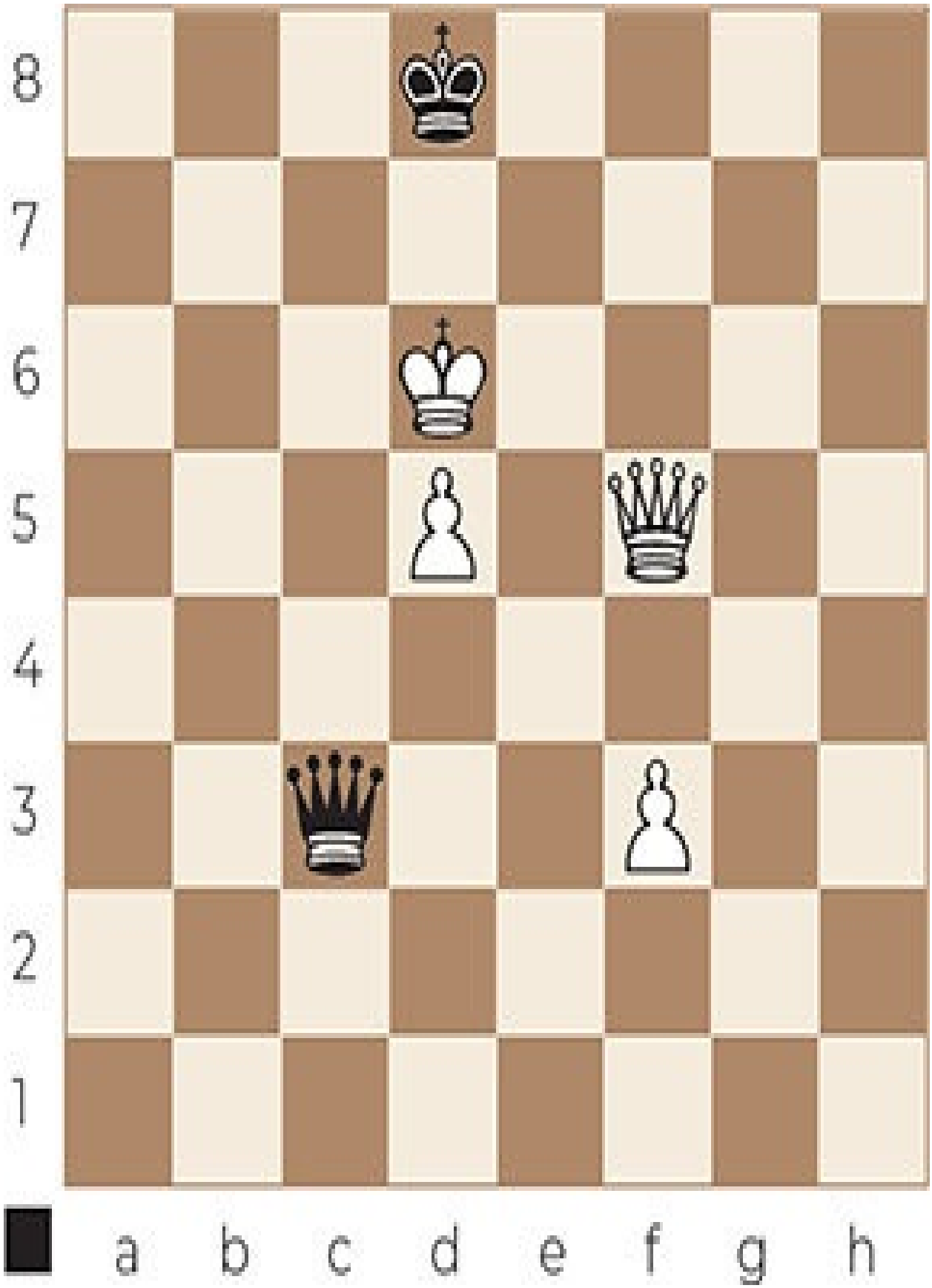
Exercise B 204

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 205

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

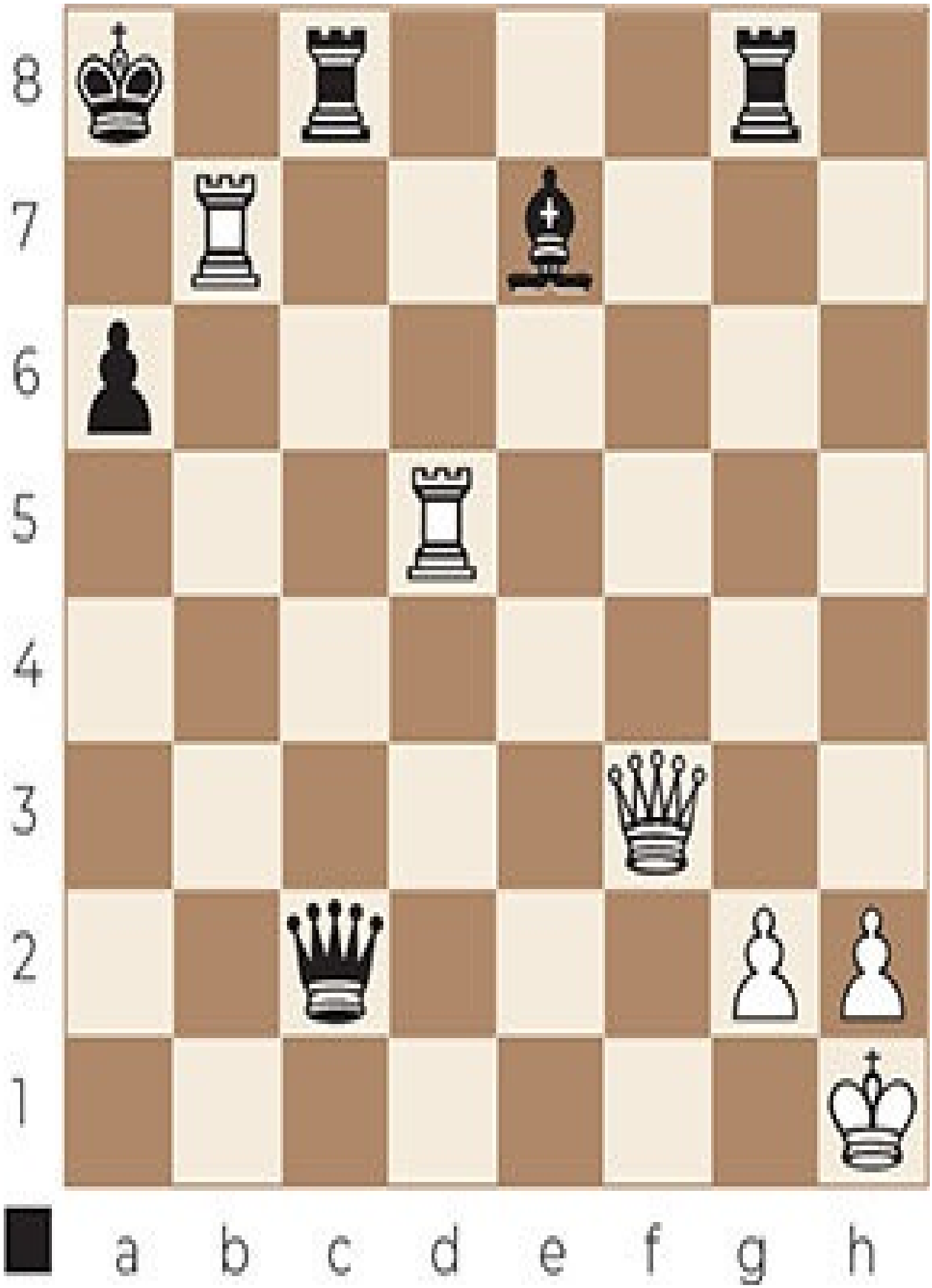
Exercise B 206


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

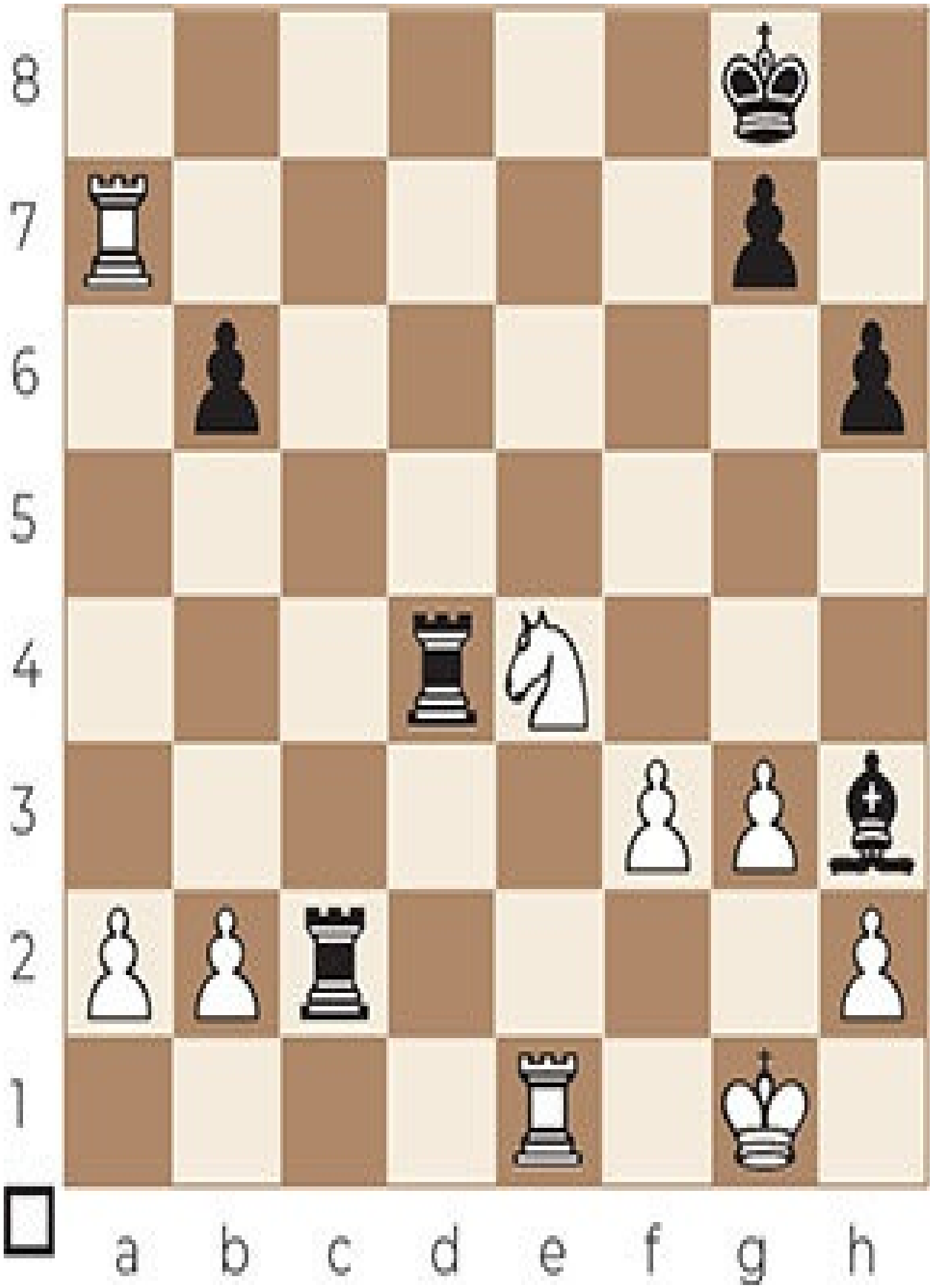
Exercise B 207

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

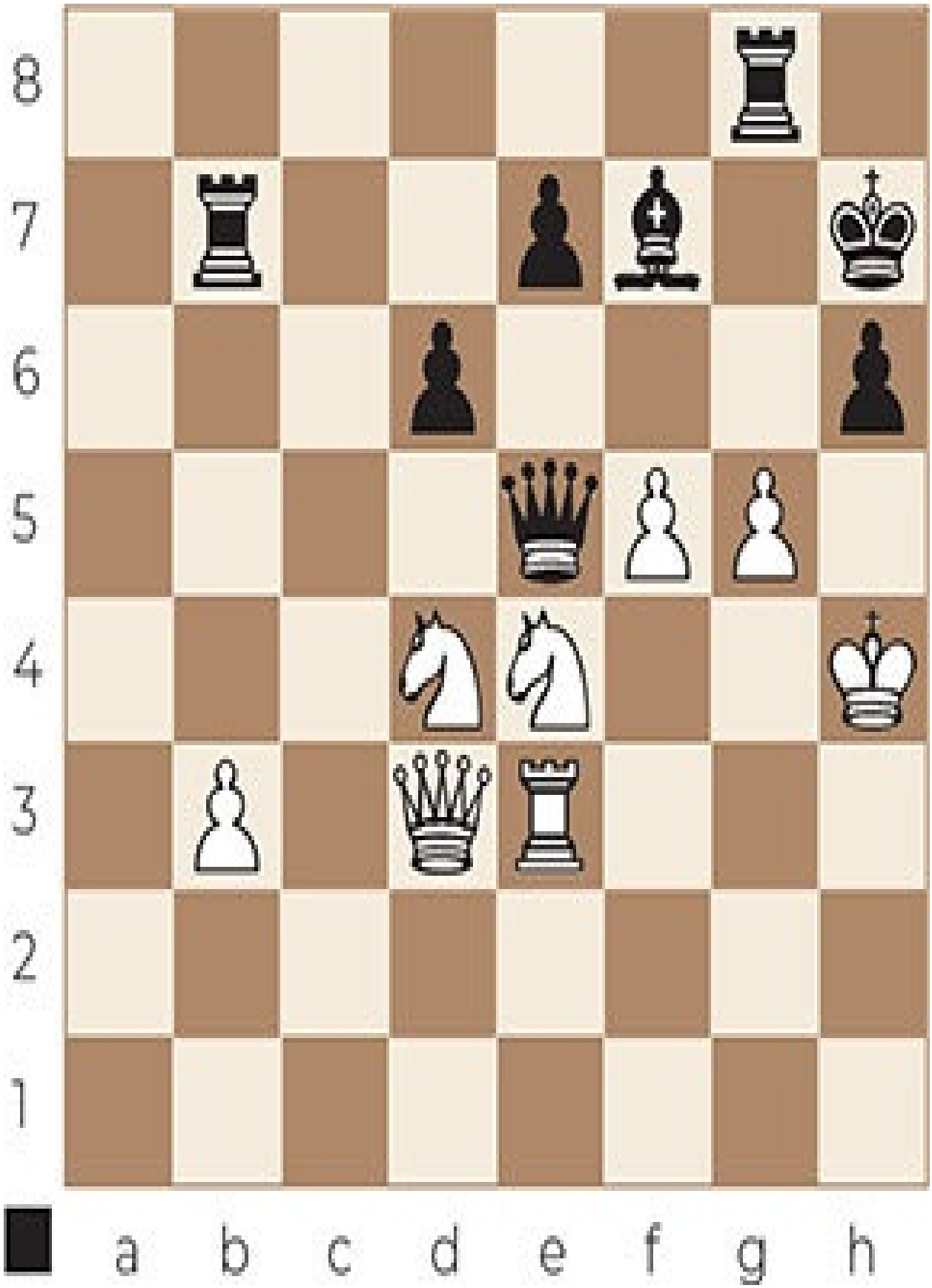
Exercise B 208


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

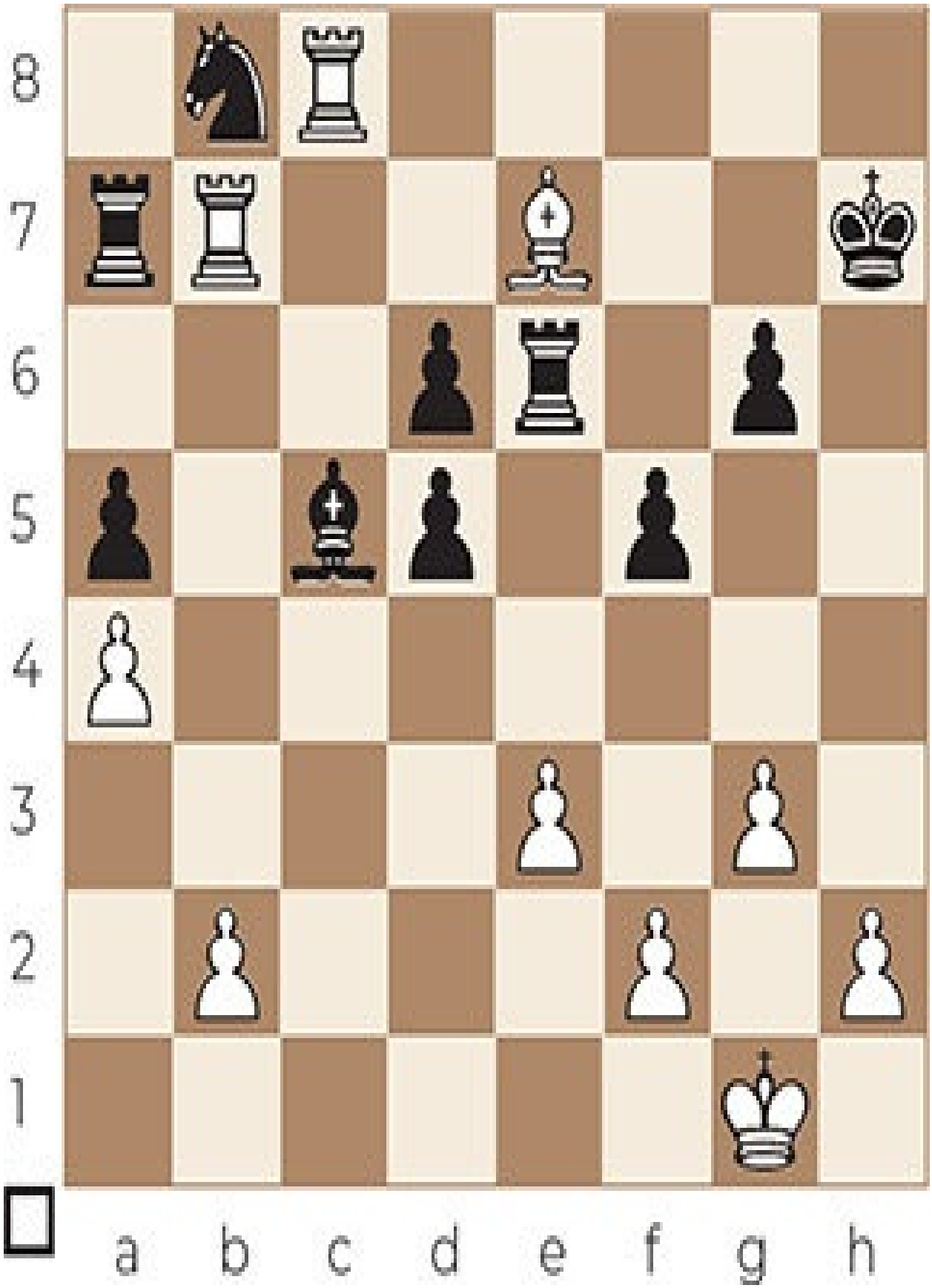
Exercise B 209


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 210


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise B 211


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

EXERCISES C

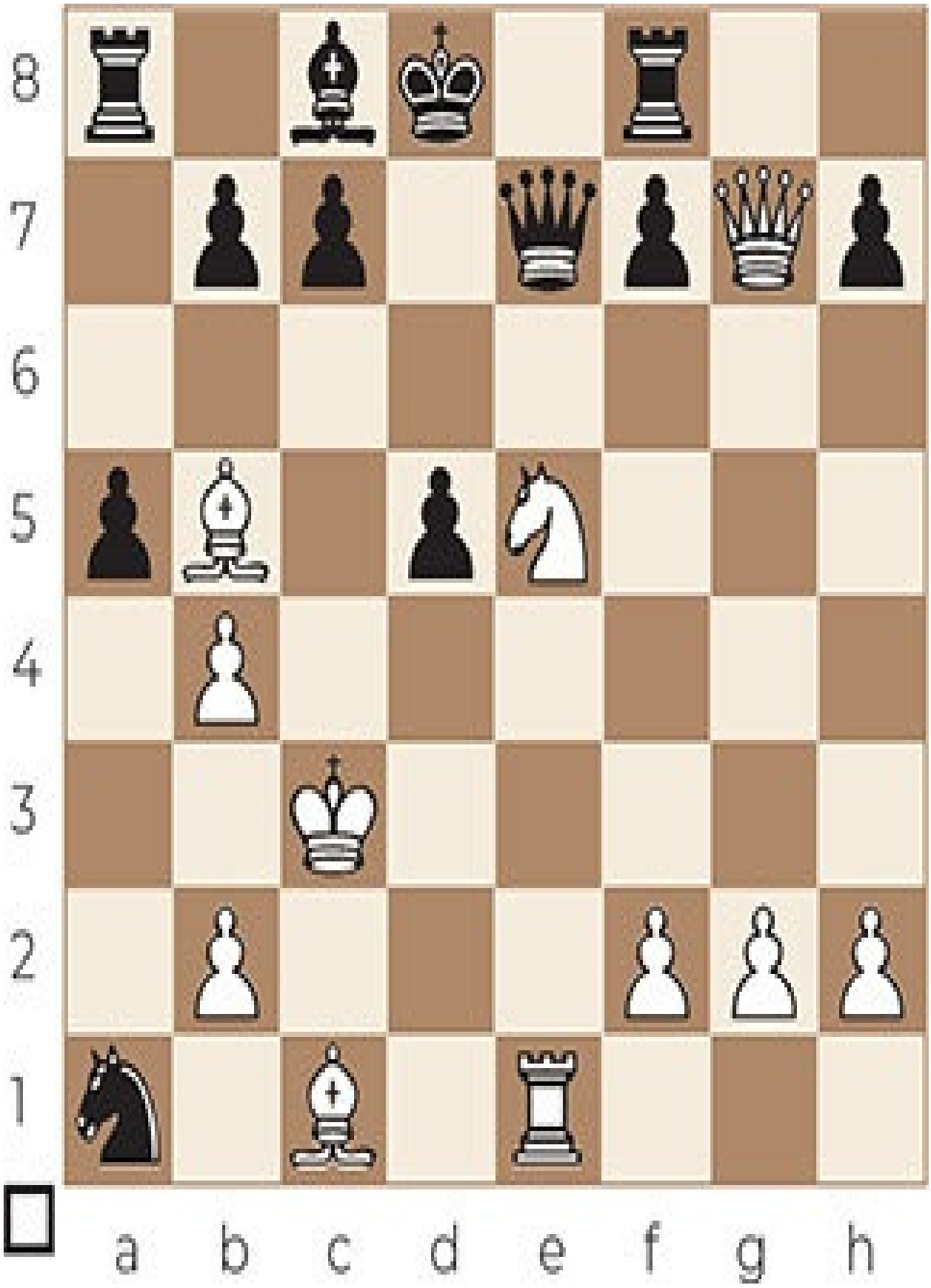
Advanced test

EXERCISES C

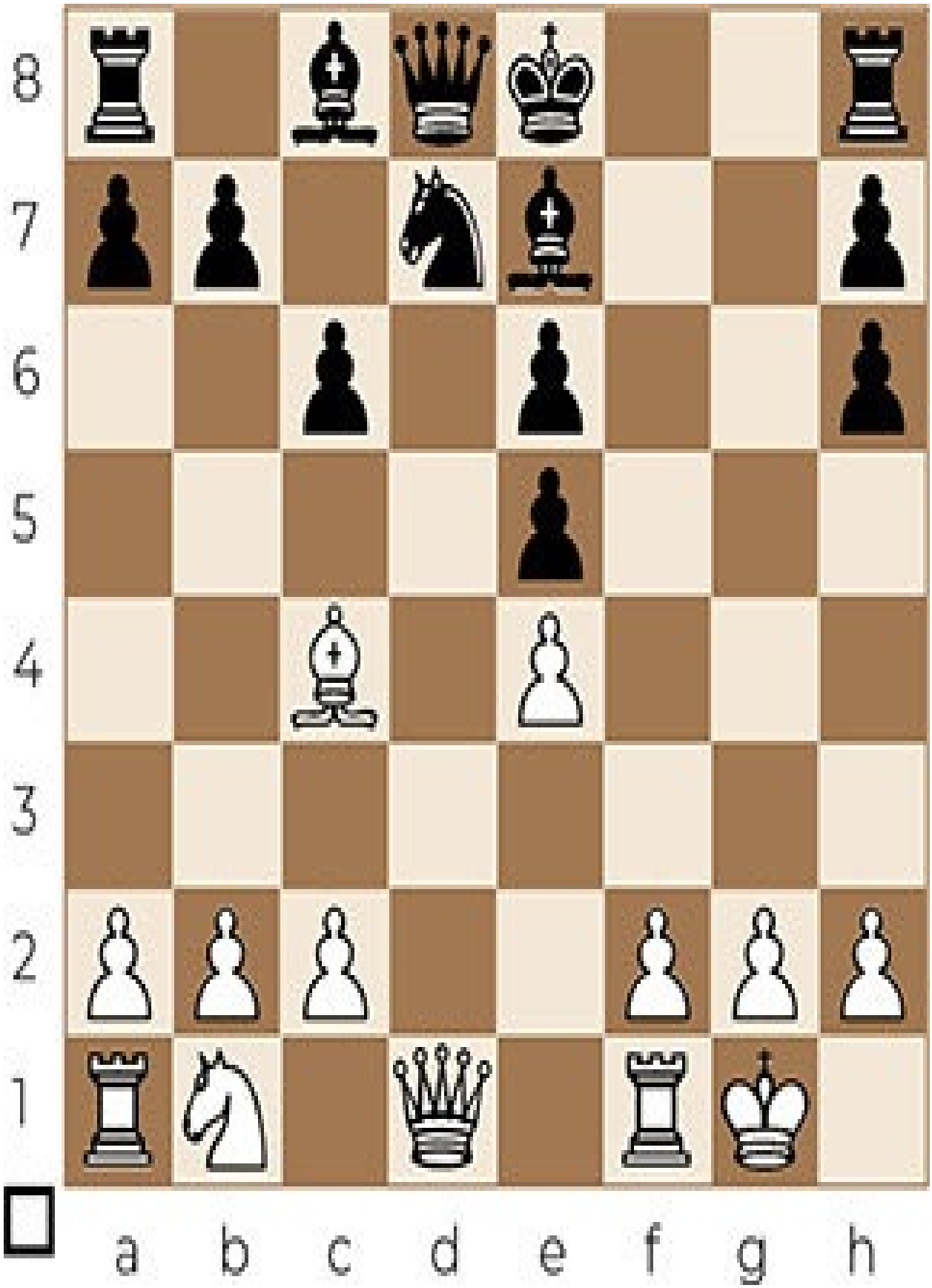
Advanced test

This advanced test (C) contains nearly 300 exercises, and takes all you have learned one step further. These exercises may be too hard for beginners and casual players, they can be challenging for intermediate players but also interesting for advanced players. More than 75% of these exercises are mate-in-3, mate-in-4 or mate-in-5.

Exercise C 1


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 2


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 3

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 4

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 5

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

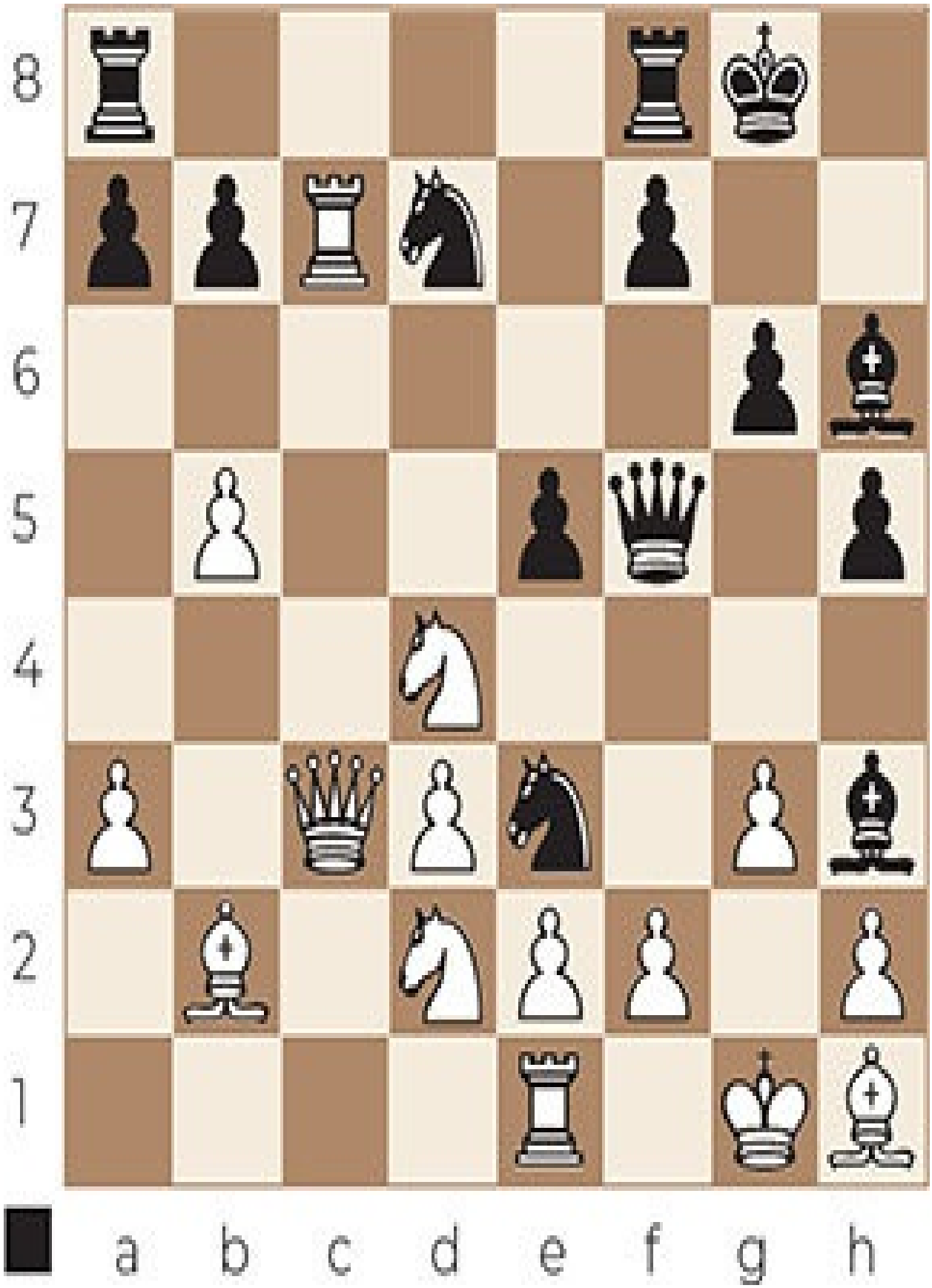
Exercise C 6

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 7

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

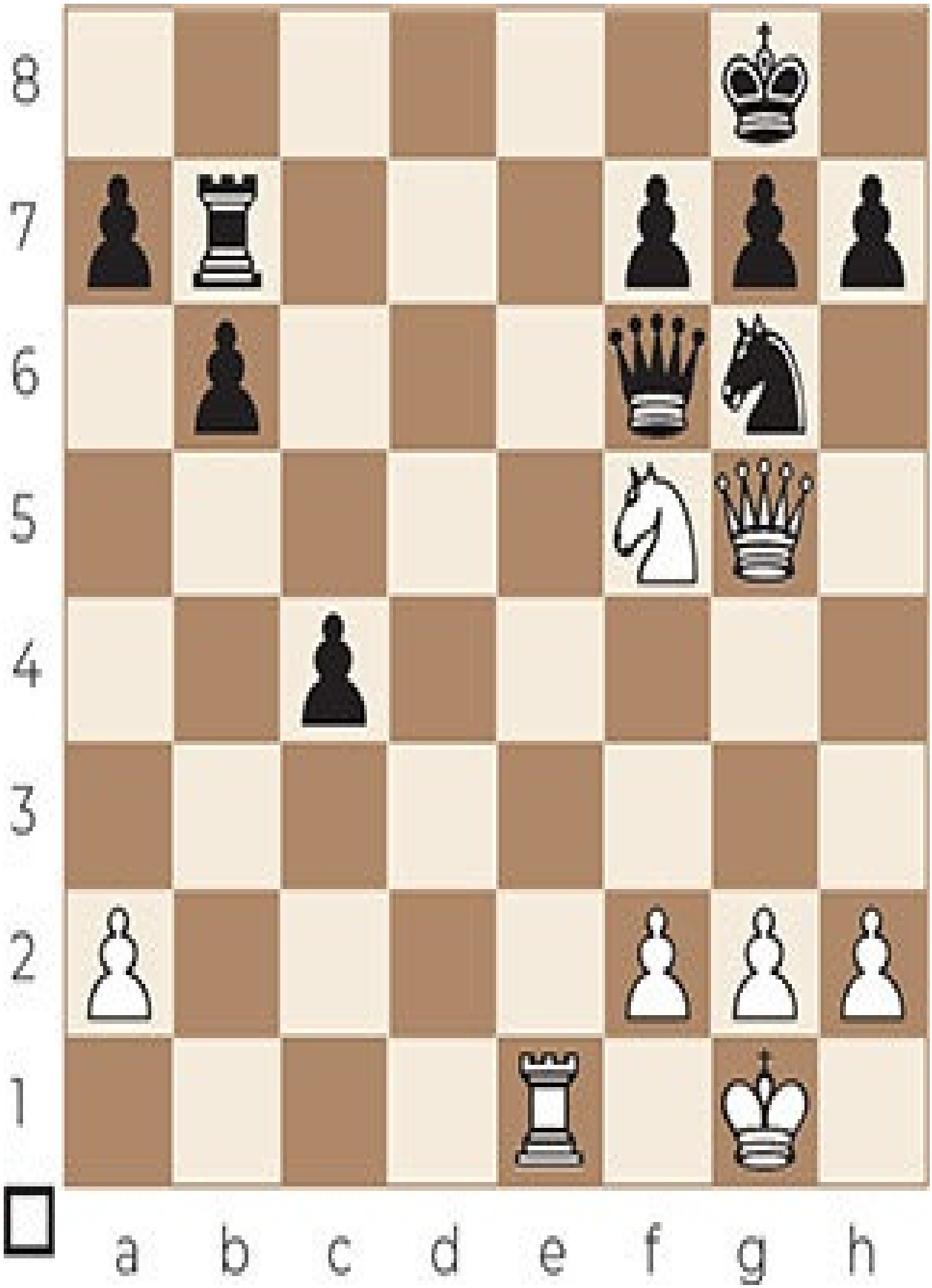
Exercise C 8


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 9

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

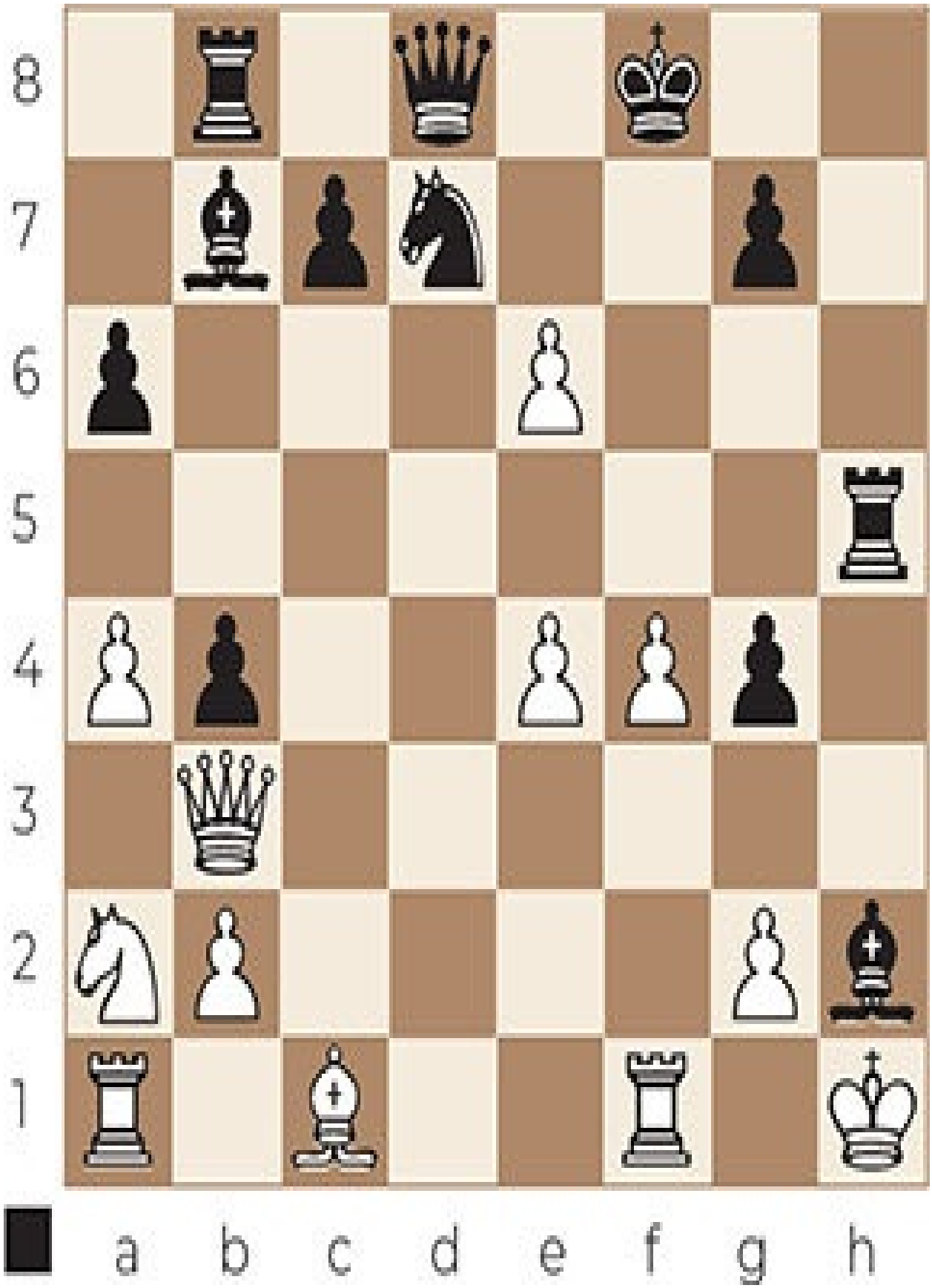
Exercise C 10


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 11

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 12


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 13

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 14

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 15

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

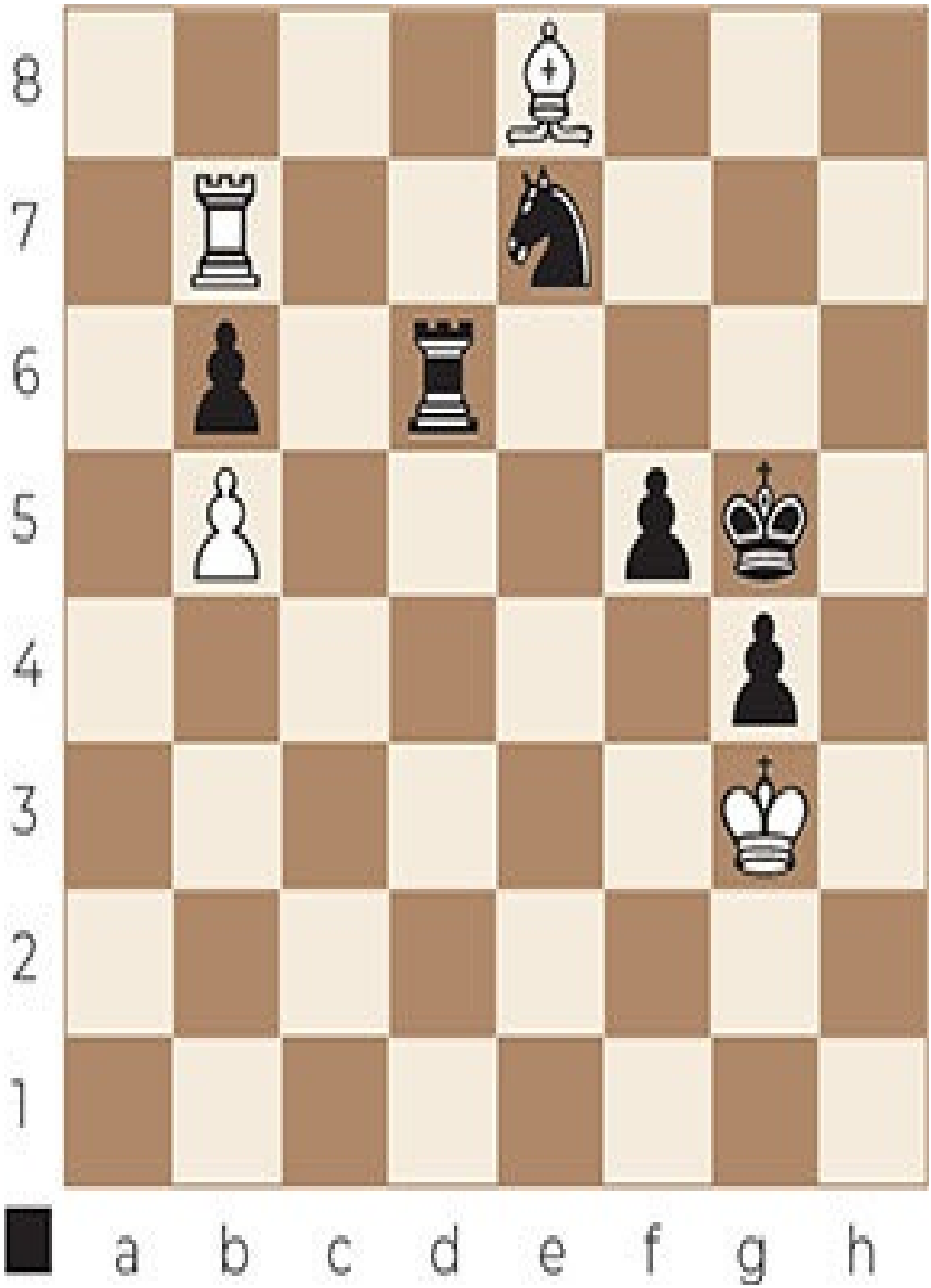
Exercise C 16

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 17

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 18


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 19

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 20

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 21

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

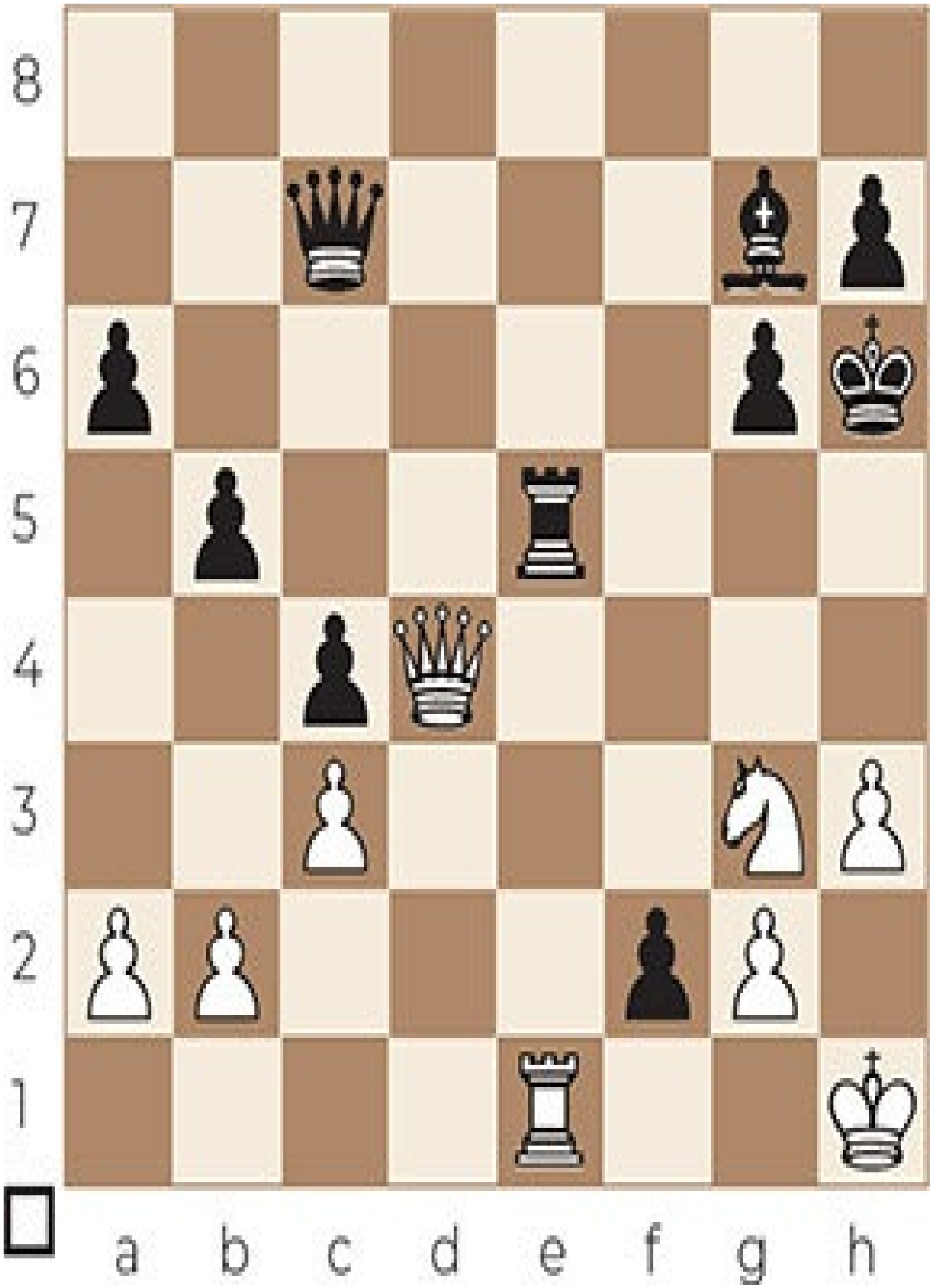
Exercise C 22

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 23

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 24


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 25

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 26

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

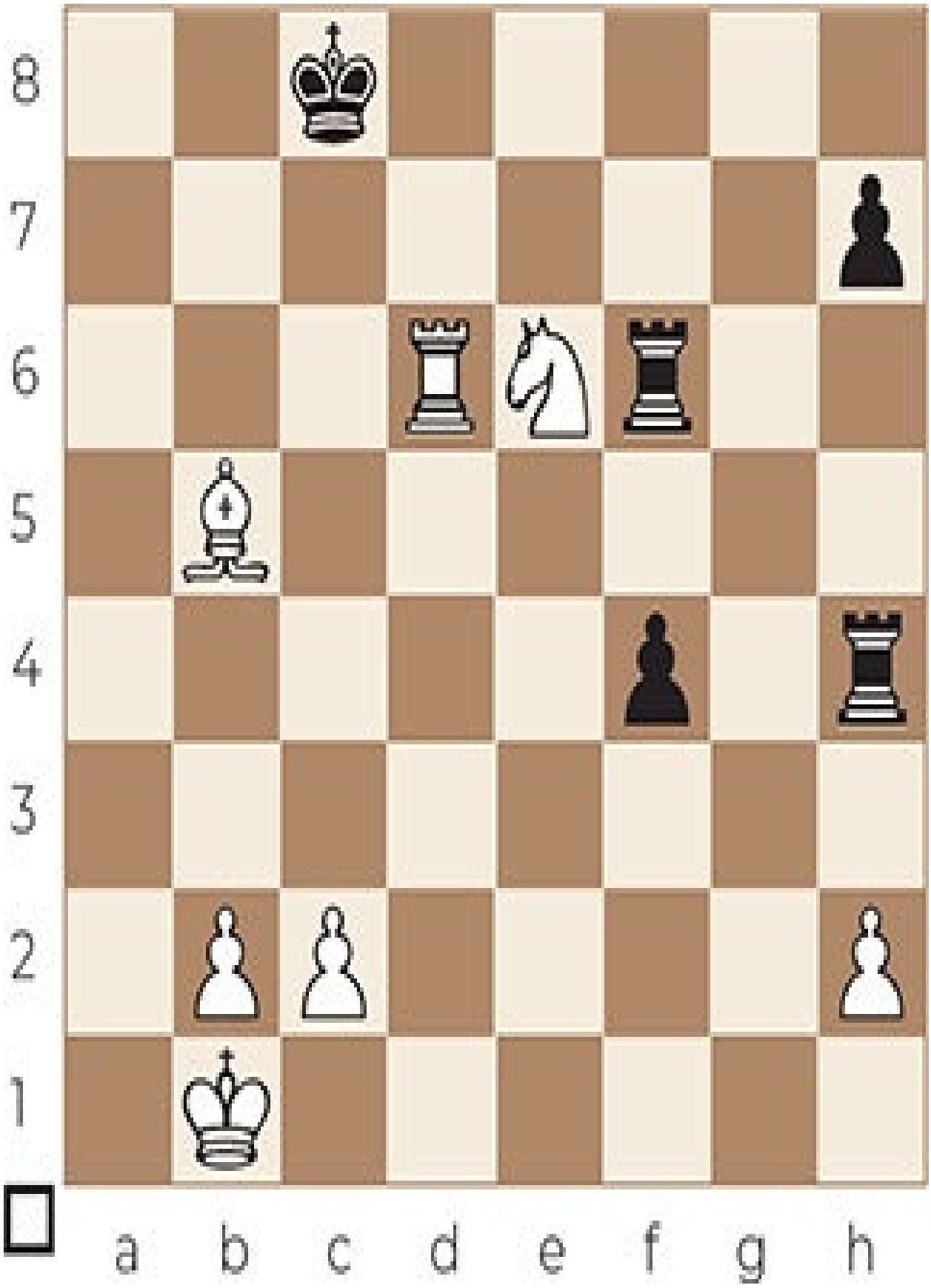
Exercise C 27

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

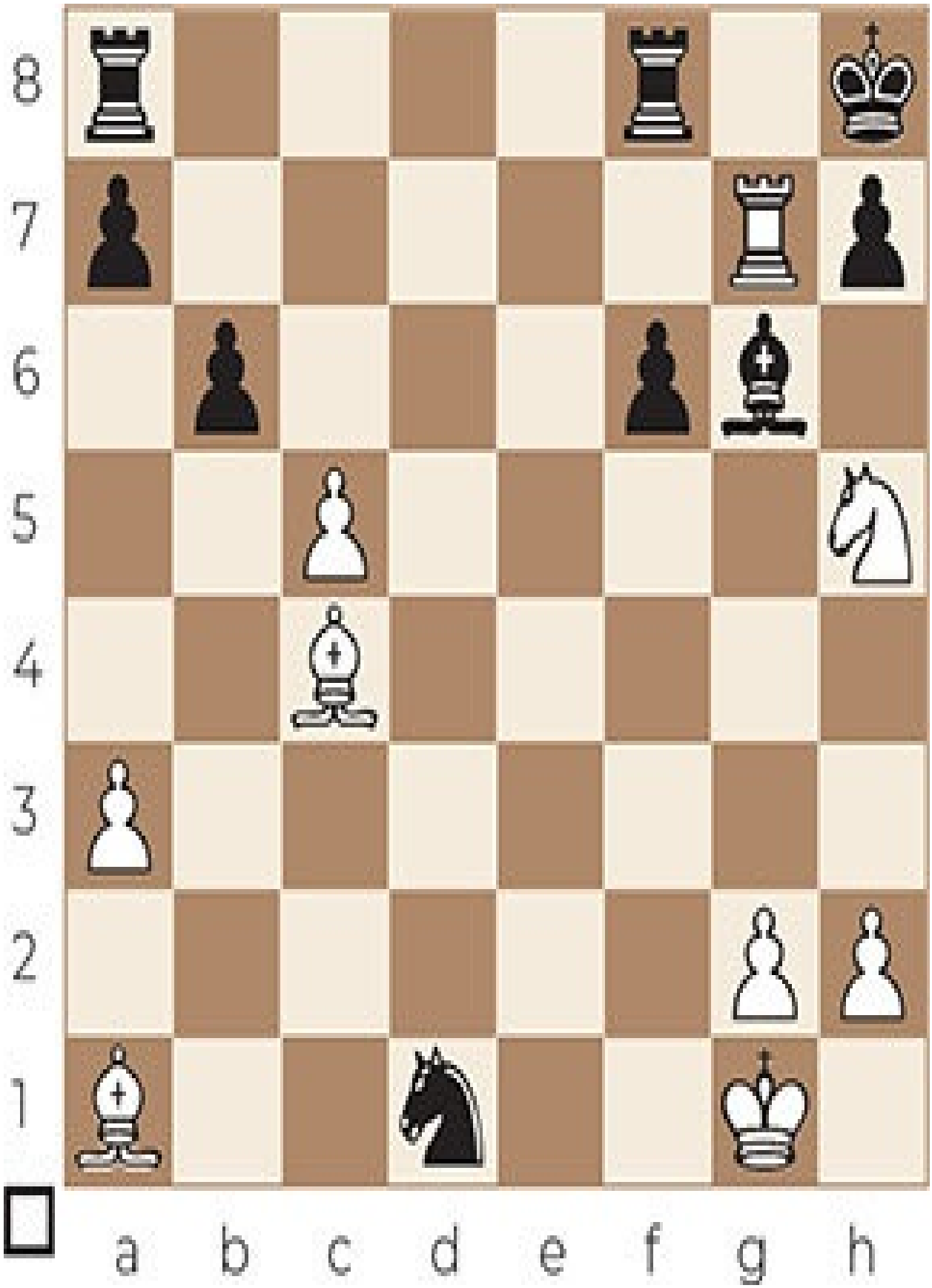
Exercise C 28

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 29


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

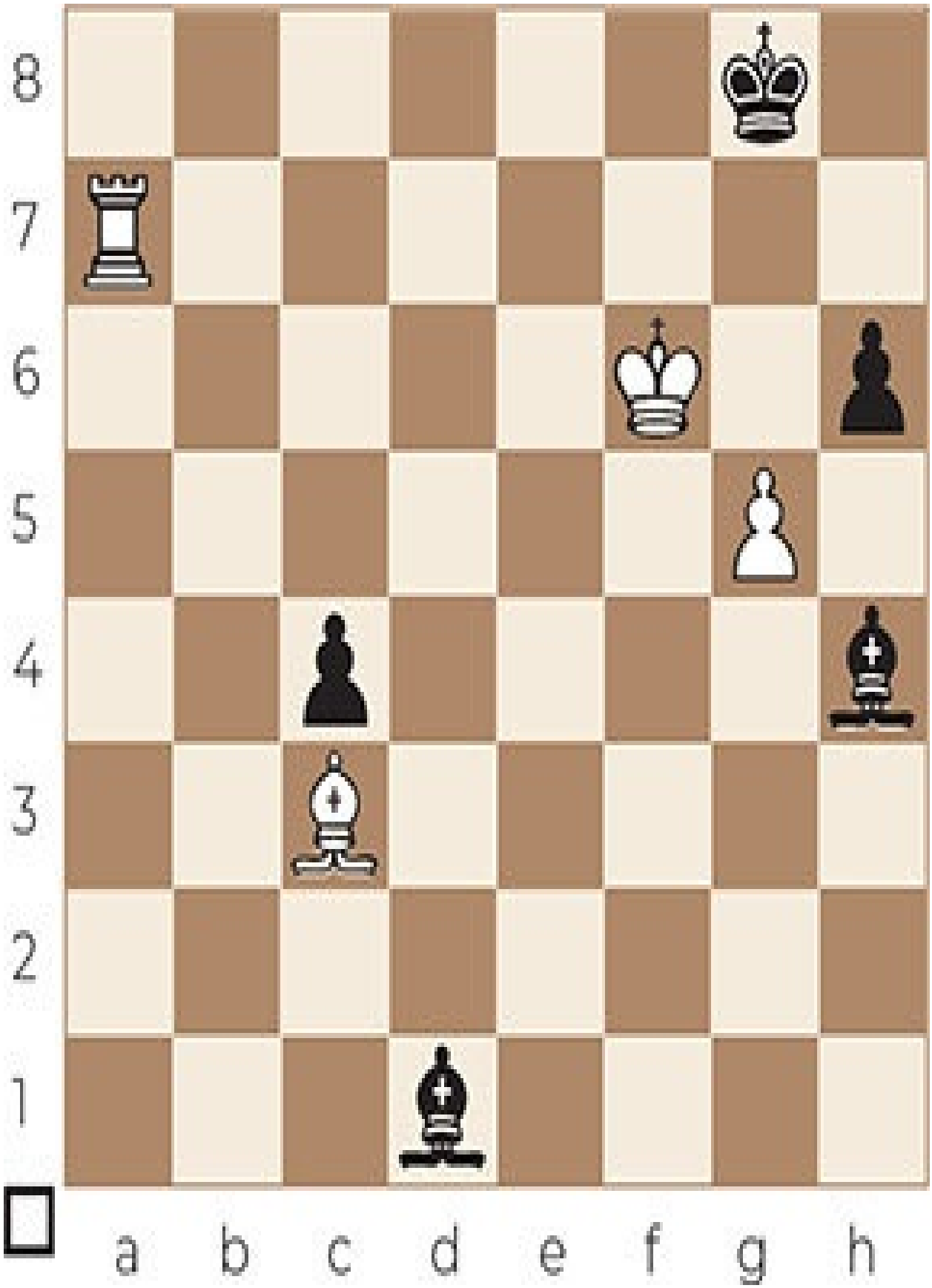
Exercise C 30


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 31

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 32


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 33

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

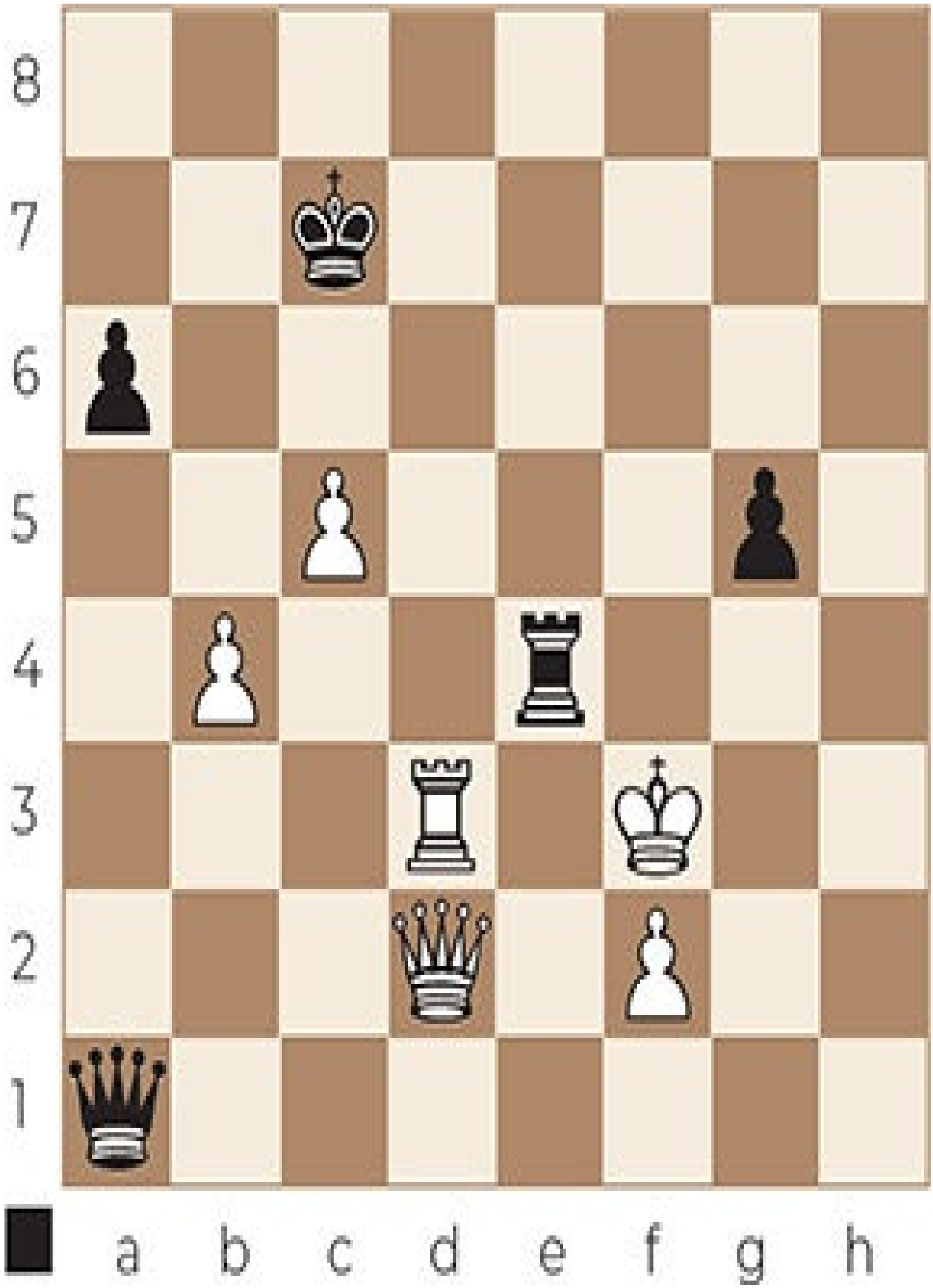
Exercise C 34

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 35

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

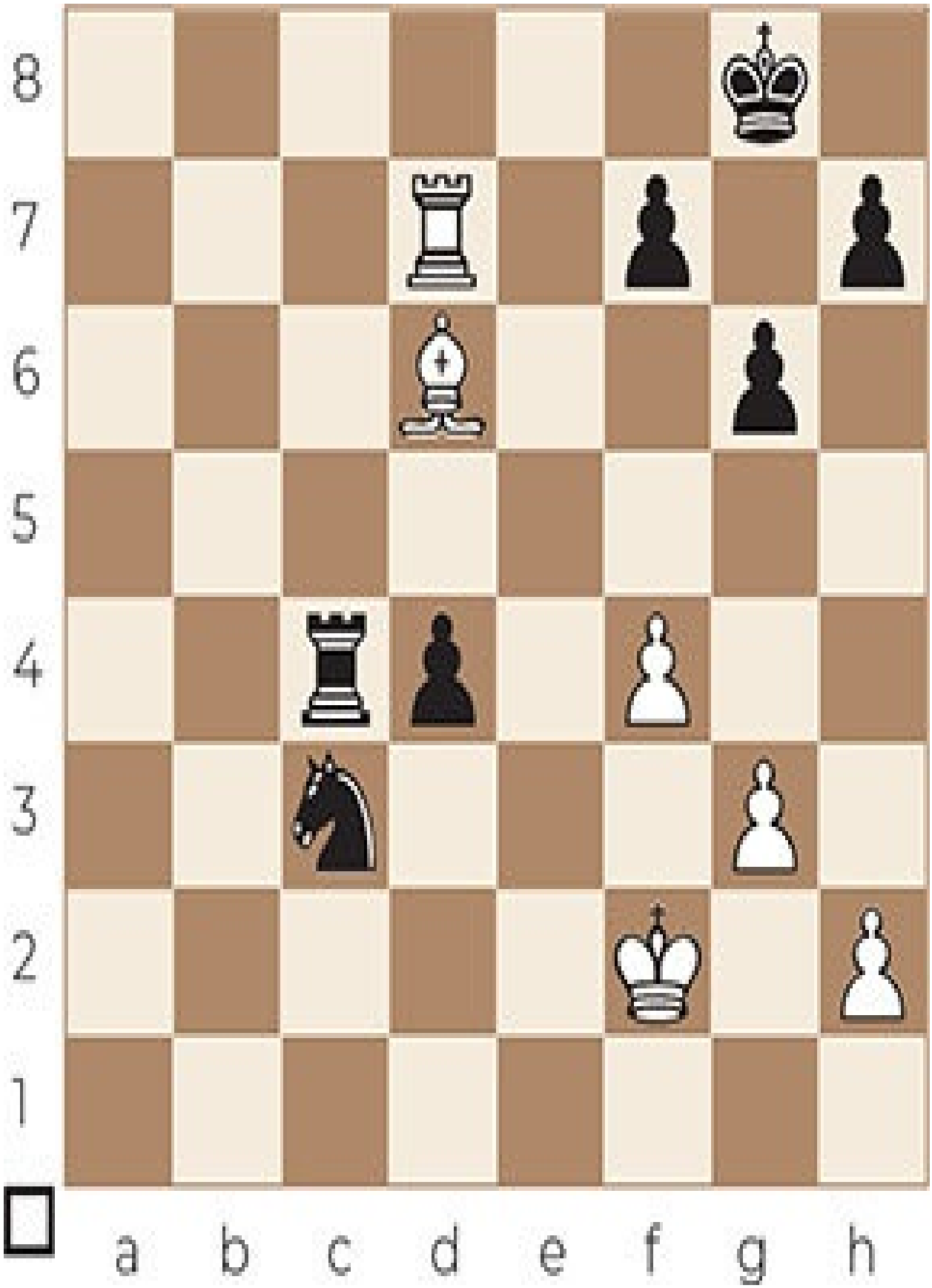
Exercise C 36


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

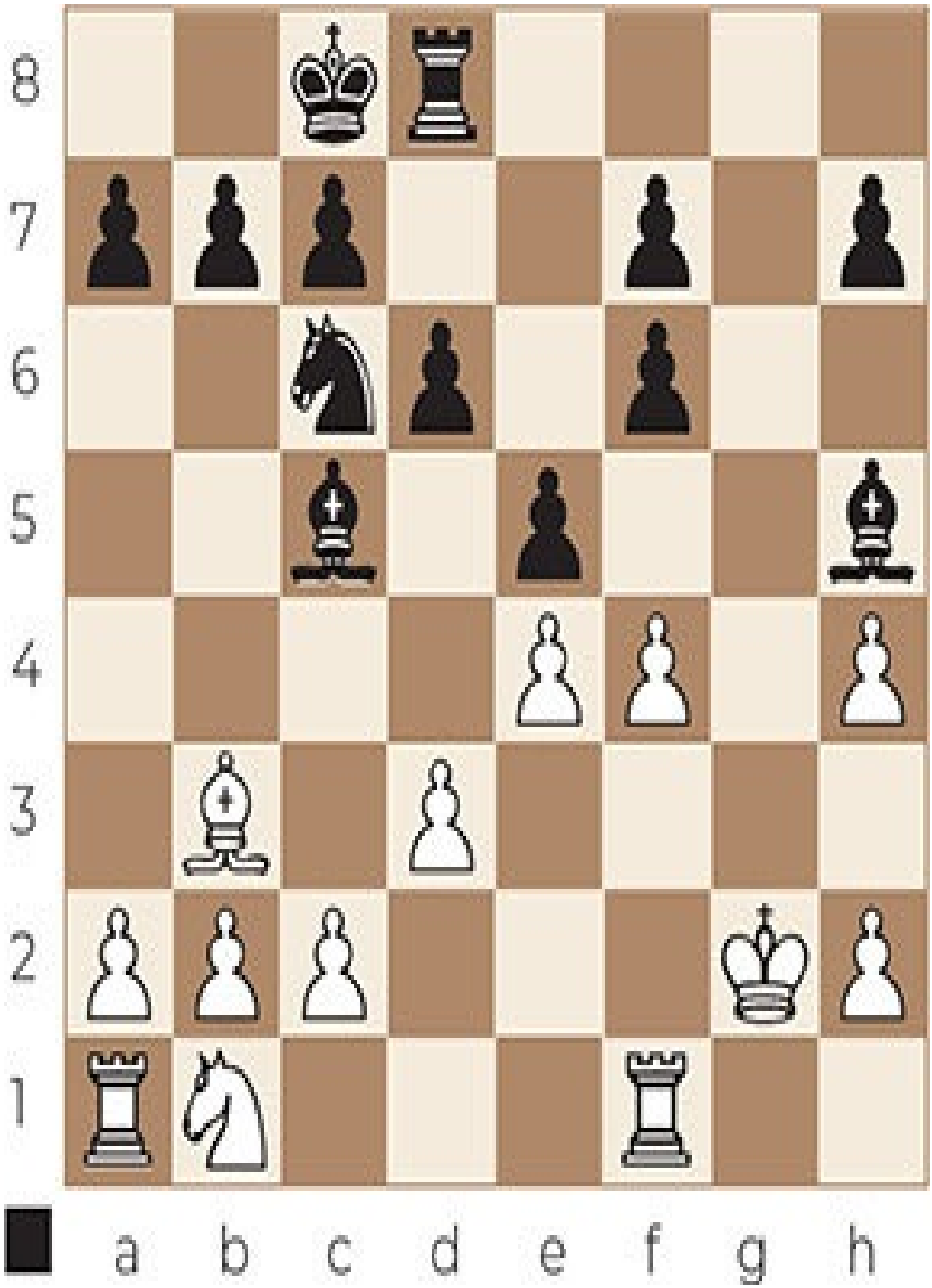
Exercise C 37

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

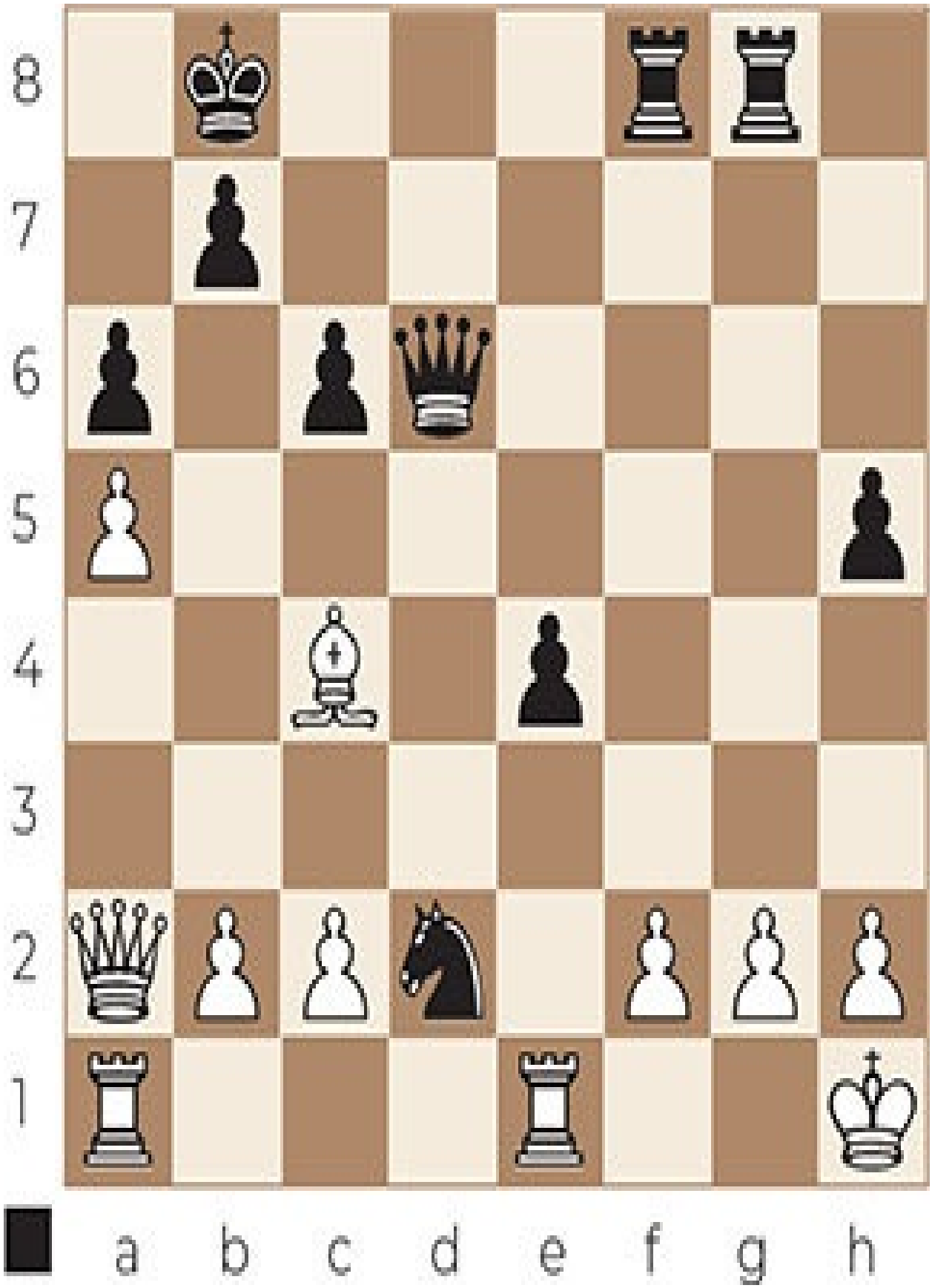
Exercise C 38


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

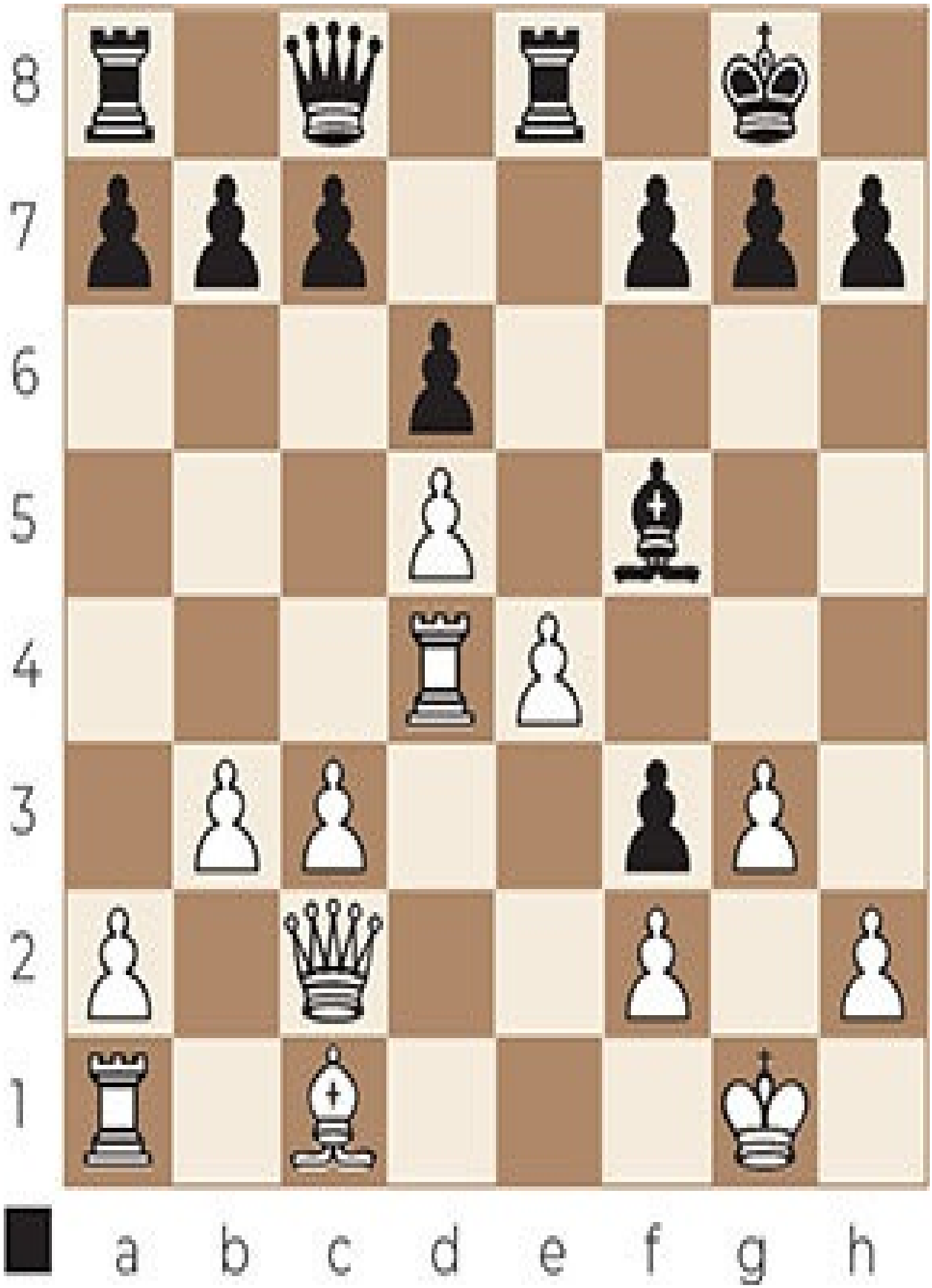
Exercise C 39


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

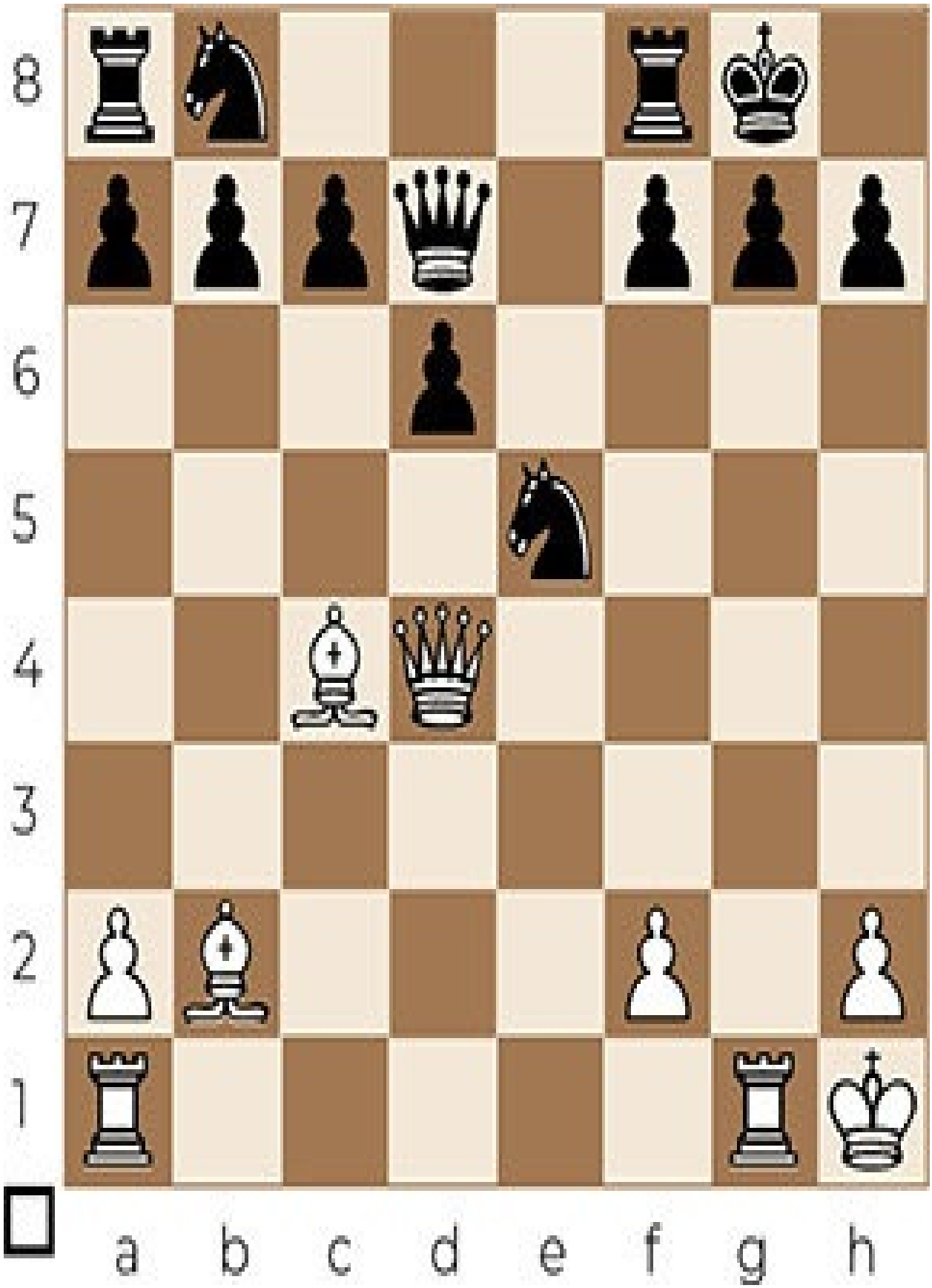
Exercise C 40


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

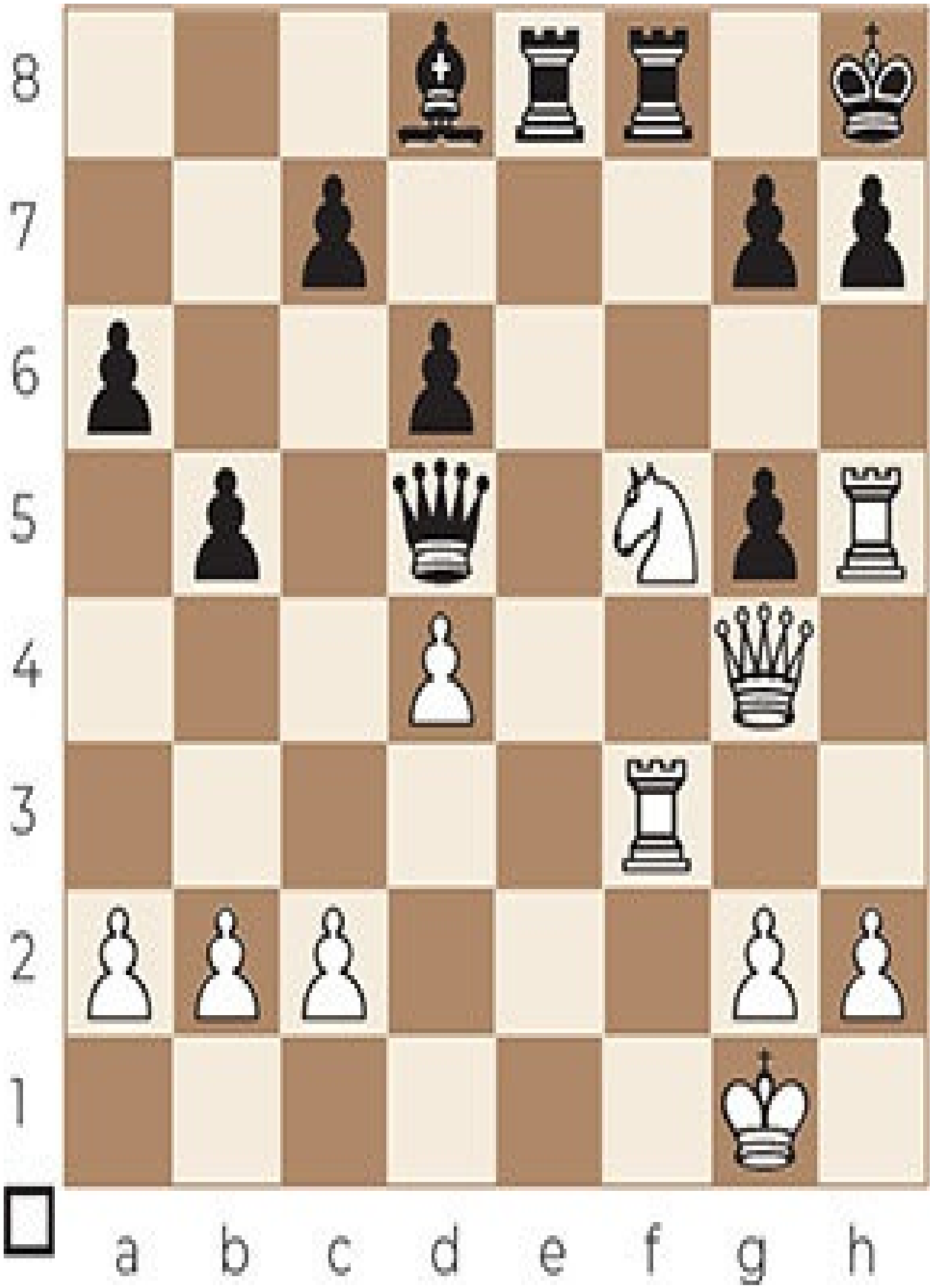
Exercise C 41


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

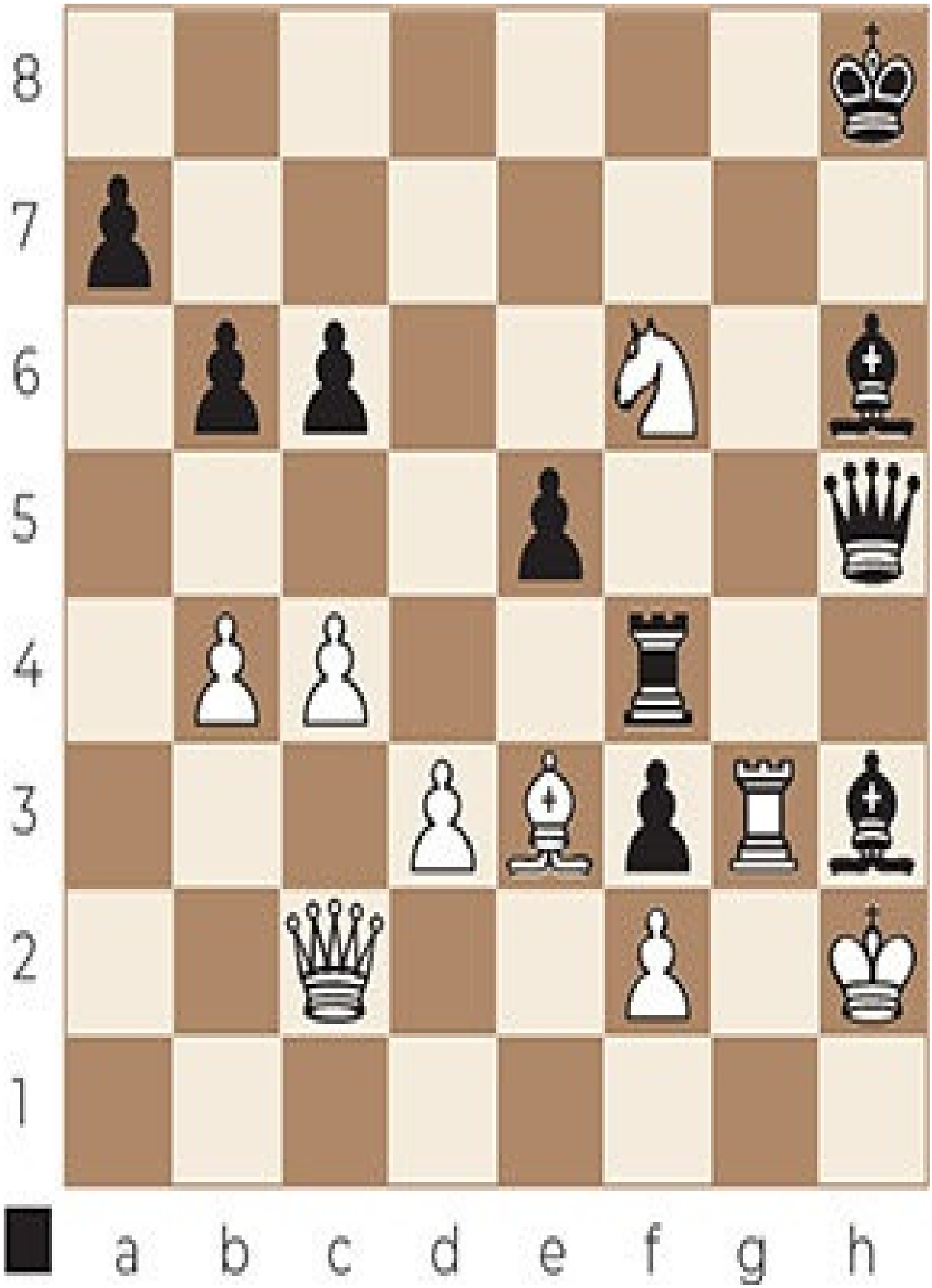
Exercise C 42


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 43


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 44


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

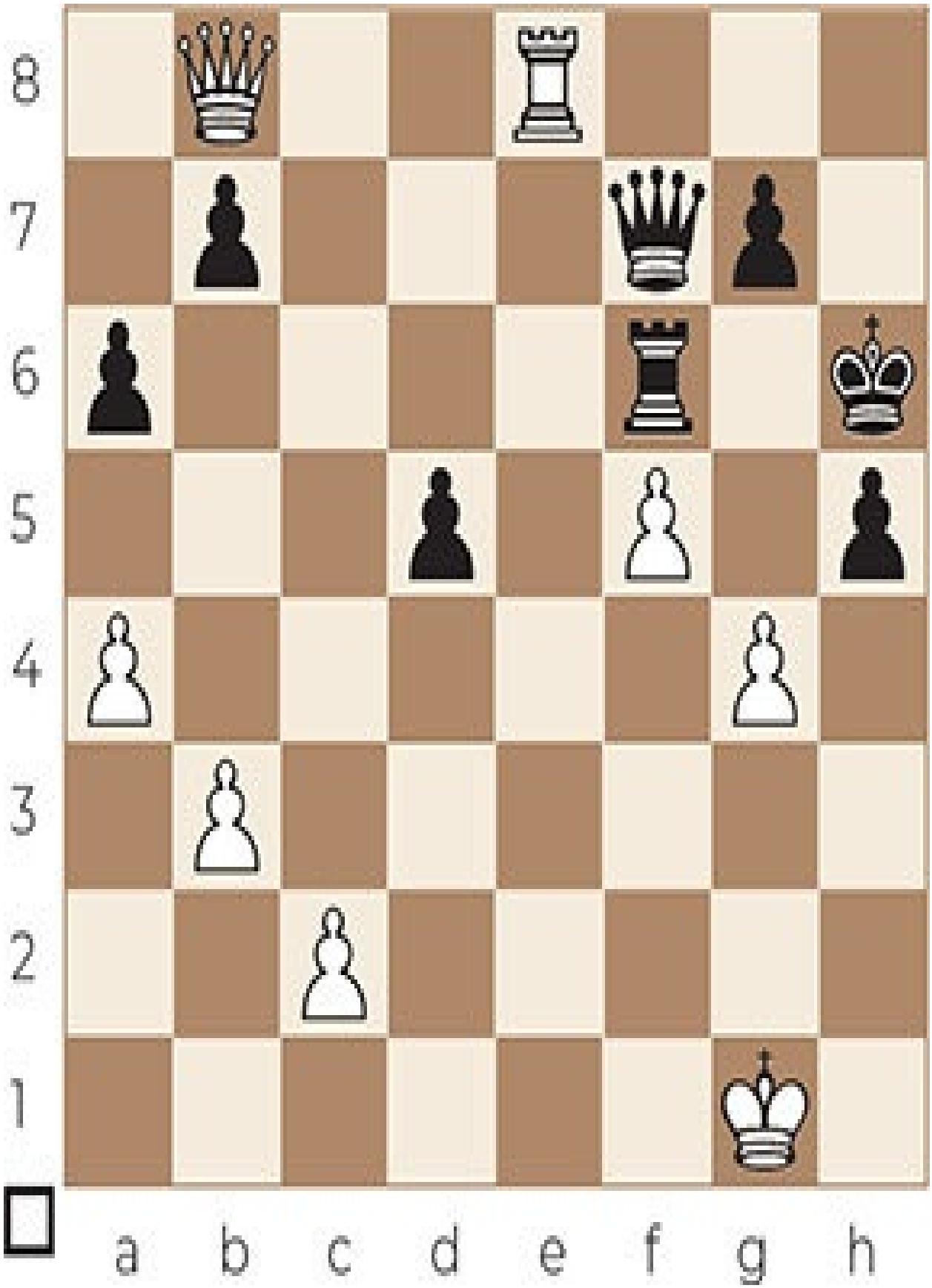
Exercise C 45

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 46

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

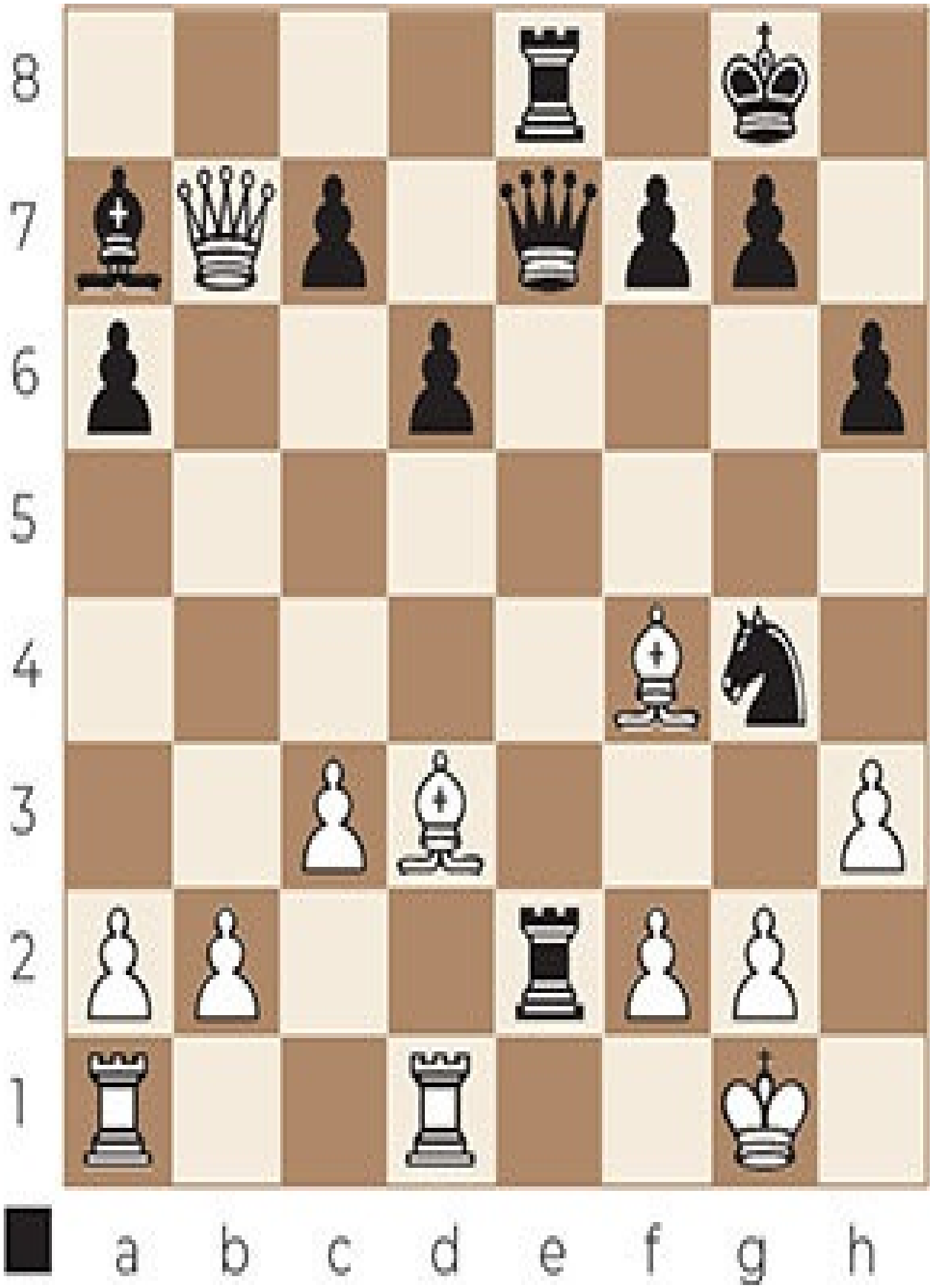
Exercise C 47


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 48

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

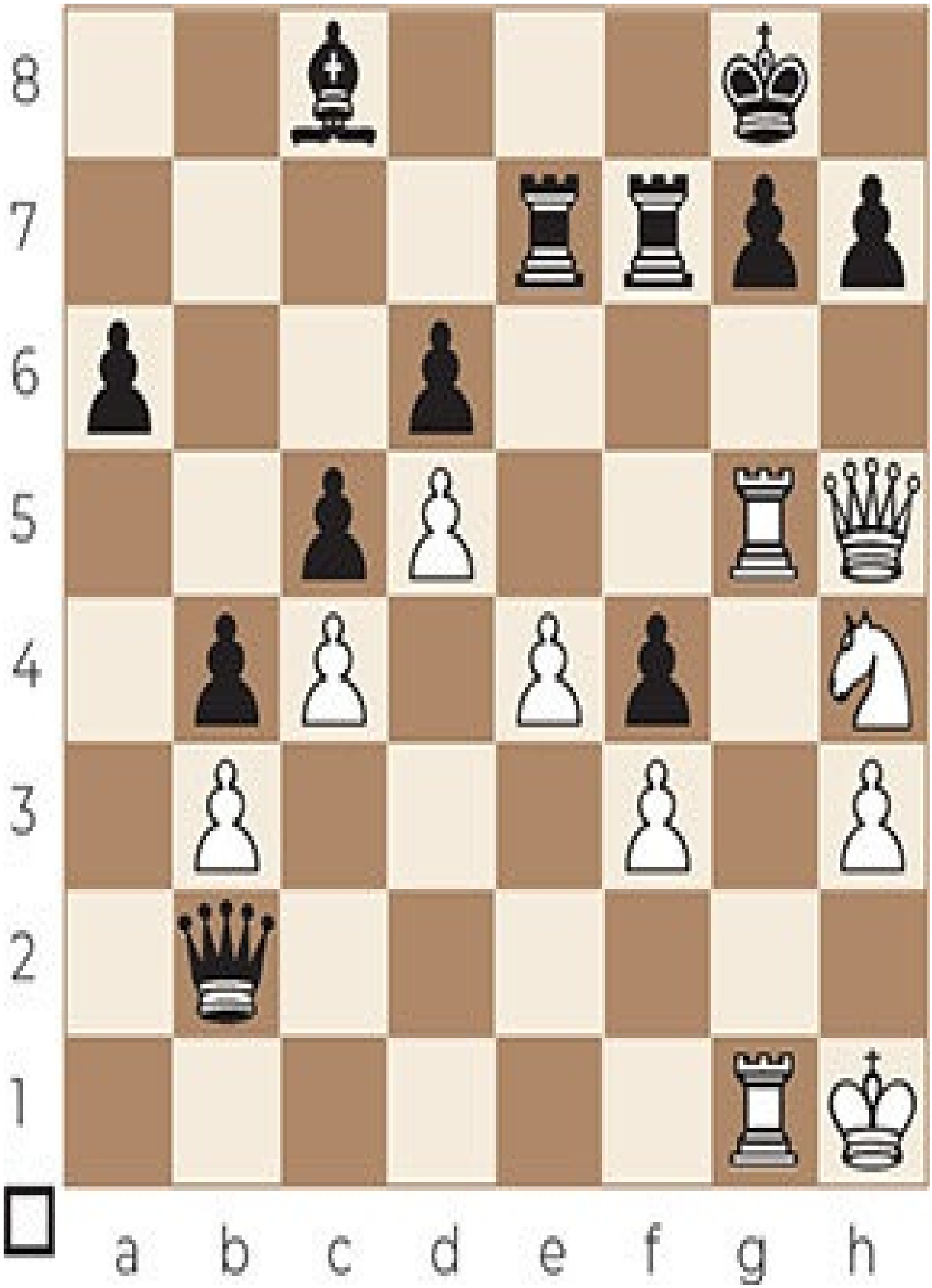
Exercise C 49


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

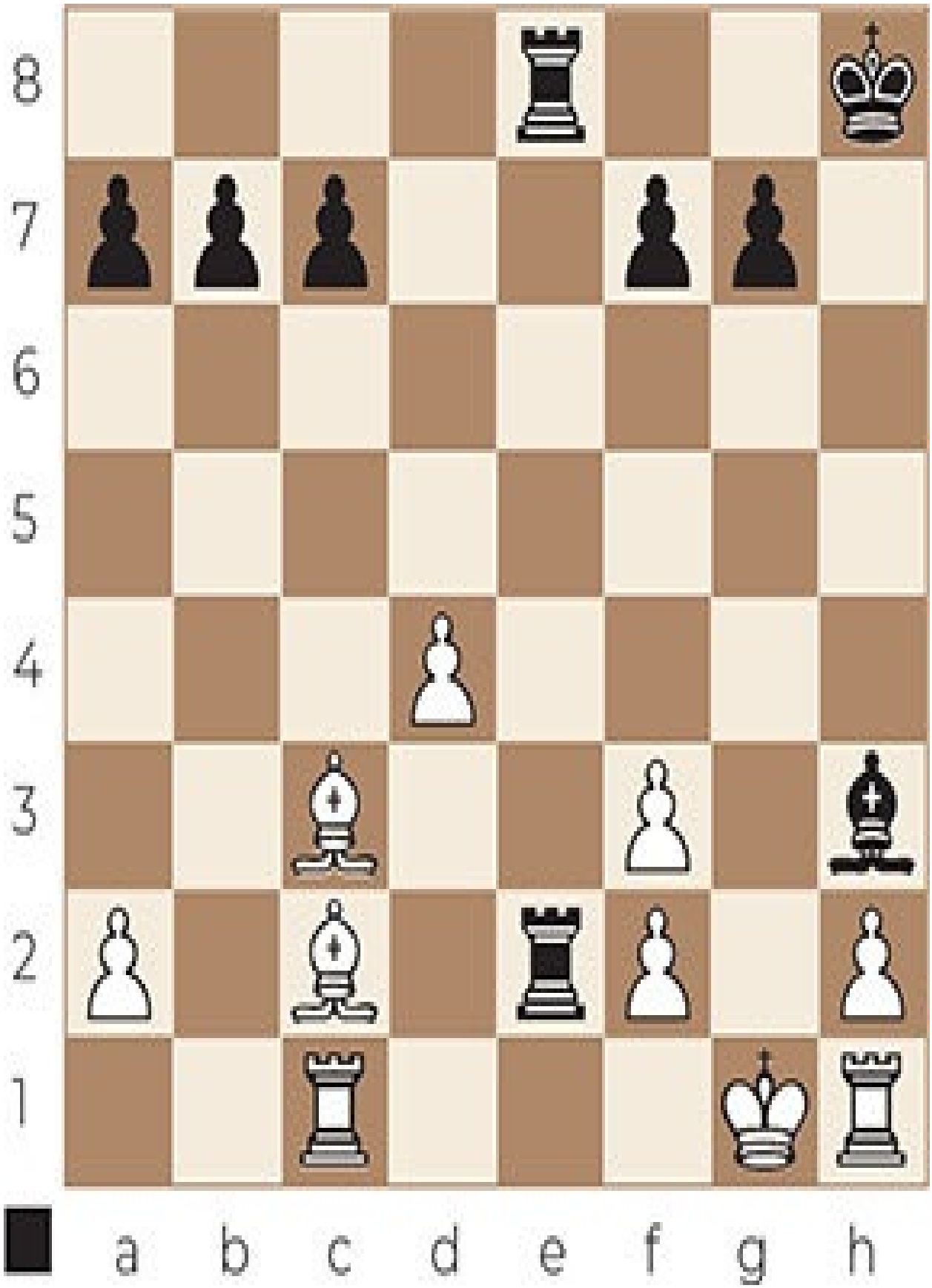
Exercise C 50

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

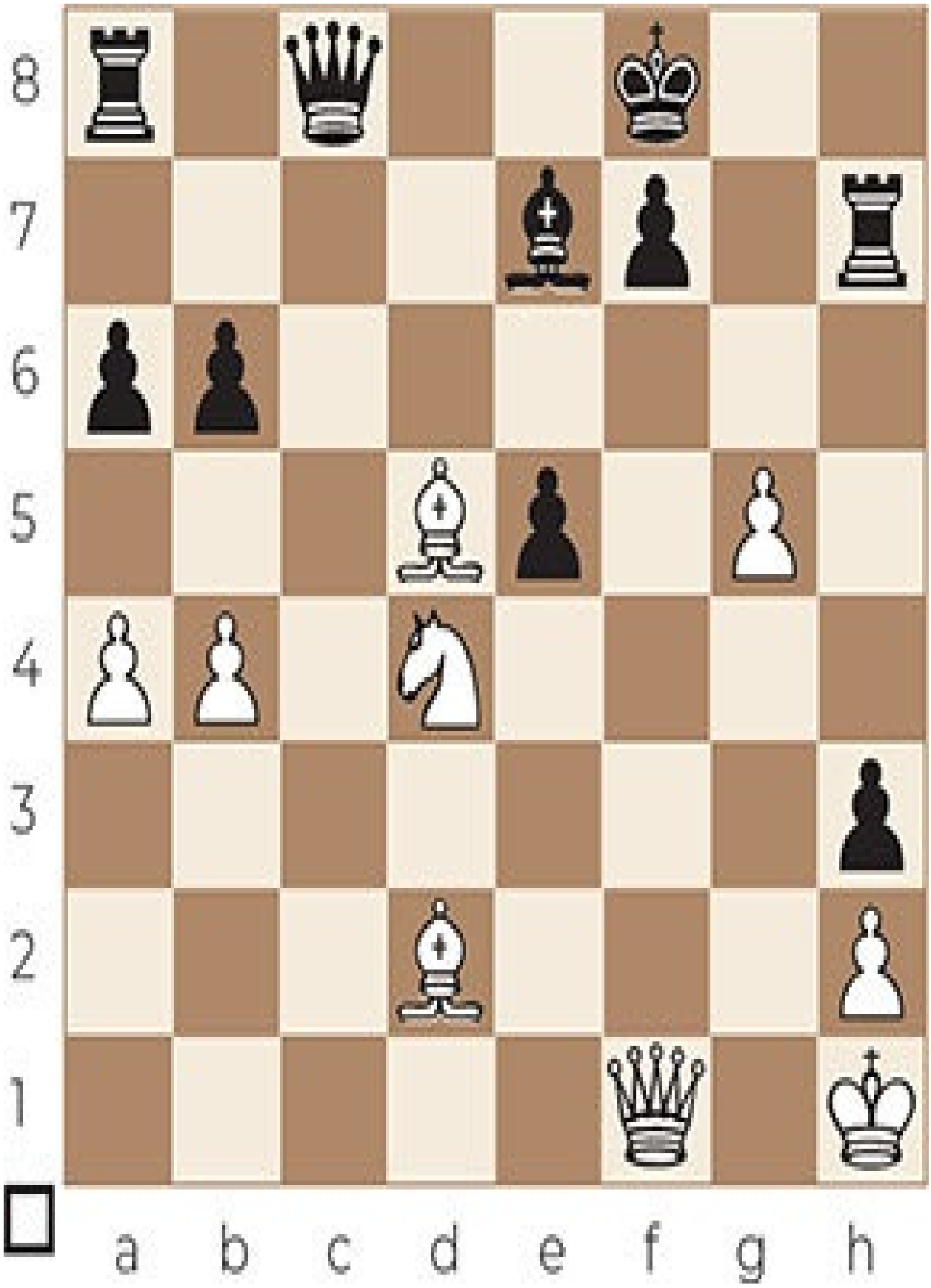
Exercise C 51


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 52


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

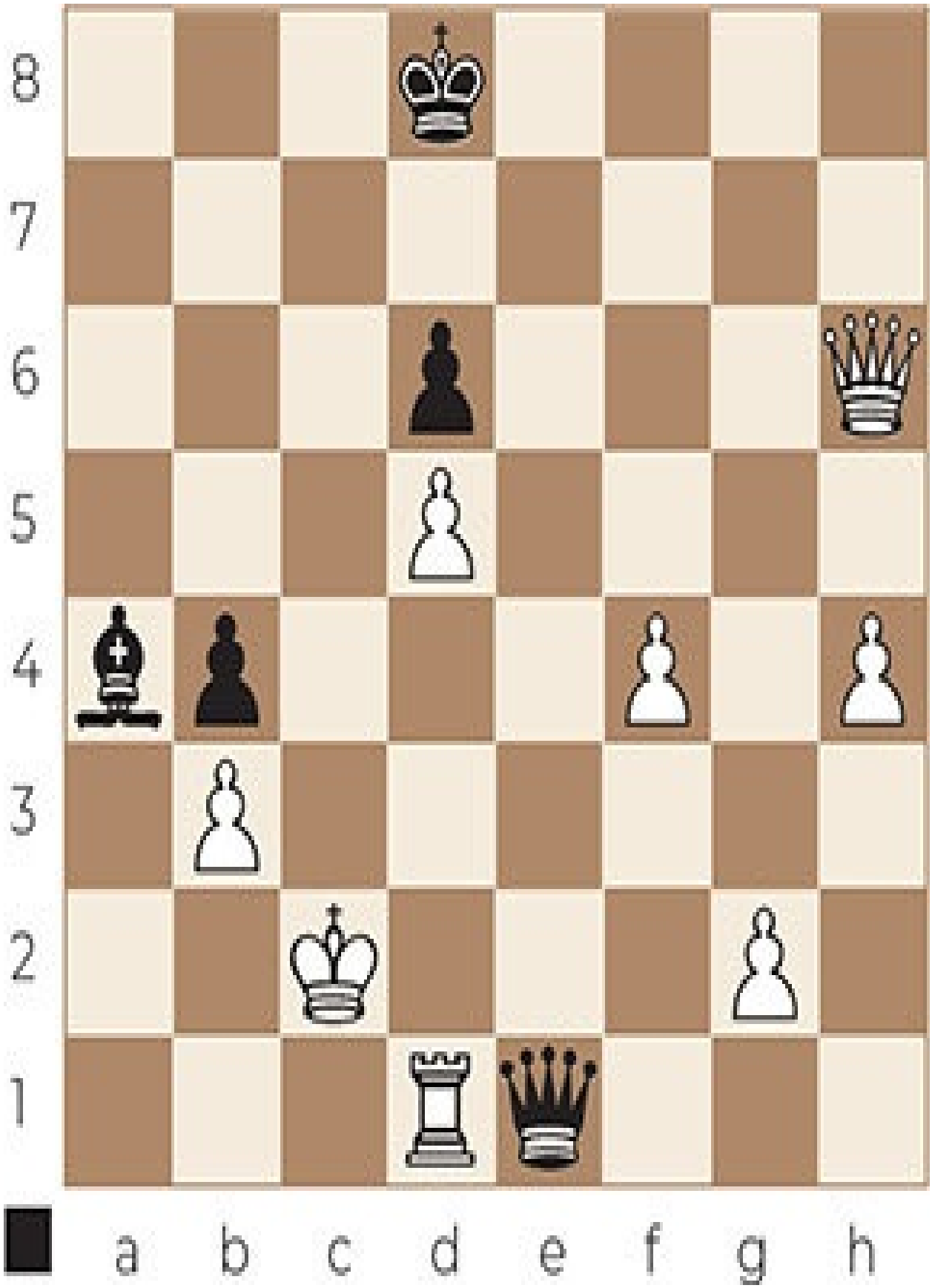
Exercise C 53


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

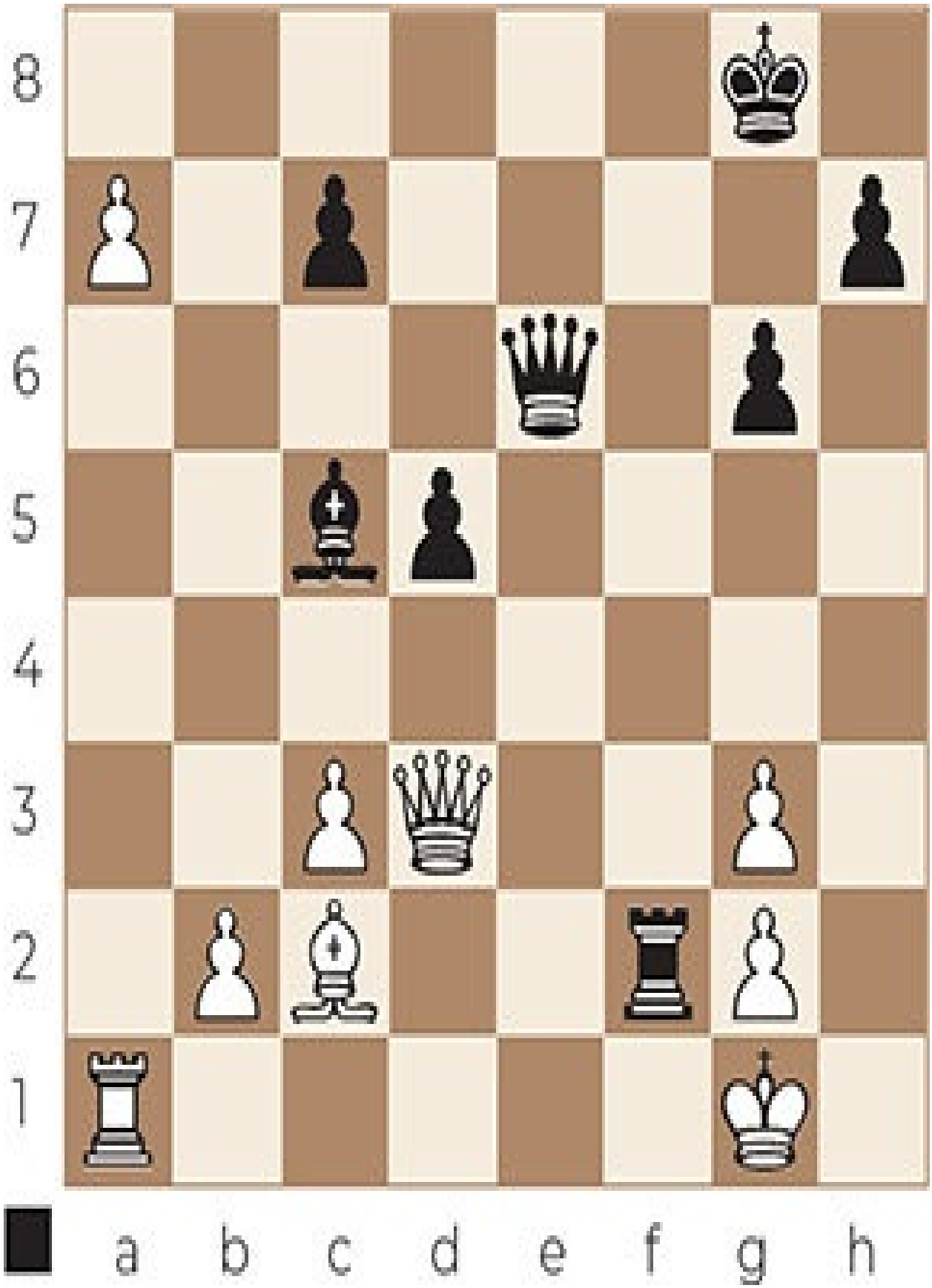
Exercise C 54

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

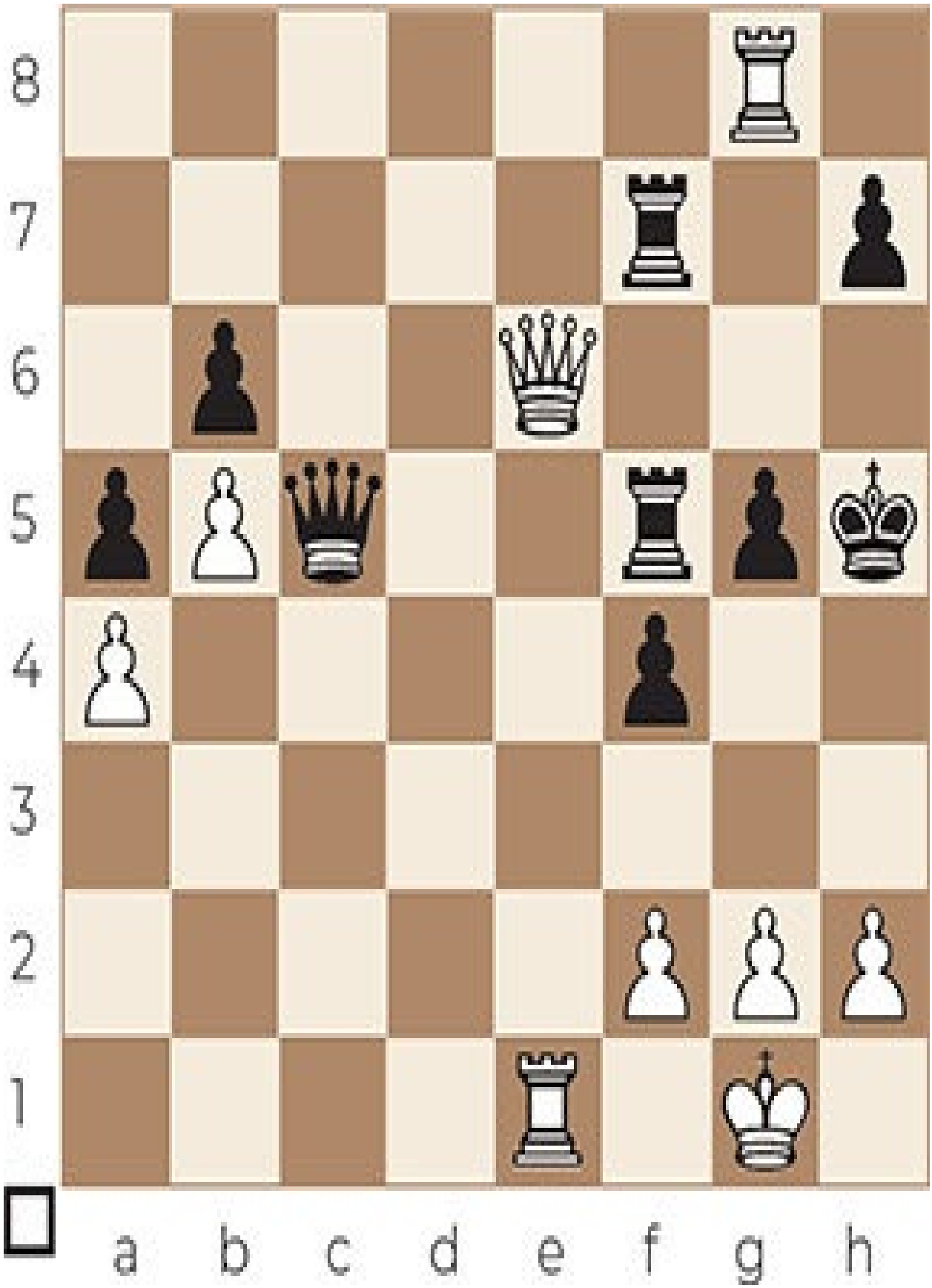
Exercise C 55


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

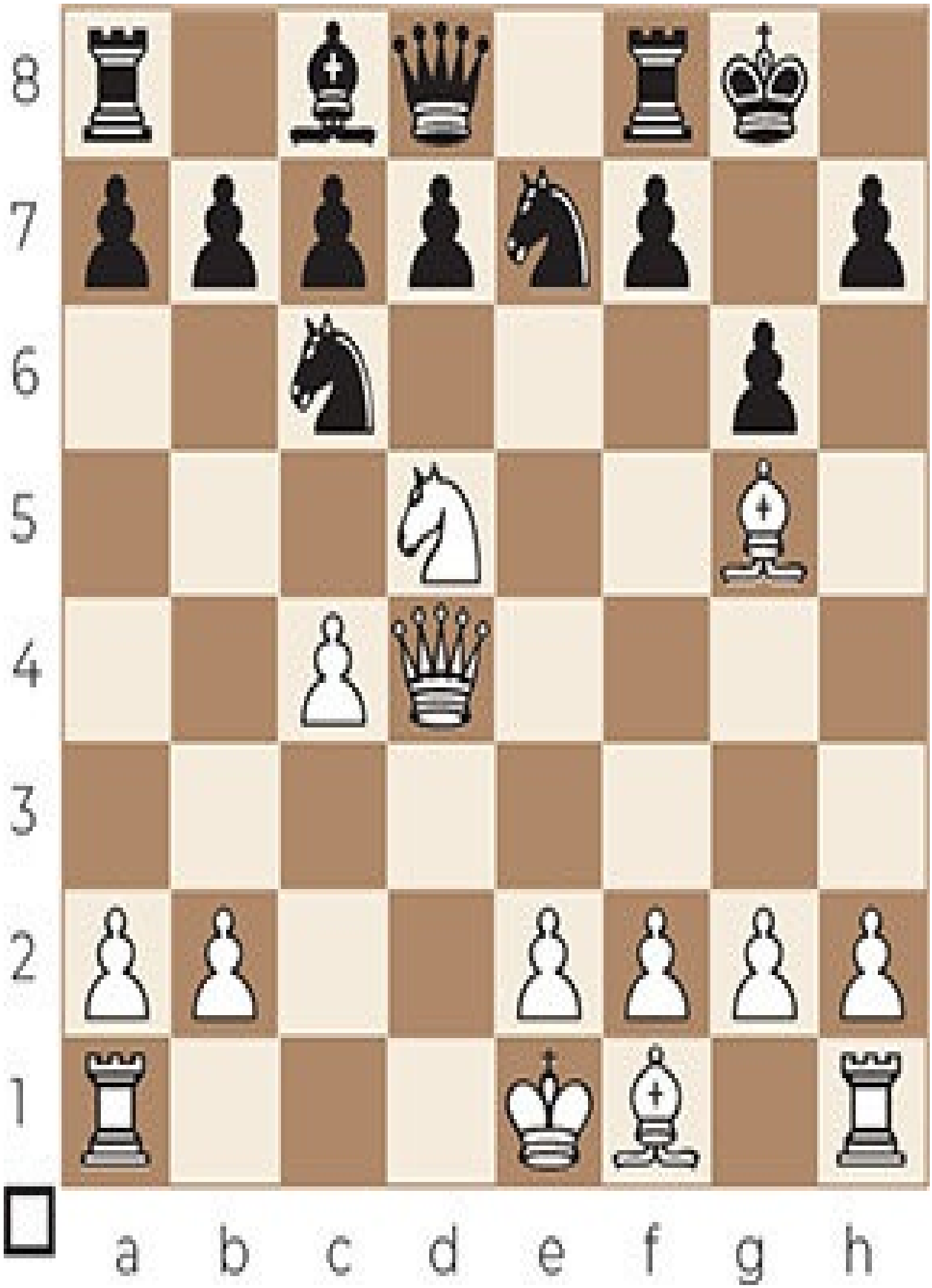
Exercise C 56


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 57


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

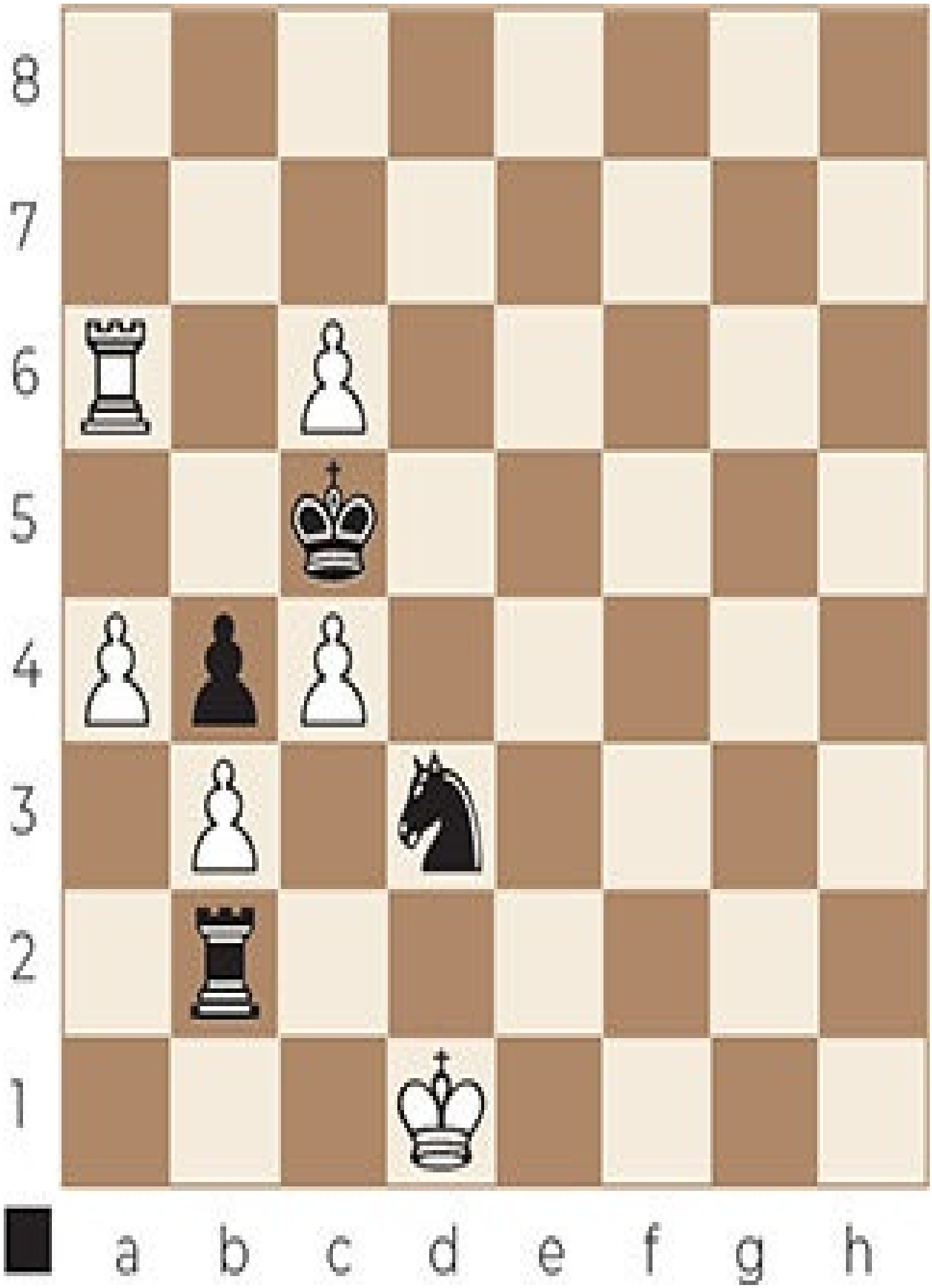
Exercise C 58


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

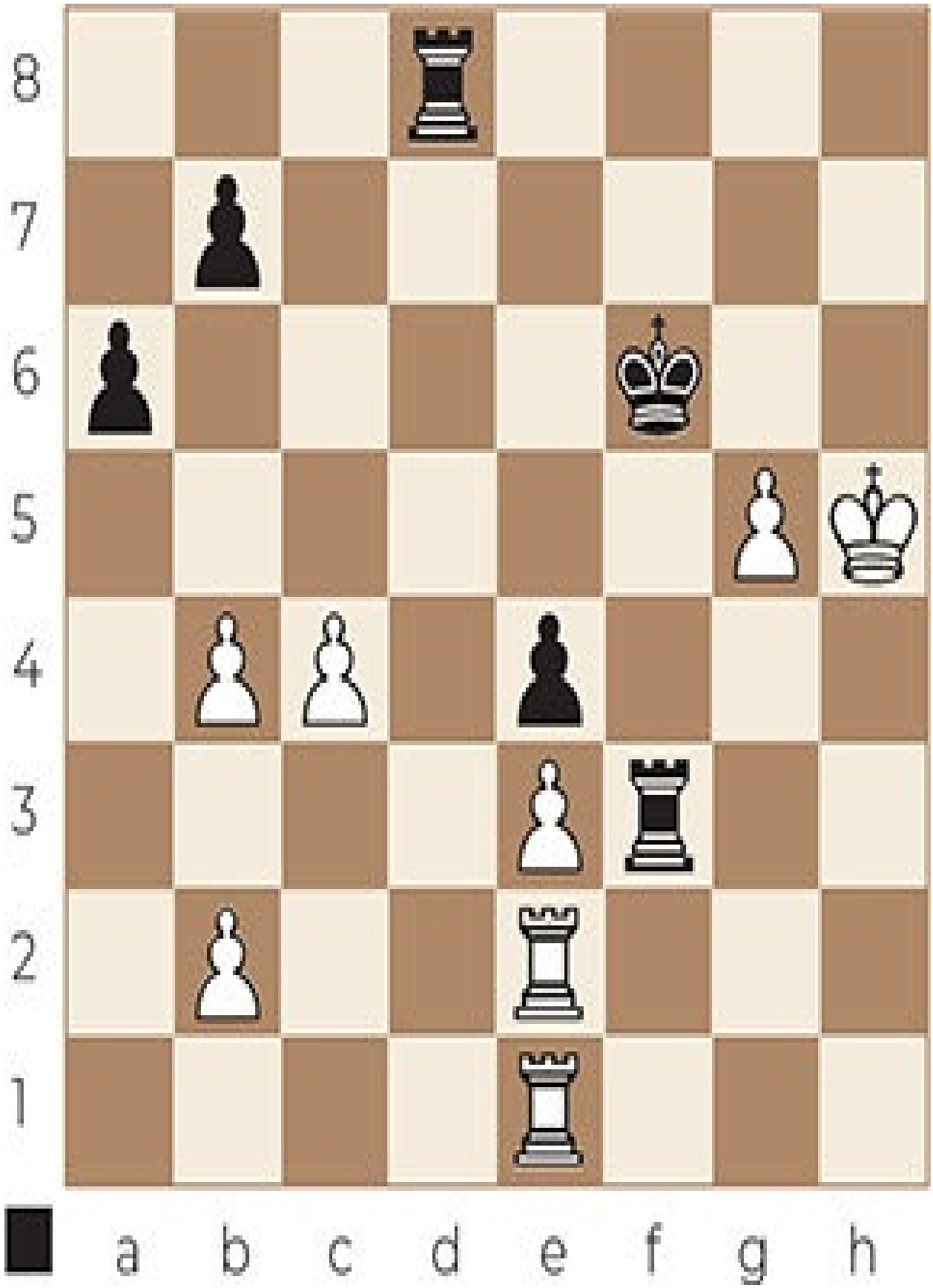
Exercise C 59

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 60


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 61


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

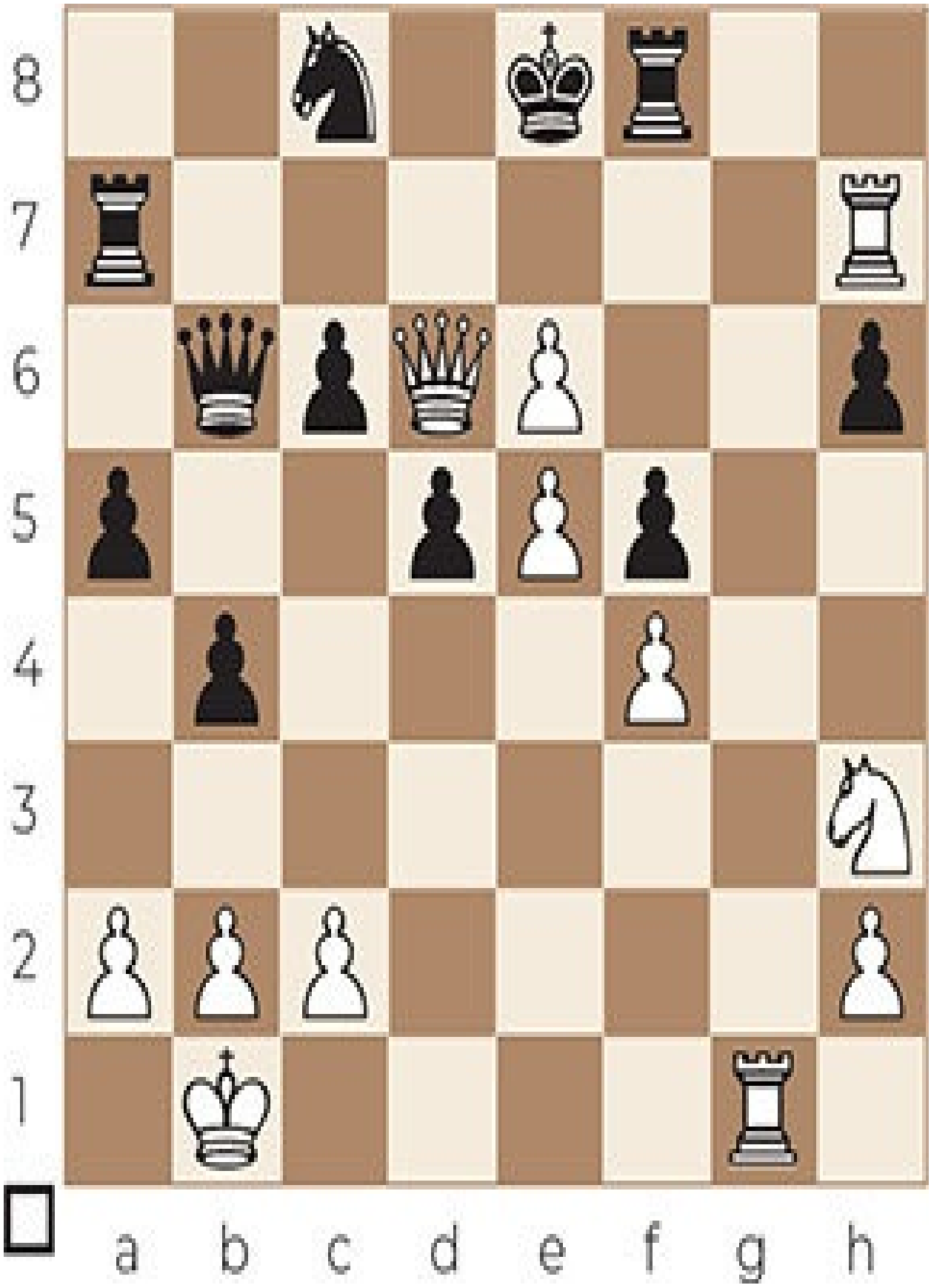
Exercise C 62

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

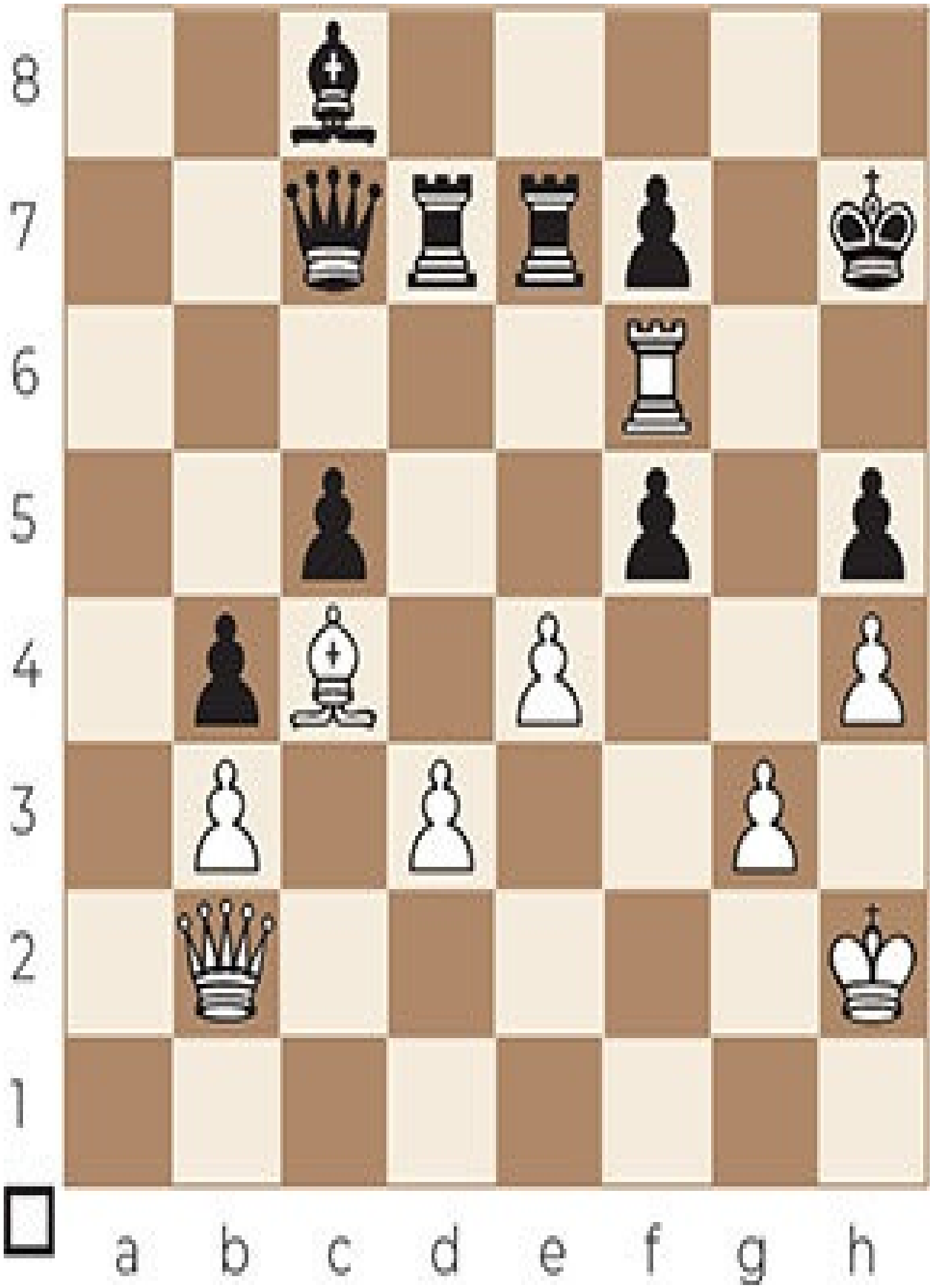
Exercise C 63

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 64


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 65


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

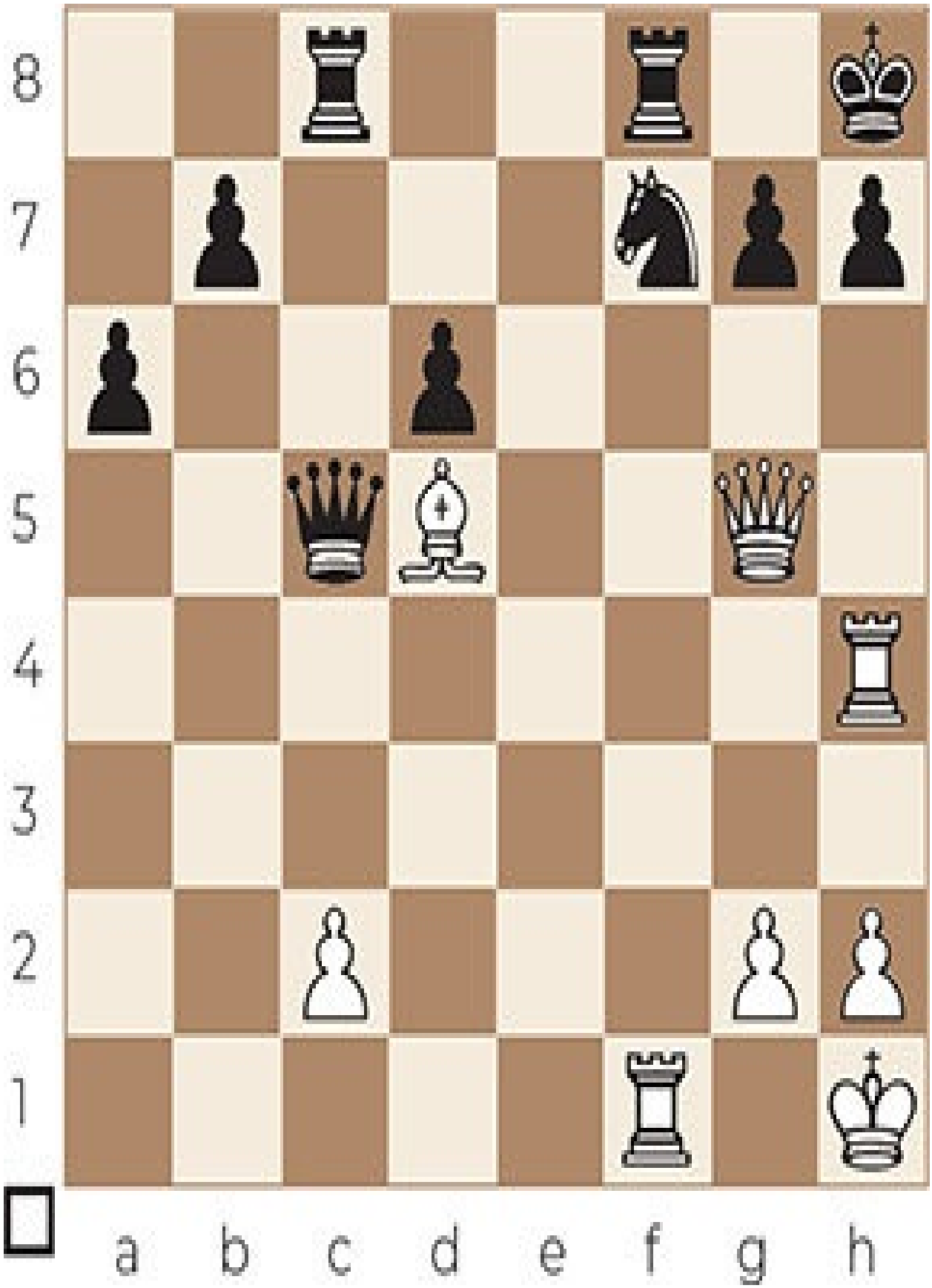
Exercise C 66

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 67

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 68


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

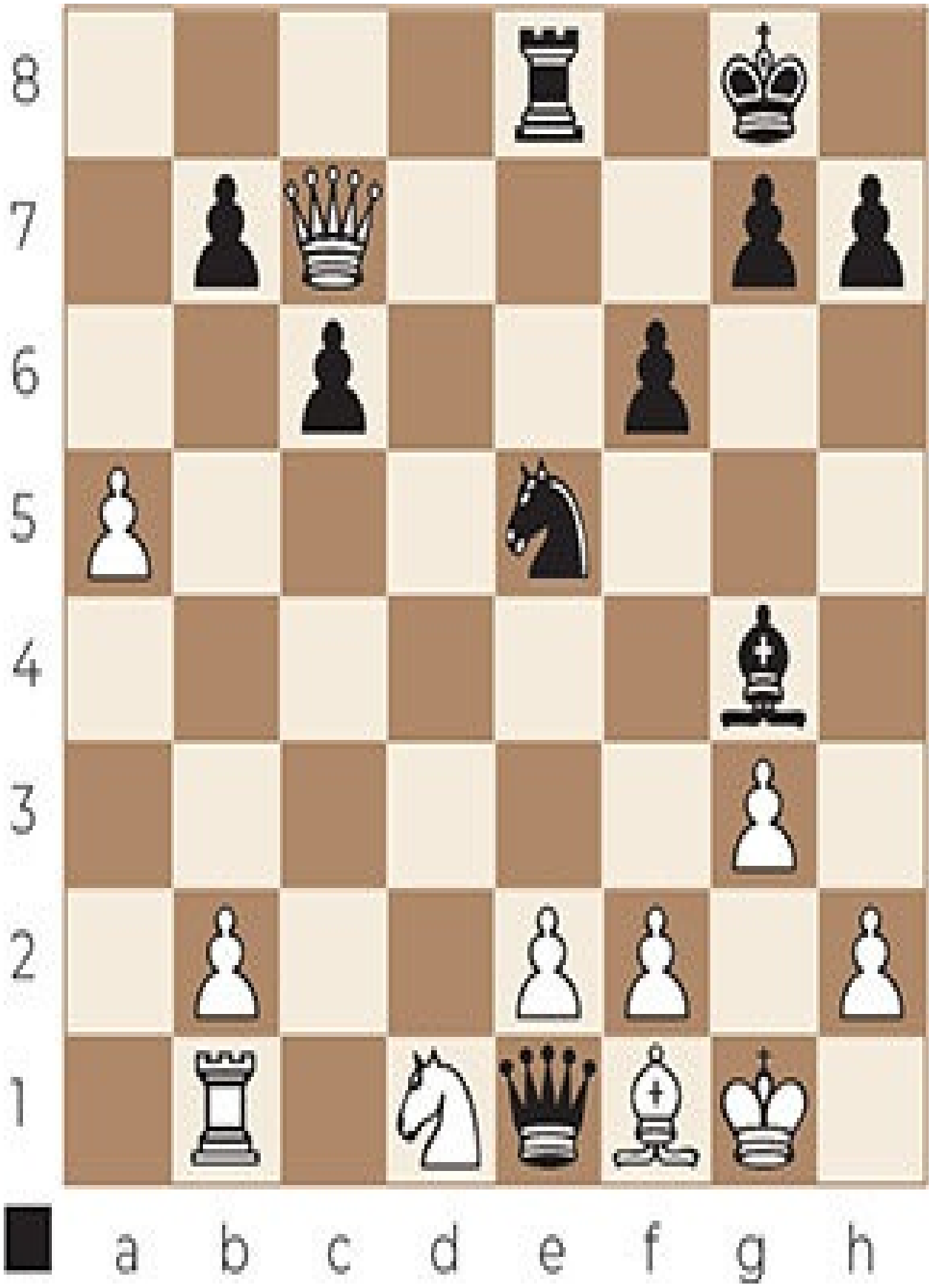
Exercise C 69

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

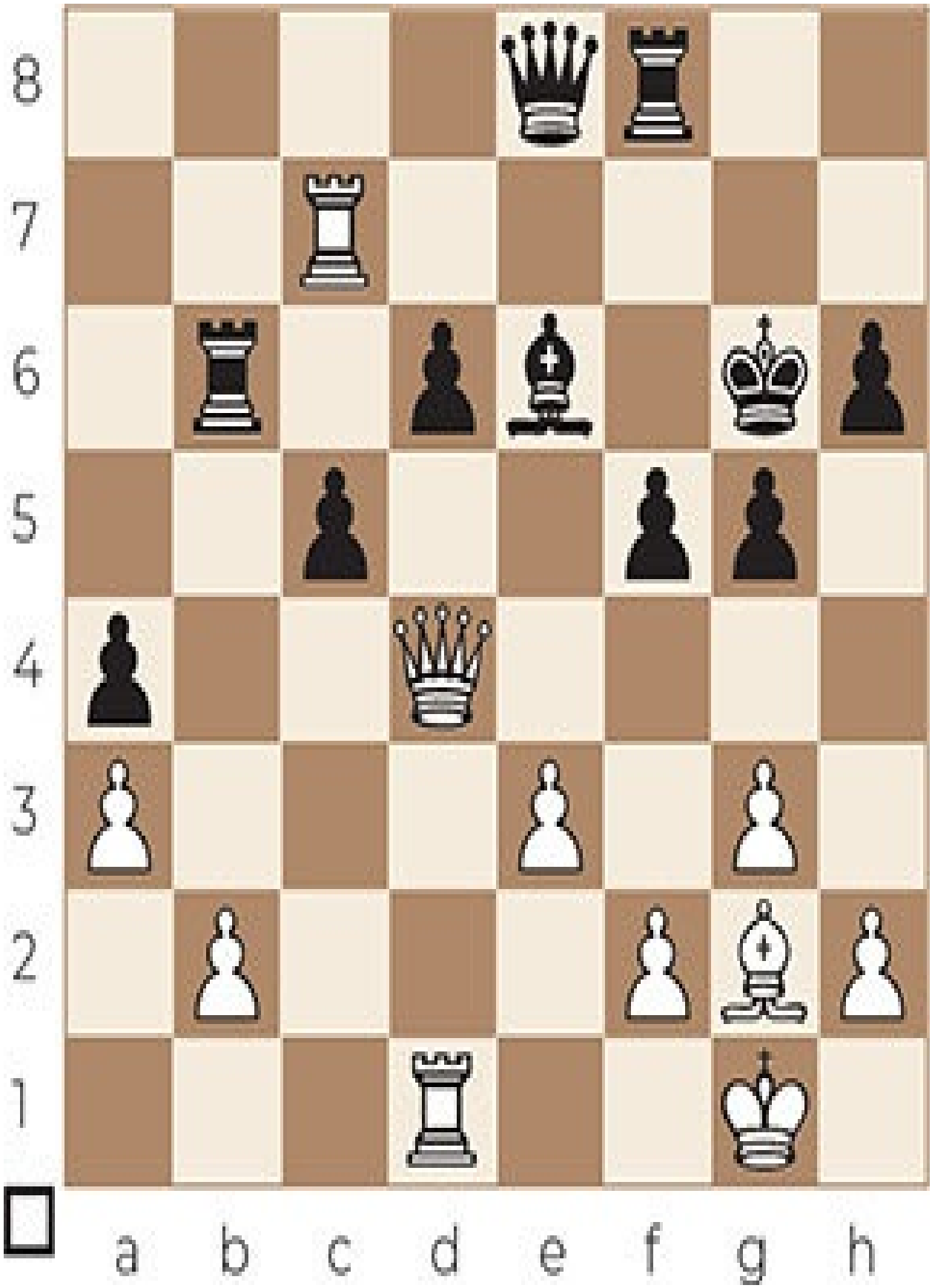
Exercise C 70

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 71


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 72


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

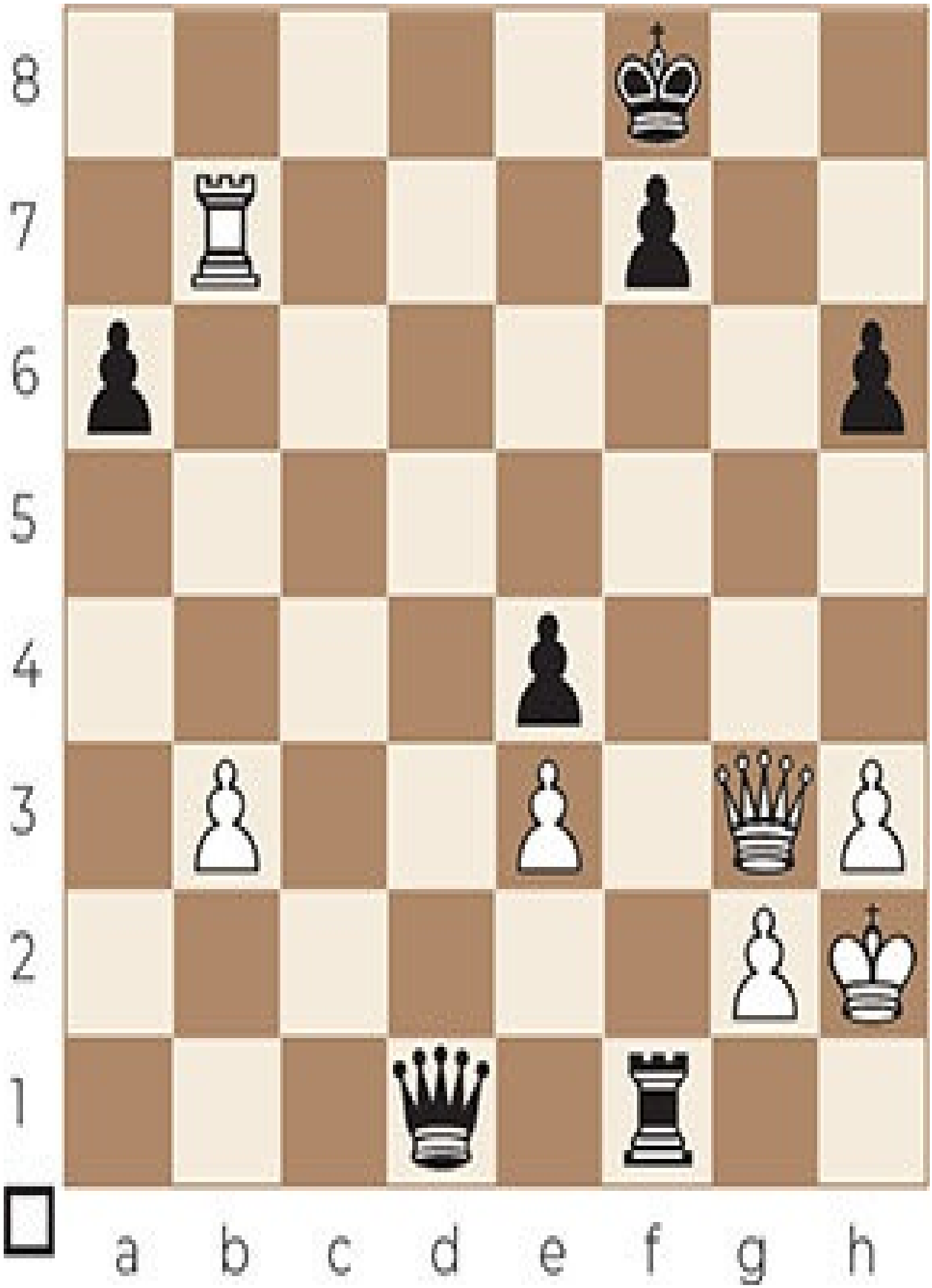
Exercise C 73

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 74

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 75


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

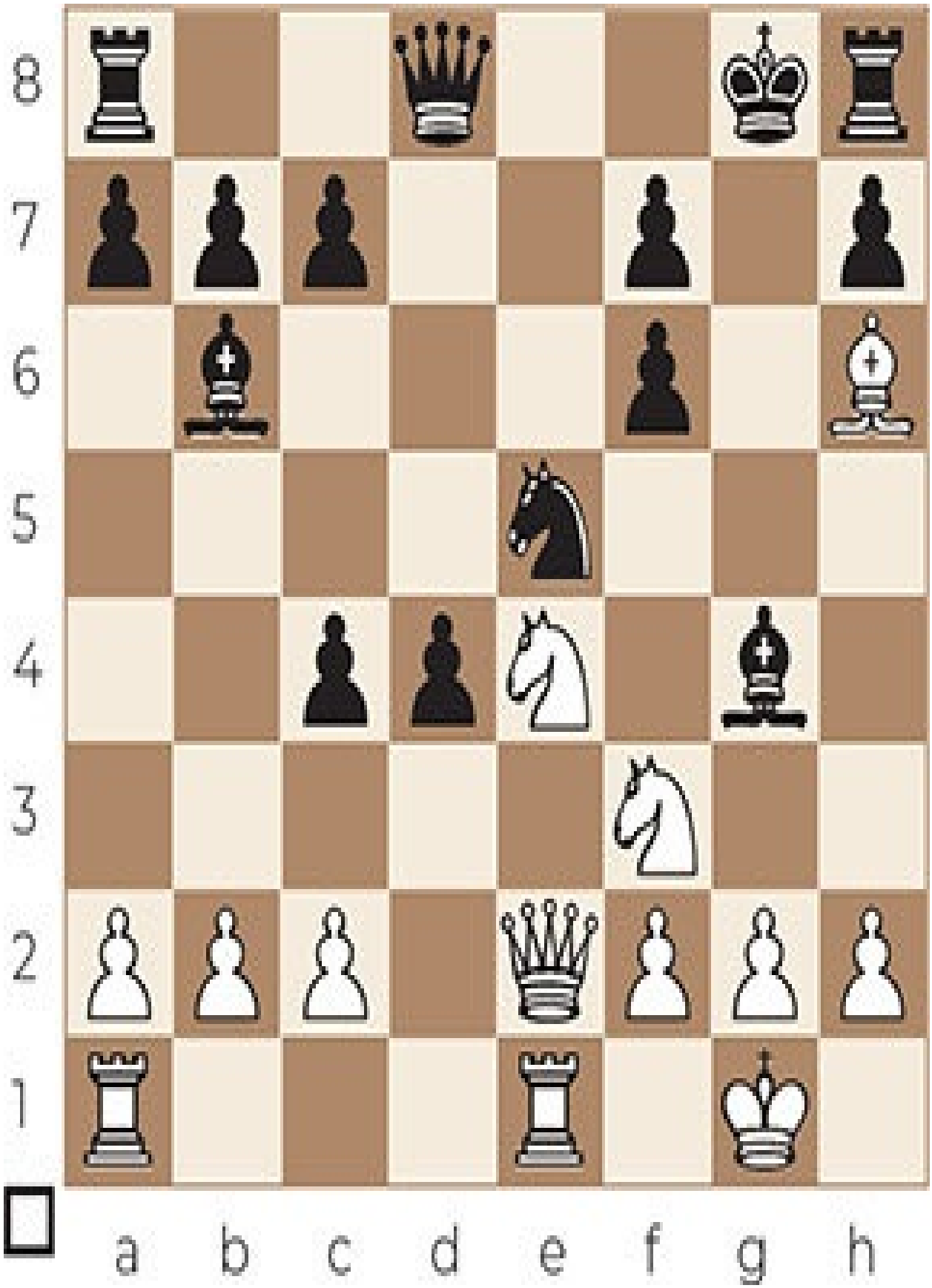
Exercise C 76

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 77

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 78


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

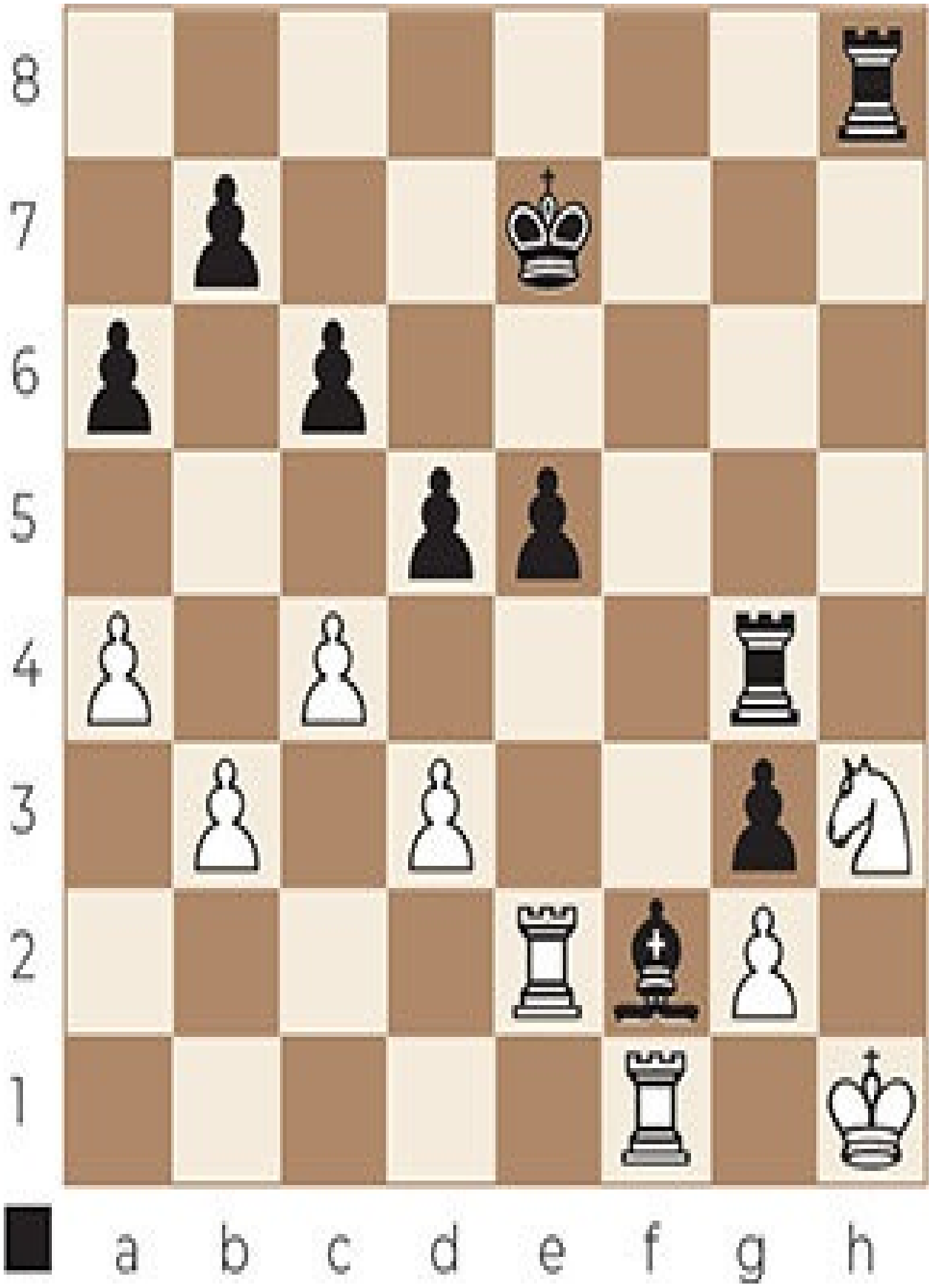
Exercise C 79

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

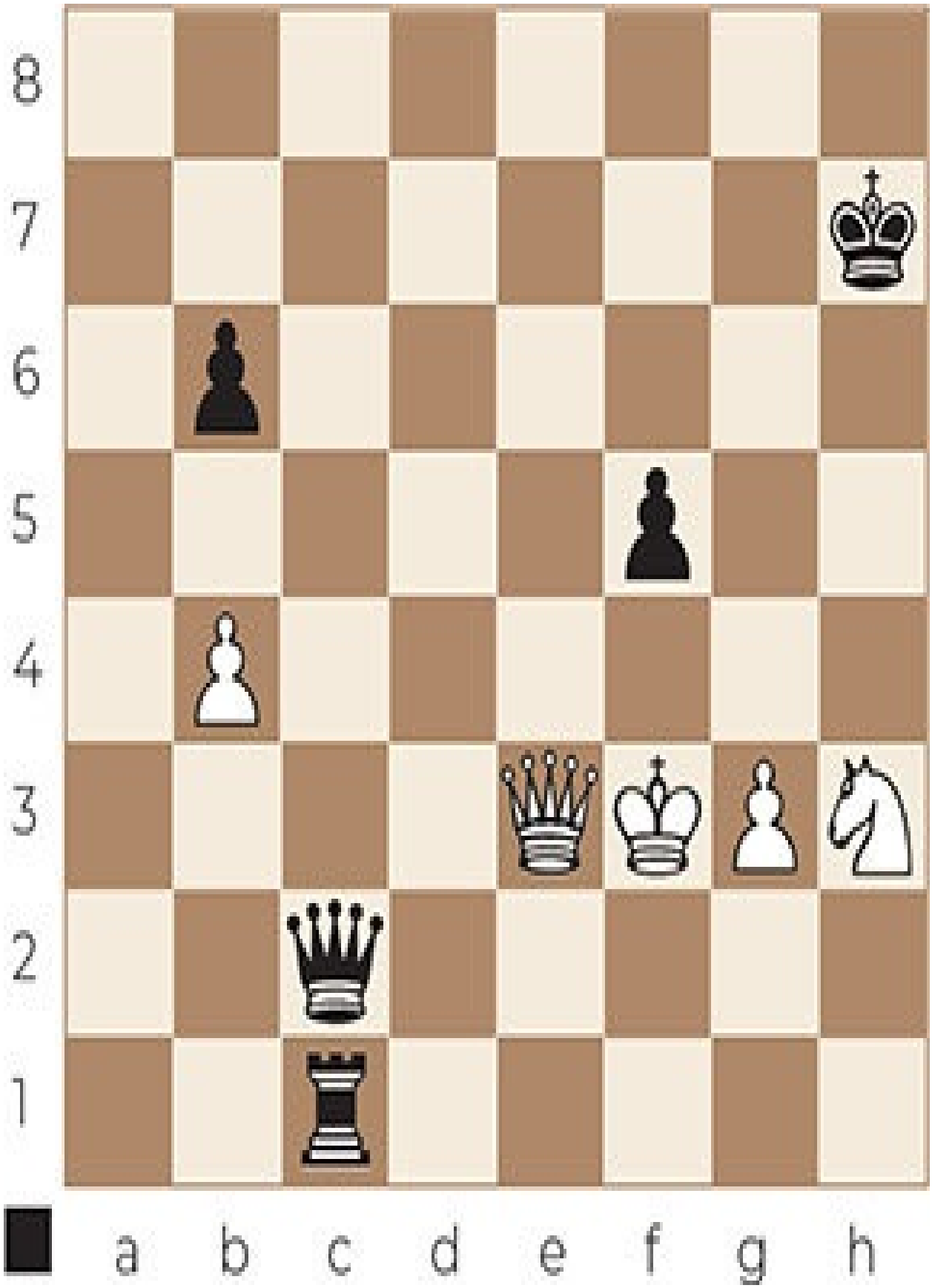
Exercise C 80

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

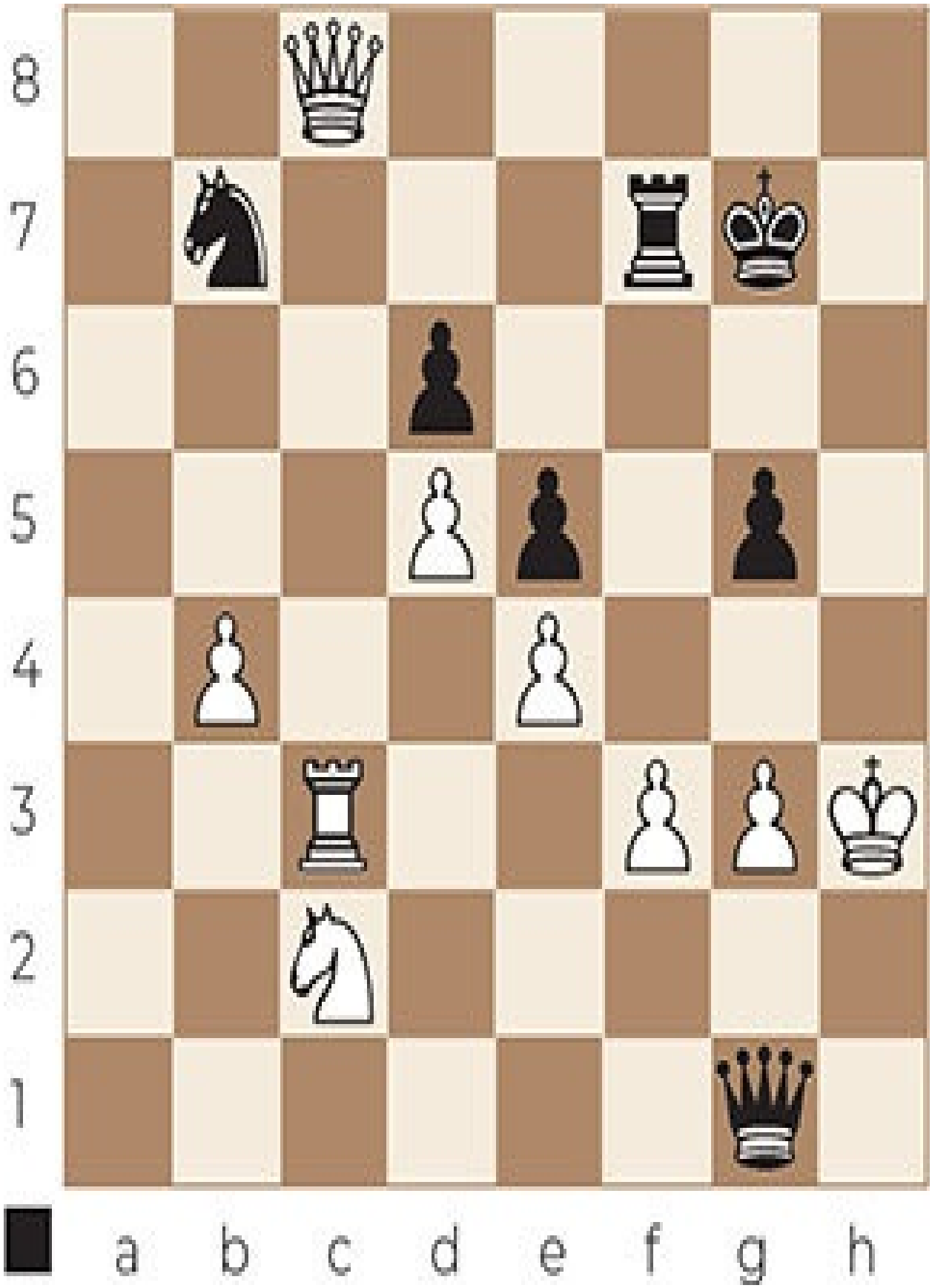
Exercise C 81


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

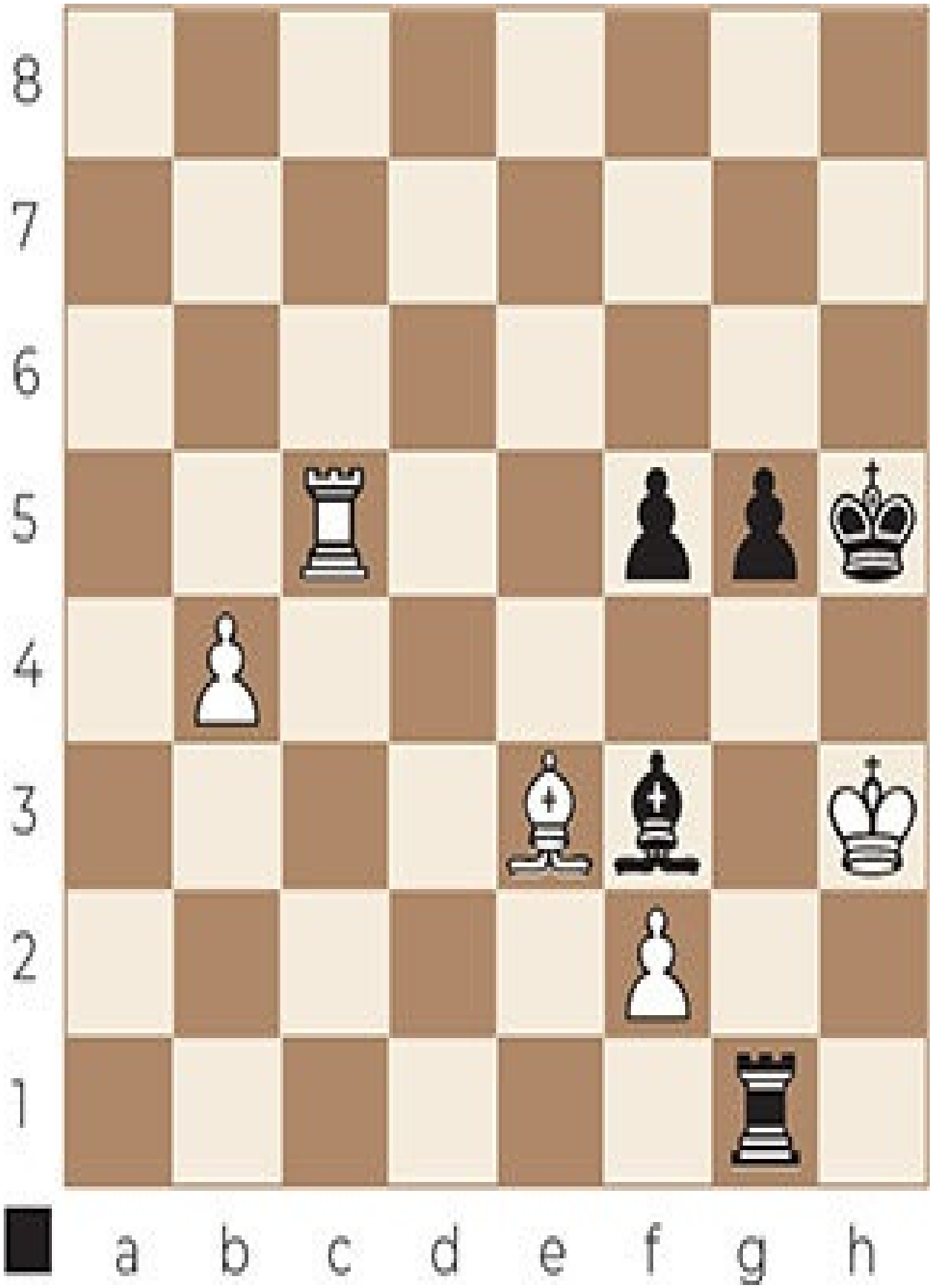
Exercise C 82


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

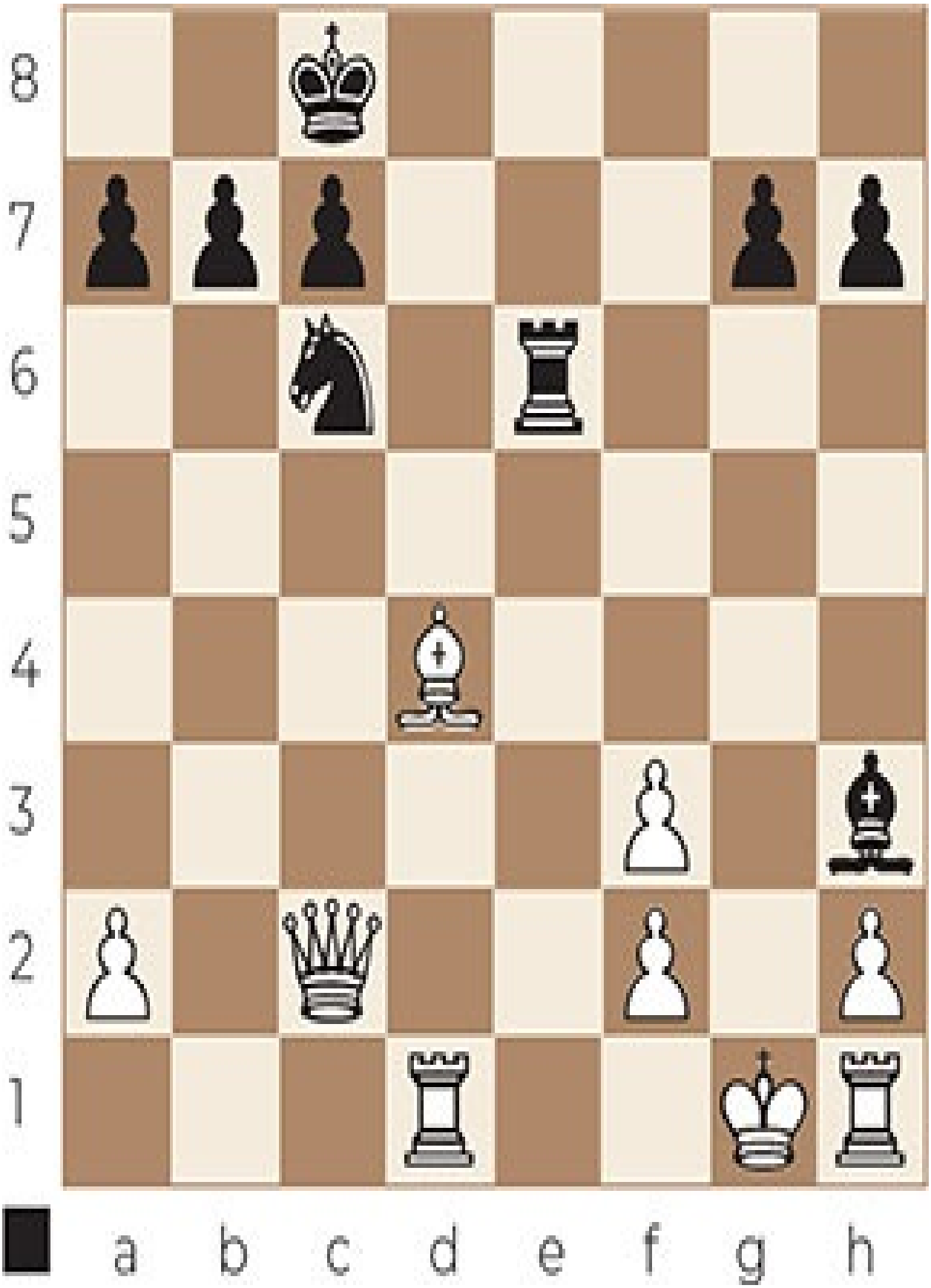
Exercise C 83


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 84


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

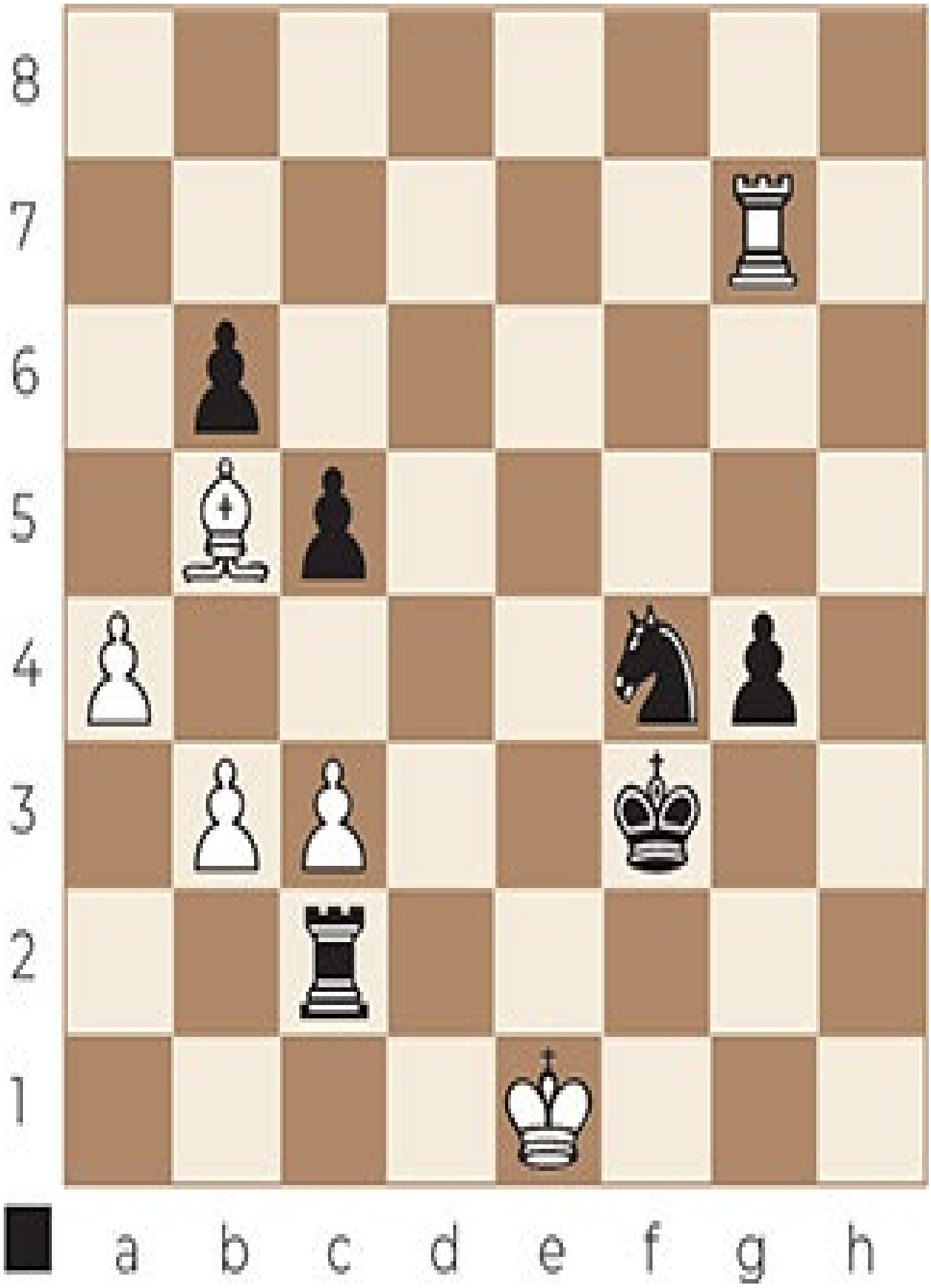
Exercise C 85


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 86

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

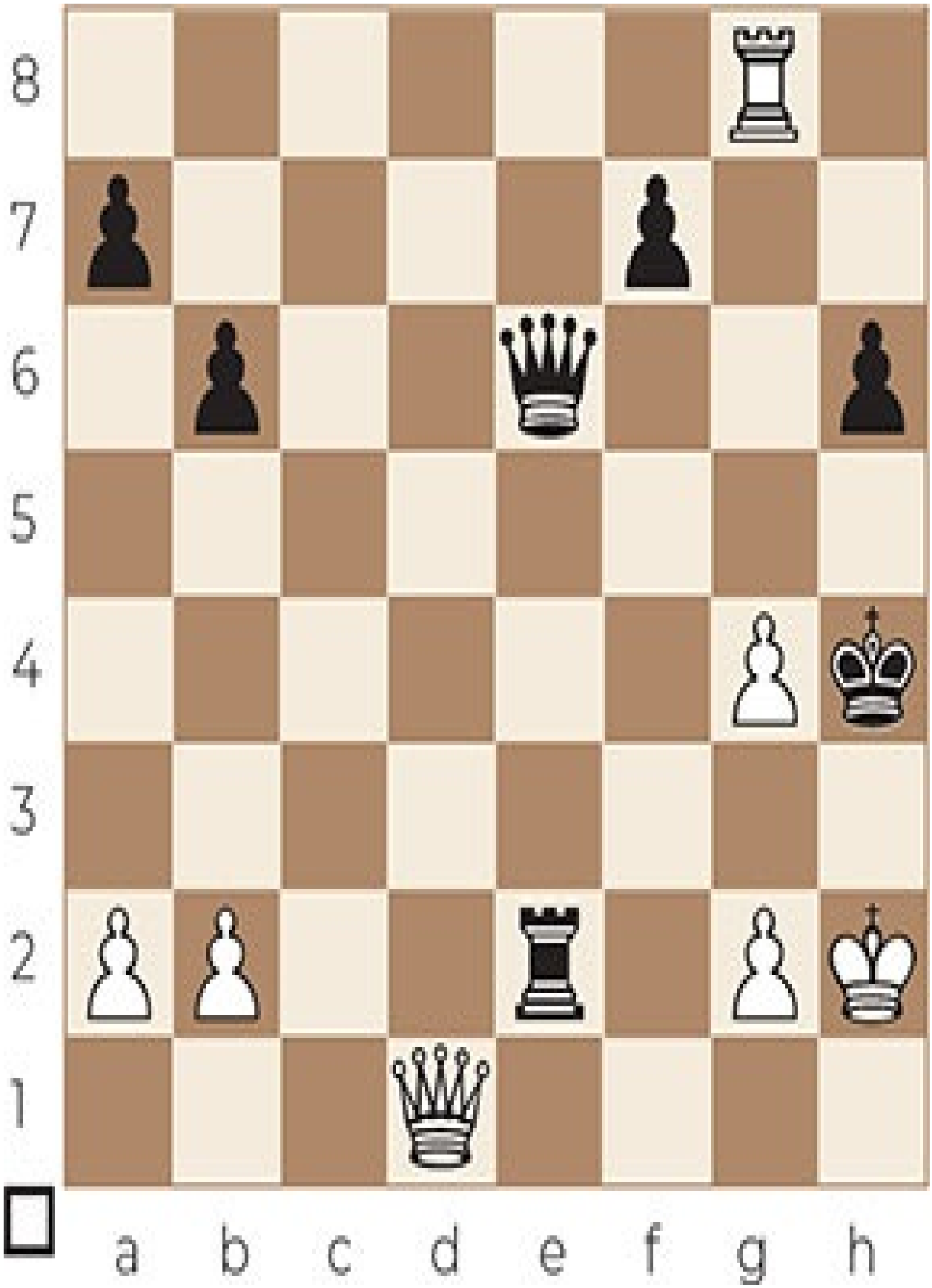
Exercise C 87


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 88

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 89


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 90

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

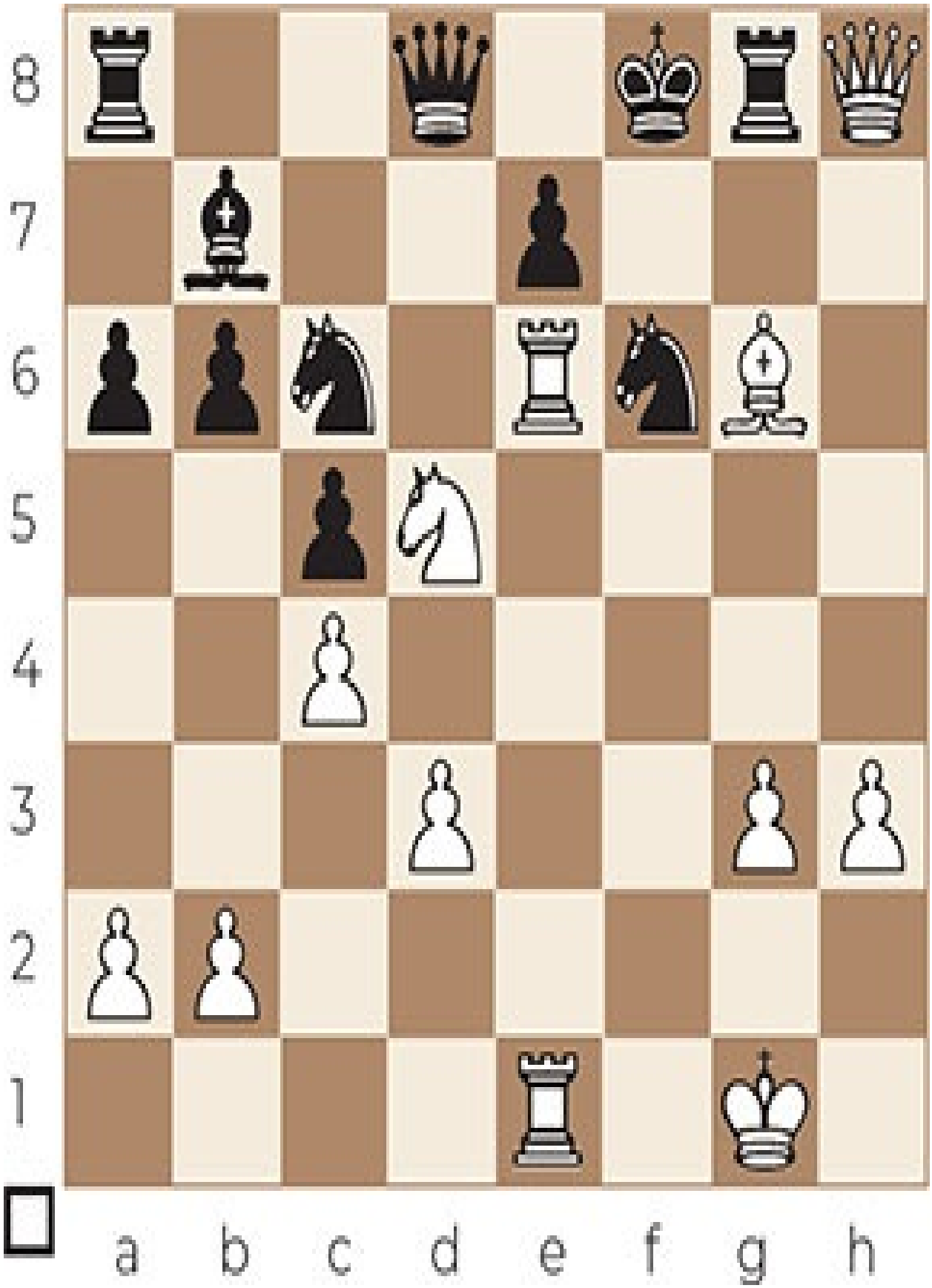
Exercise C 91

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 92

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 93


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 94

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

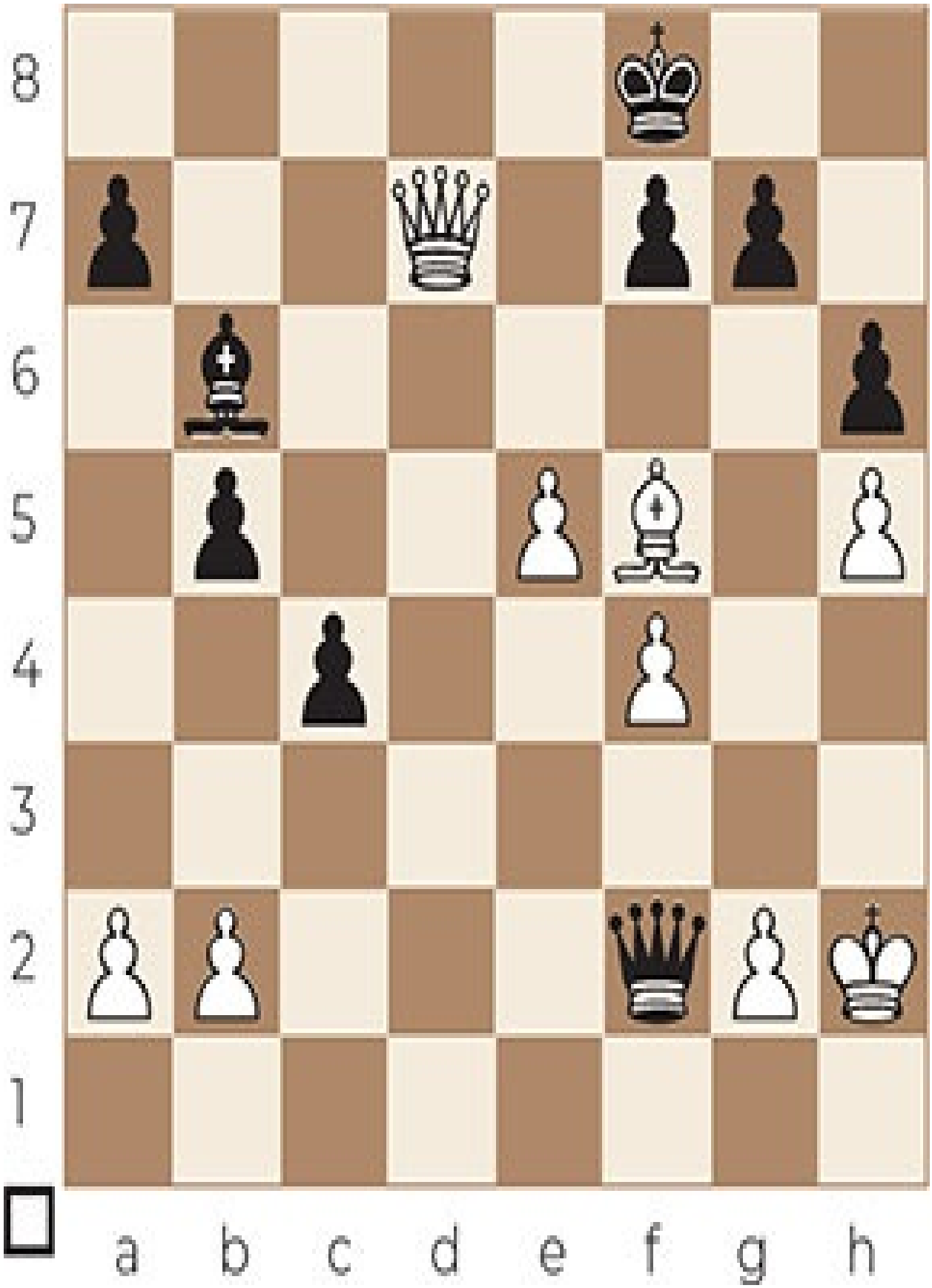
Exercise C 95

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

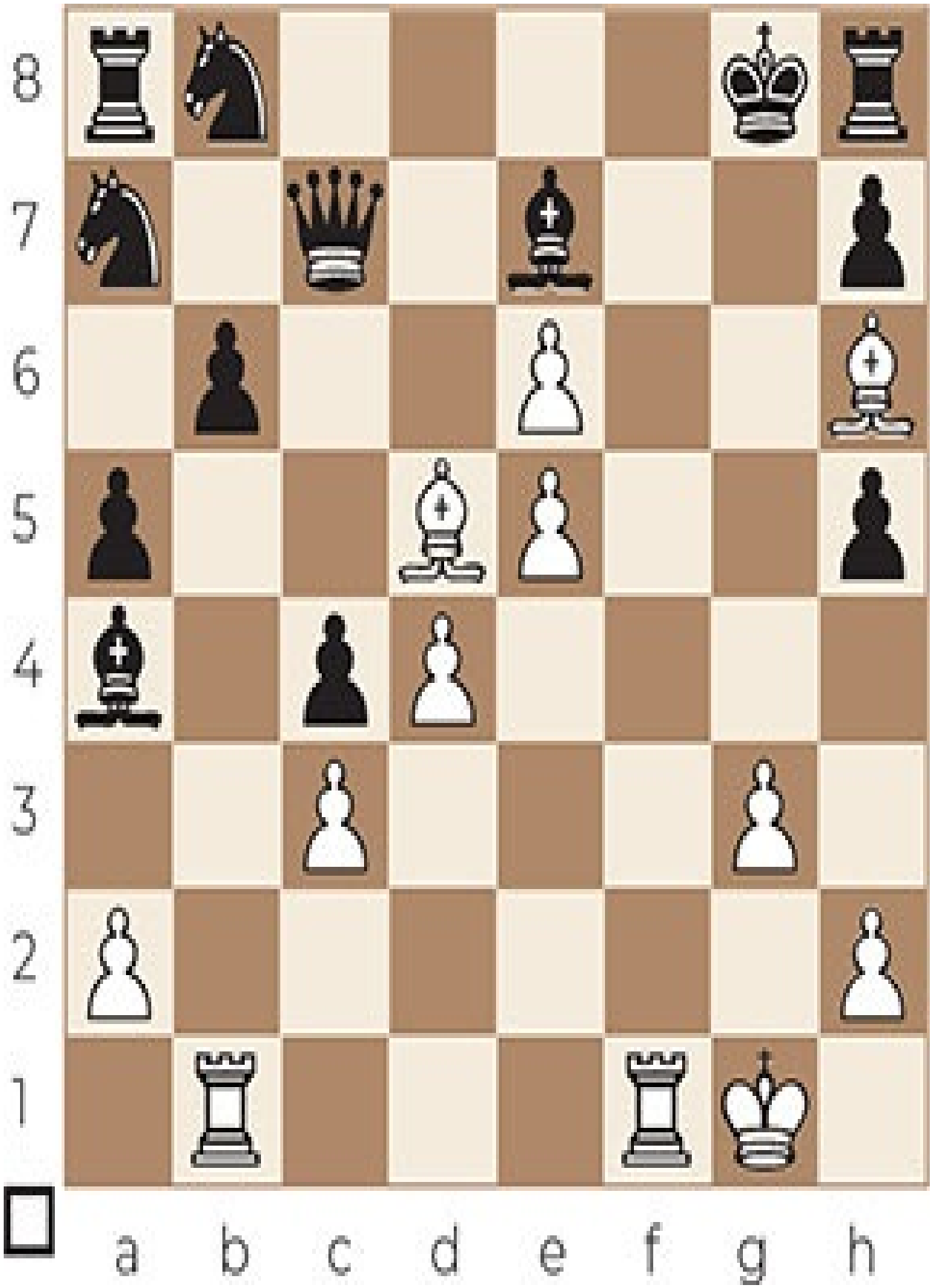
Exercise C 96

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 97


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 98


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 99

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 100

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

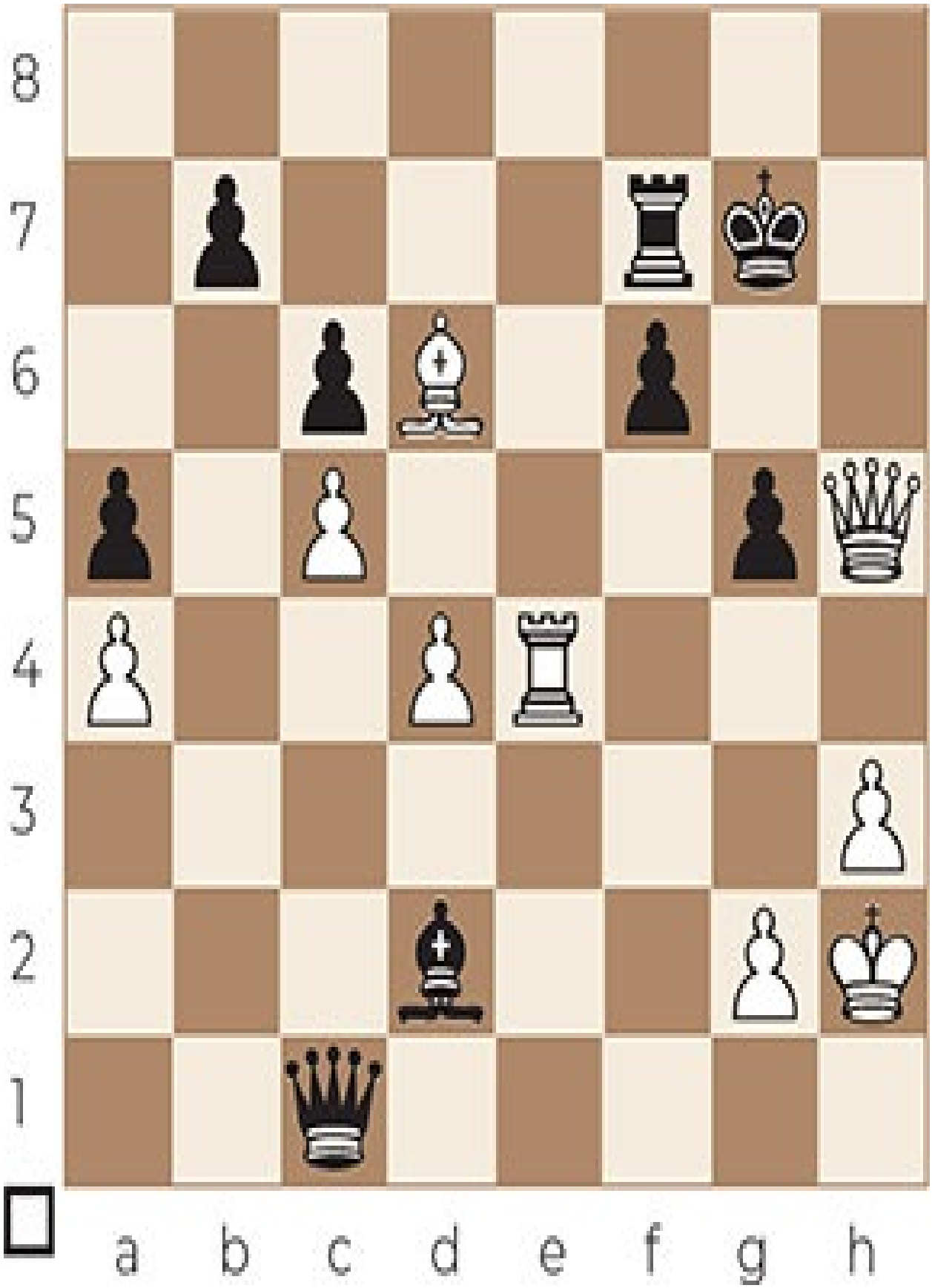
Exercise C 101

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 102

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 103


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 104

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

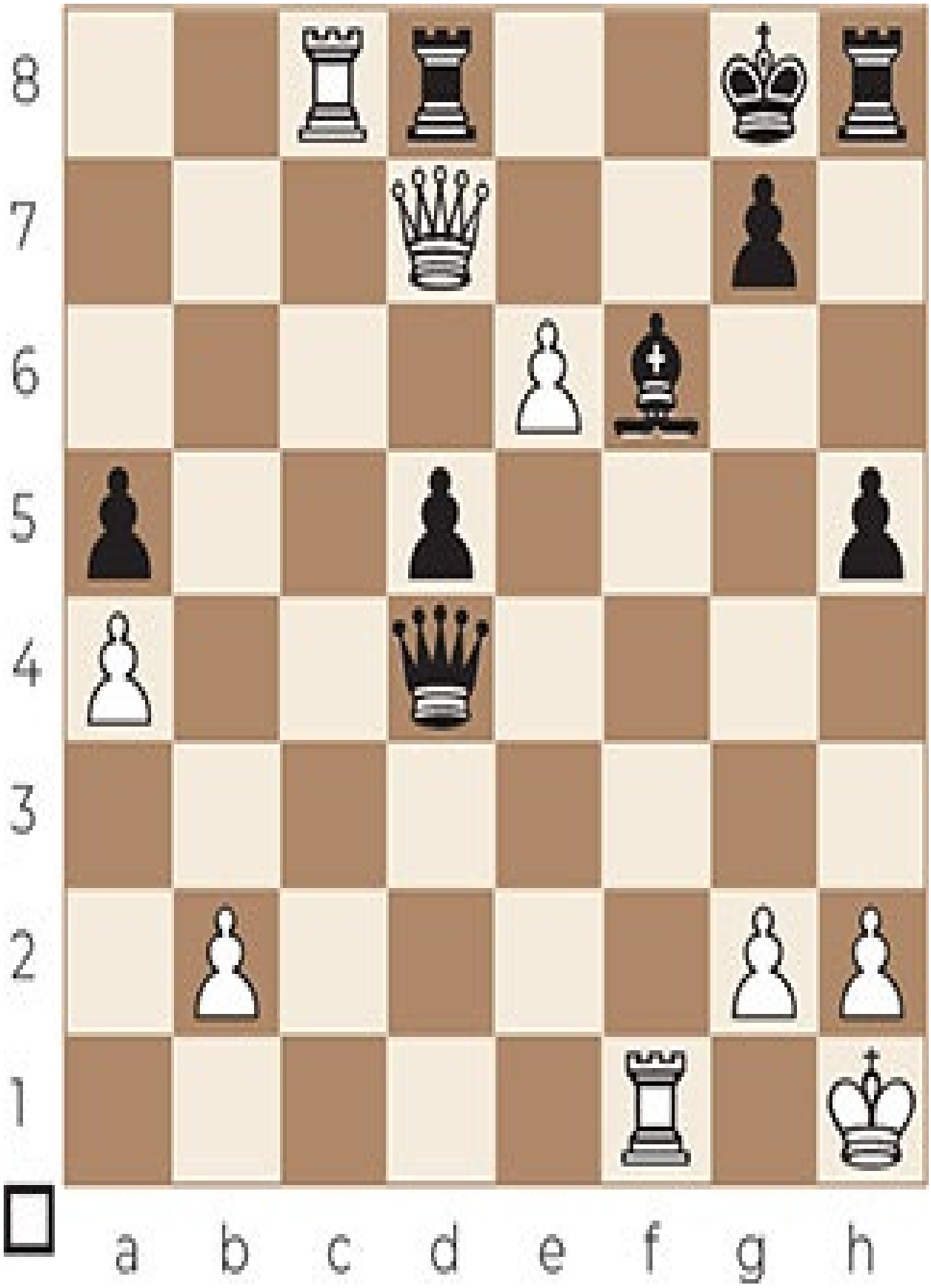
Exercise C 105

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

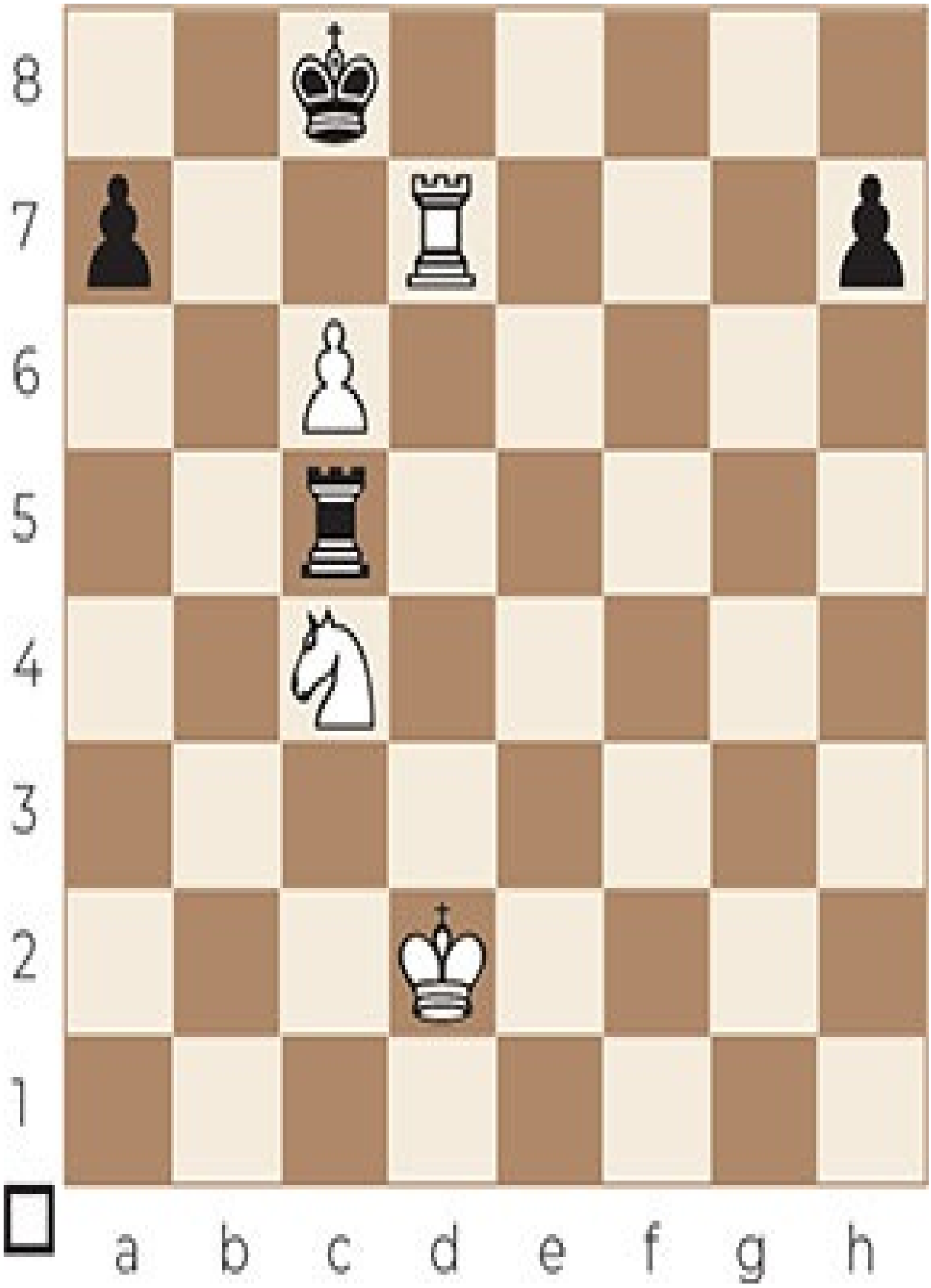
Exercise C 106

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 107


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

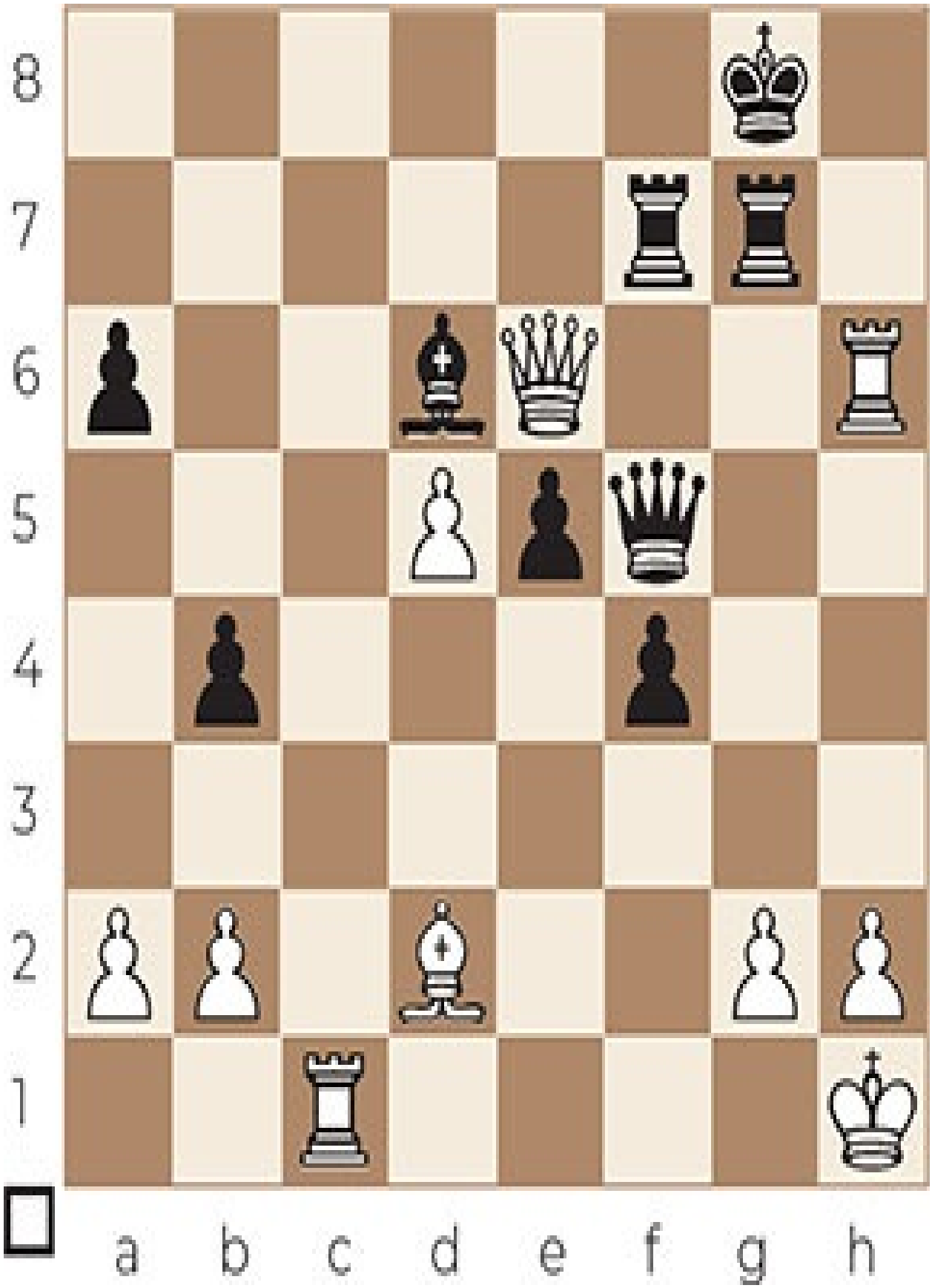
Exercise C 108


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

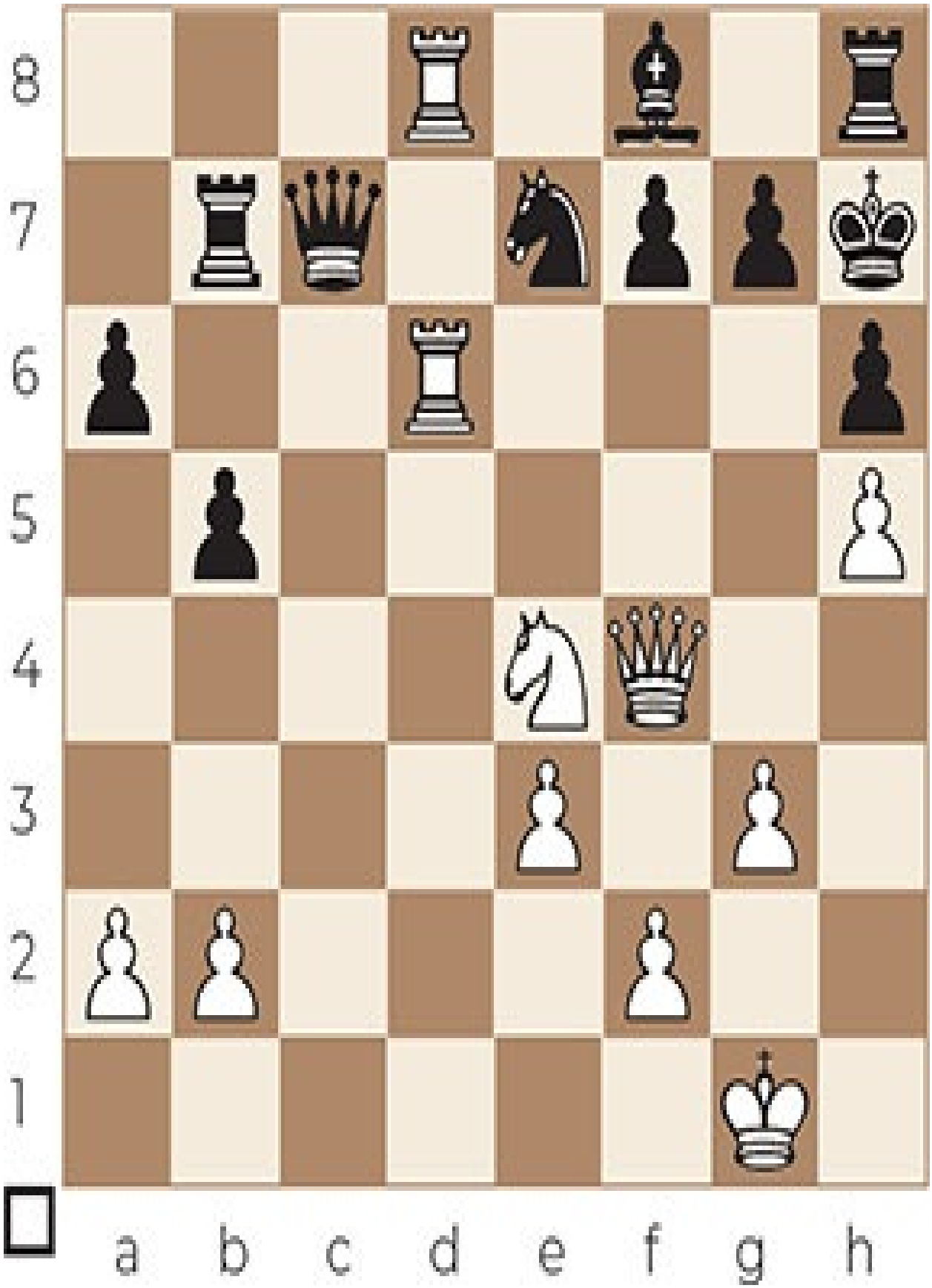
Exercise C 109

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 110


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 111


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

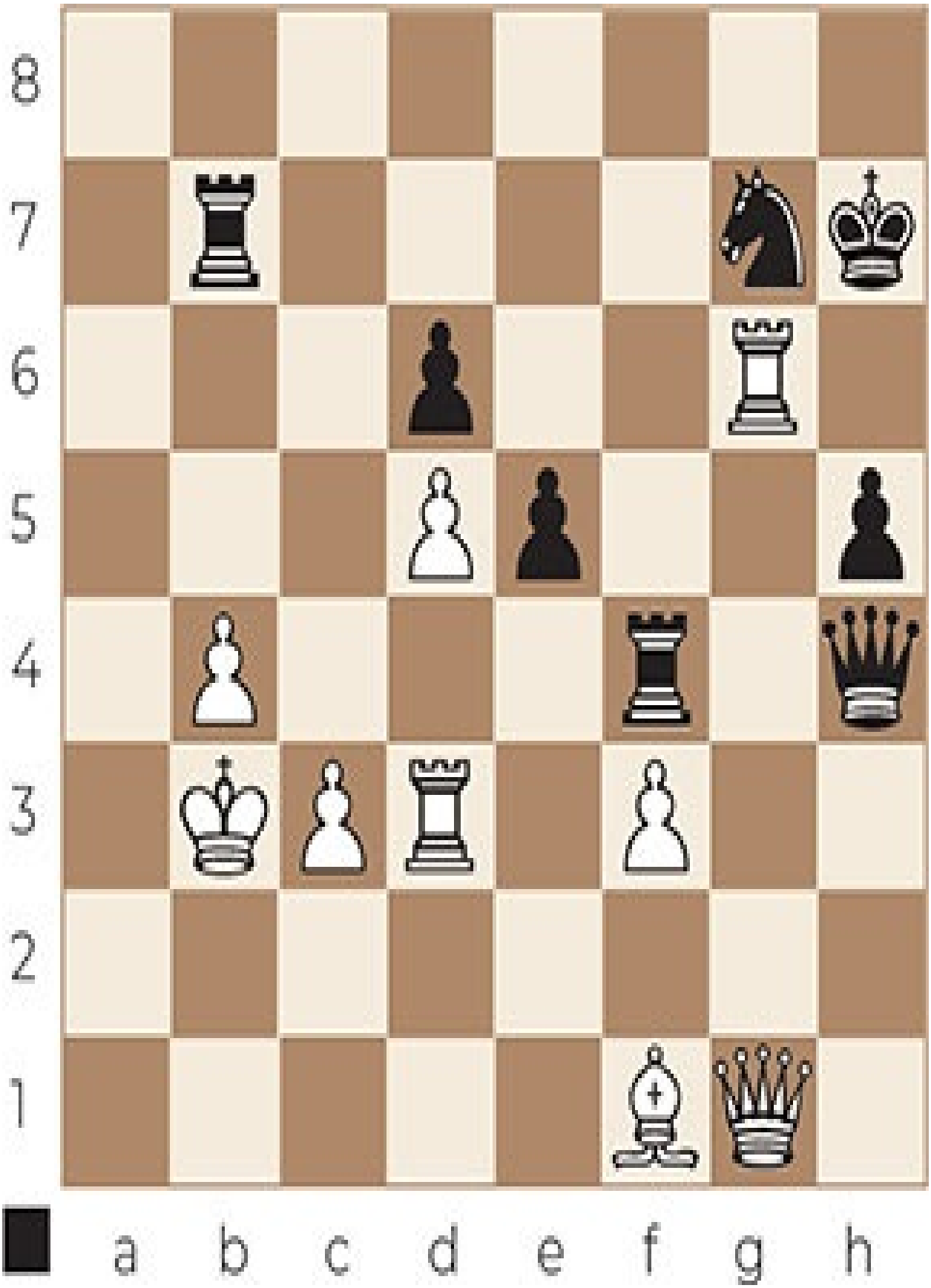
Exercise C 112

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

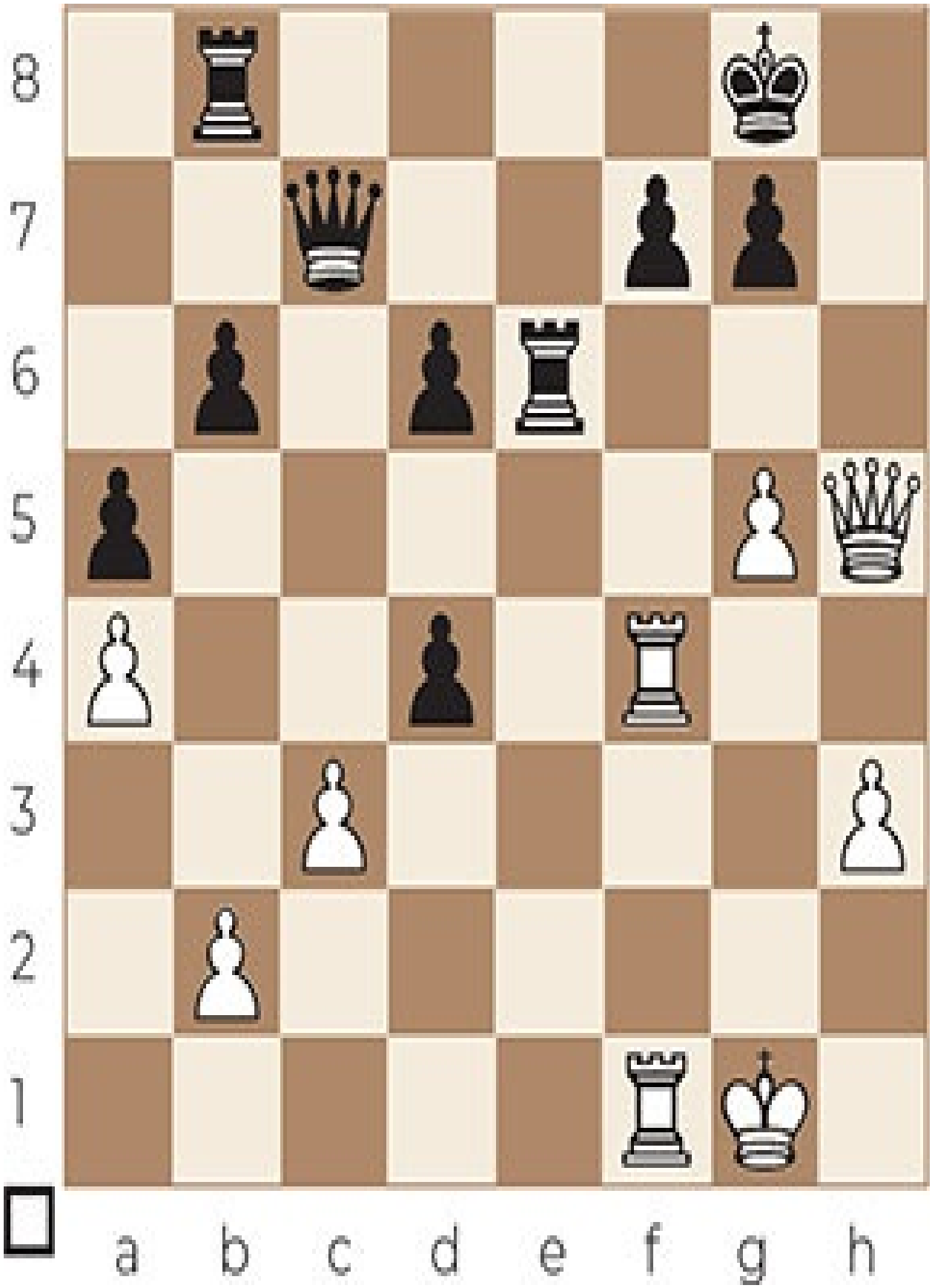
Exercise C 113

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 114


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 115


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 116

h8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 117

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 118

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

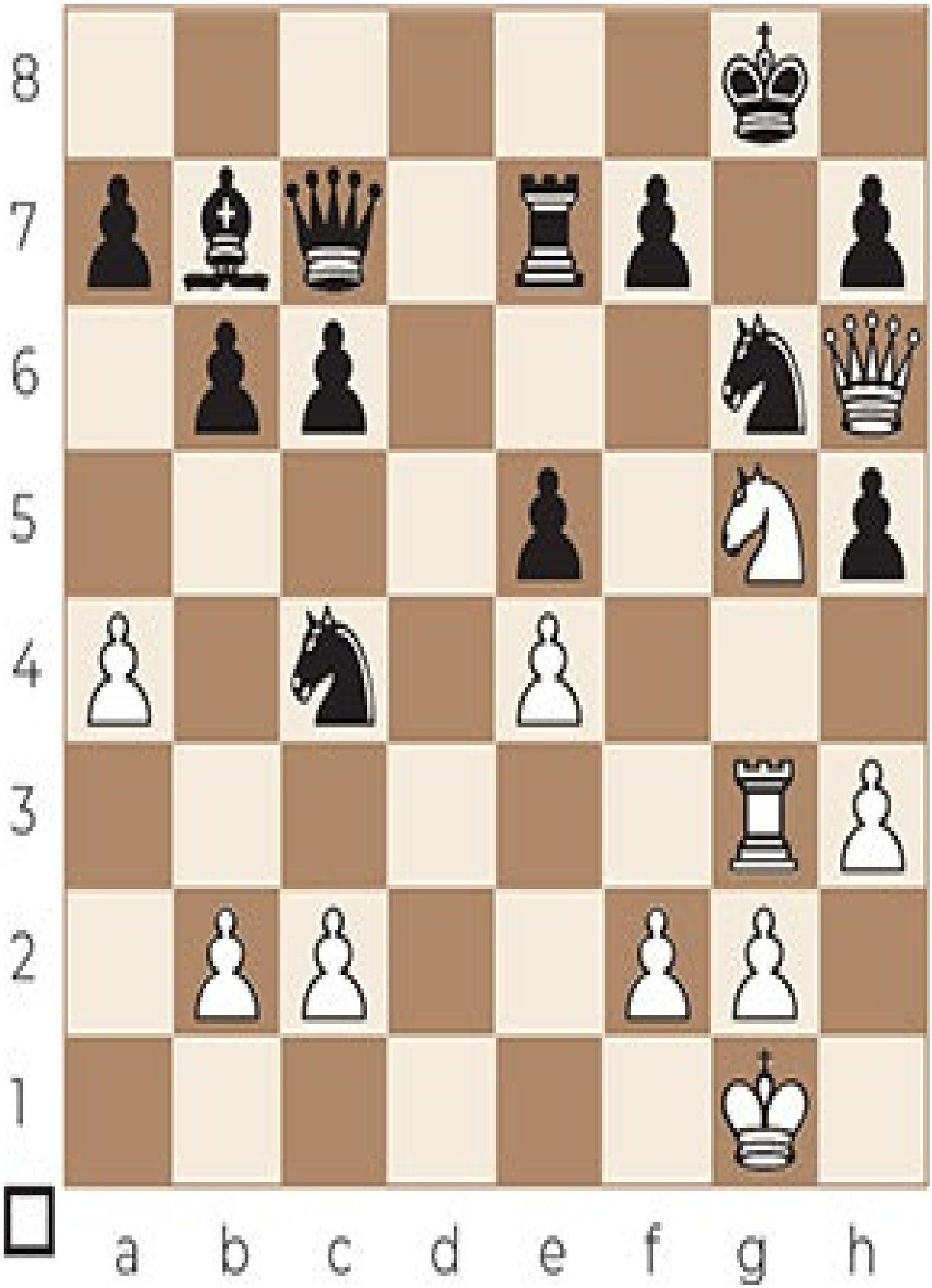
Exercise C 119

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

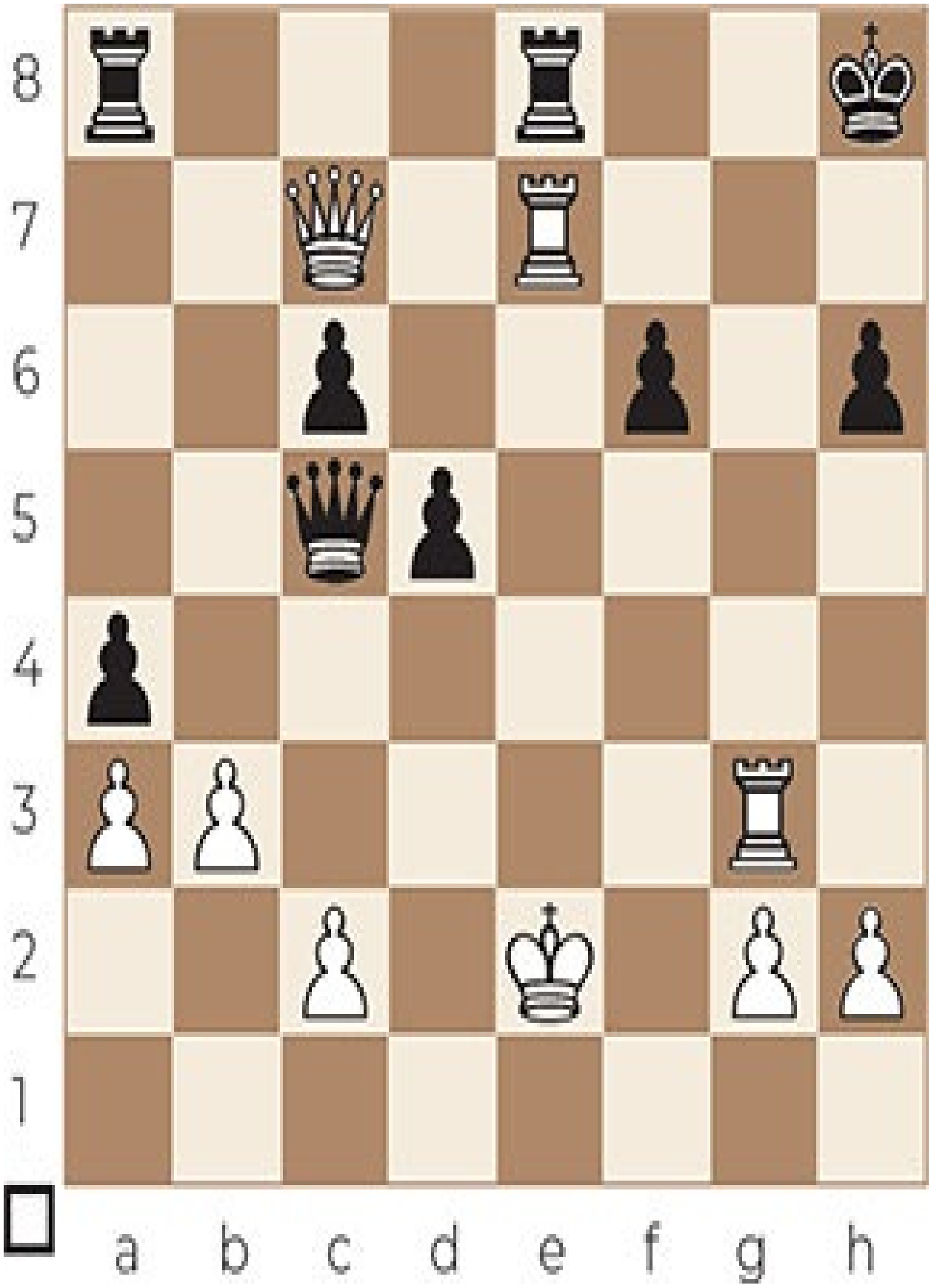
Exercise C 120

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

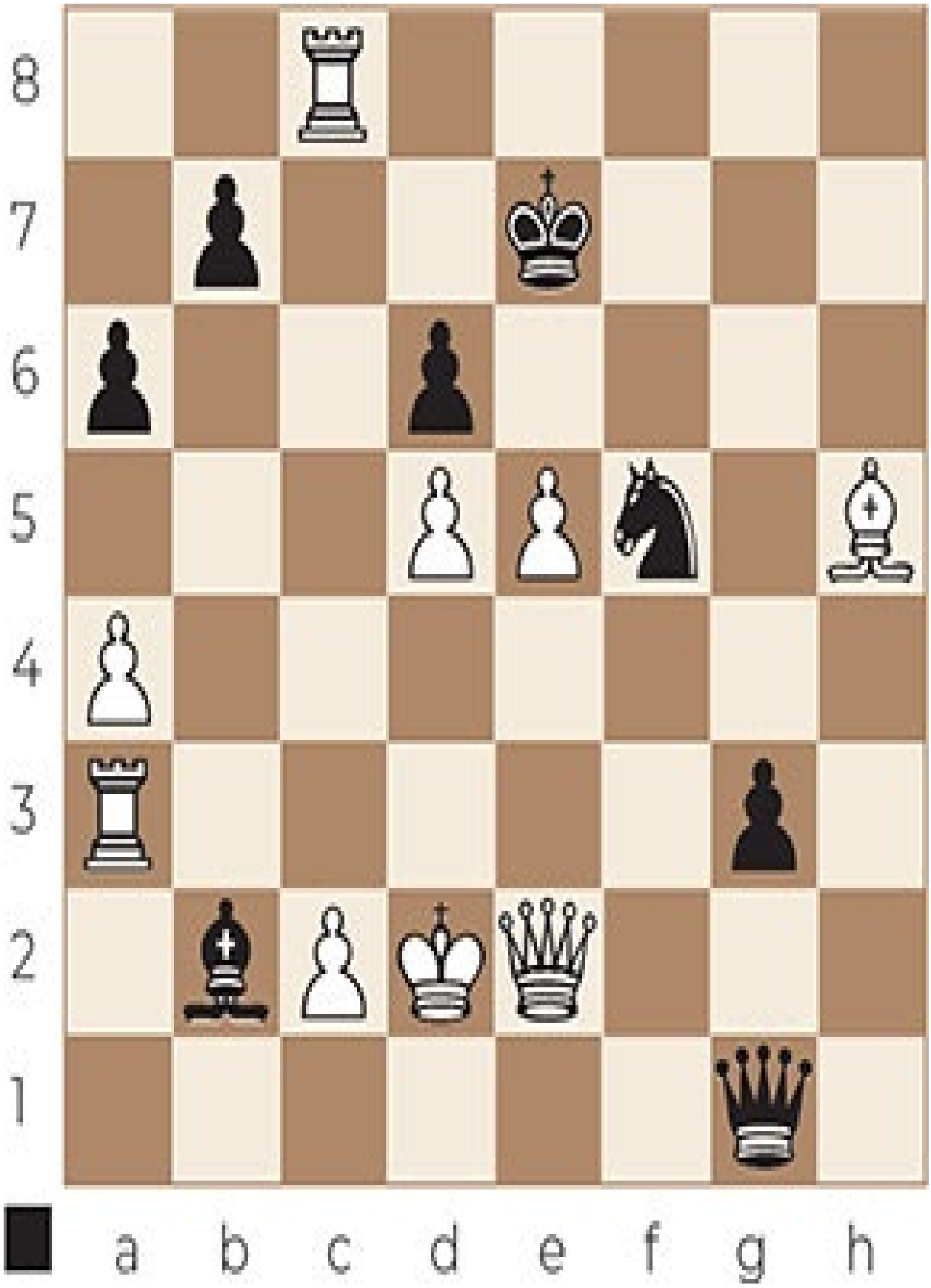
Exercise C 121


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 122


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 123


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 124

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

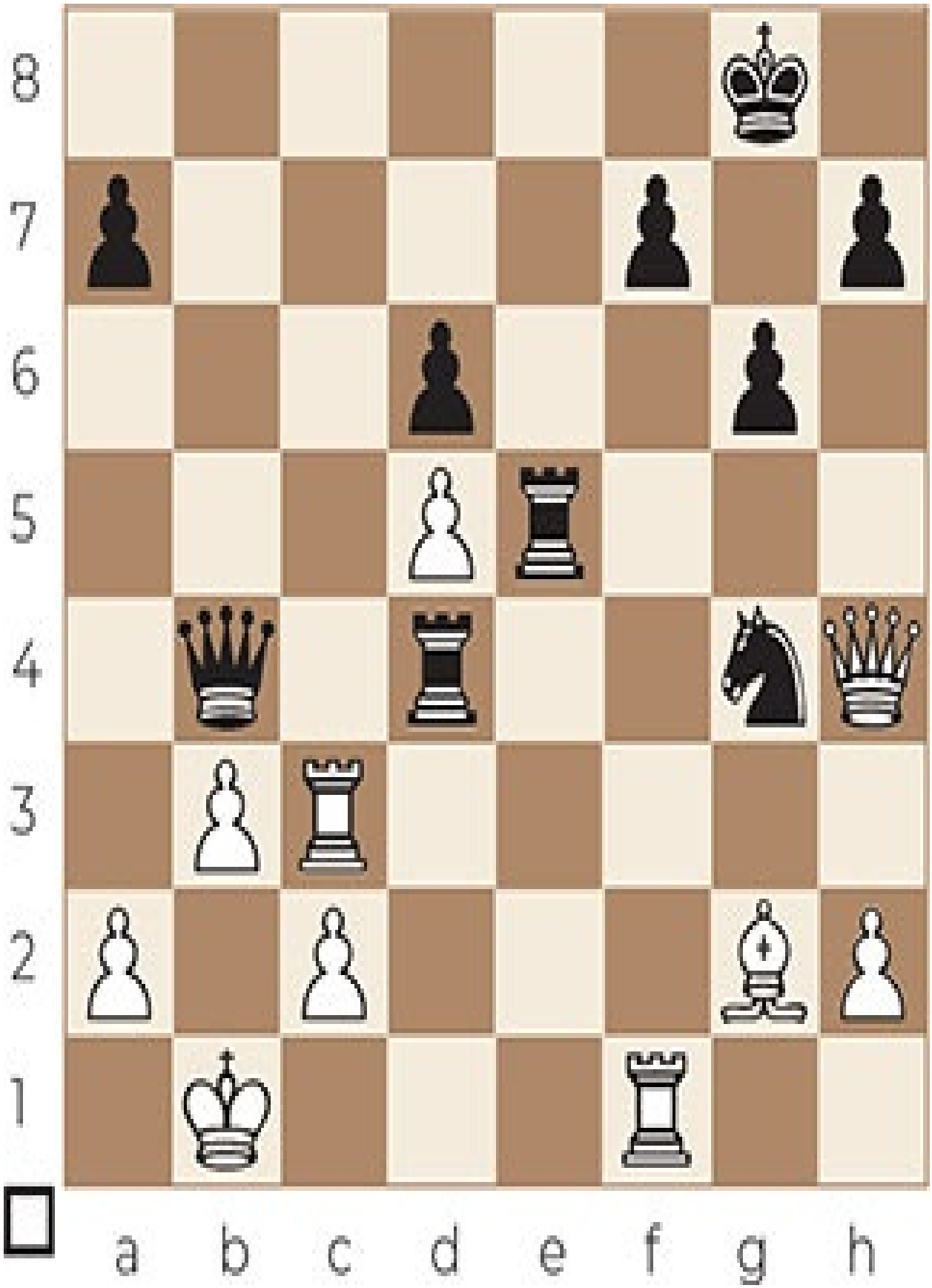
Exercise C 125

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 126

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

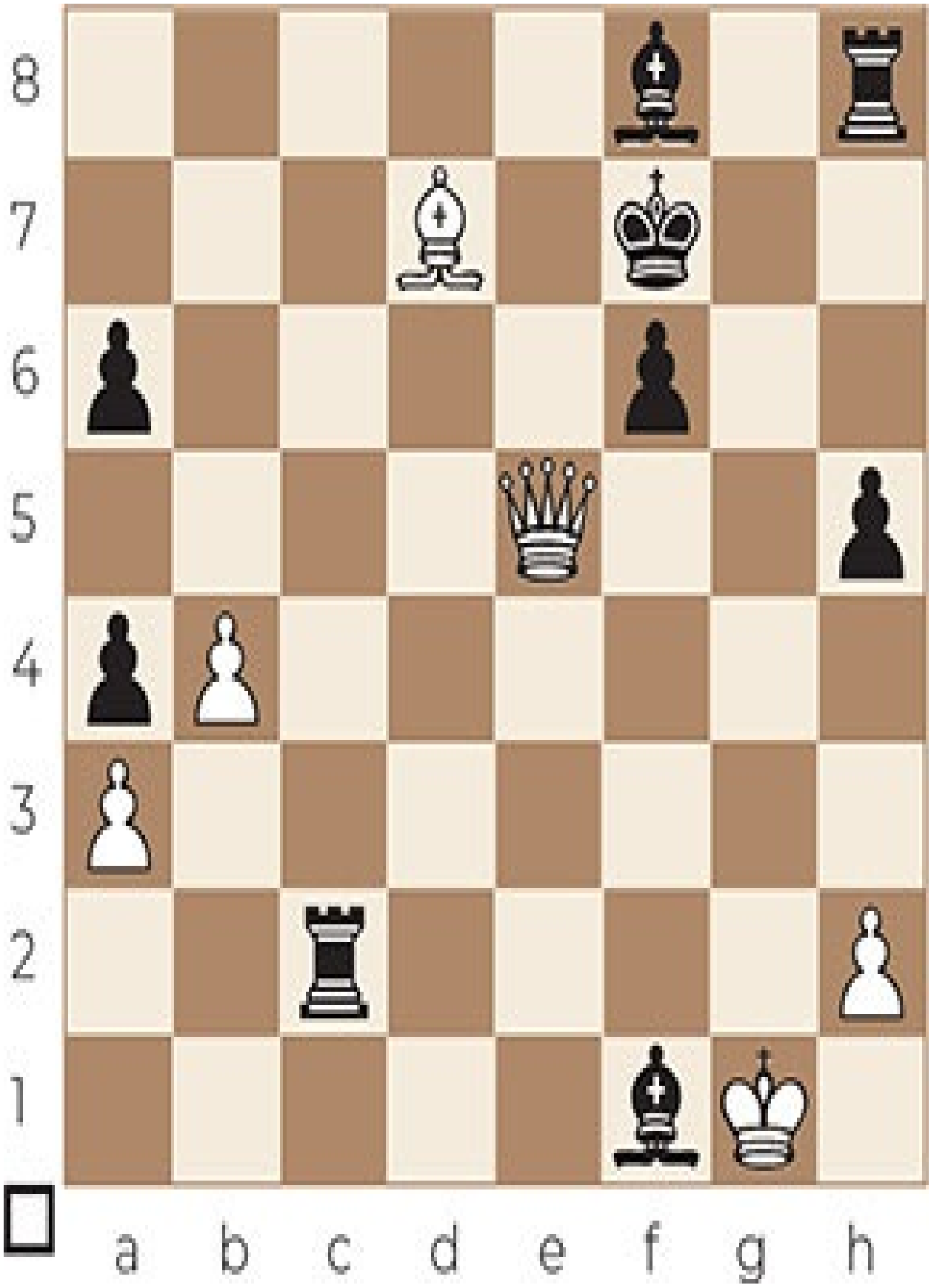
Exercise C 127


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

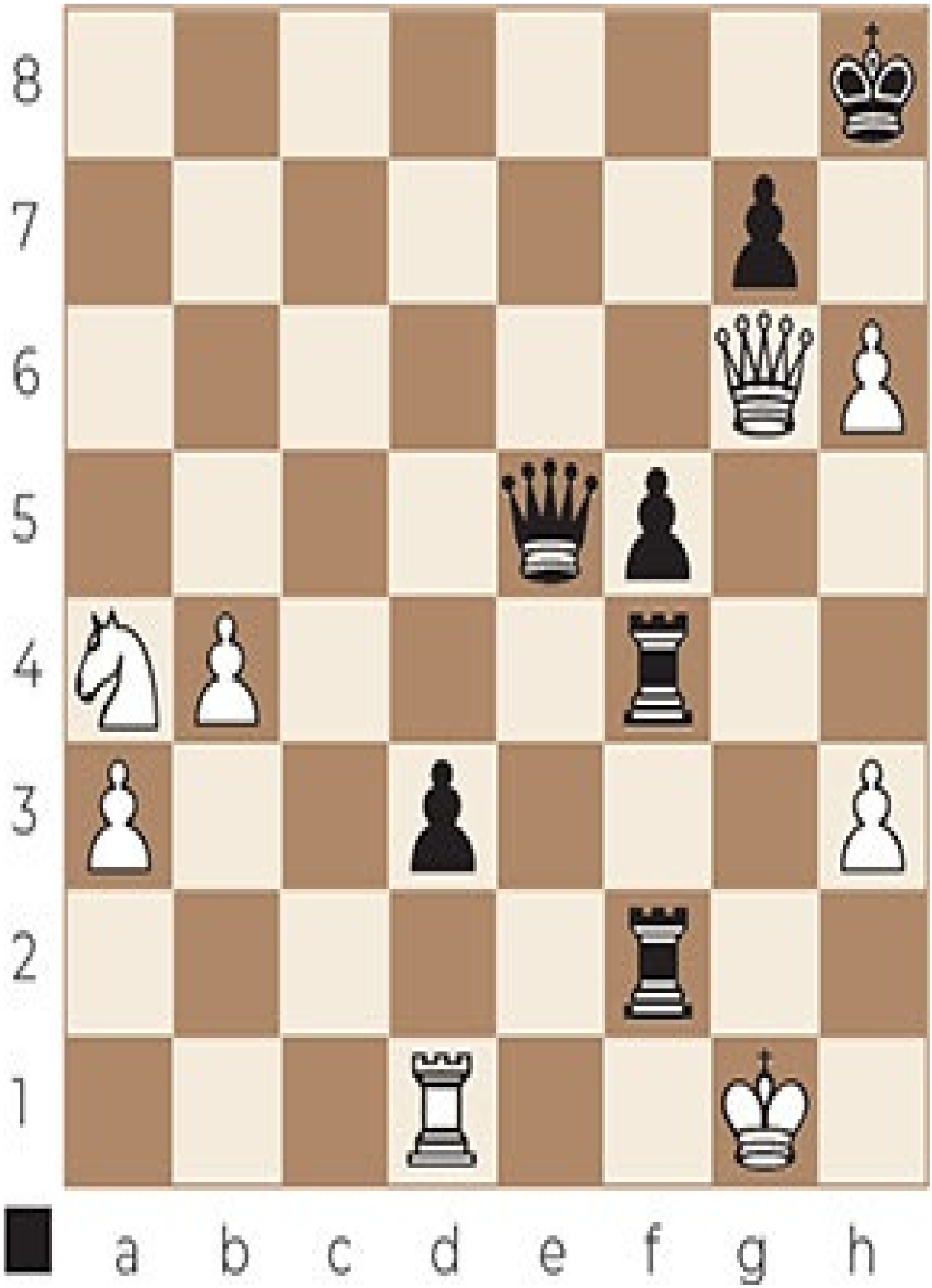
Exercise C 128

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 129


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 130


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 131

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 132

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 133

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

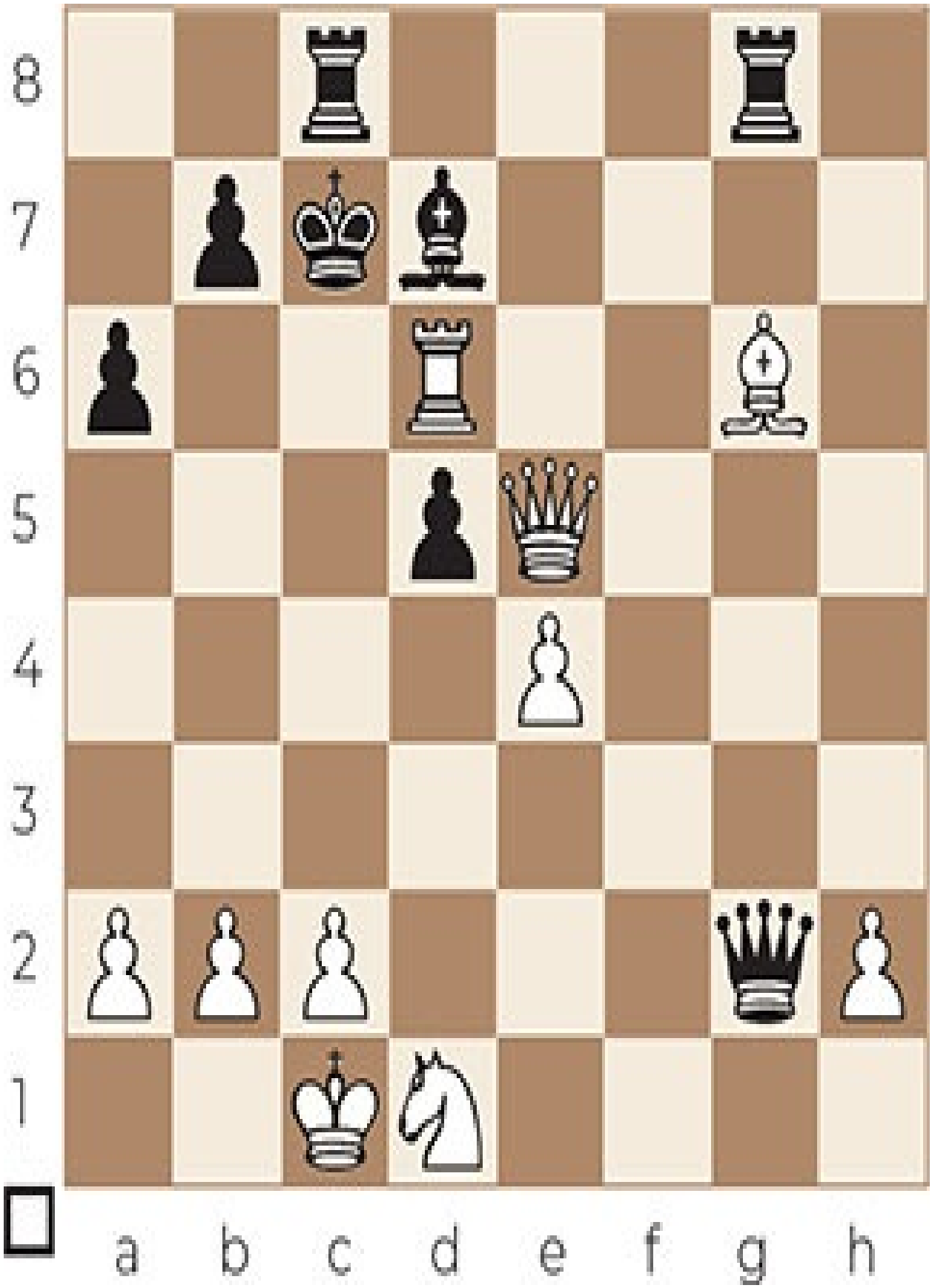
Exercise C 134

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 135

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

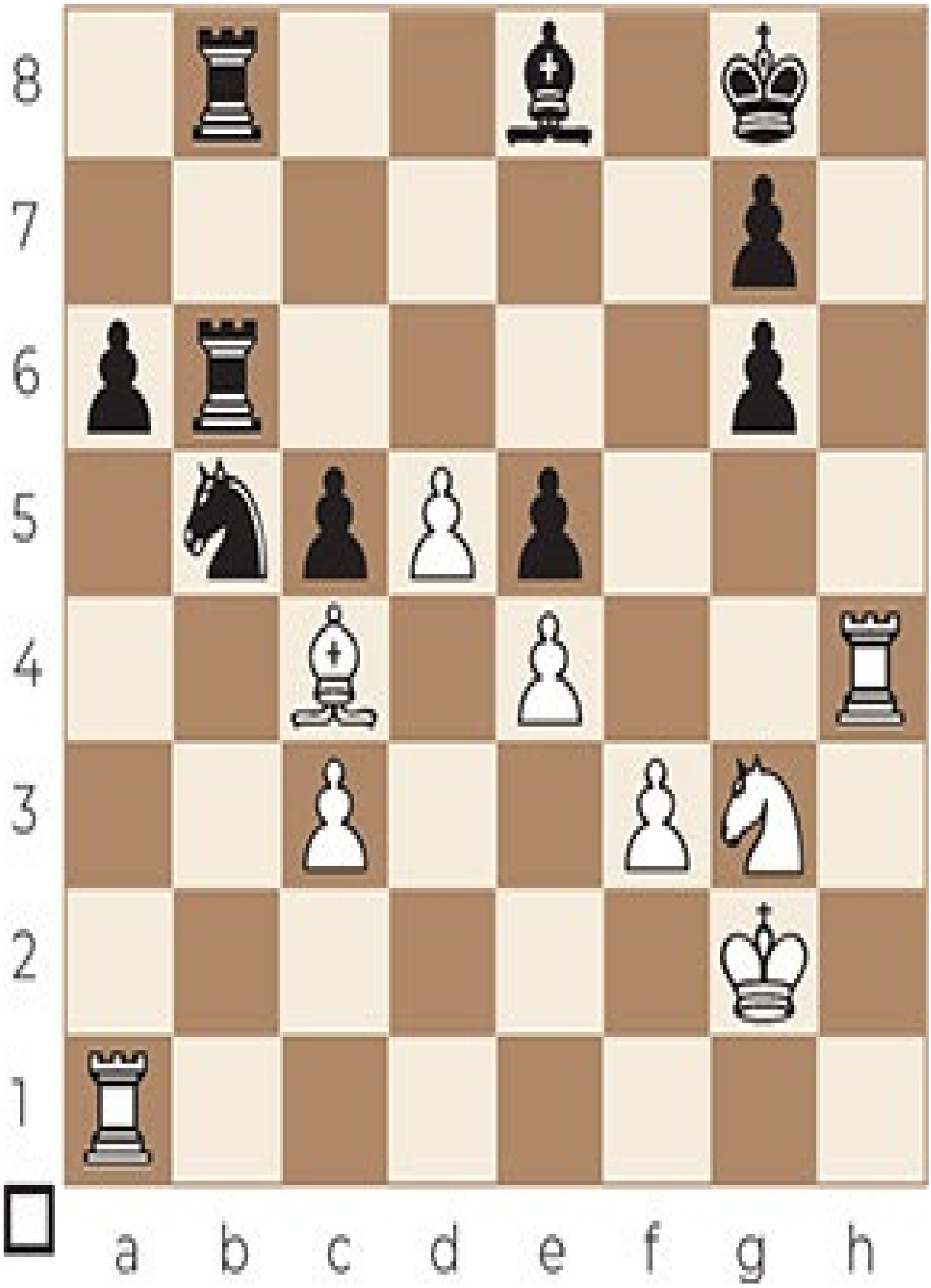
Exercise C 136


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 137

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

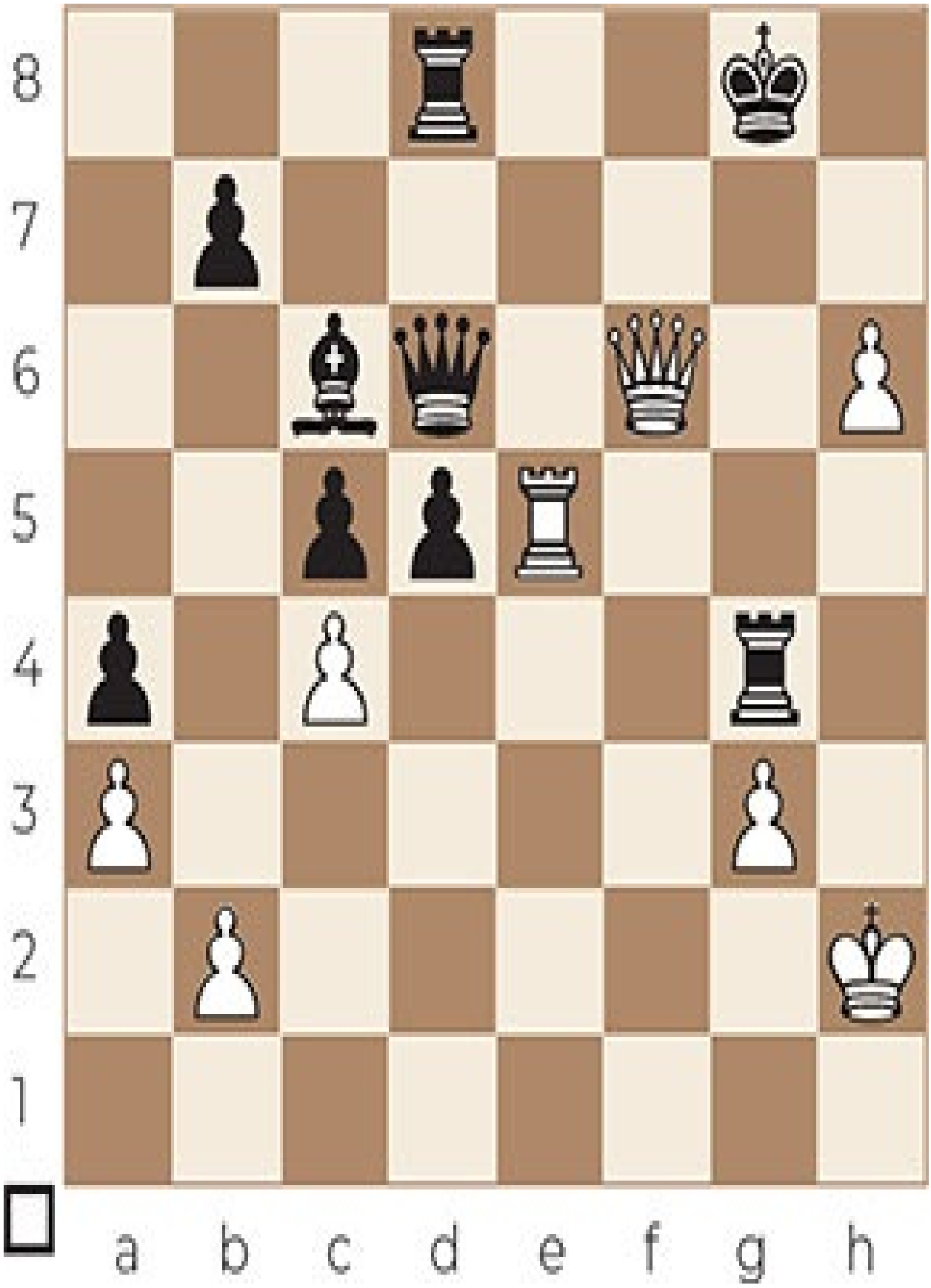
Exercise C 138


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 139

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 140


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 141

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 142

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 143

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

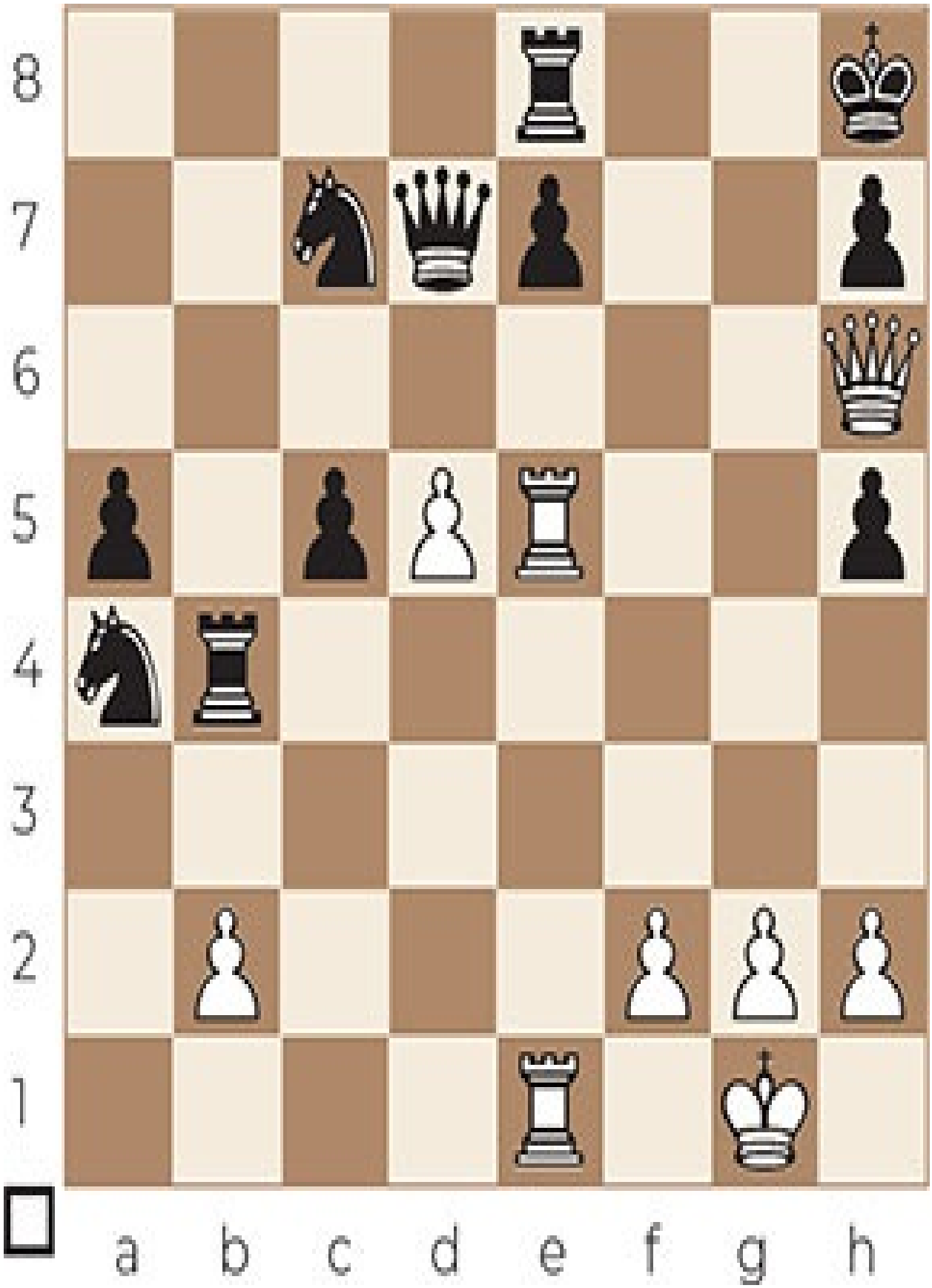
Exercise C 144

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

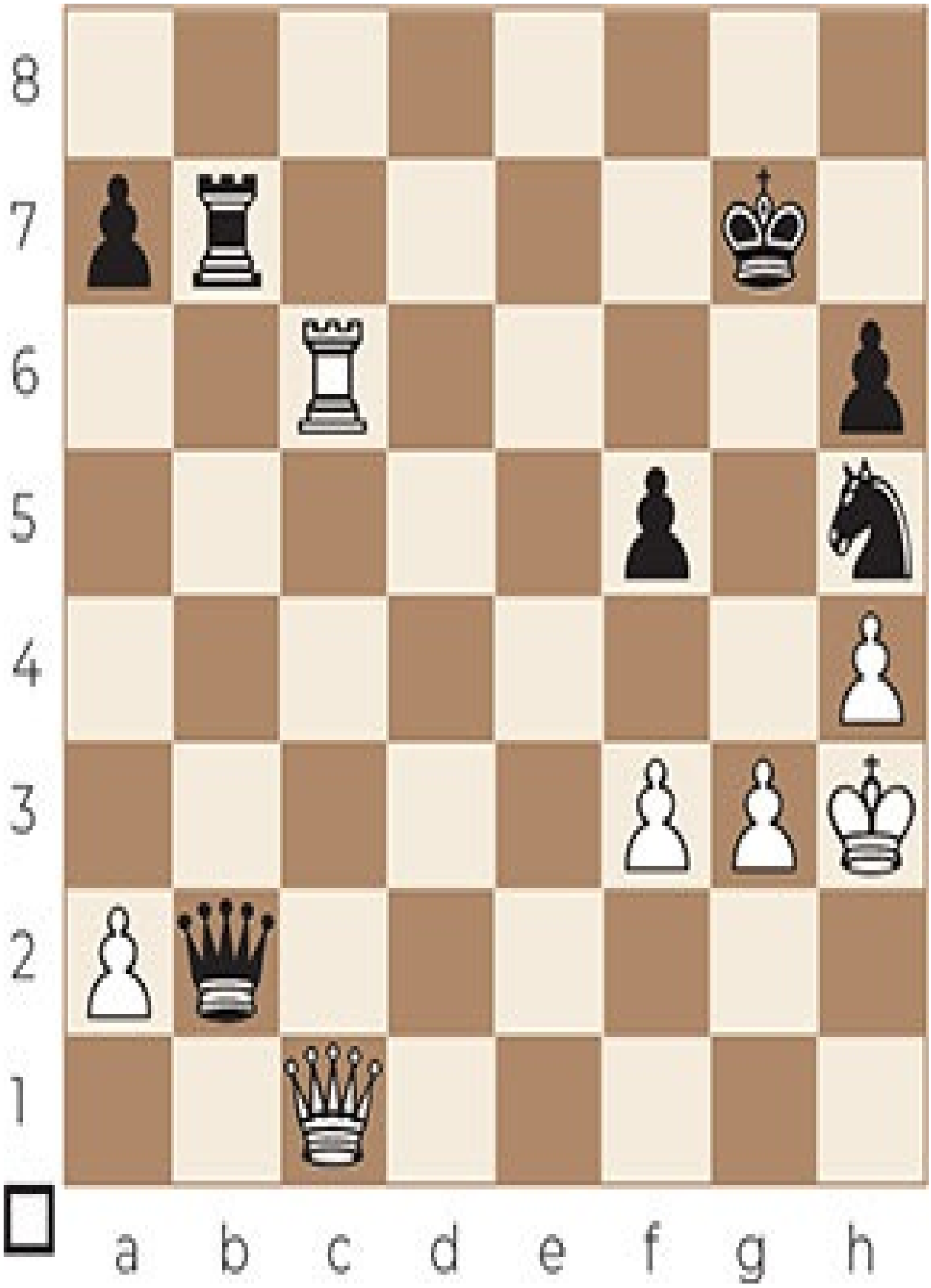
Exercise C 145

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 146


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 147


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

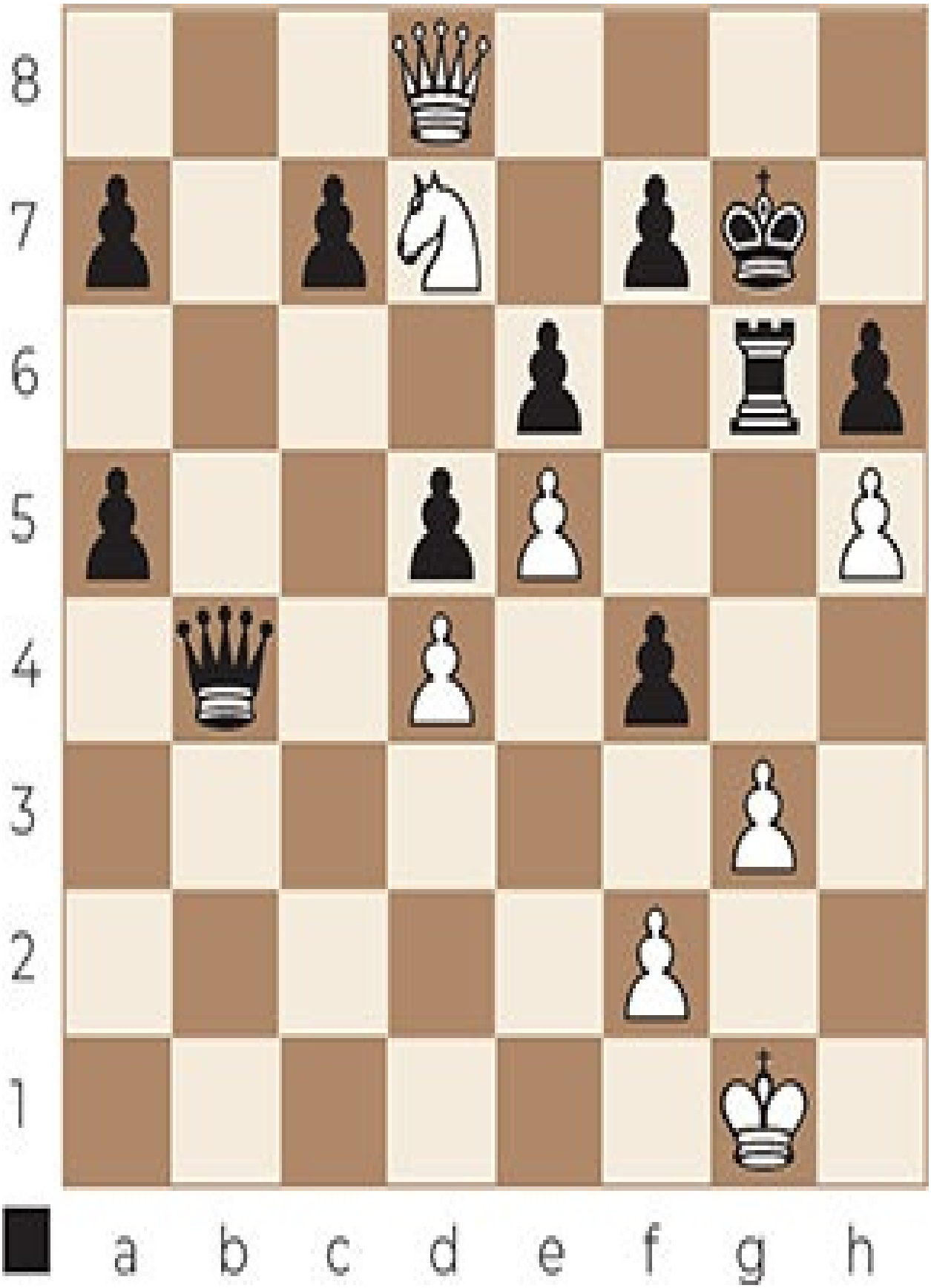
Exercise C 148

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 149

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

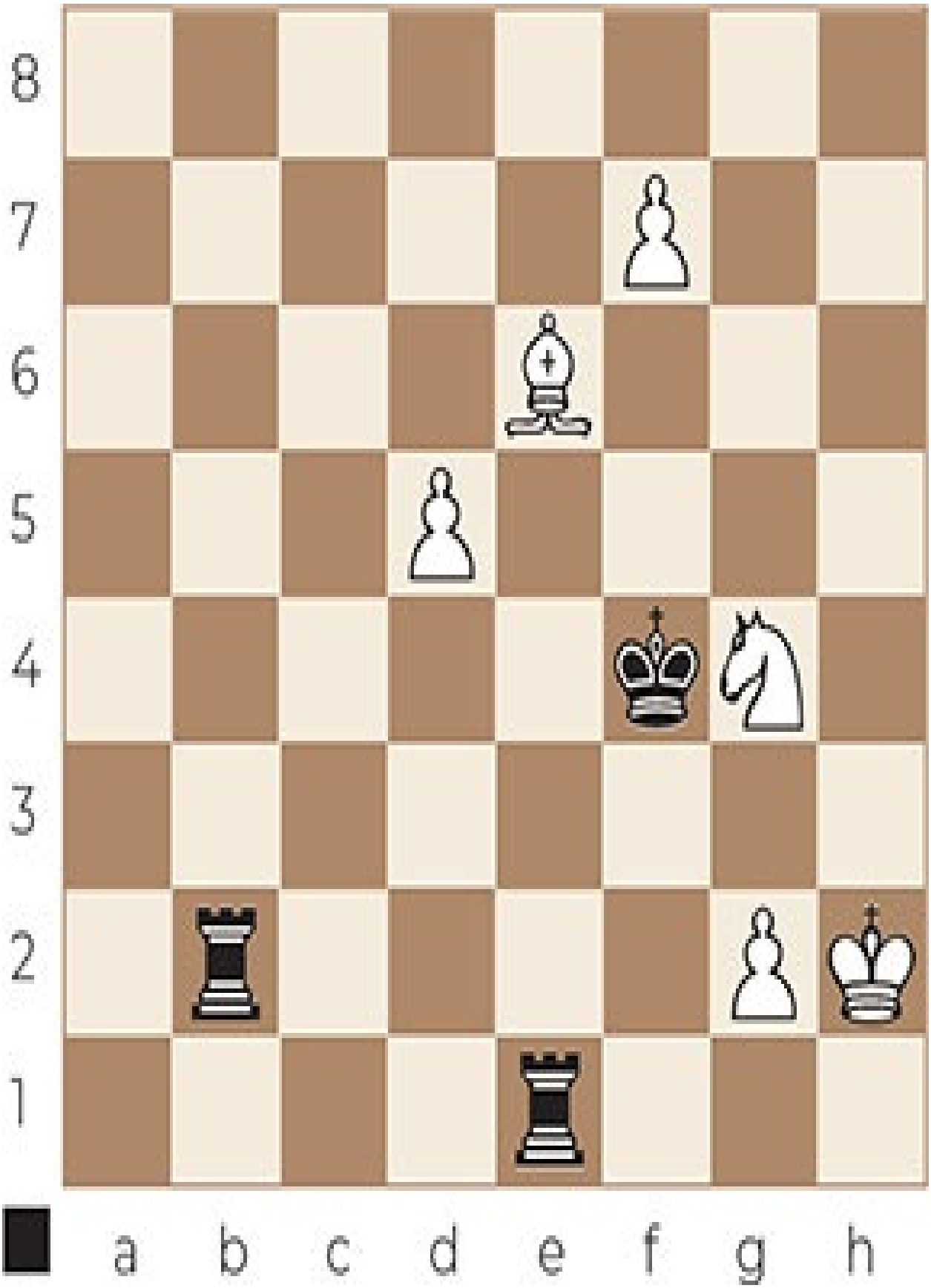
Exercise C 150


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

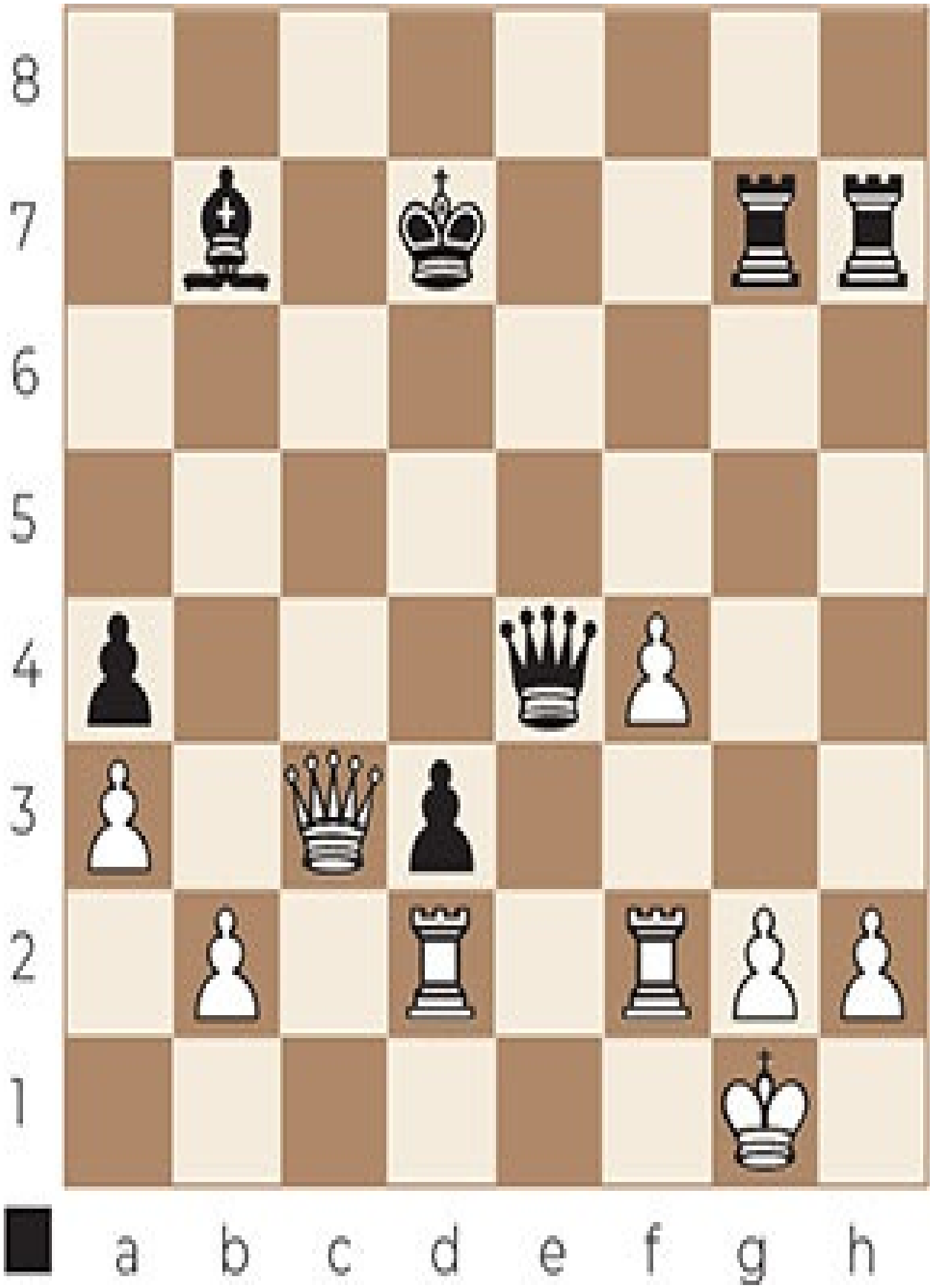
Exercise C 151

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 152


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

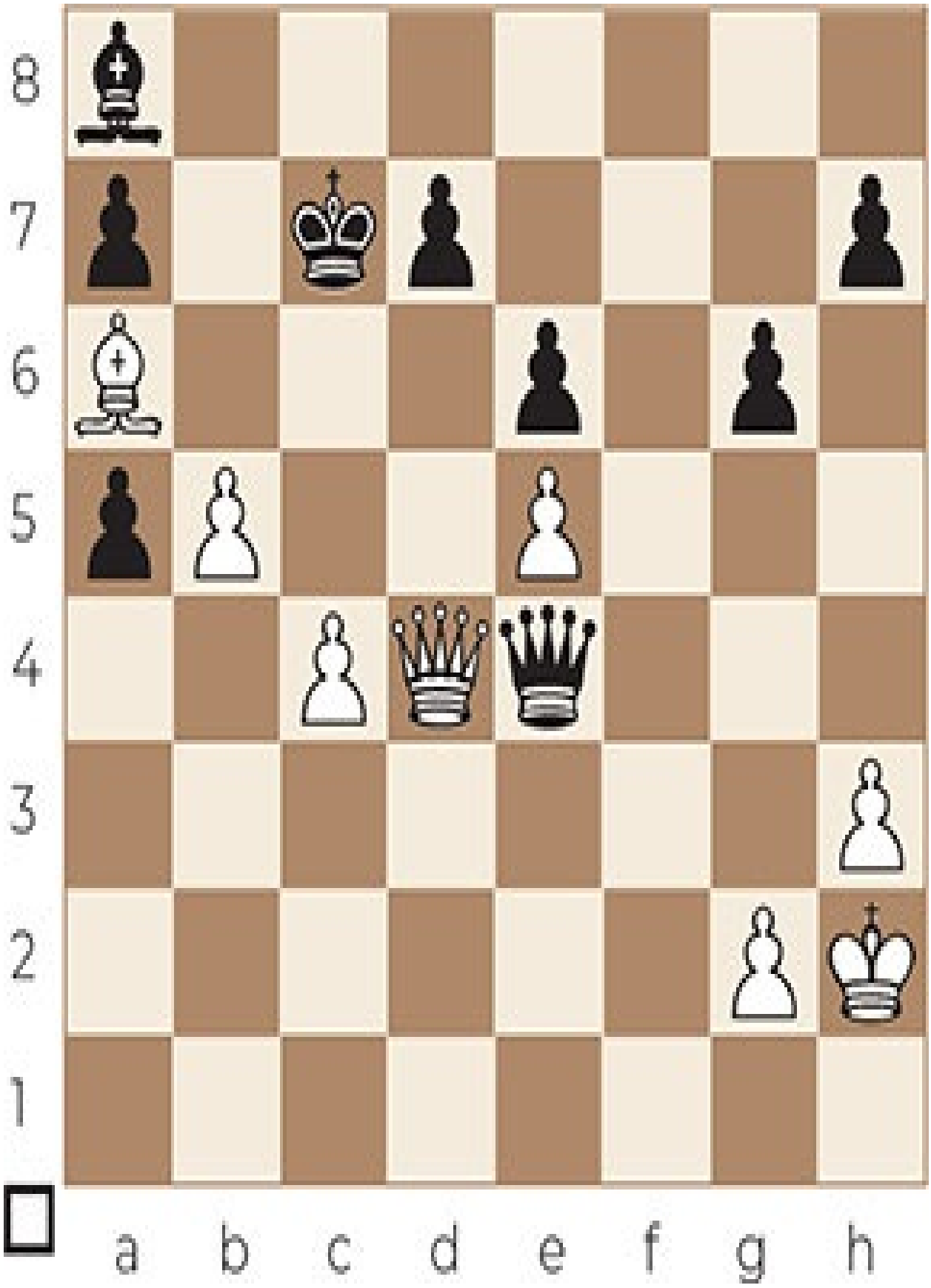
Exercise C 153


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

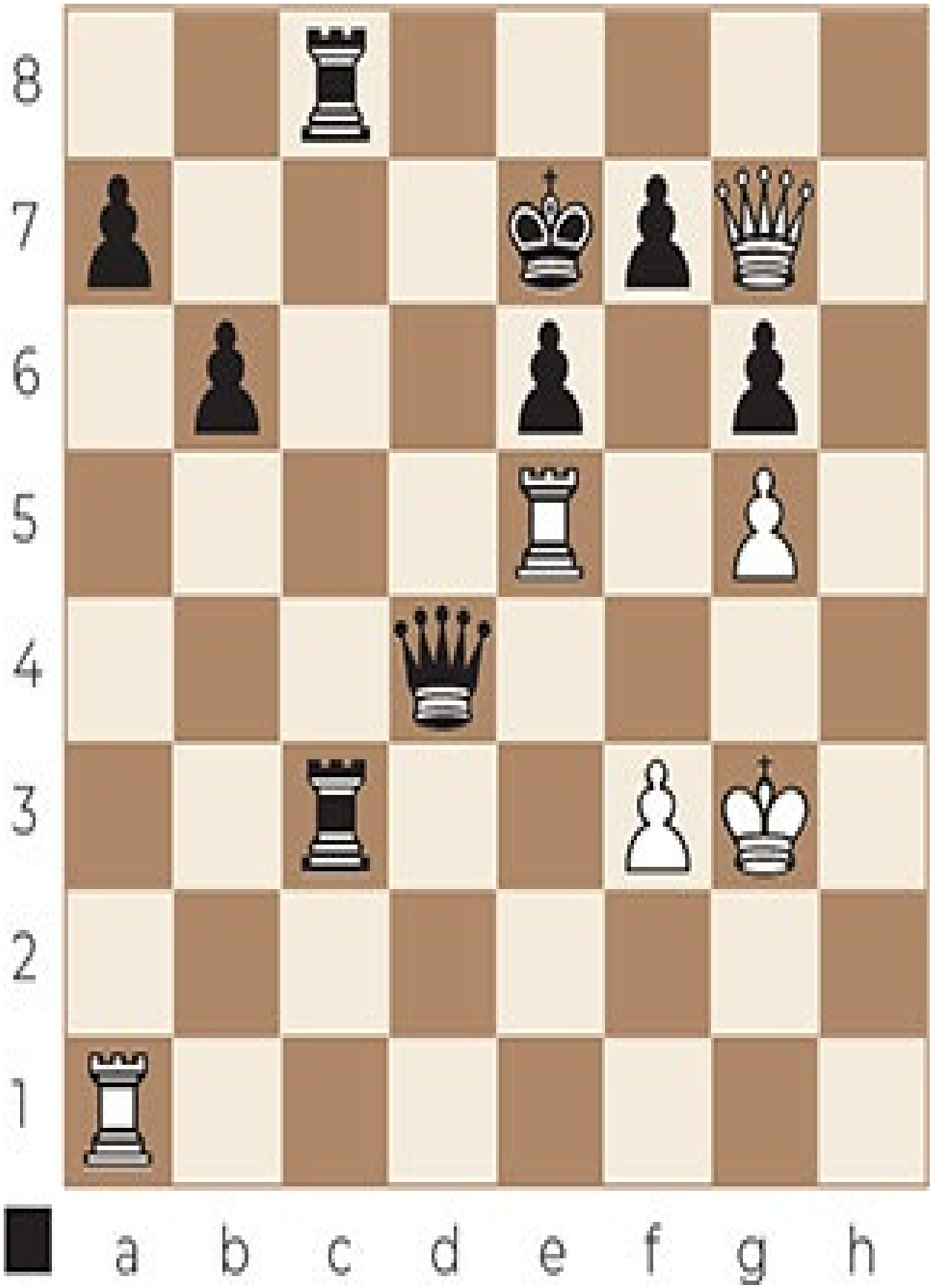
Exercise C 154

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 155


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 156


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

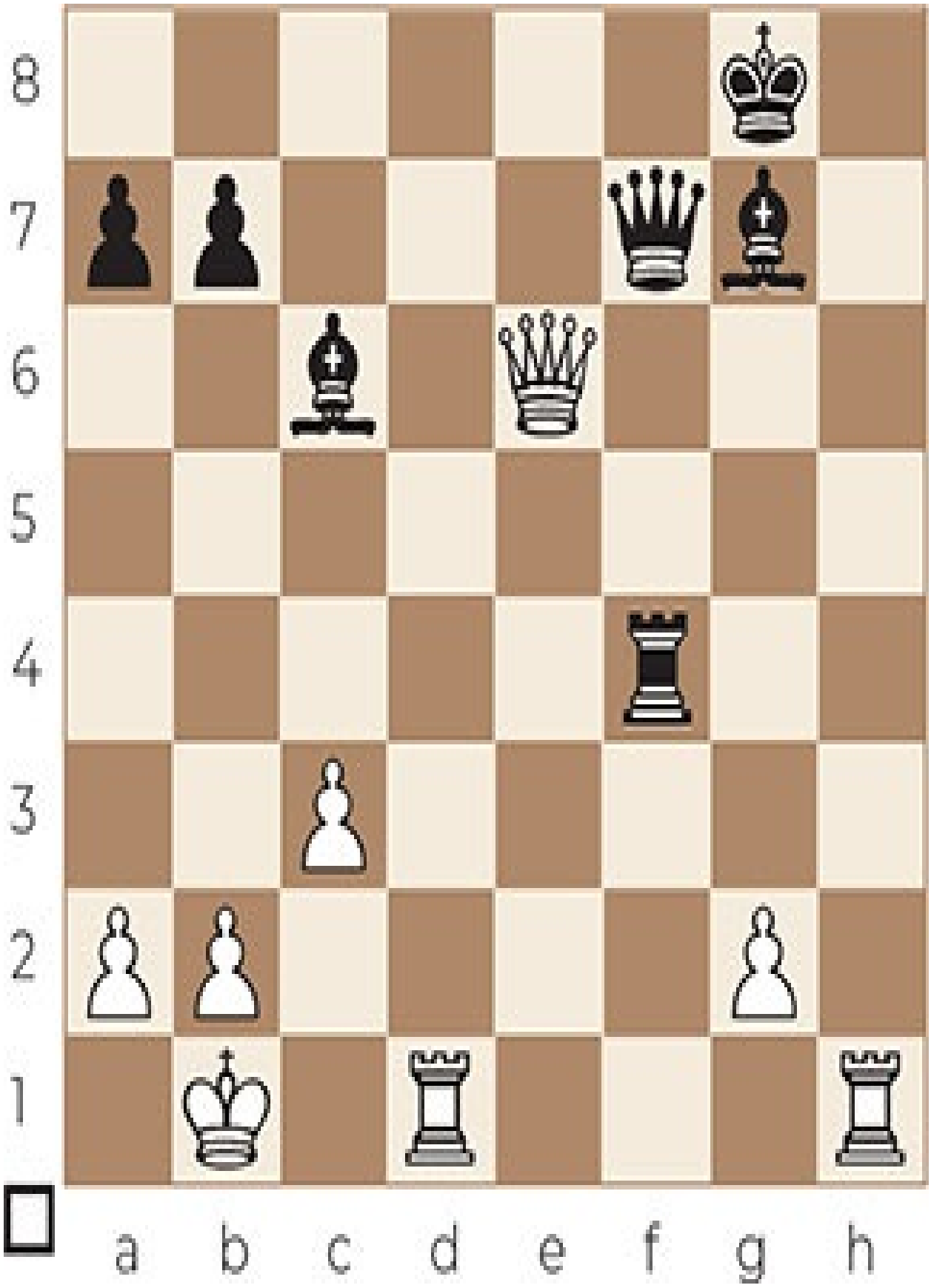
Exercise C 157

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 158

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 159


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 160

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

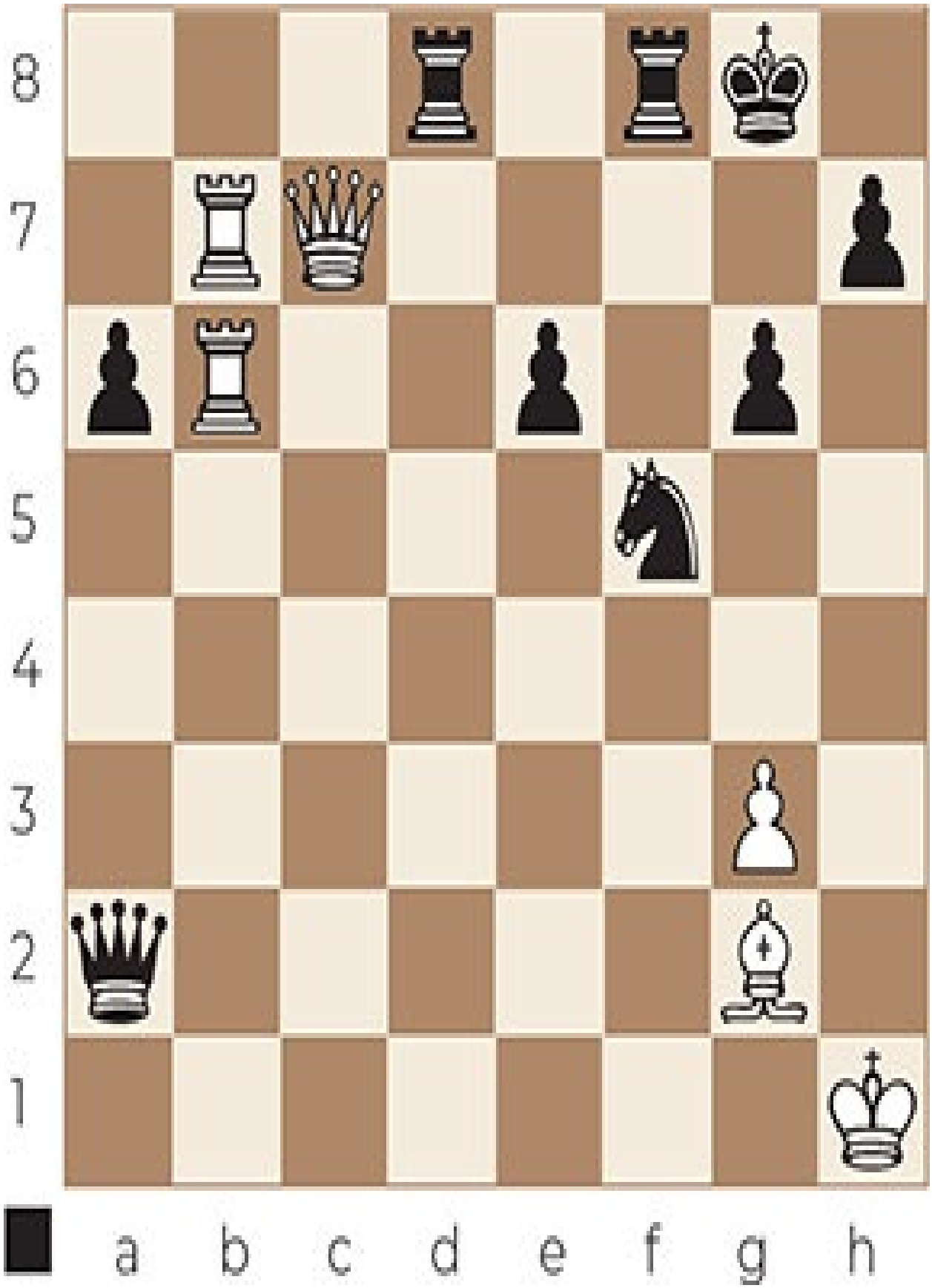
Exercise C 161

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 162

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

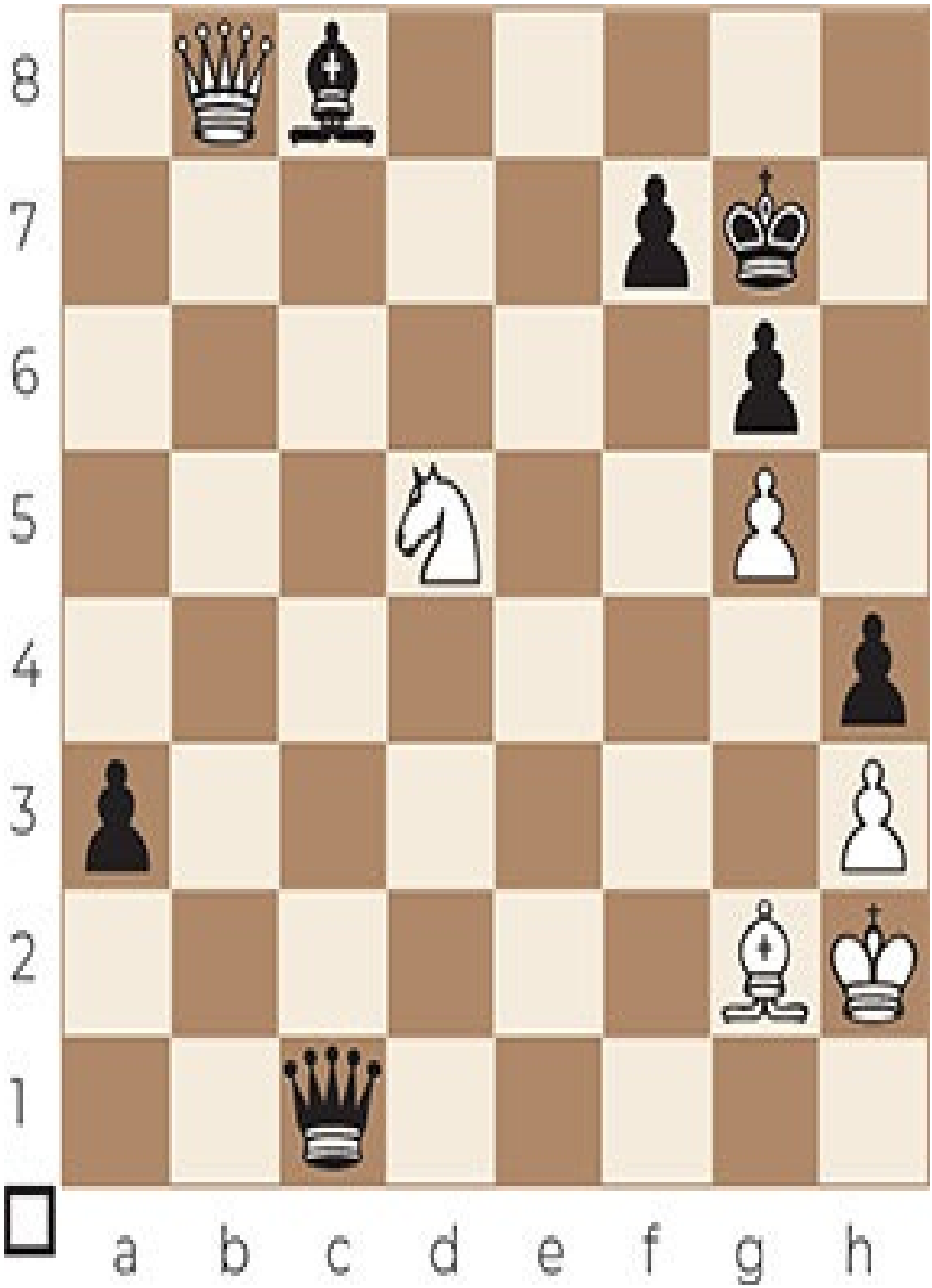
Exercise C 163


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 164

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 165


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

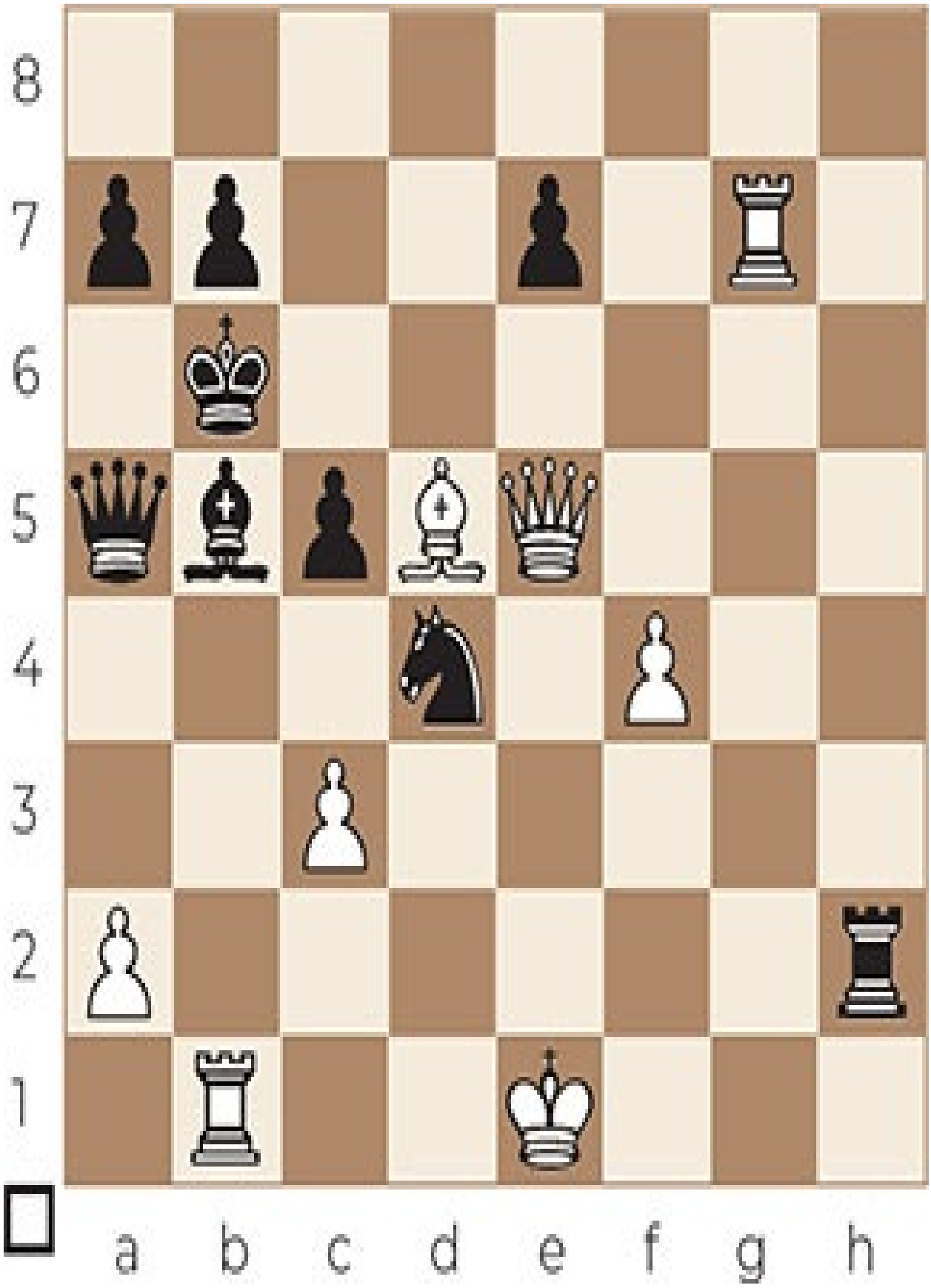
Exercise C 166

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 167

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

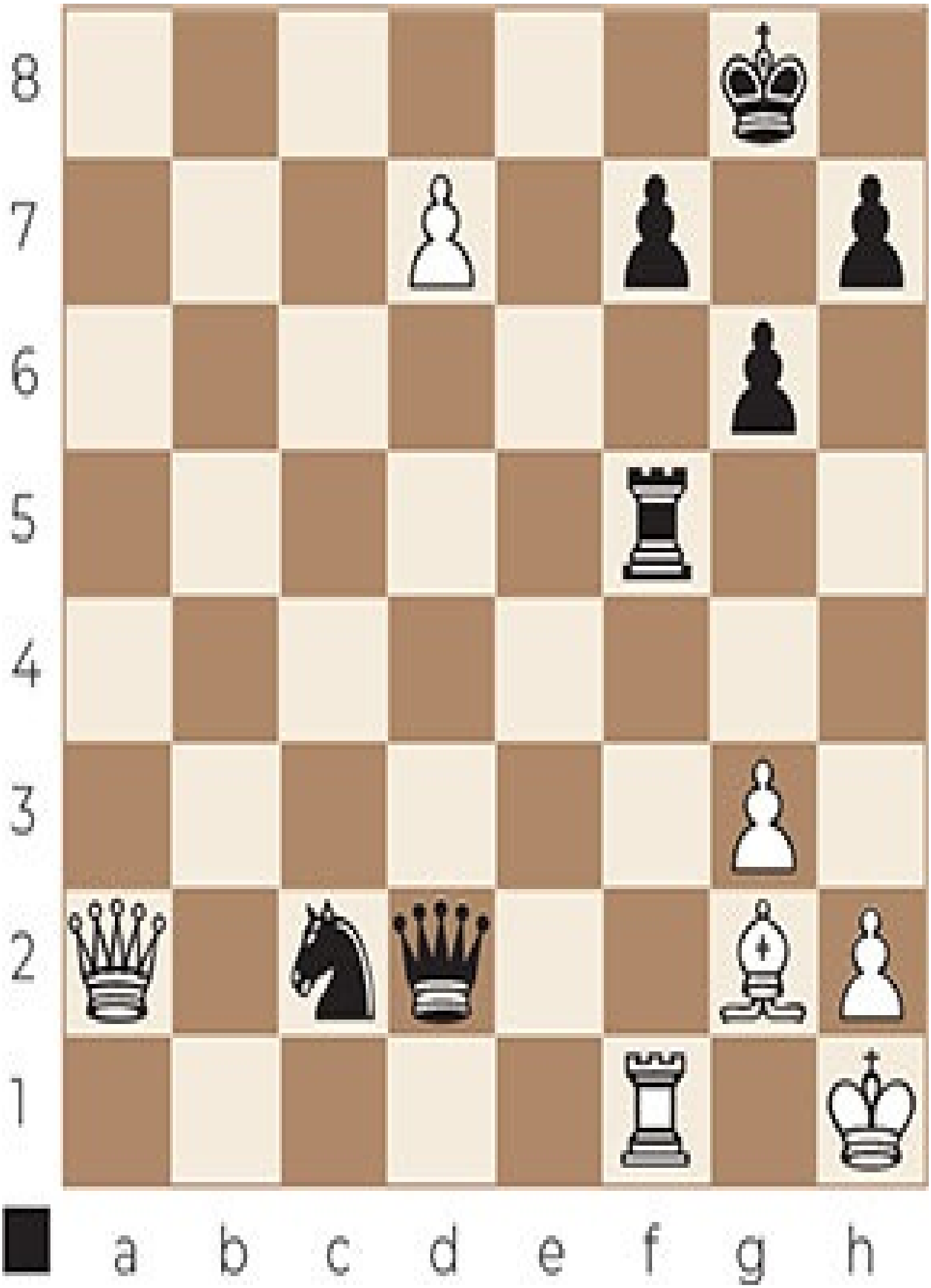
Exercise C 168


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 169

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 170


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

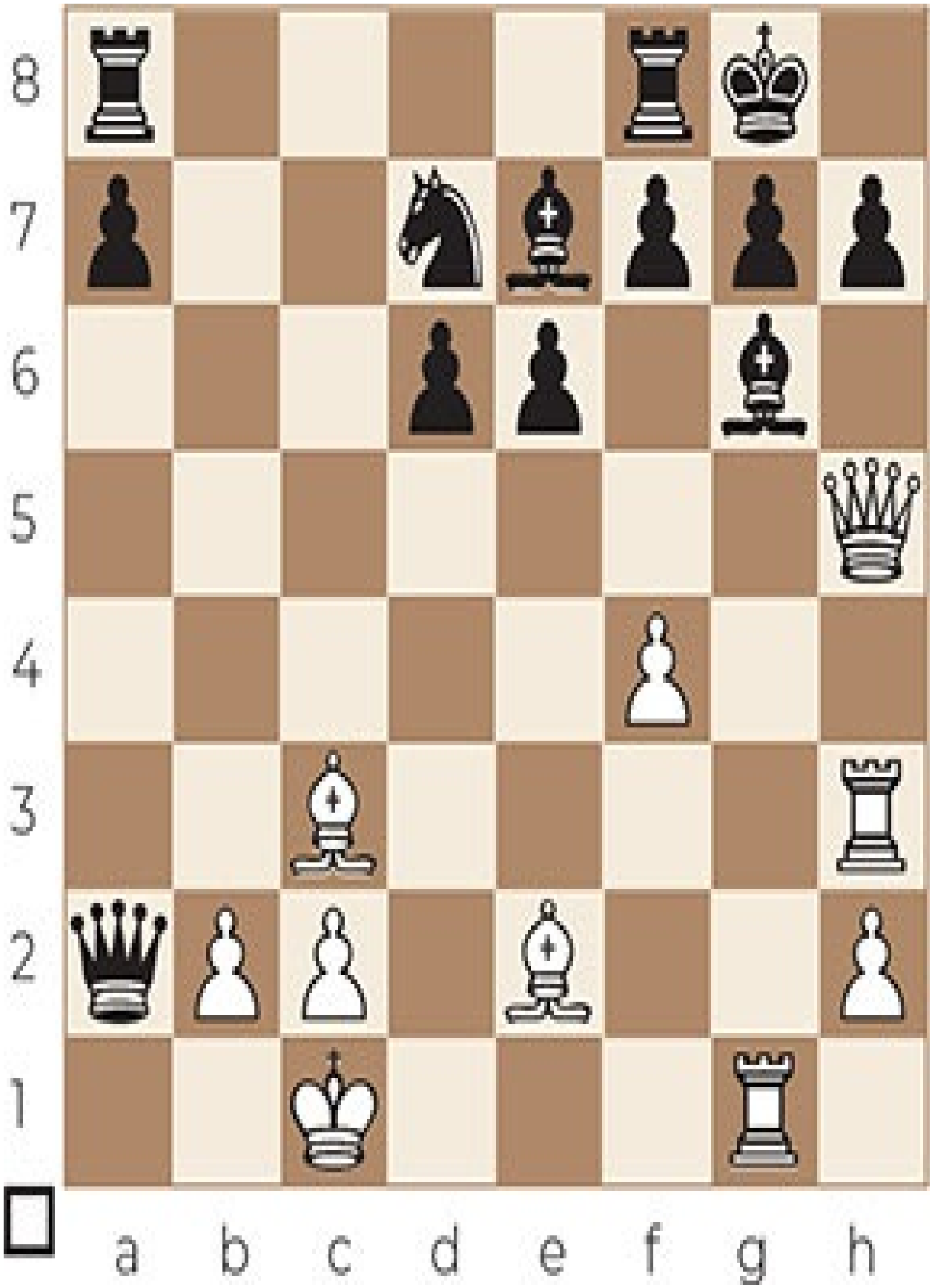
Exercise C 171

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 172

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 173


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 174

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 175

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 176

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 177

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 178

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

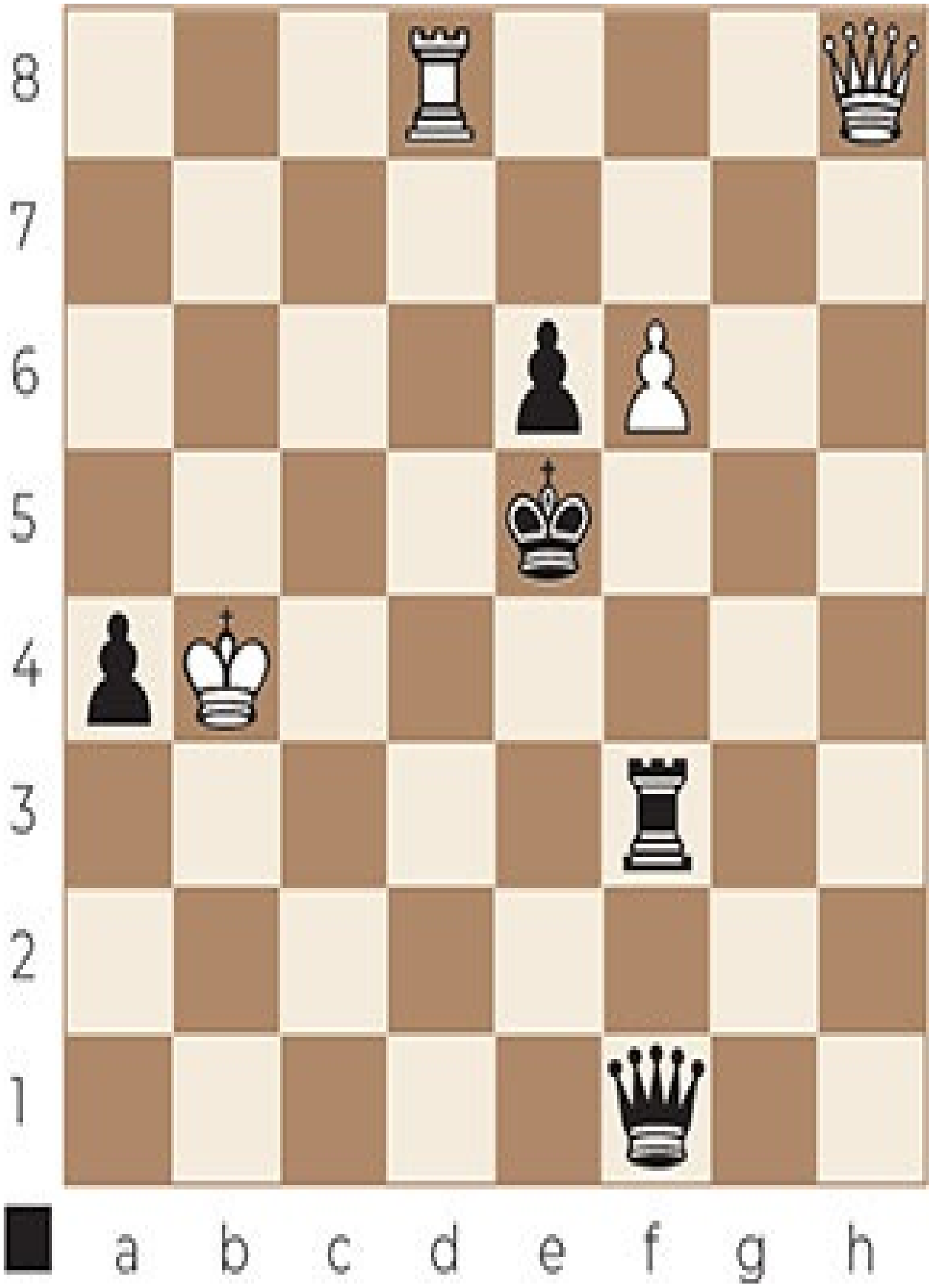
Exercise C 179

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 180

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

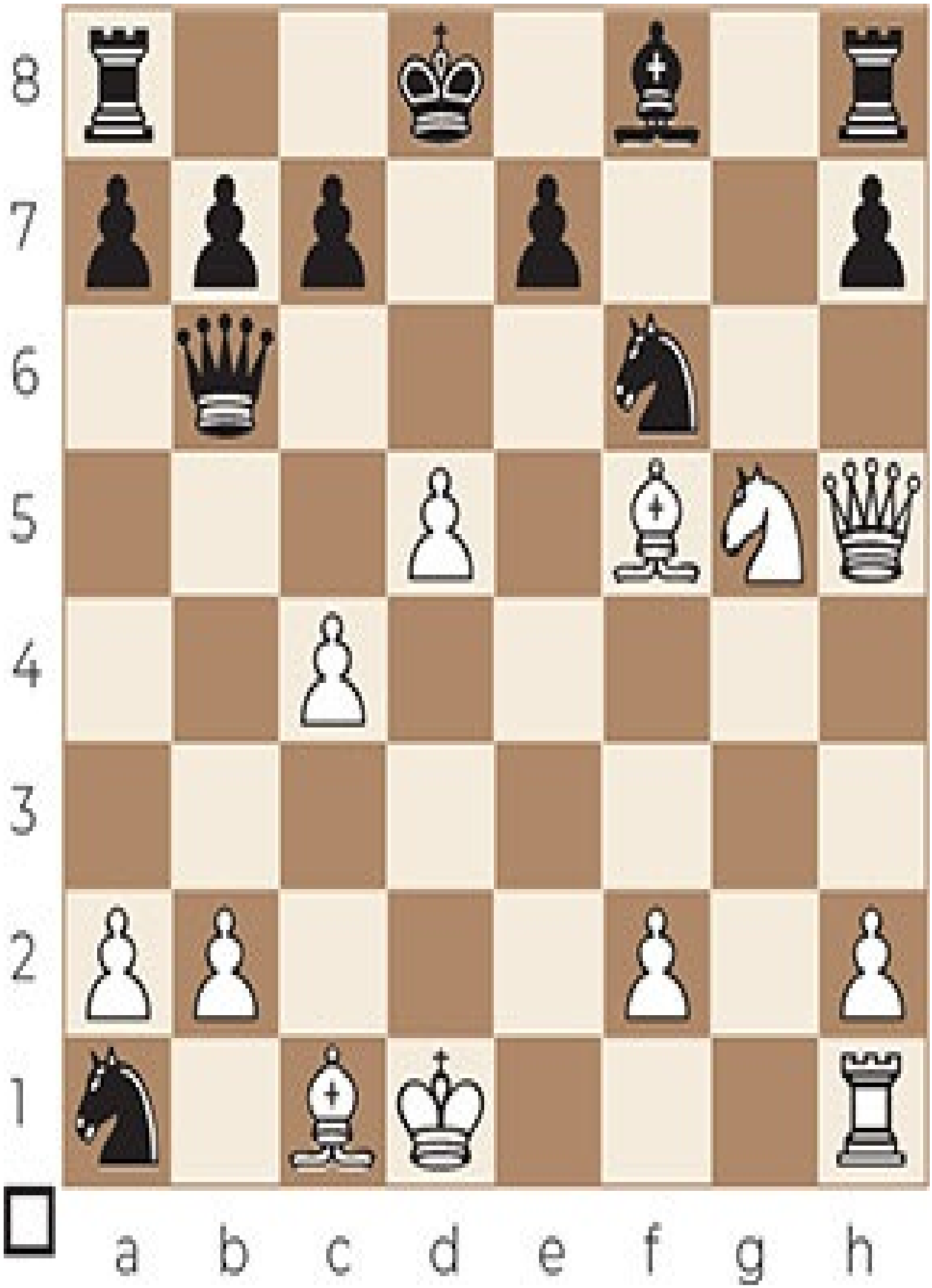
Exercise C 181


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 182

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 183


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

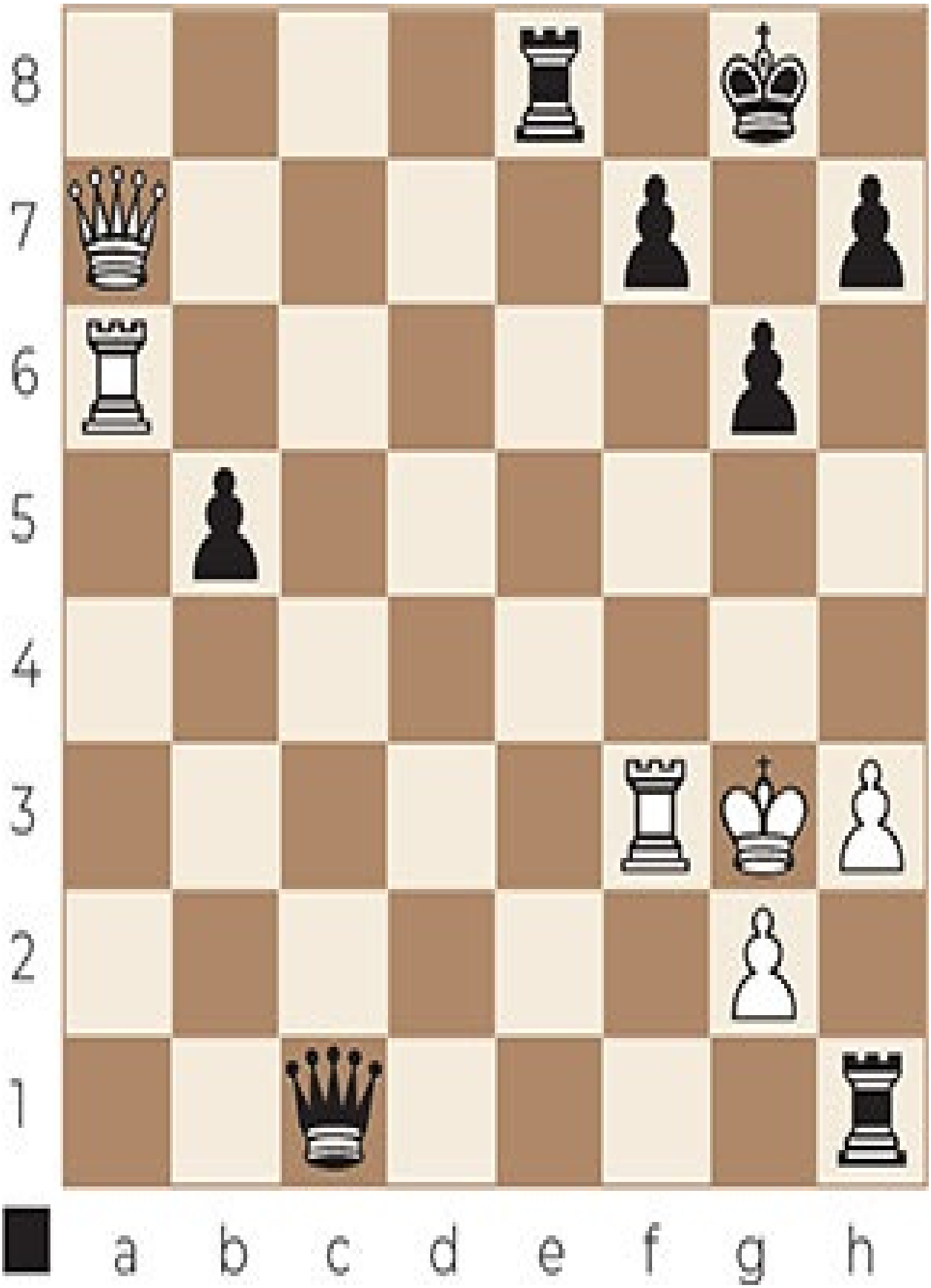
Exercise C 184

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 185

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

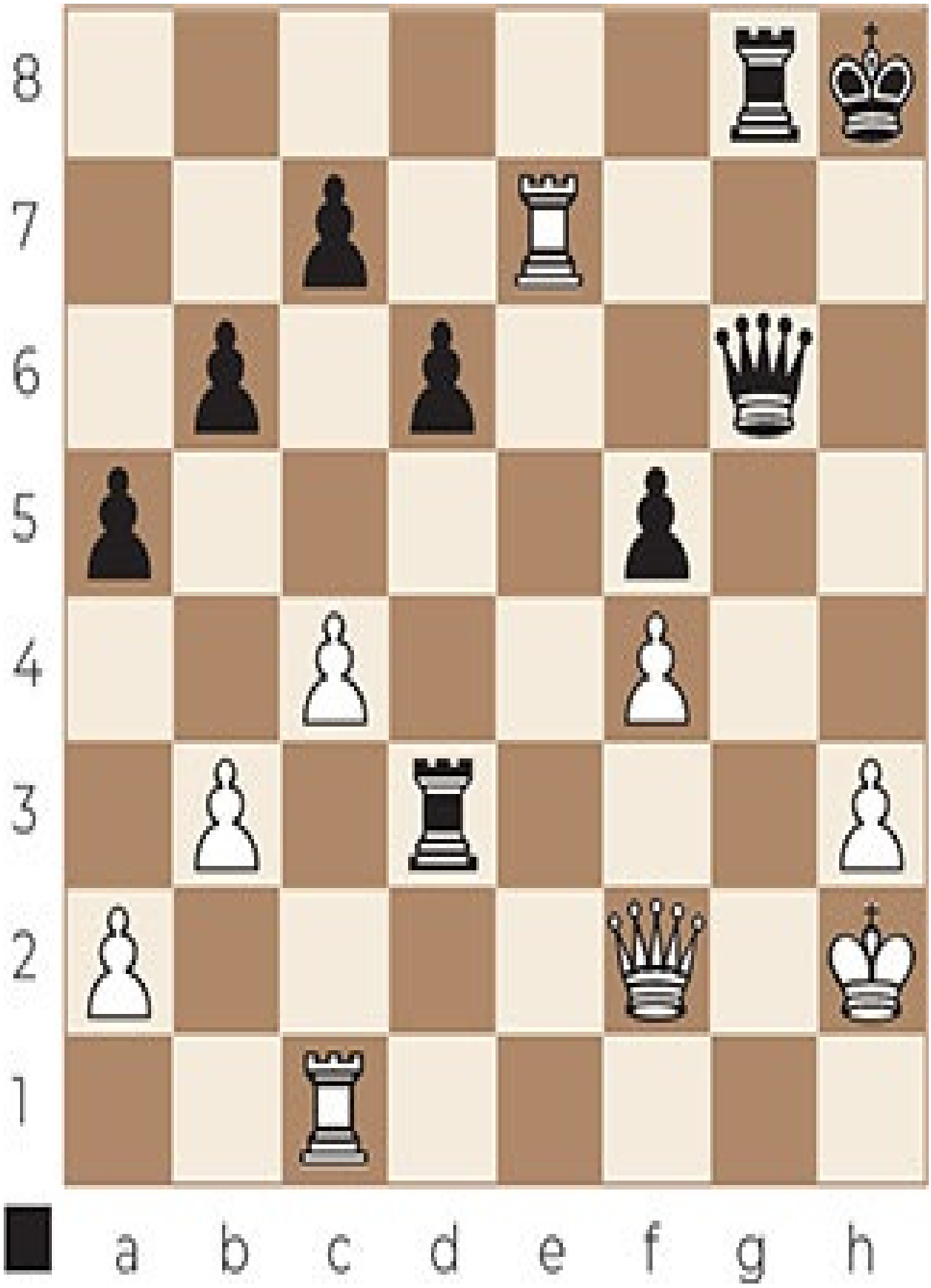
Exercise C 186


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 187

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 188


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 189

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

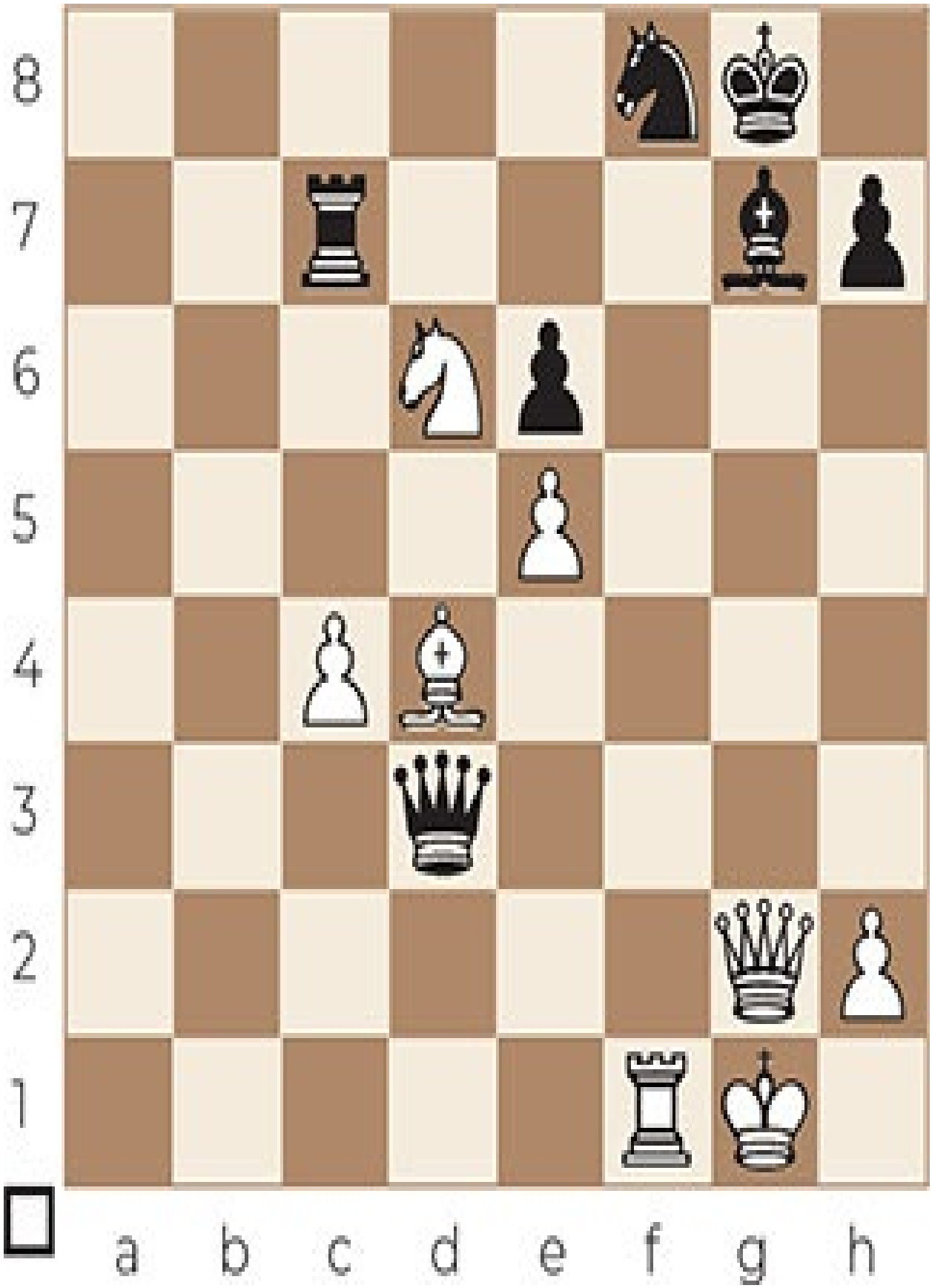
Exercise C 190

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

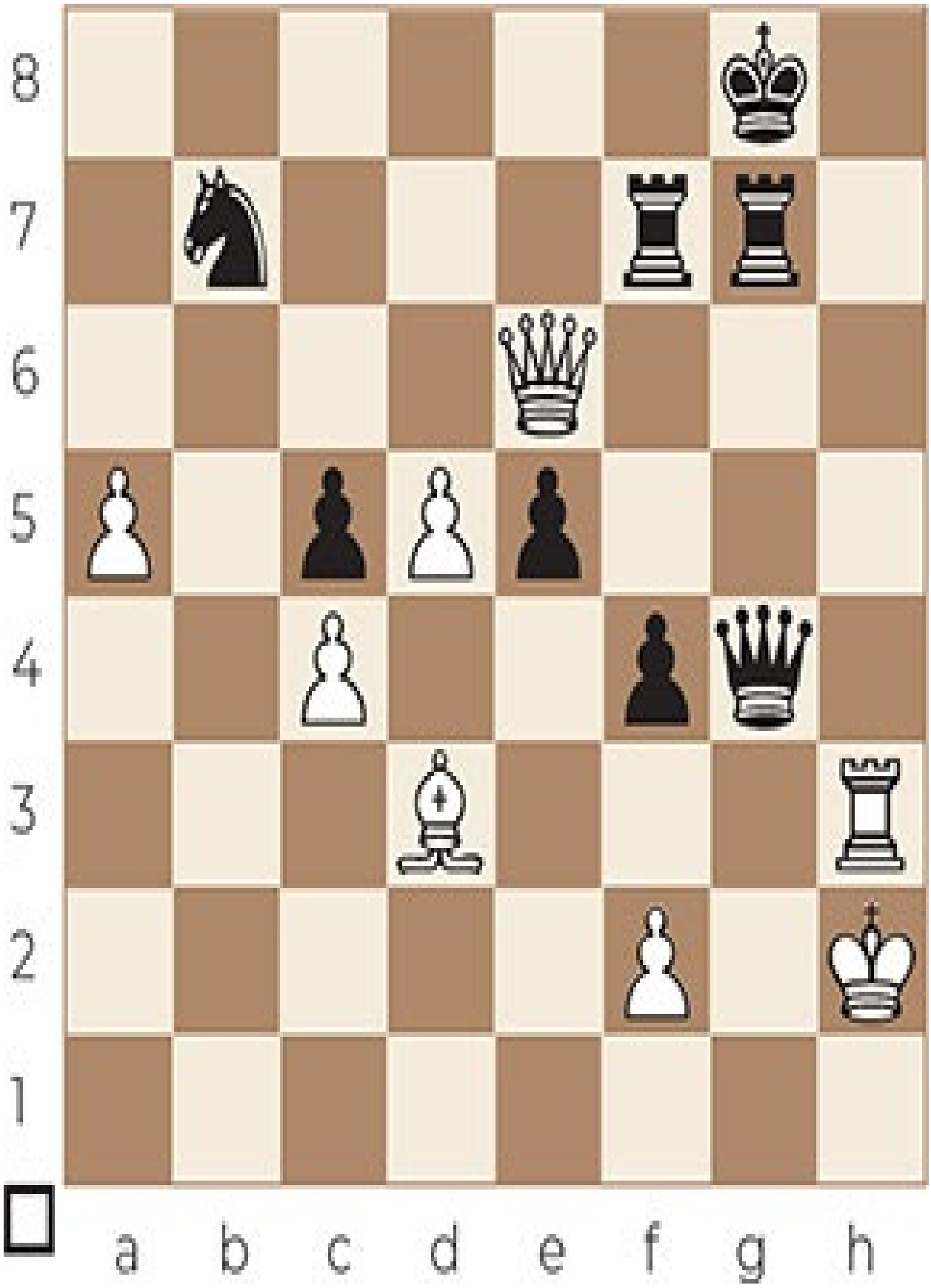
Exercise C 191

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 192


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

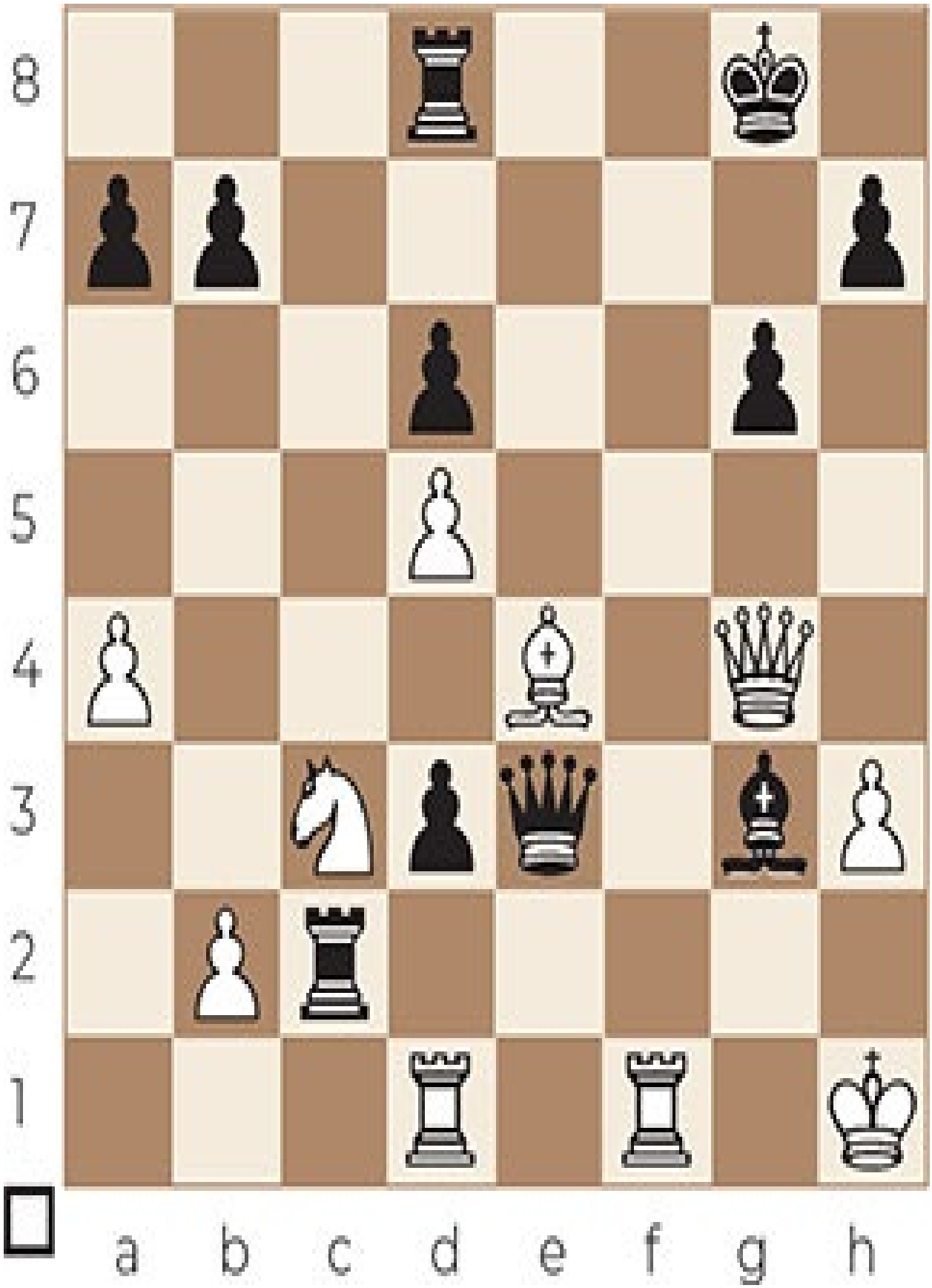
Exercise C 193


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

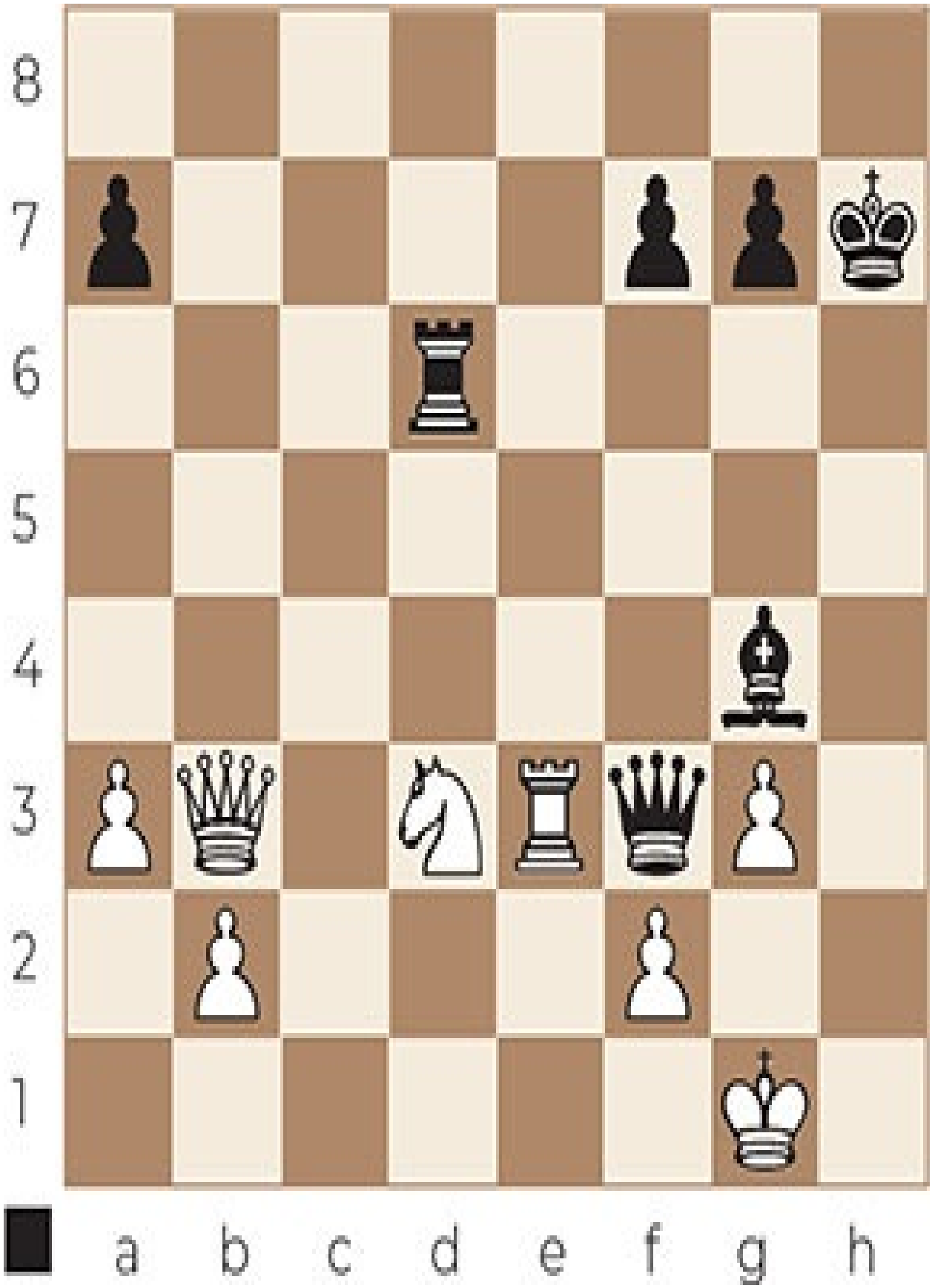
Exercise C 194

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

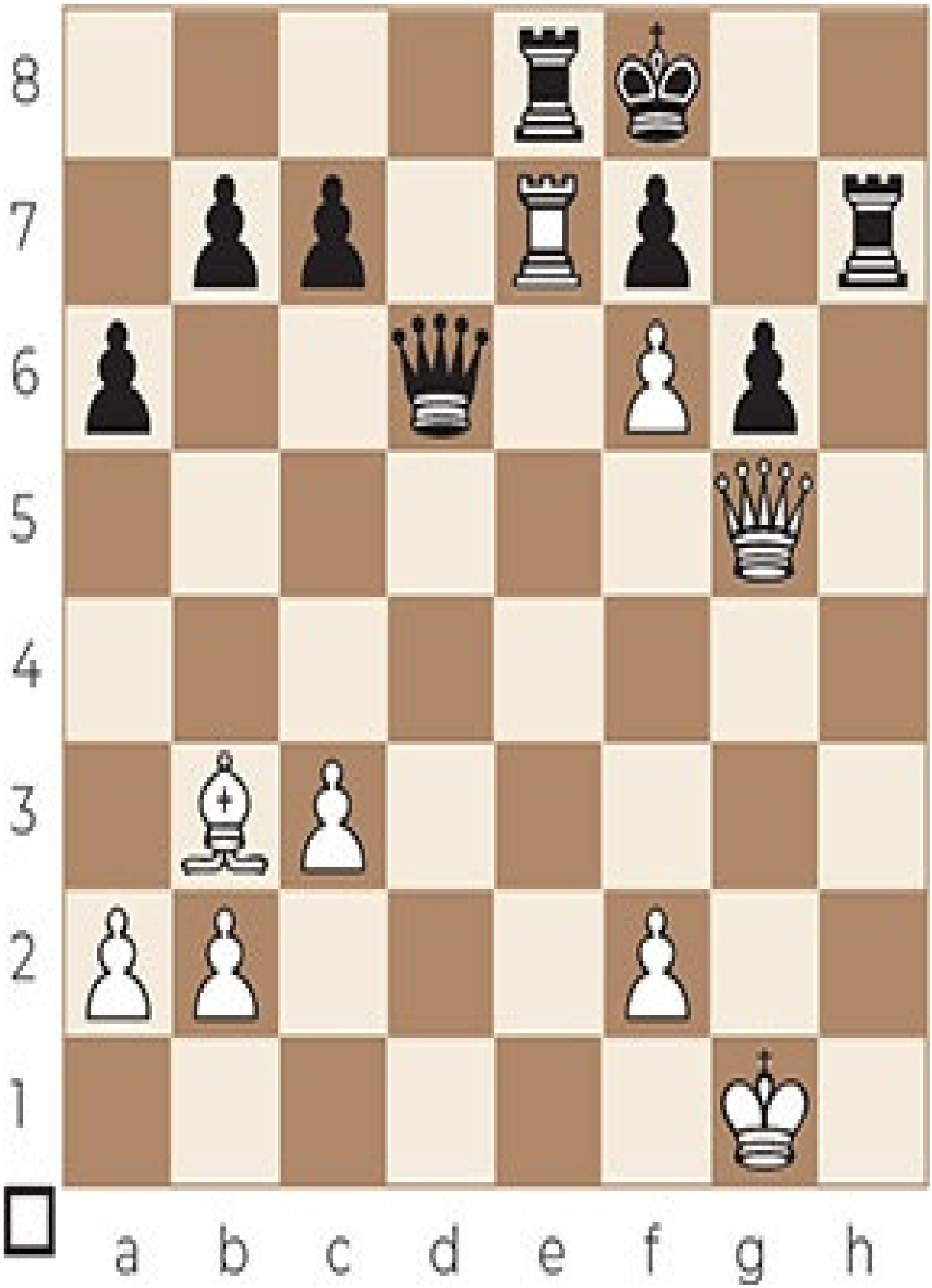
Exercise C 195


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

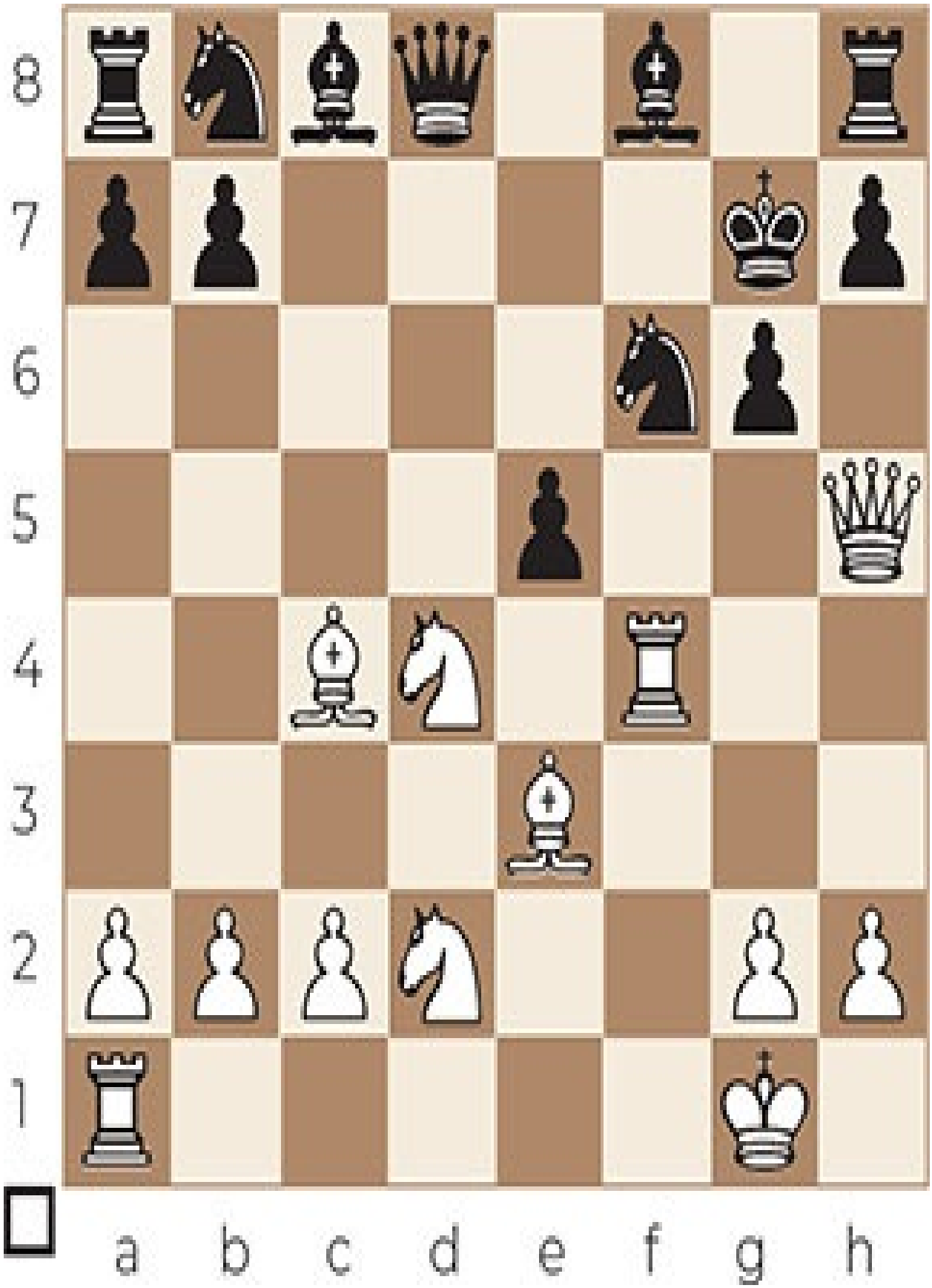
Exercise C 196


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

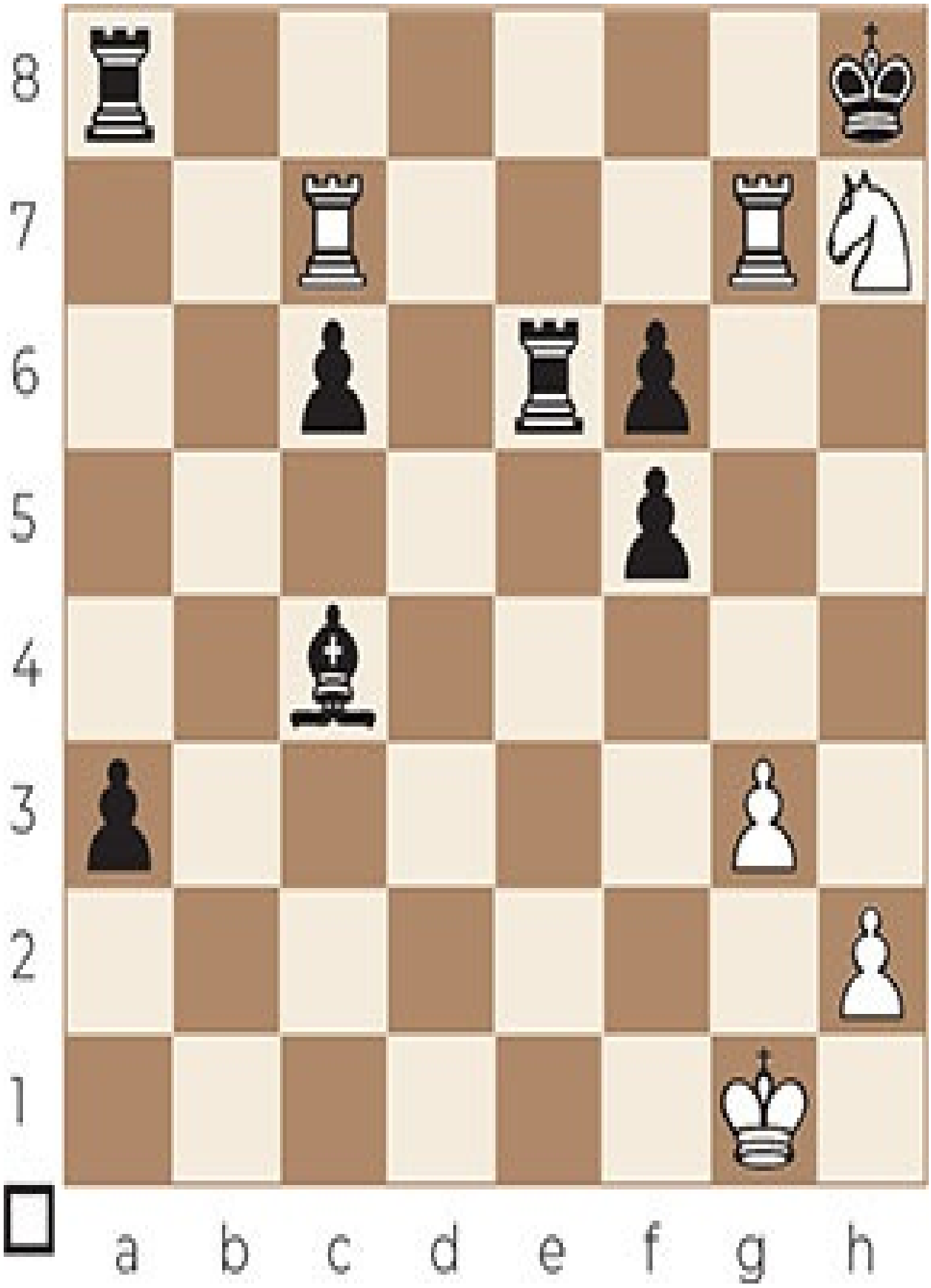
Exercise C 197


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 198


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 199


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 200

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 201

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 202

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 203

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 204

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 205

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 206

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

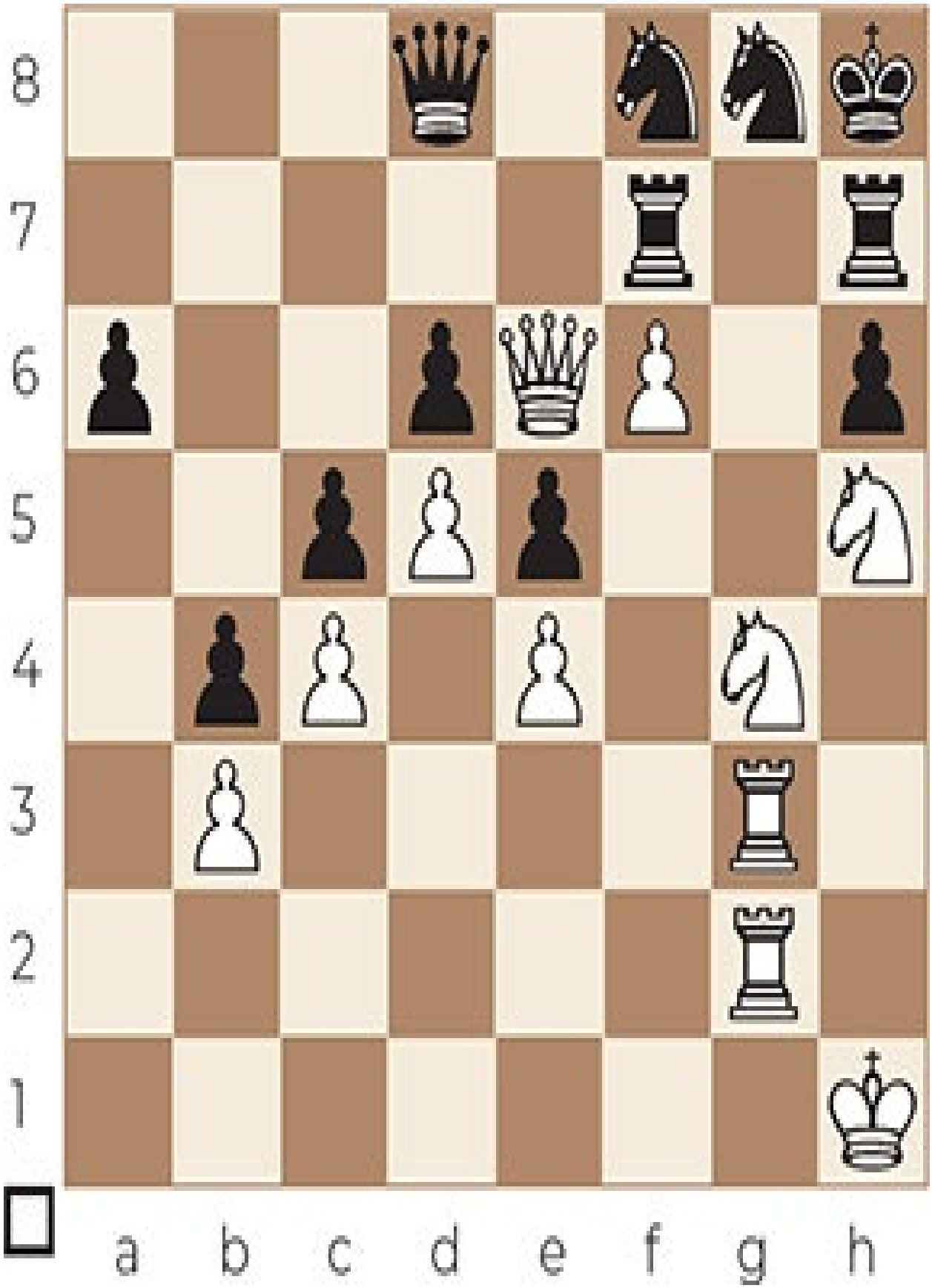
Exercise C 207

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 208

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 209


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 210

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

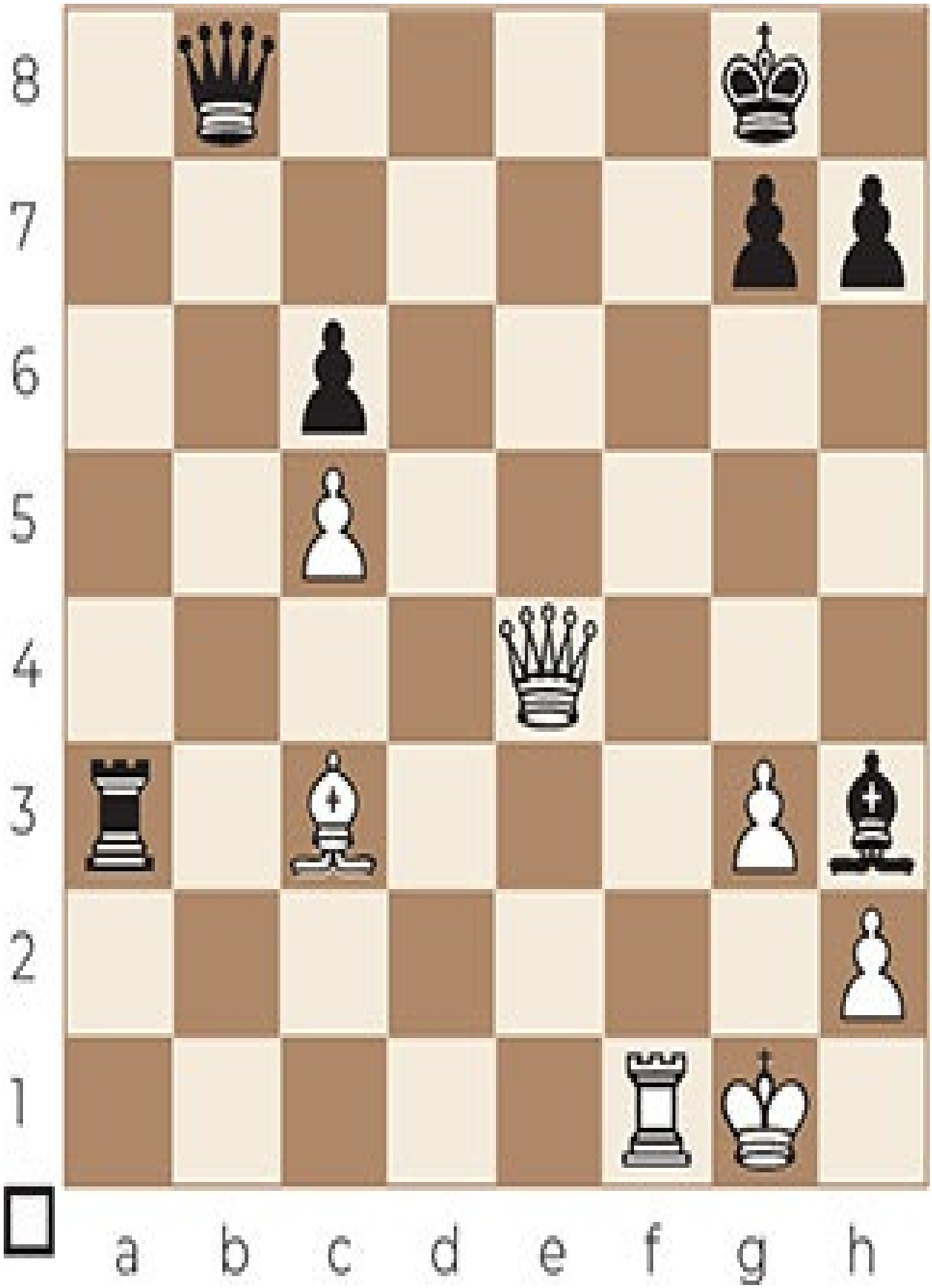
Exercise C 211

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 212

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

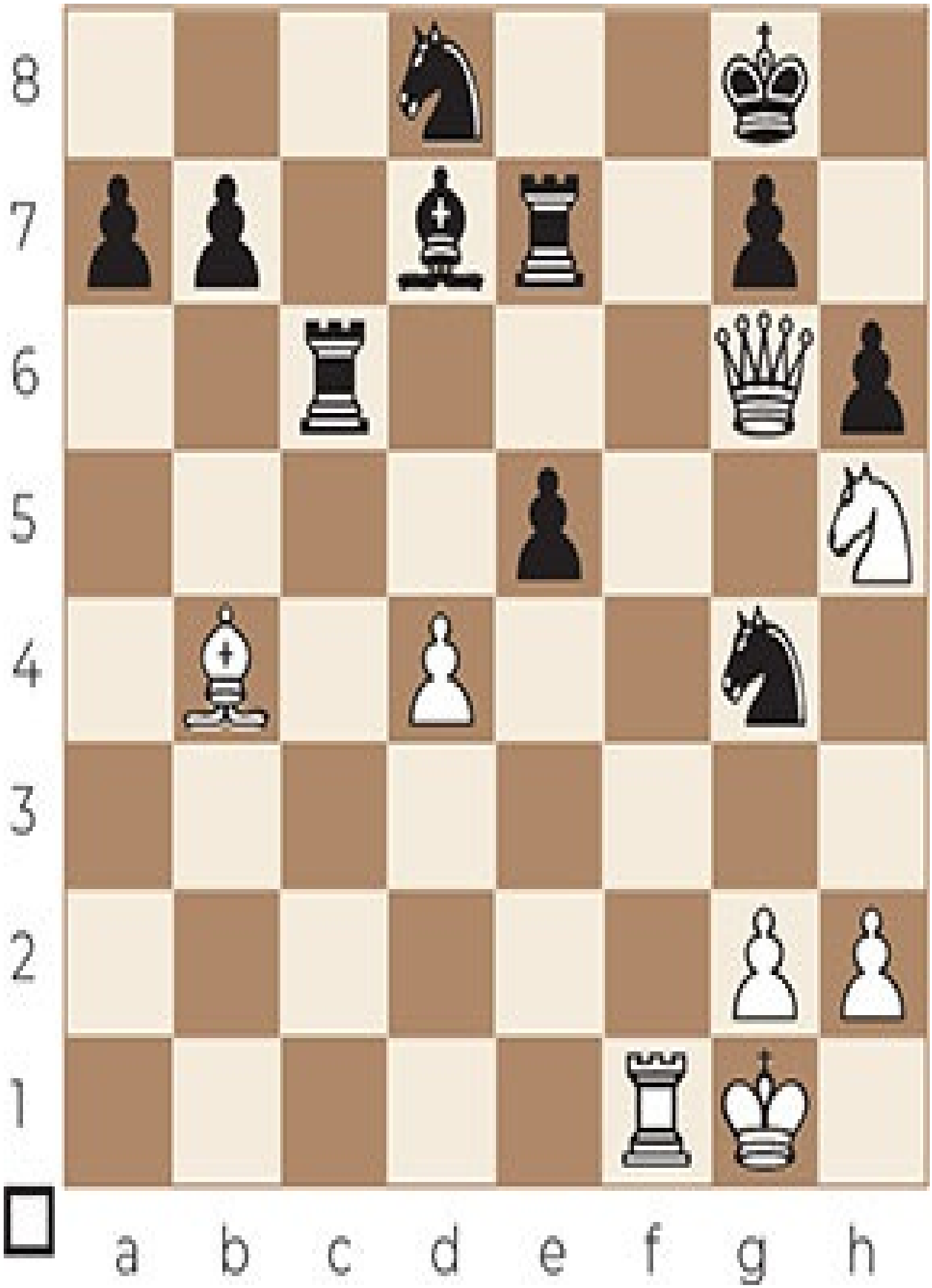
Exercise C 213


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 214

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 215


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 216

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

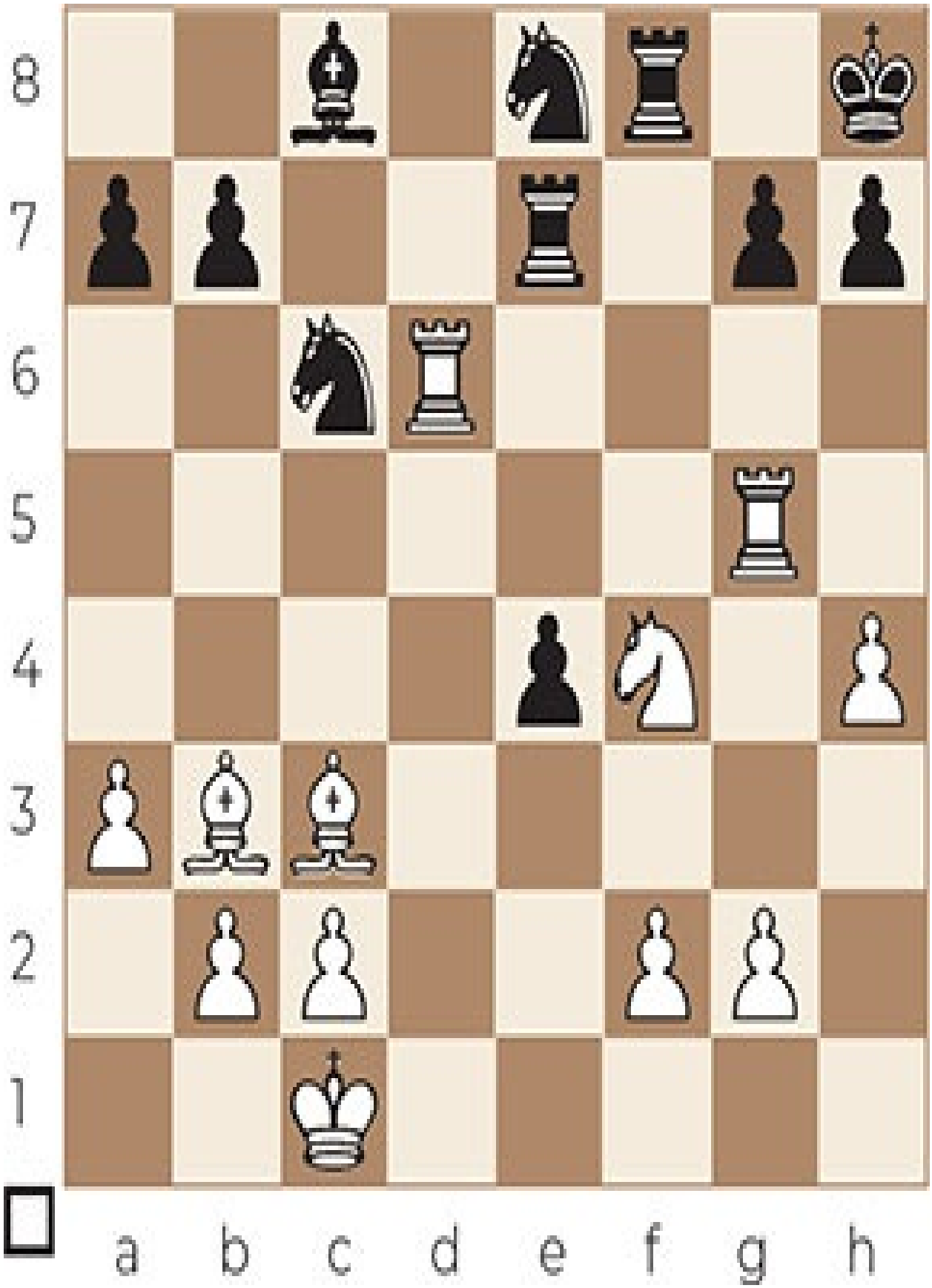
Exercise C 217

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 218

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

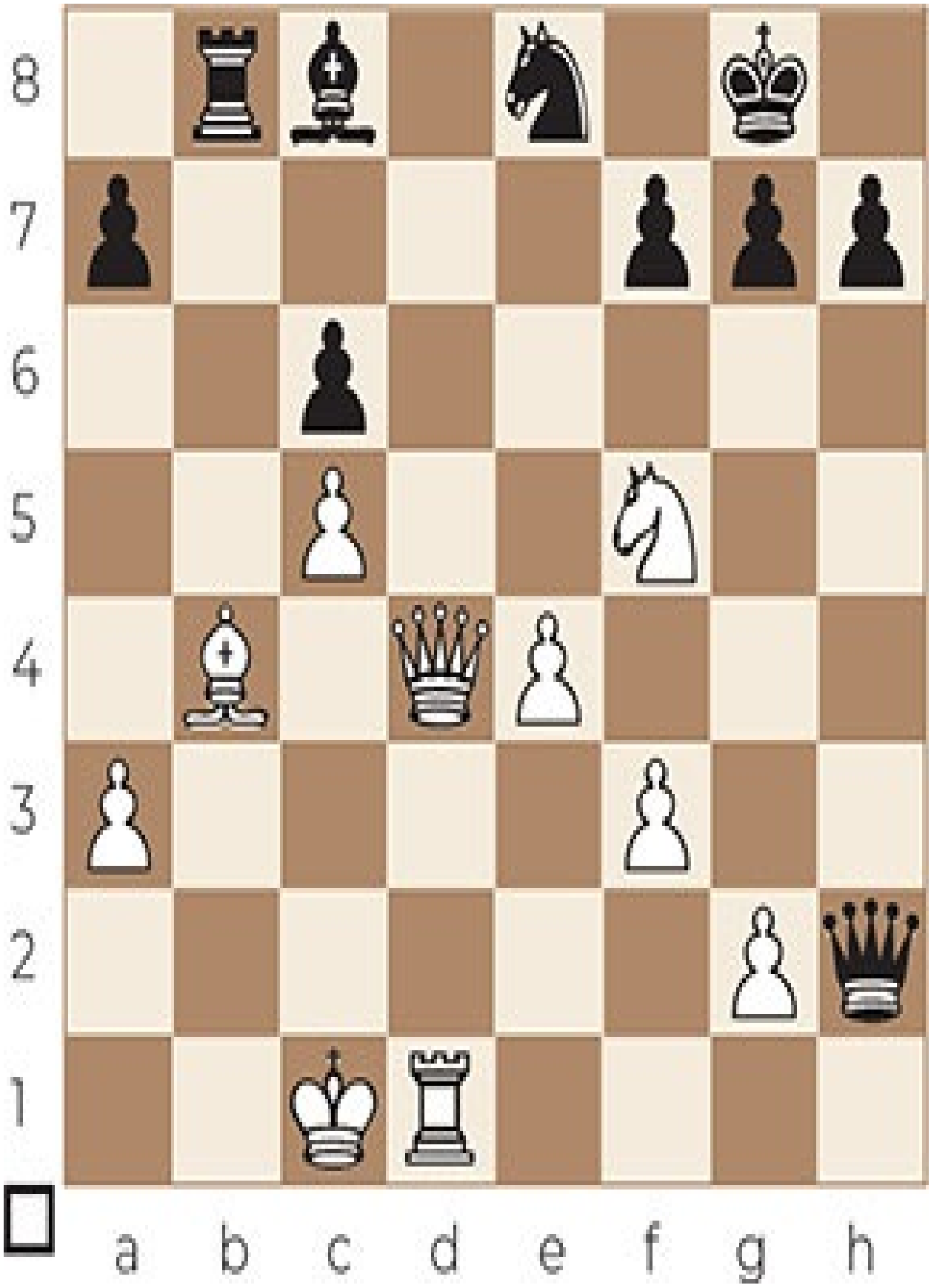
Exercise C 219


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

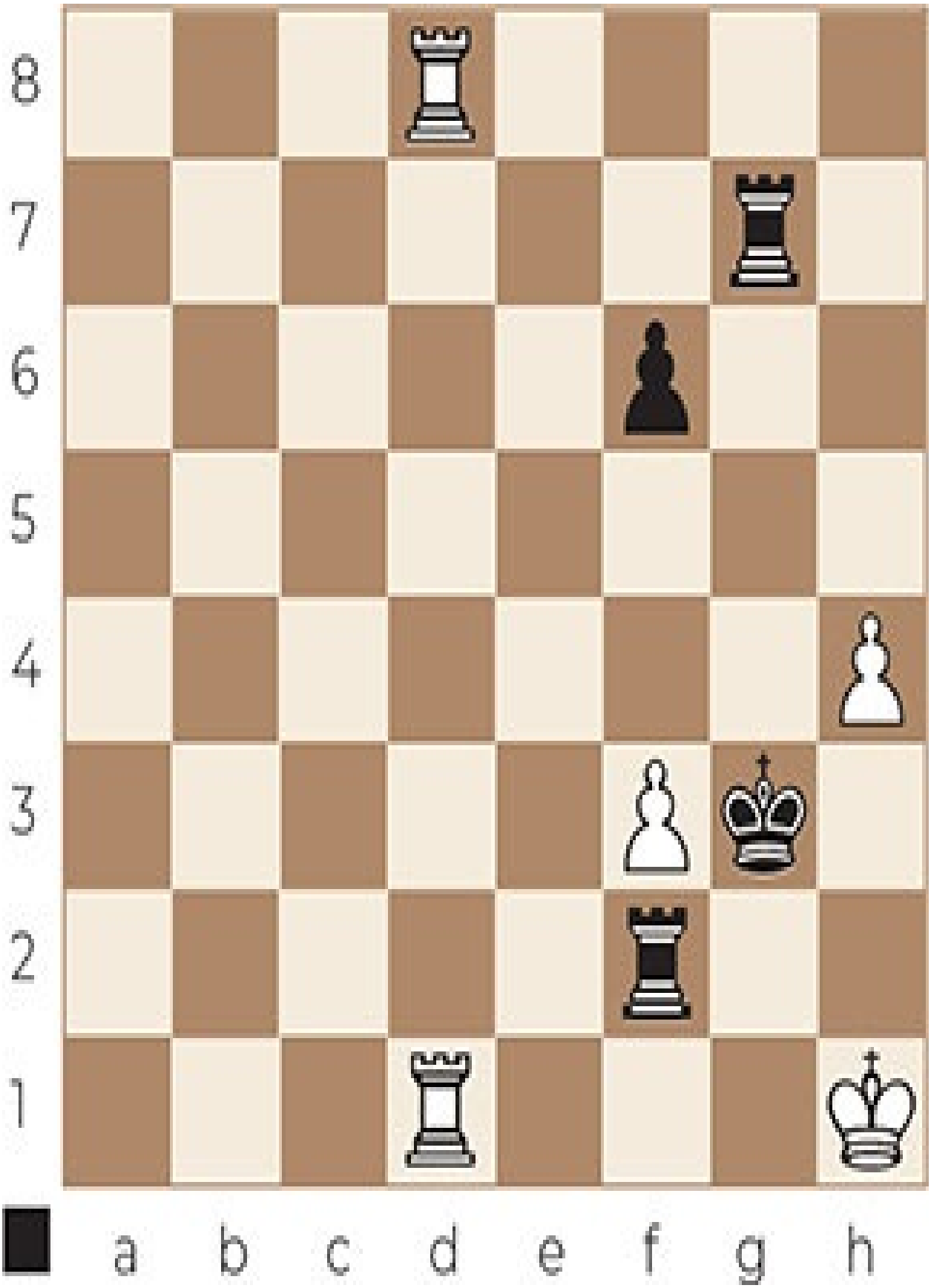
Exercise C 220

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

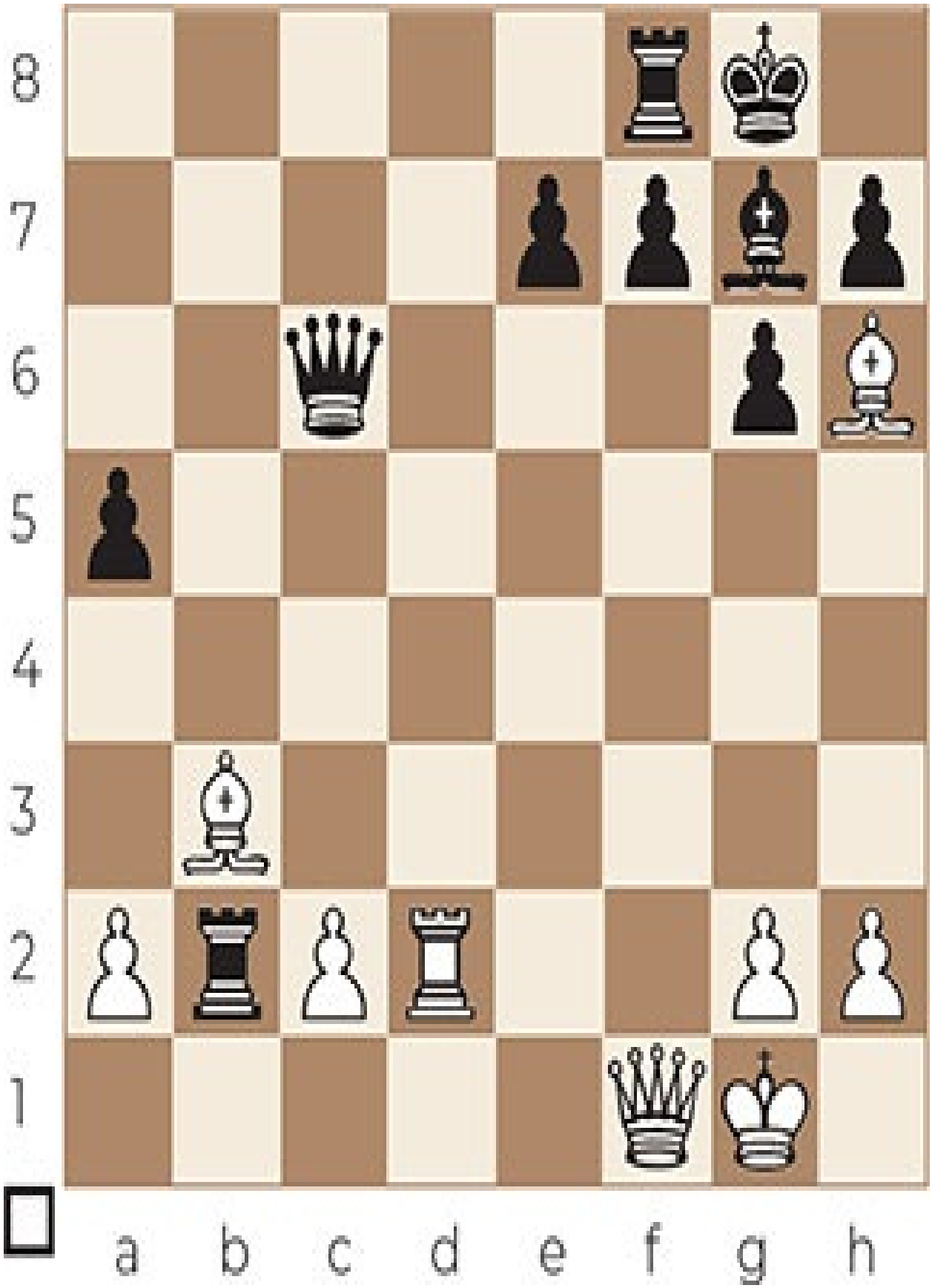
Exercise C 221


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 222


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

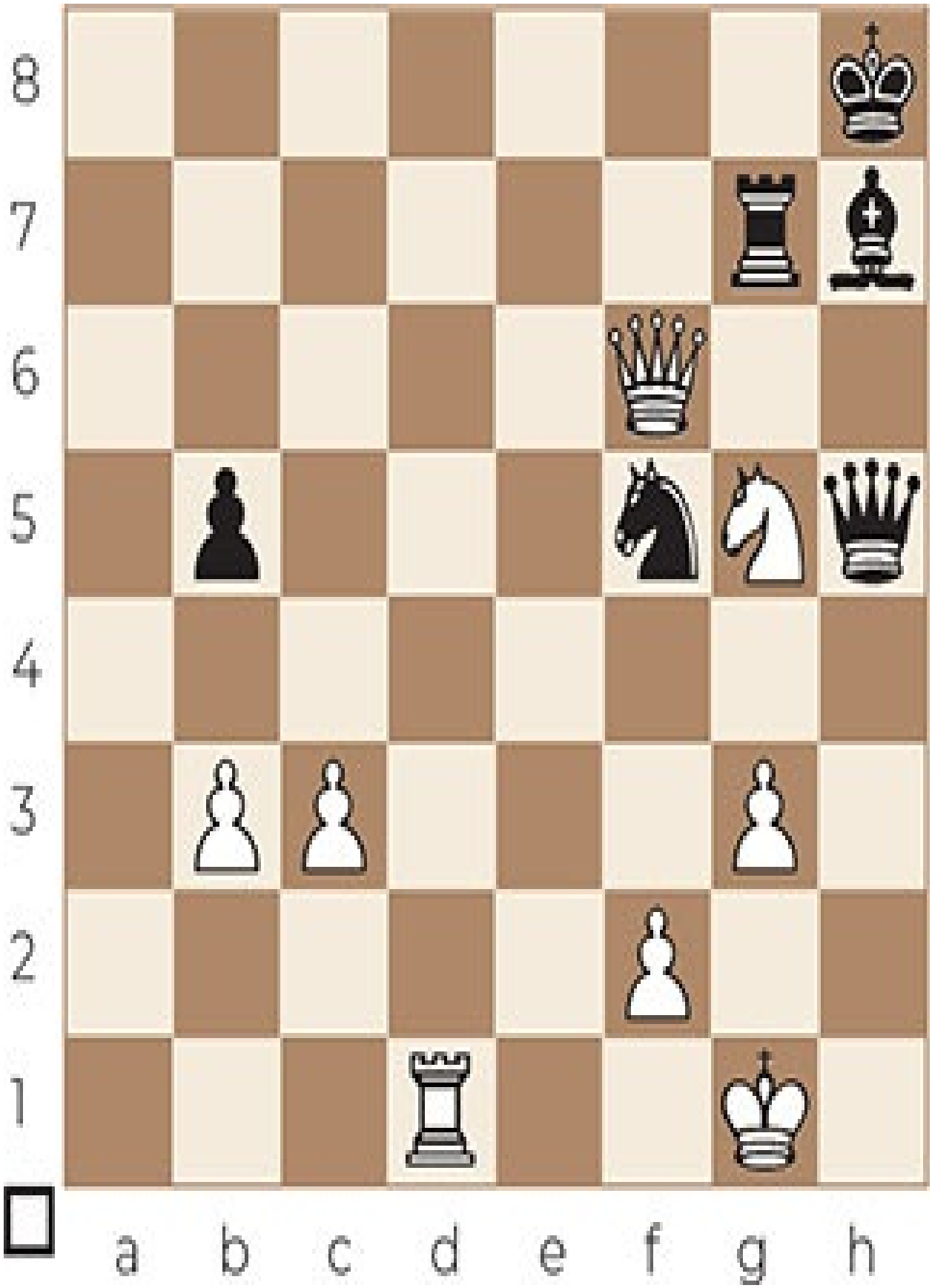
Exercise C 223


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 224

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

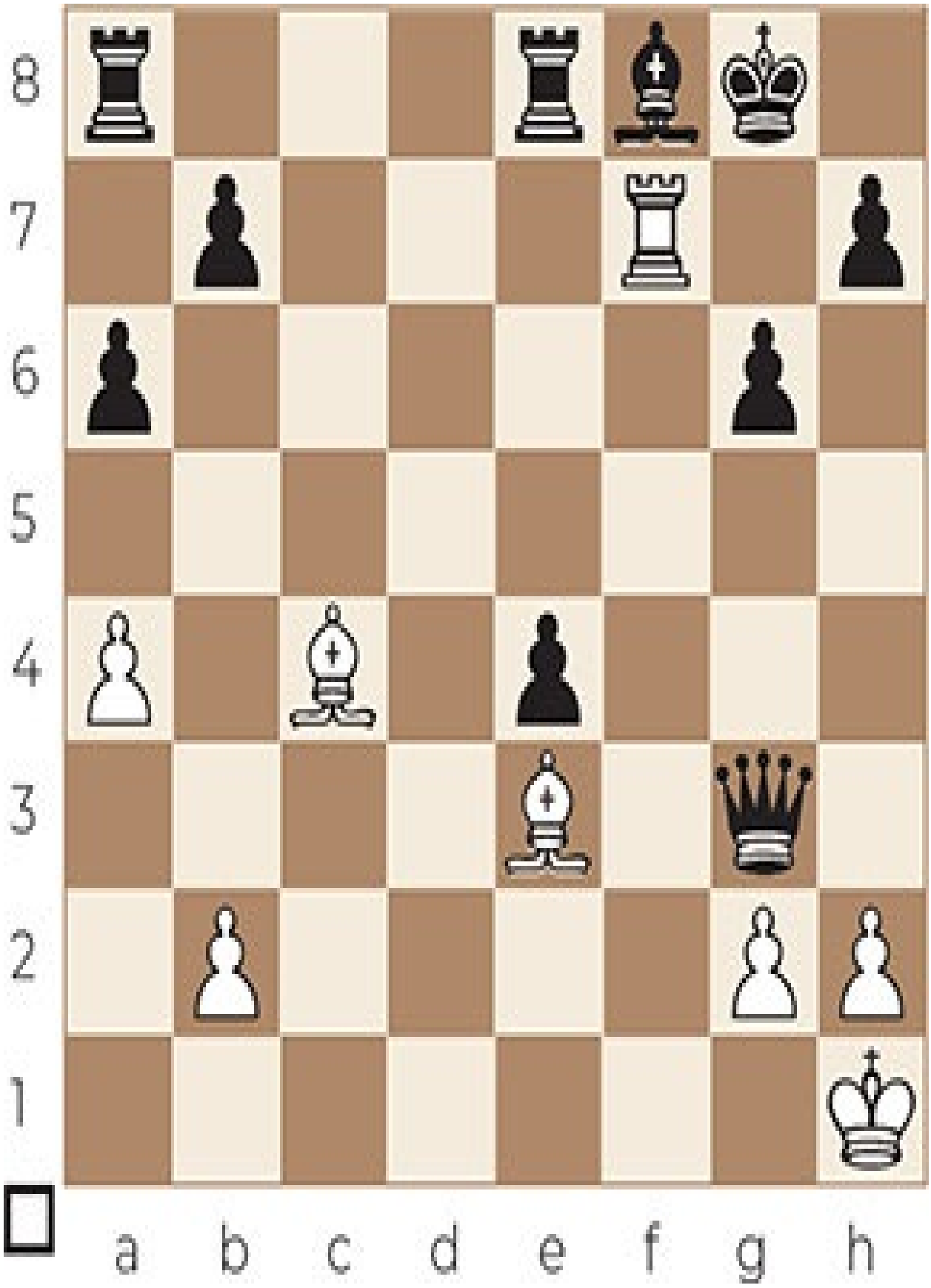
Exercise C 225


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

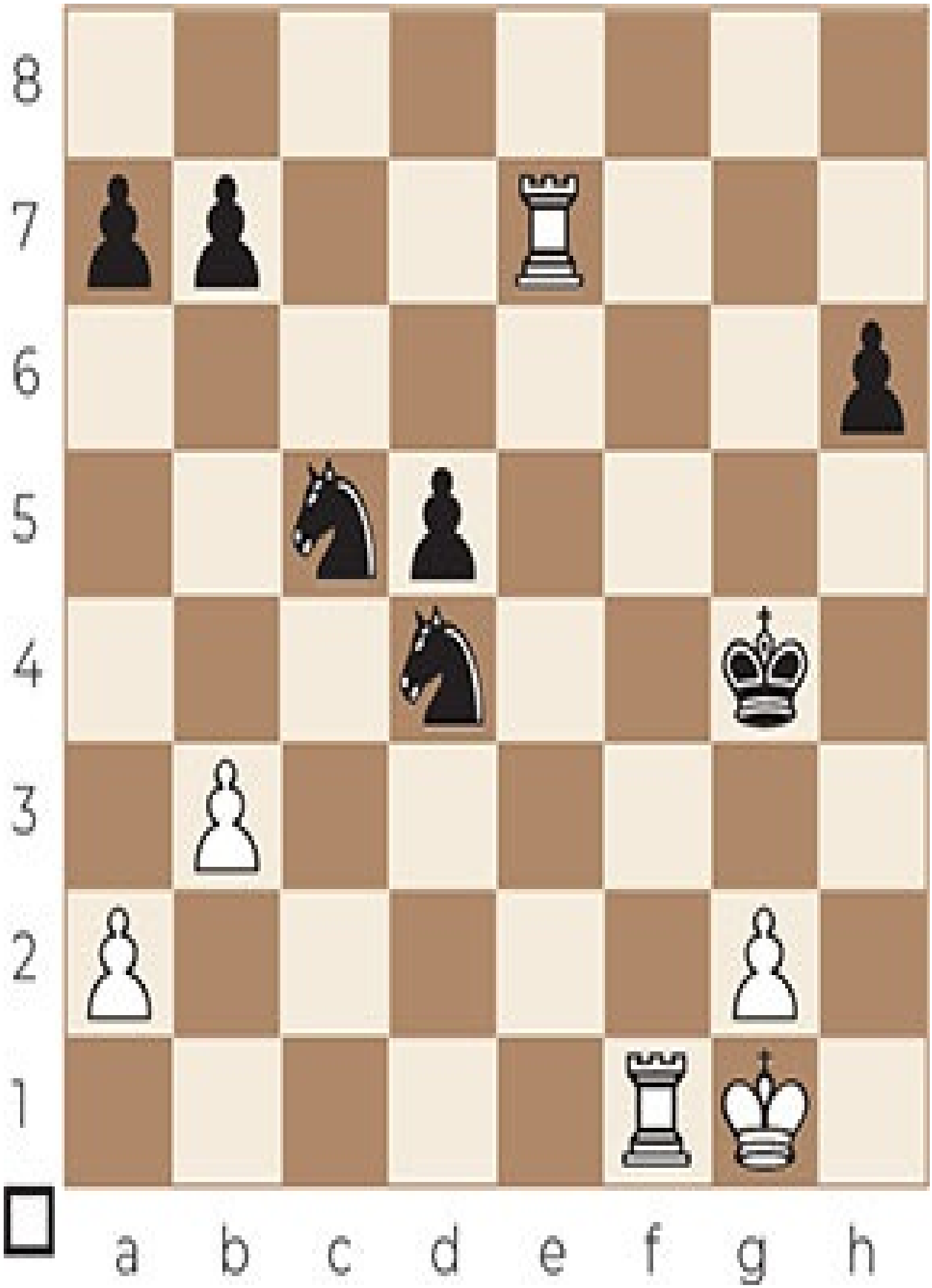
Exercise C 226

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

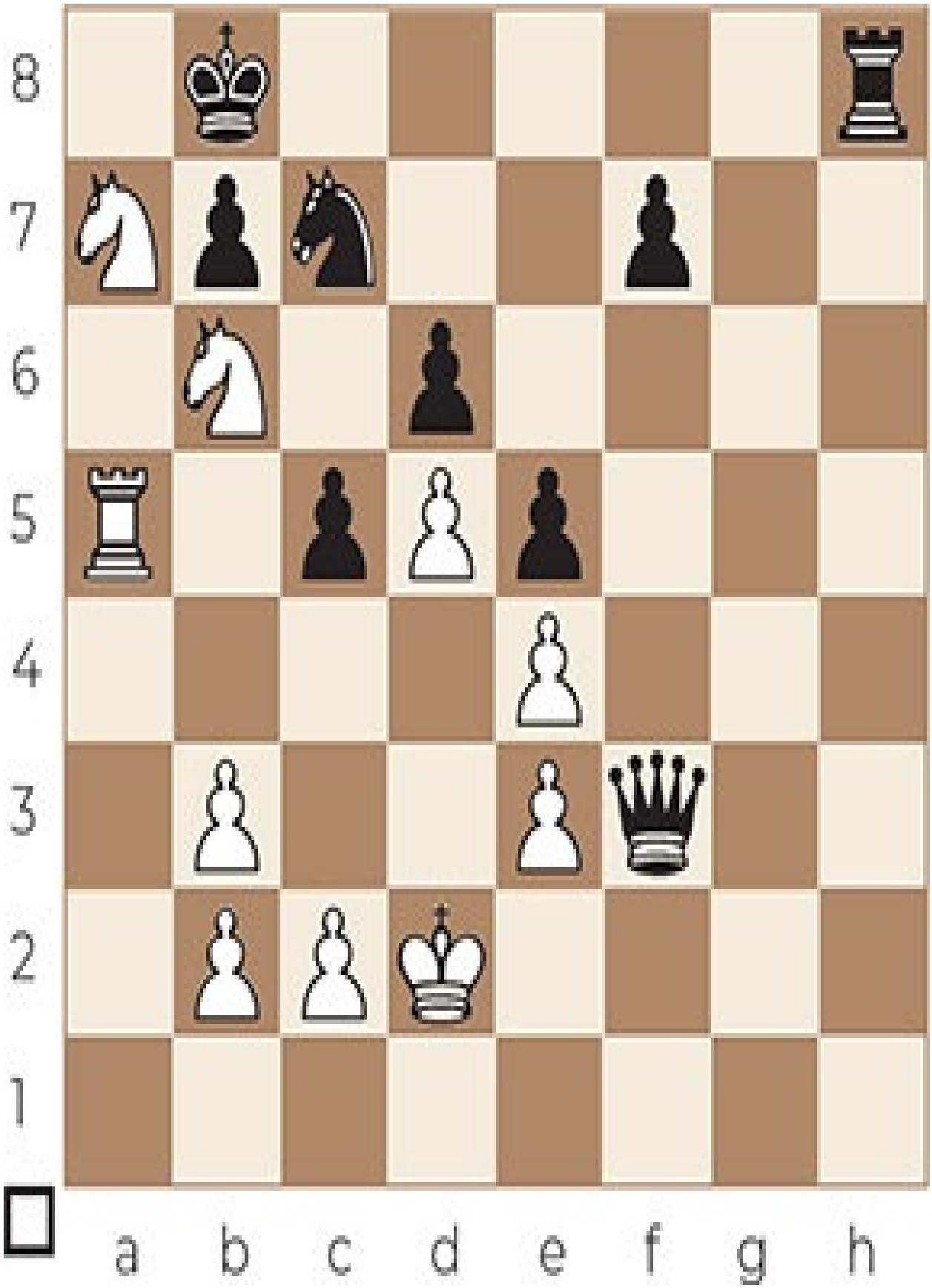
Exercise C 227


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

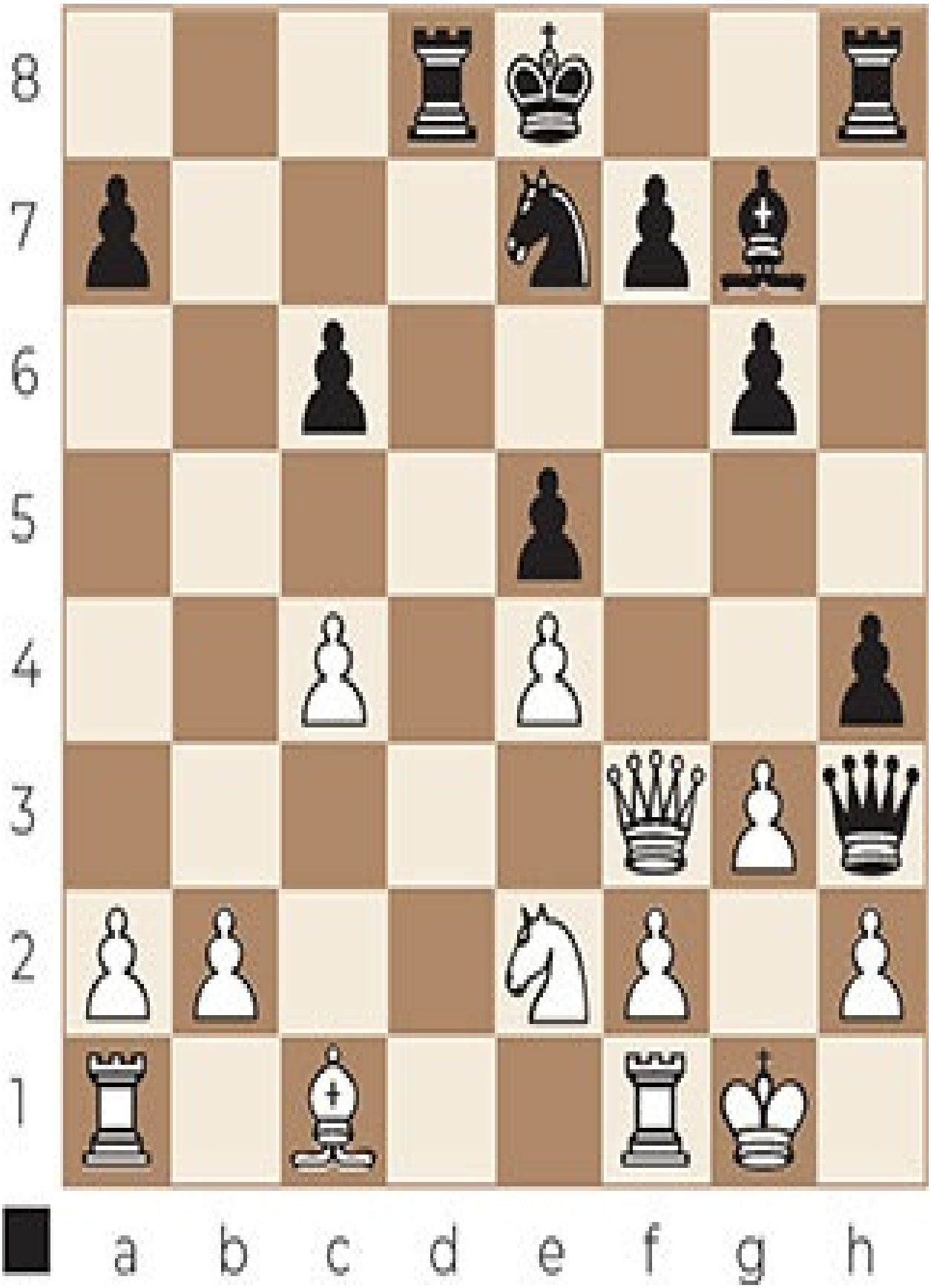
Exercise C 228


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

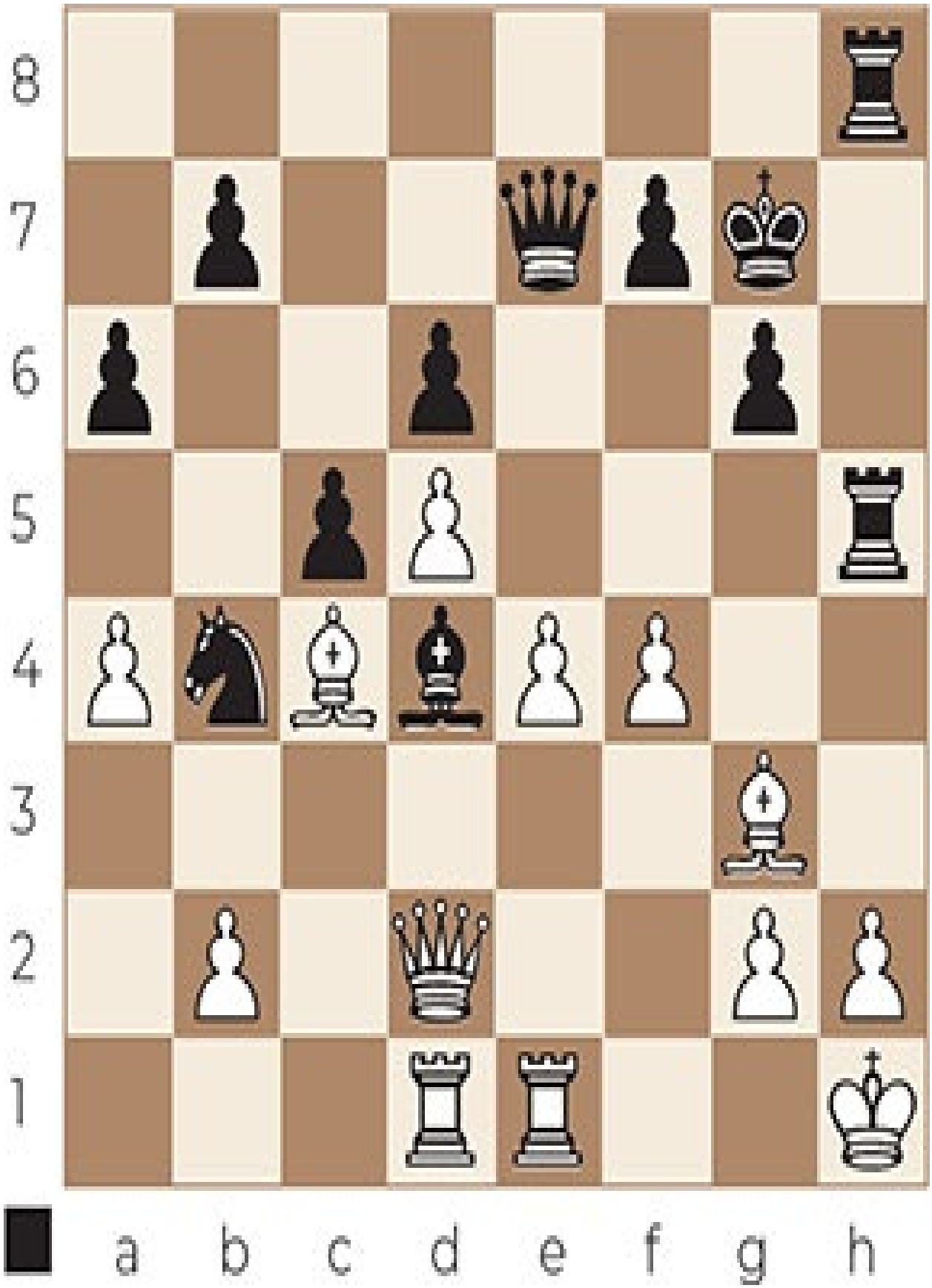
Exercise C 229


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

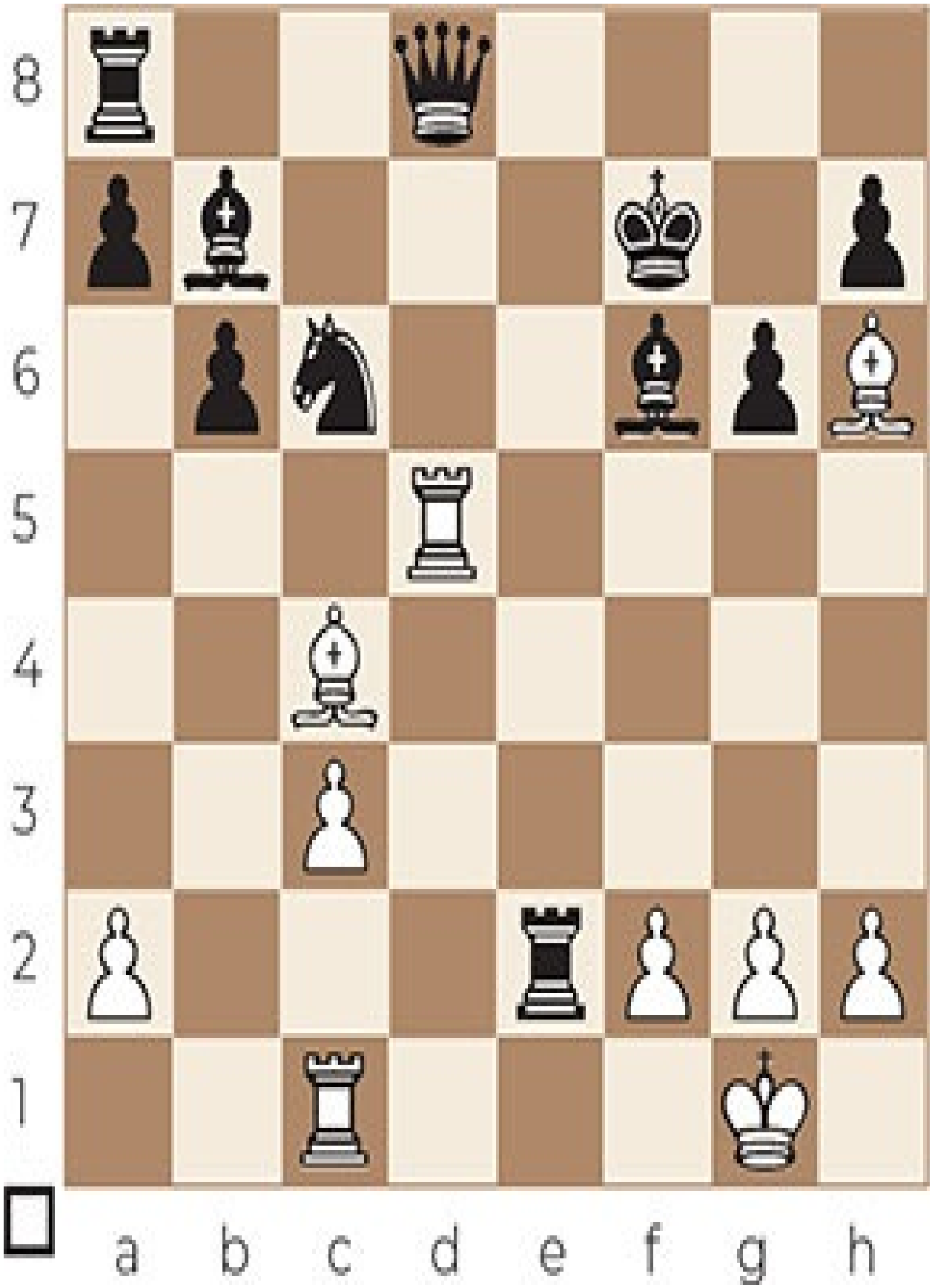
Exercise C 230


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 231


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

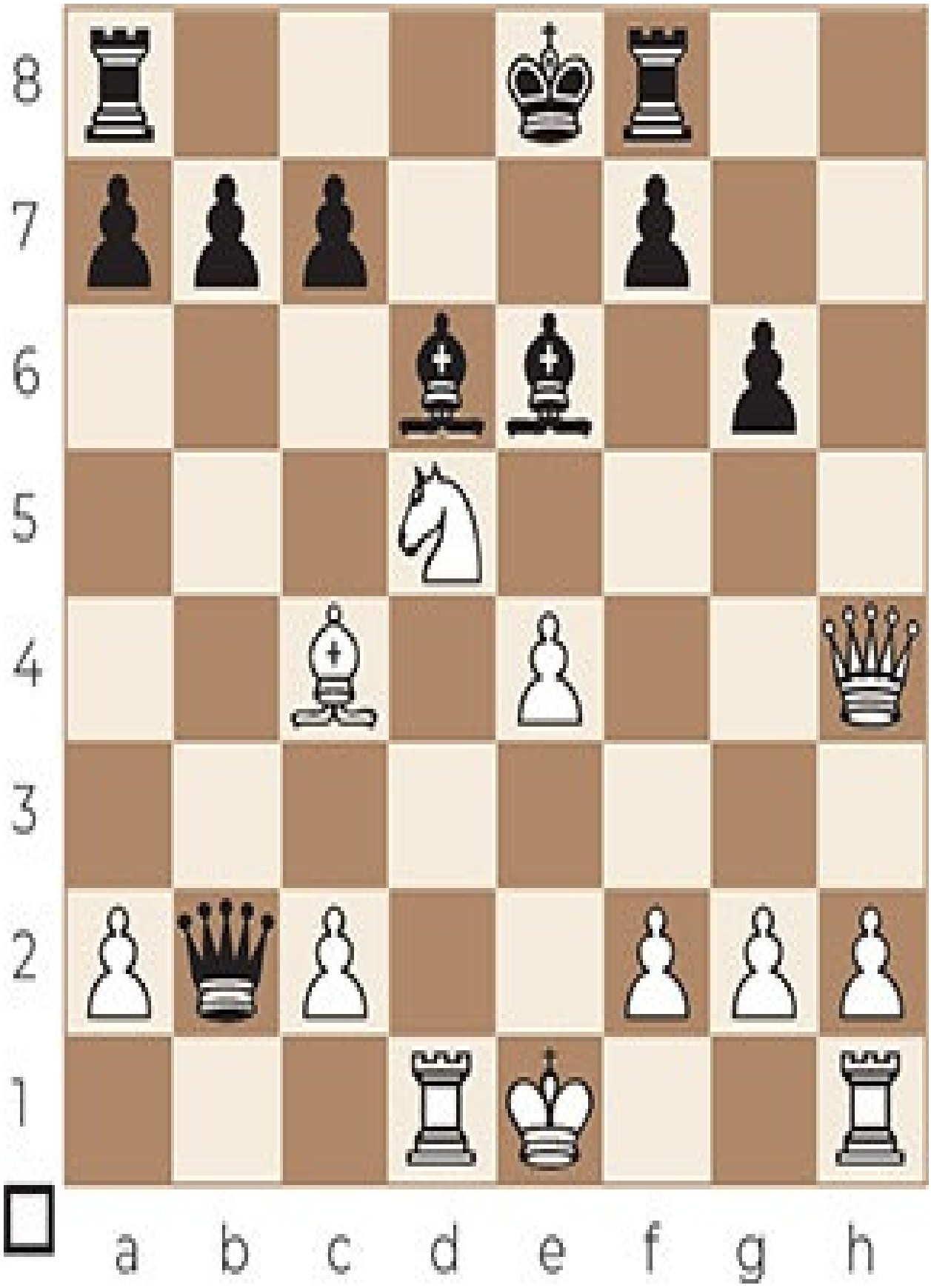
Exercise C 232


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

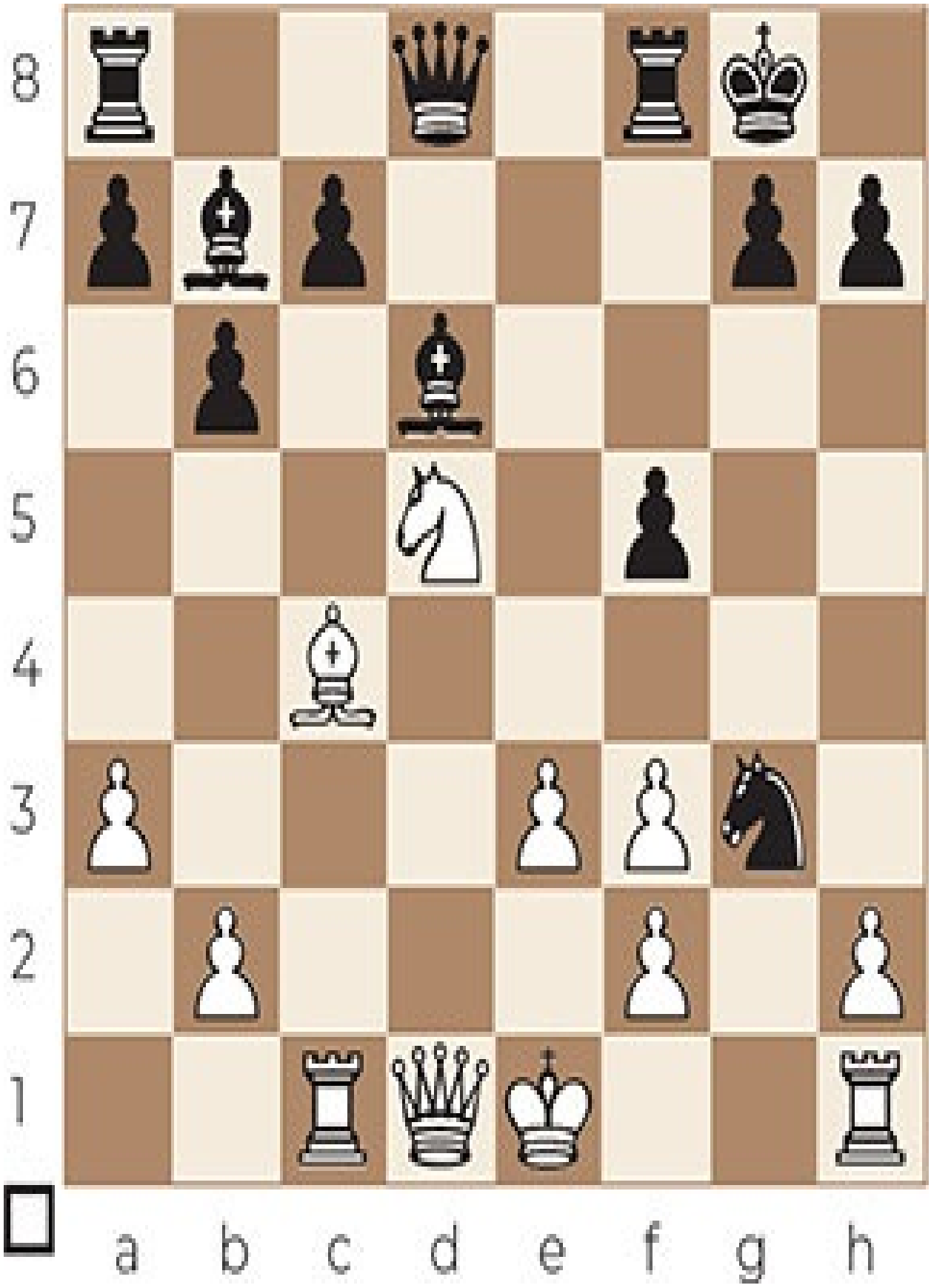
Exercise C 233

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 234


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 235


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

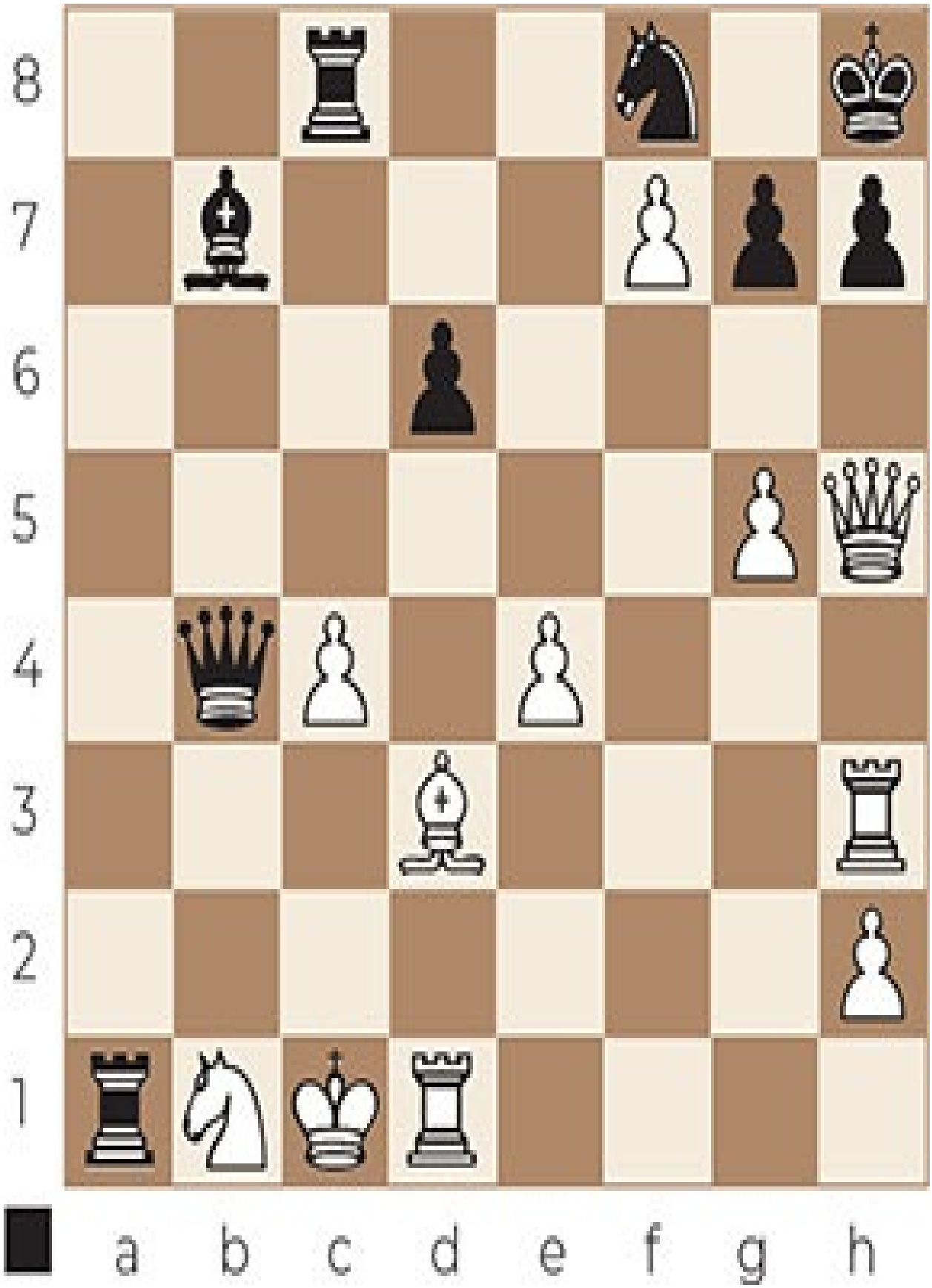
Exercise C 236

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 237

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 238


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 239

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 240

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

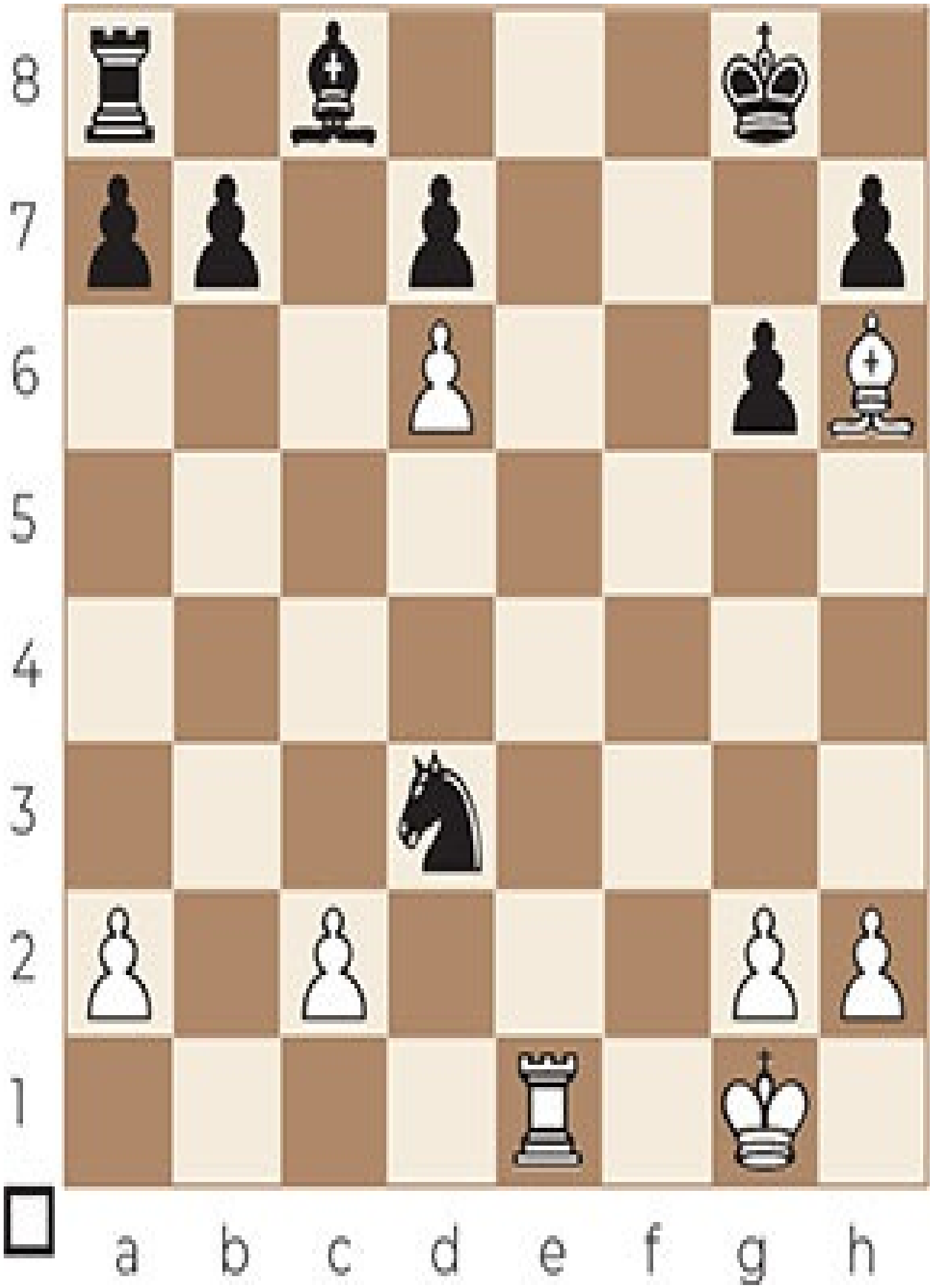
Exercise C 241

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 242

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

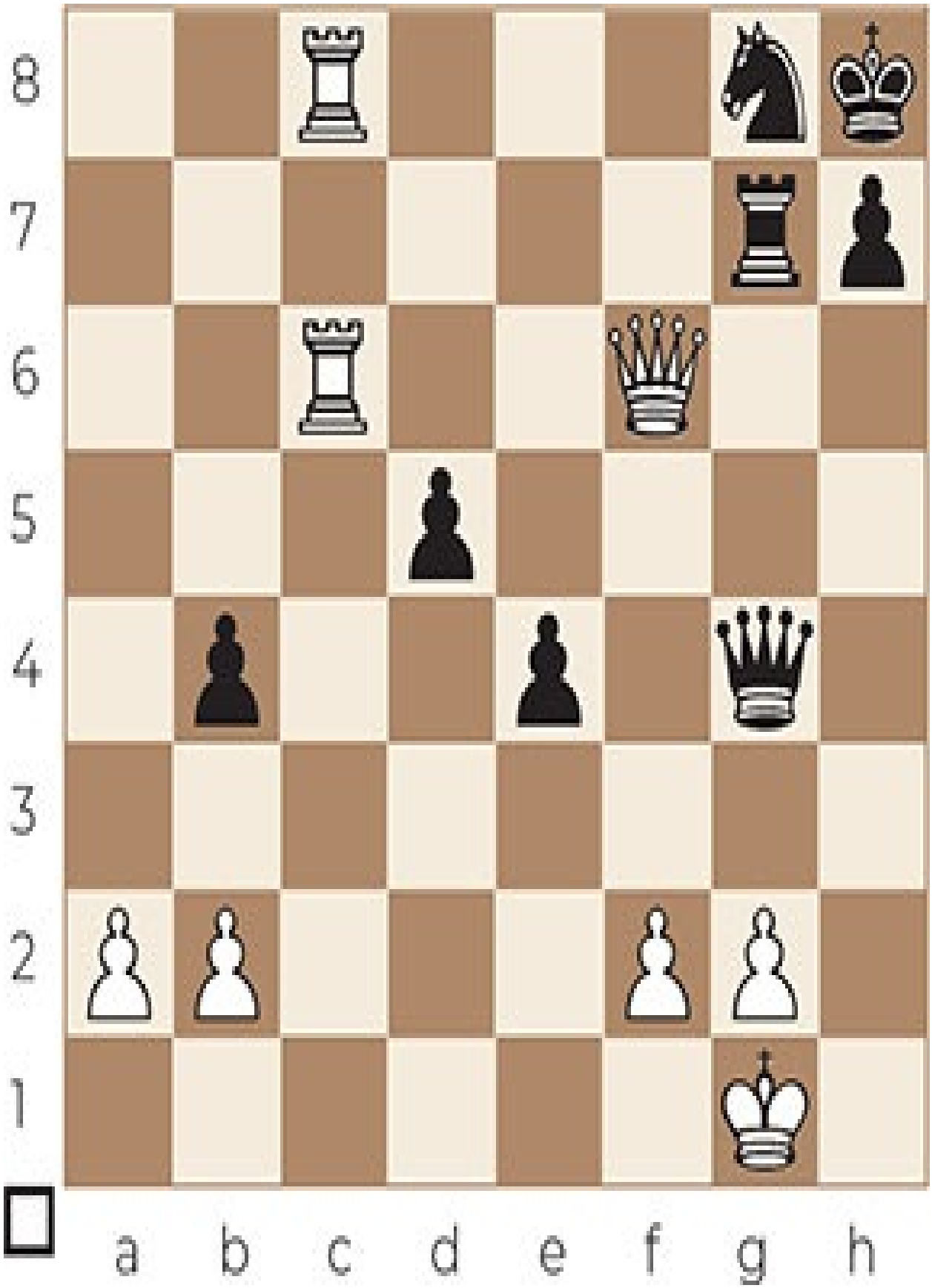
Exercise C 243


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

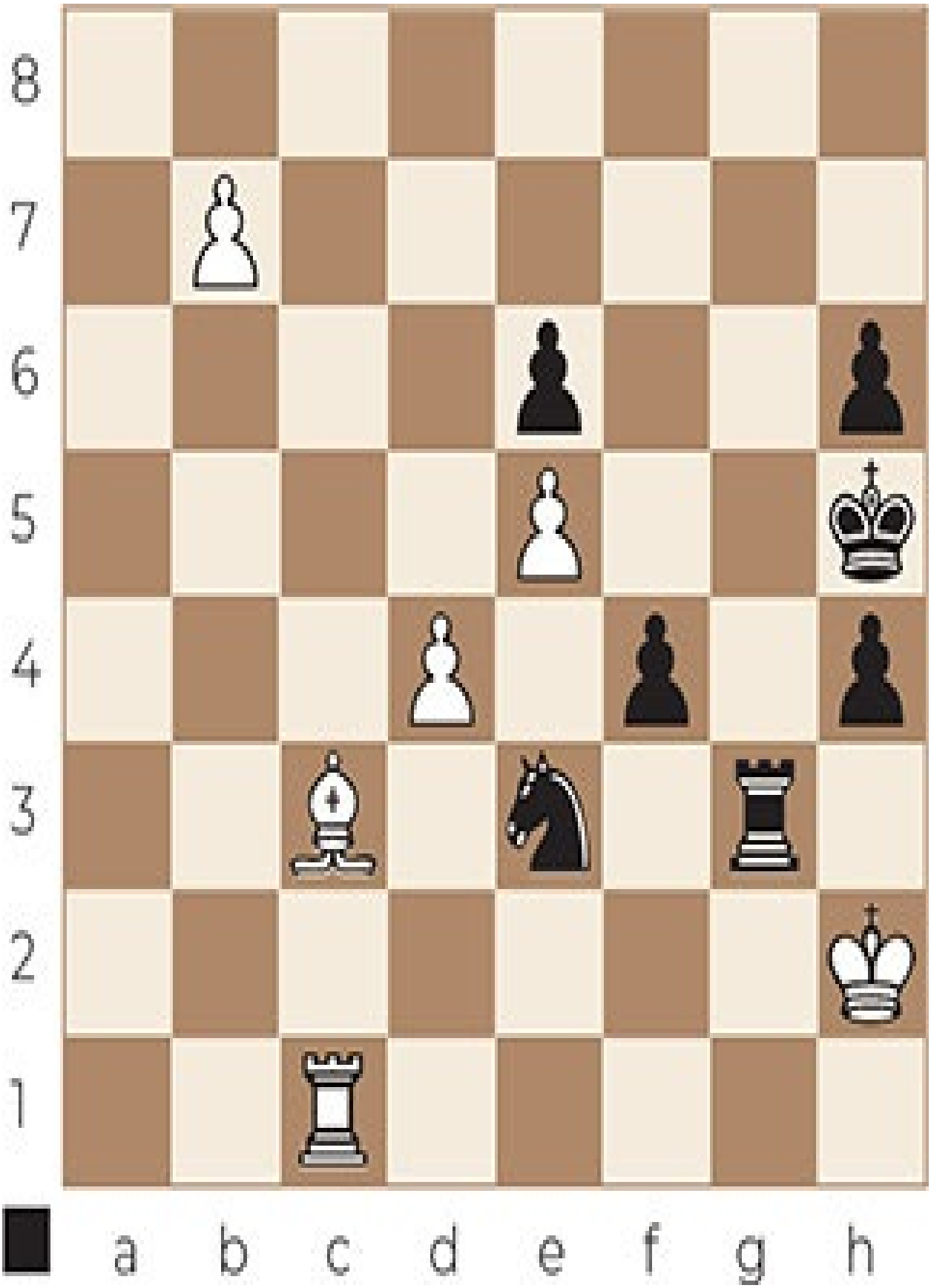
Exercise C 244

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 245


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 246


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

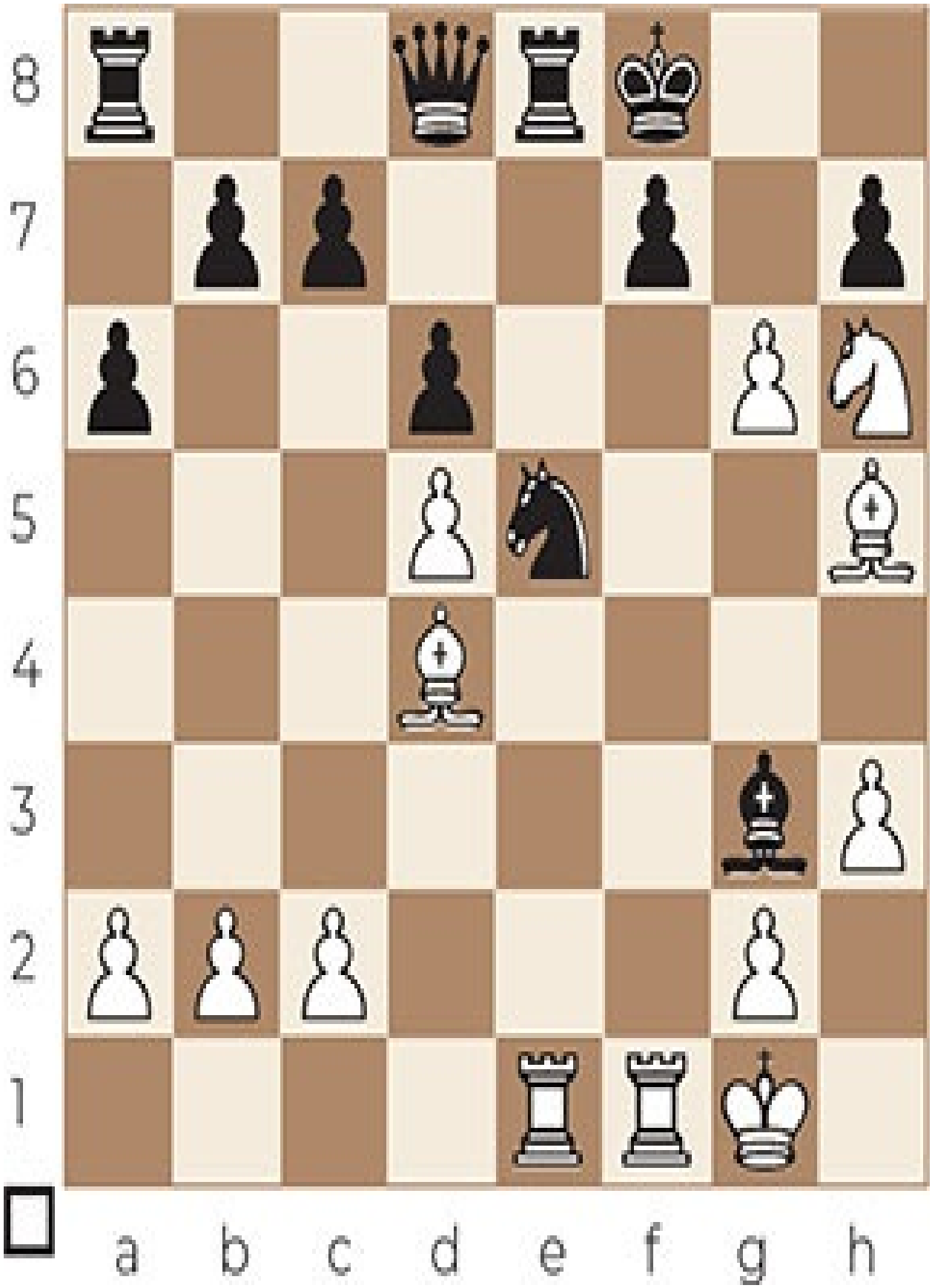
Exercise C 247

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 248

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 249


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

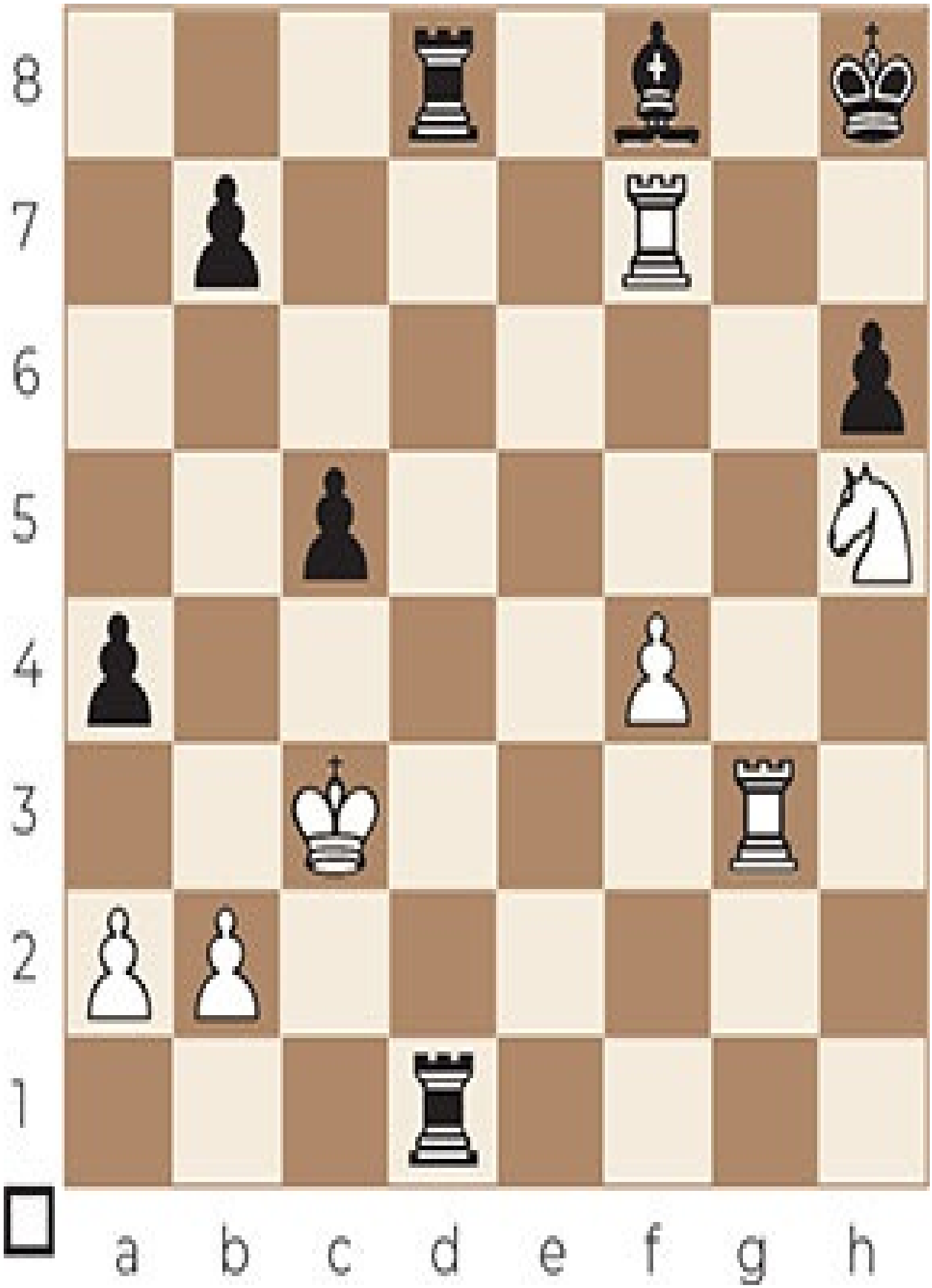
Exercise C 250

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

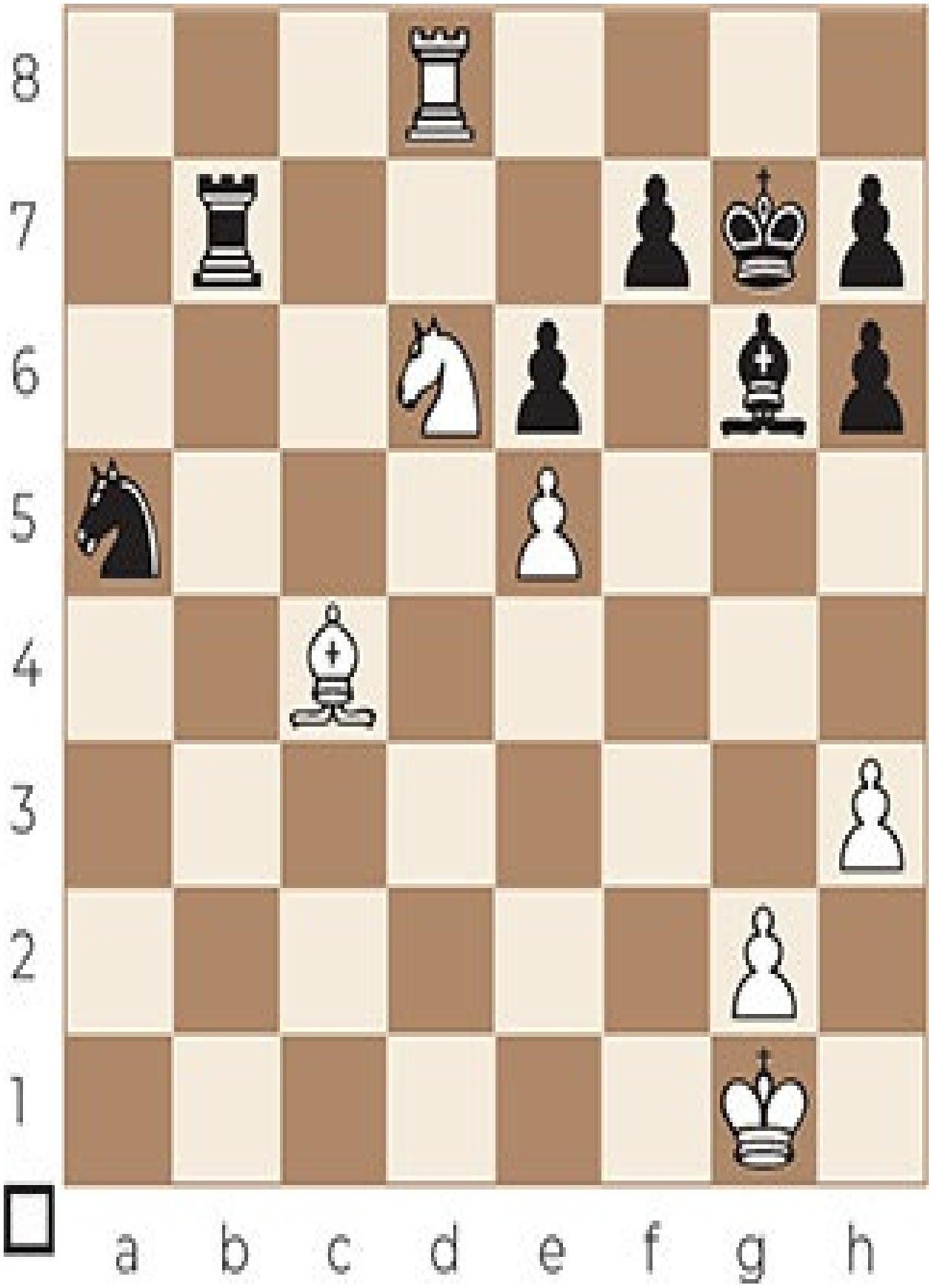
Exercise C 251

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 252


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

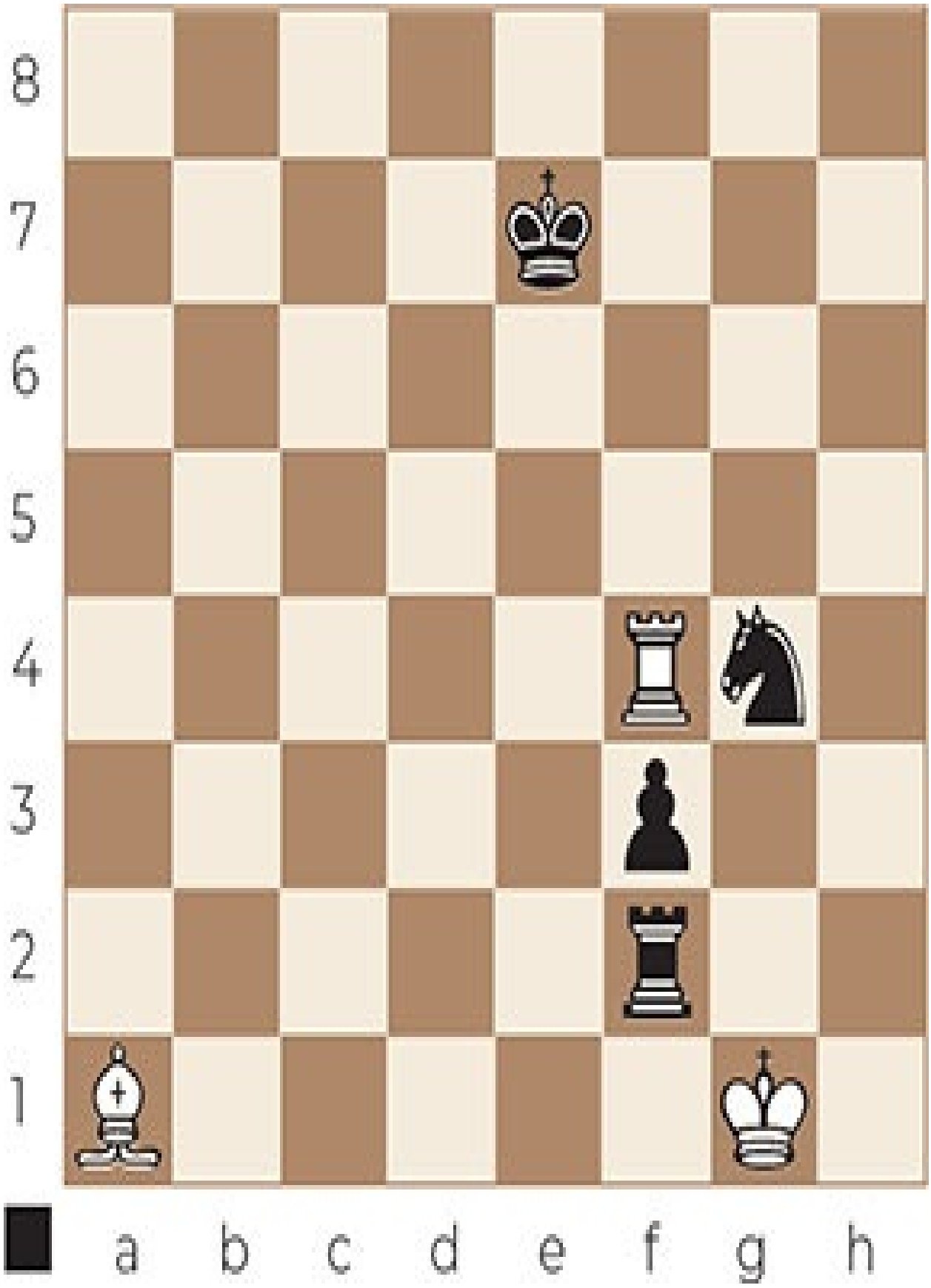
Exercise C 253


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 254

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

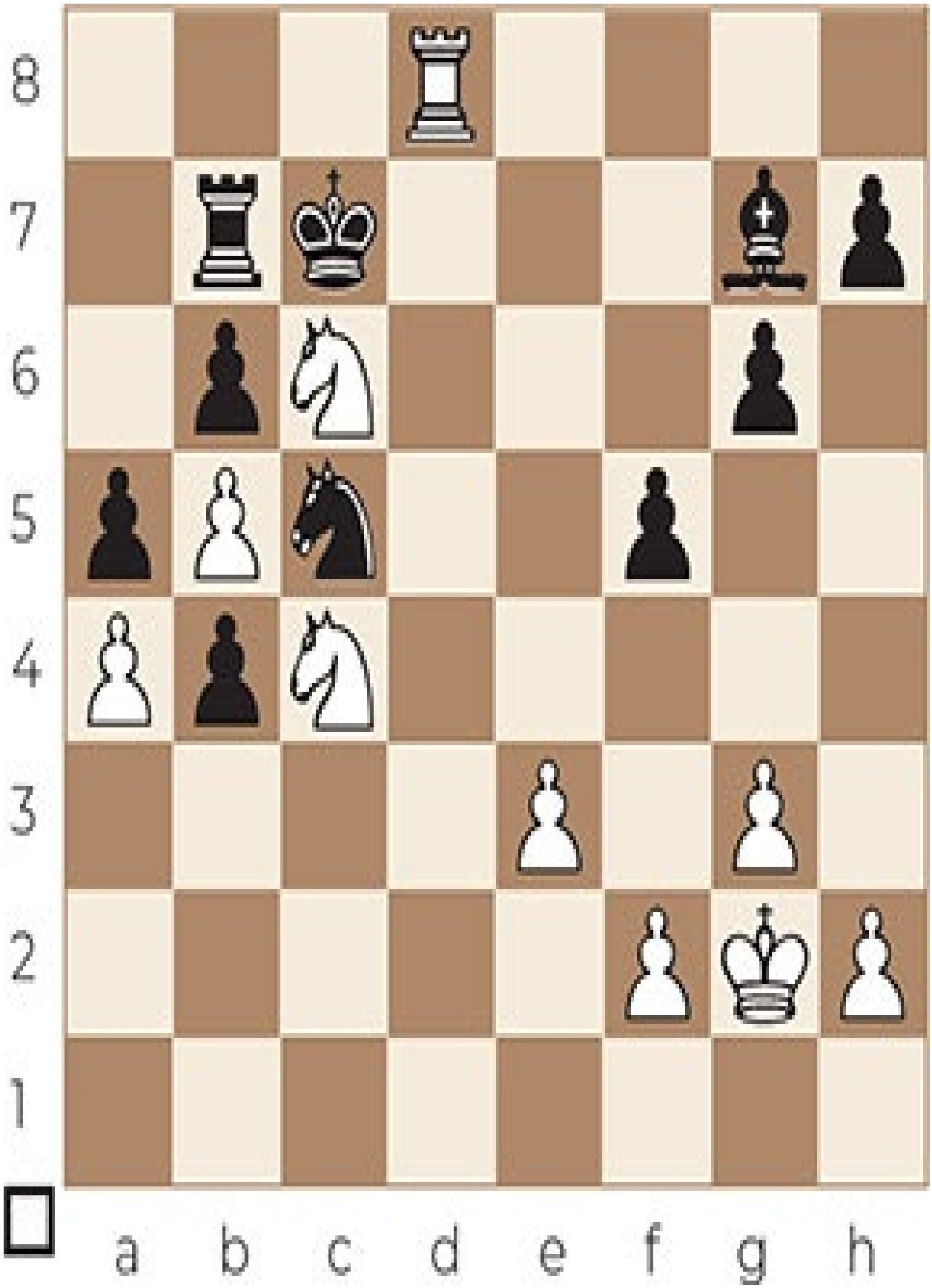
Exercise C 255


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

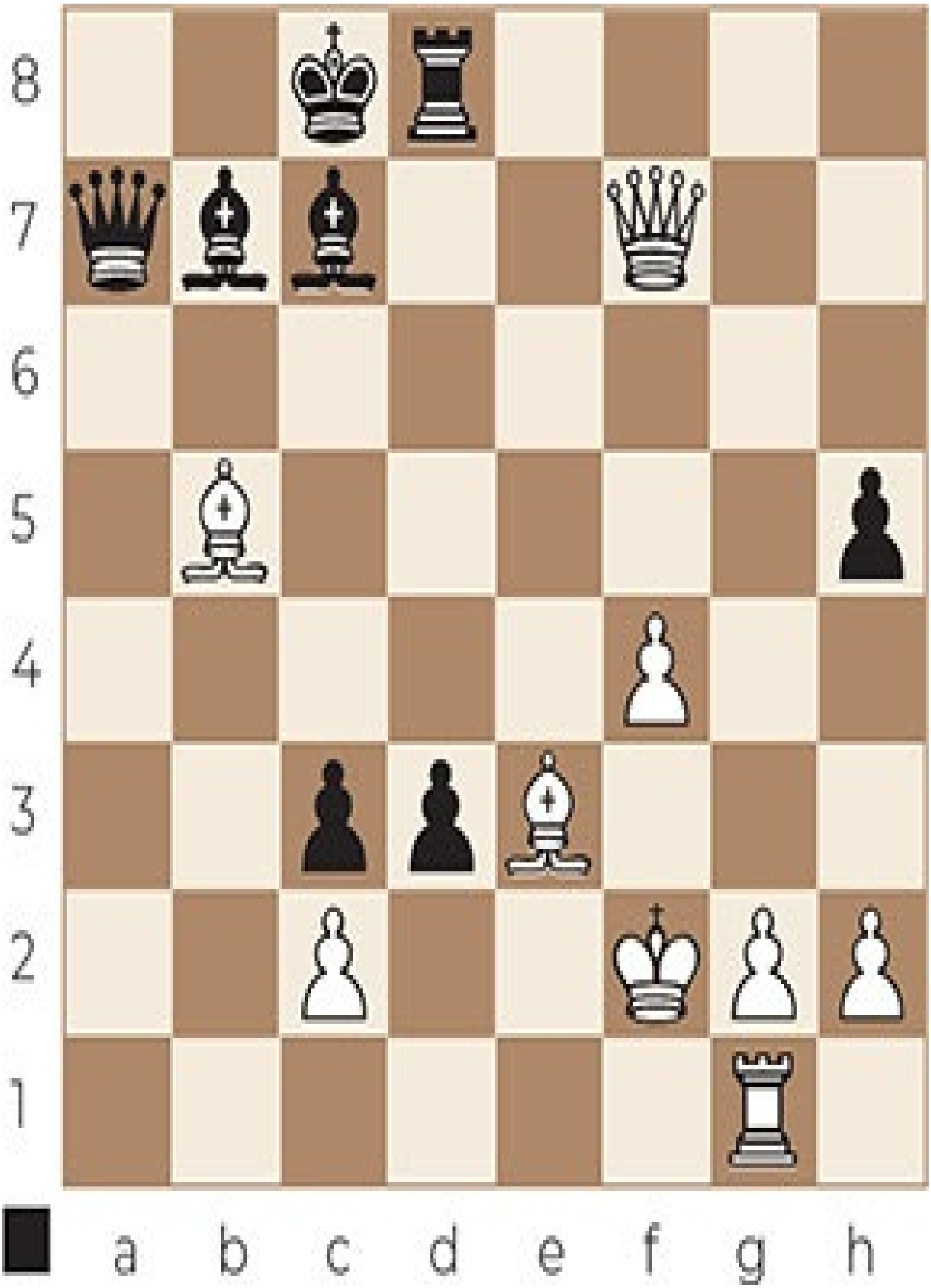
Exercise C 256

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 257


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

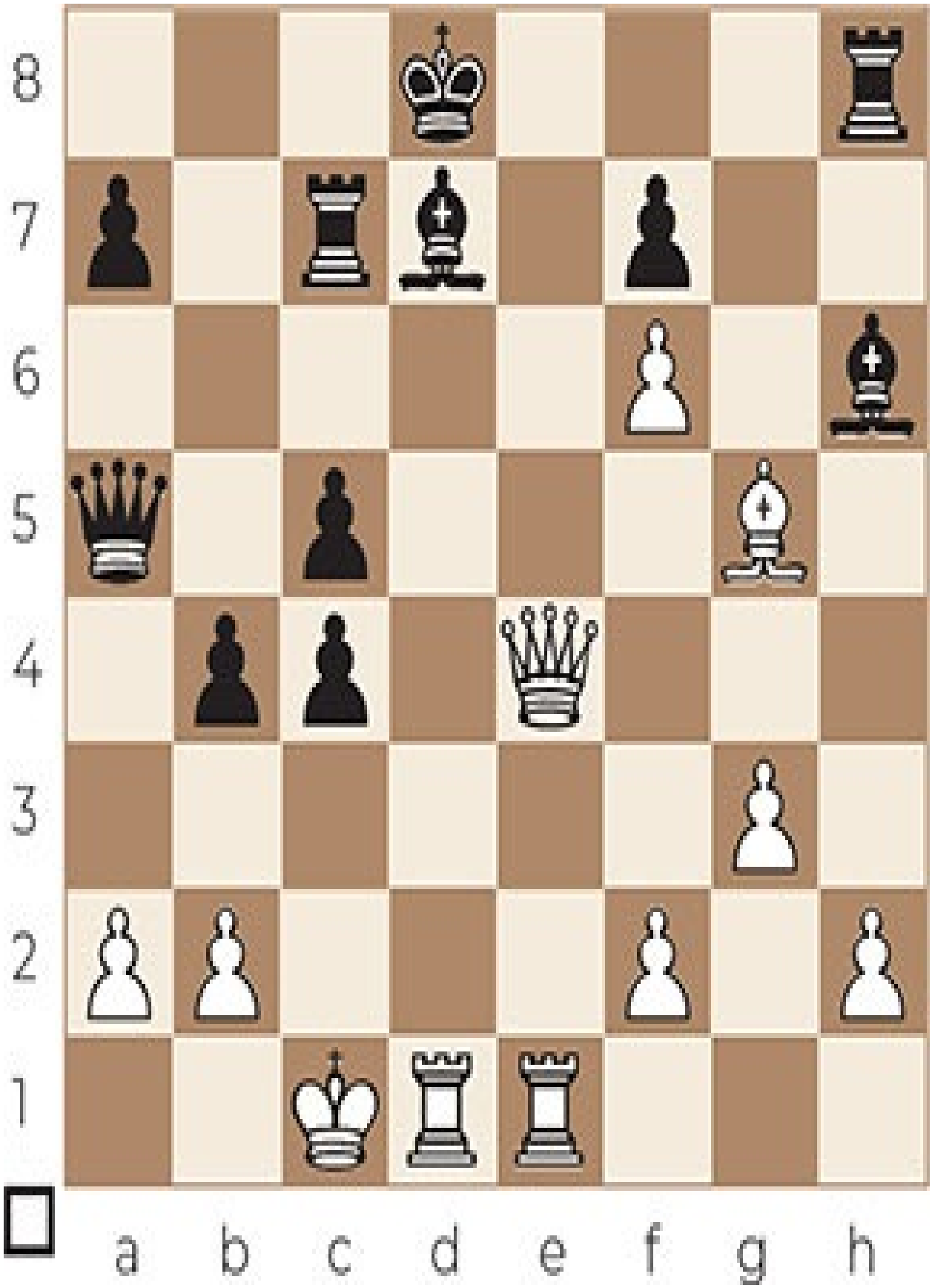
Exercise C 258


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

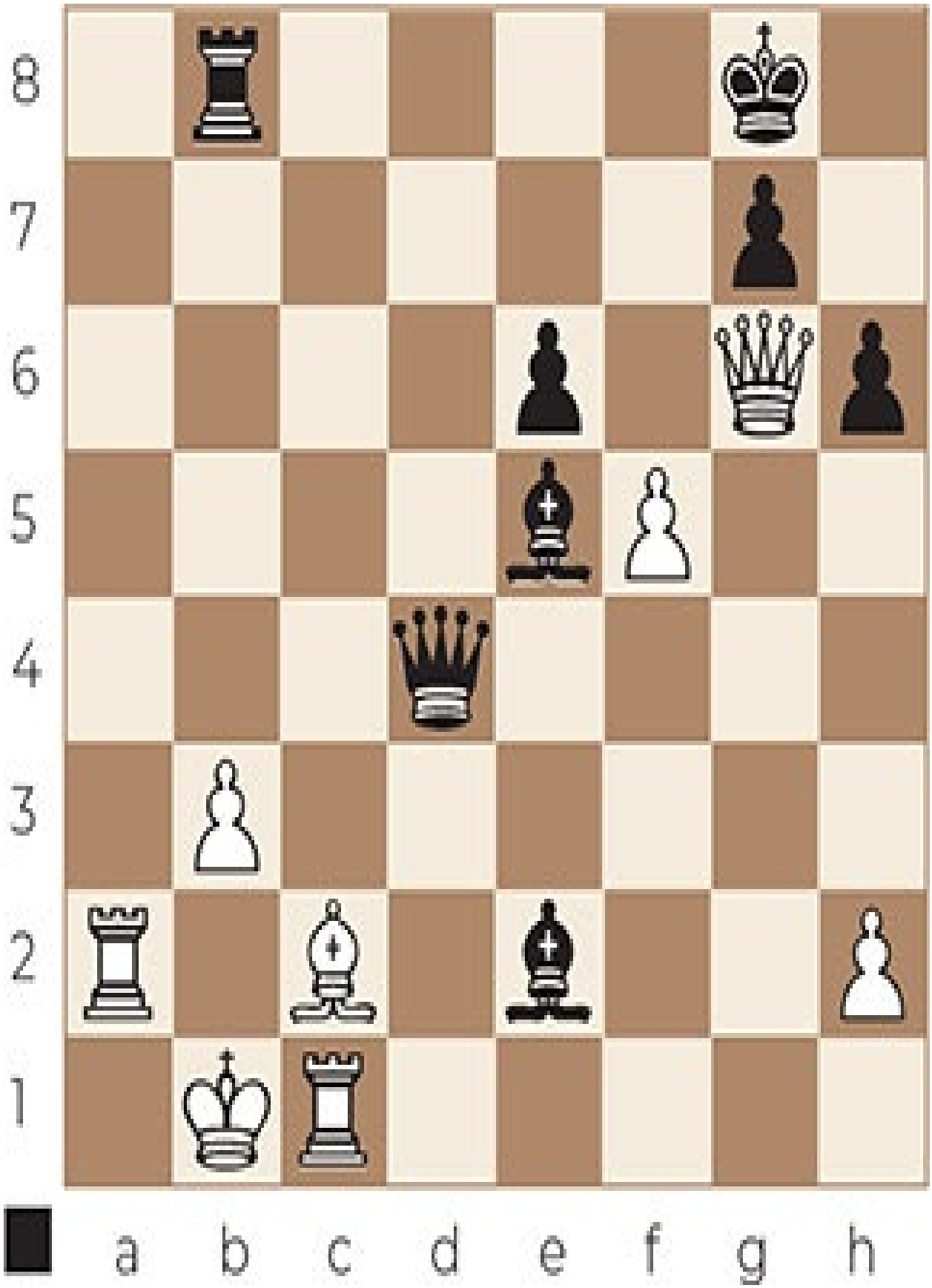
Exercise C 259

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 260


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 261


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 262

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 263

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

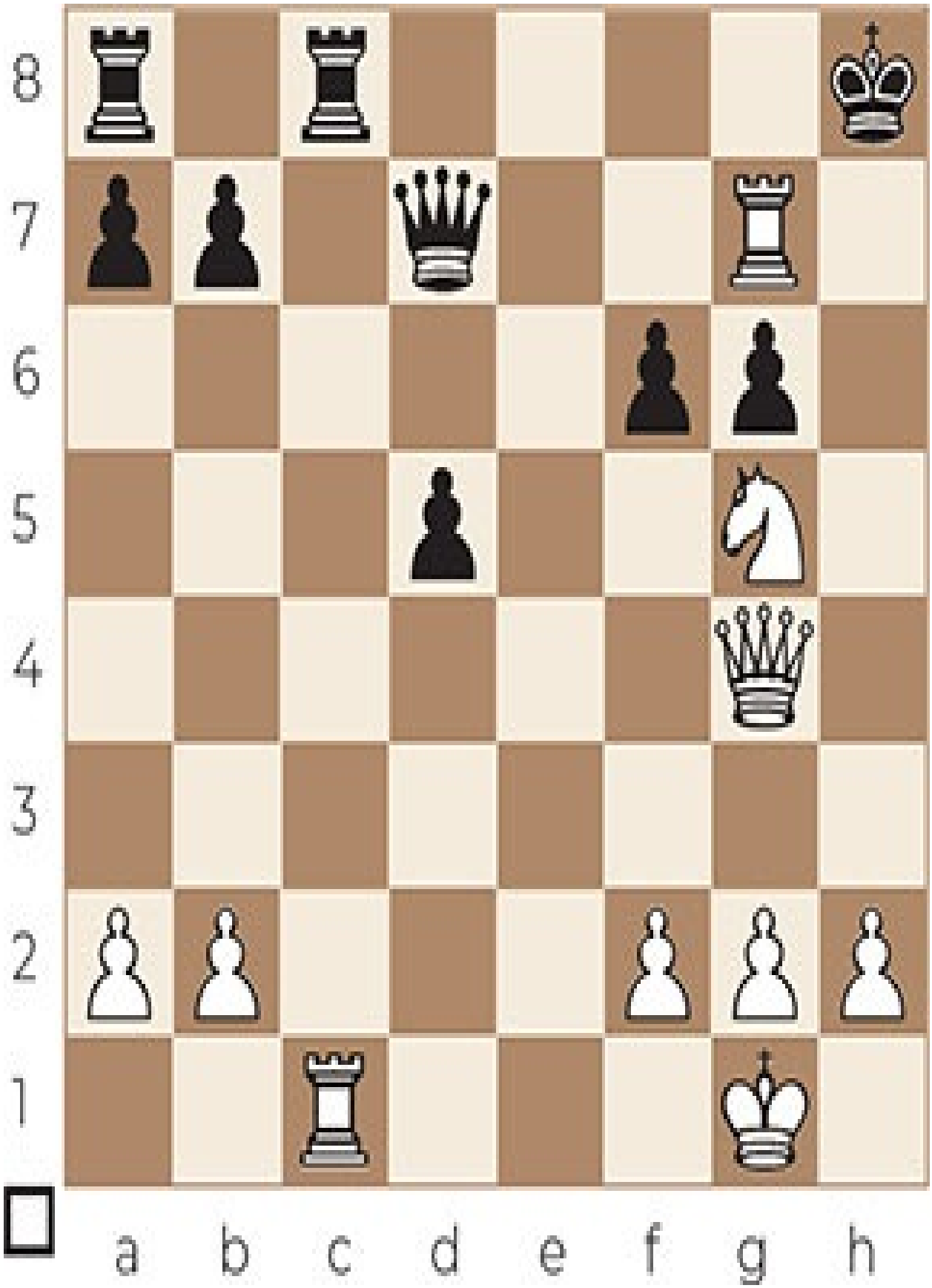
Exercise C 264

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 265

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

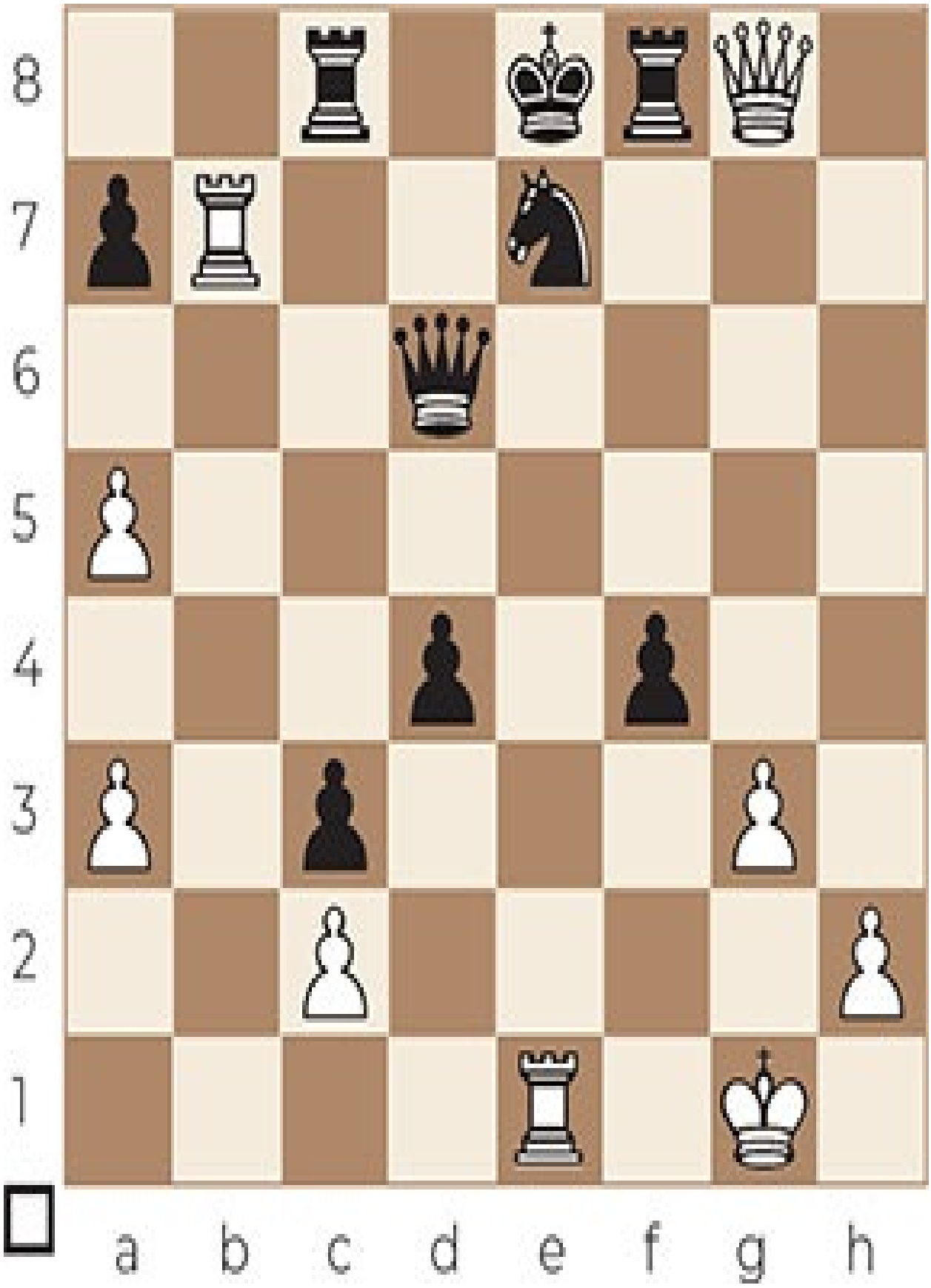
Exercise C 266


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 267

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

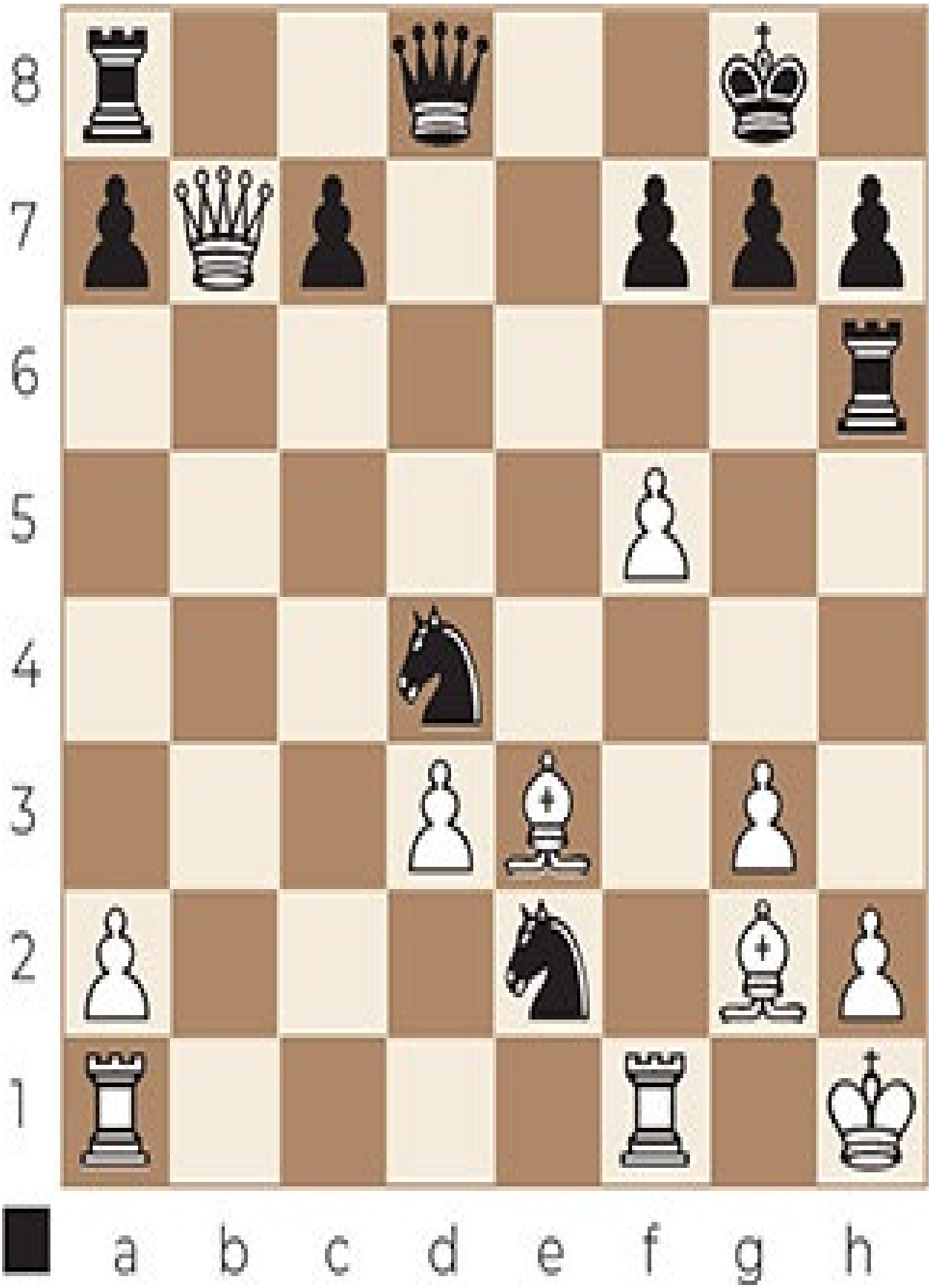
Exercise C 268


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 269

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 270


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 271

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

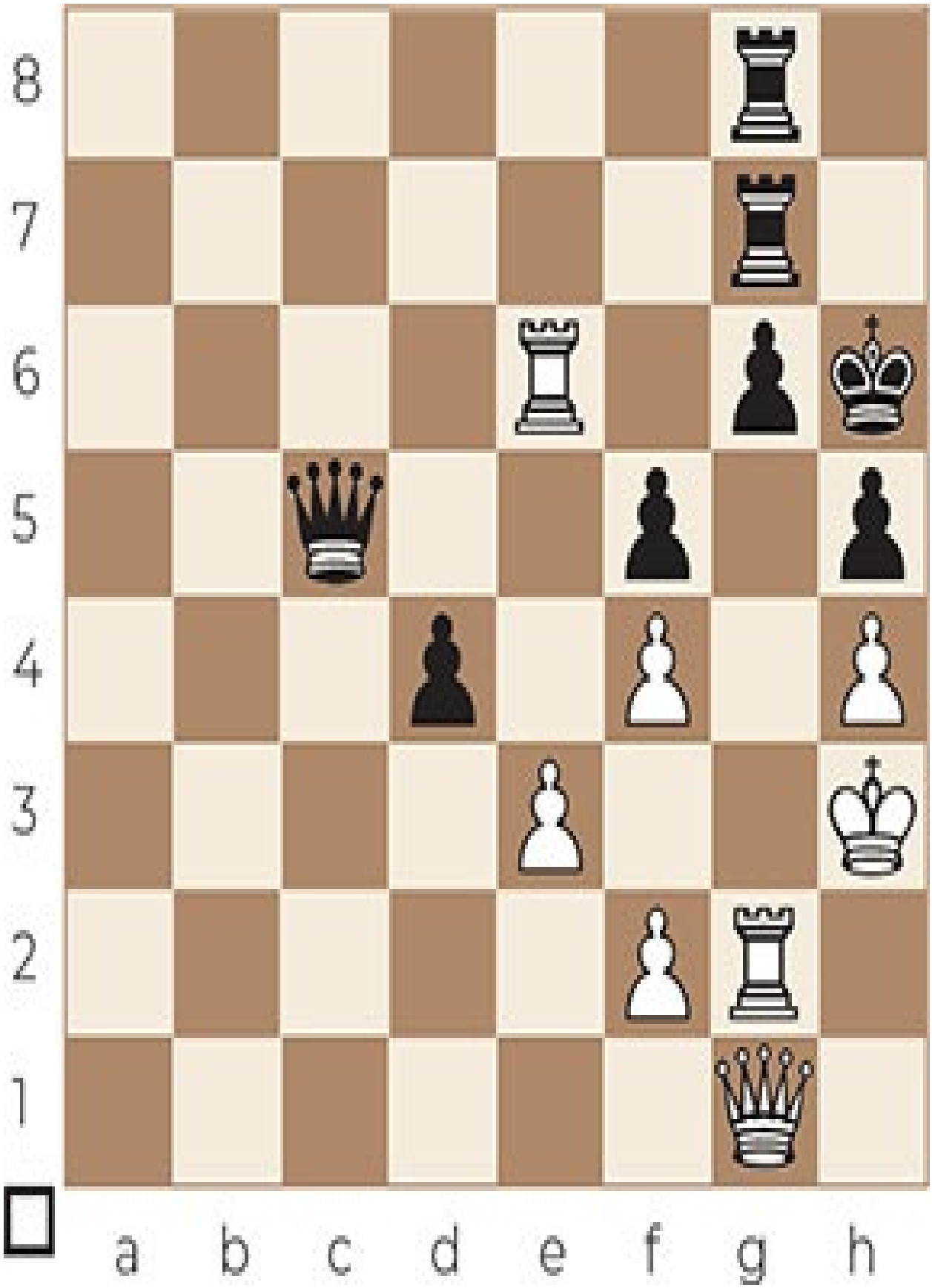
Exercise C 272

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 273

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 274


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

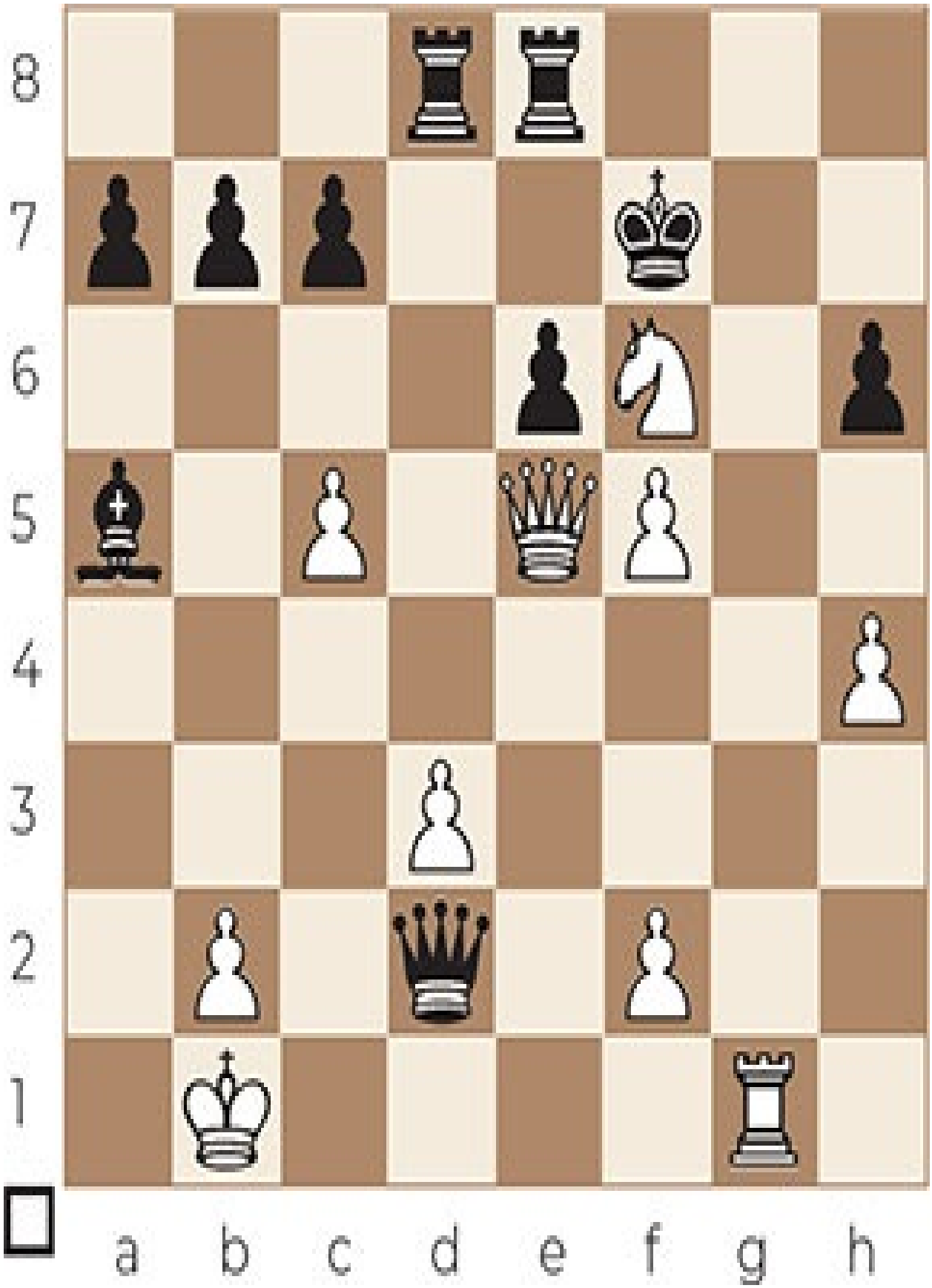
Exercise C 275

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 276

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

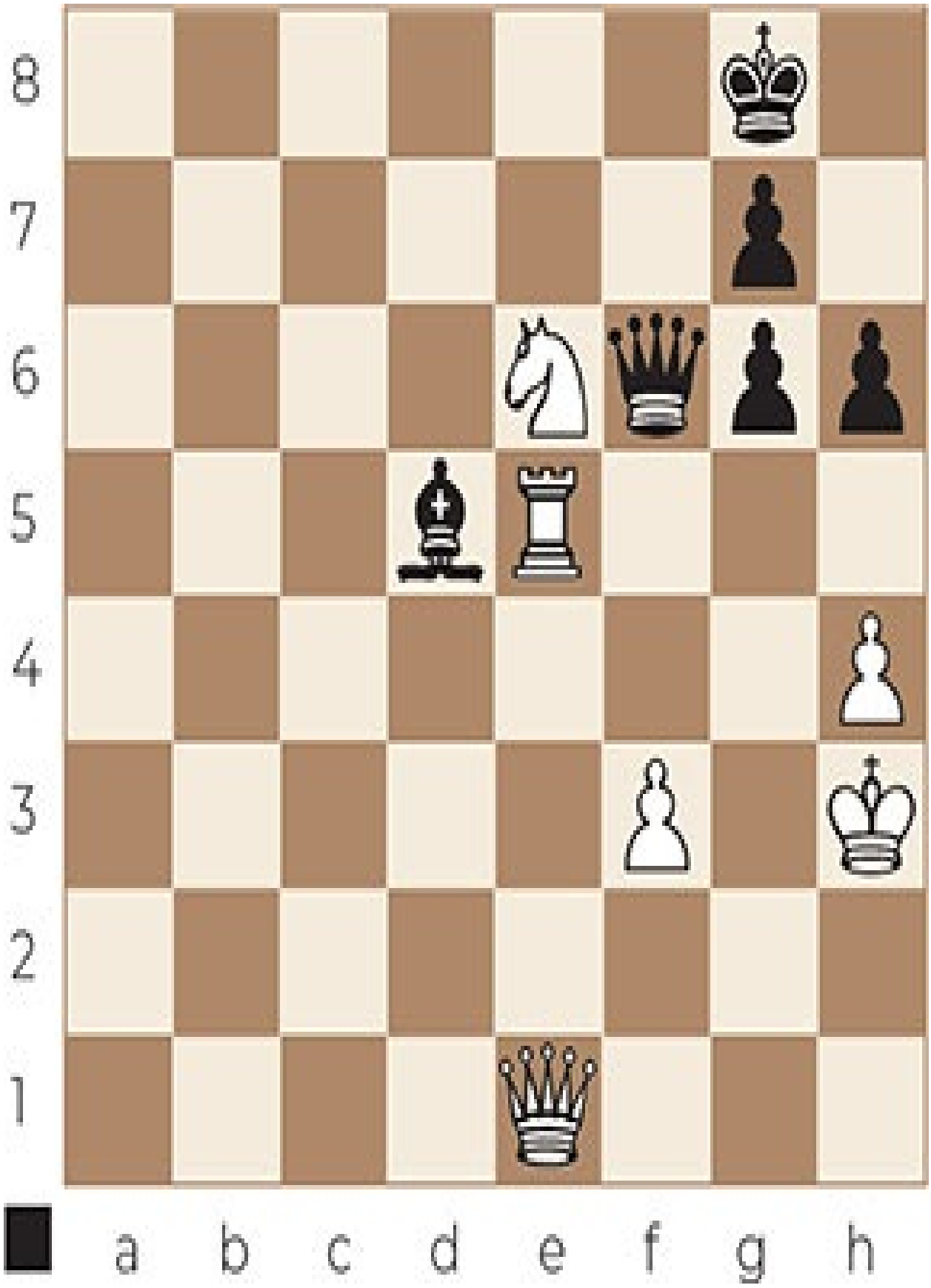
Exercise C 277


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 278

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 279


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

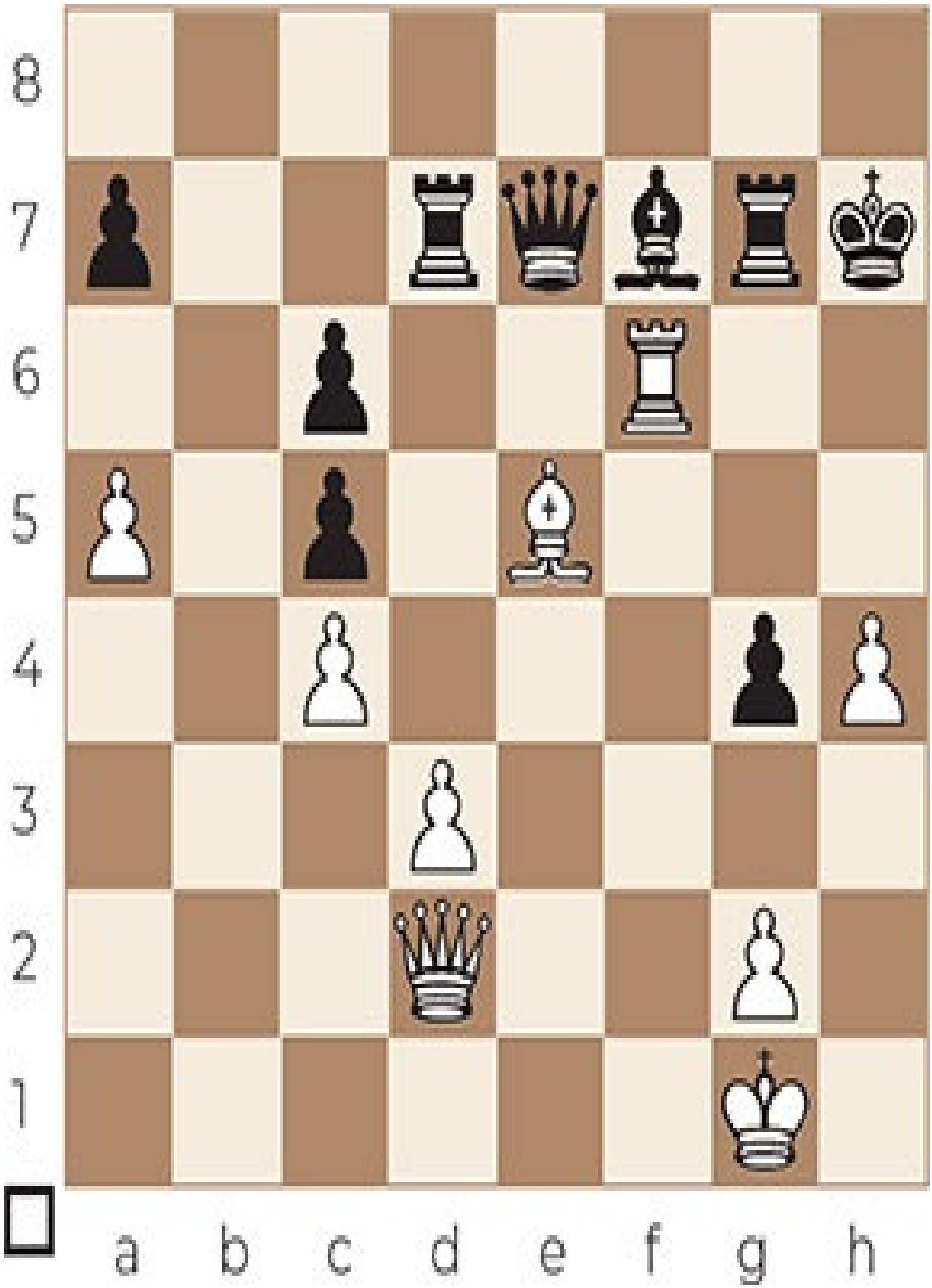
Exercise C 280

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 281

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise C 282


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

EXERCISES D

Final test

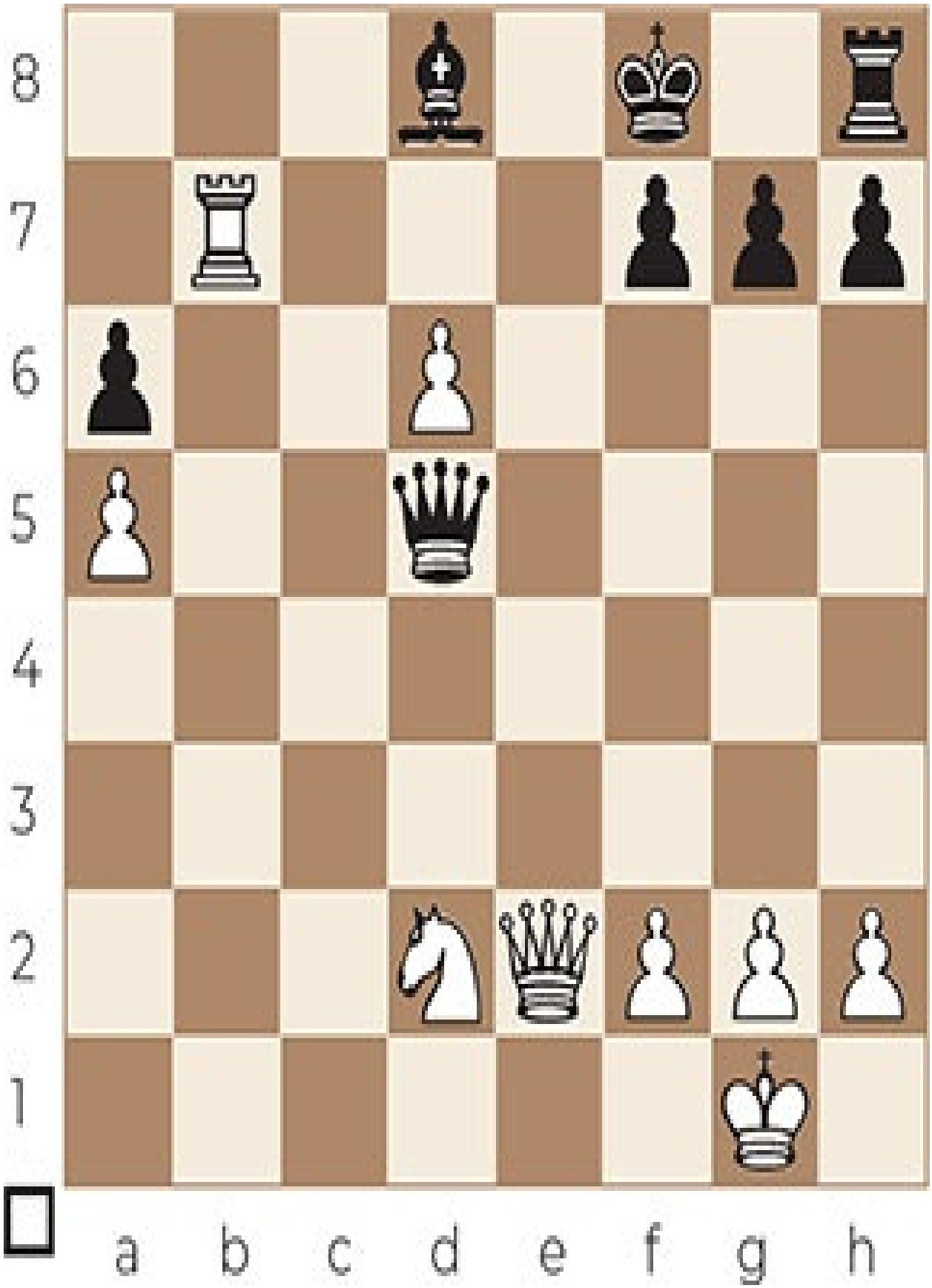
EXERCISES D

Final test

The final test (D) contains 100 of the hardest exercises in this book.

Good luck!

Exercise D 1


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

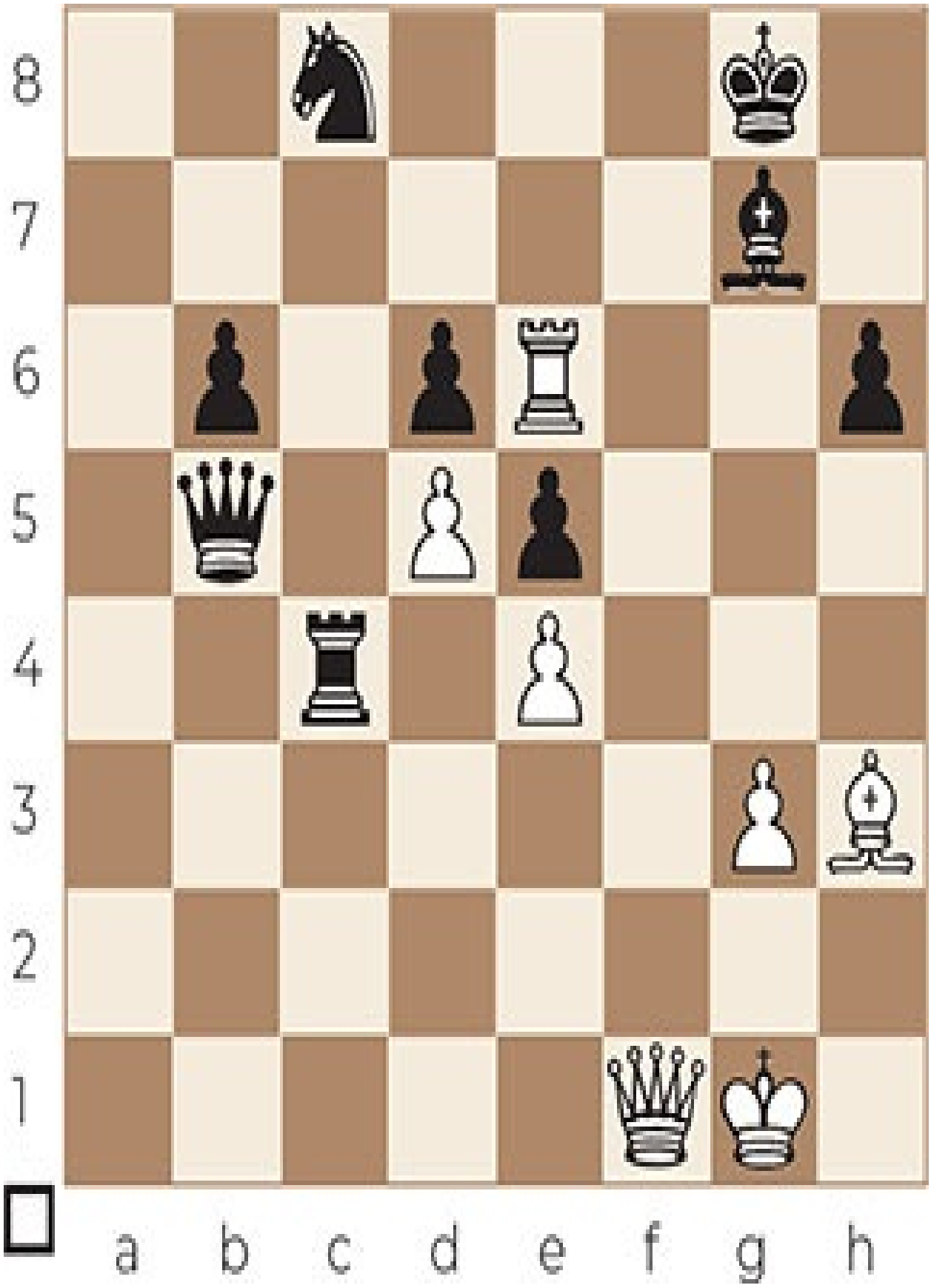
Exercise D 2

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

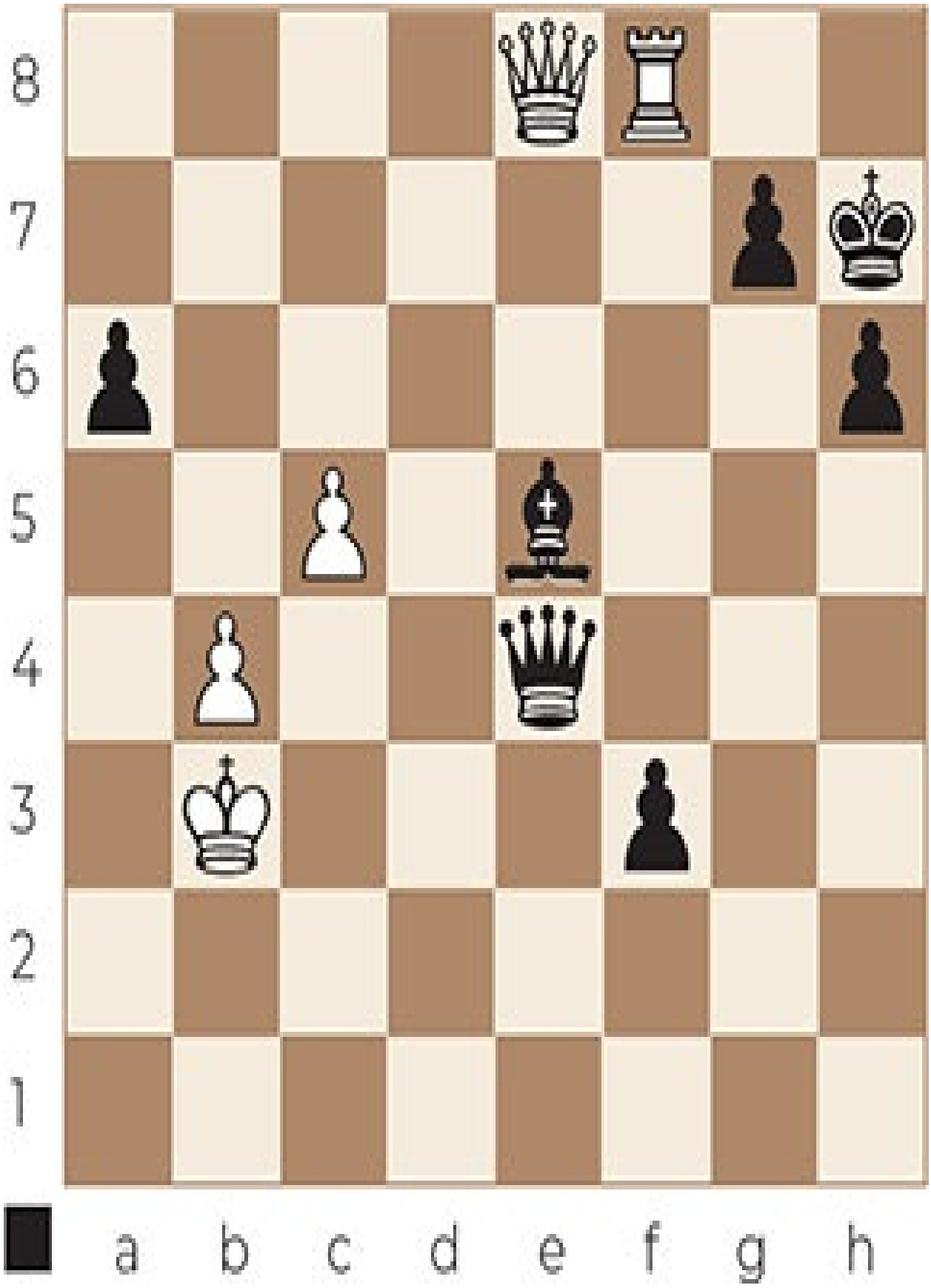
Exercise D 3

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 4


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 5


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 6

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

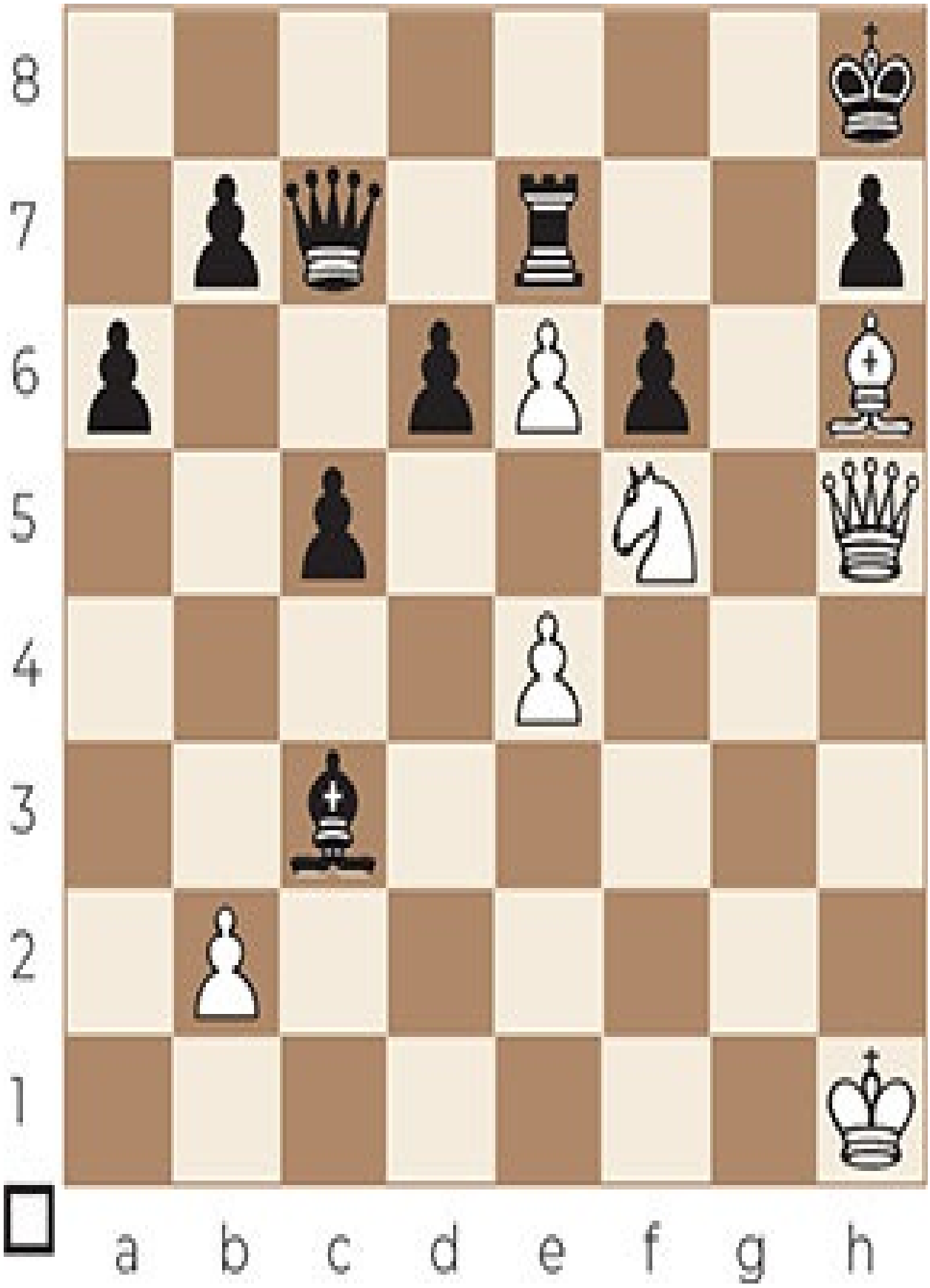
Exercise D 7

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 8

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 9


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 10

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 11

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

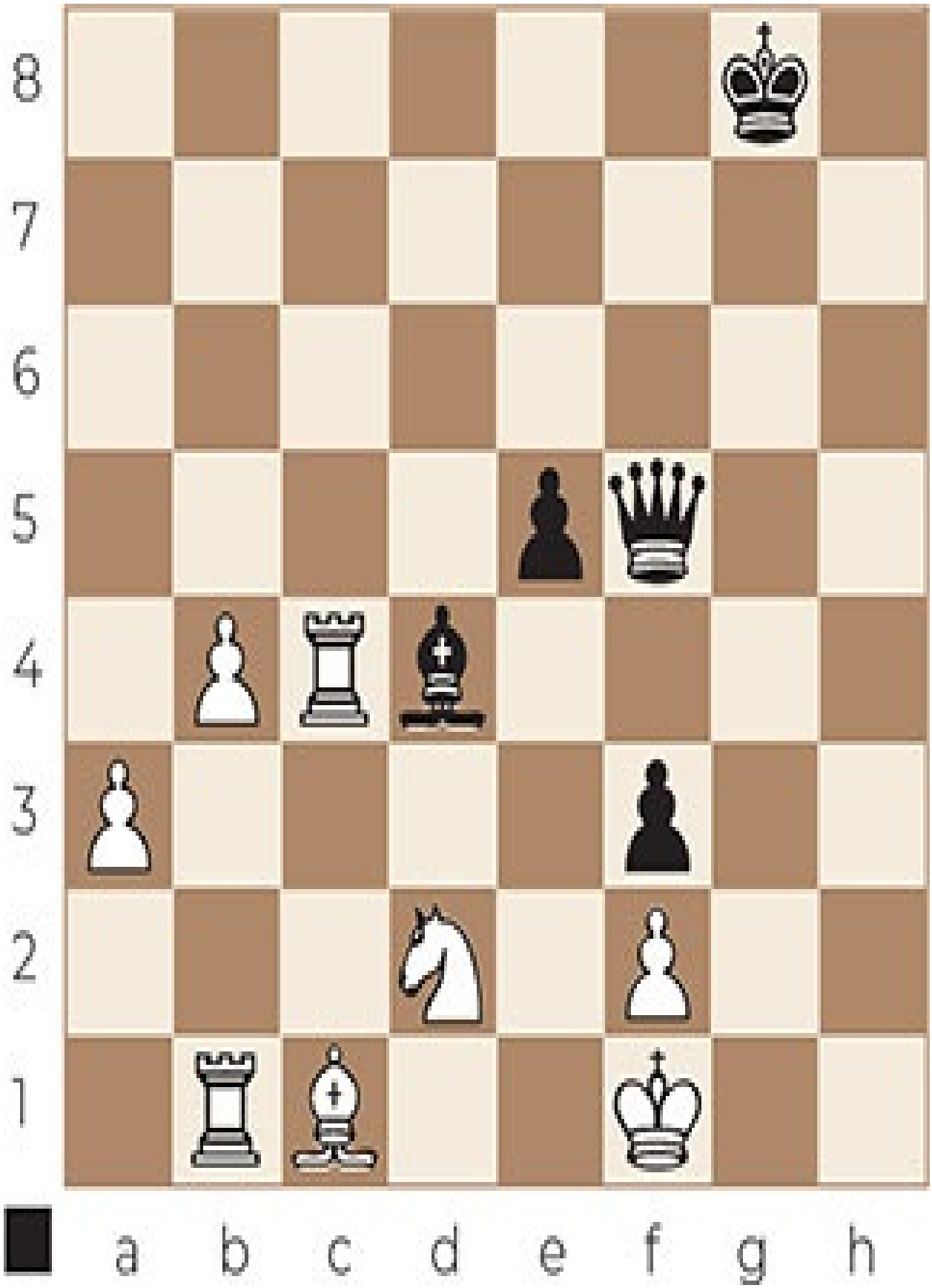
Exercise D 12

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

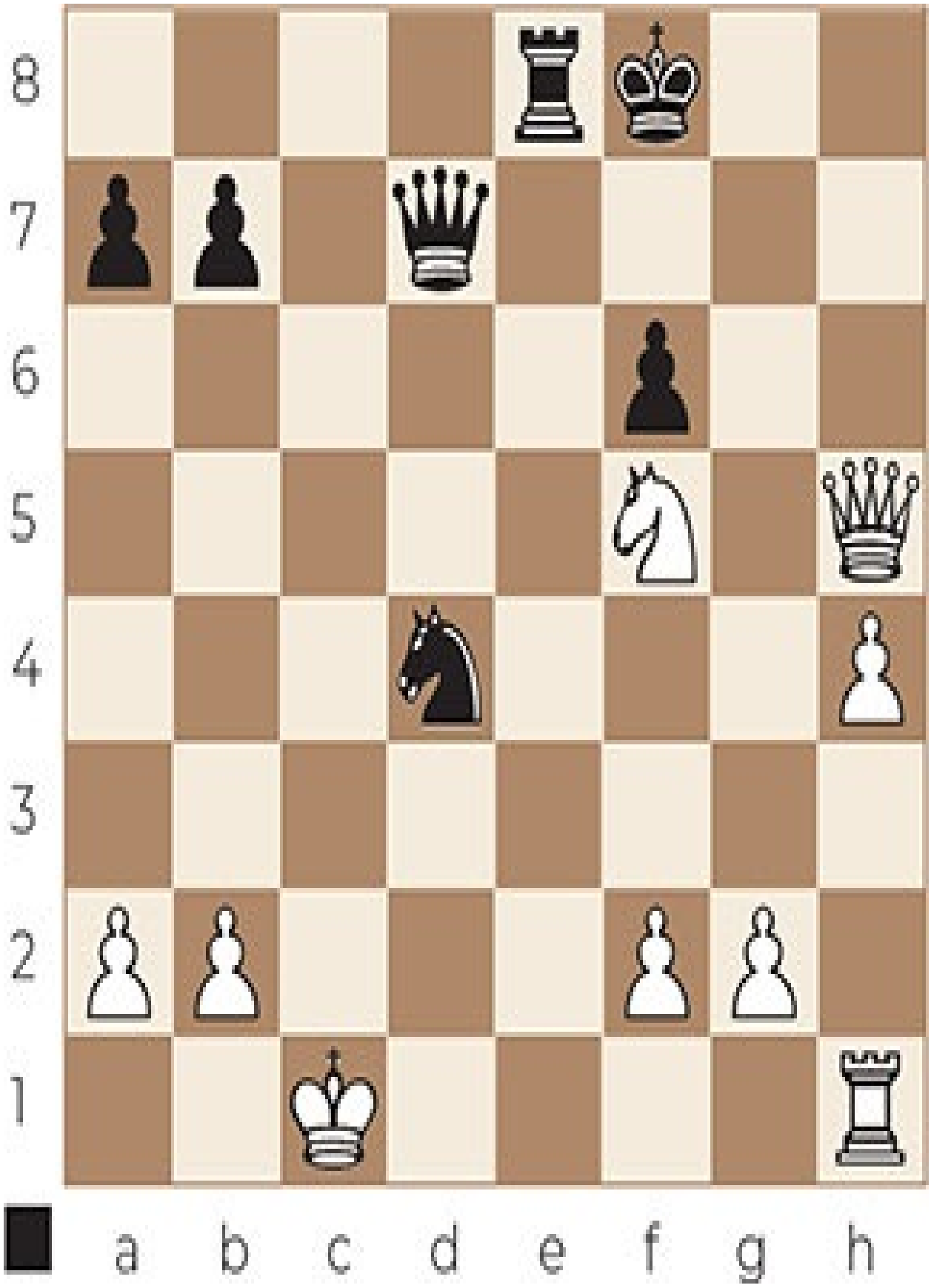
Exercise D 13

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 14


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 15


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

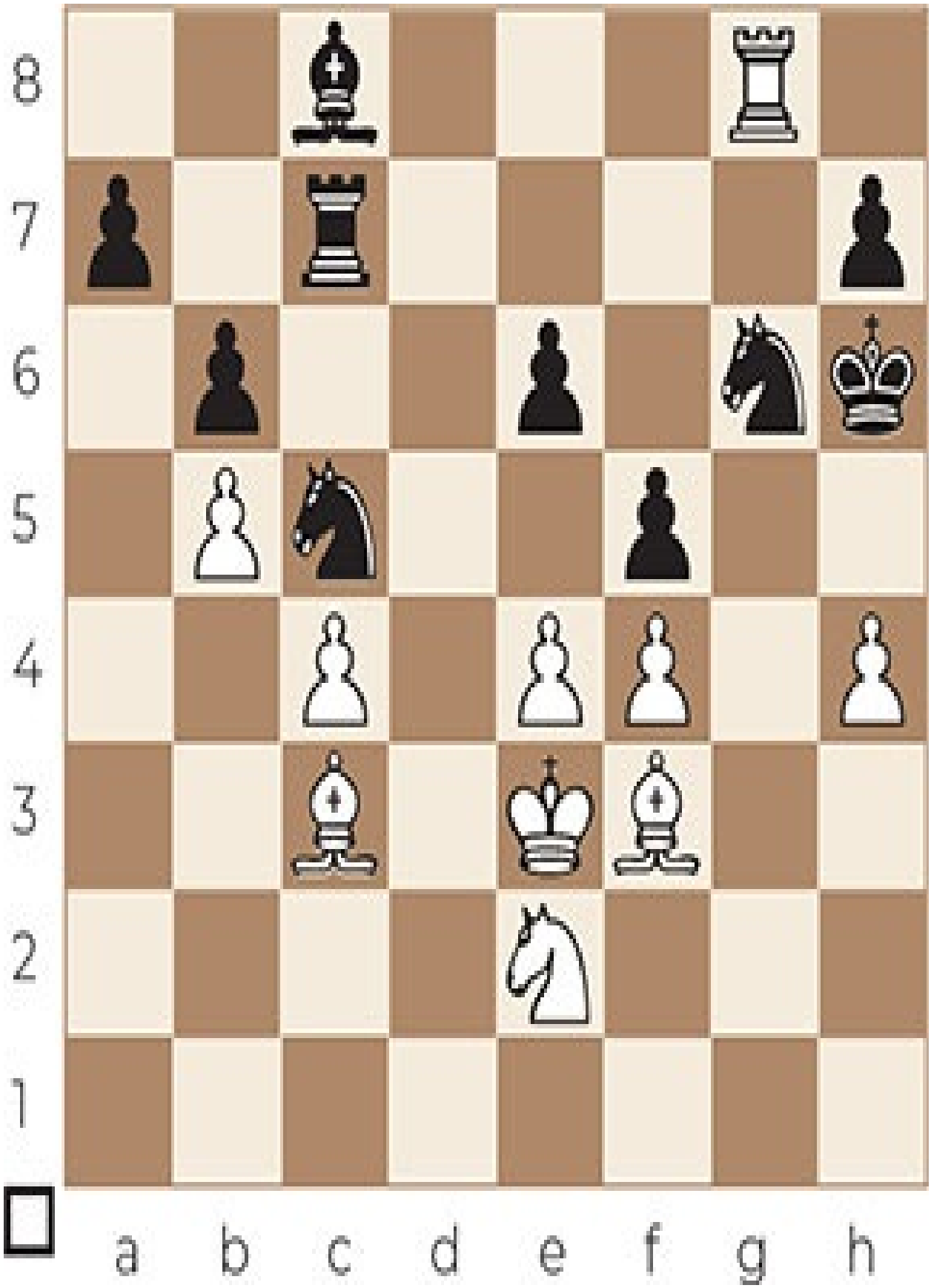
Exercise D 16

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

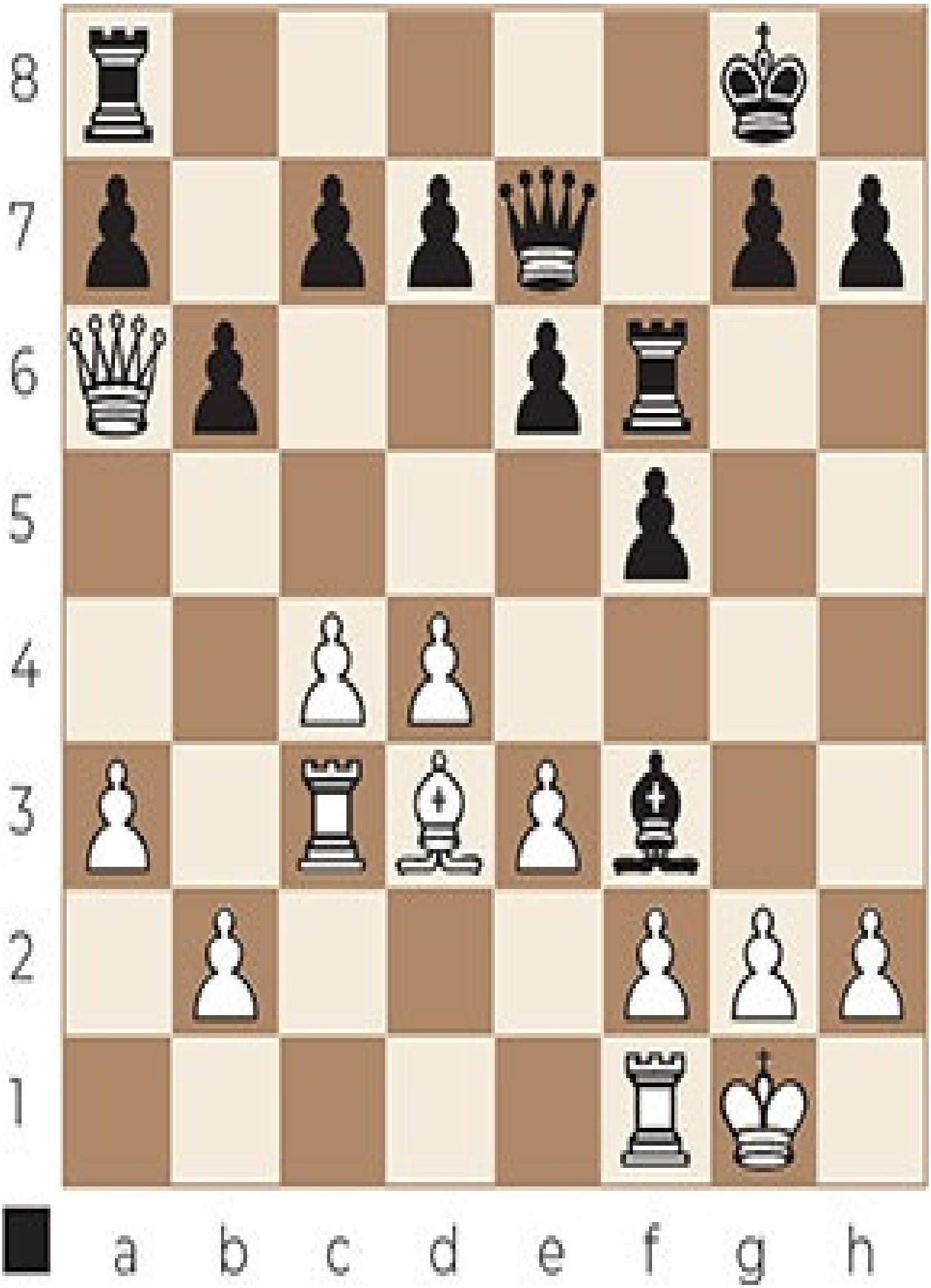
Exercise D 17

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 18


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 19


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 20

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

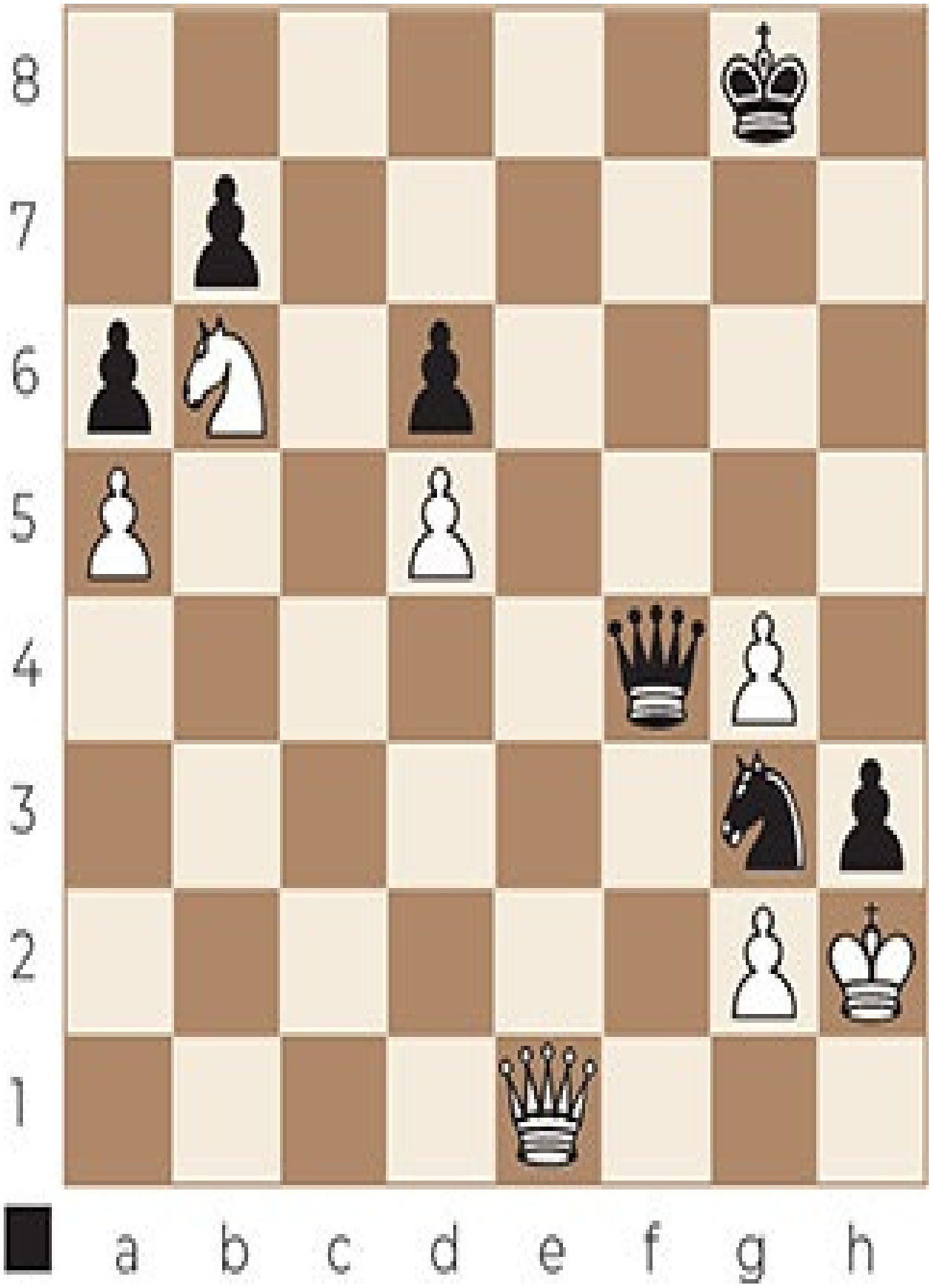
Exercise D 21

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 22

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

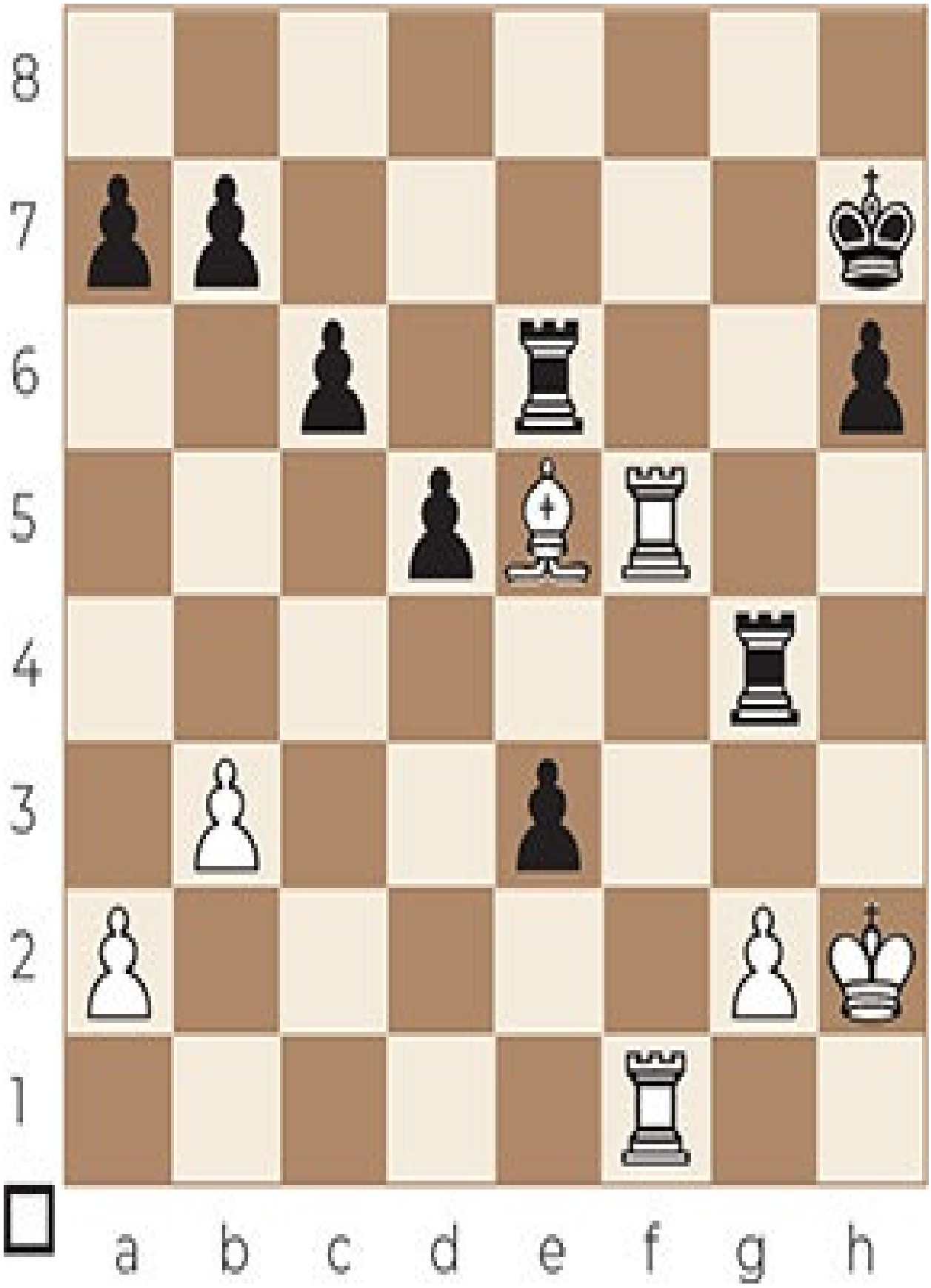
Exercise D 23


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 24

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

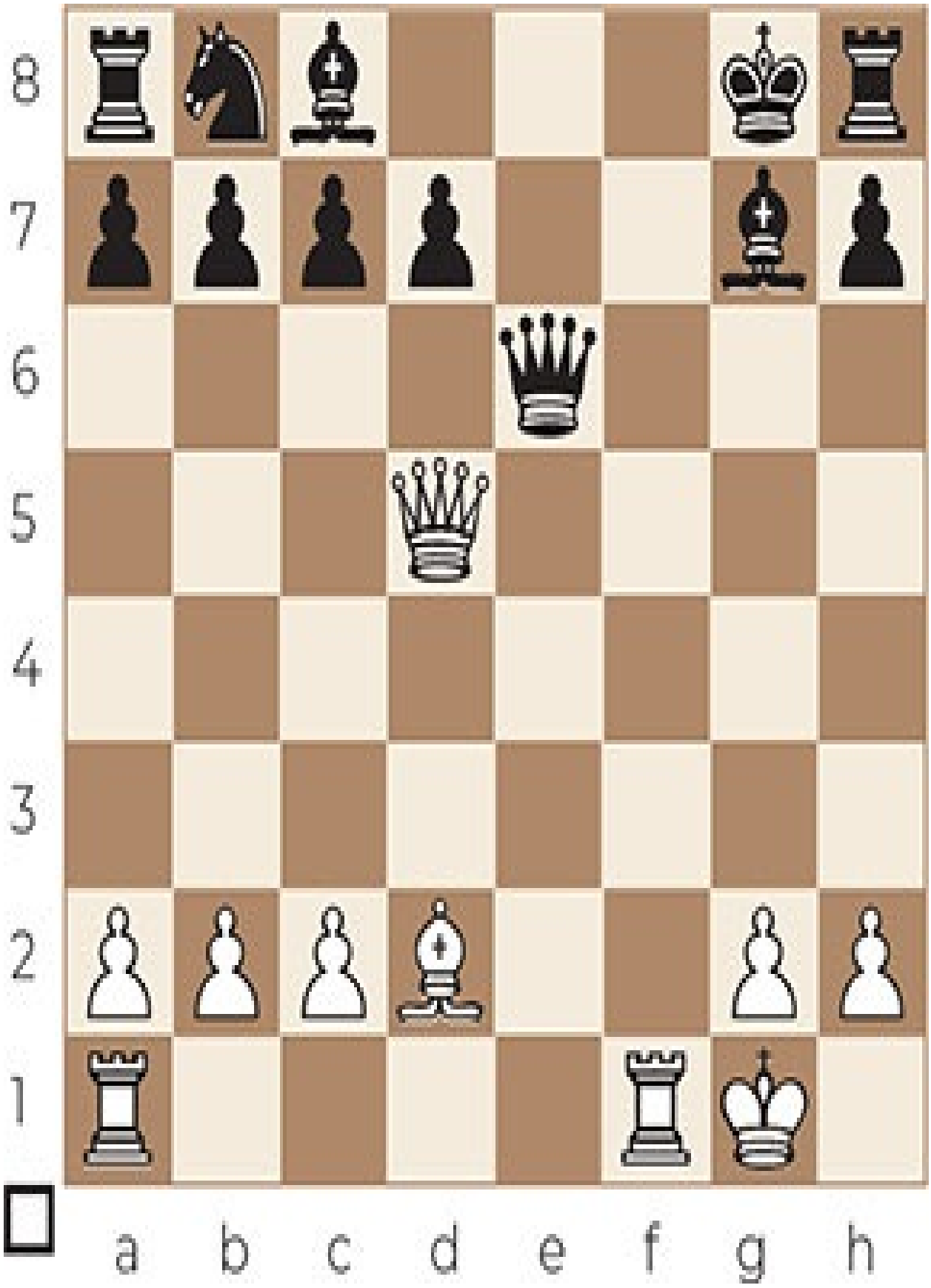
Exercise D 25


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

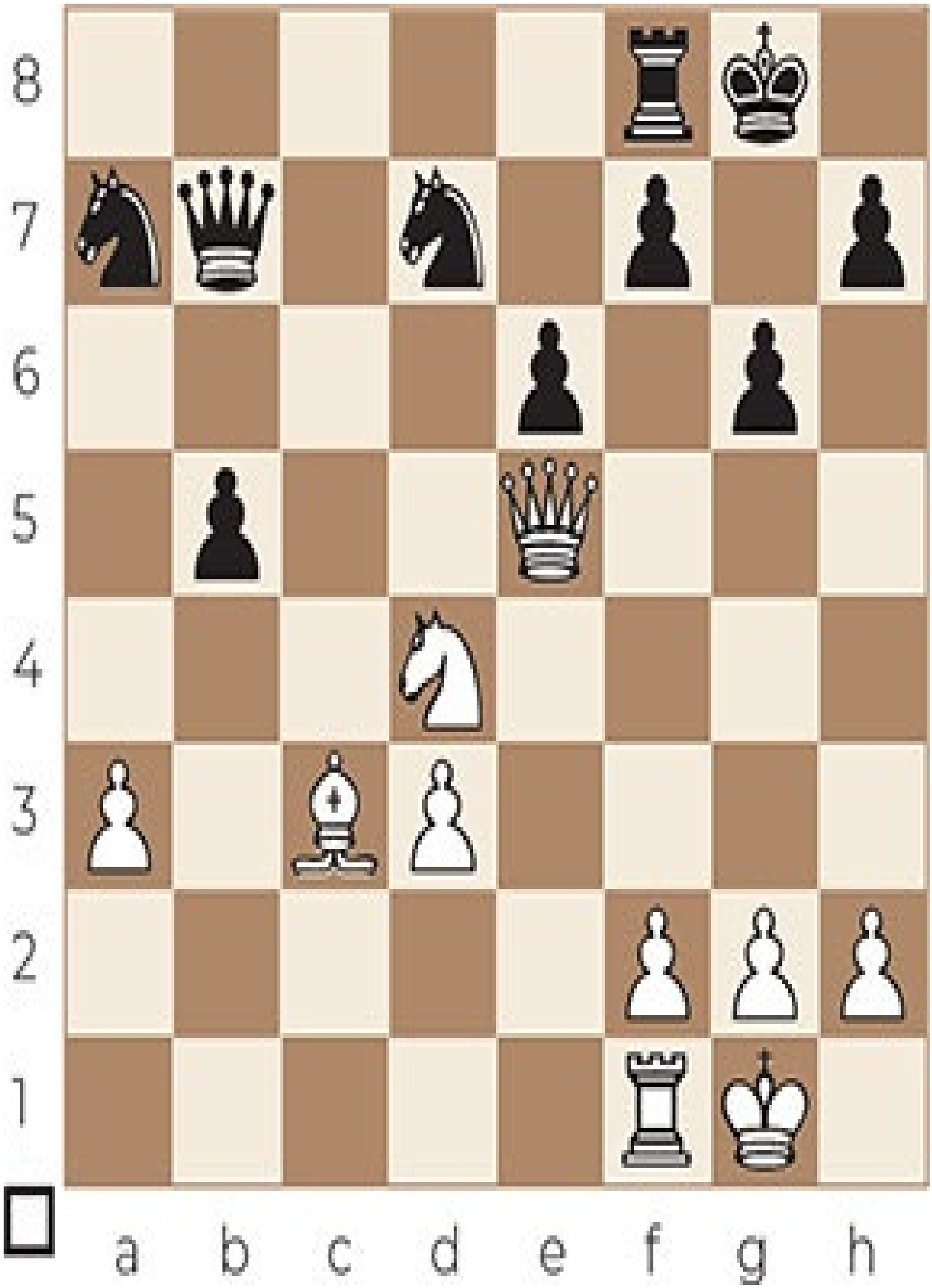
Exercise D 26

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

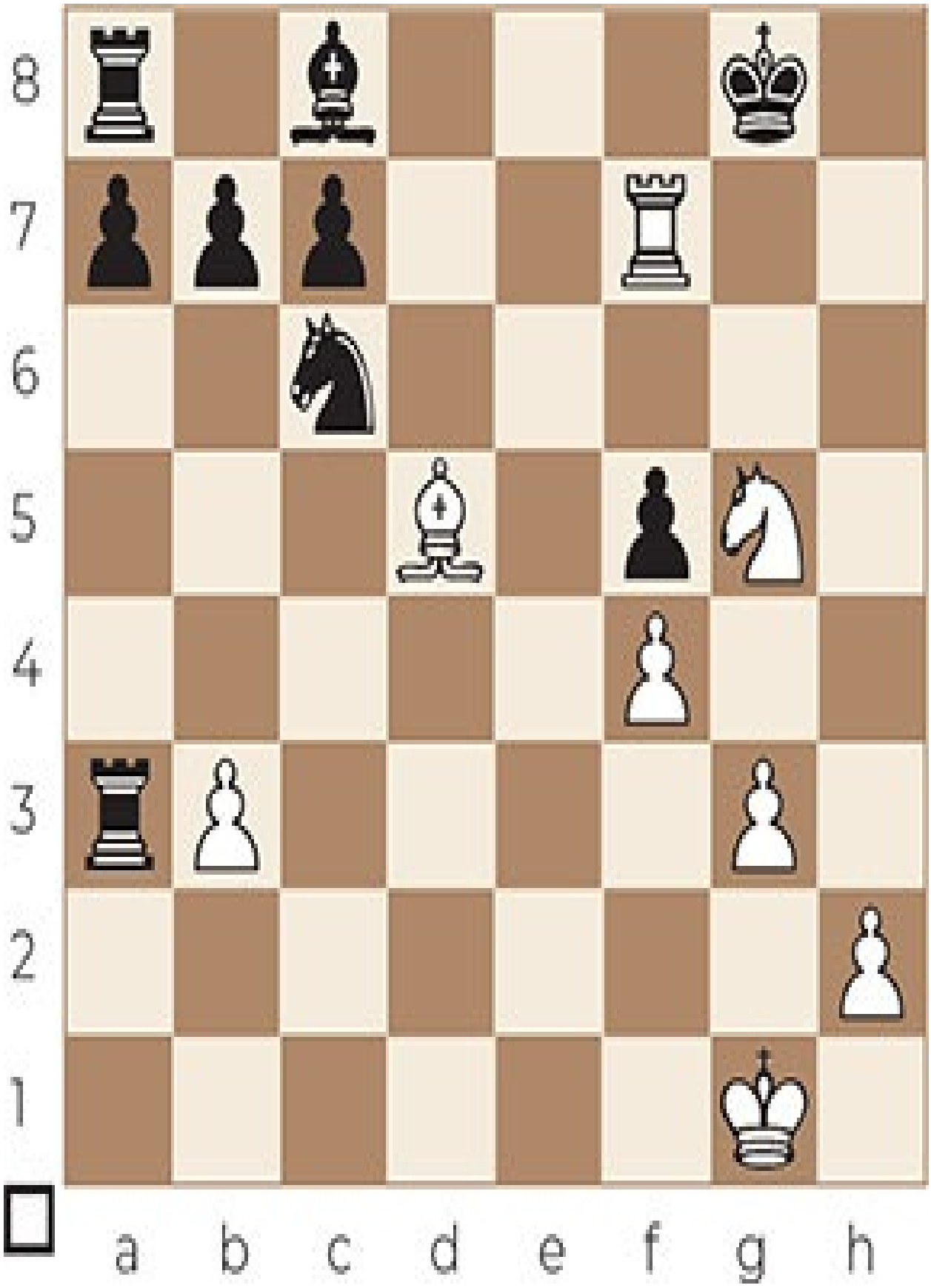
Exercise D 27


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 28


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

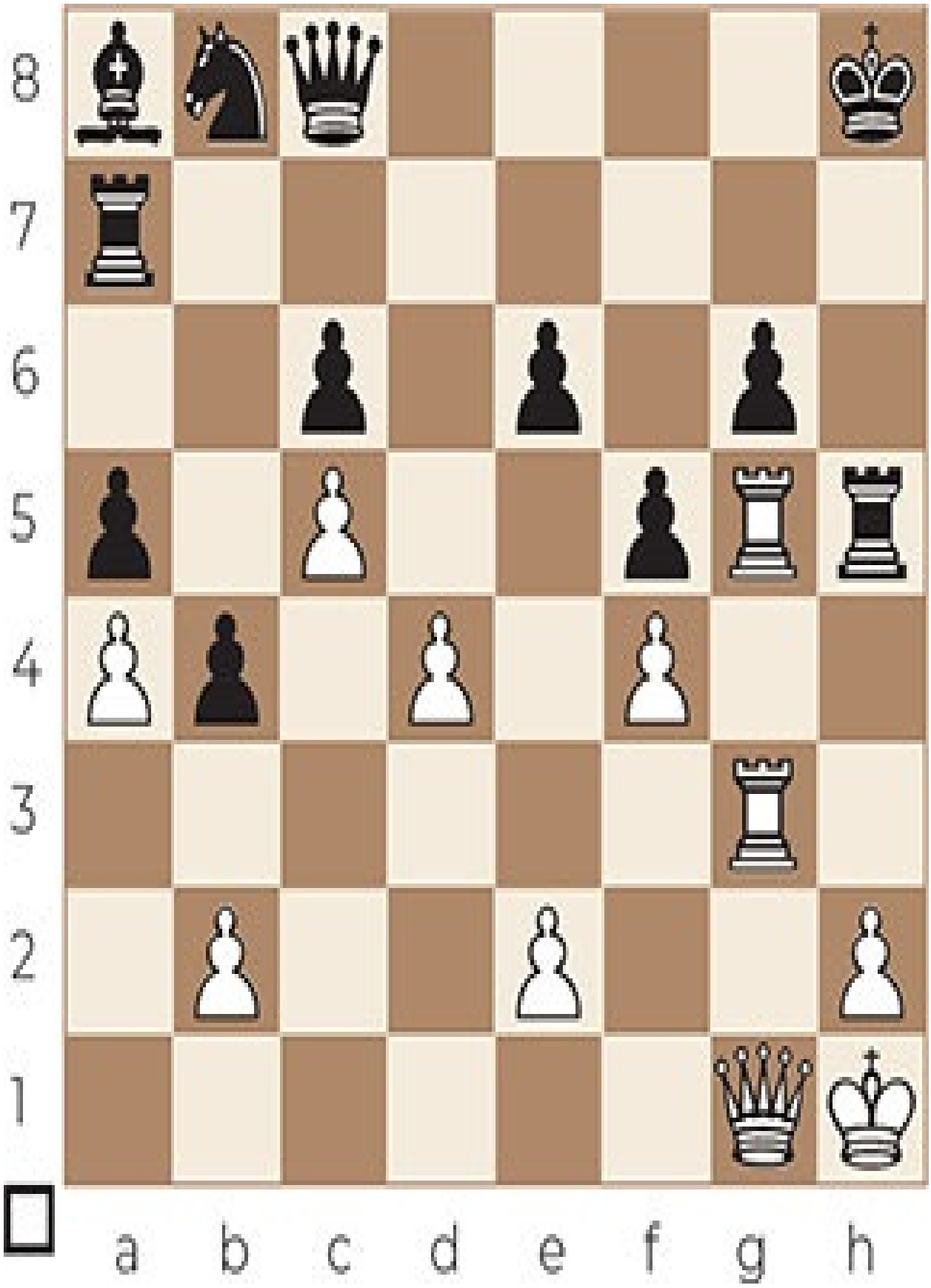
Exercise D 29


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 30

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 31


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 32

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 33

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

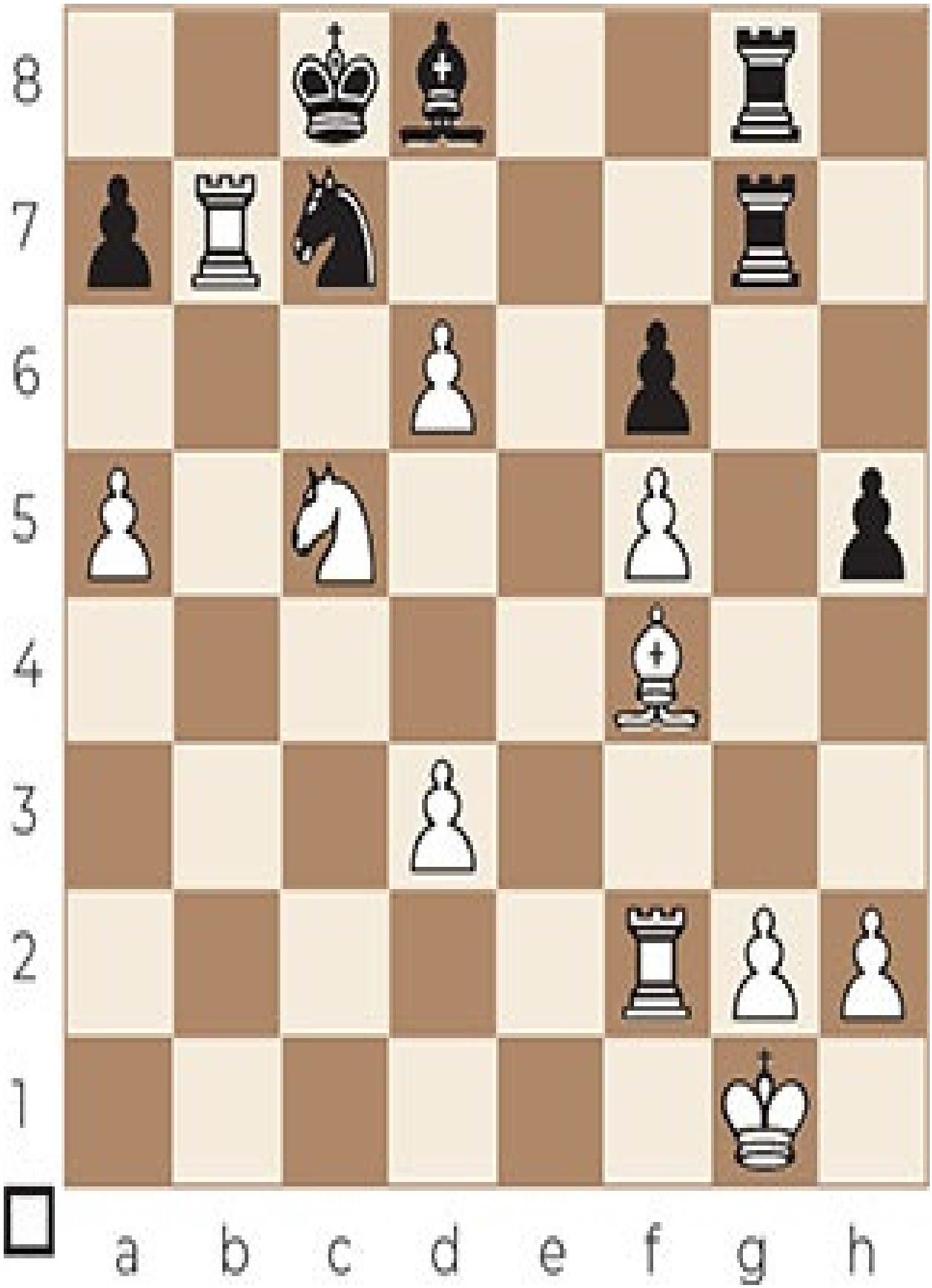
Exercise D 34

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 35

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 36


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 37

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 38

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

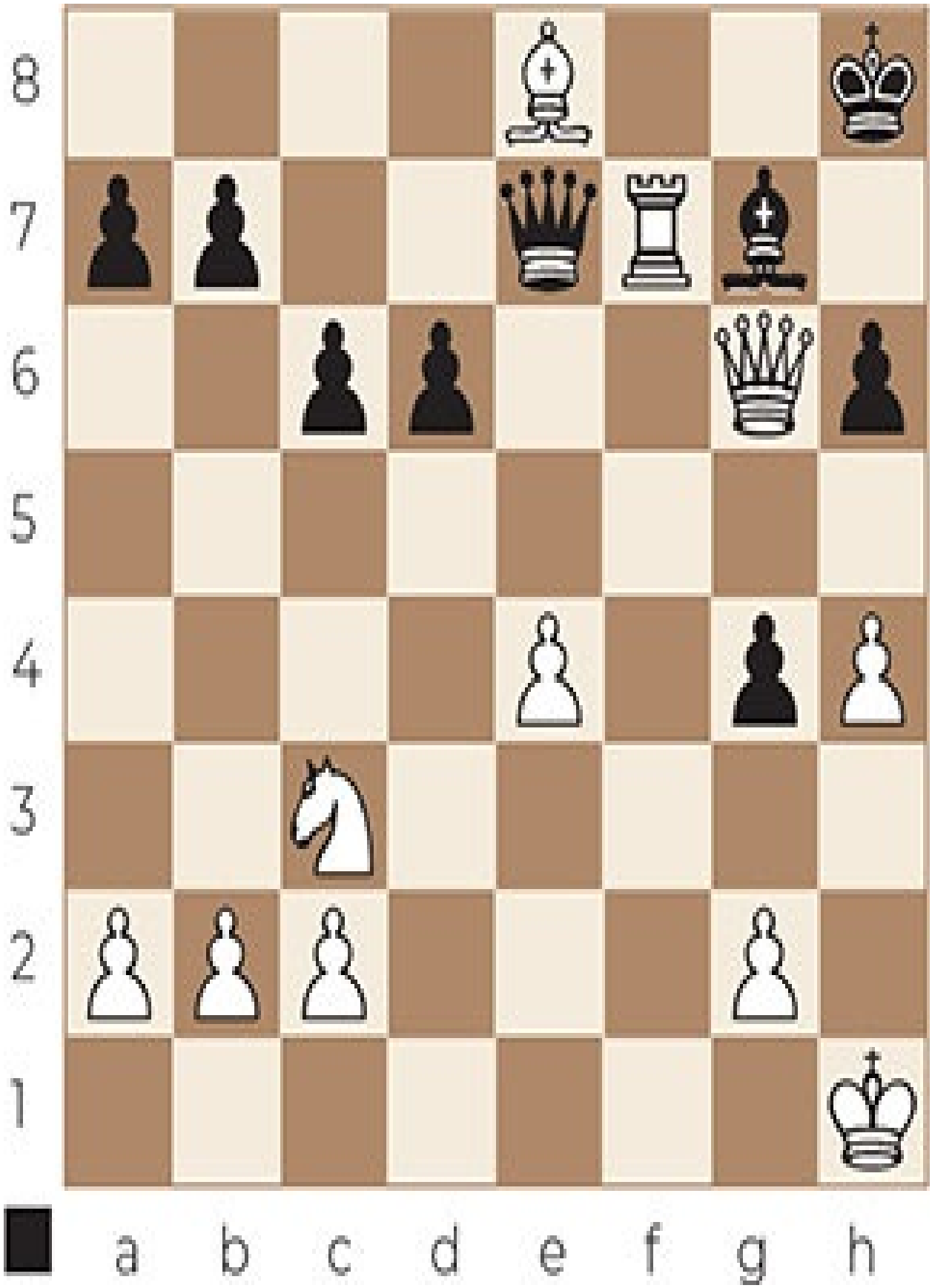
Exercise D 39

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 40

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 41


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

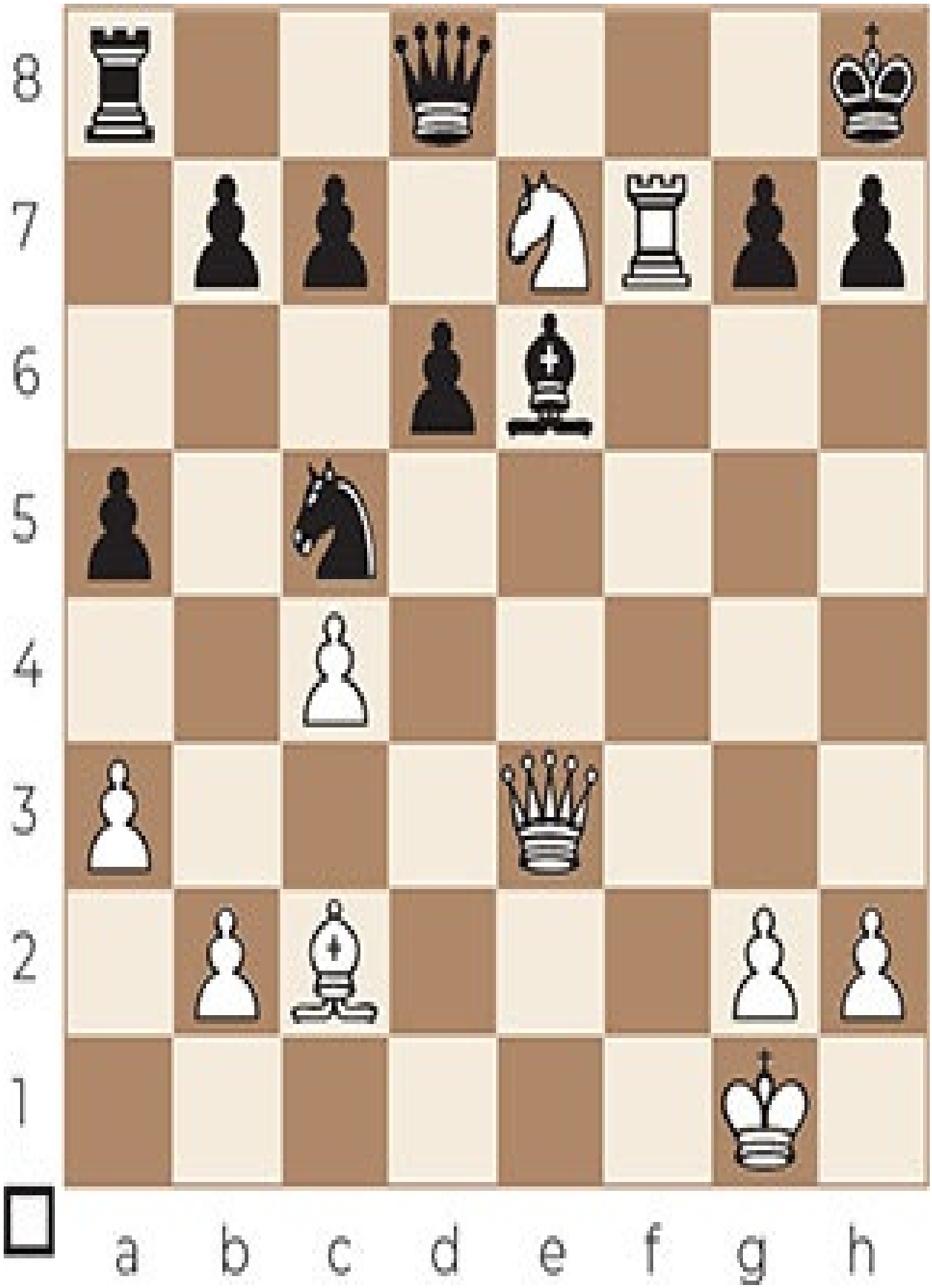
Exercise D 42

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

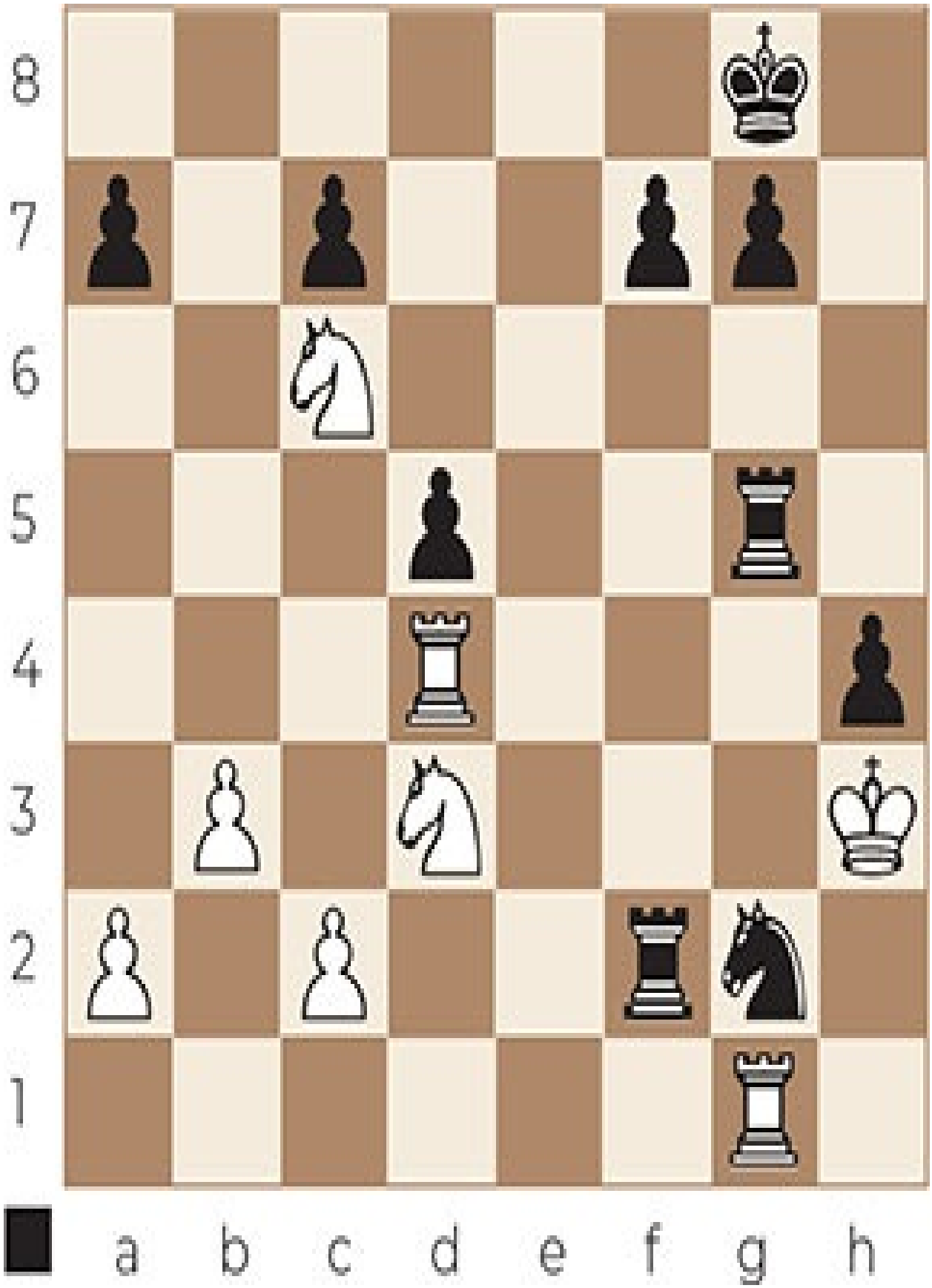
Exercise D 43

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

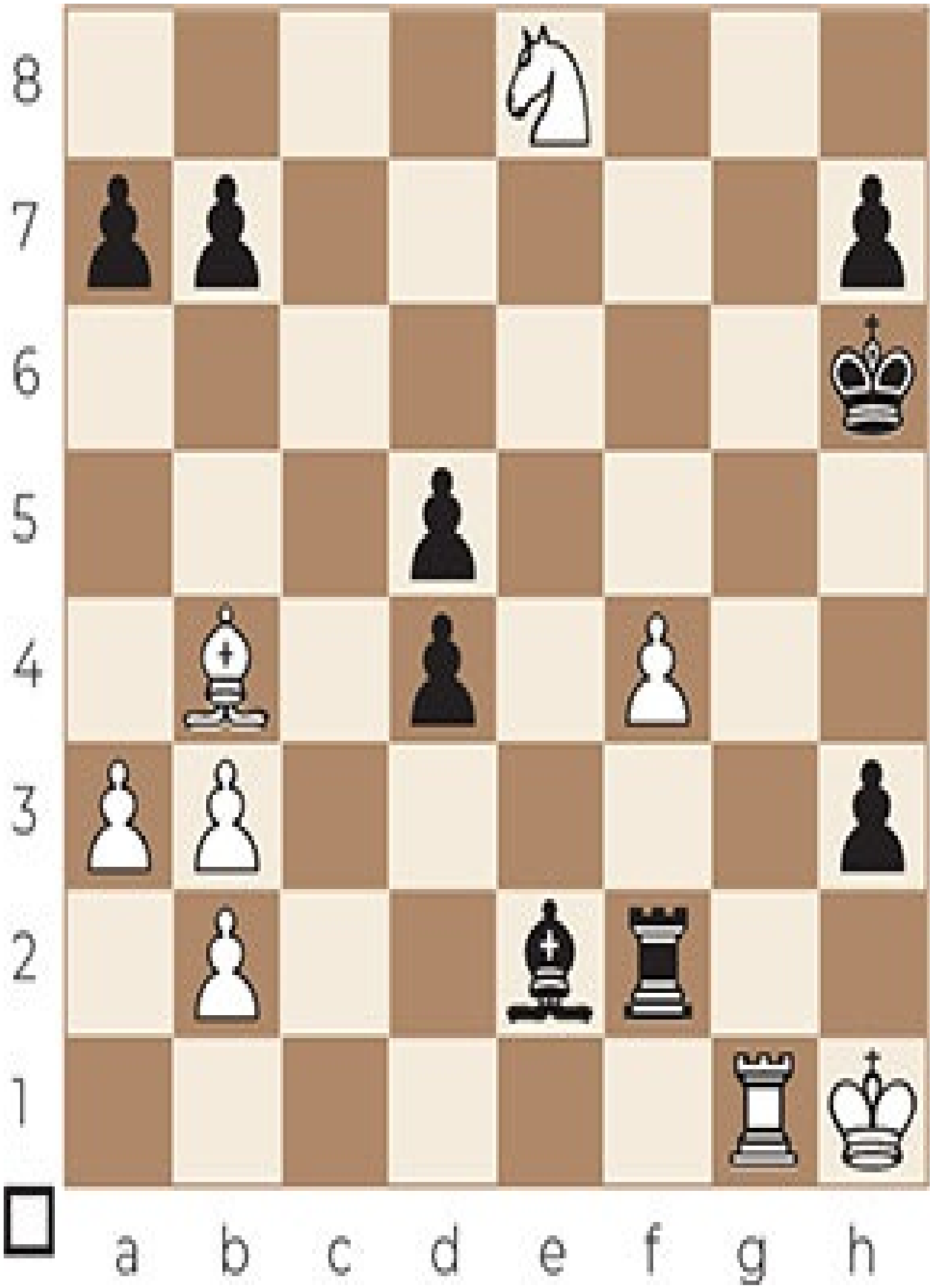
Exercise D 44


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 45


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 46


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 47

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 48

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 49

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 50

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

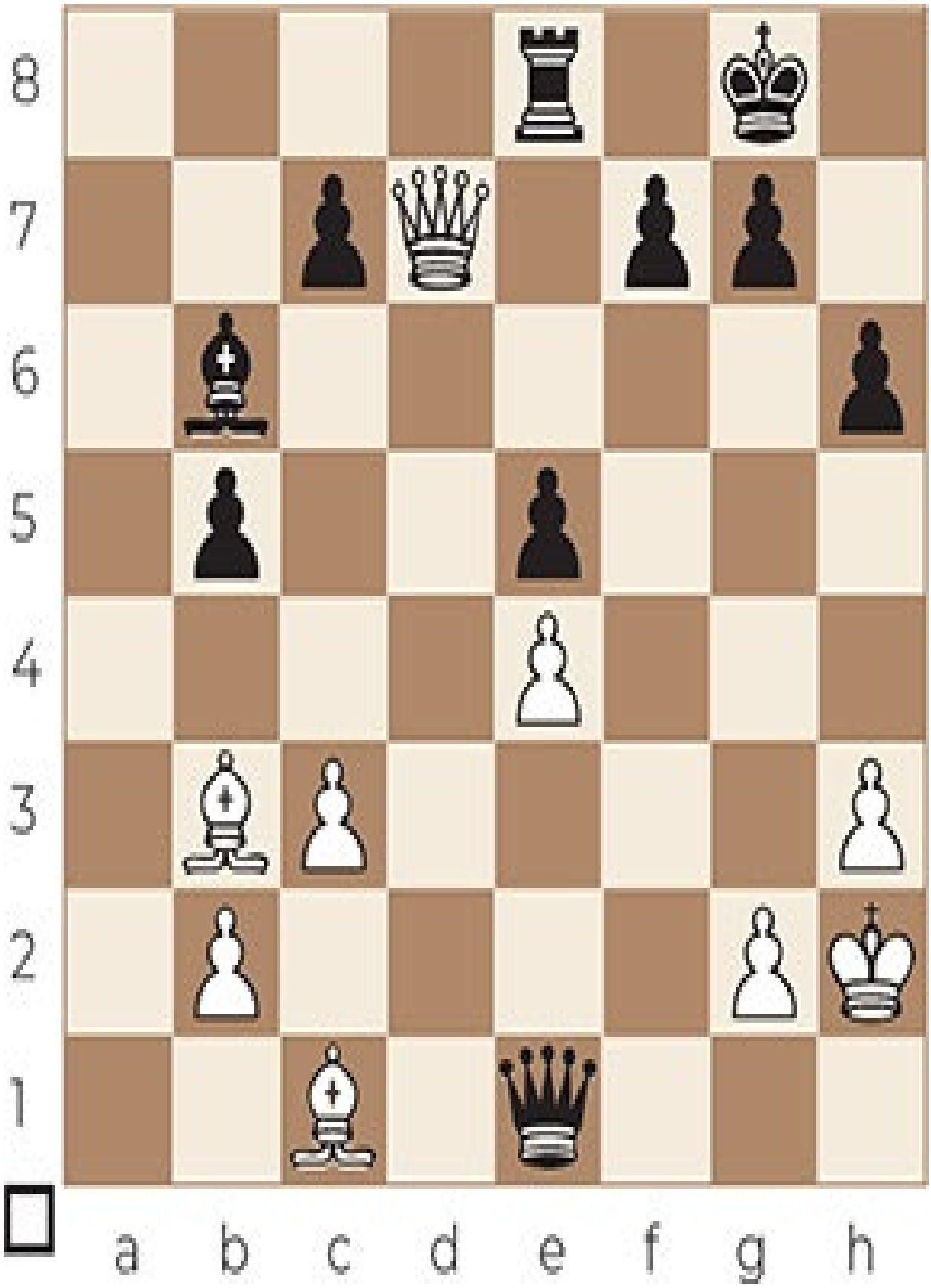
Exercise D 51

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

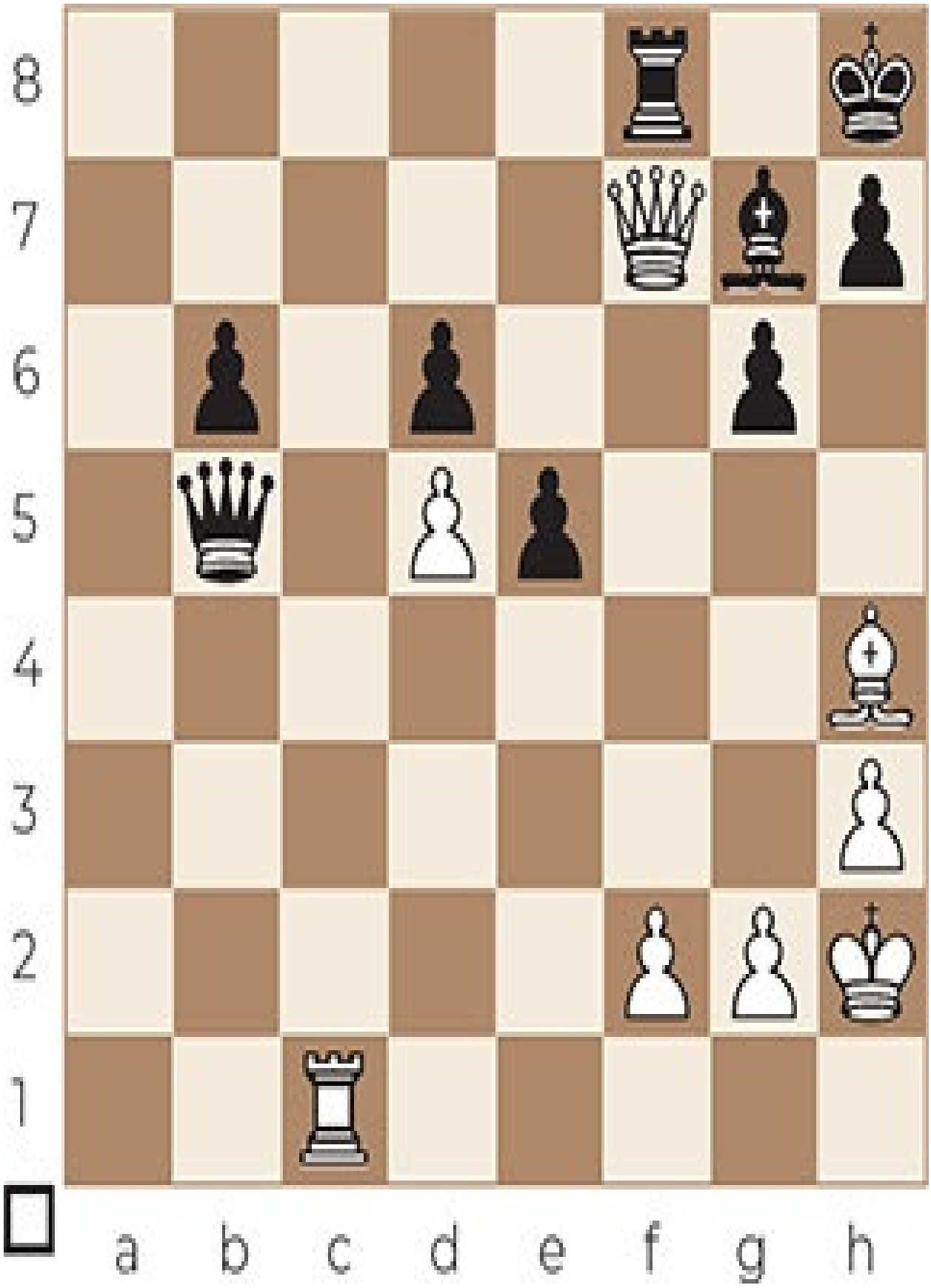
Exercise D 52

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 53


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

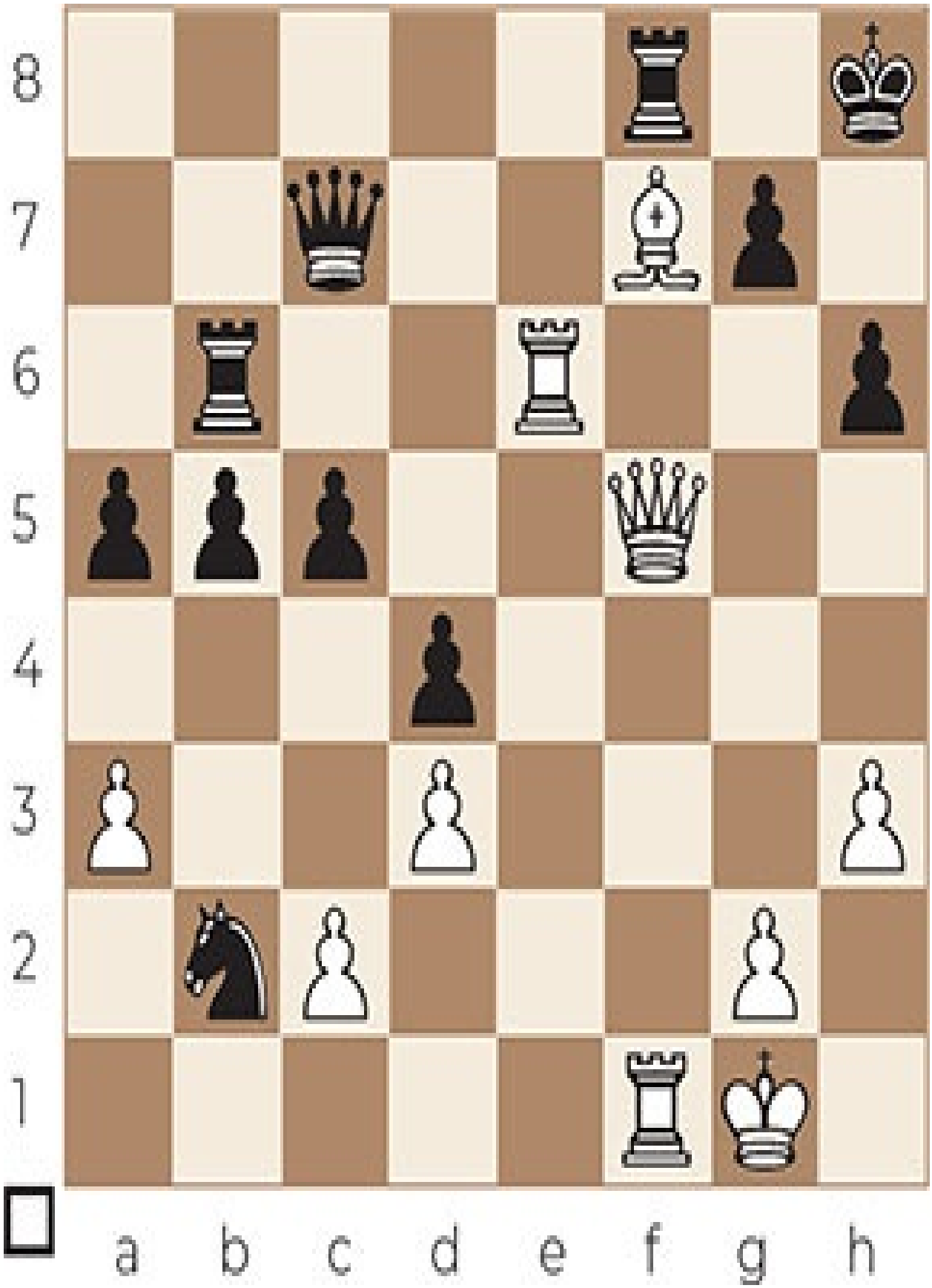
Exercise D 54


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 55

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 56


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 57

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 58

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

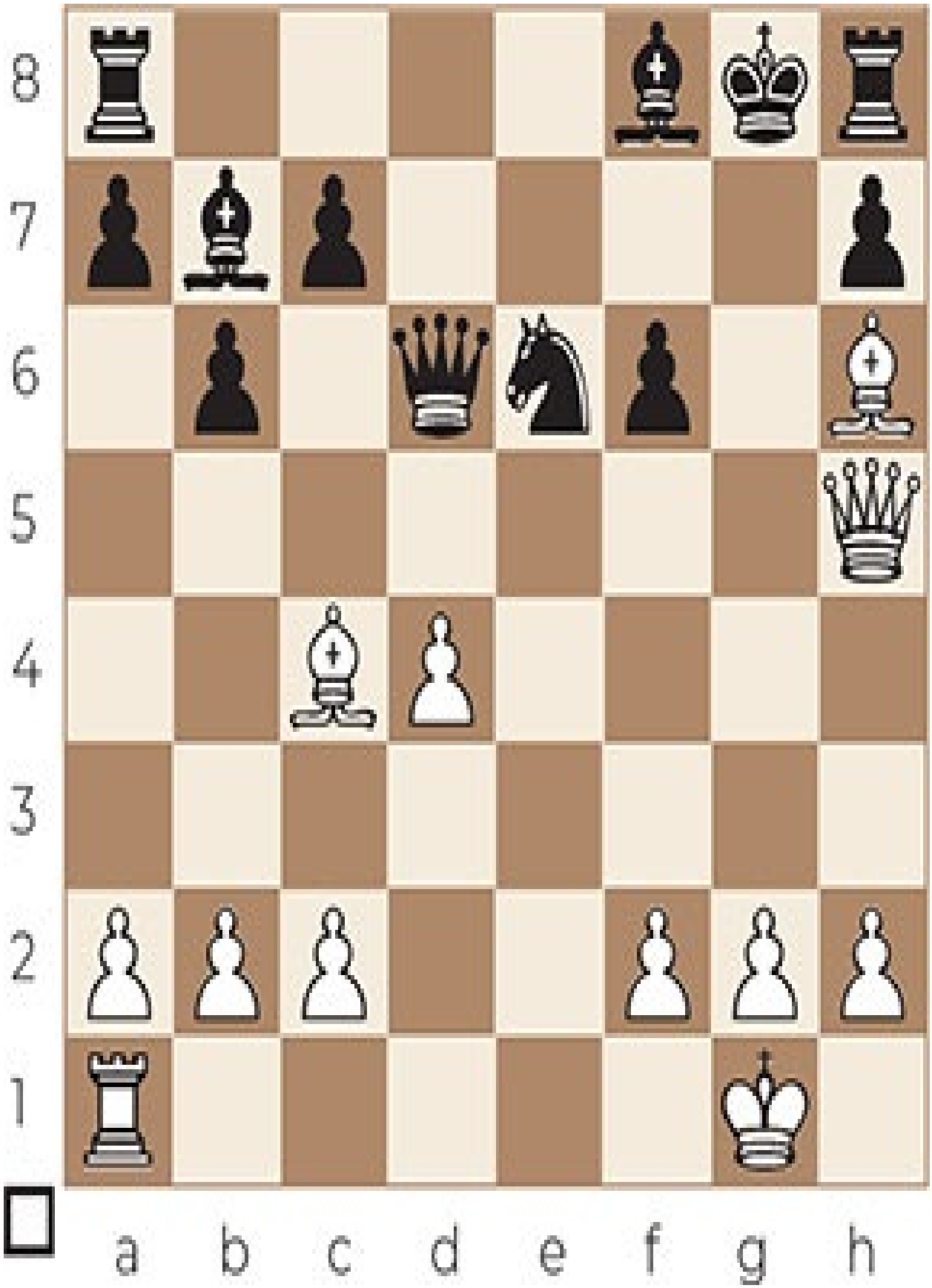
Exercise D 59

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 60

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 61


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 62

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 63

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

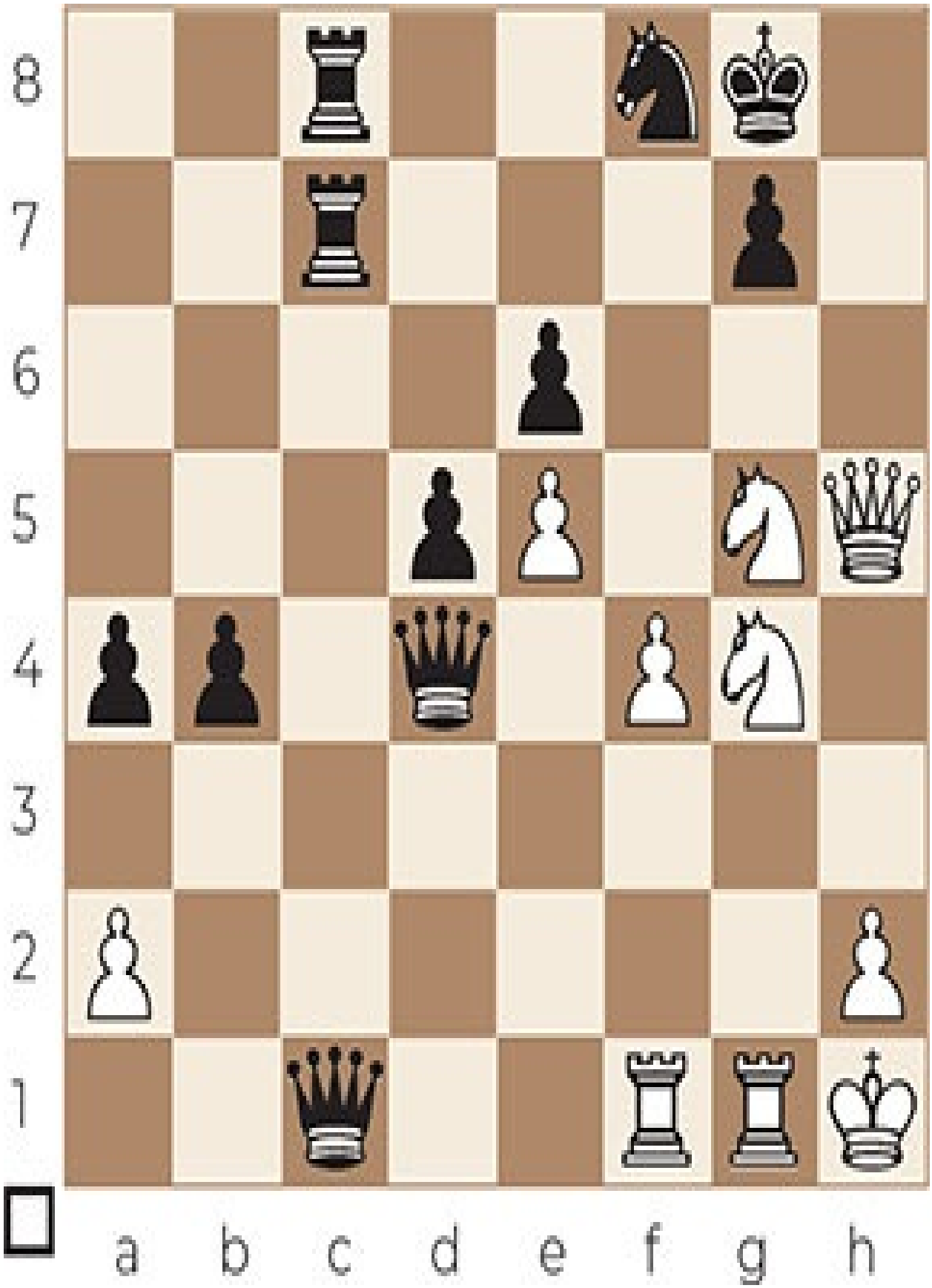
Exercise D 64

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 65

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 66


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 67

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

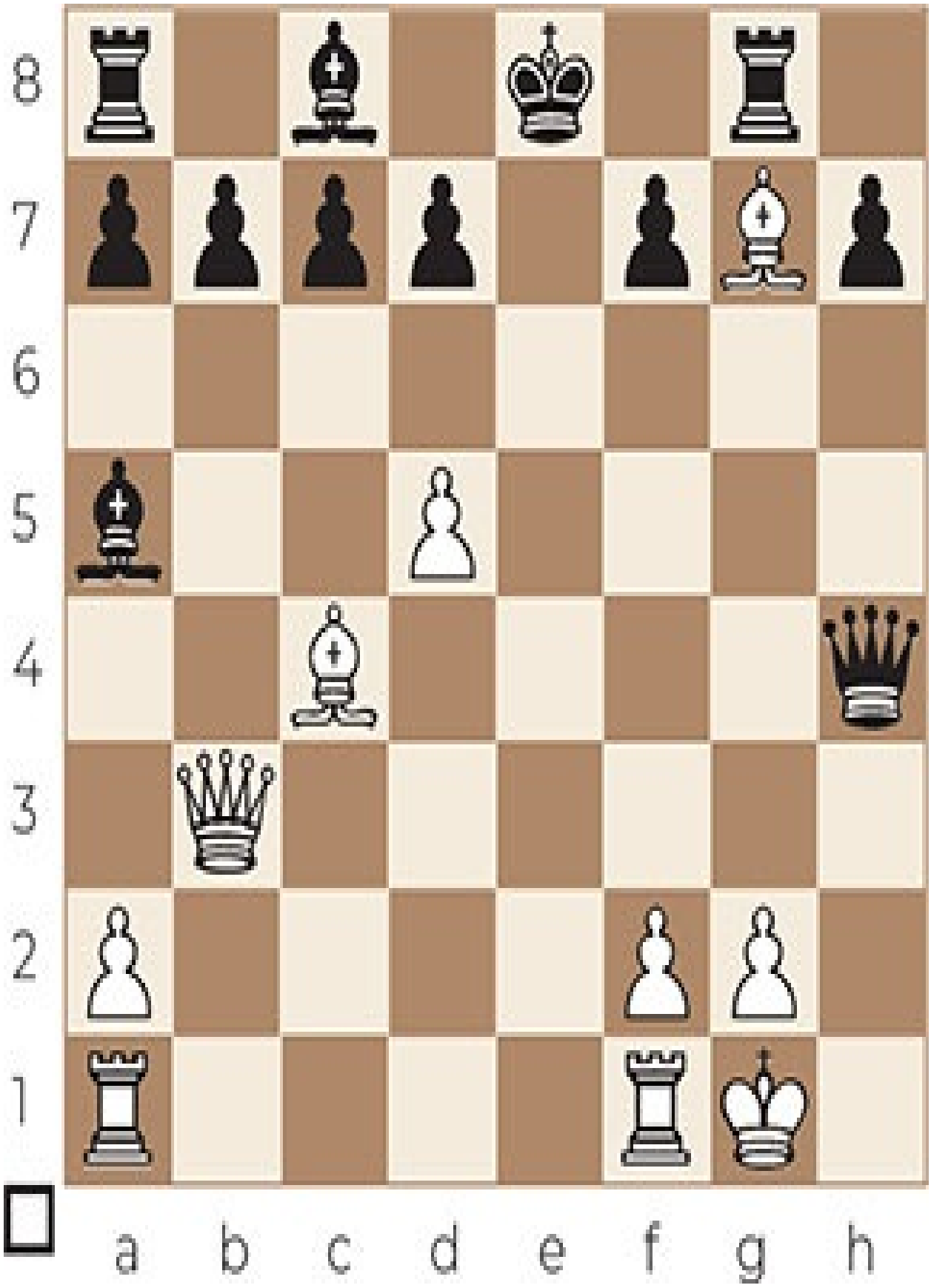
Exercise D 68

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

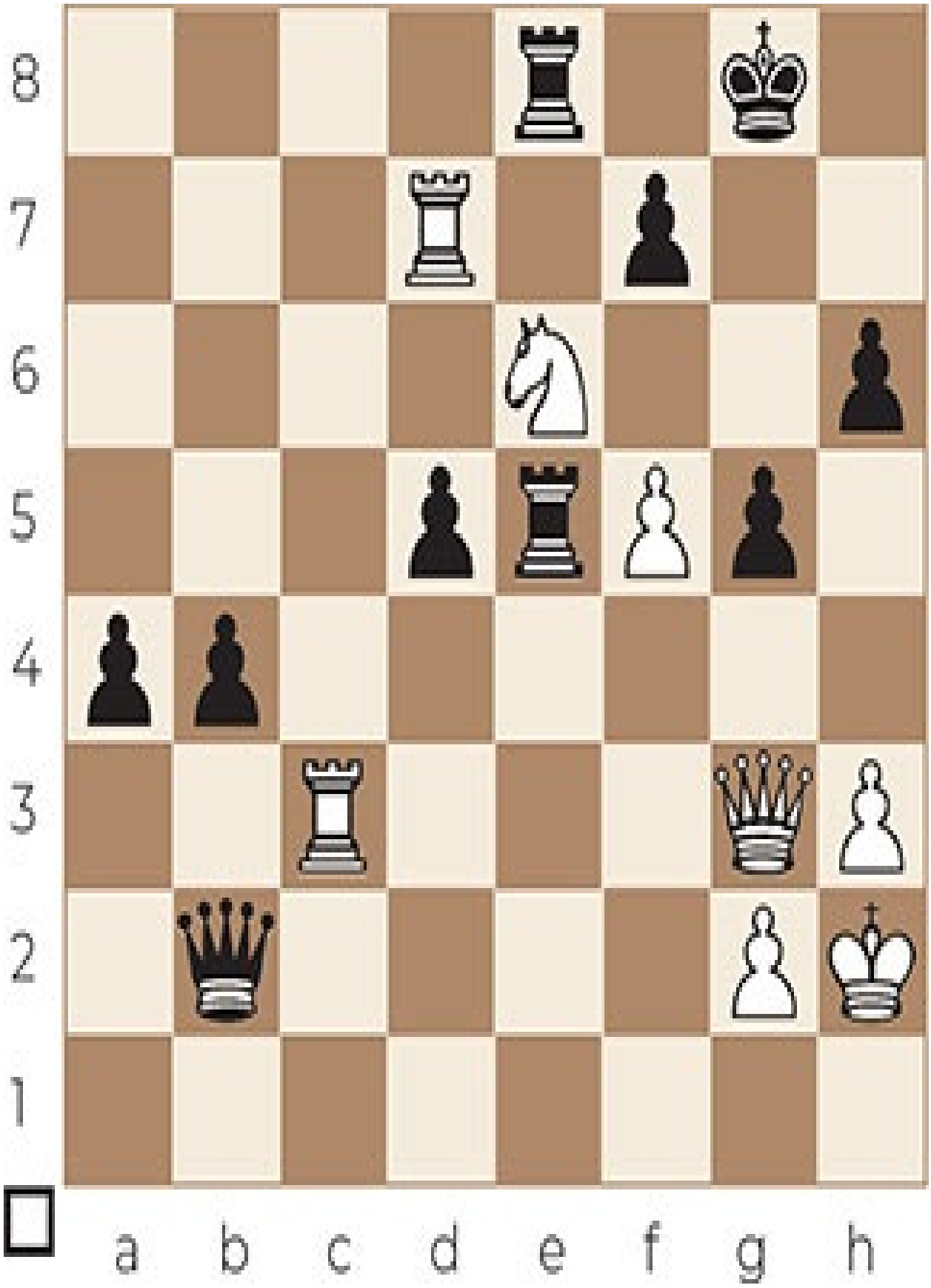
Exercise D 69

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

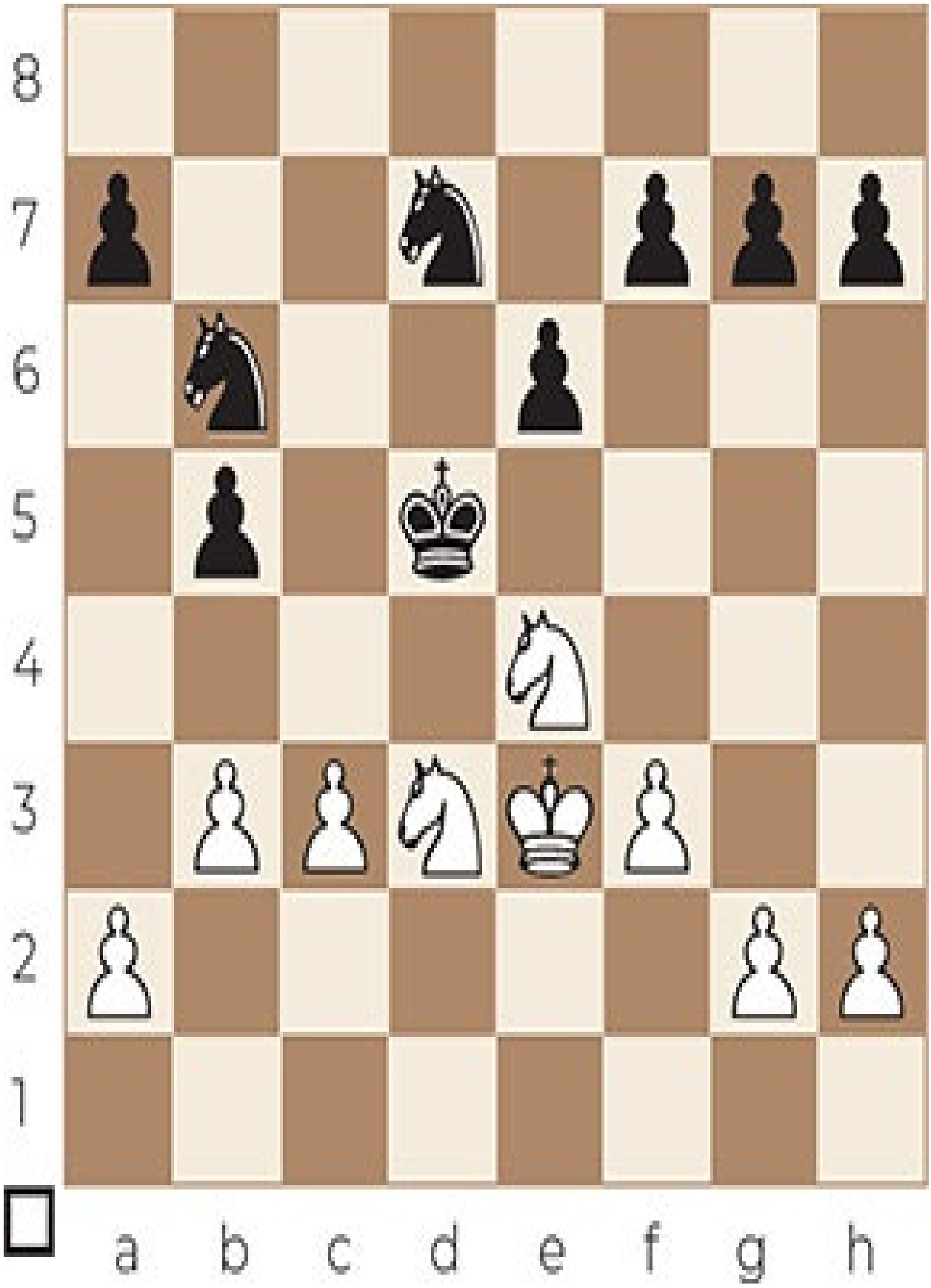
Exercise D 70


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

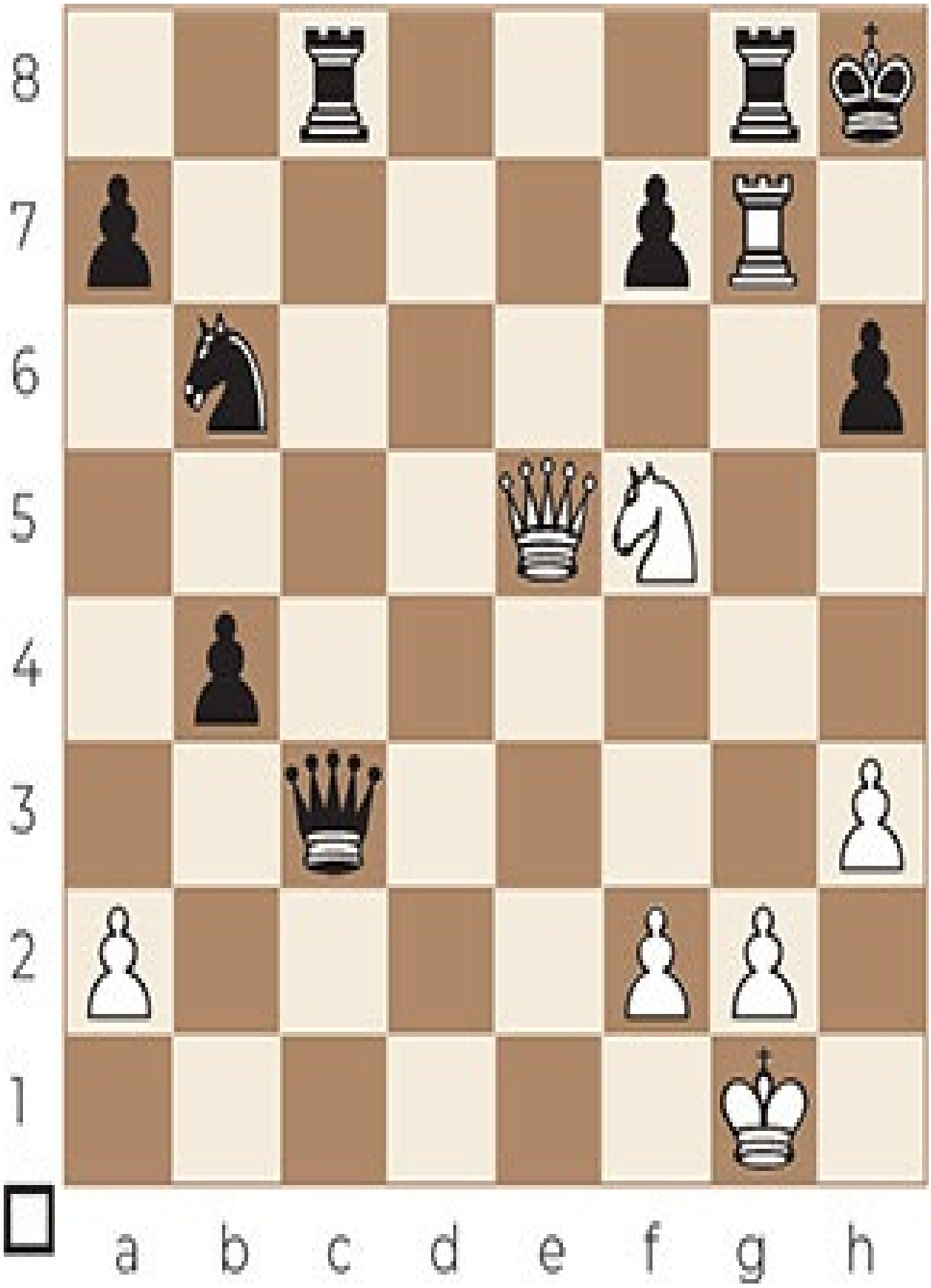
Exercise D 71


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

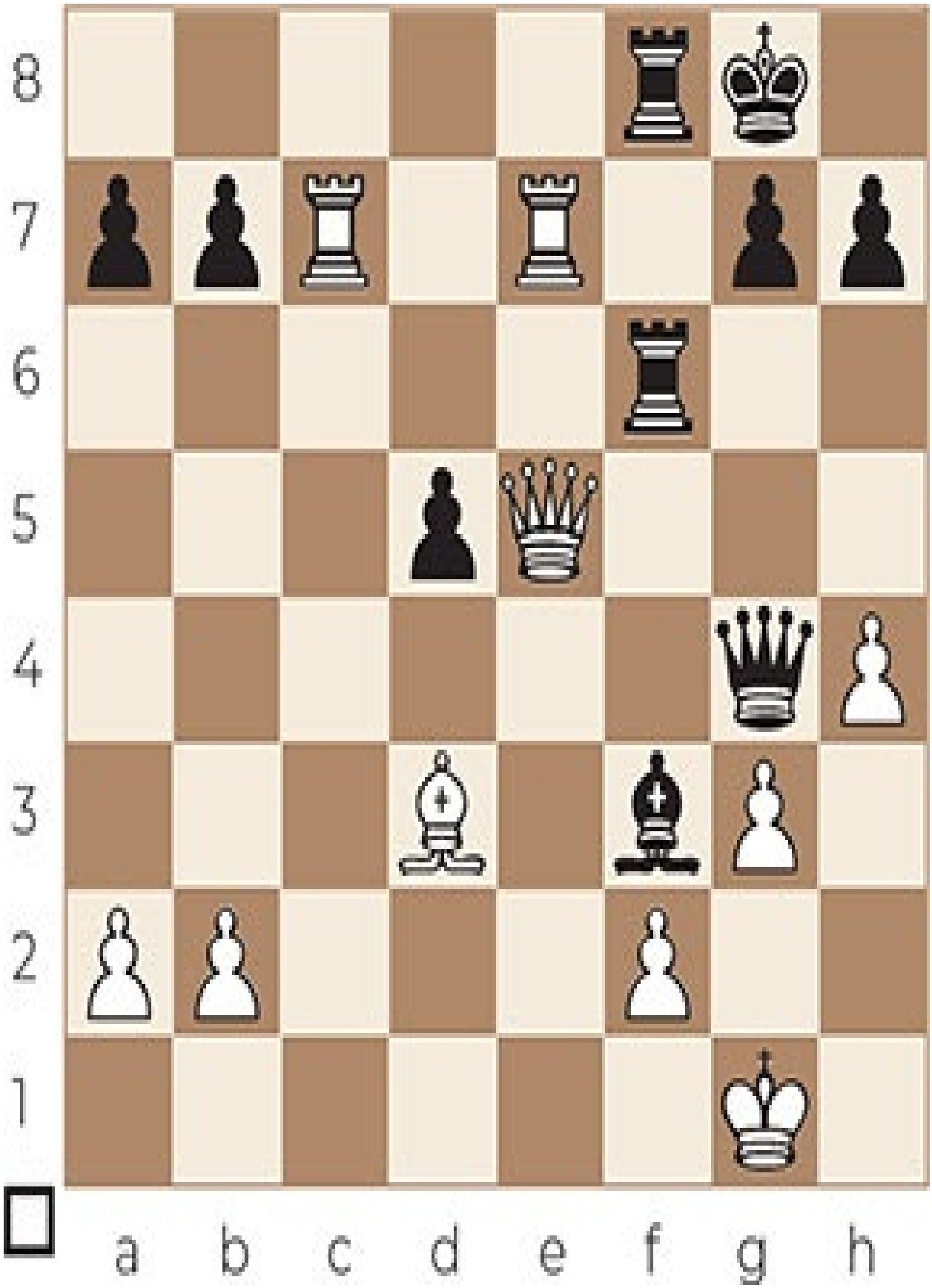
Exercise D 72


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 73


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

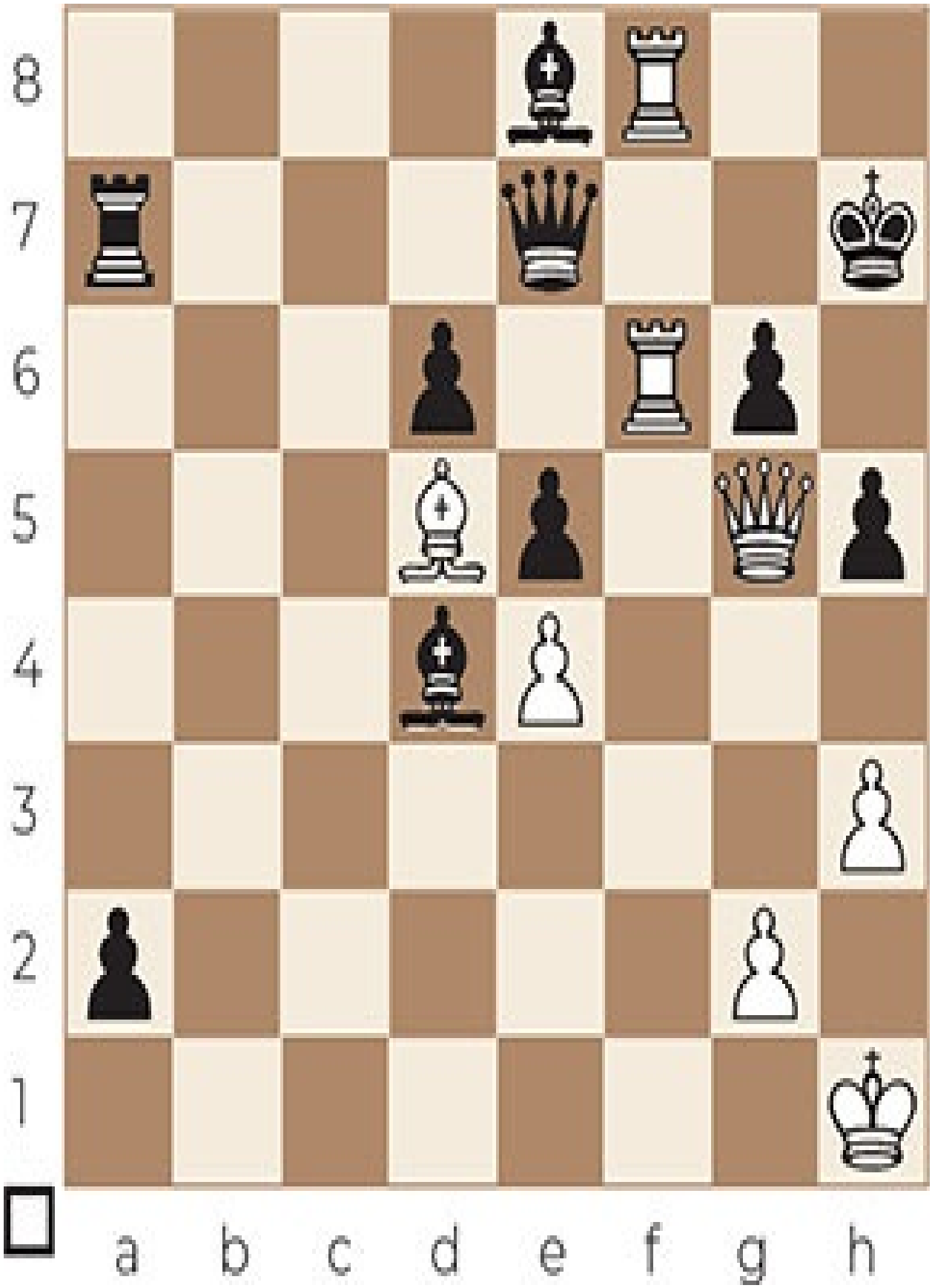
Exercise D 74


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 75

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 76


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

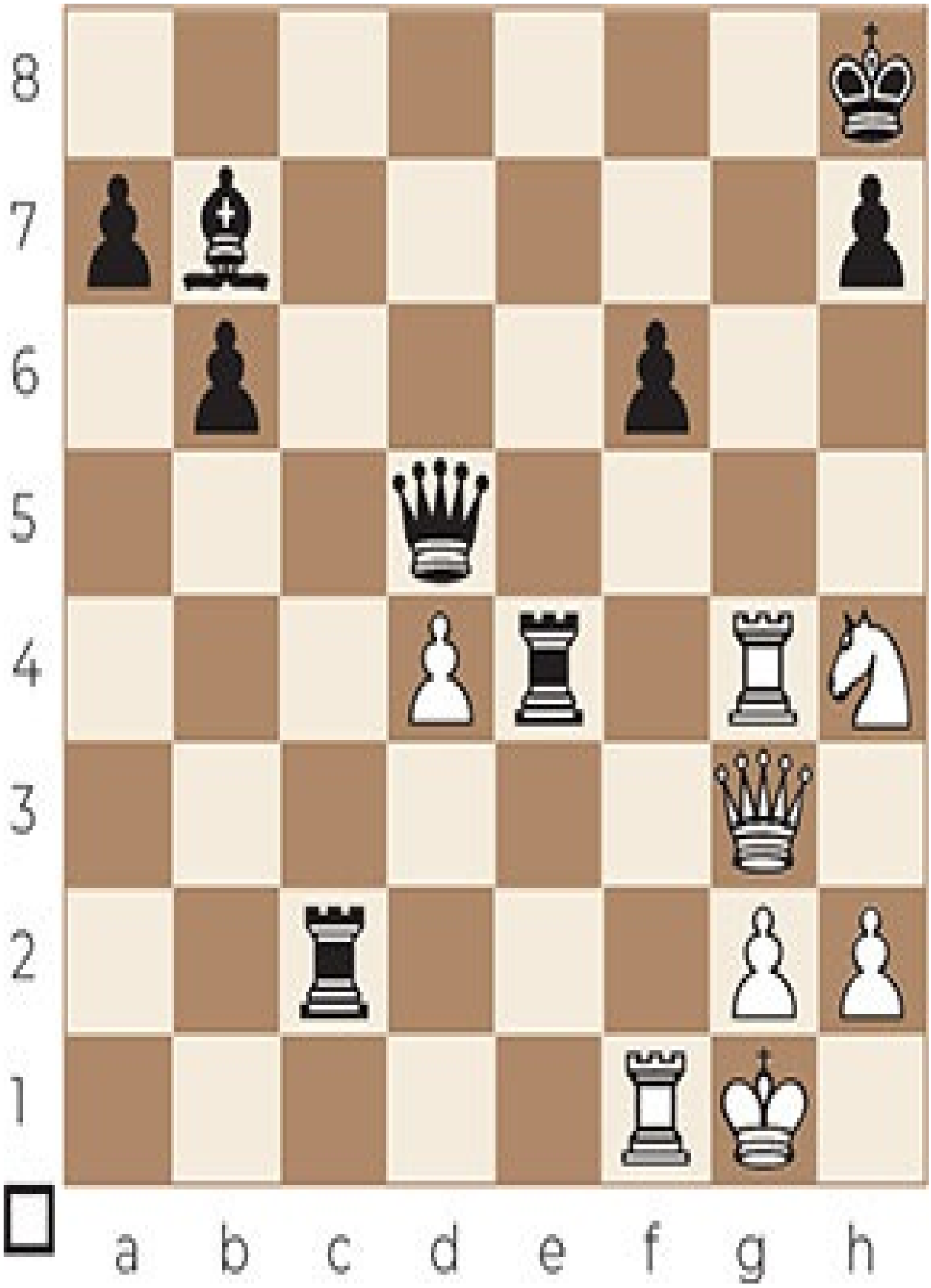
Exercise D 77

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 78

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

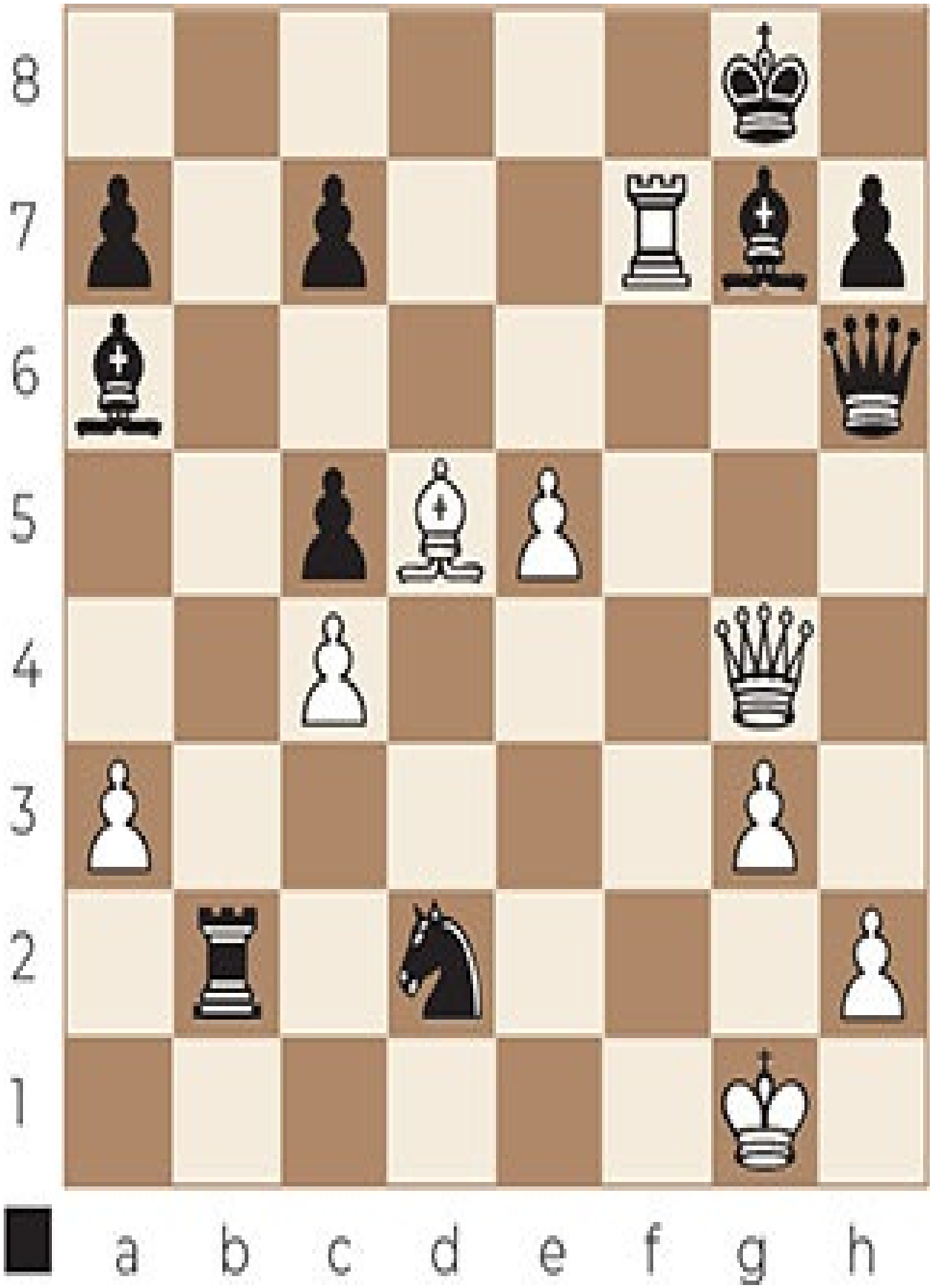
Exercise D 79


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 80

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

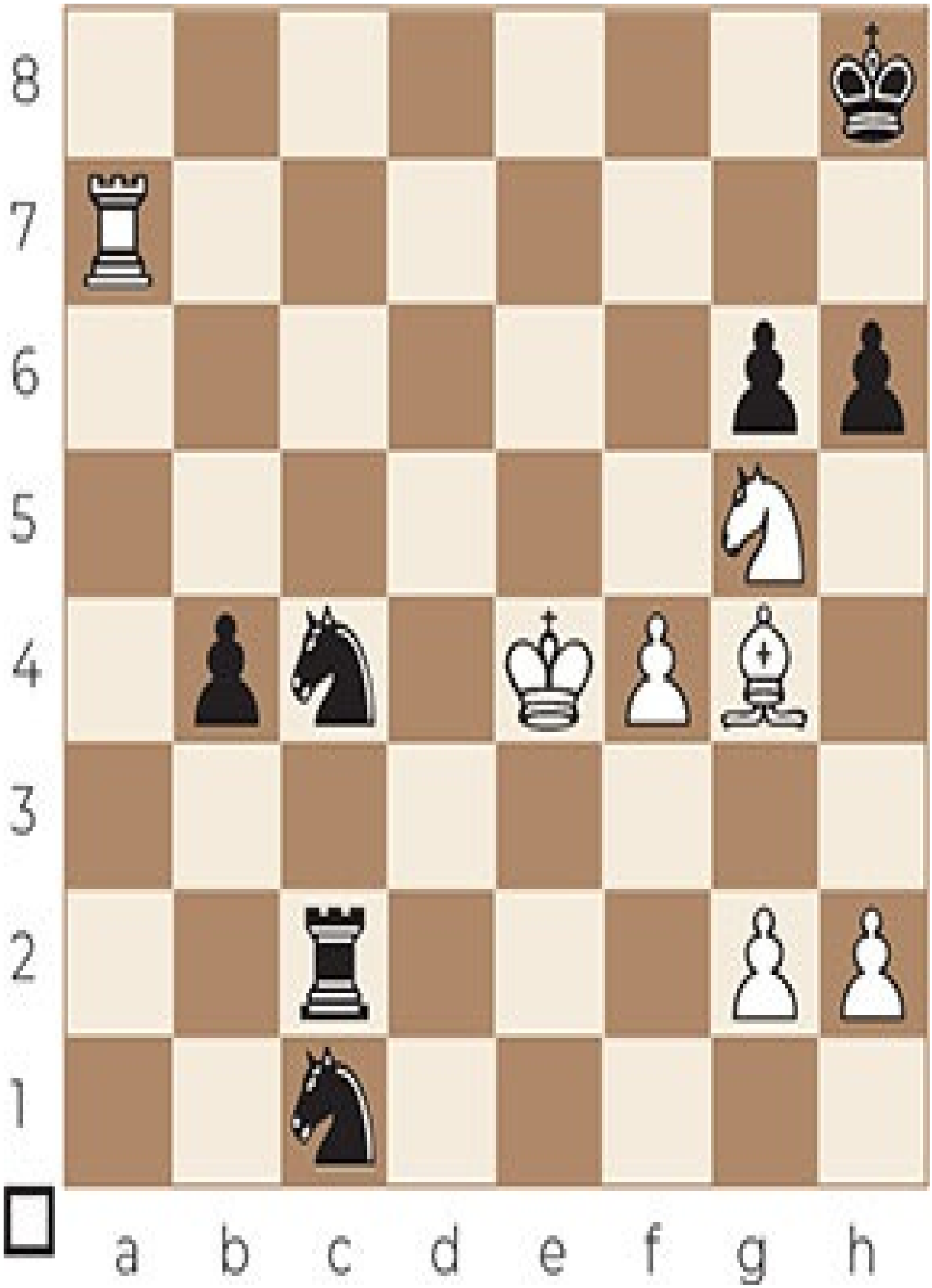
Exercise D 81


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 82

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 83


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 84

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

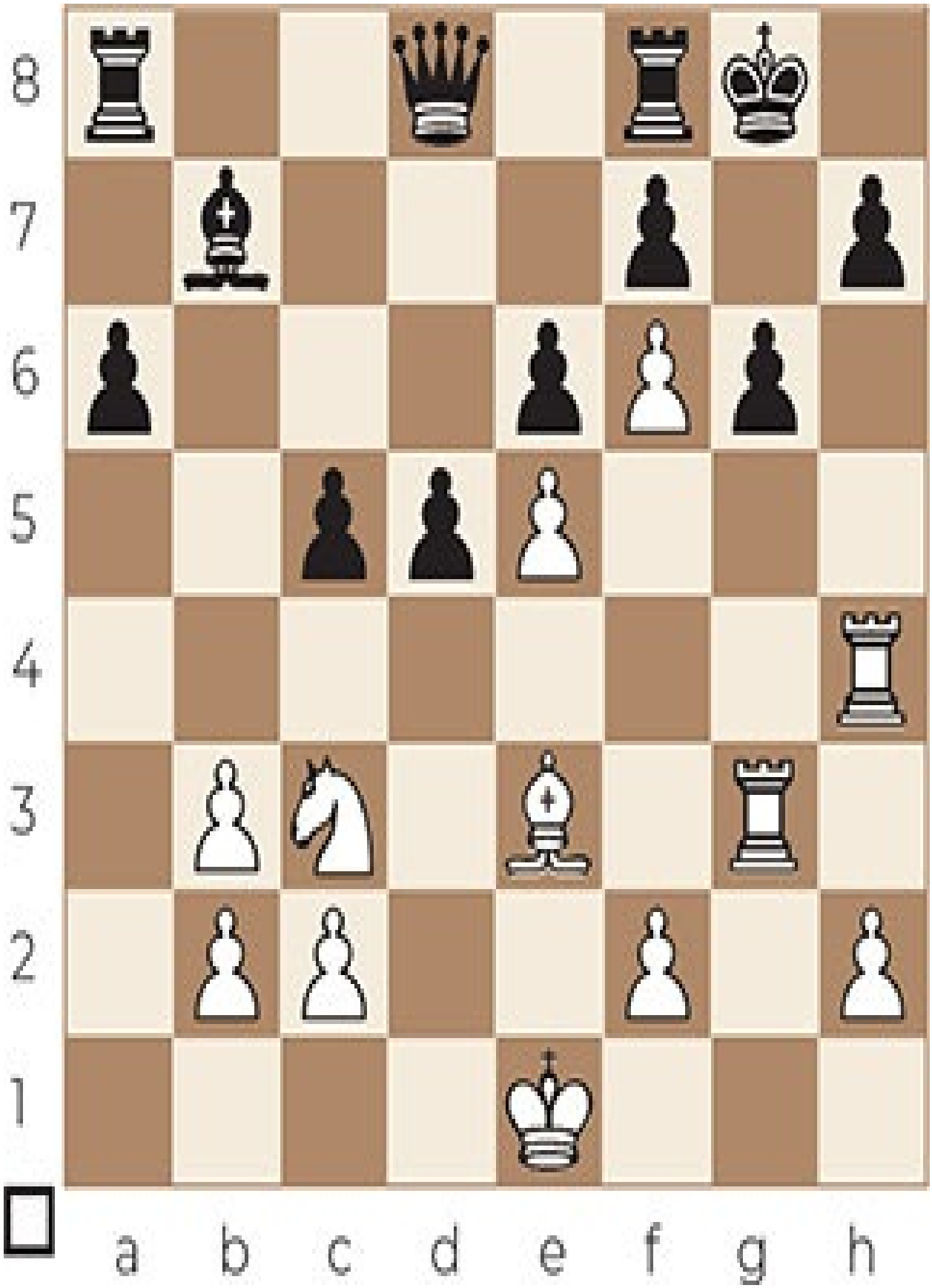
Exercise D 85

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

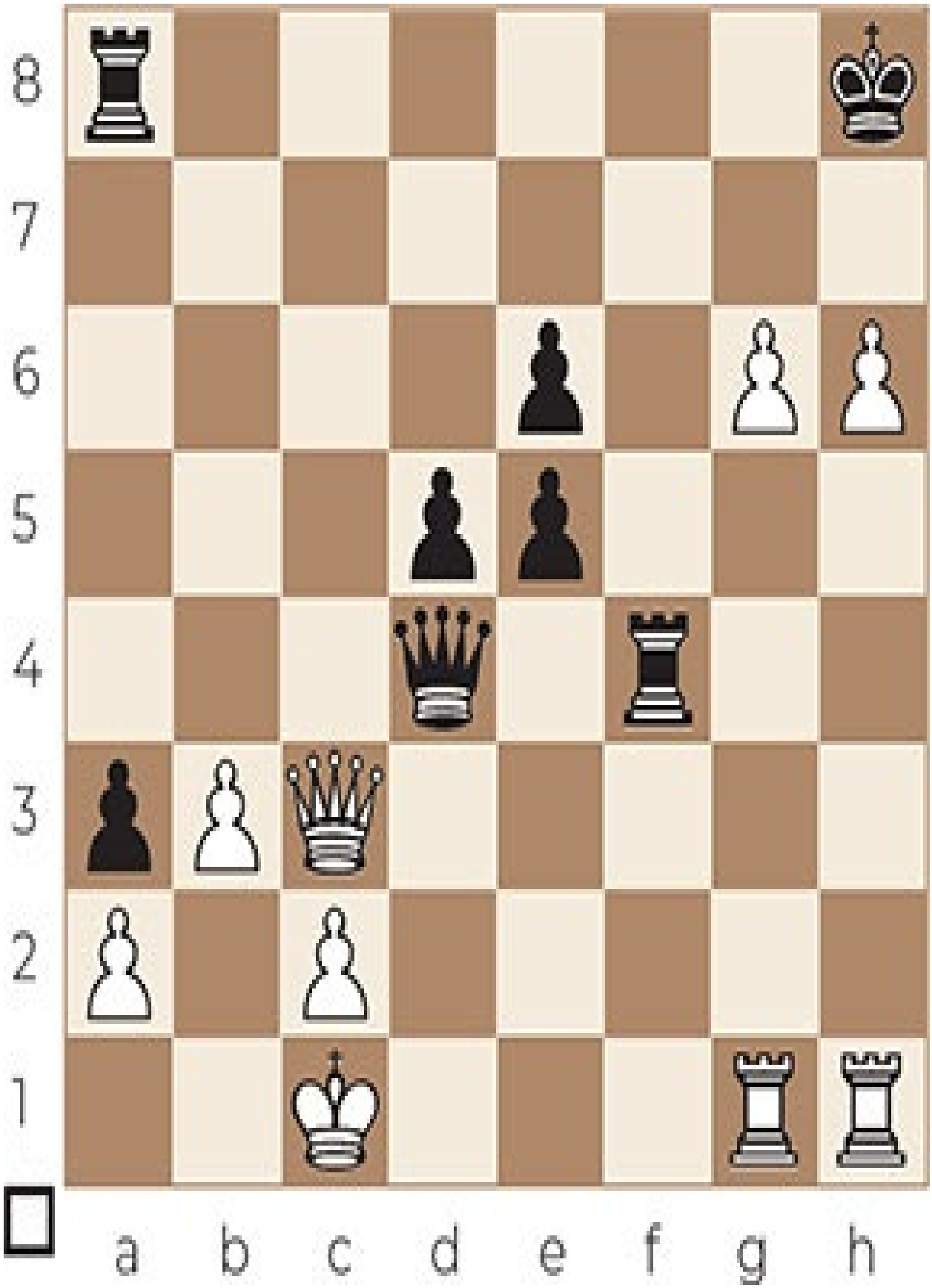
Exercise D 86

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 87


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 88


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 89

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 90

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 91

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 92

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 93

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 94

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

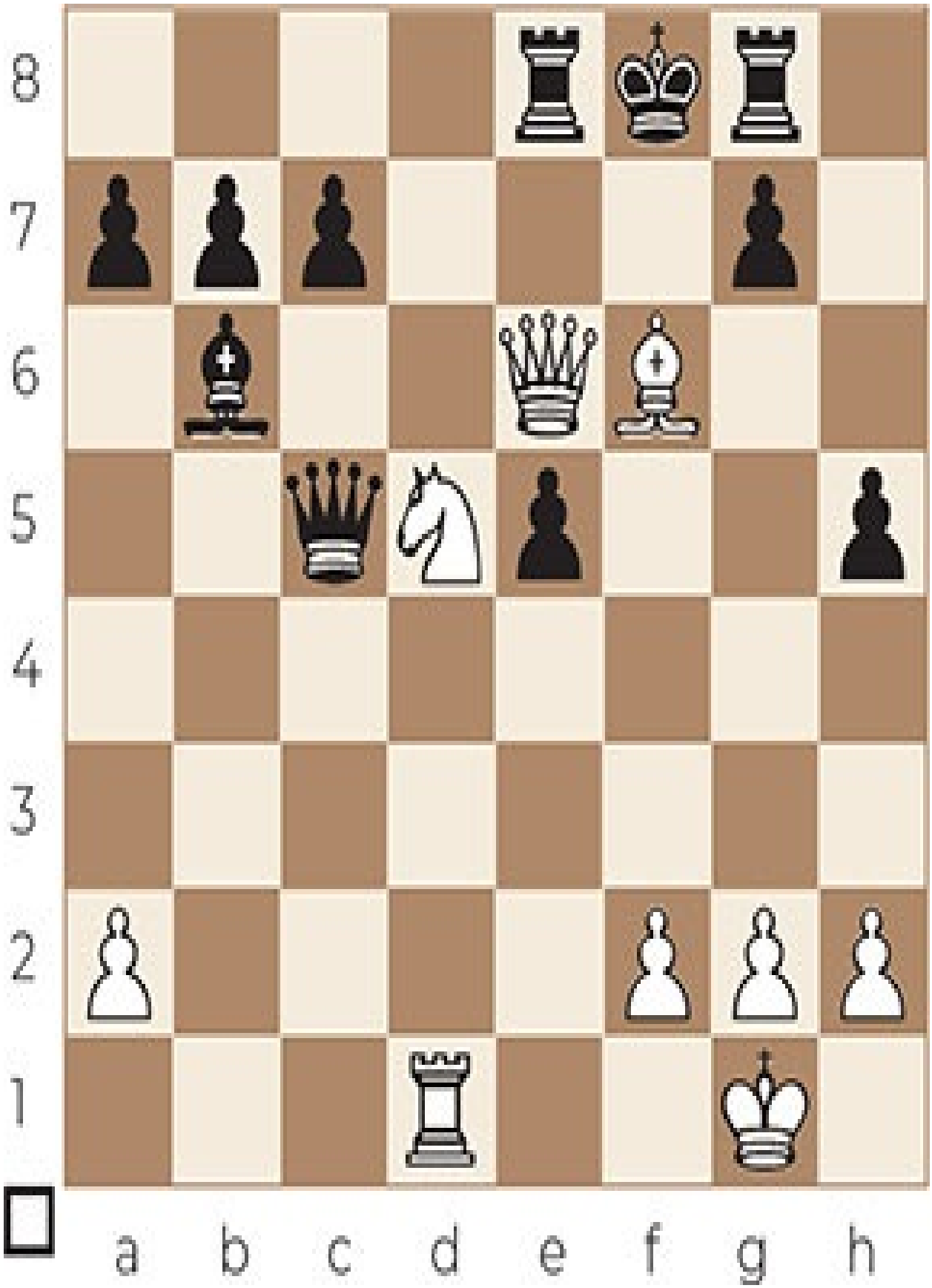
Exercise D 95

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 96

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

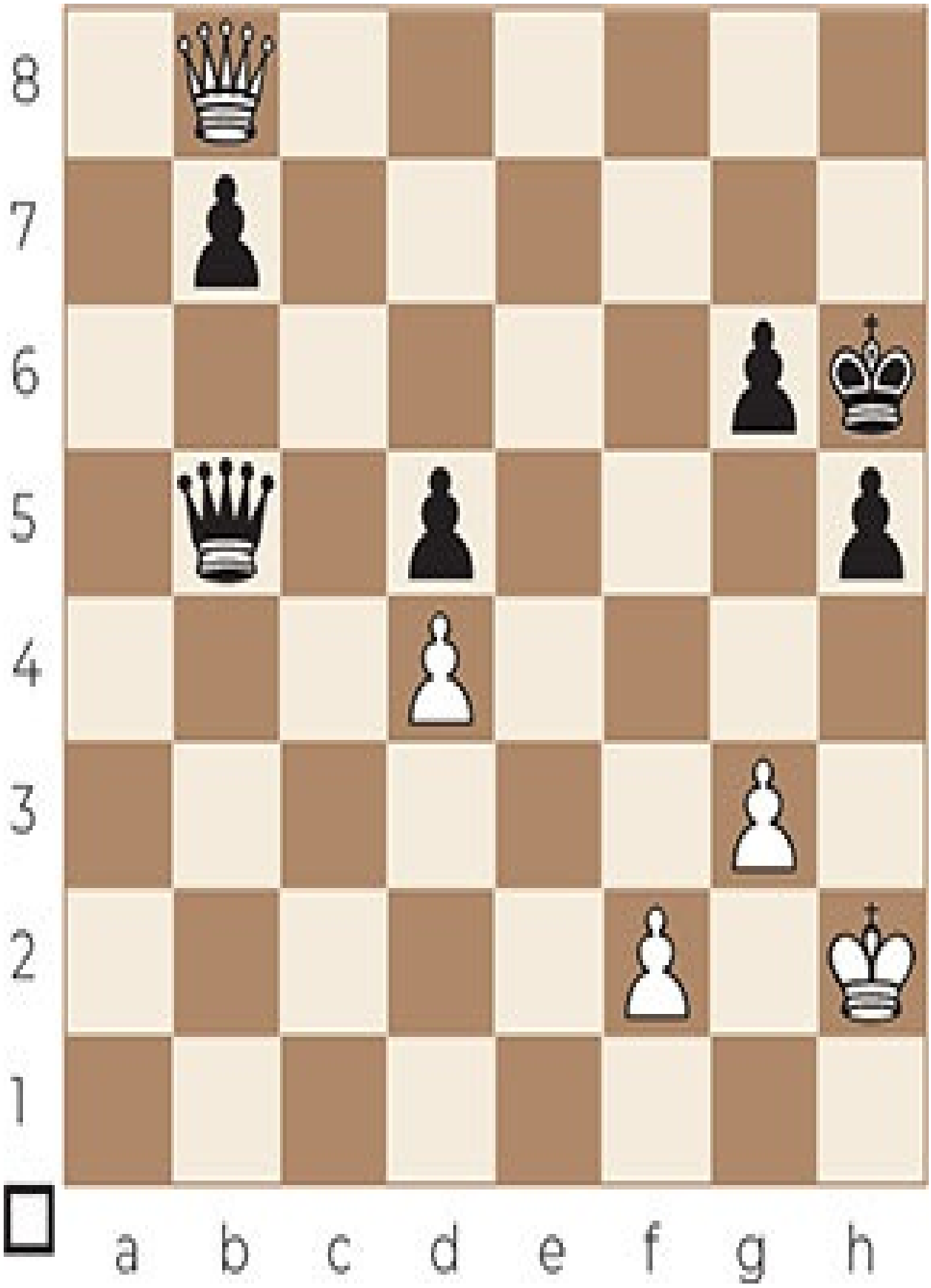
Exercise D 97


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 98

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 99


8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

Exercise D 100

8
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
a b c d e f g h

SOLUTIONS A

Basic test

Solution A 1

Anastasia's mate

27.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 28.♖h4#

Alekhine – Leonhardt (1910)

▪

Solution A 2

Greco's mate

28.♖ xh7+ ♔xh7 29.♕h5#

Tsadzikidze – Doluhanova (1997)

▪

Solution A 3

Arabian mate

40...♖xg3+ 41.♔h2 ♘f3+ 42.♔h1 ♖g1#

Nuritdinova – Khoudgarian (2006)

▪

Solution A 4

Hook mate

50.f8♘+ ♔g8

50...♔h8 51.♘g6+ ♔h7 52.♖h8#.

51.♘g6+ ♔f7 52.♖f8#

Marshall – Napier (1898)

▪

Solution A 5

Vukovic's mate

73...♘c3+ 74.♔c1 ♖c2#

Foisor – Malysheva (2005)

▪

Solution A 6

Smothered mate

20.♕g8+ ♖xg8 21.♘f7#

Benko – Horowitz (1968)

▪

Solution A 7

Suffocation mate

19.♕h6 gxh6

19... ♗xf5 20.♕xg7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

20.♘xh6#

Semcesen – Grandelius (2009)

▪

Solution A 8

Corner mate

29.♘f7#

Janse – Borland (2001)

▪

Solution A 9

Morphy's mate

40.♖g7+ ♔h8 41.♖g6#

Gabriel – Mantzouneas (1997)

▪

Solution A 10

Pillsbury's mate

21.♖xg7+ ♔h8 22.♖g8+ ♔xg8 23.♖g1#

Anderssen – NN (1861)

▪

Solution A 11

Opera mate

24.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 25.♖h3+ ♔g8 26.♖h8#

Kantans – Prasannaa (2014)

▪

Solution A 12

Réti's mate

9.♕d8+ ♔xd8 10.♗g5+ ♔c7

10...♔e8 11.♖d8# (Opera mate).

11.♗d8#

Réti – Tartakower (1910)

▪

Solution A 13

Anderssen's mate

32.♖h3+ ♔g8 33.♖h8#

You get a bonus if you found the other mate: 32.g8♕+ ♖xg8 33.♖h3# (Lawnmower mate).

Anderssen – Zukertort (1869)

▪

Solution A 14

Lolli's mate

41.♕a3+ ♔e8 42.♕e7#

Evtifeev – Izbinsky (1909)

▪

Solution A 15

Damiano's mate

24...♖h1+ 25.♔xh1 ♖h8+ 26.♔g1 ♖h1+ 27.♔xh1 ♕h8+ 28.♔g1 ♕h2#

Baburin – Adianto (1993)

▪

Solution A 16

Max Lange's mate

15. ♗h7+ ♔h8 16. ♗g6+ ♔g8 17. ♕h7#

Ikonomopoulou – Samanic (2010)

▪

Solution A 17

Damiano's bishop mate

33...♕h1+ 34.♔f2 ♕f3+ 35.♔g1 ♕g2#

Escalator into Damiano's bishop mate.

Heinicke – Gilg (1940)

▪

Solution A 18

Dovetail mate

32...♕h3+ 33.♔e2

33.♔g1 ♕g2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

33...♕d3#

Matsuura – Milos (2001)

▪

Solution A 19

Swallow's tail mate

26.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 27.♕f7#

Euwe – Evill (1921)

▪

Solution A 20

David & Goliath mate

9.♕f7+ ♕xf7 10.exf7#

Powers – Dake (1937)

▪

Solution A 21

Boden's mate

14.♕xf6+ gxf6

14...♕f7 15.♕xf7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

15. ♗h6#

Janny – Steiner (1922)

▪

Solution A 22

Balestra mate

51. ♗e6#

Rowson – Moser (2004)

▪

Solution A 23

Double knights mate

25...♘e2+ 26.♔h1 ♘xf2#

Walsh – Bronstein (2005)

▪

-

Solution A 24

Double bishops mate

28.♕e6+ ♗xe6 29.♗xe6#

Röse – Fischdick (2003)

▪

Solution A 25

Blackburne's mate

22.♕xh5 gxh5

If 22...♘f6 (preventing 23.♕h7#) 23.♗xf6 gxh5 24.♗h7# (Blackburne's mate).

23.♗h7#

Menchik – Graf-Stevenson (1937)

▪

Solution A 26

Blind swine mate

44.♘e6 fxe6

Moves like 44...h6 also lead to checkmate, e.g. after 45.♘xf8 ♔xf8 46.♖xf7+ ♔g8 47.♖fc7 exf4 48.♖c8# (Lawnmower mate); 44...♖e8 45.♖e7. Here is a sample line: 45...♖d8 46.♖xf7 ♘e4 47.♖g7+ ♔h8 48.♖xh7+ ♔g8 49.♖bg7#.

45.♖g7+ ♔h8 46.♖xh7+ ♔g8 47.♖bg7#

Ivanchuk – Aronian (2006)

▪

Solution A 27

Epaulette mate

20.♖f8+ ♕xf8 21.♖xf8+ ♖xf8 22.♕xg6#

Morphy – Worrall (1857)

▪

Solution A 28

Back rank mate

37...♕e4+ 38.♔a1 ♕e1+ 39.♘xe1 ♖xe1#

Deelman – Bleykmans (1987)

▪

Solution A 29

Lawnmower mate

35.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 36.♖xh5#

Krudde – l'Ami (2009)

▪

Solution A 30

Triangle mate

33...♖g1+ 34.♔d2 ♖d1+ 35.♔c2 ♕d3#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Sorokin – Valerga (1995)

▪

Solution A 31

Box mate

34.♕c6+ ♔a7 35.♖xa8#

Geller – Kogan (1946)

▪

Solution A 32

Fool's mate

7.♕xh5+ ♖xh5 8.♗g6#

Teed – Delmar (1896)

▪

Solution A 33

Scholar's mate

5.♕xf7#

Similar to Scholar's mate / Damiano's bishop mate.

Amillano – Löffler (1972)

▪

Solution A 34

Legal's mate

6. ♗xf7+ ♔e7 7. ♘d5#

Legal – Saint Brie (1750)

▪

SOLUTIONS B

Warming up test

Solution B 1

Smothered mate

12.♘d6#

Smothered mate in the opening (Scandinavian Defence).

From ‘Keep it simple: 1.e4’ by Christof Sielecki

▪

Solution B 2

Legal’s mate

10.♗xf7+ ♔e7 11.♘d5#

Similar to Legal’s mate (Danish Gambit).

Essery – Warren (1912)

▪

Solution B 3

Pillsbury's mate

21.♖xg7+ ♔h8 22.♖g8+ ♔xg8 23.♖g1#

Anderssen – NN (1861)

▪

Solution B 4

Damiano's mate

34.♖c8 ♕d8 35.♖xd8 ♖xd8 36.♕g7#

Strikovic – Garcia Palermo (1995)

▪

Solution B 5

Back rank mate

29.♕xd5+ ♔h8 30.♕d8+ ♗xd8 31.♖f8#

McFarlane – Fuller (1983)

▪

Solution B 6

David & Goliath mate

39.♘b7+ ♔e6 40.♘d8+ ♔d6 41.c5#

Alekhine – Verlinsky (1918)

▪

Solution B 7

Vukovic's mate

35.♘xh6+ ♔h8 36.♖h7#

Alekhine – Rive Gauche (simul 1925)

▪

Solution B 8

David & Goliath mate

32.♖xf6+ ♘xf6 33.g5#

Alekhine – Fahardo (1939)

▪

Solution B 9

Anastasia's mate

27.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 28.♖h4#

Alekhine – Leonhardt (1910)

▪

Solution B 10

Damiano's mate

24...♖h1+ 25.♔xh1 ♖h8+ 26.♔g1 ♖h1+ 27.♔xh1 ♕h8+ 28.♔g1 ♕h2#

Baburin – Adianto (1993)

▪

Solution B 11

Vukovic's mate

1.♖a7+ ♔g8 52.f6 ♖g1+ 53.♔h3 a1♕ 54.♖g7#

Graf – Vratonjic (1995)

▪

Solution B 12

Smothered mate

26.♕g8+ ♖xg8 27.♘f7#

Grischuk – Ponomariov (2000)

▪

Solution B 13

Anastasia's mate

29.♘e7+ ♔h8 30.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 31.♕h4#

Andersen – Gronnestad (2003)

▪

Solution B 14

Greco's mate

28...♕xf1+ 29.♔xf1 ♗h3+ 30.♔g1 ♖e1#

Similar to Greco's mate.

Romero Holmes – Lobron (1987)

▪

Solution B 15

Damiano's bishop mate

28.♖e8+ ♗xe8 29.♕xg7#

Flumbort – Pert (2003)

▪

Solution B 16

Dovetail mate

21.♖xg7+ ♔h8 22.♖g8+ ♖xg8 23.♕h5+ ♔g7 24.♕h6#

Rombaldoni – Arlandi (1983)

▪

Solution B 17

Damiano's bishop mate

26.♕b8+ ♔d7 27.♕c7+ ♔e8 28.♕xe7#

Karklins – Friedman (1971)

Solution B 18

Lawnmower mate

30.♕f7+ ♔h8 31.♕xf8+ ♖xf8 32. ♖xf8+ ♔g7 33.♖f7+ ♔g8 34.♖a8+ ♕c8 35.♖xc8+ ♖e8 36.♖xe8#

Zontakh – Savanovic (1998)

Solution B 19

Morphy's mate

26.♖g7+ ♔h8 27.♖xg6+ ♖f6 28.♗xf6#

Korobov – Horvath (2014)

▪

Solution B 20

Balestra mate

31.♖xg6+ fxg6 32.♗xe6#

Bisguier – Kudrin (1985)

▪

Solution B 21

David & Goliath mate

9.♕f7+ ♕xf7 10.exf7#

Powers – Dake (1937)

▪

Solution B 22

Greco's mate

28... ♗e3+ 29.♕h5 ♖xh5#

Wikman – Nyström (1997)

▪

Solution B 23

Damiano's mate

53.♕c4+ ♔h8 54.♕h4+ ♔g8 55.♕h7#

Bahnsen – Homeyer (1997)

▪

Solution B 24

Swallow's tail mate

21.♖f7+ ♖xf7 22.♕xf7#

Tiller – Lovik (2009)

▪

Solution B 25

Box mate

27.♕d3+ ♔f4 28.♖h4+ ♖g4

28...♕xh4 29.♕f3#.

29.♖f5#

Savchenko – Aagaard (2008)

▪

Solution B 26

Fool's mate

6.♕h5+ g6 7.♕xg6+ hxg6 8.♗xg6#

Similar to Fool's mate (Caro-Kann Defense).

Damant – NN (1932)

▪

Solution B 27

David & Goliath mate

51.♖xg6+ hxg6 52.h7#

Storey – Jarmany (2014)

▪

Solution B 28

David & Goliath mate

10.cxb7+ ♔e7

10...♕d7 doesn't save Black, because White can promote while checking the king: 11.bxa8♕+ ♔e7 12.♘d5+ ♔e6 13.f5# (David & Goliath mate).

11.♘d5+ ♔e6 12.f5#

Saulson – Phillips (1907)

▪

Solution B 29

David & Goliath mate

15.♗f6+ ♘xf6 16.exf6#

Maurian – NN (1866)

▪

Solution B 30

Morphy's mate

40.♖g7+ ♔h8 41.♖g6#

Gabriel – Mantzouneas (1997)

▪

Solution B 31

Suffocation mate

19.♕h6 gxh6

19...♗xf5 20.♕xg7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

20.♘xh6#

Semcesen – Grandelius (2009)

▪

Solution B 32

Morphy's mate

27...♖xg2+ 28.♔h1 ♖xg3#

Baird – Schlechter (1898)

▪

Solution B 33

Damiano's mate

39.♖f8+ ♖xf8 40.♕g7#

Larino Nieto – Moreno Ruiz (2014)

▪

Solution B 34

Arabian mate

34...♕c1+ 35.♘xc1

35.♘d1 ♕xd1#.

35...♖e1#

Reinderman – Beukema (2017)

▪

Solution B 35

Triangle mate

26...♗xg2+ 27.♔xg2

27.♔g1 ♕f2#.

27...♖f2+ 28.♔g1 ♕xh2#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Ilic – Krasenkow (1990)

▪

Solution B 36

Blackburne's mate

25.♕xe6 ♗xe6

If Black tries 25...♖e8 in order to create an escape square for the king on d8, White has the winning move 26.♕b6, threatening both 27.♕b8# and 27.♕c7#.

26.♘b6#

Similar to Blackburne's mate.

Bojovic – Zarkovic (2008)

▪

Solution B 37

Hook mate

37...♖xf1#

Pavasovic – Fogarasi (1994)

▪

Solution B 38

Arabian mate

13.♘f6+ ♔d8 14.♖e8#

Holt – Bingamon (1947)

▪

Solution B 39

Double bishops mate

37.♕d8+ ♖xd8

37... ♗f8 fails to 38. ♗d4# (Double bishops mate).

38.♖xd8+ ♗f8 39. ♗d4#

Bogoljubow – Heinicke (1951)

▪

Solution B 40

Box mate

34.♕c6+ ♔a7 35.♖xa8#

Geller – Kogan (1946)

▪

Solution B 41

Arabian mate

40...♖xg3+ 41.♔h2 ♘f3+ 42.♔h1 ♖g1#

Nuritdinova – Khoudgarian (2006)

▪

-

Solution B 42

Lawnmower mate

39.♕xf8+ ♔xf8 40.♖h8#

Guo – Madhurima (2011)

▪

Solution B 43

Lawnmower mate

29...♖xa3+ 30.♔xa3

30.bxa3 ♕b1# (Dovetail mate).

30...♕a1#

Arlandi – Kveinys (2004)

▪

Solution B 44

Back rank mate

28...♕xf2+ 29.♖xf2 ♖c1+ 30.♖f1 ♗xe3+ 31.♔h1 ♖xf1#

Szabados – Macskasy (1954)

▪

Solution B 45

Pillsbury's mate

18.♖xg7+ ♔h8 19.♖g8+ ♔xg8 20.♖g1+ ♗g3 21.♖xg3#

Kahn – Ciornei (1997)

▪

Solution B 46

Dovetail mate

32...♕h3+ 33.♔e2

33.♔g1 ♕g2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

33...♕d3#

Matsuura – Milos (2001)

▪

-

Solution B 47

Box mate

42.♕d8+ ♔f7 43.♖f6+ ♔g7 44.♕xf8+ ♔h7 45.♖h6#

Railroad into Box mate.

Ermenkov – Ciocaltea (1981)

▪

Solution B 48

Vukovic's mate

67...♖a8+ 68.♔b7

68.♖a7 ♖xa7#.

68...♖b8+ 69.♔a6 ♖b6#

Alekseev – Vitiugov (2012)

▪

Solution B 49

Epaulette mate

27.♕xh6+ ♔e7 28.♖xe6+ fxe6 29.♕g7#

Chuzhakin – Kosov (2006)

▪

Solution B 50

Blind swine mate

29...♖g2+ 30.♔h1 ♖h2+ 31.♔g1 ♖cg2#

Alinoori – Ching (2001)

▪

Solution B 51

Lolli's mate

39.♖f8+ ♔xf8 40.♕f7#

Libiszewski – Kuzubov (2015)

▪

Solution B 52

Lawnmower mate

35.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 36.♖xh5#

Krudde – l'Ami (2009)

▪

Solution B 53

Hook mate

50.f8♘+ ♔g8

50...♔h8 51.♘g6+ ♔h7 52.♖h8# (Hook mate).

51.♘g6+ ♔f7 52.♖f8#

Marshall – Napier (1898)

▪

Solution B 54

Back rank mate

33...♕xe1+ 34.♖f1 ♘f3+ 35.♔h1 ♕xf1#

Mayer – Suetin (1997)

▪

Solution B 55

David & Goliath mate

36.♖xg8+ ♔h7 37.h5 g5 38.hxg6#

Rhine – NN (2010)

▪

Solution B 56

Opera mate

22...♕e1+ 23.♔xe1 ♗b4+ 24.♔d1/f1 ♖e1#

Geissert – Starck (1973)

▪

Solution B 57

Smothered mate

14.♘h6+ ♔h8

14...♔f8 15.♕f7#.

15.♕g8+ ♖xg8 16.♘f7#

Koltanowski – Hofferbert (1947)

▪

Solution B 58

Vukovic's mate

43...e3 44.♖e5 ♖f2#

Katz – Steiner (1946)

▪

Solution B 59

Lawnmower mate

35.♖f7+ ♔g8

35...♔e8 36.♖be7# (Blind swine mate).

36.♖g7+ ♔h8

36...♔f8 37.♖bf7+ ♔e8 38.♔f6 g1♕ 39.♖g8#.

37.♖h7+ ♔g8 38.♖bg7+ ♔f8 39.♔f6 ♖h4 40.♖xh4 g1♕ 41.♖h8#

Antal – Chernyshov (2002)

▪

Solution B 60

Boden's mate

14.♕xf6+ gxf6

14...♕f7 15.♕xf7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

14...gxf6 15.♗h6#

Janny – Steiner (1922)

▪

Solution B 61

Triangle mate

32.♖f8+ ♔g7 33.♖f7+ ♔g8 34.♕xh7#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Nasuta – Hracek (2016)

▪

Solution B 62

Lolli's mate

29.♖f8+ ♔xf8 30.♕f7#

Casocobos – Lobo Rodriguez (1997)

▪

Solution B 63

Epaulette mate

30.♕xg6+ fxg6 31.♖g7#

Neumann – Mayet (1866)

▪

Solution B 64

Greco's mate

30...♕xf2+ 31.♔h2

31.♔h1 ♕g1# (Damiano's bishop mate).

31...♕h4#

Szilagyi – Pirisi (1981)

▪

Solution B 65

Boden's mate

19...♕xg2+ 20.♔xg2

20.♔e1 ♕f2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

20...♗h3#

Neustadtl – Valenta (1889)

▪

Solution B 66

Legal's mate

9.♗f7+ ♔e7 10.♘d5#

Similar to Legal's mate (King's Gambit Accepted).

Reinle – Seyfried (1959)

▪

Solution B 67

Swallow's tail mate

28...♕c4+ 29.♔f2

29.♕d3 prolongs the game a bit: 29...♕xd3+ 30.♔f2 ♖e2+ 31.♔f1 ♕d1# (Lawnmower mate).

29...♕e2#

Pillsbury – Marshall (1894)

▪

Solution B 68

Boden's mate

19.♖xe6+ fxe6

19...♕e7 can't save Black from being checkmated: 20.♖xe7+ ♔f8 21.♕f3+. White can win, e.g. after 21...♘f6 22.♖c7+ ♔e8 23.♖xc8+ ♔d7 24.♗f5#.

20.♕g6+ hxg6 21.♗xg6#

Pillsbury – NN (1900)

▪

Solution B 69

Double knights mate

25...♘e2+ 26.♔h1 ♘xf2#

Walsh – Bronstein (2005)

▪

Solution B 70

Back rank mate

42.exf7+ ♕xf7

42...♔f8 43.♖xe8# (Anderssen's mate).

43.♖xe8#

Wolf – Burn (1905)

▪

Solution B 71

Smothered mate

25.♕xb5+ ♔f8 26.♘d7+ ♔e8 27.♘f6+ ♔f8 28.♕e8+ ♖xe8 29.♘d7#

Reefschläger – Astengo (2008)

▪

Solution B 72

Smothered mate

8...♘d3#

Smothered mate in the opening (Budapest Gambit, Adler Variation).

Henricksen – Pedersen (1937)

▪

Solution B 73

Smothered mate

15.♕g8+ ♖xg8 16.♘f7#

Pohlenz – Pinel (1994)

▪

Solution B 74

Double bishops mate

45.♕xe5+ ♔xe5 46.♗c3#

Bird – Gunsberg (1887)

▪

Solution B 75

David & Goliath mate

22.♕g7+ ♘xg7 23.♘h6+ ♔h8 24.fxg7#

Bird – Pinkerley (1850)

▪

Solution B 76

Damiano's bishop mate

33...♕h1+ 34.♔f2 ♕f3+ 35.♔g1 ♕g2#

Escalator into Damiano's bishop mate.

Heinicke – Gilg (1940)

▪

Solution B 77

Vukovic's mate

76...♘h2+ 77.♔e1

77.♔g1 ♖d1#.

77...♘f3+ 78.♔f1 ♖f2#

Staunton – Williams (1951)

▪

Solution B 78

Back rank mate

39.♖a8+ ♗f8

39...♔h7 40.♕h5#.

40.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 41.♕d8#

Stevic – Cebalo (1996)

▪

Solution B 79

Corner mate

48...♕xf1+ 49.♗xf1 ♘f2#

Myers – Poliakoff (1955)

▪

Solution B 80

Double bishops mate

21.♗f7+ ♔f8 22.♕xh6+ ♖xh6 23.♗xh6#

Candeias – Gaboleiro (2000)

▪

Solution B 81

David & Goliath mate

76.♔c6 a4 77.b4 a3 78.b5 a2 79.b6 a1♕ 80.b7#

Solomunovic – Delchev (2002)

▪

Solution B 82

Suffocation mate

10...♘h4+ 11.♔e1

11.♔g1 ♕g4# (Pillsbury's mate).

11...♘xf3#

Rabinovich – Levenfish (1927)

▪

Solution B 83

Anastasia's mate

21...♖xh2+ 22.♔xh2 ♖h8#

Dai – Motycakova (2012)

▪

-

Solution B 84

Smothered mate

10.♘d6#

Smothered mate in the opening (Slav Defense, Exchange Variation).

Horowitz – Plankart (1958)

▪

Solution B 85

David & Goliath mate

12...♕xh3 13.gxh3 g2#

Itze – Reinle (1925)

▪

Solution B 86

Greco's mate

20...♘g3+ 21.hxg3 hxg6+ 22.♘h5 ♖xh5#

Popov – Vocaturo (2012)

▪

Solution B 87

Anastasia's mate

31...♕xh2+ 32.♔xh2 ♖h5#

Poulsen – Christiansen (1981)

▪

Solution B 88

Corner mate

29.♘f7#

Janse – Borland (2001)

▪

Solution B 89

Damiano's bishop mate

32.♕g8+ ♔e7 33.♕e6+ ♔f8 34.♕f7#

Escalator into Damiano's bishop mate.

Maharramzade – Gagunashvili (2003)

▪

Solution B 90

Greco's mate

23...♕xh2+ 24.♔xh2 ♖h4#

Faure – Philip (1986)

▪

Solution B 91

Greco's mate

41...♖xh2+ 42.♔xh2 ♕h4#

Sequeira – Ochoa De Echaguen (1978)

▪

-

Solution B 92

Suffocation mate

29...♘f2+ 30.♔g1 ♘xh3#

Torres Caravaca – Alekhine (1922)

▪

Solution B 93

Legal's mate

10.♘f6+ gxf6 11.♗xf7#

Similar to Legal's mate (Three Knights Opening).

Berger – Fröhlich (1888)

▪

Solution B 94

Opera mate

15...♕f1+ 16.♔xf1 ♗d3+ 17.♔e1 ♖f1#

Schulten – Horwitz (1846)

▪

Solution B 95

Anastasia's mate

17...♕h5+ 18.gxh5 ♖h4#

Hammer – Carlsen (2003)

▪

Solution B 96

Balestra mate

51. ♗e6#

Rowson – Moser (2004)

▪

Solution B 97

Opera mate

10...♕d1+ 11.♗xd1 ♖xd1#

Krejcik – Thirring (1898)

▪

Solution B 98

Max Lange's mate

25...♕h4+ 26.♔g1 ♕h2#

Martinovic – Dzaja (2011)

▪

Solution B 99

Suffocation mate

18.♘xh6+ ♔h8 19.♕g8+ ♘xg8 20.♘f7#

Capablanca – Coll (1920)

▪

Solution B 100

Pillsbury's mate

22...♕xf3+ 23.♔g1 ♖g6+ 24.♖g4 ♖xg4#

Cvitanic – Pavasovic (1993)

▪

Solution B 101

Pillsbury's mate

24.♖xg7+ ♔xg7

24...♔h8 25.♕h6 ♕e5 26.♕xh7#.

25.♕g5+ ♔h8 26.♕f6+ ♔g8 27.♖g1+ ♕g3 28.♖xg3#

Volke – Evers (1980)

▪

Solution B 102

Legal's mate

9... ♗xf2+ 10.♔e2 ♘d4#

Similar to Legal’s mate.

Keller – Herrmann (1950)

▪

Solution B 103

Lawnmower mate

63.♕h7+ ♔f8 64.♘d7+ ♔e8 65.♖f8#

Georgiev – Vescovi (2006)

▪

Solution B 104

Smothered mate

32.♕xe6+ ♔h8 33.♘f7+ ♔g8 34.♘h6+ ♔h8 35.♕g8+ ♘xg8 36.♘f7#

Bischoff – Müller (2004)

▪

Solution B 105

Opera mate

29...♕xh2+ 30.♔xh2 ♖h5+ 31.♔g1 ♖h1#

Jürgens – Lacina (2001)

▪

Solution B 106

Arabian mate

36...♖b3+ 37.♔a2

37.♔a4 fails to 37...♘c3#.

37...♘c3+ 38.♔a1 ♖b1+ 39.♖xb1 ♖xb1#

Maliszewski – Artamonova (1999)

▪

Solution B 107

Double bishops mate

10...♗f2+ 11.♔f1 ♕xh3+ 12.♘xh3 ♗xh3#

Koomen – Boomgaardt (1970)

▪

Solution B 108

Triangle mate

34...♕e1+ 35.♔d3

35.♔f3 ♖h3+ 36.♖g3 ♖xg3# (Box mate).

35...♖h3+ 36.♔c2 ♖c3+ 37.♔b2 ♕c1#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Mekhitarian – Choma (2003)

▪

Solution B 109

Back rank mate

37...♕e4+ 38.♔a1 ♕e1+ 39.♘xe1 ♖xe1#

Deelman – Bleykmans (1987)

▪

Solution B 110

Anastasia's mate

26.♖d4 fxg6 27.♖h4#

Gostisa – Hribar (1992)

▪

Solution B 111

Back rank mate

30...♕d1+ 31.♘xd1 ♘d2+ 32.♔g1 ♖e1#

Polugaevsky – Lutikov (1958)

▪

Solution B 112

Epaulette mate

21...♖g8+ 22.♗xg8 ♕g7#

Van Wely – Morozevich (2001)

▪

Solution B 113

Swallow's tail mate

32. ♗g6+ ♖xg6

32...♔xg6 33.♕h5# (Dovetail mate).

33.♕e7#

Carlsen – Gretarsson (2003)

▪

Solution B 114

Arabian mate

28.♕d8+ ♘xd8 29.♖xd8+ ♖g8 30.♖xg8#

Willich – Fink (2004)

▪

Solution B 115

Smothered mate

22...♕b1+ 23.♖xb1 ♘c2#

Larios Crespo – Salvador Lopez (2001)

▪

Solution B 116

Pillsbury's mate

21...♖xg2+ 22.♔h1 ♖g1+ 23.♔xg1 ♖g8+ 24.♗g4 ♖xg4#

Szelag – Socko (2015)

▪

Solution B 117

Max Lange's mate

15.♗h7+ ♔h8 16.♗g6+ ♔g8 17.♕h7#

Ikonomopoulou – Samanic (2010)

▪

Solution B 118

Fool's mate

4...♕h4+ 5.g3 ♗xg3+ 6.hxg3 ♕xg3#

Similar to Fool's mate (Bird Opening, From's Gambit, Lasker Variation).

Greenwalt – Wall (1983)

▪

Solution B 119

Arabian mate

40...♖g5+ 41.♔h8

41.♔h7 would lead to a faster checkmate after 41...♘f6+ 42.♔h6 ♖g6# (Vukovic's mate).

41.♔h8 ♘f6 42.♗a4+ ♔e7 43.♖g1 ♖xg1 44.c5 ♖g8#

Taimanov – Larsen (1967)

▪

Solution B 120

Morphy's mate

39...♘f2+ 40.♘xf2 ♕xf3#

Micayabas – Sharavdorj (2007)

▪

Solution B 121

Damiano's bishop mate

28...♖h1+ 29.♔xh1 ♕h3+ 30.♔g1 ♕xg2#

Ballmann – Kortchnoi (1995)

▪

Solution B 122

Opera mate

18.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 19.♘xh7+ ♔g8 20.♖e8+ ♔xh7 21.♖h8#

Bier – Ricardo-Rocamora (1876)

▪

Solution B 123

Boden's mate

15.♕xf6+ gxf6 16.♗xf6#

Fico – Guerrini (1981)

▪

Solution B 124

Opera mate

10.♕d8+ ♔xd8 11.♗g5+ ♔e8 12.♖d8#

Pacak – Witek (2007)

▪

Solution B 125

Back rank mate

33...♕e1+ 34.♕f1 ♗c5+ 35.♔h1 ♕xf1#

Wahls – Armas (1989)

▪

Solution B 126

Opera mate

17.♕h8+ ♗xh8 18.♖xh8#

Euwe – Loman (1923)

▪

Solution B 127

Swallow's tail mate

26.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 27.♕f7#

Euwe – Evill (1921)

▪

Solution B 128

Opera mate

15.♕e8+ ♔xe8 16.♗b5+ ♔f8 17.♖e8#

Kaldegg – Zeissl (1903)

▪

Solution B 129

Double knights mate

35.♘f6+ ♔h8 36.♘xg6#

Devereaux – Norinkeviciute (2008)

▪

Solution B 130

Triangle mate

33...♖g1+ 34.♔d2 ♖d1+ 35.♔c2 ♕d3#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Sorokin – Valerga (1995)

▪

Solution B 131

David & Goliath mate

30...♖xh3+ 31.♔xh3 ♖h8+ 32.♔g4 f5#

Meinhardt – Sasikiran (2007)

▪

Solution B 132

Scholar's mate

5.♕xh8+ ♘g8 6.♕xg8+ ♗f8

6...♔e7 keeps Black in the game for a few more moves. Checkmate will eventually occur, e.g. after 7.♕xf7+ ♔d6 8.d4 ♗b4+ 9.c3 ♗a5 10.♗f4+ ♔c6 11.♕d5+ ♔b6 12.♕b5# (Damiano's bishop mate).

7.♕xf7#

Similar to Scholar's mate/ Damiano's bishop mate (Bishop's Opening, Boi Variation).

Meyer – Newcomb (1952)

▪

Solution B 133

Boden's mate

23. ♗d5+ ♔g6 24. ♗f7#

Oratovsky – Khamrakulov (2001)

▪

Solution B 134

David & Goliath mate

29. ♕xg6+ hxg6 30.h7#

Jadoul – Plomp (2003)

▪

Solution B 135

Damiano's mate

33. ♕xg6+ ♔h8 34. ♕g7#

Gomez – Wague (1988)

▪

Solution B 136

Damiano's mate

18.♖h8+ ♔xh8 19.♕h5+ ♔g8 20.♕h7#

Darmarakis – Naxakis (1998)

▪

Solution B 137

Greco's mate

26.♘a6+ bxa6 27.♕b4#

Chigorin – Davidov (1874)

▪

Solution B 138

Opera mate

30.♖d8+ ♖e8 31.♕f8+ ♖xf8 32.♖xf8#

Chigorin – Znosko-Borovsky (1903)

▪

Solution B 139

Damiano's mate

19.♖h8+ ♔xh8 20.♕h5+ ♔g8 21.♕h7#

Alava – Franssila (1992)

▪

Solution B 140

Greco's mate

28.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 29.♕h5#

Tsadzikidze – Doluhanova (1997)

▪

Solution B 141

David & Goliath mate

26.♕g8+ ♔xg8 27.h7#

Stavrev – Janachkov (1987)

▪

Solution B 142

Double knights mate

20...♕g2+ 21.♖xg2 ♘h3#

NN – Blackburne (1871)

▪

Solution B 143

Double bishops mate

25...♗xe2 26.♖xh4

White could survive a bit longer after 26.♔g2, but Black will ultimately win.

26...♗f3#

NN – Tarrasch (1915)

▪

Solution B 144

Epaulette mate

40...♖g1+ 41.♘xg1 ♖f2#

Zouaghi – Hüsmann (2007)

▪

Solution B 145

Back rank mate

19...♕xf2+ 20.♖xf2

20.♔h1 ♕f1+ 21.♖xf1 ♖xf1# (Back rank mate).

20...♖xd1+ 21.♖f1 ♖dxf1#

Nazarenus – Vologin (1996)

▪

Solution B 146

Double bishops mate

28.♕e6+ ♗xe6 29.♗xe6#

Röse – Fischdick (2003)

▪

Solution B 147

Boden's mate

18... ♗g3+ 19.hxg3 ♕xg3#

Balk – Barnes (1926)

▪

Solution B 148

Lolli's mate

16.♕h6 ♗xf6 17.exf6 ♖e8+ 18.♘e5 ♘xe5 19.♕g7#

Preece – Kent (1977)

▪

Solution B 149

Smothered mate

20.♕g8+ ♖xg8 21.♘f7#

Benko – Horowitz (1968)

▪

Solution B 150

Epaulette mate

20.♖f8+ ♕xf8 21.♖xf8+ ♖xf8 22.♕xg6#

Morphy – Worrall (1857)

▪

Solution B 151

Dovetail mate

29.♖d8+ ♖xd8 30.♕xd8+ ♔g7 31.♕h8#

Blatny – Nakamura (2001)

▪

Solution B 152

Greco's mate

14...♕g3 15.hxg4 ♕h4#

Nile – Tasso (1937)

▪

Solution B 153

Lolli's mate

41.♕a3+ ♔e8 42.♕e7#

Evtifeev – Izbinsky (1909)

▪

Solution B 154

Box mate

33.♖h3+ ♔g6 34.♖h6+ ♔g5 35.♕f6+ ♔g4 36.♖h4#

Railroad into Box mate.

Wells – Emms (2000)

▪

Solution B 155

Hook mate

59...♘g3+ 60.♔h2

Via 60.♔g1, White could extend the game with one move: 60...♖f1+ 61.♔h2 ♖f2+ 62.♔xg3 ♖g2# (Hook mate).

60...♖f2+ 61.♔xg3 ♖g2#

Kiss – Suranyi (2001)

▪

Solution B 156

Max Lange's mate

17.♗xh7+ ♔h8 18.♗g6+ ♔g8 19.♕h7#

Kristensen – Thingstad (2010)

▪

Solution B 157

Anastasia's mate

17.♘e7+ ♔h8 18.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 19.♖h1#

Roth – Rajna (1975)

▪

Solution B 158

Suffocation mate

9.♘f6+ ♔f8 10.♗h6#

Schoeber – Bouwmans (1981)

▪

Solution B 159

Damiano's bishop mate

38.♕g8+ ♔e7 39.♕e6+ ♔f8 40.♕f7#

Escalator into Damiano's bishop mate.

Stadler – Wallis (2002)

▪

Solution B 160

Damiano's bishop mate

38.♕xh6+ ♔g8 39.♗d5+ ♖f7 40.♕xg7#

Szekely – Arkhipov (1992)

▪

Solution B 161

Anastasia's mate

20.♘fe7+ ♔h8 21.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 22.♖h4#

Viner – Carey (1961)

▪

Solution B 162

Dovetail (bishop) mate

38.exf8♕+ ♔xf8

38...♔h7 39.♕xg7#. The queen on g6 is pinned (Damiano's bishop mate).

39.♕a8+ ♔f7 40.♕e8#

Nikolic – Hickl (2003)

▪

Solution B 163

Anastasia's mate

22.♕h6+ ♔xh6

22...♔g8 23.♕g7#.

23.♖h1#

Petek – Panic (1997)

▪

Solution B 164

Damiano's mate

34...♖b2+ 35.♔xb2 ♕d2+ 36.♔b1 ♕c2#

Zivkovic – Anagnostopoulos (1996)

▪

Solution B 165

Anastasia's mate

18...♕h2+ 19.♔f1 ♕h1+ 20.♘xh1 ♖xh1#

Schnabel – Pokorny (2000)

▪

Solution B 166

Suffocation mate

26.♖c8+ ♔xc8 27.♘xa7#

Strohhäker – Derix (2006)

▪

Solution B 167

Greco's mate

22...♘g3+ 23.hxg3 ♖h8+ 24.♕h5 ♖xh5#

Reichert – Diemer (1950)

▪

Solution B 168

Damiano's bishop mate

31.♖h8+ ♔xh8 32.♕h6+ ♔g8 33.♕xg7#

Borgen – Popel (1974)

▪

Solution B 169

Lolli's mate

32.♖xg6+ fxg6 33.♕xg6+ ♕g7 34.♕xg7#

Fischer – Ault (1959)

▪

Solution B 170

Box mate

46.♖a6+ ♔xb7

46...♔b8 47.♖a8+ ♔xb7 48.♕a7# (Lawnmower mate).

47.♕xc6+ ♔b8 48.♖a8#

Railroad into Box mate.

Edouard – Vocaturo (2016)

▪

Solution B 171

Smothered mate

30...♕xh2+ 31.♕xh2 ♘f2#

Slade – Hooper (1947)

▪

Solution B 172

Anastasia's mate

20.♕h8+ ♔xh8 21.♖xf8#

Felgaer – Obregon (2014)

▪

Solution B 173

Dovetail (bishop) mate

41.♕b8+ ♔d7 42.♕c7+ ♔e6 43.♕d6+ ♔f5

43...♔f7 44.♕f6+ ♔g8 45.♕xg7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

44.♕f6+ ♔e4 45.♕f3#

Pogorelov – Bueno Abalo (1999)

▪

Solution B 174

Triangle mate

25.♖xg7+ ♔f8

25...♔h8 26.♖h7+ ♔g8 27.♖h8# (Opera mate).

26.♘g6+ fxg6 27.♕e7#

Potter – Blevins (1996)

▪

Solution B 175

Box mate

44...♕f7+ 45.♔xg5 ♕f4+ 46.♔g6 ♖h6#

Swapnil – Kryakvin (2010)

▪

Solution B 176

Vukovic's mate

73...♘c3+ 74.♔c1 ♖c2#

Foisor – Malysheva (2005)

▪

Solution B 177

Boden's mate

17...♖xc3+ 18.bxc3 ♗a3#

Reshevsky – Duncan (1921)

▪

Solution B 178

Smothered mate

24.♖xh7+ ♘xh7

24...♔xh7 25.♕h5#.

25.♘g6#

Sjugirov – Memeti (2010)

▪

Solution B 179

Blackburne's mate

31...♗xf3+ 32.♔h2 ♗d6+ 33.♗f4 ♗xf4+ 34.♘g3 ♗xg3#

Similar to Blackburne's mate.

Arias Rodriguez – Bajo Gutierrez (1992)

▪

-

Solution B 180

Back rank mate

30.♕h6+ ♖g7

30...♔g8 31.♖e8# (similar to Greco's mate).

31.♕xd6+ ♔g8 32.♕d8#

Sulskis – Zulfugarli (2001)

▪

Solution B 181

Greco's mate

23.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 24.♖h1#

Slugin – Klimes (1997)

▪

Solution B 182

Epaulette mate

44...♖h5+ 45.♖h4

45.♔g4 ♕f5# (Triangle mate).

45...♖xh4+ 46.gxh4

46.♔xh4 ♕h5# (Swallow's tail mate).

46...♕f3#

Lund – Bu (2011)

▪

Solution B 183

Damiano's bishop mate

30.♘f8+ ♗xf8 31.♕f7+ ♗g7 32.♕xg7#

Cicak – Cyborowski (2004)

▪

Solution B 184

Greco's mate

32...♘g3+ 33.hxg3 hxg3+ 34.♖h5 ♖xh5#

Brzozka – Sliwa (1957)

▪

Solution B 185

Damiano's bishop mate

27...♗h2+ 28.♔h1 ♗g3+ 29.♔g1 ♕h2+ 30.♔f1 ♕xf2#

Max Lange's maneuver into Damiano's bishop mate.

Gordon – Williams (2013)

▪

Solution B 186

Pillsbury's mate

12...♖g8+ 13.♔h1 ♗g2+ 14.♔g1 ♗xf3+ 15.♗g5 ♖xg5#

Süssmann – Schiffers (1876)

▪

Solution B 187

Vukovic's mate

39.e6 ♖e5 40.♖f7#

Svoboda – Ruckschloss (2000)

▪

Solution B 188

Greco's mate

33...♕xh2+ 34.♔xh2 ♖h5#

Mladenov – Buhmann (2001)

▪

Solution B 189

Vukovic's mate

58...♔g3 59.d8♕ ♖f2#

Banusz – Linyeykin (2000)

▪

Solution B 190

Double knights mate

15.♘c7+ ♔d8 16.♘f7#

Taylor – Broyles (1971)

▪

Solution B 191

Scholar's mate

9.♕f7#

Similar to Scholar's mate / Damiano's bishop mate (Italian Game, Two Knights, Fried Liver Attack)

Angermann – Müller (1994)

▪

Solution B 192

Opera mate

24.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 25.♖h3+ ♔g8 26.♖h8#

Kantans – Prasannaa (2014)

▪

Solution B 193

Max Lange's mate

38.♖h8+ ♘xh8 39.♕g7#

Bajarani – Solak (2010)

▪

Solution B 194

Box mate

30.♗f4+ ♘xf4 31.♖c6#

Bönsch – Chekhov (1987)

▪

Solution B 195

Greco's mate

24.♕h6+ ♔xh6 25.♖h1+ ♕h2 26.♖xh2#

Kondratiev – Pavlovichev (1974)

▪

Solution B 196

Suffocation mate

8...♕xf1+ 9.♗xf1 ♘f3#

Manko – Jankowitz (1900)

▪

Solution B 197

Suffocation mate

26.♕h6 gxh6

26...♘xe5 27.♕xg7#.

27.♘xh6#

Kotronias – King (1990)

▪

Solution B 198

Blind swine mate

44.♘e6 fxe6

44...h6 also leads to checkmate after 45.♘xf8 ♔xf8 46.♖xf7+ ♔g8 47.♖fc7 exf4 48.♖c8# (Lawnmower mate). After 44...♖e8, 45.♖e7! forces mate, e.g. 45...♖d8 46.♖xf7 ♘e4 47.♖g7+ ♔h8 48.♖xh7+ ♔g8 49.♖bg7#.

45.♖g7+ ♔h8 46.♖xh7+ ♔g8 47.♖bg7#

Ivanchuk – Aronian (2006)

▪

Solution B 199

Blackburne's mate

22.♕xh5 gxh5

If 22...♘f6 (preventing 23.♕h7#), 23.♗xf6 gxh5 24.♗h7# (Blackburne's mate).

23.♗h7#

Menchik – Graf-Stevenson (1937)

▪

Solution B 200

Opera mate

17.♕xc6+ ♕xc6

17...♔f8 18.♖d8+ ♕e8 19.♖xe8# (Opera mate).

18.♖d8#

Soultanbeieff – Boet (1923)

▪

Solution B 201

Damiano's bishop mate

27.♕xc7#

Kortchnoi – Reshko (1957)

▪

Solution B 202

Epaulette mate

37...♕xe3+ 38.fxe3 ♖e2#

Vadko – Shchukin (2002)

▪

Solution B 203

Back rank mate

38.♕h6 ♕xf6 39.♕xf8#

Potkin – Navara (2008)

▪

Solution B 204

Greco's mate

22.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 23.♖h3+ ♔g7 24.♗h6+ ♔h7

24...♔h8 25.♗f8+ ♘h4 26.♖h4# (Greco's mate).

25.♗f8#

Browne – Bellon Lopez (1977)

▪

Solution B 205

Pillsbury's mate

28.♕g5+ ♔h8 29.♕f6+ ♔g8 30.♖g5#

Rubino – Stankovic (2003)

▪

Solution B 206

Swallow's tail mate

88...♕c7+ 89.♔e6 ♕e7#

Yuanyuan – Charkhalashvili (2001)

▪

Solution B 207

Swallow's tail mate

37...♕h1+ 38.♔f2 ♕g2#

Turovskaya – Tiers (2000)

▪

Solution B 208

Back rank mate

42...♕xg2+ 43.♕xg2 ♖c1+ 44.♕g1 ♖cxg1#

Yu – Robson (2014)

▪

Solution B 209

Lawnmower mate

28.♘f6+ gxf6 29.♖e8#

Averbakh – Ragozin (1954)

▪

Solution B 210

Balestra mate

40...♕h2+ 41.♔g4

41.♖h3 ♕f4#.

41...♗h5#

Yakovich – Bologan (1991)

▪

Solution B 211

Opera mate

25.♗f6+ ♖xb7 26.♖h8#

Z.Varga – P.Varga (1996)

▪

SOLUTIONS C

Advanced test

Solution C 1

Boden's mate

15.♕xf8+ ♕xf8 16.♘xf7+ ♕xf7 17.♗g5+ ♕e7 18.♗xe7#

From 'Keep it simple: 1.e4' by Christof Sielecki, chapter 'Scotch Four Knights'

▪

Solution C 2

Boden's mate

10.♕h5+ ♔f8 11.♗xe6 ♕e8 12.♕xh6#

From 'Keep it simple: 1.e4' by Christof Sielecki, chapter '1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 Others'

▪

Solution C 3

Fool's mate

7.gxh7+ ♘xh5 8.♗g6#

Similar to Fool’s mate (Owen Defense, Matovinsky Gambit).

From ‘Keep it simple: 1.e4’ by Christof Sielecki, ‘Alekhines and Rare Lines’

▪

Solution C 4

David & Goliath mate

24...♕xc3+ 25.♖d2 ♖xe4+ 26.♕xe4

26.♗e2 ♕c1+ 27.♖d1 d2+ 28.♔f1 ♕xd1# (Back rank mate). The white bishop is pinned.

26...♕c1+ 27.♖d1 d2#

Karu – Keres (1931)

▪

Solution C 5

Lawnmower mate

25.♕xh6+ ♔xh6 26.♘f5+ gxf5

26...♔h5 27.♖h3+ ♗h4 28.♖xh4# (Lawnmower mate); 26...♔h7 27.♖h3+ ♗h4 28.♖xh4# (Anastasia’s mate).

27.♖h3+ ♗h4 28.♖xh4#

Rahman – Dunphy (1956)

▪

Solution C 6

Greco's mate

30...♕xf2+ 31.♔h1

31.♔h2 ♖h3# (Greco's mate). White's g-pawn can't take Black's rook since it is pinned.

31...♕xg2+ 32.♘xg2 ♖h3#

Anderssen – Finch (1851)

▪

Solution C 7

Suffocation mate

27.♗d6

This bishop covers the f8-square, so the queen is no longer necessary to cover f8.

27...♘cd4

If Black tries to attack White's knight while blocking off the bishop's diagonal via 27...♘e7, White wins with 28.♖xe6, removing the defender of g7: 28...♘xf5

29.♕g5+ ♘g7 30.♕xg7# (Lolli's mate).

Even if Black sacrifices his queen for the bishop with 27...♕xd6, White doesn't accept it and plays 28.♖xe6 anyway. A checkmate with the queen on g7 can't be stopped.

28.♕g7+ ♘xg7 29.♘h6#

Adly – Laznicka (2007)

▪

Solution C 8

Boden's mate

21...♕xf2+ 22.♔xf2 ♘g4+ 23.♔f3 e4+ 24.♔xe4 ♘df6+ 25.♔f3 ♘e5+ 26.♔f2 ♘fg4+ 27.♔g1 ♗e3#

O'Kelly – Devos (1937)

▪

Solution C 9

Vukovic's mate

42.♖c7+ ♔f8

42...♔h8 43.♘xf6, and Black can't stop 44.♖h7# (Arabian mate);

42...♔g8 43.♘xf6+ ♔f8 44.♔e6, and Black can't stop 45.♖f7# (Vukovic's mate).

43.♘xf6 ♘g3+

Black's best try seems to be 43...♖b4 44.a5! and mate-in-3 (most likely Vukovic's mate).

44.♔e6 h5 45.♖f7#

Kholopov – Matsenko (2011)

▪

Solution C 10

Back rank mate

23.♖e8+ ♘f8 24.♘h6+ ♕xh6 25.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 26.♕d8#

Alekhine – Frieman (1924)

▪

Solution C 11

Suffocation mate

27.♗xe4+ ♔h8 28.♘g6+ ♔h7 29.♘xf8+ ♔h8 30.♘g6+ ♔h7 31.♘e5+ ♔h8 32.♘f7#

Alekhine – Fletcher (1928)

▪

Solution C 12

Max Lange's mate

20... ♗g3+ 21.♔g1 ♖h1+ 22.♔xh1 ♕h4+ 23.♔g1 ♕h2#

Almasi – Andersen (2007)

▪

Solution C 13

Epaulette mate

21.♕h8+ ♘g8 22.♕xg7+ ♔xg7 23.♖h7+ ♔f8 24.♖f7#

Moiseenko – Aleksandrov (2014)

▪

Solution C 14

Back rank mate

24...♕xf2+ 25.♖xf2 ♖b1+ 26.♘e1 ♖xe1+ 27.♖f1 ♗e3+ 28.♔h1 ♖xf1#

Moiseenko – Jussupow (2010)

▪

Solution C 15

Damiano's bishop mate

34.♗h7+ ♘xh7

34...♔xh7 35.♕f7#.

35.♕g6+ ♔f8 36.♕g7#

Motylev – Iljushin (2000)

▪

Solution C 16

Damiano's bishop mate

41.♘g6+ ♔g7

41...♕xg6? 42.♕xg6, and Black cannot recapture due to a pin.

42.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 43.♘f8+ ♔g7 44.♕h7+ ♔xf8 45.♕f7#

Tolush – Stoltz (1953)

▪

Solution C 17

Damiano's bishop mate

32.♘h7+ ♕xh7

32...♖xh7 33.♕g8#.

33.♕f6+ ♔e8

33...♕f7 34.♕xh8+ ♕g8 35.♕xg8#.

34.♕d8+ ♔f7 35.♕e7#

Escalator into Damiano's bishop mate.

Vaulin – Guliev (1995)

▪

Solution C 18

David & Goliath mate

90...♖d2 91.♖xe7 f4#

Dreev – Smirnov (2018)

▪

Solution C 19

Double knights mate

35...♖xg2+ 36.♘xg2 ♘h3+ 37.♔h1 ♘ef2#

Sarana – Jakovenko (2018)

▪

Solution C 20

Double bishops mate

33.♕e8+ ♕f8

33...♘f8 34.♕xf7+ ♔h8 35.♕g8# (Damiano's bishop mate).

34.♗xf7+ ♔h8 35.♗d4+ ♘f6 36.♗xf6#

Cabrera – Castano (2002)

▪

Solution C 21

Damiano's bishop mate

24.♕c4+ ♔b8 25.♕c7+ ♔a8 26.♖xa6+ ♗xa6 27.♕a7#

Romero Holmes – Tukmakov (1991)

▪

Solution C 22

Box mate

41...♘f4+ 42.exf4

42.♔f1 ♖d1#.

42...♕xg2+ 43.♔e1

43.♔e3 ♕d2#.

43...♕g3+ 44.♔e2

44.♔f1 ♖d1+ 45.♔e2 ♕f3#.

44...♕f3+ 45.♔e1 ♖d1#

Gershon – Ehlvest (2001)

▪

Solution C 23

Swallow's tail mate

32...♖xa2+ 33.♔xa2 ♕a4+ 34.♔b1

After 34.♗a3, Black can give checkmate in three moves, e.g. 34...♕xc2+ 35.♗b2 ♖a3+ 36.♔xa3 ♕a4# (Swallow's tail mate).

34...♕xc2+ 35.♔a2

35.♔a1 ♖a3+ 36.♗xa3 ♘b3#.

35...♖a3+ 36.♔xa3 ♕a4#

Skripchenko – Naiditsch (2001)

▪

Solution C 24

Epaulette mate

36.♕h4+ ♖h5 37.♘f5+ gxf5 38.♖e6+ ♗f6 39.♕xf6#

Ubushiev – Janas (1999)

▪

Solution C 25

David & Goliath mate

43.♖h8+ ♘xh8 44.g5#

Nguyen – Markus (2000)

▪

Solution C 26

Dovetail (bishop) mate

51...♕f4+ 52.♔h5 ♕h6+ 53.♔g4 f5+ 54.♔xf5 ♕g6#

Miles – Beliavsky (1984)

▪

Solution C 27

Greco's mate

33...♕a2+ 34.♔xa2

34.♔c1 ♕a1# (similar to Greco's mate).

34... ♗c2+ 35. ♗a5 ♖xa5#

Santasiere – Lasker (1931)

▪

Solution C 28

Anastasia's mate

21.♘g6+ ♔g8 22.♘e7+ ♔h8

22...♔f7 23.♕g6#.

23.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 24.♖h5#

Naiditsch – Schnur (2002)

▪

Solution C 29

David & Goliath mate

39.♗a6+ ♔b8 40.♖b6+ ♔a7

40...♔a8 41.♘c7+ ♔a7 42.♖b7# (Vukovic's mate).

41.♖b7+ ♔xa6 42.♘c5+ ♔a5 43.b4#

Belinkov – Lapienis (1968)

▪

Solution C 30

Double bishops mate

28.♖g8+ ♖xg8 29.♗xf6+ ♖g7 30.♗xg7#

Denker – Baker (1937)

▪

Solution C 31

Damiano's bishop mate

25.♗h7+ ♔h8

25...♔f7 26.♕g6+ ♔f8 27.♗xg7#;

25...♔f8 is similar to the main continuation.

26.♗xg7+ ♔xg7 27.♕g6+ ♔h8 28.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 29.♕g8#

Bisguier – Horowitz (1956)

▪

Solution C 32

David & Goliath mate

51.♖a8+ ♔h7 52.♖h8+ ♔xh8 53.♔f7+ ♔h7 54.g6#

A.Mastrovasilis – Theodorou (2015)

▪

Solution C 33

Boden's mate

47...♕e3+ 48.♘f3

48.g3 (the most stubborn defense) 48...♗f1+ 49.♘g2 ♕d2!, threatening checkmate while keeping an eye on g5. Checkmate is forced, e.g. after 50.♕h5 ♕xg2+ 51.♔h4 ♕xg3+ 52.♔g5 ♕f4+ 53.♔g6 ♕f6#.

48.♘f3 ♕xf3+ 49.gxf3

49.♕g3 ♕xg3# (Damiano's bishop mate); 49.g3 ♕h1# (Epaulette mate).

49.gxf3 ♗f1#

Bellahcene – Hamdouchi (2018)

▪

Solution C 34

Damiano's bishop mate

36.♔g2 ♕xe3

No matter what Black plays, checkmate eventually will follow. Please feel free to use an engine to look at all the possible variations.

37. ♗e6+

This is the only move that leads to checkmate! Any other sequence leads to a perpetual.

37...♔h7

37...♔h8 38.♕a8+ ♗f8 39.♕xf8+ ♔h7 40.♗f5# (Balestra mate);

37...♔f8 38.♕xd6+ ♔e8 39.♕d7+ ♔f8 40.♕f7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

38. ♗f5+ ♔g8

Or 38...♔h8 39.♕a8+ ♗f8 40.♕xf8#.

39.♕c8+ ♗f8

39...♔f7 40.♗e6+ ♔f6 41.♕d8+ ♔g6 42.♕e8+ ♔h7 43.♗f5#.

40.♕e6+ ♔h8

40...♔g7 41.♕g6+ ♔h8 42.♕h7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

41.♕f6+ ♔g8

Or 41... ♗g7 42.♕d8+ ♗f8 43.♕xf8#.

42. ♗e6+ ♔h7 43.♕f5+ ♔g7

43...♔h8 44.♕xf8+ ♔h7 45. ♗f5# (Balestra mate).

44.♕f7+ ♔h8 45.♕g8#

Escalator into Damiano's bishop mate.

Gelfand – Sutovsky (2004)

▪

Solution C 35

Triangle mate

41.♖xe7+ ♖xe7 42.♕b6+ ♔c8

42...♔a8 43.♖h8+ and mate-in-2.

43.♖h8+ ♖e8

43...♔d7 44.♖d8# (Box mate).

44.♖xe8+ ♔d7 45.♖d8+ ♔e7 46.♕d6#

Gelfand – Kramnik (1994)

▪

Solution C 36

Triangle mate

59...♕h1+ 60.♔g3 ♕g1+ 61.♔f3

61.♔h3 ♖h4# (Lawnmower mate).

61...♕g4#

Savchenko – Gunina (2016)

▪

Solution C 37

Box mate

35.♕h6+ ♔g8

35...♔xh6 36.♖h1# (Anastasia's mate).

36.♖c8+ ♖f8 37.♖xf8#

Spassky – Kortchnoi (1968)

▪

Solution C 38

David & Goliath mate

36.♖d8+ ♔g7 37.♗f8+ ♔f6

37...♔g8 38.♗h6# (similar to Greco's mate).

38.♖d6+ ♔f5 39.♔f3 h5 40.h3 ♘b5 41.g4+ hxg4+ 42.hxg4#

Abramovic – Drasko (1991)

▪

Solution C 39

Opera mate

16...♖g8+ 17.♔h3 ♗g4+ 18.♔g2 ♗e2+ 19.♔h1

19.♔h3 ♗xf1#.

19...♗f3+ 20.♖xf3 ♖g1#

Boucek – Duras (1902)

▪

Solution C 40

Arabian mate

23...♖xg2 24.♔xg2

24.f4 exf3 25.♖e8+ ♖xe8 26.♖g1 ♖xh2# (Opera mate).

24...♕g6+ 25.♔h1 ♖xf2 26.♖g1

26.♗f1 ♖xh2+ 27.♔xh2 ♘f3+ 28.♔h1 ♕g1# (Arabian mate).

26...♘f3 27.♖xg6 ♖xh2#

Parma – Damjanovic (1960)

▪

Solution C 41

Swallow's tail mate

19...♗xe4 20.♕d1

20.♖xe4 ♕h3, and White can't avoid Lolli's mate.

20...♕h3 21.♕f1 ♗d3

Trying to distract White's queen and open the e-file for the rook.

22.♖xd3 ♖e1 23.♗b2

23.♕xe1 ♕g2# (Lolli's mate).

23...♕xf1#

Pappas – Ditzell (1976)

▪

Solution C 42

Opera mate

19.♖xg7+ ♔xg7

The most challenging line for White is 19...♔h8 20.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 21.♕h4+ ♔g6 22.♖g1+ ♘g4 23.♖xg4+ ♕xg4 24.♕xg4+ ♔h6 25.♕g7+ ♔h5 26.♗e2+ ♔h4 27. ♕g4# (Damiano's bishop mate).

20.♖g1+ ♔h8

If 20...♔f6, 21.♕h4+ is the move. The game ends with 21...♔f5 22.♕g5+ ♔e4 23.♖e1+ ♔f3 24.♕g3#.

21.♕xe5+ dxe5 22.♗xe5+ f6 23.♗xf6+ ♖xf6 24.♖g8#

Hartlaub – Testa (1912)

▪

Solution C 43

Lawnmower mate

32.♖xh7+ ♔xh7

32...♔g8 33.♖xg7+ ♔h8 34.♖h3# (Lawnmower mate).

33.♕h5+ ♔g8 34.♘h6+ gxh6

34...♔h7 or 34...♔h8 can't save Black after 35.♘f7+ ♔g8 36.♕h8#.

35.♕g6+ ♔h8 36.♕xh6+ ♔g8 37.♕g6+ ♔h8 38.♖h3#

Cuartas – Barona (1992)

▪

Solution C 44

Opera mate

40...♗g2+ 41.♘xh5 ♖h4+ 42.♖h3 ♖xh3+ 43.♔g1 ♖h1#

Zeng – Yu (2011)

▪

Solution C 45

Smothered mate

17.♕e6+ ♔h8 18.♘f7+ ♔g8

18...♖xf7 19.♕e8+ ♖f8 20.♕xf8# (Back rank mate).

19.♘h6+ ♔h8 20.♕g8+ ♖xg8 21.♘f7#

Bloodgood – Evans (1961)

▪

Solution C 46

Opera mate

24.♕xf7+ ♖xf7

24...♔h8 25.♕xg7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

25.♖e8+ ♗f8 26.♖xf8#

Pritchett – Maalouf (1972)

▪

Solution C 47

Box mate

40.g5+ ♔xg5

40...♔h7 41.♖h8#.

41.♕g3+ ♔xf5

41...♔h6 42.♖h8# (Lawnmower mate).

42.♖e5#

Hansen – Brynell (2000)

▪

Solution C 48

Epaulette mate

30.♘g6+ ♔xg4 31.♕g3+ ♔h5

31...♔f5 32.♘h4+ gxh4 33.♕f3+ ♔g5 34.♖g7#.

32.♘f4+ gxf4 33.♕h3+ ♔g6

33...♔g5 34.♖g7#.

34.♕g4#

Kruck – Vielwock (2001)

▪

Solution C 49

Damiano's bishop mate

23...♖e1+ 24.♗f1

24.♖xe1 ♕xe1+ 25.♖xe1 ♖xe1+ 26.♗f1 ♗xf2+ 27.♔h1 ♖xf1#.

24...♕e2 25.♖xe1 ♕xf2+ 26.♔h1 ♕g1#

Shkuran – Ivanchuk (2014)

▪

Solution C 50

Double knights mate

39...♘c4 40.♕d3

40.♕c1 also loses, for example after 40...♘a3 41.♖xa3 ♕c2 42.♖c3 ♘b3+ 43.axb3 ♖a6+ 44.♕a3 ♖xa3#.

40...♕b4 41.♖b3 ♕e1+ 42.♖b1 ♖xb1+ 43.♕xb1 ♘c2#

Navara – Svidler (2012)

▪

Solution C 51

Hook mate

34.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 35.♖h5+ ♔g8 36.♘g6 ♖f6 37.♖h8+ ♔f7 38.♖f8#

Janowski – Schlechter (1899)

▪

Solution C 52

Pillsbury's mate

20...♖xc2 21.♖xc2 ♖e6 22.♗d2 ♖g6+ 23.♗g5 ♖xg5#

Janowski – Marshall (1912)

▪

Solution C 53

Damiano’s bishop mate

28.g6 exd4 29.gxh7 ♔g7 30.♕xf7+ ♔h8 31.♗f4 ♕d8 32.♗e5+ ♗f6 33.♗xf6+ ♕xf6 34.♕g8+ ♖xg8 35.hxg8♕#

Daulyte – Fier (2014)

▪

Solution C 54

Damiano’s bishop mate

28.♗xf4 ♘f8

Black’s bishop can’t take White’s bishop, because it has to guard g7 and h8. If Black doesn’t move his bishop, White will take it. An interesting line to look at is 28...♗f6 29.gxf6 ♕xf6 30.♗g5 ♕e5 (Black’s queen can’t take White’s bishop because of 31.♖h8#) 31.♘e7+ ♕xe7 32.♖h8+ ♔g7 33.♕h6# (Triangle mate).

29.♗xe5 ♘xh7

29...♘g6 30.♖h8+ ♘xh8 31.♕xh8# (Opera mate).

30.♕h6 ♕xg5

30...♕f8 31.♘e7+ ♕xe7 32.♕g7# (Damiano’s bishop mate).

31.♘e7+ ♕xe7 32.♕g7#

Boros – Chirila (2012)

▪

Solution C 55

Damiano's bishop mate

36...♕c3+ 37.♔b1 ♕xb3+ 38.♔a1 ♕c3+ 39.♔a2

39.♔b1 ♗c2+ 40.♔c1 ♗d3#.

39...♗b3+ 40.♔b1 ♕c2+ 41.♔a1 ♕a2#

De Vreugt – Van der Wiel (2004)

▪

Solution C 56

Greco's mate

26...♖f5+ 27.♕d4 ♗xd4+ 28.cxd4 ♕e3+ 29.♔h2 ♖h5#

Sellos – Nielsen (1980)

▪

Solution C 57

David & Goliath mate

45.♕g6+ hxg6

45...♔g4 46.h3+ ♔h4 47.♕h6#;

45...♔h4 46.♕h6+ ♔g4 47.h3# (David & Goliath mate).

46.♖h8+ ♖h7 47.♖xh7+ ♔g4 48.h3#

Flores – Mareco (2012)

▪

Solution C 58

Suffocation mate

9.♘f6+ ♔h8

9...♔g7 10.♘e8+ ♔g8 11.♕g7#.

10.♘g4+ ♘xd4

10...f6 11.♗xf6+ ♖xf6 12.♕xf6+ ♔g8 13.♘h6#; 10...♔g8 11.♘h6# (Suffocation mate).

11.♗f6+ ♔g8 12.♘h6#

Andreikin – Karjakin (2010)

▪

Solution C 59

David & Goliath mate

32.♘c5+ ♔a5 33.♖b7 ♘e3 34.b4#

Berkovich – Saltaev (1992)

▪

Solution C 60

Vukovic's mate

43...♔d4 44.c7 ♔c3 45.c8♕ ♖d2#

Vargic – Kovacevic (2001)

▪

Solution C 61

Lawnmower mate

41...♔f5 42.♔h6

Only move to avoid mate-in-1.

42...♖h3+ 43.♔g7 ♖d7+ 44.♔g8 ♔g6 45.♖f2 ♖g7+ 46.♔f8 ♖h8#

Sahovic – Kortchnoi (1979)

▪

Solution C 62

Greco's mate

40...♕e3+ 41.♔h1 ♘g3+ 42.hxg3 ♖h6#

Radulovic – Beliavsky (1972)

▪

Solution C 63

Damiano's bishop mate

41.♖d7+ ♘xd7 42.♗d5+ ♔g7 43.♕g8+ ♔f6 44.♕f7+ ♔e5 45.♕e6#

Escalator into Damiano's bishop mate.

Iturrizaga – Halkias (2009)

▪

Solution C 64

Lawnmower mate

33.♕xf8+ ♔xf8 34.♖h8+ ♔e7 35.♖g7+ ♔xe6 36.♖xh6#

Medina Menendez – Bouzo (2002)

▪

Solution C 65

Dovetail (bishop) mate

45.♖h6+ ♔xh6

45...♔g8 46.♖h8# (Opera mate).

46.♕h8+ ♔g6 47.exf5+ ♔xf5 48.♕xh5+ ♔f6 49.♕g5#

Geller – Liebert (1970)

▪

Solution C 66

Balestra mate

32.♕xg6+ ♔e7

32...♔f8 33.♗h6+ ♔e7 34.♕e6#.

33.♕e6+ ♔f8 34.♗h6#

Berdiugina – Muhren (2002)

▪

Solution C 67

Greco's mate

21.♕f7 ♖g8

21...♖e7 22.♗g7# (Double bishops mate).

22.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 23.♗f8+ ♕h4 24.♖xh4#

Lasker – Muirhead (1899)

▪

Solution C 68

Greco's mate

26.♖xf7 ♖xf7

26...♕c3 27.♖xf8+ (to open the diagonal for the bishop) 27...♖xf8 28.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 29.♕h5# (Greco's mate).

27.♖xh7+ ♔xh7

27...♔g8 28.♕xg7#. The rook can't take the queen since it is pinned.

28.♕h5+ ♔g8 29.♕xf7+ ♔h7 30.♕h5#

Kislik – Ferrer Sanchez (2008)

▪

Solution C 69

Dovetail (bishop) mate

31.♕b4+ ♕d6 32.♕xd6#

Bacrot – Rasmussen (2015)

▪

Solution C 70

Blackburne's mate

22.♕xh6 ♘f6

22... ♗xh2+ 23.♔h1 ♘f6 24. ♗xf6 gxh6 25. ♗xh7# (Blackburne's mate);
22...gxh6 23. ♗xh7# (Blackburne's mate).

23. ♗xf6 ♕c5+ 24.♔h1 gxh6 25. ♗xh7#

Delmar – Hanham (1889)

▪

Solution C 71

Greco's mate (similar)

27...♘f3+ 28.exf3

28.♔g2 ♕xf1+ 29.♔xf1 ♗h3# (Suffocation mate).

28...♕xf1+ 29.♔xf1 ♗h3+ 30.♔g1 ♖e1#

Torre – Timman (1982)

▪

Solution C 72

Morphy's mate

32.♖g7+ ♔h5 33.♕h4+ gxh4 34.♗f3#

Gleizerov – Brumen (2010)

▪

Solution C 73

Box mate

46.♖g3+ ♔h4

46...♔xh5 47.♕h7# (Lawnmower mate); 46...♔f5 47.♕xg6#.

47.♕f6+ ♔xh5

47...♖g5 48.♕xg5# (Triangle mate).

48.♖h3+ ♔g4

48...♘h4 49.♖xh4# (Box mate).

49.♕f3+ ♔g5 50.♖h5#

Vorobiov – Konovalov (2008)

▪

Solution C 74

Boden's mate

14.♖xf6+ gxf6 15.♕xh6+ ♖xh6 16.♗xh6#

Duz-Khotimirsky – NN (1910)

▪

Solution C 75

Triangle mate

34.♖b8+ ♔e7

34...♕d8 35.♖xd8+ ♔e7 36.♕d6# (Triangle mate).

35.♕e5+ ♔d7 36.♖b7+ ♔c6

36...♔c8 37.♕b8# (Lawnmower mate).

37.♖c7+ ♔b6 38.♕c5#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Peralta – Villanueva (2018)

▪

Solution C 76

Lawnmower mate

30...♕g3+ 31.fxg3

31.♔f1 ♖e1#.

31...♖e1+ 32.♔f2 ♖8e2#

Guido – Lacour (2003)

▪

Solution C 77

Lolli's mate

61.♕b7+ ♗c7

61...♗e7 62.♕xe7+ ♔g8 63.♕f7+ ♔h8 64.♕xh7# (Damiano's bishop mate); 61...♔g8 62.♕xh7+ ♔f8 63.♕f7# (Lolli's mate).

62.h6+ ♔xh6

62...♔f8 63.♕c8+ ♔e7 64.♕d7+ ♔f8 65.♕f7# (Lolli's mate); 62...♔h8 63.♕c8+ ♗d8 64.♕xd8#.

63.♕h1+ ♔g7 64.♕xh7+ ♔f8 65.♕f7#

Jenni – Caruana (2009)

▪

Solution C 78

Suffocation mate

14.♘xe5 ♗xe2

Or e.g. 14...f5 15.♘d7!! (White has a threat with 16.♘f6+) 15...f6 (to give his king an escape square) 16.♕xc4# (Boden's mate). If the bishop tries to keep guarding d7, the knight will take the route via g4: 14...♗e6 15.♘g4, with a double attack on f6. Or 14...♗f5 15.♕g4+!! ♗xg4 16.♘xg4, with mate-in-2 (Suffocation mate).

15.♘d7 f5 16.♘ef6+ ♕xf6 17.♘xf6#

Brown – Gibbs (1918)

▪

Solution C 79

David & Goliath mate

41...d4+ 42.cxd4 ♘d5+ 43.♔e2 ♘c3+ 44.♔e3 f4#

Lemke – Fleischman (2003)

▪

Solution C 80

Opera mate

12...♕xf3+ 13.gxf3 ♗h3+ 14.♔f2

14.♔g1 ♖e1+ 15.♔f2 ♗h4#.

14...♗h4+ 15.♔g1 ♖e1+ 16.♕f1 ♖xf1#

Riemann – Anderssen (1876)

▪

Solution C 81

Vukovic's mate

34...♖xh3+ 35.gxh3 g2+ 36.♔h2 gxf1♘+ 37.♔h1 ♖g1#

Ferenczy – Charousek (1897)

▪

Solution C 82

Dovetail mate

52...♖f1+ 53.♘f2

53.♕f2 ♕e4# (Dovetail mate).

53...♖xf2+ 54.♕xf2 ♕e4#

Kamsky – Gelfand (2007)

▪

Solution C 83

Dovetail mate

42...♕h1+ 43.♔g4 ♖f4+ 44.gxf4

44.♔xg5 ♕h6#.

44...♕h4+ 45.♔f5 ♕xf4+ 46.♔e6 ♕f7#

Shapiro – Gniot (1955)

▪

Solution C 84

Opera mate

47...g4+ 48.♔h2 ♖g2+ 49.♔h1 ♖g3+ 50.♔h2 ♖h3+ 51.♔g1 ♖h1#

Siegel – Beikert (1995)

▪

Solution C 85

Pillsbury's mate

24...♘xd4 25.♕d3 ♘e2+

White's queen is overloaded: she can't defend against both 26...♖g6# (Pillsbury's mate) and 26...♘e2# (Suffocation mate).

26.♕xe2 ♖g6#

MacDonnell – Boden (1869)

▪

Solution C 86

Triangle mate

32...♕f1+ 33.♔f3 ♕h1+ 34.♔e3 ♕e4+ 35.♔d2 ♖c2+ 36.♔d1 ♕xe2#

Mastrokoukos – Haritakis (1995)

▪

Solution C 87

Hook mate

55...♘g2+ 56.♔d1 ♘e3+ 57.♔e1 ♖c1+ 58.♔d2 ♖d1#

Arzumanian – Shalimov (2005)

▪

Solution C 88

Boden's mate

26.dxc7+ ♔e8 27.♗h5+ ♕f7 28.♘d6+ ♔f8

28...♔e7 29.♘xc8+ ♔e8 30.♕e7#. The black queen can’t take since she is pinned.

29.♘xf7+ ♖xa3

29...♘c5 30.♕xc5+ ♔e8 31.♘e5#.

30.♗d6+ ♔e8 31.♘xg5#

Hertneck – Santo-Roman (1991)

▪

Solution C 89

David & Goliath mate

48.♕e1+ ♖xe1 49.g3#

Stahlberg – Becker (1944)

▪

Solution C 90

Lolli’s mate

29.♗e8+ ♔f8 30.♖g8+ ♔xg8 31.♕g2+ ♔f8 32.♕g7+ ♔xe8 33.♕e7#

Hernandez Guerrero – Adla (1992)

▪

Solution C 91

Smothered mate

20...♕c5+ 21.♗e3 ♕xe3+ 22.♔h1 ♖xf1+ 23.♖xf1 ♘f2+ 24.♔g1

24.♖xf2 ♕e1+ 25.♖f1 ♕xf1# (Back rank mate).

24...♘h3+ 25.♔h1 ♕g1+ 26.♖xg1 ♘f2#

Miralles – Neverov (1990)

▪

Solution C 92

Damiano's mate

30.♖h8+ ♔xh8 31.♖xc8+ ♖xc8 32.♕h3+ ♔g8 33.♕xc8+ ♖f8 34.♕e6+ ♔h8 35.♕h3+ ♔g8 36.♕h7#

Benini – Reggio (1911)

▪

Solution C 93

Damiano's bishop mate

29.♖xf6+ exf6 30.♖e8+ ♕xe8 31.♕xf6+ ♕f7 32.♕xf7#

Machate – Rellstab (1947)

▪

Solution C 94

Lolli's mate

20.♕h6+ ♔g8 21.♗f6 ♗xf6 22.e5 ♘xd3

22...♖fd8 (creating an escape square for the black king) 23.exf6 ♘xd3 24.♕g7# (Lolli's mate).

23.exf6 ♘f2+ 24.♔g1 ♘h3+ 25.♔f1 ♗c4+ 26.♘e2 ♗xe2+ 27.♔e1 ♕a5+ 28.b4 ♕b6 29.♕g7#

Ravinsky – Ilivitsky (1952)

▪

Solution C 95

Lawnmower mate

26.♖xf7 ♔xf7

26...♘xg6 27.♖f8+ ♘xf8 28.gxf8♖# (Box mate); 26...♖d8 27.♖f8+ ♖xf8 28.gxf8♖# (Box mate).

27.g8♕+ ♘xg8 28.♕xh7+ ♔f8 29.♖xg8#

Mahia – Quinteros (1980)

▪

Solution C 96

Lawnmower mate

32.♕xh6+ gxh6 33.g7+ ♔xg7 34.♘h5+ ♔h8 35.♖xh6#

Berliner – Almgren (1946)

▪

Solution C 97

Balestra mate

39.♕d6+ ♔e8

39...♔g8 40.♕b8+ ♗d8 41.♕xd8# (similar to Greco's mate).

40.♗d7+ ♔d8 41.♗xb5+ ♔c8 42.♗a6#

Steiner – Rellstab (1951)

▪

Solution C 98

Boden's mate

23.♖f8+ ♗xf8 24.e7#

Tirard – Silvert (2000)

▪

Solution C 99

Hook mate

44.♘c6+ ♔b7 45.♕xc8+ ♔xc8 46.♖e8+ ♔d7 47.♖d8#

Or 46...♔b7 47.♖b8#.

Nepomniachtchi – Salgado (2008)

▪

Solution C 100

Double bishops mate

22...♕d2+ 23.♘xd2 ♗xd2+ 24.♔d1 ♗b3#

Boss – Armbrust (2002)

▪

Solution C 101

Smothered mate

23.♘g5 ♕g6

Black could try 23... ♗xg2+, but still loses after 24.♔xg2 ♕d5+ 25.♔g3 (White's king is safe now) 25...h6 26.♕xh6# (Black's pawn can't take the white queen because it is pinned).

24.♕xh7+ ♕xh7 25.♘f7#

Yagupov – Khusnullin (1999)

▪

Solution C 102

Vukovic's mate

35.♖xh7+ ♖xh7

35...♔g8 36.♖h8#.

36.♕xf6+ exf6

36...♔g8 37.gxh7+ ♕xh7 38.♘xe7+ ♕xe7 39.♖h8# (Box mate).

37.♖xh7+ ♔g8 38.♘xf6+ ♔f8 39.♖f7#

Stohl – Sygulski (2000)

▪

Solution C 103

Dovetail mate

50.♗f8+ ♔g8

50...♔xf8 will lose immediately after 51.♕h8#; while if 50...♖xf8 51.♖e7+ ♖f7 52.♖xf7+ ♔g8 53.♕h7# is a Triangle mate.

51.♕g6+ ♔xf8 52.♕h6+ ♖g7 53.♕h8+ ♔f7 54.♕e8#

Madl – Majer (1997)

▪

Solution C 104

Arabian mate

15.♘c7+ ♔d8 16.♘ce6+ ♔e8

16...♔c8 17.♖c7# (Arabian mate).

17.♘xg7+ ♔d8 18.♘5e6+ ♔c8 19.♖c7#

Zarcula – Calugaru (1965)

▪

Solution C 105

Hook mate

34.♖e7+ ♔xe7 35.♘g6+ ♔f7 36.♖xh7+ ♖xh7 37.♕f8#

Bulmaga – Kashlinskaya (2007)

▪

Solution C 106

Triangle mate

32...♘d3+ 33.♔d2 ♕xc2+ 34.♔e3 ♕c5+ 35.♔d2

Some alternatives:

A) 35.♔f3 ♕f2+ 36.♔g4 ♖xe4+ 37.♔h3 ♖e3+ 38.♔g4 ♖g3+ 39. ♔h4 ♕h2# (Lawnmower mate);

B) 35.♔e2 ♖xe4+ 36.♔f1 ♖e1+ 37.♔g2 ♕g1+ 38.♔h3 ♕h1+ 39.♔g4 ♖g1#;

C) 35.♔xd3 ♕c2+ 36.♔e3 ♖xe4+ 37.♔f3 ♕e2+ 38.♔g3 ♖g4+ 39.♔h3 ♕g2# (Railroad into Triangle mate).

35...♕c1+ 36.♔xd3

36.♔e2 ♖xe4+ 37.♔f3 ♕e3+ 38.♔g2 ♖g4+ 39.♔h2 ♕g1+ 40.♔h3 ♕g2# (Triangle mate).

36...♕c2+ 37.♔e3 ♖xe4+ 38.♔f3 ♕e2+ 39.♔g3 ♖g4+ 40.♔h3 ♕g2#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Radulov – Kavalek (1971)

▪

Solution C 107

Lolli's mate

30.♕f7+ ♔h7 31.♕xh5+ ♔g8 32.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 33.♖f8+ ♔xf8 34.♕f7#

Salgado – Okhotnik (2012)

▪

Solution C 108

Arabian mate

53.♘d6+ ♔b8 54.c7+ ♖xc7

54...♔a8 55.♖d8#.

55.♖d8+ ♖c8 56.♖xc8#

Sokolov – Collutiis (2011)

▪

Solution C 109

Suffocation mate

16.♕h6 ♗xh6

16...♗xf6 17.♘xf6+ ♕xf6 18.exf6 ♗xd1 19.♕g7# (Lolli's mate).

17.♘e7#

Bednarski – Nouisseri (1970)

▪

Solution C 110

Triangle mate

32.♖c8+ ♗f8 33.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 34.♖h8+ ♖g8 35.♗xb4+ ♔g7

35...♖e7 36.♕xe7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

36.♕h6#

Tarjan – Gilden (1973)

▪

Solution C 111

Box mate

33.♖xh6+ ♔g8

33...gxh6 34.♕xf7+ ♗g7 35.♘f6#.

34.♘f6+ gxf6 35.♖xh8+ ♔xh8

35...♔g7 36.♕h6# (Triangle mate).

36.♕h6+ ♔g8 37.♖xf8#

Tarjan – De Firmian (1983)

▪

Solution C 112

Damiano's mate

52...g3+ 53.♔h1

53.♔h3 ♕g4#.

53...♕h4+ 54.♘h3 ♕xh3+ 55.♔g1 ♕h2#

Mason – Janowski (1900)

▪

Solution C 113

David & Goliath mate

54...♘e2+ 55.♔g4 ♖xe4+ 56.♔h5

56.♔h3 ♘g1+ 57.♔h2 ♖xh4#.

56...♘f4+ 57.♔g4 h5#

Sprenger – Bobras (2007)

▪

Solution C 114

Epaulette mate

45...♖fxb4+ 46.cxb4

46.♔a3 ♖a4# (Lawnmower mate); 46.♔c2 ♖b2+ 47.♔d1 ♖b1+ 48.♔d2 ♖7b2+ 49.♔e3 ♕f4#.

46...♕xb4+ 47.♔c2 ♕b1+ 48.♔d2

48.♔c3 ♕c1#.

48...♖b2+ 49.♔e3 ♕e1+ 50.♗e2 ♕xe2#

Smeets – Le (2008)

▪

Solution C 115

Triangle mate

44.♖xf7 ♕c5

44...♖e7 45.g6 (threatening 46. ♕h7#) 45...♖xf7 46.♖e1! (prevents the black king from escaping) 46...dxc3 47.♕h7+ ♔f8 48.♕h8#;

44...♕xf7 45.♕xf7+ ♔h7 46.♕xe6 ♖b7 47.♖f4 g6 48.♖h4+ ♔g7 49. ♕f6+ ♔g8 50.♖h8# (Box mate).

45.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 46.♖f7+ ♔g8 47.♕h7#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Piket – Brodsky (1995)

▪

Solution C 116

Blind swine mate

36...♖xa2+ 37.♔b1 ♗xe4 38.♖c1?

More challenging was 38.♖d2 ♖xd2 39.♔c1 (unpinning the knight) 39...♖ac2+ 40.♔b1 ♖b2+ 41.♔c1 a2 42.♘xb2 ♖c2+ 43.♔d1 a1♕# (Lawnmower mate).

38...♖cb2#

Benjamin – Kozul (1997)

▪

Solution C 117

Arabian mate

22.♕xf7+ ♖xf7

22...♔h8 23.♕xf8# (Back rank mate).

23.♖e8+ ♖f8 24.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 25.♖e8#

Agustsson – Nielsen (1987)

▪

Solution C 118

Double knights mate

11.♕xe7+ ♘xe7 12.♘f6+ ♔d8

12...♔f8 13.♗h6# (Suffocation mate).

13.♘xf7#

Taylor – NN (1874)

▪

Solution C 119

Triangle mate

32.♕xg6+ ♔e7 33.♖e8+ ♔d7 34.♕e6#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Tisdall – Thorsteins (1985)

▪

Solution C 120

Vukovic's mate

36...♕xa4+ 37.bxa4

37.♔b1 ♕a1#.

37...♖xb2#

Hector – Barbero (1991)

▪

Solution C 121

Arabian mate

25.♕xh7+ ♔f8 26.♕h8+ ♘xh8 27.♘h7+ ♔e8 28.♘f6+ ♔d8

28...♔f8 29.♖g8# (similar to Hook mate).

29.♖g8+ ♖e8 30.♖xe8#

Braso – Larrea (1997)

▪

Solution C 122

Triangle mate

38.♖g8+ ♔xg8 39.♕g3+ ♔f8 40.♕g7#

Gallagher – Vuilleumier (2003)

▪

Solution C 123

Swallow's tail mate

30... ♗c1+ 31.♔c3

31.♔d3 ♕d4# (Swallow's tail mate).

31...♕d4+ 32.♔b3 ♕b2+ 33.♔c4 b5+ 34.axb5 axb5+ 35.♔d3 ♕d4#

Gallagher – Conquest (1988)

▪

Solution C 124

Lolli's mate

24. ♗g7+ ♔xg7

24...♔g8 25.♕h6 dxe4 26.♕xh7#.

25.♕h6+ ♔g8 26.♕xh7+ ♔f8 27.♕f7#

Blackburne – Steinkühler (1864)

▪

Solution C 125

Opera mate

26.♕xf4 ♗xf4

26...♗e7 27.♖xh5! ♗xf6 28.♕xf6 gxh5 29.♖xh5 and soon ♖h8#.

27.♖xh5 gxh5 28.♖xh5 ♗h6 29.♖xh6 c5 30.♖h8#

Blackburne – Schwarz (1881)

▪

Solution C 126

Lawnmower mate

25.♕xh6+

25.♖g7+ is only a draw after 25...♔xg7 26.f6+ ♔h7 27.♕e4+ ♔h8 28.♕e3+ ♔h7.

After 25.f6 the engine shows a winning advantage for White, but no forced mate.

25...♔xh6 26.♖d3 ♕xc2+ 27.♔xc2 ♖c8+ 28.♔b1 ♗xd5 29.♖h3#

Klein – Marcussi (1963)

▪

Solution C 127

David & Goliath mate

34.♖c8+ ♔g7 35.♕xh7+

Another mate in four is 35.♖xf7+ ♔xf7 36.♕xh7+ ♔f6 37.♖f8+ ♔g5 38.h4# (David & Goliath mate). In contrast, 35.♕d8 leads nowhere after 35...♖f4! (shielding the f6 escape square from the rook on f1) 36.♕f8+ ♔f6.

35...♔xh7 36.♖xf7+ ♔h6 37.♖h8+ ♔g5 38.h4#

Polgar – Fernandez Garcia (1993)

▪

Solution C 128

Greco's mate

32...♖h1+ 33.♔xh1 ♕h4+ 34.♔g1 ♕xf2+ 35.♔h2 ♖h5#

Hodgson – Crouch (1993)

▪

Solution C 129

Swallow's tail mate

28.♗e8+ ♔g8

28...♔g7 29.♕g3+ ♔h6 30.♕g6# (Damiano's bishop mate).

29.♕d5+ ♔h7 30.♕xh5+ ♔g7 31.♕g6#

Dueball – Teske (1993)

▪

Solution C 130

Triangle mate

50...♖g4+ 51.hxg4

51.♔xf2 ♕e2#.

51.hxg4 ♕h2#

Rathnakaran – Vajda (2012)

▪

Solution C 131

Suffocation mate

37...♘h3 38.♗e2

38.gxh3 ♕h2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

38...♕g1+ 39.♖xg1 ♘f2#

Robatsch – Bisguier (1961)

▪

Solution C 132

Hook mate

26.♕xf8+ ♔xf8 27.♘e6+ ♔e8

27...♔g8 28.♖f8# (Arabian mate).

28.♖f8+ ♔d7 29.♖d8#

Thorsteins – Hjartarson (1986)

▪

Solution C 133

Damiano's bishop mate

17...♕xe3+ 18.♔f1 ♖h1+ 19.♗xh1

19.♘g1 ♖xg1# (Box mate).

19...♗h3+ 20.♗g2 ♕f3+ 21.♔g1 ♕xg2#

Biro – Meszaros (2001)

▪

Solution C 134

Greco's mate

28.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 29.♗h6+ ♔g8 30.♕d8+ ♖xd8 31.♖xd8#

Similar to Greco's mate.

Hennel – Jelen (2000)

▪

Solution C 135

Lolli's mate

41...h3+ 42.♔f2

42.♔g1 ♕e3+ 43.♔h1 ♕f3+ 44.♔g1 ♘e2+ 45.♗xe2 ♕g2# (Lolli's mate);
42.♔xh3 ♕xf1+ 43.♔g3 ♕f3#.

42...♕d2+ 43.♔g1

43.♗e2 ♕xe2+ 44.♔g1 ♕g2# (Lolli's mate); 43.♔g3 ♕e3#.

43...♕e3+ 44.♔h1 ♕f3+ 45.♔g1

45.♗g2 ♕xg2# (Damiano's mate).

45...♘e2+ 46.♗xe2 ♕g2#

Spraggett – Barlov (1987)

▪

Solution C 136

Back rank mate

27.♖xa6+ ♔d8 28.♕f6+ ♔c7 29.♕d6+ ♔d8 30.♕b6+ ♖c7

30...♔e7 31.♕f6#.

31.♕f6+ ♔c8 32.♖a8#

Spraggett – Andriasyan (2007)

▪

Solution C 137

Damiano's bishop mate

19.♗xh7+ ♔h8 20.♗g6+ ♔g8 21.♖h8+ ♔xh8 22.♕h1+ ♔g8 23.♕h7#

Gavriel – Chernyaev

▪

Solution C 138

Greco's mate

36.d6+ ♗f7 37.♖h8+ ♔xh8 38.♗xf7 ♘xc3 39.♖h1#

Georgiev – Socko (2007)

▪

Solution C 139

Suffocation mate

15.♘f5 ♗f6 16.♗xf6 g6 17.♘h6#

Lais – Hilpisch (1992)

▪

Solution C 140

Box mate

38.h7+ ♔xh7 39.♖h5+ ♔g8 40.♖h8#

Storland – Svedenborg (2000)

▪

Solution C 141

Blackburne's mate

10. ♗xf6 g6

10... ♗xf6 11. ♕h5 ♖e8 12. ♗h7+ ♔h8 13. ♘xf7#.

11. ♕h5 gxh5 12. ♗h7#

Chernyshov – Lesiak (1969)

▪

Solution C 142

Hook mate

21. ♘f6+ ♔g7 22. ♕xh6+ ♔xh6 23. ♖h4+ ♔g7 24. ♖h7#

Bulski – Skawinski (1999)

▪

Solution C 143

Triangle mate

17.gxh7+ ♔xh7

17...♔h8 18.♗xg7+ ♔xg7 19.♕h6+ ♔h8 20.♕xf8#.

18.♗xg7+ ♔g8

18...♔xg7 19.♕g5# (Lawnmower mate).

19.♖h8+ ♔xg7 20.♕h6#

Portisch – Kavalek (2011)

▪

Solution C 144

Box mate

41.♘h5+ ♔g6

41...♔g8 42.♕g3+ ♔h8 43.♕g7+ ♘xg7 44.♖xf8# (Back rank mate); 41...♔h6 42.♕e3+ ♔g6 43.♕xe6+ ♖xf6 44.♕xf6#.

42.♖f6+ ♖xf6

42...♔xh5 43.♖d5+ ♘g5 44.♕f3+ ♔h4 45.♖h6#.

43.♕xf6+ ♔xh5 44.♖d5+ ♔g4 45.♕f3+ ♔h4 46.♖h5#

Christiansen – Gulko (1999)

▪

Solution C 145

David & Goliath mate

22.♘f6+ exf6

22...♔h8 23.♕xh7# (Arabian mate / Damiano's bishop mate);

22...♕xf6 23.gxf6 exf6 24.♗xh7+ ♔h8 25.♗f5+ ♔g8 26.♖g1#.

23.♗xh7+ ♔h8 24.♗f5+ ♔g8 25.♕h7+ ♔f8 26.♕h8+ ♔e7 27.gxf6#

Evans – Zuckerman (1966)

▪

Solution C 146

Back rank mate

31.♖xe7 ♕xe7

31...♖xe7 32.♕f8# (Back rank mate).

32.♖xe7 ♖xe7 33.♕f8#

Remlinger – Manion (1992)

▪

Solution C 147

Box mate

48.♕xh6+ ♔g8

48...♔f7 49.♕g6+ ♔f8 50.♖c8+ ♔e7 51.♖e8+ ♔d7 52.♕e6+ ♔c7 53.♖c8# (Railroad into Box mate).

49.♕g6+ ♔f8

49...♘g7 50.♖c8#.

50.♖c8+ ♔e7 51.♖e8+ ♔d7 52.♕e6+ ♔c7 53.♖c8#

Railroad into Box mate.

Karlsson – Gallagher (2005)

▪

Solution C 148

Greco's mate

30.♕h5 ♘e5 31.♗xe5 ♗xe5 32.♕g6 hxg5 33.♕h5#

Ogaard – Forintos (1978)

▪

Solution C 149

Morphy's mate

26.♕a6 ♘xa6 27.♖b7+ ♔a8 28.♖xb6#

Gerzhoy – Kulic (2006)

▪

Solution C 150

Damiano's mate

34...♕e1+ 35.♔g2

35.♔h2 ♕xf2+ 36.♔h1 ♕f1+ 37.♔h2 fxg3# (David & Goliath mate).

35...f3+ 36.♔h2

36.♔xf3 ♕e4# (Dovetail mate).

36...♕xf2+ 37.♔h1 ♕g2#

Aronson – Veresov (1957)

▪

Solution C 151

Suffocation mate

10...♕g1+ 11.♔xg1

11.♖xg1 ♘f2# (Smothered mate).

11...♘e2+

The only winning move!

12.♔f1

12.♔h1 ♘f2# (Double knights mate).

12...♘4g3+ 13.hxg3 ♘xg3#

Lewis – Dayton (1942)

▪

Solution C 152

Back rank mate

48...♖h1+ 49.♔xh1 ♔g3 50.♗f5 ♖e2 51.f8♕ ♖e1#

Miron – Pavlidis (2014)

▪

Solution C 153

Damiano's bishop mate

39...♖xg2+ 40.♔f1

40.♖xg2 ♕e1# (Back rank mate).

40...♖g1+ 41.♔xg1 ♕h1#

Mohamed – Gallego (1992)

▪

Solution C 154

Corner mate

17...♘g3 18.♘c6+

18.fxg3 ♘f3# or 18....♘e2#.

18...♘de2+ 19.♕xe2+ ♘xe2#

Mandolfo – Kolisch (1858)

▪

Solution C 155

David & Goliath mate

35.♕d6+ ♔d8 36.♕f8+ ♔c7 37.♕c8+ ♔b6 38.c5#

Mossekel – Obreht (1997)

▪

Solution C 156

Box mate

39...♖xf3+ 40.♔xf3 ♖c3+ 41.♔e2 ♖c2+ 42.♔f3 ♖f2+ 43.♔g3 ♕f4+ 44.♔h3 ♖h2#

Railroad into Box mate.

Rivas – Hübner (1985)

▪

Solution C 157

Opera mate

25...♖f8 26.♗f3 ♖xf3 27.♕h8+ ♘f8 28.♕xf8+ ♖xf8 29.♖xe2 ♖f1#

Sisniega – Cuartas (1991)

▪

Solution C 158

Lolli's mate

34.♗xg5+ ♖xg5

34...♔g6 35.♕f6+ ♔h7 36.♕h6# (Swallow's tail mate).

35.fxg5+ ♔g6 36.♕f6+ ♔h7 37.♕f7+ ♔h8 38.g6 ♕c5+ 39.♔h1 ♕e3 40.♕h7#

Dziuba – Ipatov (2009)

▪

Solution C 159

Triangle mate

31.♖d8+ ♗f8 32.♖xf8+ ♔xf8

32...♔g7 33.♕h6#.

33.♖h8+ ♔g7

33...♕g8 34.♖xg8# (Box mate).

34.♕h6#

Kastelic – Plahuta (2002)

▪

Solution C 160

Dovetail mate

32...♕f1+ 33.♔f3 ♕h1+ 34.♔e2 ♕d1#

Bosiocic – Kristovic (2007)

▪

Solution C 161

Lawnmower mate

18.♗xh7+ ♔xh7

18...♔h8 19.♕h5 ♖e8 20.♗g6+ ♔g8 21.♕h7+ ♔f8 22.♕h8#.

19.♕h5+ ♔g8 20.♘f6+ gxf6 21.♕g4+ ♔h7

21...♔h8 22.♖f3 ♕c2 23.f5! ♕xf5 24.♖xf5 ♖g8 25.♖h5# (Lawnmower mate).

22.♖f3 ♖g8 23.♖h3#

Martinez Romero – Gonzales (2014)

▪

Solution C 162

Boden's mate

18.♕g6 ♔g8 19.♕h7+ ♔f7 20.♗g6+ ♔e7 21.♗c5#

Besnyo – Sipka (2000)

▪

Solution C 163

Anastasia's mate

41...♖d1+ 42.♔h2 ♕xg2+ 43.♔xg2 ♘e3+ 44.♔h2 ♖f2+ 45.♔h3 ♖h1#

Uritzky – Sutovsky (2002)

▪

Solution C 164

Damiano's bishop mate

31.♕e5+ f6

31...♘f6 32.♕xf6+ ♔g8 33.♘h6# (Suffocation mate).

32.♖xh7+ ♔xh7 33.♕h5+ ♔g7

33...♘h6 34.♕xg6+ ♔h8 35.♕h7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

34.♕xg6+ ♔h8 35.♕h7#

Ardeshi – Al-Tamimi (2002)

▪

Solution C 165

Hook mate

49.♕e5+ ♔h7

49...♔f8 50.♕h8#; 49...f6 50.♕e7+ ♔h8 51.♕f8+ ♔h7 52.♘xf6#.

50.♘f6+ ♔g7

50...♔h8 51.♕e8+ ♔g7 52.♕g8# (Hook mate).

51.♘h5+ ♔f8 52.♕d6+ ♔g8 53.♕d8+ ♔h7 54.♘f6+ ♔g7 55.♕g8#

Gagunashvili – Kalegin (2006)

▪

Solution C 166

Damiano's bishop mate

28.♕g4+ ♔h8 29.♕h4 f5

29...h5 30.♕xf6+ ♔g8 31.♗h6 ♗e5 32.♕f5 with mate-in-2 for White.

29...f5 30.♕f6+ ♔g8 31.♗h6 ♗e5 32.♕xf5 ♕e6 33.♕xh7#

Adams – Stanton (1993)

▪

Solution C 167

Hook mate

37...♕xh4+ 38.♕xh4 ♖h1+ 39.♔g4 ♖xh4#

Roiz – Galkin (2003)

▪

Solution C 168

Swallow's tail mate

30.♖g6+ e6 31.♖xe6+ ♘c6 32.♖xc6+ bxc6 33.♕b8+ ♔a6 34.♕c8+ ♔b6 35.♕xc6#

Krasenkow – Bosboom (2007)

▪

Solution C 169

Suffocation mate

19.♗xh7+ ♔f8

Most challenging for White is 19...♔xh7 20.♕h5+ ♔g8 21.♕xf7+ ♔h7 22.♘g4 (opening the diagonal for the bishop) 22...♗f8 (preventing 23.♕xg7#) 23.♖c3 ♕h4 24.♖h3 ♕xh3 25.♘f6+! ♔h6 26.♗c1+ ♖e3 27.♗xe3+ ♕xe3 28.♕h5# (Swallow's tail mate); 19...♔h8 20.♘xf7+ ♔xh7 21.♕h5+ ♔g8 22.♕h8+ ♔xf7 23.♕xg7#.

20.♕h5 ♗xd5 21.♖xd5 ♕xd5 22.♕xf7+ ♕xf7 23.♘d7#

Najdorf – NN (1942)

▪

Solution C 170

Arabian mate

42...♕xg2+ 43.♔xg2 ♘e3+ 44.♔g1

44.♔h3 ♖h5# (Anastasia's mate).

44...♖xf1#

Suba – Barria Zuniga (2009)

▪

Solution C 171

Corner mate

43.♕b8+ ♗d8 44.♘xc6 ♘e6 45.♕xd8+ ♘xd8 46.♘c7#

Similar to Corner mate.

Chigorin – Solovtsov (1884)

▪

Solution C 172

David & Goliath mate

35.♖e8+ ♘f8 36.♖xf8+ ♔h7 37.♕h5 ♘e5 38.♕g6+ ♘xg6 39.fxg6#

Klichev – Gaspariants (1997)

▪

Solution C 173

Blind swine mate

20.♕xh7+ ♗xh7 21.♖xg7+ ♔h8 22.♖hxh7#

Tal – Koblents (1965)

▪

-

Solution C 174

Balestra mate

15.♕xe6+ ♔f8 16.♗c4 bxc4 17.♖f1+ ♘f6 18.♖xf6+ gxf6 19.♗h6#

Tal – NN (1963)

▪

Solution C 175

Back rank mate

26...♖g4+ 27.♔f1

27.♔h1 ♕xh2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

27...♖g1+ 28.♔xg1 ♕xh2+ 29.♔f1 ♕h1#

Tal – Vaganian (1988)

▪

Solution C 176

David & Goliath mate

26.♕g7+ ♔h5 27.♕xh7+ ♘xh7 28.♖xh7+ ♔g4 29.h3#

Zacurdajev – Garakov (2005)

▪

Solution C 177

Suffocation mate

21.♕xg7+ ♔xg7 22.♘f5+ ♔g8 23.♘h6#

Orso – Lutz (2001)

▪

Solution C 178

Dovetail mate

30...♖h2+ 31.♔xh2

31.♔g3 ♗e5+ 32.♔xg4 ♕h4+ 33.♔f3 ♕f4#.

31...♕h8+ 32.♔g2 ♕h3+ 33.♔f2 ♗h4+ 34.♖g3 ♕xg3#

Franic – Zelcic (2006)

▪

-

Solution C 179

Vukovic's mate

32... ♗f2+ 33.♔xf2

33.♔d2 e1♕+ 34.♔d3 ♕f1+ 35.♔c3 ♘e4#.

33...e1♕+ 34. ♗xe1 ♖e2+ 35.♔g1 ♖xg2#

Skoko – Robulj (2006)

▪

Solution C 180

Vukovic's mate

41.♘h7+ ♔e8

41...♔g8 42.♘f6+ ♔h8 43.♖h7# (Arabian mate).

42.♘f6+ ♔f8 43.♖f7#

Stojanovic – Müller (2001)

▪

Solution C 181

Triangle mate

65...♖b3+ 66.♔xa4

66.♔c5 ♕c1#.

66...♕b5#

Cebalo – Ibragimov (1994)

▪

Solution C 182

Damiano's bishop mate

31...♖a1+ 32.♔xa1 ♖c1+ 33.♕xc1 ♕a2#

Palac – Mestrovic (1998)

▪

Solution C 183

Suffocation mate

19.♘f7+ ♔e8 20.♘d6+ ♔d8 21.♕e8+ ♘xe8 22.♘f7#

Vilar Lopez – Regan (1999)

▪

Solution C 184

David & Goliath mate

22...♕xh2+ 23.♔xh2 ♘g3+ 24.♔xg3

24.♔g1 ♖h1# (Arabian mate).

24...f4#

Kosolapov – Nezhmetdinov (1936)

▪

Solution C 185

David & Goliath mate

31...♘e3+ 32.fxe3

32. ♗xe3 ♕f3# (Dovetail (bishop) mate).

32...♕f5+ 33. ♗xf5 exf5#

Ronchetti – Piscopo (2003)

▪

-

Solution C 186

Dovetail mate

43...♕g5+ 44.♔f2 ♖f1+ 45.♔xf1 ♕c1+ 46.♔f2 ♕e1#

De Firmian – Hübner (1995)

▪

Solution C 187

Max Lange's mate

18.♗xh7+ ♔h8 19.♕h3 fxg5 20.♗g6+ ♔g8 21.♕h7#

Verrascina – Di Giulio (1997)

▪

Solution C 188

Lawnmower mate

34...♖xh3+ 35.♔xh3 ♕g4+ 36.♔h2 ♕h5+ 37.♕h4 ♕xh4#

Brunner – Fressinet (2012)

▪

Solution C 189

Hook mate

38...♘c4+ 39.♔xd3

39.♔c1 ♖f1#.

39...♖f2 40.♖g7+ ♔h4 41.a5 ♖d2#

Bakulin – Kortchnoi (1950)

▪

Solution C 190

Hook mate

36...♘h3+ 37.♔g2

37.♔h1 ♕xf1+ 38.♘xf1 ♖xf1+ 39.♔g2 ♖f2+ 40.♔xh3 ♖h2# (Hook mate).

37...♕f2+ 38.♖xf2

38.♔h1 ♕h2#.

38...♖xf2+ 39.♔xh3

39.♔h1 ♖h2#.

39...♖h2#

Andrianov – Lutikov (1980)

▪

Solution C 191

Suffocation mate

17.♗xh7+ ♘xh7

17...♔h8 18.♘xf7# (Suffocation mate).

18.♕xf7+ ♔h8 19.♘g6#

Stanec – Filzmaier (1993)

▪

Solution C 192

Hook mate

39.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 40.♕a8+ ♖c8 41.♕xc8+ ♔e7 42.♕e8#

Tolstikh – Ionov (2000)

▪

-

Solution C 193

Epaulette mate

48.♕e8+ ♖f8 49.♖h8+ ♔xh8 50.♕xf8+ ♖g8 51.♕h6#

Johansson-Tegelman – Rey Ardid (1933)

▪

Solution C 194

Vukovic's mate

41...♘f3+ 42.♔f1

42.♖xf3+ gxf3, and White can't avoid being checkmated on the first rank.

42...♖d1+ 43.♔e2 ♖d2+ 44.♔f1 ♖f2#

Iljushina – Zakurdjaeva (2001)

▪

Solution C 195

Damiano's bishop mate

28.♕e6+ ♔g7

28...♔h8 29.♕f6+ ♔g8 30.♕xd8+ ♔g7 31.♕f8# (Dovetail mate).

29.♖f7+ ♔h6

29...♔h8 30.♕f6+ ♔g8 31.♕g7#;

29...♔g8 30.♖xb7+ ♔h8 31.♕f6+ ♔g8 32.♕xd8# (Lawnmower mate).

30.♖xh7+ ♔xh7

30...♔g5 31.♕xg6+ ♔f4 32.♕f5# (Swallow's tail mate).

31.♕xg6+ ♔h8 32.♕h7#

Cordue – Bates (1980)

▪

Solution C 196

Opera mate

31...♖h6 32.♖xf3 ♗xf3 33.♕xf7 ♖h1#

Lafuente – Naiditsch (2011)

▪

Solution C 197

Lolli's mate

34.♖xf7+ ♖xf7

34...♔g8 35.♕xg6+ ♖g7 36.♕xg7#.

35.♕h6+ ♔g8 36.♕g7#

Rout – Al-Sayed (2016)

▪

Solution C 198

Boden's mate

14.♕h6+ ♔xh6 15.♖h4+ ♔g7 16.♗h6#

Keres – Verbac (1939)

▪

Solution C 199

Blind swine mate

36.♘f8 ♖xf8 37.♖h7+ ♔g8 38.♖cg7#

Morphy – Maurian (1863)

▪

Solution C 200

Blackburne's mate

29.♕h5 ♔g8

Black's alternatives are:

A) 29...♕e3+ 30.♔h1! ♗xd5+ 31.cxd5 f6 32.♕g6, threatening 33.♕h7#. Black can only prolong the game by sacrificing the queen for White's rook;

B) 29...f6 30.♕g6 ♕e3+ 31.♔h1 ♗xd5+ 32.cxd5, transposing to the previous alternative.

30.♕xh6 ♕e3+ 31.♔g2 ♕e2+ 32.♔h3 ♕g4+ 33.♔xg4 gxh6 34.♗h7#

Eljanov – Bets (2000)

▪

Solution C 201

David & Goliath mate

30.♖xd7+ ♔c8 31.♖d8+ ♔b7 32.♖b8+ ♔a7 33.cxb6#

Ponkratov – Shengelia (2018)

▪

Solution C 202

Boden's mate

18.♕d6+ ♗e7

18...♘e7 19.♗xg5, and Black can't avoid checkmate, for example: 19...♕d8 20.♕xe7+ ♕xe7 21.♗xe7# (Double bishops mate).

19.♖xe7 ♘xe7 20.♕f6+ gxf6 21.♗h6#

Ofstad – Uhlmann (1963)

▪

Solution C 203

Double bishops mate

34.♕d5+ ♗xd5 35.♗xd5+ ♖e6 36.♗xe6+ ♕f7 37.♗xf7#

Popovic – Ilincic (1995)

▪

Solution C 204

Epaulette mate

34.g4+ ♔xg4 35.♖g1+ ♔h5 36.♕f3+ ♔h6 37.♕h3+ ♖h5 38.♕e6#

Wells – Nemirovski (1992)

▪

Solution C 205

David & Goliath mate

28...♔g7 29.♗xd5 e5 30.♖xf1 h6#

Svidler – Anand (2013)

▪

Solution C 206

Anastasia's mate

29...♕g5+ 30.♔h1 ♕g2+ 31.♗xg2 ♖d1+ 32.♗f1 ♖xf1#

Groselj – Timofeeva (1992)

▪

Solution C 207

Greco's mate

12.♘f6+ gxf6 13.♕f8+ ♔xf8 14.♗h6+ ♔g8 15.♖e8#

Similar to Greco's mate.

Richardson – Delmar (1871)

▪

Solution C 208

Balestra mate

52...♕h1+ 53.♔g4

53.♔f2 ♗e1# (Balestra mate).

53...♕xh2 54.♔f3 ♕h1+ 55.♔f2

55.♔g4 ♕h5# (Dovetail mate).

55...♗e1#

Tran – To (2001)

▪

Solution C 209

Double knights mate

82.♘xe5 ♘xe6

82...♘xf6 83.♕xf6+ (removing the defender of g8) 83...♖fg7 84.♖xg7, and Black is lost.

83.♘g6#

Ramesh – Thipsay (2006)

▪

Solution C 210

Greco's mate

22.♗c4+ ♔h8 23.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 24.♖h3#

Trylski – Zalewski (1975)

▪

Solution C 211

Epaulette mate

39.♘h5+ gxh5 40.♕g5#

Leitao – Cruz (2013)

▪

Solution C 212

Damiano's bishop mate

28.e6 fxe6

28...f6 29.♕f7+ ♔h8 30.♔g2, preparing ♖h1+. Black will be checkmated soon.

29.♗h7+ ♘xh7 30.♕g6+ ♔f8 31. ♗g7+ ♔g8 32.♗h6+ ♔h8 33.♕g7#

Max Lange's maneuver into Damiano's bishop mate.

Leitao – Molina (2013)

▪

Solution C 213

Back rank mate

38.♕c4+ ♔h8 39.♕f7 ♕g8

39...♖xc3 40.♕f8+ ♕xf8 41.♖xf8# (Back rank mate); 39...♗xf1 40. ♕xg7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

40.♕xg7+ ♕xg7 41.♖f8#

Garcia – Espinosa Flores (1958)

▪

Solution C 214

Smothered mate

24.♘xh6+ ♔h8 25.♕xe6 ♘e7 26.♕g8+ ♘xg8 27.♘f7#

Buhmann – Saeheng (2008)

▪

Solution C 215

Damiano's bishop mate

30.♖f8+ ♔xf8 31.♕xg7+ ♔e8 32.♕xe7#

Knaak – Garcia Martinez (1983)

▪

Solution C 216

Arabian mate

16...♕h4 17.♖g2

17.♖xh4 loses on the spot to 17...♖g1# (Arabian mate).

White's best try is 17.♔g2. Black can continue 17...dxc3! and after 18.♗e3 (preventing 18...♕xf2+) 18...♗xe3 (renewing the threat) 19.fxe3 ♖xg4+ 20.♔xf3 cxb2, it is time for White to resign.

17...♕xh2+ 18.♖xh2 ♖g1#

Reiner – Steinitz (1860)

▪

Solution C 217

Arabian mate

37.♕xg6+ hxg6

37...♔h8 38.♕xh7#.

38.♘f6+ ♔h8 39.♖h7#

Fine – Dake (1933)

▪

Solution C 218

Greco’s mate

34.♘e7+ ♘xe7

34...♔h7 35.♕xh5# (Anastasia’s mate); 34...♔f8 35.♕xf7# (Damiano’s bishop mate).

35.♕xf7+ ♔h7 36.♕xh5#

Vera Gonzalez-Quevedo – Adla (1999)

▪

Solution C 219

Greco’s mate

27.♘g6+ hxg6 28.♖h5+ gxh5 29.♖h6#

Forthofer – Vaillant (2006)

▪

Solution C 220

Lawnmower mate

22.♕xg7+ ♔xg7 23.♖g3+ ♔h8 24.♖f6 ♕xe5 25.♖xh6#

Kuczynski – Kempinski (1996)

▪

Solution C 221

Anastasia's mate

29.♕xg7+ ♘xg7 30.♖d8+ ♘e8 31.♖xe8#

Zysk – Van den Doel (2005)

▪

Solution C 222

Lawnmower mate

54...♖h2+

54...♔h3 fails to 55.♖8d2, when the game should end in a draw.

55.♔g1 ♔h3+ 56.♔f1 ♖gg2 57.♖8d3 ♖h1#

Servat – Re (1992)

▪

Solution C 223

Opera mate

25.♕xf7+ ♖xf7 26.♖d8+ ♕e8 27.♖xe8+ ♗f8 28.♖xf8#

De Coverly – Elliott (1995)

▪

Solution C 224

Epaulette mate

31.♖e7+ ♗xe7 32.♕xe7+ ♔g6 33.♖g1+ ♔h5

33...♔f5 34.♕e5#.

34.♕e3 ♖g6

34...♕f8 35.♕e5+ ♖g5 36.♖xg5+ hxg5 37.♕xg5# (Damiano's bishop mate).

35.♕xh6+ ♖xh6 36.♖g5#

Schweda – Tan (1990)

▪

Solution C 225

Anastasia's mate

46.♖d8+ ♗g8 47.♖xg8+ ♔xg8 48.♕d8+ ♕e8 49.♕xe8#

Edouard – Degraeve (2013)

▪

Solution C 226

Suffocation mate

30...♖xf1+ 31.♖xf1 ♕e3+ 32.♔h1 ♘f2+ 33.♔g1

33.♖xf2 ♕e1+ 34.♖f1 ♖xf1+ 35.♕xf1 ♕xf1# (similar to Greco's mate).

33...♘xh3+ 34.♔h1 ♕g1+ 35.♖xg1 ♘f2#

Skomorokhin – Sjugirov (2015)

▪

Solution C 227

Double bishops mate

27.♖e7+ ♔h8 28.♗d4+ ♕e5 29.♗xe5+ ♗g7 30.♗xg7#

Gheta – Noori (2001)

▪

-

Solution C 228

Lawnmower mate

40.♖g7+ ♔h5

40...♔h4 41.♖f6 (threatening 42.♖xh6#) 41...♔h5 42.♔h2 ♘e4 43.g4+ ♔h4 44.♖xh6# (Lawnmower mate).

41.g4+ ♔h4 42.♔g2 ♘ce6 43.♖h1#

Franklin – Norinkeviciute (2007)

▪

Solution C 229

Double knights mate

34.♘d7+ ♔a8 35.♘c6+ ♘a6 36.♘b6#

Loyd – Rosenthal (1867)

▪

Solution C 230

David & Goliath mate

17...♕xf1+ 18.♔xf1 ♖d1+ 19.♔g2 h3#

Lorenz – Orlov (2001)

▪

Solution C 231

Greco's mate

30...♖xh2+ 31.♗xh2 ♖xh2+ 32.♔xh2 ♕h4#

Fischer – Heinz (1992)

▪

Solution C 232

Boden's mate

19.♖e5+ ♕d5 20.♗xd5#

Zagrebelny – Ponyi (1992)

▪

Solution C 233

Double bishops mate

40...♕xg2+ 41.♖xg2 ♗xg2+ 42.♔g1 ♗d4+ 43.♕e3 ♗xe3#

Portelli – Savoia (2000)

▪

Solution C 234

Corner mate

17.♕e7+ ♗xe7 18.♘xc7#

Similar to Corner mate.

Lu – Bitoon (2015)

▪

Solution C 235

Greco's mate

15.♘e7+ ♔h8 16.♘g6+ hxg6 17.hxg3+ ♕h4 18.♖xh4#

Johnston – Marshall (1899)

▪

Solution C 236

Smothered mate

20.♕b3+ ♔h8

20...♔f8 21.♕f7#.

21.♘f7+ ♔g8 22.♘h6+ ♔h8

22...♔f8 23.♕f7#.

23.♕g8+ ♖xg8 24.♘f7#

Adler – Wallhöfer (1992)

▪

Solution C 237

Opera mate

14...♗b3+ 15.♔c1 ♖d1#

Finn – Heasman (1993)

▪

Solution C 238

Swallow's tail mate

27...♖xc4+ 28.♗xc4

28.♗c2 ♖xb1#.

28...♖xb1+ 29.♔c2 ♗xe4+ 30.♖hd3 ♕b2#

Milliet – Dzagnidze (2013)

Solution C 239

Balestra mate

13...♕xb1+ 14.♔d2

14.♖xb1 ♗b4# (Boden's mate).

14...♗b4#

Srinivas – Ravikumar (1984)

Solution C 240

Opera mate

33.♕xe5+ ♘xe5 34.♗f6+ ♖xf6 35.♖g8#

Jovic – Trailovic (1991)

▪

Solution C 241

Swallow's tail mate

22...g5+ 23.♔e4

23.♔xg5 ♕h6# (Dovetail mate).

23...♖e2+ 24.♘xe2 ♕e3#

Bromberger – Predojevic (2017-18)

▪

Solution C 242

David & Goliath mate

33.♖h8+ ♔e7 34.♕f6+ gxf6 35.gxf6#

Dück – Klebanov (2002)

▪

Solution C 243

Opera mate

26.♖f1 ♘f4 27.♖xf4 g5 28.♖f8#

Rachels – Serotta (1988)

▪

Solution C 244

Swallow's tail mate

41.♖e8+ ♔d7 42.♕d8+ ♔c6 43.♕a8+ ♔c7

43...♔d7 44.♕c8# (Triangle mate).

44.♕c8#

Stojanov – Paci (2000)

▪

Solution C 245

Box mate

43.♖xg8+ ♔xg8 44.♕d8+ ♔f7 45.♖f6#

Kobe – Kavcic (1997)

▪

Solution C 246

Vukovic's mate

52...♘g4+ 53.♔h1 ♘f2+ 54.♔h2 f3 55.b8♕

55.♖g1 ♖h3#.

55...♖g2#

Banusz – Zhigalko (2009)

▪

Solution C 247

Boden's mate

18.♗xd7+ ♔xd7 19.♘b6+ ♔e8 20.♕a4#

Similar to Boden's mate.

Gelashvili – Kakogiannis (2001)

▪

Solution C 248

Arabian mate

35.♕g7+ ♖xg7 36.♖f8#

Zojer – Kilgus (2006)

▪

Solution C 249

David & Goliath mate

24.♖xf7+ ♘xf7 25.g7#

Binham – Horn (1998)

▪

Solution C 250

Max Lange's mate

27.♖d8+ ♖xd8

27...♔h7 28.♕f5+ g6 29.♗xg6+ ♖xg6 30.♖1d7# (Lawnmower mate).

28.♖xd8+ ♔h7 29.♖h8+ ♔xh8 30.♕e8+ ♔h7 31.♕g8#

Rej – Pyke (2010)

▪

Solution C 251

Swallow's tail mate

18.♖xe6+ ♖xe6 19.♕xf5+ ♔e7 20.♕f7#

Drmic – Tomicic (2004)

▪

Solution C 252

Arabian mate

42.♖h7+ ♔xh7 43.♘f6+ ♔h8 44.♖g8#

Kotronias – Vallejo Pons (2009)

▪

Solution C 253

Hook mate

40.♘e8+ ♔f8 41.♘f6+ ♔e7

41...♔g7 42.♖g8# (Hook mate).

42.♖e8#

Ivanchuk – Gelfand (2008)

▪

Solution C 254

Damiano's bishop mate

18...♗xg2+ 19.♔g1

19.♖xg2 ♖e1+ 20.♗f1 ♖xf1+ 21.♖g1 ♕xg1#.

19...♖e1+ 20.♗f1 ♖xf1+ 21.♖xf1 ♗xf3+ 22.♕g2 ♕xg2#

Ivanchuk – Anand (1988)

▪

Solution C 255

Vukovic's mate

79...♖g2+ 80.♔f1

80.♔h1 ♘f2# (Corner mate).

80...♘e3+ 81.♔e1 ♖e2#

Saravanan – Sasikiran (1999)

▪

Solution C 256

Balestra mate

47.♖g8+ ♔xg8

47...♔h6 48.♕xf6+ ♔h7 49.♖h8# (Box mate).

48.♕g6+ ♔h8

48...♔f8 49.♕xf7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

49.♕xf6+ ♔h7

49...♔g8 50.♕xf7+ ♔h8 51.♕g8# (Damiano's bishop mate).

50.♕xf7+ ♔h6 51.♕f8+ ♔h7 52.♗d3+ ♖e4 53.♗xe4#

Malisauskas – Lauk (1993)

▪

Solution C 257

Hook mate

42.♘d6

White threatens 43.♘e8#.

42...♖a7 43.♘e8+ ♔b7 44.♖b8#

Ramon Pita – Klink (2000)

▪

Solution C 258

Double bishops mate

36...♕xe3+ 37.♔xe3

37.♔f1 ♕e2# (Damiano's mate).

37...♗b6#

Mikenas – Gusev (1957)

▪

-

Solution C 259

Box mate

54...♖f4+ 55.♔xg3 ♕f2+ 56.♔h3 ♖xh4#

Kramnik – Caruana (2015)

▪

Solution C 260

Swallow's tail mate

23.♕a8+ ♖c8 24.♖xd7+ ♔xd7 25.♕d5+ ♔c7 26.♖e7+ ♔b6 27.♕b7#

Kramnik – Ehlvest (1995)

▪

Solution C 261

Damiano's bishop mate

34...♖xb3+ 35.♗xb3 ♕d3+ 36.♗c2

36.♖cc2 ♕d1+ 37.♖c1 ♕xb3+ 38.♖b2 ♕xb2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

36...♕b5+ 37.♗b3 ♕xb3+ 38.♖b2 ♕xb2#

Hort – Gligoric (1971)

▪

Solution C 262

Back rank mate

26.♕g7+ ♖xg7 27.♖a8+ ♖g8 28.♖xg8+ ♔xg8 29.♖d8#

Rührig – Stertenbrink (1984)

▪

Solution C 263

Max Lange's mate

21.♖xg7+ ♔f8

21...♔h8 22.♖xh7+ ♔g8 23.♖h8# (Opera mate).

22.♖g8+ ♔xg8 23.♖g1+ ♔f8 24.♗g7+ ♔g8 25.♗f6+ ♔f8 26.♖g8+ ♔xg8 27.♕g2+ ♔f8 28.♕g7#

Adams – Simonson (1940)

▪

Solution C 264

Greco's mate

29...♕xf2 30.♕e1

30.♖xf2 ♖d1+ 31.♖f1 ♖xf1# (Back rank mate).

30...♘g3+ 31.hxg3 ♖h5#

So – Carlsen (2017)

▪

Solution C 265

Damiano's mate

30...♖c1+ 31.♕xc1

31.♖xc1 ♖xa3+ 32.bxa3 ♗xd4+ 33.♔b1 ♕xd2 34.♖c8+ ♔g7 35.♖hc1 ♕b2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

31...♖xa3+ 32.♔b1

32.bxa3 ♕a2# (Lolli's mate).

32...♖a1+ 33.♔xa1 ♕a8+ 34.♔b1 ♕a2#

Wheeler – Hall (1964)

▪

Solution C 266

Swallow's tail mate

27.♕h4+ ♔xg7 28.♕h7+ ♔f8 29.♕h8+ ♔e7 30.♕g7+ ♔e8

30...♔d8 31.♕f8+ ♕e8 32.♘f7+ ♔d7 33.♕d6# (Swallow's tail mate); 30...♔d6 31.♕xf6+ ♕e6 32.♕xe6#.

31.♕g8+ ♔e7 32.♕f7+ ♔d8

32...♔d6 33.♕xf6+ ♕e6 34.♕xe6#.

33.♕f8+ ♕e8 34.♘f7+ ♔d7 35.♕d6#

Steinitz – Von Bardeleben (1895)

▪

Solution C 267

Max Lange's mate

25.♕h5+ ♔g8 26.♗h7+ ♔h8 27.♗g6+ ♔g8 28.♕h7#

Fisher – Jorgensen (2011)

▪

Solution C 268

Blind swine mate

30.♕g6+ ♕xg6 31.♖exe7+ ♔d8 32.♖bd7#

Hartston – Whiteley (1974)

▪

Solution C 269

Corner mate

17...♕xf2+ 18.♖xf2 ♖xf2+ 19.♔h1 ♘g3#

Popert – Cochrane (1841)

▪

Solution C 270

Anastasia's mate

18...♘xg3+ 19.♔g1 ♘ge2+ 20.♔h1

20.♔f2 ♕h4#.

20...♖xh2+ 21.♔xh2 ♕h4+ 22.♗h3 ♕g3+ 23.♔h1 ♕xh3#

Uhlmann – Hansen (1999)

▪

Solution C 271

Anastasia's mate

48.♖h8+ ♗xh8 49.♗h6+ ♗g7

49...♘g7 50.♕f6+ ♔g8 51.♘e7+ ♔h7 52.♕g6#.

50.♗xg7+ ♘xg7

50...♔g8 51.♘e7#.

51.♕f6+ ♔g8

51...♔e8 52.♕e7#.

52.♘e7+ ♔h7 53.♕g6+ ♔h8 54.♕h6#

Uhlmann – Lau (1997)

▪

Solution C 272

Corner mate

25...♖xg2+ 26.♔h1 ♖g1+ 27.♖xg1 ♘xf2#

Rahman – Elgabry (2000)

▪

Solution C 273

Damiano's mate

54.♕e6+ ♔h8

54...♔g7 55.♖f7+ ♔g8 56.♕g6+ ♔h8 57.♖h7# (Lawnmower mate); 54...♔h7 55.♖f7+ ♗g7 56.♕g6+ ♔h8 57.♕xg7#.

55.♕h6+ ♔g8 56.g6 ♕e7

Defending f7, f8 and h7 at the same time.

57.♖f8+ ♕xf8 58.♕h7#

Popov – Ajrapetian (2007)

▪

Solution C 274

Box mate

61.♖gxg6+ ♖xg6 62.♕g5+ ♔h7 63.♕xh5+ ♔g7 64.♕xg6+ ♔f8 65.♖e8#

Vovk – Likavsky (2012)

▪

Solution C 275

Swallow's tail mate

56.♖h6+ ♔f5 57.♕f4+ ♔e6 58.♕e5#

Kryvoruchko – Richter (2010)

▪

Solution C 276

Epaulette mate

29.♘xf6+ ♔f8

29...♗xf6 30.♕h7+ ♔f8 31.♕xf7#.

30.♘gh7+ ♔e7 31.♕xe5+ ♔d8 32.♕d6#

Vybiral – Drabek (1999)

▪

Solution C 277

Swallow's tail mate

34.♖g7+ ♔xg7

34...♔f8 35.♘h7#.

35.♘h5+ ♔f7 36.♕g7#

Zhang – Xu (2016)

Solution C 278

David & Goliath mate

52.♖c7 ♘c6

52...g5 (creating a flight square for his king) 53.♕e5+ ♔g6 54.♕g7# (Swallow's tail mate).

53.♕e5+ ♘xe5 54.dxe5#

Chen – Suez Panama (2014)

Solution C 279

Dovetail mate

41...♕xf3+ 42.♕g3

42.♔h2 ♕g2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

42...♕f1+ 43.♔g4

43.♔h2 ♕h1# (Opera mate).

43...♗xe6+ 44.♖xe6 ♕f5#

Ljubisavljevic – Calapso (1973)

▪

Solution C 280

Damiano's mate

34...♖d1+ 35.♕xd1 ♕g2+ 36.♔e1 ♕f2#

Jovanovic – Fercec (2012)

▪

Solution C 281

Opera mate

20... ♗d3+ 21.♕xd3

21. ♗e2 ♕h1+ 22.♘xh1 ♖xh1# (Back rank mate); 21.♕e2 ♕h1+ 22.♘xh1 ♖xh1# (Back rank mate);

21.♔g1 ♕h2#; 21.♘e2 ♕h1# (Back rank mate).

21...♕h1+ 22.♘xh1 ♖xh1+ 23.♔e2 ♖e1#

Polgar – Seirawan (1993)

▪

Solution C 282

Damiano's bishop mate

35.♖h6+ ♔g8 36.♖h8+ ♔xh8 37.♕h6+ ♔g8 38.♕xg7#

Aligozhin – Bigabylov (2007)

▪

SOLUTIONS D

Final test

Solution D 1

Back rank mate

29.♕e7+ ♗xe7 30.♖b8+ ♗d8 31.♖xd8#

Tikkanen – Cramling (2012)

▪

Solution D 2

David & Goliath mate

44.♖d6+ ♔xe5 45.♘f7+ ♔f5 46.g4#

Tolush – Randviir (1947)

▪

Solution D 3

Legal's mate

8...♕h4+ 9.♘xh4

9.♔e2 ♕f2+ 10.♔d3 ♘b4#.

9... ♗f2+ 10.♔e2 ♘d4+ 11.♔d3 ♘c5#

Similar to Legal's mate (Vienna Game, Vienna Gambit).

Oudheusden – De Vries (1934)

▪

Solution D 4

Damiano's bishop mate

39.♖xh6

Threatening checkmate with 40.♗e6#.

39... ♗xh6 40.♗e6+ ♔h8

40...♔g7 41.♕f7+ ♔h8 42.♕g8# (Damiano's bishop mate); 40...♔h7 41.♕f7+ ♗g7 42.♗f5+ ♔h8 43.♕h5+ ♔g8 44.♗e6+ ♔f8 45.♕f7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

41.♕f6+ ♔h7

41... ♗g7 42.♕h4+ ♗h6 43.♕xh6#.

42.♕f7+ ♗g7 43.♗f5+ ♔h8 44.♕h5+ ♔g8

44... ♗h6 45.♕xh6+ ♔g8 46.♗e6# (Balestra mate).

45.♗e6+ ♔f8 46.♕f7#

Kasparov – Smirin (1988)

▪

Solution D 5

Dovetail (bishop) mate

51...♕b1+ 52.♔c4

52.♔a3 ♕b2+ 53.♔a4 ♕a2#.

52...♕a2+ 53.♔d3 ♕e2#

Michna – Rajlich (2004)

▪

Solution D 6

Hook mate

45.♕xf8+ ♔xf8 46.♘d7+ ♔g8 47.♖e8+ ♔h7 48.♘f8+ ♔h8

48...♔g8 49.♘e6+ ♔h7 50.♖xg7# (Lawnmower mate).

49.♘g6+ ♔h7 50.♖h8#

Vocaturo – Genocchio (2009)

▪

Solution D 7

Anastasia's mate

24...♘4g3+ 25.hxg3 ♖h6+ 26.♘h3 ♖xh3+ 27.gxh3 ♕f3+ 28.♔h2 ♕xg3+ 29.♔h1 ♕xh3#

Kobzar – Kadyrov (2006)

Solution D 8

Balestra mate

53.♕c5+ ♔e4 54.♗f5#

Areshchenko – Bocharov (2008)

Solution D 9

Back rank mate

35.♘xe7 ♕xe7 36.♕f7 ♕xf7 37.exf7 ♗xb2 38.f8♕#

Sebenik – Kovacevic (2010)

▪

Solution D 10

Boden's mate

15.♘xa7+ ♗xa7 16.♕xc6+ bxc6 17.♗a6#

Vera – Gorner (1932)

▪

Solution D 11

Swallow's tail mate

29...♖f4+ 30.♗xf4 e5+ 31.♔f3 ♕xf4#

Porrasmaa – Kekki (1986)

▪

Solution D 12

David & Goliath mate

34...cxd4+ 35.♔xd4 ♕b2+ 36.♔e3 d4#

Semcesen – Leenhouts (2002)

▪

Solution D 13

Anastasia's mate

27.♕e6+ ♕xe6

27...♔f8 28.♘h7#.

28.♖d8+ ♕e8 29.♖xe8#

Van Wely – Zhigalko (2016)

▪

Solution D 14

Damiano's mate

43...♕d3+ 44.♔g1 ♕g6+ 45.♔f1 ♕g2+ 46.♔e1 ♕g1+ 47.♘f1 ♕xf2+ 48.♔d1 ♕e2#

Sevenich – Schott (1990)

▪

Solution D 15

Smothered mate

22...♕c6+ 23.♔b1 ♕e4+ 24.♔a1 ♘c2+ 25.♔b1 ♘a3+ 26.♔a1 ♕b1+ 27.♖xb1 ♘c2#

Cheron – Nilsson (1928)

▪

Solution D 16

Dovetail mate

32.♕f7+ ♔h6

32...♔h8 33.♕f8+ ♔h7 34.♗xf5# (Balestra mate).

33.♕f8+ ♔g6

33...♔g5 34.♕f6# (Dovetail mate).

34.♗xf5+ ♔g5 35.♕f6#

Slipak – Valerga (2013)

▪

Solution D 17

Opera mate

26.♕xg6+ fxg6 27.♗xd5+ ♕xd5 28.f7+ ♕xf7 29.♖h8#

Linn – Hood (1985)

▪

Solution D 18

David & Goliath mate

40.♗f6 ♘xe4 41.♗g5+ ♘xg5 42.hxg5#

Vitiugov – Yemelin (2009)

▪

Solution D 19

Opera mate

14...♖g6 15.g3 ♕h4 16.♖fc1 ♕xh2+ 17.♔xh2 ♖h6+ 18.♔g1 ♖h1#

Abramovic – Botvinnik (1924)

▪

Solution D 20

David & Goliath mate

39...♖xh2+ 40.♔g4 ♖af2 41.♘e6+ ♔h6 42.♖f4 f5+ 43.♖xf5 gxf5#

Kovacs – Boros (2003)

▪

Solution D 21

Opera mate

29.♕h6

Not 29.♖h8+?? ♗xh8 30.♕h6 ♗xf6 31.exf6 ♕f8!, defending against the mate on g7.

29...♗xh6 30.♖xh6 g5 31.♖h8#

Santasiere – Blumin (1939)

▪

Solution D 22

Double bishops mate

23.♕xe8+ ♕xe8 24.♗c5#

Spassky – Vladimirov (1961)

▪

Solution D 23

Damiano's mate

41...♘f1+ 42.♔g1 ♕h2+ 43.♔f2/xf1

♕xg2#

Röder – David (1990)

▪

Solution D 24

Suffocation mate

28.♕xf5+ ♕xf5 29.♗xf5+ ♔h8 30.♘g6+ ♔h7 31.♘e5+ ♔h8 32.♘f7#

Boleslavsky – Mosionzhik (1967)

▪

Solution D 25

David & Goliath mate

36.♖f7+ ♔g6

36...♔g8 37.♖f8+ ♔h7 38.♖1f7+ ♔g6 39.♖g7+ ♔h5 40.♖f5+ ♖g5 41.♔h3! ♖xe5 42.g4# (David & Goliath mate).

37.♖g7+ ♔h5 38.♖f5+ ♖g5

38...♔h4 39.g3+ ♖xg3 40.♗xg3#.

39.♔h3 ♖xf5 40.g4#

Hofmann – Kreutzkamp (1986)

▪

Solution D 26

Box mate

27...♖xe3+ 28.♗xe3

28.♔f1 ♕d1+ 29.♖xd1 ♖xd1+ 30.♕e1 ♖xe1# (Anastasia's mate).

28...♕d3+ 29.♔f3

29.♔e1 ♕xe3+ 30.♔f1 ♕xc1+ 31.♕e1 ♕c4+ 32.♔g1 ♕xe4 and White is lost, for example 33.♔f1 ♕f5+ 34.♔g1 ♖d1! 35.♕xd1 ♕f2#.

29...♕xe3+ 30.♔xg4 f5+ 31.♔xf5

31.♔h4 ♕f4+ 32.♔h5 g6# (David & Goliath mate).

31.♔xf5 ♕f4+ 32.♔e6 ♕f7+ 33.♔xe5 ♖d5#

Stern – Baklan (2006)

▪

Solution D 27

Opera mate

16.♖ae1 ♕xd5

Black's best try was 16...h5 or 16...h6, although it will lose the queen immediately after 17.♖xe6. White will win after 17...dxe6 18.♕d8+ ♔h7 19.♕d3+ ♔g8 20.♕g6 ♘d7 21.♕xe6+ ♔h7 22.♖f7 (threatening 23.♕xh6+) 22...♔g8 23.♖xd7+ ♔h7 24.♕xh6+ ♔g8 25.♕xg7#.

17.♖e8+ ♗f8 18.♗h6 ♕d4+ 19.♔h1 ♕g7 20.♖exf8+ ♕xf8 21.♖xf8#

Renaut – NN (1974)

▪

Solution D 28

Suffocation mate

24.♕g7+ ♔xg7 25.♘f5+ ♔g8 26.♘h6#

Sveshnikov – Shcherbakov (1991)

▪

Solution D 29

Vukovic's mate

31.♖d7+ ♔f8 32.♘h7+ ♔e8 33.♘f6+ ♔f8 34.♖f7#

Gasthofer – Zhitnikov (1992)

▪

Solution D 30

Smothered mate

25.e7 ♖e8 26.♕c4+ ♔h8 27.♘f7+ ♔g8 28.♘h6+ ♔h8 29.♕g8+ ♖xg8 30.♘f7#

Timman – Short (1990)

▪

Solution D 31

Triangle mate

30.♖xg6 ♕d7

Black can delay the loss with 30...♖xh2+ 31.♔xh2 ♖h7+, but White will ultimately win the game.

31.♖g8+ ♔h7 32.♖h8+ ♔xh8 33.♖g8+ ♔h7 34.♕g6#

Davies – Dive (1994)

▪

Solution D 32

Back rank mate

18.♗d5+ ♖f7 19.♕xh7+ ♔f8 20.♕h8#

Noroozi – Khamrakulov (2004)

▪

Solution D 33

David & Goliath mate

18.♕h7+ ♔f7 19.♘e5+ ♗xe5

19...♔f6 20.♕g6#.

20.♗g6+ ♔f6 21.dxe5#

Hua – Gilman (2001)

▪

Solution D 34

Greco's mate

31...♘b3+ 32.axb3 ♖xc8 33.♗d3 ♗xd3 34.♖c1 ♖a8#

Privman – Bonin (2002)

▪

Solution D 35

Damiano's bishop mate

28.♕e6+ ♔b8

28...♔c7 29.♕d7+ ♔b8 30.♕xb7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

29.♖d8+ ♔a7

29...♔c7 30.♕d7+ ♔b6 31.♕xb7# (Swallow's tail mate); 29...♘c8 30.♕xc8+ ♔a7 31.♕xb7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

30.♖xa8+ ♔xa8 31.♕a6+ ♔b8 32.♕xb7#

Cubas Pons – Corbin (2004)

Solution D 36

Opera mate

35.♖fb2 ♘a6

Protecting against 36.♖b8+.

36.d7+

Not only checking the black king, but also opening the diagonal for the bishop.

36...♖xd7 37.♖b8+ ♘xb8 38.♖xb8#

Steinitz – Vines (1874)

Solution D 37

Opera mate

29.♖xe6 ♖df7 30.♗xg7+ ♖xg7 31.♖e8#

Marshall – Rabinovich (1925)

▪

Solution D 38

David & Goliath mate

23...♗xg2+ 24.♔xg2 ♕h3+ 25.♔xh3 ♘g5+ 26.♔g2 ♘h4+ 27.♔h1 g2#

Ftacnik – Cvitan (1997)

▪

Solution D 39

Morphy's mate

33...♕a3 34.♕d8+ ♔h7 35.♘xa3

35.♕a5 is a nice try, but Black wins with 35...♖b2+ 36.♔a1 ♖xb3+ 37.♘e5 ♕b2#.

35...♖b2+ 36.♔a1 ♖xb3+ 37.♕d4 ♗xd4+ 38.♖c3 ♗xc3#

Bogoljubow – Klein (1951)

▪

Solution D 40

Dovetail (bishop) mate

39...♗xe5+ 40.♔g1

After 40.♕g3, Black's best move is 40...♖f1, threatening 41...♖h1#. The game will end with e.g. 41.♗h5+ ♔xh5 42.♕xe5 ♖h1+ 43.♔g3 ♕f3#. After 40.♗g3 ♖f2+, White can't take with the bishop because it is pinned: 41.♔g1 ♕e1# (Lawnmower mate).

40...♘h3+ 41.♕xh3 ♕xe1+ 42.♔g2 ♕f1#

Rzayev – Kuzubov (2014)

▪

Solution D 41

Greco's mate

28...♕xh4+ 29.♔g1 ♕e1+ 30.♖f1

30.♔h2 ♗e5+ 31.g3 ♕xg3+ 32.♔h1 ♕h2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

30...♗d4+ 31.♔h2 ♕h4#

Fecherman – Kingscrusher

▪

Solution D 42

Morphy's mate

30...♖g5+ 31.♔f1 ♗g2+ 32.♔g1 ♗d5+ 33.♔f1 ♗c4+ 34.♘d3 ♗xd3#

Yachou – Kagan (1992)

▪

Solution D 43

Smothered mate

30...♕d4+ 31.♖f2

31.♔h1 ♘f2+ 32.♔g1 ♘h3+ 33.♔h1 ♕g1+ 34.♖xg1 ♘f2# (Smothered mate).

31...♕xa1+ 32.♖f1 ♕d4+ 33.♔h1

33.♖f2 ♕xf2+ 34.♔h1 ♕e1# (Back rank mate).

33...♘f2+ 34.♔g1 ♘h3+ 35.♔h1 ♕g1+ 36.♖xg1 ♘f2#

Hansen – Marin (1995)

▪

Solution D 44

Smothered mate

25.♕h6 ♕g8

25...♗xf7 26.♕xh7# (Damiano's bishop mate); 25...gxh6 26.♖xh7#.

26.♘g6#

Kurz – Schrepp (1992)

▪

Solution D 45

Arabian mate

36...♖g3+ 37.♔h2 ♘e1+ 38.♘xf2 ♘f3+ 39.♔h1 ♖xg1#

Sisatto – Ben-Menachem (2007)

▪

Solution D 46

Vukovic's mate

41. ♗f8+ ♔h5 42. ♘g7+ ♔h6

42...♔h4 43. ♗e7#.

43. ♘f5+ ♔h5 44. ♖g5#

Valeanu – Prunescu (2007)

▪

Solution D 47

Arabian mate

28. ♘e8+ ♖xf7

28...♖g7 29. ♖xg7+ ♔h8 30. ♖h7+ ♔g8 31. ♖dg7# (Blind swine mate).

29. ♖xf7+ ♖g7

29...♔h8 30. ♘f6 ♖g7 (the only move to prevent 31. ♖h7#) 31. ♖f8+ ♖g8 32. ♖xg8# (Arabian mate).

30. ♘f6+ ♔h8 31. ♖f8+ ♖g8 32. ♖xg8#

Kluger – Geukes (2002)

▪

Solution D 48

Greco's mate

26.♘g5+ hxg5 27.♕h5#

Jahn – Schröcker (1997)

▪

Solution D 49

Swallow's tail mate

25...♗c5+

To open the diagonal for the black queen.

26.♕xc5 ♖xg2+ 27.♔xg2 ♕h2#

Rosenthal – Ahues (1910)

▪

Solution D 50

Damiano's bishop mate

17.♖xb7 ♔xb7 18.♘d6+ exd6 19.♗a6+ ♔b8 20.♕d8+ ♗c8 21.♕xc8#

Krahe – Chandler (2002)

▪

Solution D 51

Damiano's mate

17...♕xa2+ 18.♔c1 ♗c3

Prevents the king's escape via d2.

19.bxc3 bxc3 20.♕b7 ♕a1+ 21.♕b1 ♕a3+ 22.♕b2 ♕xb2#

Hammel – Piske (1998)

▪

Solution D 52

Greco's mate

19.♘f7+ ♔g8 20.♘xe5+ ♔h8 21. ♘g6+ hxg6 22.♕g5 ♖xe7 23.♕h4#

Bösken – Buchmann (1986)

▪

Solution D 53

Dovetail mate

24. ♗xf7+ ♔h7

24...♔h8 25.♕xe8+ ♔h7 26.♕g8# (Max Lange's mate).

25. ♗g6+ ♔xg6 26.♕f5#

Li – Ruan (2001)

▪

Solution D 54

Back rank mate

43. ♗f6 ♖xf7

43...♖g8 doesn't save Black:

44.♕xg7+ ♖xg7 45.♖c8+ ♕e8 46.♖xe8# (Back rank mate).

44.♖c8+ ♖f8 45.♖xf8#

Moreno Trujillo – Bernal Moro (2013)

▪

Solution D 55

Lawnmower mate

29.♘e5+ ♗xe5 30.♖xc5+ ♔xc5 31.♕c3+ ♔b6 32.♖b4+ ♔a6 33.♕d3+ ♔a7

33...♕c4 34.♕a3# (Lawnmower mate).

34.♕a3+ ♕a5 35.♕xa5#

Yudin – Loskutov (2004)

▪

Solution D 56

Opera mate

28.♕h7+ ♔xh7 29.♗g6+ ♔g8 30.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 31.♖e8#

Aronian – Kovalev (2015)

▪

Solution D 57

Back rank mate

23.♗xg7 ♘xg7 24.♖d8 ♘ce6

24...f6 25.♘h6+ ♔h8 26.♖xf8# (Back rank mate).

25.♕xg7+ ♘xg7 26.♘h6+ ♔h8 27.♖xf8#

Zivanic – Ilincic (2002)

▪

Solution D 58

Lawnmower mate

23.♘f6+ gxf6

23...♕xf6 24.♖xe8# (Back rank mate); 23...♔h8 24.♕xh7# (Arabian mate); 23...♔f8 24.♘xh7+ ♔g8 25.♘f6+ gxf6 26.♖g4+ ♔f8 27.♕h8#.

24.♖g4+ ♔h8 25.♖eg1 ♗xf5

Black could try 25...♖e1+ 26.♖xe1 ♕f8 27.♕h4 (threatening 28.♕xf6+) 27...h6 (creating an escape square for the black king) 28.♖e8+! ♕xe8 29.♕xh6# (Lawnmower mate).

26.♕xf5 ♖b5

26...h6 27.♕f4 ♔h7 28.♕xh6+ ♔xh6 29.♖h4# (Lawnmower mate).

27.♕xh7+ ♔xh7 28.♖h4+ ♖h5 29.♖xh5#

Nunn – Pritchett (1986)

▪

Solution D 59

Corner mate

31.♕g7+ ♔e8 32.♕xe7+ ♔xe7 33.♖g7+ ♔e8 34.♘f6#

Similar to Corner mate.

Kortchnoi – Petersons (1964)

▪

Solution D 60

Suffocation mate

32...♘xd3+ 33.f4

33.♔h1 ♘xf2# (Suffocation mate).

33...gxf3+ 34.♗f4 ♗xf4+ 35.♔h3 ♘f2#

Martinovic – Marjanovic (1980)

▪

Solution D 61

Opera mate

16.♖e1 ♗c8

16...♗xh6 17.♖xe6 ♔g7 18.♖xd6 ♖he8 19.♖d7+ ♔h8 20.♕xh6 ♖e1+

21.♗f1 ♖xf1+ 22.♔xf1 ♗a6+ 23.♔g1 ♖g8 24.♕xh7#.

17.♕e8 ♗d7

17...b5 18.♗b3 c5 19.dxc5 ♕e7 20.♖xe6! and White will win.

18.♖xe6 ♖xe8 19.♖xe8+ ♗e6 20.♗xe6+ ♕xe6 21.♖xf8#

Najdorf – Gliksberg (1929)

▪

Solution D 62

Damiano's bishop mate

20.♘b6+ ♘xb6 21.♖xc6+ bxc6 22.♕xc6+ ♕c7 23.♕xc7#

Skatchkov – Donchenko (1999)

▪

Solution D 63

Back rank mate

24.♖b7 ♕a3

24...♕c5 25.♖xc7 ♕b6 26.cxd7+ fxe4 27.♖c8+ ♖xc8 28.dxc8♕+ ♕b8 29.♕ac6#.

25.♖xa7+ ♖xa7

25...♔b8 26.♖a8#.

26.cxd7+ fxe4

26...♔b8 27.♕b6+ ♖b7 28.♕xb7# (Damiano's bishop mate).

27.♕c8+ ♖xc8 28.dxc8♕#

Smyslov – Zagoriansky (1945)

▪

Solution D 64

Greco's mate

20...♘xe4+ 21.♔h1

21.♕f2 prolongs the game by one move: 21...♗xf2+ 22.♔h1 ♘g3+ 23.hxg3 ♕h5# (Greco's mate).

21...♘g3+ 22.hxg3 ♕h5#

Kömetter – Welling (1995)

▪

Solution D 65

Double bishops mate

26...♖xe2 27.♕xe2 ♗e6+ 28.♕h2

28.♔g2 ♕h3# (Dovetail (bishop) mate).

28...♗xd5+ 29.♖f3 ♗xf3#

Kanko – Henriksson (2000)

▪

Solution D 66

Corner mate

38.♖xc1 ♖xc1

Black could try 38...♕xf4 when White would have to find 39.♘f6+ gxf6 40.♘f7+ ♘g6 41.♕xg6+ ♔f8 42.♕g7+ ♔e7 43.♘d6+ ♔d8 44.♕h8+ ♔e7 45.♖g7# (Lawnmower mate).

39.♘f6+ gxf6 40.♕f7+ ♔h8 41.♕h7+ ♘xh7 42.♘f7#

Movsesian – Zatonskih (2012)

▪

Solution D 67

Damiano's bishop mate

18...♖xg5+

To distract the e3-bishop from guarding f2, where the mate will eventually happen.

19.♗xg5 ♘f3+ 20.♗xf3 ♗e5 21.♗f4 ♗xf4 22.♖e1 ♗xh2+ 23.♔h1 ♗g3+ 24.♔g1 ♕h2+ 25.♔f1 ♕xf2#

Max Lange's maneuver into Damiano's bishop mate.

Paciencia – Azmaiparashvili (2007)

▪

Solution D 68

Damiano's bishop mate

29.♘h5 ♘xh5 30.♗h7+ ♔h8 31.♖xe5

Removing the defender of f7.

31...♖xe5

After 31...♗e6, several bishop moves will end in checkmate, e.g. 32.♗g8+ ♔xg8 33.♖g5+ ♘g7 34.♕xg7#.

32.♗g6+ ♔g8 33.♕h7+ ♔f8 34.♕xf7#

Max Lange's maneuver into Damiano's bishop mate.

Ye – Aung Aung (1999)

▪

Solution D 69

Dovetail mate

60.♘g4 hxg4

60...♕e7 (preventing 61.♕f6#) 61.♕e5+ f5 62.f4+ ♔xg4 63.♕e2#.

61.f4+ ♘xf4

61...♔f5 62.♕e5# (Swallow's tail mate).

62.gxf4+ ♔xf4 63.♕e5#

Mitkov – Dreev (2003)

▪

Solution D 70

Morphy's mate

16.♖fe1+ ♔d8

16...♗xe1 17.♖xe1+ ♔d8 18.♕b2 d6 (an escape square for the king) 19.♗f6+ ♔d7 20.♕b5+ c6 21.dxc6+ ♔c7 22.♖e7+ ♗d7 23.♖xd7+ ♔c8 24.♕xb7# (Triangle mate).

17.♕g3 ♕xg3

Black can't save his queen and protect against 18.♗f6# at the same time, e.g. 17...♕e7 18.♖xe7 ♔xe7 19.♕e5+ ♔d8 20.♗f6#.

18. ♗f6#

Fischer – Fine (1963)

▪

Solution D 71

Lolli's mate

36.fxg6 (en passant) 36...fxe6

Black could have tried 36...f6, but he still loses after 37.♖g7+ ♔h8 38.♖h7+ ♔g8 39.♖cc7 ♖5xe6 40.g7 ♖6e7 41.♖h8+ ♔f7 42.g8♕+ ♖xg8 43.♕xg8# (Dovetail mate).

37.♕xe5 ♕xc3 38.♖g7+ ♔f8

38...♔h8 39.♖h7+ ♔g8 40.♖h8#.

39.♕f4+ ♔xg7 40.♕f7+ ♔h8 41.♕h7#

Kotronias – Mamedyarov (2005)

▪

Solution D 72

David & Goliath mate

30.♘b4+ ♔e5 31.♘c6+ ♔d5

31...♔f5 32.♘e7+ ♔e5 33.f4# (David & Goliath mate).

32.♘e7+ ♔e5 33.f4#

Kaid – Giese (1993)

▪

Solution D 73

Hook mate

35.♖g6+ ♖g7

35...♕xe5 36.♖xh6# (Anastasia's mate).

36.♖xh6+ ♔g8 37.♘e7+ ♔f8 38.♖h8+ ♖g8 39.♖xg8#

Alcazar Jimenez – Sepp (2004)

▪

Solution D 74

Blind swine mate

27.♗f5 ♕xf5

27...♕h5 28.♖xg7+ ♔h8 29.♖xh7+ ♕xh7 30.♗xh7 ♗e4 31.♗xe4 dxe4
32.♕h5+ ♖h6 33.♕xh6+ ♔g8 34.♖g7# (Lawnmower mate).

28.♖xg7+ ♔h8 29.♕xf5 ♖xf5 30.♖xh7+ ♔g8 31.♖cg7#

Sangeetha – Dhar-Barua (2001)

▪

Solution D 75

Lawnmower mate

27.♖g5 ♘f5

27...♗e4 28.♖xh6+ ♗h7 29.♖xh7# (Lawnmower mate).

28.♗xf5 exf5 29.♖xh6#

Lapshun – Formanek (1992)

▪

Solution D 76

Triangle mate

58.♖h8+ ♔g7

58...♔xh8 59.♕h6+ ♕h7 60.♖f8#.

59.♖xg6+ ♗xg6

59...♔xh8 60.♖h6+ ♕h7 61.♕g8# (Damiano's bishop mate).

60.♖g8+ ♔h7 61.♕xg6#

Domnitz – Damjanovic (1973)

▪

Solution D 77

Vukovic's mate

48...♖d2+ 49.♔f1

49.♔e1/g1 ♘f3+ 50.♔f1 ♔g3 51.♖xf5 ♖f2# (Vukovic's mate).

49...♔g3 50.♔e1

50.♖e5 ♘f3 51.♖e2 ♖d1+ 52.♖e1 ♖xe1#.

50...♘f3+ 51.♔f1 ♖f2#

Azmaiparashvili – Cvitan (1993)

▪

Solution D 78

Damiano's bishop mate

22.♕g5 g6 23.♕h6 gxf5 24.♖g4+ fxg4 25.♗xh7+ ♔h8 26.♗g6+ ♔g8
27.♕h7+ ♔f8 28.♕xf7#

Max Lange’s maneuver into Damiano’s bishop mate.

Horowitz – Kevitz (1931)

▪

Solution D 79

Triangle mate

29.♘g6+ hxg6

29...♔g7 is the relative best move here, but after 30.♘f4+ ♔h8 31.♘xd5, White will win easily.

30.♕h4+ ♔g8 31.♖xg6+ ♔f8 32.♕xf6+ ♔e8 33.♕f8+ ♔d7 34.♖f7+ ♕xf7 35.♖d6+ ♔c7 36.♕d8#

Railroad into Triangle mate.

Zaitsev – Furman (1967)

▪

Solution D 80

Damiano’s bishop mate

45...♖h1+ 46.♔xh1

46.♔g2 ♗xe4+ 47.♗f3 ♕xf3#.

46...♕xe4+ 47.♗f3 ♕xf3+ 48.♔g1 ♕g2#

Escalator into Damiano's bishop mate.

Barbulescu – Andonov (1986)

▪

Solution D 81

Arabian mate

27...♕xh2+ 28.♔xh2 ♘f3+ 29.♔h1 ♖h2#

Petrosian – Grandelius (2010)

▪

Solution D 82

Hook mate

49.♖e7 ♖e6 50.♖f7+ ♖f6 51.♖xf6#

Edrenkin – Berry (1999)

▪

Solution D 83

Vukovic's mate

32.♖h7+ ♔g8 33.♗e6+ ♔f8 34.♖f7+ ♔g8

34...♔e8 35.♗d7+ ♔d8 36.♘e6#.

35.♖d7+ ♔f8

35...♔h8 36.♖h7#.

36.♘h7+ ♔e8 37.♘f6+ ♔f8 38.♖f7#

Razuvaev – Wahls (1990)

▪

Solution D 84

Lolli's mate

37.♖f8+ ♔g7 38.♖f7+ ♖xf7 39.♕xh7+ ♔f8 40.♕xf7#

Suttles – Ujtumen (1970)

▪

Solution D 85

Lawnmower mate

41...♔h6+ 42.♔h3 ♔h5 43.♖xc6 ♖h4#

Paragua – Yu (2012)

▪

Solution D 86

Damiano's mate

13.♘g6+ hxg6 14.h5 ♕a5+ 15.c3 ♕xd5 16.hxg6+ ♔g8 17.♖h8+ ♔xh8
18.♕h3+ ♔g8 19.♕h7#

Benjamin – Carter (1975)

▪

Solution D 87

Opera mate

21.♖xh7 ♔xh7 22.♖h3+ ♔g8 23.♗h6 ♕c7 24.f4 g5 25.♗g7 d4 26.♖h8#

Asauskas – Malisauskas (2004)

▪

Solution D 88

Lolli's mate

30.g7+ ♔h7

30...♔g8 31.h7+ ♔f7 32.g8♕+ ♖xg8 33.hxg8♕+ ♔e7 34.♕c7+ ♔f6 35.♕f8# (Lawnmower mate).

31.g8♕+ ♖xg8 32.♕c7+ ♔h8 33.♖xg8+ ♔xg8 34.♕g7#

Sokolov – Ljubojevic (1988)

▪

Solution D 89

Arabian mate

23.♕h6 ♖ag8 24.♕xh7+ ♖xh7 25.♖xg8#

Barcza – Troianescu (1948)

▪

Solution D 90

Anastasia's mate

24.♕h7 ♘xc4

24...♘xh7 loses immediately to 25.♘xh7#.

25.♕h8+ ♘g8 26.♕xg8+ ♔xg8 27.♖e8#

Solomon – Bhowany (2002)

▪

Solution D 91

Vukovic's mate

53...♘c2+ 54.♔f3 ♘e1+ 55.♔f4 ♘d3+ 56.♔f3 ♖e3#

Stellwagen – Cmilyte (2001)

▪

Solution D 92

Opera mate

23.♗xc6 ♕a3

23...♔d8 24.♖b8+! ♗c8 25.♖xc8+ ♔xc8 26.♖a8# (Opera mate).

24.♖b8+ ♔xb8 25.♖xa3 ♖xd2 26.♖a8#

Wagner – Schönmann (1919)

▪

Solution D 93

Back rank mate

43.♕f7

The threat is 44.♖g8+ followed by 45.♕xg8#.

43...♘f3+

Black can also try 43...♘e6, blocking the communication between White's queen and bishop, but he loses after 44.♘xf6 (threatening both 45.♖g8+ and an Arabian mate with 45.♕xh7#) 44...♗xf6 45.♗xf6+ ♘g7 46.♗xg7# (Double bishops mate).

44.♔h1 ♘xg1 45.♘xf6 ♖xf6

45...♗d6 46.♘e8+ ♖xc3 47.♕g8#

(Damiano's bishop mate).

46.♗xf6+ ♗xf6 47.♕xf6+ ♕g7 48.♕xd8+ ♕f8 49.♕xf8#

D.Mastrovasilis – Pikula (2004)

▪

Solution D 94

Damiano's bishop mate

31...fxg3 32.♗xg7+

32.hxg3 ♖xg3+ 33.fxg3 ♕xg3+ 34.♗g2 ♕xg2# (Damiano's bishop mate);
32.h3 gxf2+ 33.♔h2 ♖g2+ 34.♗xg2 ♕xg2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

32...♔h7 33.fxg3 ♖xg3+ 34.hxg3 ♕xg3+ 35.♗g2 ♕xg2#

Seirawan – Christiansen (1980)

▪

Solution D 95

Morphy's mate

23...♗e3+ 24.♔h1 ♖f2 25.♕xg6

25.♖g1 ♗xg2+ 26.♕xg2 ♖xg2 27.♖xg2 ♕b1+ 28.♖g1 ♕xg1# (Opera mate).

25.♕xg6 hxg6 26.d5

This line is the most challenging for Black: 26.h4 ♖xg2 27.♘c3 ♗f3 28.♖f1 ♖f2+ 29.♔g1 ♖e2+ 30.♖f2 ♖e1+ 31.♔h2 ♗xf2 32.♘e2 ♖h1#.

Another interesting line is 26.♖g1 ♗xg2+ 27.♖xg2 ♖f1+ 28.♖g1 ♖xg1# (Opera mate).

26...♖xg2 27.♗xe3 ♖g4#

Alsina Leal – Feller (2010)

▪

Solution D 96

Lolli's mate

28.♖xb7+ ♔xb7

28...♔c8 29.♖cxc7# (Blind swine mate); 28...♔a8 28.♕xa7#.

29.♖xc7+

29.♘a5+? fails to 29...♔c8, and suddenly Black is winning!

29...♔xc7

29...♔b8 30.♕xa7# (Triangle mate); 29...♔a8 30.♕xa7#.

30.♕xa7+ ♔c8 31.d6 ♕xe3 32.♕c7#

Khalifman – Serper (1994)

▪

Solution D 97

Epaulette mate

24.♘e7

Threatening 25.♕xg8#.

24...♕xf2+

24...♖xe7 25.♖d8+ ♖e8 26.♖xe8#; 24...♕xe7 25.♗xe7+ ♖xe7 26.♖d8+ ♖e8 27.♕xe8#.

25.♔h1 ♕xf6

25...gxf6 26.♕xg8+ ♔xe7 27.♕g7+ ♔e6 28.♕d7# (Dovetail mate).

26.♘g6+ ♕xg6 27.♖f1+ ♗f2 28.♖xf2+ ♕f6 29.♖xf6+ gxf6 30.♕xf6#

Showalter – Logan (1890)

▪

Solution D 98

Back rank mate

26...♕h4 27.♕xe5

27.h3 (preventing 27...♕xh2#) 27...♕xh3+ (the pawn can't take the queen because it is pinned) 28.♔g1 ♗d4+ 29.♖f2 ♕xg2# (Damiano's bishop mate). Again, the queen can't be taken due to a pin.

27...♕f2 28.♖g1

White has to defend both the back rank and g2: 28.♕h8+ ♔xh8 29.♖g1 ♖c1 30.♖xc1 ♕xg2# (Damiano's bishop mate).

28...♕xg2+ 29.♖xg2 ♖c1+ 30.♕e1 ♖xe1#

Larsen – Ljubojevic (1975)

▪

Solution D 99

Swallow's tail mate

48.♕h8+ ♔g5 49.♕f8 h4 50.♕f4+ ♔h5 51.♕xh4#

Barle – Kragelj (1992)

▪

Solution D 100

Corner mate

43...♘d1

Opening the third rank for the black queen.

44.♕e2

If 44.♕xd1, White will be checkmated via 44...♕h3+ 45.♗h2 ♕g2#. If 44.♔h2, 44...♕f3! is the only winning move for Black. 45...♕h5# can't be stopped.

44...♕h3+ 45.♗h2 ♕xe6 46.♕xe6 ♘f2#

Gorelov – Shulman (1995)

▪

Afterword

You have mastered all Checkmate Patterns in this book? Awesome! Now you have a solid foundation on which we can build further with the same checkmate patterns. For this purpose, I have created two follow-up courses for Chessable. You don’t need to have mastered The Checkmate Patterns Manual to start with these courses. But it will certainly help you to score better!

Checkmate opportunities are very rarely served on a silver platter. In the Chessable course Setting up Checkmate Patterns, you will learn how to play the forcing moves that create these checkmating opportunities! The calculation skills and pattern recognition you will build up in this course will serve you very handily in your own games.

The process in this course is simple yet highly effective:

1. Roll the checkmate pattern starting positions a few moves back to the point where the conditions for an attack come together;

2. Find the move that delivers your opponent an ultimatum – ‘Either you concede X, or I mate you!’;

3. Practice these for all the major checkmating patterns, graduating the difficulty as you go through 5 levels.

This online course was released in 2022 on Chessable.com and is recommended to students with 1200+ FIDE.

The Chessable course Dazzling Defenses against Checkmate Patterns can be considered the exact opposite of The Checkmate Patterns Manual, teaching the key defensive skills you need to defend against those very same checkmate

patterns.

The key idea: each motif is rolled back one move and flipped to the defender's perspective. Your task is to make the move that avoids going into that fatal forced mate.

For each exercise, the mistake that was made in the original game is explained. Next, it is explained how you can prevent that Checkmate Pattern from occurring by making the best possible move.

This online course was released in 2020 on Chessable.com and is recommended to students with 1600+ FIDE.

Raf Mesotten a.k.a. CraftyRaf

Index of mate names

The numbers refer to the pages on which the mate names are introduced and explained.

A

Anastasia’s mate 24

Anderssen’s mate 80

Arabian mate 37

B

Back rank mate 161

Balestra mate 137

Blackburne’s mate 152

Blind swine mate 156

Boden’s mate 133

Box mate 185

C

Corner mate 63

Cozio’s mate 105

D

Damiano’s bishop mate 93

Damiano’s mate 86

David & Goliath mate 121

Double bishops mate 144

Double knights mate 140

Dovetail (bishop) mate 113

Dovetail (knight) mate 111

Dovetail mate 105

E

Epaulette mate 158

Escalator into Damiano’s bishop

mate 101

F

Fool’s mate 191

G

Greco’s mate 28

Guéridon mate 115

H

Hook mate 41

L

Lawnmower mate 170

Legal’s mate 195

Lolli’s mate 82

M

Max Lange’s maneuver into Damiano’s bishop mate 103

Max Lange’s mate 90

Mayet’s mate 72

Morphy’s mate 65

O

Opera mate 72

P

Philidor’s legacy 50

Pillsbury’s mate 68

Pin mate 163

R

Railroad into Box mate 187

Railroad into Triangle mate 183

Réti’s mate 78

S

Scholar’s mate 193

Smothered mate 50

Suffocation mate 55

Swallow’s tail mate 115

T

Triangle mate 180

Two-move checkmate 191

V

Vukovic’s mate 45